

NORTHEAST TEXAS COMMUNITY COLLEGE



3 00000 1022781 1

# VERGIL'S



# AENEID

STATE \_\_\_\_\_  
COUNTY \_\_\_\_\_  
PARISH \_\_\_\_\_  
SCHOOL DISTRICT \_\_\_\_\_  
OTHER \_\_\_\_\_

Enter information  
in spaces  
to the left as  
instructed

[illegible]

1. Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every book issued.
2. The following terms should be used in recording the condition of the book: New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.

1. Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every book issued.
2. The following terms should be used in recording the condition of the book: New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.



FA 1150

Sunday, 4:00 108 D.





VERGIL'S  
AENEID  
BOOKS I-VI

*Revised Edition*

*With Introduction, Notes,  
Vocabulary, and Grammatical Appendix*

by  
CLYDE PHARR

DISCARDED

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY  
Lexington, Massachusetts    Toronto

CHARLIE & HELEN HAMILTON LIBRARY  
NORTHEAST TEXAS COMMUNITY COLLEGE  
ST. PLEASANT, TX 75451

Copyright © 1930 and 1964 by D. C. Heath and Company

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.





DIS MANIBUS  
VATIS VERGILI  
HUNC LIBELLUM  
DEDICAT AUCTOR  
LUBENS MERITO





## PREFACE

This book is intended to introduce high school and college students to the *Aeneid* and to enable them to read this great masterpiece with interest and appreciation.

The present edition is based on the cumulative results of the past centuries of Vergilian scholarship and pedagogical method, and the author is indebted to his many predecessors, ancient and modern, American and foreign, who have worked in this field. The author would make grateful acknowledgment to all those who have contributed in any way to a better understanding of the *Aeneid*, but it is manifestly impossible to enumerate the countless sources from which the present work has been drawn.

In preparing the present text an attempt has been made to profit by the contributions furnished by the printer's art in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal *i* (*i*, *j*) as well as in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal *u* (*u*, *v*). For what seems to be adequate pedagogical reasons such forms as *dējiciō*, *subjiciō*, and *conjiciō* are given in the printed text instead of the *dēiciō*, *subiciō*, and *coniciō* of the inscriptions and manuscripts. For the use of *j* and *v* the author feels that no more apology is needed than for the use of lower case letters in general instead of the square capitals of the inscriptions and early manuscripts. The employment of such forms as *dējiciō*, *subjiciō*, and *conjiciō* is abundantly justified by their simplicity as well as by the ease with which they are understood in connection with the rest of their conjugational systems.

The text is that of Hirtzel, Oxford University Press, 1900, and the author here gratefully acknowledges the kind permission granted by the Syndics of this Press to reproduce their text. Only a few changes have been made from the Oxford text, such as the use of capitals in this book at the beginning of each new sentence instead of merely at the beginning of each new paragraph, the use of *j* in this text to represent consonantal *i*, and the spellings *relligio*, *religiosus*, *relliquiae*, to represent more accurately the pronunciation of these words in Vergil's day.

In the definitions of the Latin words given in the page vocabularies the author has not sought to secure a mechanical uniformity, but has attempted merely to preserve such a general consistency that the student may from the definitions recognize any later occurrence of a

word and associate it with its earlier appearances. In the number of meanings given for each Latin word, the author has tried to preserve some mean between a poverty which is barren and a wealth which is confusing to the student who is trying at the same time both to read Vergil and to learn Latin.

The chief distinction of this book is its visible vocabulary system. The acquisition of a vocabulary is generally recognized as one of the most important as well as one of the most troublesome problems in learning either to read or speak a foreign language. No important advance has been made in this field for thousands of years, and the present antiquated methods are wasteful of much valuable time and effort, especially in the case of the more difficult languages, such as Latin and Greek.

This book attempts to attack the problem from another angle and prints adjacent to any given passage the whole of its vocabulary, making it unnecessary ever to turn a page for the purpose of learning the meaning of any word.

The use of the special word list, printed on the extensible sheet at the back of the book, adds certain features of considerable value educationally. This list contains the most common words in the work being studied. Each word which occurs in this list is indicated in the text by being printed in italics. This use of italics serves several distinct purposes. First, it indicates to the student where he must look for the meaning of these words, whether in the special list or in one of the vocabularies at the foot of the page. In the second place, the difference in type assists in impressing these more important words on the memory without as much conscious effort as has ordinarily been needed and hence, perhaps, removes an element of discouragement from the task. The word list also furnishes convenient material for the use of teachers who still prefer to require their students to memorize the most important words in their text. In addition to this word list, a second list of rather less common words is indicated in the special vocabularies by means of asterisks, thus calling the attention of the student to their importance. The first occurrence of a word in the text being studied is indicated in the vocabularies by a dagger (†). This serves a valuable purpose in sight reading, since it continually distinguishes for the student the words he has already met from those he has not yet seen in that particular text, and helps to impress them on his memory.

The author is convinced that this new method is an advance over the old both pedagogically and psychologically. The old system involves not merely a great waste of time, but it necessitates continual interruption in the continuity of attention of the student, hindering or even preventing concentration upon the work at hand and thus making for bad mental habits.



This plan has been tried in a number of secondary schools and in every case it has met with a most enthusiastic response on the part of both teachers and students. After an extensive series of experiments, it is agreed that the following are some of the manifest advantages of this method:

1. Students are able to read intelligently a great deal more in a given period of time than has heretofore been possible.

2. Reading of the great classical authors can be begun at a much earlier stage than was formerly practicable. With a modicum of grammar one can begin reading the great classics and can read them rapidly enough to enjoy them as literature.

3. Since the vocabulary for any given passage is comparatively small, the possibility of error is much less and the student seldom selects the wrong word or the wrong meaning from the vocabulary.

4. With the elimination or great lessening of vocabulary difficulties, the student has a much better opportunity of gaining a thorough foundation in the essentials of grammar, reinforced continually by more copious reading than has hitherto been possible.

5. The student learns his vocabulary without much conscious effort at memorizing, in the easiest and most natural way possible, by meeting the words constantly in his reading, with their meanings always before him. Similarly he learns the forms of his words, by constantly seeing the indications of their structure, as denoted in the vocabulary by the principal parts of the verbs, the nominative and genitive singular of the nouns, together with an indication of their gender, and other information presented in the vocabularies.

6. Printing this vocabulary in sight of the passage not only conserves the time of the student commonly spent in mechanically looking up words, but allows him to concentrate his attention on the problems involved in translation, in the development of thought, in the literary, historical, and other problems of his author, and in various other features of the text.

There is no pedagogical value attached to the mechanical labor involved in looking up words according to the old system which, moreover, entails an enormous waste of time. According to the arrangement employed in this book, the student has constantly before him the same information which he formerly was compelled to seek elsewhere at the cost of so much labor.

This visible vocabulary system is far better than a parallel translation, since this method does not solve the problems for the student, but merely places in his hands, in the most readily accessible form, all the requisite data for making his own solutions. By thus ridding him of drudgery and by making this feature of his work lighter and more interesting, this vocabulary system helps to eliminate the improper use of translations by the student, for he now finds that he

can prepare his lesson quite as quickly and much more intelligently without a translation than he formerly could with its help.

The vocabularies of the ordinary school editions, arranged according to the old system, must give the general meaning of each word and then exhaust all the special meanings found in the whole text, and this to most students is a source of considerable confusion and loss of time. In this text the student will always have the general meaning of each word as well as the special meaning necessary for each passage. This enables him to fix the general meaning and to build up his knowledge of the special meanings as he meets them in his reading.

In the notes of this book a great many constructions are explained, partly as a key to the proper understanding of the Latin text and partly as a device to make it unnecessary for the teacher to spend valuable time in requiring the class to analyze constructions. It is believed that this feature will enable the ordinary student to proceed more securely and expeditiously with the work of translation and comprehension of his text and will make it possible for him to solve for himself the difficulties of many passages where the perplexities are so great that many editors have felt it necessary to do the work of translation for the student. A generous use is made in this text of the Grammatical Appendix and the student is constantly referred to it for additional information. If, for example, the student knows the meaning of such terms as ablative absolute or subjunctive of result, he spends no time in consulting the grammatical reference. If he does not know the meaning of these terms or if he shows by his translation that he has a wrong conception, it is very easy for the teacher to correct his fault at once by requiring him to consult the Grammatical Appendix.

A number of circumstances have combined to delay the appearance of this book. By a happy coincidence it is now issued on the two thousandth anniversary of Vergil's birth, and the author is much pleased to offer this little volume in homage to the spirit of the bard of Mantua at a time when all the world is uniting to pay him tribute.

The author wishes to express his special gratitude to the late Dr. Dix Harwood, Assistant Editor of D. C. Heath and Company, for selecting the illustrations in this book, and to Professor W. L. Carr, of Columbia University, whose advice and assistance have been invaluable.

CLYDE PHARR

## PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

In addition to the General Word List already appearing in the end papers, two new word lists have been inserted after the Index in this revision. It will be recalled that the General Word List contains all the words that occur 24 or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*. The new lists contain those words that occur 12–23 times and 6–11 times, respectively, in Books I–VI. They will provide the same type of vocabulary drill that has made the General Word List useful and popular.

A few misprints and oversights throughout the text have been corrected, affecting mostly the notes and the visible vocabulary, though one or two small corrections have been introduced into the text itself.

It is hoped that these innovations and changes will find favor with the Latin teachers who for years have been faithful friends of this edition of the *Aeneid*.





## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	v
INTRODUCTION	
Life of Vergil . . . . .	1
The <i>Aeneid</i> . . . . .	2
Vergil's Later Fame . . . . .	4
The Trojan War . . . . .	4
The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings . . . . .	6
The Purpose of the <i>Aeneid</i> . . . . .	6
The Roman Religion . . . . .	6
Chronological Table of Vergil's Life . . . . .	8
Bibliography of Vergil . . . . .	10
GENERAL DIRECTIONS . . . . .	11
SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	14
THE AENEID	
Book I . . . . .	15
Book II . . . . .	80
Book III . . . . .	142
Book IV . . . . .	197
Book V . . . . .	247
Book VI . . . . .	305
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX . . . . .	1-79
Index to Grammatical Appendix . . . . .	81
WORD LISTS II AND III . . . . .	97-106
GENERAL WORD LIST . . . . .	<i>Inside Back Cover</i>



## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	FACING PAGE
PARIS BEGUILED . . . . .	4
THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN . . . . .	5
THE PARCAE . . . . .	18
JUNO . . . . .	19
JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS . . . . .	28
NEPTUNE . . . . .	29
JUPITER . . . . .	40
MARS . . . . .	41
AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE . . . . .	60
DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE . . . . .	61
THE TROJAN HORSE . . . . .	96
LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS. . . . .	97
CASSANDRA ON THE WALLS OF TROY . . . . .	100
MINERVA . . . . .	101
THE FALL OF TROY . . . . .	134
ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS . . .	135
THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY. . . . .	198
AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT. . . . .	199
A ROMAN PERISTYLE . . . . .	244
THE DEATH OF DIDO . . . . .	245
THE VENUS OF MELOS . . . . .	276
APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE . . . . .	277
THE CUMAEAN SIBYL . . . . .	304
CENTAURS AND DRYAD . . . . .	305





**VERGIL'S AENEID**  
**BOOKS I—VI**



## INTRODUCTION

### Life of Vergil

1. Publius Vergilius Maro, one of the most celebrated poets of all time, was born in the little country village of Andes, near Mantua, in northern Italy, October 15, 70 B.C. His father was a small farmer; and, although a man of moderate means, he managed to give his son the equivalent of a college education. The poetically inclined youth studied at Mantua and Cremona, then at the larger city of Milan (*Mediolānum*), whence he passed to Rome and finally to Naples, where he went to complete his college course. He early developed a taste for literature and especially for philosophy, and all his life he remained a student. Very modest and retiring, even to the point of shyness, he was not fitted to take an active part in the stirring political and military events of his day.

2. After the battle of Philippi in 42 B.C., Octavian confiscated Vergil's farm and assigned it to one of his veterans. Vergil had already begun to write poetry, and his work had attracted the favorable attention of Maecenas, a close personal friend, and political adviser of the emperor. Through Maecenas Vergil met Octavian, who at once took him under his protection, compensated him for the loss of his farm, and made it possible for him to devote the rest of his life to poetry.

3. The most important of his works are known as the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*. The *Bucolics* are short poems on pastoral themes, formed on Greek models and idealizing the life of the shepherds and herdsmen of northern Italy; the *Georgics*, also formed on Greek models, deal with the pleasures of farm life; while the *Aeneid*, a great literary epic, deals with the wanderings and adventures of Aeneas after the destruction of Troy, from which, according to tradition, he had come with a small band of followers and laid the foundations of the power which later became Rome.

4. For the last ten years of his life Vergil was occupied in writing the *Aeneid*. In the year 19 B.C. he went to Greece with the intention of spending the next three years in the East for the purpose of getting a more intimate acquaintance with the scenes depicted in his poem and of acquiring local color for his work, upon which he was putting the final touches. While in Athens he met the emperor Augustus,

who was returning to Rome from a visit in the East and who induced Vergil to accompany him. Vergil was already ill before he set sail and steadily grew worse during the voyage. Shortly after landing at Brundisium in southern Italy he died, September 21, 19 B.C., a little before his fifty-second birthday. Vergil was buried at Naples, which he had especially loved, and his tomb bore the inscription:

5. Mantua mē genuit; Calabri rapuēre; tenet nunc  
Parthenopē; cecinī pascua, rūra, ducēs,

*I was born at Mantua; died in Calabria; my bones lie in Naples;  
pastures, fields, and heroes were the theme of my song.*

His untimely death left his great poem incomplete, and there are many indications of this fact in the *Aeneid*, the most marked being the unfinished verses, of which there are more than fifty.

### The Aeneid

6. The *Aeneid* is a literary epic, modeled upon the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, from which it has drawn a great deal of its material and inspiration. The poem was undertaken at the request of Augustus. The theme, which is also said to have been suggested by Augustus, is the settlement of Aeneas in Italy, which finally led to the founding of Rome. This legend was already well established in Italy, where many of the great families took especial pride in tracing their ancestry back to Aeneas and his band of Trojan heroes. The Julian *gens*, of which Julius and Augustus Caesar were members, especially gloried in its tradition of a direct descent from Aeneas himself through Ascanius, or Iulus, as he was sometimes called. Besides this, the Romans were gradually coming to claim a Trojan origin for many of the customs, ceremonies, and institutions of their fathers. Vergil and Augustus were both interested in thus giving divine sanction and the weight of hoary antiquity to the measures which Augustus had undertaken for establishing the empire. Thus Augustus appears as the restorer of the good old days and the good old ways of the fathers. He is the promised ruler of divine descent who is to bring peace and a return of the Golden Age to the whole world. Throughout the entire poem the person and the work of Augustus are magnified, but these are made to appear as secondary and as but instruments in the hands of the gods for working out the high destiny of the Roman people. By thus stirring the feeling of Roman patriotism and pride of race as well as by constantly appealing to the sanctity and the authority of the good old days, the *Aeneid* met with an instant and a direct response from the Roman people, who were taking an ever-growing pride in the great achieve-

ments of their fathers. The success of the poem was thus assured from the first, and it has continued to exert an enormous influence upon later Roman and European literature.

7. As a piece of literature, the *Aeneid* has both the strength and weaknesses of its author and subject matter. Vergil was a weakling, usually in poor health, shy to the point of painfulness, a sentimental idealist, and little acquainted with the hard and practical ways of the stern old Roman world. He was never married and seems to have cared little or nothing for feminine society. His one great ideal of life can be summed up in the word *pietās*, *devotion*, *loyalty*, and he equips his hero Aeneas (*pious Aenēās*) with a full and overflowing measure of this quality, which finds its best expression in an unquestioned obedience to the will of the gods and to their more or less contradictory commands, no matter how much human suffering may be entailed nor how much apparent wrong may result. Vergil was born in Cisalpine Gaul, probably ineligible for Roman citizenship in his early years and possibly a member of a conquered tribe which had felt the pitiless heel of the conqueror. In any case he seems to have early developed a deep sympathy for the oppressed and for the losers in life's battle, and also a profound conviction of the sadness and sorrow of human existence and the futility of human effort in its attempts to adjust its feeble struggles to a world that is too much for it. The craving for satisfaction of a thwarted nature found its chief expression in its reliance upon the gods and their inscrutable ways as they worked out their plans for the world. In addition, he found refuge in a deep reverence for the past with its great heroes who had been so submissive to the will of the gods that they had become but puppets in carrying out the divine commands.

8. Vergil's chief claim to fame as a poet rests upon his incomparable literary style. Nettleship<sup>1</sup> says: "Unquestionably it was Vergil's style which more than anything else gave him his pre-eminence among Roman poets. The great power of his style lies in the haunting music of his verse, in the rhythm and fall of his language." As a close student of Greek, he had absorbed much of the best in that literature. "Not only is he fond of filling his verses with Greek forms and Greek cadences, but his lines are rich and harmonious with a new music manifold in its capacity; it is as if the sound of the Greek language had awakened a sympathetic strain in Italian. . . . Vergil not only translates but works his Greek materials into new forms." As a great artist he thoroughly loses himself in his work, but his impersonality "is not the impersonality of Homer or of Shakespeare, who simply show us the world as it stands; Vergil yearns over the spectacle which he spreads before us."

<sup>1</sup> *Vergil*, pp. 90-92.



### Vergil's Later Fame

9. Vergil was ardently admired even in his own day, and his fame continued to increase with the passing centuries. Under the later Roman Empire the reverence for his works reached the point where the *Sortēs Vergiliānae* came into vogue; that is, the *Aeneid* was opened at random, and the first line on which the eyes fell was taken as an omen of good or evil. In the mediæval period a great circle of legends and stories of miracles gathered around his name, and the Vergil of history was transformed into the Vergil of magic. He was looked upon not only as a great magician but as an inspired pagan prophet who had foretold the birth of Christ. It was at this period that the spelling *Virgil* came into vogue, thus associating the great poet with the magic or prophetic wand, *virga*. "The mediæval world looked upon him as a poet of prophetic insight, who contained within himself all the potentialities of wisdom. He was called the *Poet*, as if no other existed; the *Roman*, as if the ideal of the commonwealth were embodied in him; the *Perfect in Style*, with whom no other writer could be compared; the *Philosopher*, who grasped the ideas of all things; the *Wise One*, whose comprehension seemed to other mortals unlimited. His writings became the Bible of the race. The mysteries of Roman priestcraft, the processes of divination, the science of the stars, were all found in his works."<sup>1</sup> The great mediæval poets, such as Dante and Chaucer, learned much from the immortal Roman; since that time few great poets have escaped his influence, and one cannot properly estimate the course of European thought and poetic art without some knowledge of Vergil and his dominating power.

### The Trojan War

10. To understand the *Aeneid*, it is necessary to be familiar with the story of the Trojan War and of the events leading up to it. According to the story, Jupiter, father and king of gods and men, once fell in love with Thetis, a beautiful sea goddess, and wished to marry her, but an oracle had foretold that the son of Thetis was to be mightier than his father. Hence Jupiter decreed that Thetis was to marry a mortal, and Peleus, a Greek king, was chosen as her husband. The wedding was a magnificent occasion, and all the gods and goddesses were invited except Eris, goddess of strife. Incensed at being thus slighted, she appeared in the midst of the festivities and spitefully threw among the assembled guests a golden apple (the famous Apple of Discord) with the inscription "To the fairest." Each of the ladies present wished to claim this prize for herself; but

<sup>1</sup> Tunison, *Master Vergil*, p. 156.



*Alinari, Rome*

*Vatican Museum*

### PARIS BEGUILLED

In his right hand he holds the Apple of Discord,  
for which the three goddesses quarreled.



*Gramstorff Bros.*

THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN

*Rudolf von Deutsch .*

the contest finally narrowed down to Juno, queen of the gods; Minerva, goddess of wisdom; and Venus, goddess of love and beauty. The rivalry became very bitter, and the angry goddesses called upon Jupiter to decide; but he discreetly refused to act as judge.

So the case was finally referred to Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy or Ilium. Each of the goddesses then tried to bribe Paris. Juno offered him great wealth and unlimited power, Minerva the gift of great wisdom, while Venus promised him the most beautiful woman in the world for his wife. Paris thereupon awarded the prize to Venus and thus incurred the vindictive and unforgiving hatred of Juno and Minerva. His decision, henceforth known as the "Judgment of Paris," was the beginning of unending trouble for Paris and the Trojan people.

11. The most beautiful woman in the world at that time was Helen, daughter of Leda, and wife of Menelaüs, king of Sparta. With the help of Venus, Paris succeeded in winning Helen and eloping with her to Troy. All Greece at once arose in arms to avenge the insult of having one of their women carried off by a foreigner, and a great expedition was fitted out under Agamemnon, brother of Menelaüs, as commander-in-chief. The forces assembled at the port of Aulis in eastern Greece, but day after day the winds were unfavorable, and it was not possible for them to set sail. The Greeks consulted Calchas, the soothsayer of the expedition; and he replied that no favorable wind could be expected until they had sacrificed Iphigeneia, daughter of Agamemnon, to appease the gods. The princess was duly sacrificed, thus appeasing the gods and securing a favorable voyage for the expedition.

12. Many great Greek heroes embarked on this undertaking with Agamemnon and Menelaüs. Among the most famous were the sententious Nestor, who was older, knew more, and could talk more than any other man of his time; the wily Ulysses, whose cunning was invincible; the swift-footed Achilles, the dashing young hero ever eager to do and to dare for the pure thrill of the excitement and the love of adventure; the mighty Ajax, whose enormous strength was accompanied by a correspondingly dull wit; another Ajax, son of Oileus, who was ever eager to grab his part of the spoils; the mighty Diomedes, who dared to fight against the very gods on the field of battle. There were also many other Greek heroes who were eager to distinguish themselves in such a noble undertaking and to get their share of the booty, when they should succeed in capturing the rich city of Troy. Among the Trojan warriors who opposed the Greeks were the dauntless Hector, eldest son of Priam and the noblest of all the warriors before Troy; the jaunty Paris who was fighting mightily to keep Helen; and the faithful Aeneas, the son of Venus and Anchises.



### The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings

13. For ten long years the siege lasted with varying fortunes, although the Greeks had a slight advantage, owing to the fact that more of the gods were fighting on their side than on that of the Trojans. Juno and Minerva were especially helpful to the Greeks, since they had both developed an undying hatred against all the Trojans, because of the evident unfairness of Trojan Paris in awarding the beauty prize to their hated rival, Venus.

14. Through the stratagem of the wooden horse, fully described in the second book of the *Aeneid*, Troy was finally captured and destroyed. Most of the inhabitants were either killed or dragged away into slavery; but a remnant, under the leadership of Aeneas, succeeded in escaping. After long wanderings and much hardship they finally reached Italy, where they settled and established their rule over the uncivilized natives. This settlement finally resulted in the founding of Rome, which gradually extended its sway and established the Roman Empire, with Augustus at its head in the days of Vergil.

### The Purpose of the *Aeneid*

15. One of the results which both Augustus and Vergil hoped to see effected with the help of the *Aeneid* was a revival of faith in the old-time religion. The educated Romans of the day were becoming quite blasé and sophisticated and were gradually losing the faith of their fathers with its simple, unquestioning reliance on the infallible wisdom of the gods and their helpful interference in human affairs.

### The Roman Religion

16. The machinery of this religion was quite elaborate. Before their acquaintance with Greek culture the Romans had developed a religion of their own, with a number of departmental divinities, each having charge of some general field in human experience, the boundaries of which were never very clearly defined. Hence there was a considerable overlapping of authority, with a consequent confusion in the divine government. With the coming of Greek culture, no radical change was effected in the general conceptions, but the Romans took over a vast mass of Greek stories about the gods and the deeds of divine and semidivine characters. In most cases the Roman names of the various divinities were retained, and they were simply identified with the corresponding Greek deities with their elaborate system of mythology. Thus the Greek father of gods and men, Zeus, was identified with the Roman Jupiter, Hera with Juno,

Athena with Minerva, Aphrodite with Venus, Hermes with Mercury, Poseidon with Neptune, Hephaestus with Vulcan, etc. In addition to these common features, the Roman religion had certain characteristic divinities and conceptions of its own before the coming of Greek culture, and these were retained.

17. In speaking then of the religious ideas embodied in the *Aeneid*, we are dealing primarily with the Greco-Roman religion, to which are added certain Roman features not belonging to the Greek system.

18. At the head of the Roman system of religion stood Jupiter, father and king of gods and men. He was the god of heaven who gathered the storm clouds and hurled the lightning. His sign was the thunderbolt, and the eagle was his messenger. Apollo was the great god of light and the foe of all darkness and evil. He was the ideal of manly beauty and the patron of music, prophecy, poetry, and medicine. Mars was the brutal and bloody god of war and of battles. Vulcan, god of fire, supervised the working of metals and all useful and mechanical arts. Mercury with his winged sandals and his magic wand was the messenger and the herald of the gods. He was also god of inventions, trade, and commerce. Bacchus was the god of wine and master of revelry. Neptune, brother of Jupiter, was god of all the seas and waters of the earth. Juno, wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods, presided over the life of women and especially over the rites of marriage. Minerva was goddess of wisdom and of the arts and handicrafts, especially of female handicrafts. Diana, sister of Apollo, was the divinity of the moonlight, goddess of the woods, and mistress of the chase. Venus, born of the sea foam near Cythera, was goddess of love and beauty. Ceres, goddess of grain, presided over seedtime and harvest. Vesta, the goddess of the household fire, presided over hearth and home and the sanctities of family life. Pluto or Dis, with his queen Proserpina, ruled over the lower world and the souls of the dead.

19. In addition to these greater divinities, there were many minor deities, such as the beautiful feminine nymphs who haunted every fountain, stream, mountain, or sea, and their masculine counterparts, the homely satyrs, who frequented the forests, fields, and mountains. The Fates presided over human destinies, while the Furies avenged such crimes as murder and sacrilege. Among the great number of lesser deities and spirits were such personified qualities as Fortune, Concord, and Peace.

20. In addition to these gods and goddesses may be mentioned Janus, the two-faced god of beginnings and of gateways, and the household deities, the lares and penates, who along with Vesta, goddess of the hearth, formed the center of the family worship. These household deities were worshiped each day at the family

meal. When the household sat down to dinner, a little of the food was thrown into the flames of the fire on the hearth, and a little wine was poured out as an offering to the household gods. The images of the lares and penates would also be brought from their shrine and placed on the table to insure their presence at the meal.

21. Special veneration was also shown to the spirits of the dead. These were called *manes*, meaning "the pure ones," and they were always looked upon as guardian deities of the family. These *manes*, or souls of the departed, were supposed to live a shadowy sort of existence in the lower world, sometimes returning to haunt the grave where they had been buried: for, unless the body were properly interred, the soul could not at once enter the realm of the lower world and find a permanent resting place, but must wander unhappily around for a hundred years, as a source of torment and of terror to the living. Hence the great importance of the proper burial rites and the great care bestowed upon these ceremonials by the Romans.

22. It was believed that the gods indicated their purposes to men by means of signs and omens, such as dreams, thunder and lightning, an eclipse of the sun, a blazing comet, the flight of birds, or the peculiar appearance of the entrails of animals offered for sacrifice. The gods were also thought to deliver special communications at sacred places known as "oracles." The most famous of these was that of Apollo at Delphi. Here stood a temple of Apollo over a cleft in the rock, and over this cleft, in the dark inner recesses of the temple, was placed a tripod containing a seat for the priestess or Pythia, who delivered the oracles. Other famous oracles were those at Delos, at Cumae, and in the Libyan desert.

23. The old Roman religion was of an intensely practical nature and busied itself with the everyday life of the people. As each household was bound together by the tie of a common worship, so all the citizens were held together by a common reverence for the divinities and powers who protected and guided the state. The Roman religion thus formed an indispensable bond of union for the family as well as the nation.

## 24. Chronological Table of Vergil's Life

B.C.

70 Birth of Vergil. First consulship of Pompey and Crassus.

Trial of Verres.

Birth of Gallus.

65 Birth of Horace.

63 Birth of Octavius (afterward called Octavian, and still later called Augustus Caesar). Consulship of Cicero. Catiline's conspiracy. Annexation of Syria.

60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus.

59 Consulship of Caesar.

- 58 Cicero exiled. Caesar begins conquest of Gaul. Vergil is sent to school at Cremona.
- 57 Cicero recalled.
- 56 Conference of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey at Luca, and renewal of the First Triumvirate.
- 55 Vergil assumes the *toga virilis*. Death of Lucretius. Second consulship of Pompey and Crassus. Caesar invades Britain.
- 54 Vergil attends college at Milan. Death of Catullus.
- 53 Vergil attends the university at Rome, taking special courses in philosophy and literature. The Parthians defeat and kill Crassus at Carrhae, capturing the Roman standards.
- 52 Revolt of Vercingetorix. Pompey sole consul. Cicero's speech *Pro Milone*.
- 51 Cicero proconsul of Cilicia.
- 49 Caesar confers Roman citizenship on the inhabitants of Gallia Transpadana.
- 49-46 Civil war between Caesar and the senatorial faction led by Pompey.
- 48 Battle of Pharsalia: Caesar defeats Pompey and the senatorial faction.
- 48-47 The Alexandrine war.
- 47 War with Pharnaces.
- 46 Battle of Thapsus.
- 45 Battle of Munda, marking the final overthrow of the senatorial faction.
- 44 Assassination of Julius Caesar.
- 44-43 War at Mutina. Cicero's *Philippics*.
- 43 Octavian consul. Second Triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus. Assassination of Cicero. Birth of Ovid. Vergil begins the composition of the *Eclogues*.
- 42 Battle of Philippi. Overthrow of Brutus and Cassius.
- 41 War at Perusia. Confiscations of the Triumvirs. Vergil's farm lost; his friendship with Maecenas.
- 40 Consulship of Asinius Pollio. Treaty of Brundisium. Octavian compensates Vergil for the loss of his farm.
- 39 Treaty of Misenum. Vergil introduces Horace to Maecenas.
- 38 Vergil and Horace accompany Maecenas to Brundisium.
- 37 Vergil publishes his *Eclogues* (*Bucolics*), and begins work on his *Georgics*. Treaty of Tarentum. Second Triumvirate renewed. Phraates becomes king of Parthia.
- 36 Defeat of Sextus Pompey. Lepidus deposed as Triumvir. Parthian War.
- 33 Phraates attacks Media and Armenia.
- 31 Battle of Actium: Octavian completely overthrows Antony and Cleopatra. Octavian visits the East.
- 30 Death of Antony and Cleopatra. Annexation of Egypt. Settlement of the East by Octavian.
- 29 The *Georgics* published. The *Aeneid* begun. Octavian returns from the East and celebrates a triple triumph. The temple of Janus closed.
- 27 The titles of *Princeps* and *Augustus* conferred by the senate upon Octavian, who is henceforth known as Augustus Caesar. Death of Gallus.
- 26 Augustus in Spain. He corresponds with Vergil.
- 25 Annexation of Galatia. Propertius' *Cynthia*.
- 23 Death of Marcellus. Vergil recites portions of the *Aeneid* before Augustus and Octavia. Horace publishes the first three books of his *Odes*.
- 20 Expedition of Augustus to the East. The Parthians restore to the Romans the standards captured from Crassus at Carrhae in 53.
- 19 Vergil goes to Greece, returns with Augustus, and dies at Brundisium. Death of Tibullus. Horace publishes the first book of his *Epistles*.



## 25. Bibliography of Vergil

The following books will be found helpful and desirable in the library of any high school where Vergil is being studied:

Harper's *Classical Dictionary*. American Book.

Harper's *Latin Dictionary*. American Book.

Glover's *Virgil*. Macmillan.

Wetmore's *Index Vergilianus*. Yale University Press.

Prescott's *Development of Vergil's Art*. University of Chicago Press.

Gayley's *Classic Myths*. Ginn.

Sellar's *Roman Poets of the Augustan Age; Virgil*. Oxford University Press.

The article on Virgil in the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, or in any other good encyclopedia.

Conington's *Works of Virgil*, with commentary, in three volumes. George Bell & Sons, London.

Tyrrell's *Latin Poetry*. Ginn.

Some one or more good histories of Rome, such as that of Boak (Macmillan) or that of Frank (Holt).

Comparetti's *Vergil in the Middle Ages*. Macmillan.

Mackail's *Vergil and his Meaning for the World of Today*. Longmans, Green.

The following verse translations may be recommended: Dryden, Conington, William Morris, Rhoades, Billson, E. Fairfax Taylor, T. C. Williams, Ballard.

The following books are very desirable for those who read German:

Norden, *Das sechste Buch der Aeneis*.

Heinze, *Virgils epische Technik*.

The edition of Servius's *Latin Commentary on Vergil* (edited by Thilo and Hagen) is indispensable for any thorough understanding of Vergil's poems and should be in the hands of every one who wishes to do any scholarly work in this field.

## GENERAL DIRECTIONS

This book, with its visible vocabulary system, is so arranged that the complete vocabulary of any given passage is constantly before the reader.

In beginning the work of a given lesson, the student should open the book at the passage to be studied, and unfold the extensible sheet at the back of the book.

The reader will find two varieties of type employed in the Latin text, roman (ordinary light-faced) and italics. Words printed in roman type in the text are to be found in the vocabulary at the foot of a given page. Those printed in italics in the text will be found on the extensible sheet at the back of the book. The list of the italicized words of the text, which represent the most common words in the author, should be mastered as early as possible.

A dagger (†) after a word in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of this word in the work of the author being studied; an asterisk (\*) after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it appears ten times or more in the work which is being read. Teachers who wish to give special vocabulary drills will find in the list at the back of the book and in the words followed by an asterisk perhaps the most valuable and the least wasteful of any material which may be available for their purpose.

This book may be employed with good results in a variety of ways, a few of which are here suggested as possibilities:

(1) It may be used as any other Latin text is commonly studied; that is, the teacher may assign a definite amount of work at each recitation, and the students may prepare this assignment and recite on it at the next meeting of the class. This is probably the least desirable method of studying any language.

(2) A much better method is to spend at least half of the recitation period in sight reading. The students should begin by quickly looking over the words followed by a dagger (†) in the vocabulary at the bottom of each page, and then be prepared to read. The teacher should never translate for them, but should give them an occasional hint or a question with respect to a form or a construction, and should make very brief comments on points that may appear obscure. In this way the students should usually cover the advanced lesson in class, so that their additional preparation would

primarily consist in a review or elaboration of the work already done in class under the direction of the teacher.

(3) A still more satisfactory method is, however, to arrange for twice as much time for class meeting as has been customary. The whole of this time should be spent working on the text under the direct supervision of the teacher, and should be devoted primarily to sight reading. The work of the students outside the class meeting should consist in a limited amount of supplementary reading and in a continual review of the grammar, both forms and syntax, as found in the grammatical appendix of this book. Since little or no outside preparation would be required, such a course should have no more credit than the ordinary type which meets the customary number of hours a week. Schools which can arrange their schedule on this basis will find their students making much more satisfactory progress and developing much more enthusiasm for their work.

All Latin students in high school and college work should make a thorough review of Latin grammar at the beginning of each school year. Even though it may be done rapidly this review should be comprehensive and should include all forms and syntax previously studied. Some attention should be paid to any additional features which are to be used during the new year. This new matter, together with the review, may be briefly summarized in the first three or four meetings of the class. When the reading of poetry is begun a careful study should be made of the elementary principles of versification. All principles learned or reviewed should be continually applied as the class proceeds. The material for this work will be found in the Grammatical Appendix of this book, distributed as follows:

Pronunciation and Inflection	1-235
Syntax	236-390
Versification	391-410
Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric	411-477

The Index to the Appendix will be found useful in locating material which may otherwise be difficult to find. It is important to remember that no one can ever read intelligently any language without a practical working knowledge of the grammar. In general it will be found that a careful and systematic study of the grammar, with a constant application of its principles and with frequent reviews, will mean a great saving of time and a great increase in the power of the students to comprehend the language which is being studied.

NOTE TO THE STUDENT: For the meaning of the signs and abbreviations see page 14. The Latin dedication on page iii may be translated: *With pleasure the author dedicates this little book to the divine spirit of the prophet-poet Vergil in appreciation of his worth.*



## SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

*abl.* = ablative  
*abs.* = absolute  
*acc.* = accusative  
*act.* = active  
*adj.* = adjective  
*adv.* = adverb, adverbial  
*advers.* = adversative  
*App.* = the Grammatical Appendix in this book  
*appos.* = apposition, appositive  
*asynd.* = asyndeton  
*cf.* = Latin *confer*, i.e. *compare*  
*char.* = characteristic  
*coll.* = collective  
*compar.* = comparative  
*condit.* = condition, conditional  
*conj.* = conjunction  
*constr.* = construction  
*dat.* = dative  
*dem.* = demonstrative  
*dep.* = deponent  
*dim.* = diminutive  
*e.g.* = Latin *exempli gratiā*, i.e. *for example*  
*esp.* = especial, especially  
*f., fem.* = feminine  
*fig.* = figurative, figuratively  
*freq.* = frequentative  
*fut.* = future  
*gen.* = genitive  
*hist.* = historical  
*i.e.* = Latin *id est*, *that is*  
*imp.* = imperative  
*imperf.* = imperfect  
*impers.* = impersonal, impersonally  
*indecl.* = indeclinable  
*indef.* = indefinite  
*indic.* = indicative  
*indir.* = indirect  
*inf.* = infinitive

*instr.* = instrumental  
*interj.* = interjection  
*interrog.* = interrogative  
*intr.* = intransitive  
*Introd.* = the Introduction of this book  
*l.* = line; *ll.* = lines  
*lit.* = literal, literally  
*loc.* = locative  
*m., masc.* = masculine  
*n., neut.* = neuter  
*neg.* = negative  
*nom.* = nominative  
*num.* = numeral  
*obj.* = object, objective  
*opt.* = optative  
*part.* = participle, partitive  
*pass.* = passive  
*perf.* = perfect  
*pers.* = personal  
*pl.* = plural  
*pluperf.* = pluperfect  
*poss.* = possessive  
*pred.* = predicate  
*prep.* = preposition  
*pres.* = present  
*pron.* = pronoun  
*ref.* = reference  
*reflex.* = reflexive  
*rel.* = relative  
*sc.* = Latin *scilicet*, i.e. *supply, understand*  
*sing.* = singular  
*spec.* = specification  
*subj.* = subject, subjective, subjunctive  
*subst.* = substantive  
*sup.* = superlative  
*temp.* = temporal  
*tr.* = transitive, transitively  
*voc.* = vocative  
*vol.* = volitive

\* the asterisk in the vocabulary shows that the Latin word appears ten or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

† the dagger in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of the Latin word in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

(1), this numeral after a Latin word in the vocabulary indicates that the word is a verb of the first conjugation and is to be inflected as *amō, āre, āvi, ātus*, *love, cherish*.

All Latin words in the notes and vocabularies are in bold face type. All definitions in the vocabularies are in roman (light face). All translations in the notes are in italics. All explanatory matter in the vocabularies is in italics.



# THE AENEID

## BOOK I

*ARMA virumque canō, Trojae quī prīmus ab ōrīs  
Italiam fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnīt  
lītora — multum ille et terrīs jactātus et altō  
vī superum, saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob iram,*

altum, ī n. the deep (sea)†  
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,  
proclaim†\*  
jactō (1) toss, buffet†\*  
Lāvīn(i)us, a, um Lavinian, of Lavinium†

memor, oris mindful, remembering, un-  
forgetting†\*  
ob on account of (acc.)†  
profugus, a, um exiled, fugitive†  
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce†\*

1-7. The theme of the poem, namely, the wanderings and wars of Aeneas, who after many struggles laid the foundation for the greatness of future Rome, in accordance with the decrees of fate.

From the more extended introduction to the poem (lines 1-33) we learn: (1) the plan of the poet to describe the adventures of his hero, as is done in the *Odyssey*, and to depict wars and battles, as does the *Iliad*; (2) the deep religious conviction of the author, for whom the gods rule over all mortal affairs; (3) the national pride of the poet, found in his choice of material, and which later comes to its clearest expression in l. 33.

1. *Arma virumque*: the theme of the *Aeneid*; *arma* stands by metonymy for *deeds of arms, wars*, referring to the wars in which Aeneas engaged, both in Troy and in Italy; *virum* refers to Aeneas, so well known that he is not mentioned by name until l. 92. *Trojae*: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. *quī prīmus ab ōrīs Trojae* (ad) *Italiam vēnīt*. This refers to Aeneas as the *first* of the Trojans to come to Italy after their native city Troy had been captured, sacked, and destroyed by the Greeks in the Trojan war. Strictly speaking, the Trojan Antenor had preceded him, but Antenor's arrival was of no great consequence and did not have the far-reaching

results that the coming of Aeneas had. Compare the discovery of America by Leif Ericson with that by Columbus.

2-3. (ad, in) *Italiam*, (ad, in) *litora*: acc. of place to which; App. 315. *fātō*: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; "such was the will of heaven." *Lāvīn(i)a*: of *Lavinium*, an ancient city on the western coast of Italy, near the spot where Rome was later founded. Lavinium was reputed to have been the first Trojan settlement in Italy and to have been named for Lavinia, an Italian princess whom Aeneas married. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, king of the Latins.

3. *multum*: with adverbial force, modifying *jactātus*. *ille*: Aeneas, the *virum* of l. 1. (in) *terrīs*, et (in) *altō*: abl. of place where; App. 319. *jactātus* (est).

4. *vī*: abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. *superum* = *superōrum*, gen. pl., of the gods above. *memorem*: a transferred epithet, logically belonging to *Jūnōnis*, but poetically applied to *iram*. *saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob iram*: an example of what is known as "interlocked order," *saevae* modifying *Jūnōnis*, and *memorem* modifying *iram*. This order is often found in Latin poetry. *Jūnōnis ob iram*: the reasons for Juno's hatred of Aeneas and the Trojans are given by Vergil in ll. 12-28.

Before beginning work read the General Directions, page 11.

- 5 *multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem*  
*inferretque deōs Latīō — genus unde Latīnum*  
*Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.*
- Mūsa, mihī causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō*  
*quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs*
- 10 *insignem pietāte virum, tot adire labōrēs*  
*impulerit. Tantaene animīs caelestibus irae?*  
*Urbs antiq̄ua fuit (Tyriū tenuēre colōnī)*

adeō, ire, īī (ivī), itus approach, encounter†

Albānus, a, um Alban, of Alba Longa in central Italy, mother city of Rome†

caelestis, e divine, heavenly†

causa, ae f. reason, cause†\*

colōnus, ī m. colonist, settler†

condō, ere, didī, ditus found, establish†\*

doleō, ēre, uī, itus suffer, grieve (at), be angry (at, with), resent†

impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus strike (against), drive, force†

inferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (into)†

insignis, e distinguished, marked, splendid†\*

laedō, ere, sī, sus strike, hurt, offend, thwart†

Latinus, a, um Latin, of Latium†

Latium, (i)ī n. district of central Italy around Rome†\*

memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate†\*

Mūsa, ae f. Muse, goddess of the liberal arts†

patior, ī, passus suffer, endure†\*

pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, sense of duty†\*

quoque also†\*

Rōma, ae f. Rome, a city and empire†

tot so many†\*

unde whence, from which source†\*

5-6. *conderet, inferret*: purpose; App. 374.

5. *urbem*: Lavinium. *passus* (est *Aenēās*). (in) *bellō*: abl. of place; App. 319; referring to the enemies whom he had to conquer after landing in Italy. *multa*: cognate accusative with *passus*; App. 307, 313.

6. *inferret deōs*: App. 374; in antiquity migrating peoples regularly carried with them their gods, either as images or other sacred symbols; see ll. 68 and 378. *Latīō*: dat. of direction = *ad* (in) *Latium*; App. 306. *unde genus Latinum* (est): Roman legends traced the origin of the Latin race, of the kingdom of Alba Longa (forerunner of Rome), and of the founding of Rome, back to the coming of the Trojans under Aeneas to Italy.

7. (unde) *Albānī patrēs* (sunt): in Roman times many of the noble senatorial families took much pride in tracing their ancestry back to Troy, through the great families of Alba Longa. *patrēs*: with the first syllable short; App. 17. *altae*: may refer either to position, *situated on the (seven) high hills*, or to the power and prestige of *lofty (mighty) Rome*.

8-11. Invocation of the Muse.

8. *Mūsa*: it is the custom of epic poets to invoke the muse for inspiration and to

assign to some such divine source the gift of being able to compose their poems. *mihī*: this word in poetry may have the final *i* either long or short. The same is true of *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, and *ibi*. *quō nūmine* (*Jūnōnis*) *laesō*: abl. abs. or abl. of cause; App. 332, 343.

9. *quidve dolēns*: or *vexed at what*. *rēgīna de(ōr)um*: Juno as Jupiter's wife was queen of the gods. *cāsūs*: object of *volvere*, to undergo, pass through.

10. *virum* = *Aenēās*, subject of *volvere*, which depends upon *impulerit*. *pietāte*: dependent on *insignem*; the most prominent characteristic of Aeneas was his *pietās*, *loyalty* or *devotion to duty*.

11. *impulerit*: subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349, 350. *Tantaene = suntne tantae irae caelestibus animīs?* *animīs*: dat. of possession; App. 299. *irae*: poetic plural, often employed in Latin where English would ordinarily use the singular.

12-33. Reasons for the wrath of Juno against Aeneas and the Trojans.

12. *Urbs antiqua fuit*: according to the tradition which Vergil here follows. Carthage was in fact founded some four hundred years later than the traditional date of the fall of Troy, 1184 B.C. *Tyrii*: from *Tyre*, a city of Phoenicia,

Karthāgō, *Italiam* contrā Tiberīnaque longē  
 ōstia, dīves opum studiisque asperrima bellī;  
 quam Jūnō fertur terrīs magis omnibus ūnam  
 posthabitā coluisse Samō: hīc illius arma,  
 hīc currus fuit; hoc rēgnum dea gentibus esse,  
 sī quā fāta sinant, jam tum tenditque fovetque.  
 Prōgeniem sed enim Trojānō ā sanguine dūcī  
 audierat Tyriās ōlim quae verteret arcēs;

15

20

asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce†  
 colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, dwell (in),  
 honor, cherish†  
 contrā opposite, facing (acc.)†  
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car†  
 di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†  
 enim for, indeed, in truth†  
 foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle†  
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, great com-  
 mercial city in North Africa, rival of  
 Rome†  
 longē far (off), at a distance†  
 magis more, rather†  
 ōlim (at) some time, once†

ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth†  
 ōstium, (i) *i n.* mouth, entrance†  
 posthabeō, ēre, uī, itus place after, esteem  
 less†  
 prōgeniēs, ēi *f.* offspring, race†  
 quā in any (some) way, where†  
 Samos, ī *f.* island of the Aegean, center of  
 the worship of Juno†  
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow†  
 studium, (i) *i n.* zeal, desire, pursuit†  
 Tiberinus, a, um of the Tiber, an Italian  
 river on which Rome is situated†  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy†  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change†

whence Carthage was said to have been  
 settled. The Phoenicians were the great  
 traders of their time, and Carthage on the  
 northern shore of Africa midway on the  
 Mediterranean occupied a strategic po-  
 sition for controlling the commerce of  
 these regions. *tenuēre*: shorter form for  
*tenuērunt*; App. 204, 4.

13. *longē*: modifying *contrā*, which  
 governs both *Italiam* and *Tiberīna*  
*ōstia*.

14. *ōstia*: see note on *irae*, l. 11. The  
 general expression, *Italiam*, is followed  
 by the more specific *Tiberīna ōstia* for  
 the sake of greater clearness and vividness.  
*opum*: *gen.* with the adjective *dīves*,  
*rich in resources*; App. 287. *studiis*: *abl.*  
 of respect, depends on *asperrima*; App.  
 325. This phrase would remind the  
 Romans of their bitter struggles with  
 Carthage in the three Punic Wars.

15. *quam*: refers to *urbs*, l. 12, and  
 is object of *coluisse*. *fertur*: *is said*, a  
 common meaning. *terrīs omnibus* =  
*terris aliis*; *terrīs* is *abl.* with compar-  
 ative *magis*; App. 327. *ūnam* = *sōlam*,  
 as often.

16. *posthabitā Samō*: *abl. abs.*; App.  
 343. Juno greatly loved Samos, an  
 island off the western coast of Asia  
 Minor. According to the myth, the  
 goddess had been reared in Samos, had  
 married Jupiter there, and one of her

temples, one of the most famous in the  
 world, was situated there. *Samō*: the  
 final vowel is not elided, although the  
 following word begins with an *h*. This  
 failure to elide is called *hiatus*; App. 399.  
*illius (Jūnōnis)*: the *i* of the genitive  
 ending of the nine pronouns and adjectives  
 ending in *ius* is usually long, but  
 often short in poetry as here. *arma (fu-*  
*erunt)*: doubtless refers to ancient arms,  
 chariot, and other relics preserved in  
 Juno's temple at Samos.

16-17. *hic, hic, hoc*: repeated for em-  
 phasis; this repetition is called *anaph-*  
*ora*; App. 413. *hoc*: refers to *urbs* l.  
 12, but is attracted to the gender of the  
 predicate noun *rēgnum*, *the ruling power*.  
*Jūnō dea jam tum tenditque fovetque*  
*hanc urbem (Karthāginem) esse rēgnum*  
*omnibus gentibus, sed fāta voluērunt*  
*Rōmam esse hoc rēgnum. gentibus*: *dat.*  
 of reference; App. 301.

18. *quā (viā)*: *abl.* of manner; *quā* is  
 an indef. pron. *fāta*: the power of the  
 fates was greater even than that of the  
 gods.

19. *Prōgeniem*: the Romans. *dūcī*:  
*was being derived*, indir. disc.; App. 390;  
 depends on *audi(ve)rat* (l. 20), of which  
 Juno is the subject understood.

20. *Tyriās arcēs = Karthāginem*.  
*verteret*: subj. of characteristic; App.  
 389, or rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

*hinc populum lātē rēgem bellōque superbum  
ventūrum excidiō Libyae: sic volvere Parcās.  
Id metuēns veterisque memor Sāturnia bellī,  
prīma quod ad Trojam prō cāris gesserat Argīs*  
(needum etiam causae irārū saevīque dolōrēs  
exciderant animō; *manet altā mente repostum  
iūdicium Paridis sprētaeque injūria formae  
et genus invisum et raptī Ganymēdis honorēs*) —

25

**Argi, ōrum** *m.* Argos, a city in Greece, center of the worship of Juno; Greece†  
**cārus, a, um** dear, fond, beloved†\*  
**causa, ae f.** reason, cause\*  
**dolor, ōris** *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion†\*  
**etiam** besides, also, even†\*  
**excidium, (i)ī n.** destruction, overthrow†  
**excidō, ere, i** fall from, perish†  
**forma, ae f.** beauty, shape, form†\*  
**Ganymēdes, is** *m.* son of Laōmedon, king of Troy; carried off by Jupiter's eagle and made cupbearer to the gods†  
**gerō, ere, gessi, gestus** carry (on), wage†\*  
**injūria, ae f.** wrong, insult, injustice†  
**invisus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious†  
**iūdicium, (i)ī n.** decision, judgment†  
**lātē** widely, far and wide†  
**Libya, ae f.** region of North Africa†\*

**memor, oris** remembering, mindful, unforgetting (*gen.*)\*  
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread†  
**needum** not yet, nor yet†  
**Parcae, ārum** *f.* the Fates†  
**Paris, idis** *m.* Trojan prince, son of Priam, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan War†  
**populus, i** *m.* people, nation†\*  
**prō** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)†\*  
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), plunder†\*  
**repōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus** put (back, away), store up†\*  
**saevus, a, um** cruel, stern, fierce\*  
**Sāturnia, ae f.** Juno, daughter of Saturn, father of the gods†  
**spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētus** despise, reject†  
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty†\*  
**vetus, eris** old, former, ancient†\*

21. *hinc*: ā Trojānō sanguine, or ab hāc prōgeniē. *populum*: subj. of *ventūrum* (*esse*) (l. 22), an inf. in indir. disc., depending on *audierat*; App. 390. *rēgem*: used like a participle (*rēgnantem*) here, and modified by *lātē*. *bellō*: *abl.* of respect, depending on *superbum*; App. 325.

22. *excidiō*: *dat.* of purpose; App. 303; *for the destruction*. *Libyae*: for *Āfricae*, meaning especially *Karthāgini*. *Parcās* = *fāta*: subject of *volvère*. The *Parcae* were represented as three sisters, *Clotho* (*Spinner*), who spun the thread of life for each mortal; *Lachesis* (*Measurer*), who measured the thread; and *Atropos* (*Inevitable*), who cut the thread when any one had reached his allotted days.

"Somewhere on an unknown shore,  
Where the rivers of life their waters pour,  
Sit three sisters forevermore,  
Spinning a silver thread."

*sic* (*Jūnō audiverat*) *Parcās volvere*.

23. *Id*: the destined supremacy of Rome and overthrow of Carthage (ll. 19-22). *metuēns*: modifies *Sāturnia* (*Jūnō*) and has *Id* as object. *Sāturnia*:

*Saturn's daughter*, subject of *arcēbat*. *veteris bellī*: the Trojan War.

24. *prīma*: (*as*) chief, leader, foremost, modifies *ea* (understood), which refers to Juno. The goddess had taken a leading part in assisting the Greeks against the Trojans. The reasons for her hatred of the Trojans are given in ll. 27-28. See also *Introd.* 10. *cāris Argīs*: Argos, a noted center of the worship of Juno, stands here for all Greece and the Greeks.

25. *irārū*: poetic plural; see note on *irae* (l. 11), and *cf.* App. 243.

26. (*ex*) *animō*: *abl.* of separation; App. 340. (*in*) *altā mente*: *abl.* of place where, *in her deep mind*, i.e., *deep in her mind*; App. 319. *repositum*: the longer form, with its three successive short syllables (v v v), could not be used in hexameter verse.

27. *iūdicium Paridis*: refers to the famous Judgment of Paris. Read Tennyson's *Oenone* and see *Introd.* 10 for the story. *sprētae formae*: appositional *gen.* with *injūria*; App. 281; *the insult to her slighted beauty*, shown by the adverse decision of Paris.

28. *genus invisum*: Juno hated the





*Alinari, Rome*

THE PARCAE

*Michelangelo*





*Alinari, Rome*

JUNO

*Vatican Museum*

*hīs accēnsa super jactātōs aequore tōtō*  
*Trōas, reliquias Danaum atque immitis Achilli,* 30  
*arcēbat longē Latiō, multōsque per annōs*  
*errābant acti fātis maria omnia circum.*  
*Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.*  
*Vix ē cōspectū Siculae tellūris in altum*  
*vēla dabant laeti et spūmās salis aere ruēbant,* 35

**accendō, ere, i, ēnsus** inflame, enrage†  
**Achillēs, is (i) m.** Greek leader before  
 Troy†\*  
**aes, aeris n.** bronze†\*  
**altum, i n.** the deep (sea)  
**annus, i m.** year†\*  
**arceō, ēre, ui** keep off, defend, restrain†  
**condō, ere, didi, ditus** found, establish\*  
**cōspectus, ūs m.** sight, view†  
**immitis, e** fierce, cruel†  
**jactō (1)** toss, buffet\*

**Latium, (i) i n.** district of central Italy  
 around Rome\*  
**longē** far (off), afar\*  
**mōlēs, is f.** mass, burden, difficulty†\*  
**re(1)liquiae, ārum f.** rest, remnant(s),  
 leaving(s)†  
**Rōmānus, a, um** of Rome, Roman†\*  
**sal, salis n. (m.)** salt (water), sea†  
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily, a large  
 island south of Italy†  
**spūma, ae f.** foam, froth, spray†  
**Trōs, Trōis m.** Trojan†\*

whole Trojan race, partly because of Paris, but also because Dardanus, the founder of the Trojans, was the son of Electra, her hated rival. **Ganymēdis:** a royal Trojan youth, brother of Priam, snatched up (**rapti**) by an eagle into heaven, where he was beloved by Jupiter, who made him his cupbearer, instead of Juno's own daughter, Hebe.

**29. hīs:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; dependent on **accēnsa**, and referring to the three chief causes of Juno's hatred which have just been mentioned in ll. 26-28. **accēnsa (Jūnō).** **super:** adverb, *too, also*, i.e., in addition to her fears for Carthage. (**in**) **aequore tōtō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**30. Trōas:** a Greek form; acc. pl. of **Trōs**. **re(1)liquias:** sometimes spelled with **ll**, as here, making the first syllable long so that the word may be used in hexameter verse. **Dana(ōr)um, Achilli:** subjective genitives, *theavings (remnants) of the Greeks and of Achilles*, i.e., those Trojans whom the Greeks and Achilles had allowed to escape.

**31. arcēbat:** the imperfect of continued action; App. 351, 2. (**ā**) **Latiō:** separation; App. 340. **longē Latiō:** note the repetition of the letter **l**; such a repetition is called *alliteration*; App. 411. Alliteration, or the recurrence of the same sounds in successive syllables or words, is found in all languages, especially in early verse. It is a special characteristic of early Germanic poetry, nearly all Old English verse being alliterative.

**32. (Trōes) errābant. fātis:** abl. of means. **acti:** participle of **agō**, modifies **Trōes** understood. **maria omnia circum:** in poetry the preposition is often placed after its noun, as here. This is called *anastrophe*; App. 414.

**33. Tantae mōlis:** gen. of quality in the predicate; App. 285, a.; *of so great effort was it*. This line, summarizing the preceding lines, forms a powerful and effective close to this first section of the *Aeneid* and serves as a general introduction to the whole poem.

**34-49. Aeneas and the Trojans** set sail from Sicily for Italy, as they hope, happy at the prospect of the end of their wanderings. Bitter soliloquy of Juno, who chafes at the apparent failure of her plans to keep Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.

**34. The reader is now plunged in mediās rēs:** "into the midst of the action," and we are abruptly introduced to Aeneas and his followers sailing away from the coast of Sicily. They have now been wandering for seven years since the destruction of Troy, their native city. These earlier events (the fall of Troy and their seven years of wandering) are later on narrated by Aeneas to Dido (Books II and III).

**35. laeti (Trōes):** subject of **dabant. spūmās salis aere ruēbant:** note the alliteration; App. 411. **aere:** the prows of the ships were sheathed with bronze.

*cum Jūnō aeternum servāns sub pectore vulnus  
haec sēcum: "Mēne inceptō dēsistere victam  
nec posse Ītaliā Teucrōrum āvertere rēgem."*

40

*Quippe vetor fātis. Pallasne exūrere classem  
Argivum atque ipsōs potuit sommergere pontō  
ūnius ob noxam et furiās Ajācis Oileī?  
Ipsa Jovis rapidum jaculāta ē nūbibus ignem  
disjēcitque ratēs ēvertitque aequora ventis,  
illum expirantem trānsfixō pectore flammās*

aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting†\*

Ajāx, ācis m. Greek leader, who in the sack of Troy had torn Priam's daughter, Cassandra, from the sanctuary of Minerva†\*

Argivus, a, um Argive, Greek†

āvertō, ere, ī, rsus keep off, turn aside†\*  
dēsistō, ere, stīti, stitus cease (from), desist†

disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus scatter, disperse†

ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn†

expirō (l) breathe out, exhale†

exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn (up)†

furiac, ārum f. madness, rage†

inceptum, ī n. beginning, undertaking, purpose†

jaculor, āri, ātus hurl, throw†

noxā, ae f. crime, fault, hurt, harm†

nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog†\*

ob on account of (acc.)

Oileus, eī m. Greek king, father of Ajax†

Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†

pontus, ī m. sea†\*

quippe truly, indeed, surely, forsooth†

rapidus, a, um swift, whirling. consumming†\*

ratis, is f. raft, ship†\*

summergō (subm-), ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown†

trānsfigō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix†

vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent†

vulnus, eris n. wound, blow†\*

36-37. Jūnō . . . haec(dixit).

36. aeternum vulnus: the causes of this anger have been given above: her fear for Carthage, the Judgment of Paris, etc. sub pectore: deep in her heart.

37. sēcum = cum sē; App. 321. a. mē: subj. of dēsistere. Mēne: -ne is the interrogative particle appended to the pronoun, mē.

37-38: dēsistere . . . nec posse: infinitives, in an exclamatory question; *I beaten desist from my undertaking and not be able*, etc.; App. 262. (ab) inceptō: abl. of separation; App. 340. victam: from vincō; it modifies mē.

38. (ab) Ītaliā: abl. of separation; App. 340. Teucrōrum: the Trojans are often referred to as Teucrī, a name derived from Teucer, one of the founders of the Trojan race.

39. Quippe vetor: ironical. fātis: abl. of means; App. 331. -ne = nōnne. Pallas (Athēna): Minerva.

40. Argivum: Argivōrum; App. 37. d. ipsōs: (the masters) themselves, i.e., the Argives, as contrasted with classem. Ipse often means the master, the one of most importance in a situation, as contrasted with persons or things of less

importance. pontō: abl. of place where; App. 319, or means; App. 331.

41. ūnius Ajācis Oileī: a whole fleet was destroyed on account of one man. For the short i in ūnius see the note on illius (l. 16). ob noxam et furiās: Ajax, son of Oileus, had desecrated the temple of Minerva during the sack of Troy, when before the very altar of the sanctuary he had seized Cassandra, daughter of Priam and priestess of Minerva. Enraged at such rash irreverence, Minerva later sank the ship of Ajax and destroyed him with lightning. Ajācis Oileī: of Ajax (son) of Oileus. Observe that the A forms a long syllable by position; App. 6, b., and that -ei of Oilei is here read as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. This Ajax was less renowned than the other Ajax, son of Telamon.

42. Ipsa: (the goddess, Minerva) in person. She was the only divinity, except Jupiter, who might hurl the lightning. Jovis ignem: lightning.

43. -que . . . -que: both . . . and; polysyndeton; App. 439.

44. illum (Ajācem): with emphatic first position, which contrasts it with the ships and the sea previously mentioned.

turbine corripuit scopulōque infixit acūtō;  
*ast ego, quae divum incēdō rēgīna Jovisque*  
*et soror et conjūnx, ūnā cum gente tot annōs*  
*bella gerō. Et quisquam nūmen Jūnōnis adorāt*  
*praetereā aut supplex ārīs impōnet honōrem?"*

*Tālia flammātō sēcum dea corde volūtāns*  
*nimbōrum in patriam, loca fēta furentibus Austris,*  
*Aeoliam venit. Hic vastō rēx Aeolus antrō*  
*luctantis ventōs tempestātēque sonōrās*  
*imperio premit ac vinclis et carcere frēnat.*

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed†  
 adorō (1) worship, adore, honor†  
 Aeolia, ae f. one of the Liparian Islands  
     near Sicily†  
 Aeolus, i m. god of the winds†  
 annus, i m. year\*  
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern†\*  
 Auster, trī m. (south) wind†\*  
 carcer, eris m. prison, inclosure†  
 cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings†\*  
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)†\*  
 fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant†  
 flammō (1) inflame, kindle†  
 frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain†  
 gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wage\*  
 impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on  
     (dat.)†\*  
 incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus walk (proudly),  
     stride†

infigō, ere, xī, xus fasten on, im-  
     pale†  
 luctor, āri, ātus wrestle, struggle†  
 nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm†\*  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country†\*  
 praetereā besides, hereafter  
 premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, con-  
     trol†\*  
 quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one),  
     any(thing)†  
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag†\*  
 sonōrus, a, um roaring, howling†  
 soror, ōris f. sister†\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble†\*  
 tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm†\*  
 tot so many\*  
 turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm†  
 vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain†\*  
 volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder†

(ex) pectore: abl. of separation; App. 340.

45. turbine: abl. of means; App. 331. (Pallas) corripuit. scopulō: dat. with compound infixit; or abl. of place where, as infigō may take either construction; App. 298, 319.

46. ego: with proud self-consciousness and in contrast with Minerva; ego is never expressed unless emphatic. div(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

47. tot annōs: acc. of extent (duration) of time; App. 314; ten years around Troy, and now seven more years while the Trojans wander. ūnā cum gente = cum Teucris.

48. gerō: of past action continued into the present; App. 351, 1, b. Et quisquam: "can any one longer respect me, if I show myself such a weakling?" This figure is called a *rhetorical question*. Jūnōnis = meum: Juno is speaking, but the use of her own name is more picturesque and effective than the use of the possessive adjective.

49. supplex: (as u) suppliant. ārīs:

dat. with compound; App. 298. honōrem: honor, i.e., an offering which would honor Juno.

50-80. Juno persuades Aeolus, god of the winds, to send forth a storm to prevent Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.

50. Tālia: used substantively, as object of volūtāns; *such things*, i.e., *such thoughts*. (in) flammātō corde: abl. of place where; App. 319. sēcum = cum sē, as in l. 37; App. 321, a.

51. patriam: with the first syllable short; App. 17. Austris: abl. with fēta, literally, *south winds*, but often meaning *winds* in general; App. 433. fēta furentibus: note the alliteration; App. 411.

51-52. loca . . . Aeoliam: apposition with patriam. Hic: adverb, *here*. (in) vastō antrō: abl. of place where; App. 319.

53. luctantis: acc. pl. of an i-stem.

54. vinclis: the longer form vinculis (—v—) could not be used in hexameter. imperio, vinc(u)lis, carcere: ablatives of means; App. 331. frēnat: a picture



- 55 *Illī indignantēs magnō cum murmure montis  
circum claustra fremunt; celsā sedet Aeolus arce  
scēptra tenēns mollitque animōs et temperat irās;  
nī faciat, maria ac terrās caelumque profundum  
quippe ferant rapidī sēcum verrantque per aurās.*
- 60 *Sed pater omnipotēns spēluncīs abdidit ātrīs  
hoc metuēns mōlemque et montīs insuper altōs  
imposuit, rēgemque dedit quī foedere certō  
et premere et laxās sciret dare jussus habēnās.  
Ad quem tum Jūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est:*
- 65 *“Aeole, namque tibi dīvum pater atque hominum rēx  
et mulcēre dedit flūctūs et tollere ventō,  
gēns inimica mihi Tyrrhēnum nāvigat aequor*

abdō, ere, didi, ditus put away, hide†  
Aeolus, i m. god of the winds  
celsus, a, um lofty, high, towering†\*  
certus, a, um fixed, sure†\*  
claustrum, i n. bar(rier), bolt†  
foedus, eris n. agreement, condition, treaty†  
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, roar†\*  
habēna, ae f. rein†  
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human†\*  
impōnō, ere, posui, positus place upon\*  
indignor, āri, ātus be angry, chafe†  
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly†  
insuper above, besides†  
laxus, a, um loose, free, lax†  
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread  
mōlēs, is f. mass, burden, structure\*  
molliō, ire, ivi (ii), itus soothe, tame†  
mulcēō, ēre, lsi, lsus calm, soothe†  
murmur, uris n. murmur, roar, rumble†

nāvigō (1) sail, navigate†  
nī, nisi if not, unless†\*  
omnipotēns, entis almighty, all-powerful†  
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,  
control\*  
profundus, a, um deep, high, vast†  
quippe indeed, surely, forsooth  
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming\*  
scēptrum, i n. staff, scepter, power†  
sciō, ire, ivi (ii), itus know (how), under-  
stand†  
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit†\*  
spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern†  
supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
temperō (1) control, calm, refrain†  
Tyrrhēnus, a, um Tyrrhenian, of Etruria,  
a district of northwestern Italy†  
ūtōr, i, ūsus use, employ (abl.)†  
verrō, ere, ī, versus sweep†

drawn from managing spirited horses, as  
in l. 63, *premere et dare laxās habēnās*.

55. *magnō cum murmure montis*: alliteration (m) and onomatopœia; App. 411, 434; *murmure* is abl. of manner; App. 328.

56. (in) *celsā arce*: abl. of place, apparently a lofty seat within the cave or just outside on a mountain top.

57. *scēptra*: for the use of the poetic plural see the note on *irae* (l. 11). *animōs (ventōrum) et irās (ventōrum)*.

58. *nī (Aeolus id) faciat = nī molliat animōs (ventōrum) et temperet irās (eōrum)*; *faciat* is subj. in a pres. condit. contrary to fact; App. 382.

59. (venti) *rapidi*: the winds in their madness. *sēcum = cum sē*; App. 321, a. *ferant, verrant* (*maria ac terrās caelumque profundum*).

60. *pater omnipotēns*: Jupiter. (in) *spēluncīs ātrīs = antrō* (l. 52), abl. of place where; App. 319. *abdidit* (*illōs ventōs*).

61. *hoc*: obj. of *metuēns*. *mōlem et montis*: alliteration; App. 411. *montis*: acc. pl., an *i*-stem.

62. *rēgem (Aeolum) dedit (ventis). foedere certō*: abl. of manner; App. 328.

63. *premere*: object of *sciret*, *would know (how) to grasp tightly*, so as to draw in the reins. For the figure of horsemanship see the note on *frēnat* (l. 54). *sciret*: rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389. *dare*: also obj. of *sciret*. *jussus (ā Jove)*: (when) ordered (by Jupiter).

64. *hīs vōcibus*: abl. with *ūtōr*; App. 342.

65. *Aeole*: voc. *dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx*: Jupiter. *tibi*: for the length of the final *i*, see the note on *mihi* (l. 8).

66. *mulcēre, tollere (flūctūs)*: objects of *dedit*, *has granted*. *ventō*: abl. of means; App. 331.

67. *gēns inimica mihi*: Teucrī. Tyr-



*Īlium in Ītaliā portāns victōsque penātis:*  
incute vim ventis summersāsque obrue puppīs,  
aut age diversōs et disjice corpora pontō.

70

*Sunt mihi bis septem praestantī corpore nymphae,*  
*quārum quae formā pulcherrima, Dēiōpēa,*  
*cōnūbiō jungam stabili propriamque dicābō,*  
*omnīs ut tēcum meritīs prō tālibus annōs*  
*exigat et pulchrā faciat tē prōle parentem."*

75

annus, *i m.* year\*

bis twice†\*

cōnūbium, (*i*) *n.* marriage, wedlock†

Dēiōpēa, *ae f.* a nymph†

dicō (*l*) consecrate, dedicate†

disjiciō, *ere, jēci, jectus* scatter, disperse

diversus, *a, um* scattered, diverse†\*

exigō, *ere, ēgi, āctus* complete, pass†

forma, *ae f.* beauty, shape, form\*

Īlium, (*i*) *n.* Ilium, Troy, a city of

Asia Minor†

incutiō, *ere, cussi, cussus* strike (into)

(*dat.*)†

jungō, *ere, jūnxi, jūctus* join, yoke,

unite†\*

meritum, *i n.* desert, merit†

nympha, *ae f.* nymph, one of the minor

divinities of nature represented as beautiful maidens dwelling in the forests, streams, meadows, mountains, etc.†

obruō, *ere, ui, utus* overwhelm, crush†

penātēs, *ium m.* household gods †\*

pontus, *i m.* sea\*

portō (*l*) carry, bear, bring†\*

praestans, *antis* surpassing, excellent

prō before, for (*abl.*)\*

prōlēs, *is f.* offspring, progeny†\*

proprius, *a, um* one's own, permanent†

pulcher, *chra, chrum* beautiful, hand-

some, illustrious†\*

septem seven†

stabilis, *e* firm, lasting, stable†

sumergō (*subm-*), *ere, rsi, rsus* sink

rhēnum aequor: that part of the Mediterranean west of Italy, east of Corsica and Sardinia, and north of Sicily.

68. *Īlium* . . . portāns victōsque penātis: see note on *inferret deōs* (l. 6.). They were bearing *Īlium* in their plan to found a new city which should continue the race and the customs of the *Īlium* (Troy) which had been destroyed. The origin of the worship of the penates, household gods at Rome, was lost in antiquity; and the Romans explained this and other old customs by referring their beginnings to Troy. *victōs*: defeated by the Greeks in the Trojan War.

69. *incute*: imp. *vim ventis*: alliteration; App. 411. *ventis*: *dat.* with a compound; App. 298. *summersās obrue puppīs*: overwhelm the sunken ships, i.e., sink and overwhelm the ships, a good example of the figure known as *prolepsis*, or *anticipation*; App. 440.

70. *age*: imp. *diversōs* (*Teucrōs*): i.e., drive the Trojans in different directions and scatter their corpses over the sea; another example of *prolepsis*; App. 440. *pontō*: *abl.* of place where; App. 319.

71. *mihi*: *dat.* of possession; App. 299.

*bis septem*: twice seven; more poetic than to say simply *fourteen*. *praestanti corpore*: *abl.* of quality; App. 330.

72. *formā*: *abl.* of respect; App. 325; dependent on *pulcherrima*. *Dēiōpēa*: *nom.* by attraction into the case of the relative pronoun, *quae*; the accusative would be expected, as object of *jungam*; App. 242, *a*. *quārum*: use the English demonstrative in translation, and read as though you had: *Dēiōpēam, quae (est) eārum (nymphārum) pulcherrima formā, jungam (tibi) stabili cōnūbiō et (eam) dicābō (tuam) propriam*.

73. *cōnūbiō*: *in wedlock*, *abl.* of place where or means; App. 319, 331. *cōnūbiō* is trisyllabic by synizesis, and pronounced as though written *cōnūbjō*; App. 401. *jungam (tibi)*. *dicābō (eam) propriam*: I shall dedicate her (*Deiopea*) to you (as) your very own. Juno was goddess of marriage. *propriam*: with the first syllable short; App. 17.

74. *tēcum* = *cum tē*; App. 321, *a*.

75. *prōle*: *abl.* of quality; App. 330, or means; App. 331. *pulchrā prōle parentem*: alliteration; App. 411. *exigat, faciat*: result or purpose; App. 364, 388. *parentem* = *patrem*

Aeolus haec contrā: "Tuus, Ō rēgīna, quid optēs  
explōrāre labor; mihi jussa capessere fās est.

Tū mihi quodcumque hoc rēgnī, tū scēptra Jovemque  
conciliās, tū dās epulis accumbere dīvum  
80 nimbōrumque facis tempestātumque potentem."

Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversā cuspidē montem  
impulit in latus: ac ventī velut agmine factō,  
quā data porta, ruunt et terrās turbine perflant.

Incubuēre marī tōtumque ā sēdibus imīs

85 ūnā Eurusque Notusque ruunt crēberque procellis

accumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus recline (at)  
(dat.)†

Aeolus, i m. god of the winds  
capessō, ere, ivi, itus (under)take, per-  
form†

cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted†\*

conciliō (1) win over, unite†

contrā opposite, against, in reply  
(acc.)\*

convertō, ere, i, rsus turn (around), re-  
verse†

crēber, bra, brum frequent, crowded†\*

cuspis, idis f. point, spear†

epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast†

Eurus, i m. (east) wind†

explōrō (1) examine, search out†

fās n. indecl. right, divine law, duty†\*

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, strike  
(against)

incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lie upon,  
brood over (dat.)†

jussum, i n. command, order

latus, eris n. side, flank†\*

nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm\*

Notus, i m. (south) wind†

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)†\*

perflō (1) blow (over, through)†

porta, ae f. gate, door, opening†\*

potēns, entis powerful, ruling (gen.)†\*

procella, ae f. blast, gust†

quā where, in any way

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
whoever, whatever†\*

scēptum, i n. staff, scepter, power

tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm; time\*

turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm

ūnā together, at the same time†

velut(i) (even) as, just as†\*

76. haec (dixit). optēs: indir. quest.; App. 349. Tuus (est) labor: *thine (is) the task*. Aeolus thus absolves himself from responsibility, if his obedience to Juno gets him into trouble.

77. mihi: dat. of reference; App. 301. jussa (tua).

78. quodcumque hoc (est) rēgnī: *whatever this is (in the way) of a kingdom*, an expression of modesty. rēgnī: part. gen. with quodcumque; App. 286. scēptra: for the plural see the note on irae (l. 11). Tū: always emphatic, and here strengthened by repetition (anaphora); App. 413.

79. epulis: dat. with compound; App. 298. The ancient Romans regularly reclined at meals. dīv(ōr)um: App. 37, d. accumbere: object of dās, *you grant (me) the privilege of reclining*. As one of the lesser gods, Aeolus was dependent upon the favor of the more powerful divinities.

80. facis (mē) potentem nimbōrum tempestātumque.

81-123. Description of the storm which wrecks part of the Trojan ships and scatters the rest.

81. ubi haec dicta (sunt ab Aeolō). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

82. impulit: Aeolus thus opens the barriers and lets out the winds. agmine factō: abl. abs.; App. 343; a figure of speech drawn from military life.

83. Observe the alliteration, every word but one in this line containing a t; App. 411. data (est). turbine: abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. Incubuēre = incubuērunt, from incumbō. The perfect, after a series of presents, denotes rapid or instantaneous action; *they have fallen upon the sea*. mari: dat. with compound; App. 298. tōtum (mare): obj. of ruunt, l. 85.

85. ruunt: *overturn*. Eurus, Notus, Ἄfricus: all the winds blow at once, and in their struggles produce a mighty storm. procellis: abl. of respect or means with

*Āfricus et vastōs volvunt ad litora flūctūs:*  
*insequitur clāmorque virum stridorque rudentum.*  
*Ēripiunt subitō nūbēs caelumque diemque*  
*Teucrōrum ex oculīs; pontō nox incubat ātra.*  
*Intonuēre poli et crēbris micat ignibus aethēr*  
*praesentemque virīs intentant omnia mortem.*  
*Extemplō Aenēae solvuntur frigore membra;*  
*ingemit et duplicis tendēns ad sidera palmās*  
*tālia vōce refert: “ Ō terque quaterque beātī,*  
*quīs ante ōra patrum Trojae sub moenibus altīs*  
*contigit oppetere! Ō Danaum fortissime gentis*  
*Tydidē! mēne Īliacīs occumbere campīs*

90

95

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether†\*  
 Āfricus, *i m.* (southwest) wind†  
 beātus, *a, um* happy, blessed†  
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, be-  
 fall†\*  
 crēber, bra, brum frequent, crowded\*  
 duplex, icis double, both†  
 extemplō immediately, forthwith†  
 fortis, e strong, brave, valiant†\*  
 frigus, oris *n.* cold, chill†  
 Īliacus, *a, um* of Ilium, Trojan†\*  
 incubō, āre, uī (āvi), itus (ātus) lie upon,  
 brood over (*dat.*)†  
 ingemō, ere, uī groan†  
 insequor, i, secūtus follow, pursue†\*  
 intentō (l) threaten, aim†  
 intonō, āre, uī thunder, roar†  
 membrum, *i n.* limb, member, part†\*  
 micō, āre, uī quiver, flash†  
 nūbēs, *is f.* cloud, fog, mist\*

occumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus fall (in  
 death)†  
 oppetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus encounter, meet  
 (death)†  
 palma, *ae f.* palm, hand†\*  
 polus, *i m.* pole, sky, heaven†  
 pontus, *i m.* sea\*  
 praesēns, entis present, instant†  
 quater four times†  
 rudēns, entis *m.* rope, cable†  
 solvō, ere, i, solūtus relax, loose(n)†\*  
 stridor, ōris *m.* creaking, grating, whir-  
 ring†  
 subitō suddenly†\*  
 ter thrice, three times†\*  
 Tydidēs, *ae m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,  
 who fought against Aeneas in single  
 combat before Troy and would have  
 killed him had not Venus spirited her  
 son away†

crēber; App. 325, 331. -que, -que, -que:  
 polysyndeton; App. 439.

86. vastōs volvunt: alliteration, em-  
 ployed very effectively here, as often in  
 the *Aeneid*.

87. vir(ōr)um: Aeneas and the other  
 Trojans. -que, -que: polysyndeton;  
 App. 439.

88. diem = lūcem diēi. -que, -que:  
 polysyndeton; App. 439.

89. pontō: *dat.* with compound; App.  
 298.

90. Intonuēre = intonuērunt; App.  
 204, 4. ignibus (Jovis): lightning, *abl.*  
 of means or manner; App. 328, 331.

91. viris = Teucris; *dat.* of reference;  
 App. 301. omnia: used substantively,  
*all things*, as subj. of intentant.

92. frigore: chilly fear; the ancient  
 heroes were not ashamed to display their  
 emotions, and often gave way to terror or  
 grief. They weep copiously on occasion,

and are no more dainty about the shed-  
 ding of tears than the shedding of blood.

93. duplicis: acc. pl. of an *i*-stem;  
 the first syllable is short; App. 17. In  
 prayer the ancient Greeks and Romans  
 extended their hands with the palms up-  
 ward, ready to accept the blessing.

94. tālia (dicta). beātī (vōs): voca-  
 tive.

95. quīs ante ōra patrum (vestrum)  
 sub moenia Trojae contigit oppetere  
 (mortem). quīs = quibus; App. 109, c;  
 observe the quantity of the *i*; *dat.* with  
 contigit; App. 298. ante ōra: where their  
 kinsmen and friends might witness their  
 glorious deeds and death and might bury  
 their bodies, thus giving rest to their  
 souls; for the souls of the unburied must  
 wander restlessly after death.

96. oppetere (mortem): subject of  
 contigit. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

97. mē: subj. of potuisse. mēne

- nōn potuisse tuāque animam hanc effundere dextrā,*  
*saevus ubi Aeacidæ tēlō jacet Hector, ubi ingēns*  
 100 *Sarpēdōn, ubi tot Simois correpta sub undīs*  
*scūta virum galeāsque et fortia corpora volvit!"*
- Tālia jactantī stridēns Aquilōne procella*  
*vēlum adversa ferit, fluctūsque ad sīdera tollit.*  
*Franguntur rēmī, tum prōra āvertit et undīs*  
 105 *dat latus, insequitur cumulō praeuptus aquae mōns.*  
*Hī summō in fluctū pendent; hīs unda dehiscēns*  
*terram inter fluctūs aperit, furit aestus harēnis.*  
*Trīs Notus abreptās in saxa latentia torquet*

**abripiō, ere, uī, reptus** carry off, snatch away†  
**adversus, a, um** opposite, in front†\*  
**Aeacidēs, ae m.** descendant of Aeacus,  
 Achilles, Greek chieftain†  
**aestus, ūs m.** boiling (surge), tide†  
**aperiō, ire, uī, ertus** open, disclose†\*  
**aqua, ae f.** water†\*  
**Aquilō, ōnis m.** (north) wind†  
**āvertō, ere, i, rsus** turn away, avert\*  
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)\*  
**cumulus, i m.** heap, mass†  
**dehiscō, ere, hīvi** gape, split, open†  
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out†\*  
**feriō, ire** strike, beat†  
**fortis, e** strong, brave, valiant\*  
**frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus** break, shat-  
 ter†\*  
**galea, ae f.** helmet†  
**harēna, ae f.** sand, beach†\*

**Hector, oris m.** leader of the Trojans†\*  
**insequor, i, secūtus** follow, pursue\*  
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)†\*  
**jactō (1)** toss, buffet, utter\*  
**lateō, ēre, uī lie** hid, hide, lurk†\*  
**latus, eris n.** side, flank\*  
**Notus, i m.** (south) wind  
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang†\*  
**praeuptus, a, um** steep, towering†  
**procella, ae f.** blast, gale  
**prōra, ae f.** prow†\*  
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern\*  
**Sarpēdōn, onis m.** king of Lycia, ally of  
 the Trojans†  
**scūtum, i n.** shield†  
**Simois, entis m.** river near Troy†  
**strid(e)ō, ēre, dī** creak, rustle, roar†  
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, whirl†\*  
 tot so many  
**trēs, tria** three†\*

**potuisse:** *could I not*, etc., inf. in an exclamatory question; App. 262. **Tydidē:** vocative. Aeneas engaged in a disastrous duel at Troy with Diomedes and barely escaped with his life, being rescued by his mother, the goddess Venus. (in) **campis:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **occumbere (morti):** complementary infin. with *potuisse*, as is also *effundere* in l. 98.

**98. hanc = meam.** (tuā) *dextrā* (manū): abl. of means; App. 331.

**99. tēlō (ictus):** (*slain*) *by the spear*. Observe the emphasis obtained by anaphora of *ubi*; App. 413.

**100. Sarpēdōn (jacet):** an ally of the Trojans. Simois . . . *volvit*.

**101. vir(ōr)um. correpta sub undīs:** goes with *scūta* and *galeās* as well as with *corpora* and refers to the corpses and armor of slain warriors swept along by (under) the water.

**102. (Aenēae) jactantī:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **Tālia (dicta):** obj. of

*jactantī. Aquilōne:* abl. of means; App. 331.

**103. ferit:** from *feriō*; not to be confused with the verb *ferō*. **adversa (procella).** **ad sīdera:** such exaggerated language is called *hyperbole*; App. 428.

**104. rēmī:** the ancient ship used both oars and sails. **prōra (sē) āvertit et undīs dat latus (nāvis).**

**105. cumulō:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **mōns:** more hyperbole; App. 428; note the smashing effect of the monosyllable at the end of the line.

**106. Hī (virī). hīs (virīs):** dative of reference; App. 301. **hī . . . hīs:** *these . . . for those; some . . . for others*, referring to the crews of different ships; anaphora; App. 413.

**107. terram:** *the bottom* (of the sea): the hyperbole is continued; App. 428. **harēnis:** *with the sands*, abl. of means; App. 331.

**108-109. Trīs (nāvis):** acc. pl. of an *i-*



(*saxa vocant Itali mediis quae in fluctibus Arās,*  
*dorsum immāne mari summō*), trīs Eurūs ab altō 110  
*in brevia et syrtis urget, miserābile visū,*  
*inlīditque vadis atque aggere cingit harēnae.*  
*Ūnam, quae Lyciōs fidumque vehēbat Orontēn,*  
*ipsius ante oculōs ingēns ā vertice pontus*  
*in puppim ferit: excutitur pronusque magister 115*  
*volvitur in caput; ast illam ter fluctus ibidem*  
*torquet agēns circum et rapidus vorat aequore vertex.*  
*Appārent rārī nantēs in gurgite vastō,*  
*arma virum tabulaeque et Troia gaza per undās.*

**agger, eris** *m.* mound, wall, bank†  
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea)  
**appareō, ēre, uī, itus** appear†  
**Ārae, ārum** *f.* the Altars, a ledge of rocks  
 between Sicily and Africa†  
**brevis, e** short, shallow†  
**cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus** gird(le), en-  
 circle†\*  
**dorsum, ī** *n.* back, ridge, reef†  
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind  
**excutiō, ere, cussi, cussus** cast out, shake  
 off†\*  
**feriō, ire** strike, beat  
**fidus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy†\*  
**gaza, ae** *f.* treasure, wealth†  
**gurgēs, itis** *m.* abyss, gulf, whirlpool†\*  
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach\*  
**ibidem** in the same place†  
**inlīdō, ere, sī, sus** dash against (into)  
 (dat.)†  
**Italus, a, um** Italian†

**Lycius, a, um** Lycian, of Lycia, a country  
 of Asia Minor†  
**magister, trī** *m.* master, pilot†  
**miserābilis, e** pitiable, wretched†  
**nō** (1) swim, float†  
**Orontēs, is** (1) *m.* comrade of Aeneas†  
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea\*  
**pronus, a, um** leaning forward, headlong†  
**rapidus, a, um** swift, whirling, consuming\*  
**rārus, a, um** scattered, far apart†  
**syrtis, is** *f.* sand bar, reef†  
**tabula, ae** *f.* plank, board†  
**ter** three times, thrice\*  
**torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus** turn, twist, whirl\*  
**trēs, tria** three\*  
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy†\*  
**urgeō, ēre, ursi** drive, force, press†  
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)†  
**vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus** carry, convey†\*  
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, summit; whirlpool†\*  
**vorō** (1) swallow (up)†

stem, object of torquet. *saxa . . . saxa*:  
 anaphora; App. 413. *mediis in flucti-*  
*bus: in the middle (of the) waves*; App.  
 246. *quae saxa Itali vocant Arās: quae*  
 is a relative adjective agreeing with *saxa*;  
*saxa* is object of *vocant*, and *Arās* is  
 predicate accusative. *Arās: the Altars*,  
 the Roman name for a ledge of rocks off  
 the African coast, just outside the har-  
 bor of ancient Carthage.

110. (in) *mari summō*: at the surface  
 of the sea; abl. of place where; App. 319,  
 246. *dorsum*: apposition with *saxa*.  
*tris (nāvis)*: object of *urget*.

111. *miserābile visū*: piteous to be-  
 hold; *miserābile* is a neuter adjective  
 modifying the idea expressed in the pre-  
 ceding sentence, while *visū* is the supine  
 of *videō* and an abl. of respect; App. 325.

112. *vadis* = in *vada*, dat. of direction,  
 sometimes used instead of the acc. of  
 place to which; App. 306.

113. *Ūnam (nāvem)*. *Orontēn*: acc.,  
 a Greek form.

114. *ipsius (Aenēae)*: of the master, a  
 common use of *ipse*. Compare *ipsa*  
 (l. 42) and *ipsōs* (l. 40). For the length  
 of the second vowel, see the note on  
*illius* (l. 16). *ā vertice*: from high above.  
*ferit*: from *feriō*.

115. in: upon. *excutitur (ē nāvi)*.

116. in caput: headlong. *illam (nā-*  
*vem)*: contrasted with the helmsman  
 (magister).

117. (in) *aequore*: abl. of place where;  
 App. 319.

118. *nantēs*: pres. part. of *nō*, modi-  
 fying *rārī (viri)*, *arma*, *tabulae*, and *gaza*,  
 but agreeing with the nearest word, *rārī*  
*(viri)*, men here and there; App. 238.

119. *vir(ōr)um*. *arma*: such as  
 wooden shields and leather helmets made  
 of light and buoyant material. *gaza*: the  
 first syllable is long by position; App. 15.



120 *Jam validam Ilionei nāvem, jam fortis Achātae,  
et quā vectus Abās, et quā grandaevus Alētēs,  
vicit hiems; laxis laterum compāgibus omnēs  
accipiunt inimicum imbrem rimisque fatiscunt.*

Intereā magnō miscērī murmure pontum  
125 ēmissamque hiemem sēnsit Neptūnus et imīs  
stāgna refūsa vadis, graviter commōtus; et altō  
prōspiciēns summā placidum caput extulit undā.  
Disjectam Aenēae tōtō videt aequare classem,  
flūctibus oppressōs Trōas caelique ruīnā.

130 Nec latuere doli frātre Jūnōnis et irae.

Abās, antis *m.* Trojan leader†  
Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of  
Aeneas†\*  
Alētēs, *ae m.* Trojan leader†  
altum, *i n.* the deep (sea)  
commoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus move, dis-  
turb†  
compāgēs, *is f.* joint, seam, fastening†  
disjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus scatter, disperse  
dolus, *i m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud†\*  
efferō, ferre, extuli lātus raise, lift (up)†\*  
ēmittō, ere, misi, missus send forth†  
fatiscō, ere split, open, gape†  
fortis, *e* brave, strong, valiant\*  
frāter, tris *m.* brother†\*  
grandaevus, *a, um* aged, old†  
graviter heavily, violently, greatly†  
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm†\*  
Ilioneus, *ei m.* Trojan leader†  
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, water†  
inimicus, *a, um* hostile, unfriendly  
intereā meanwhile, meantime†\*

lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, escape the notice (of)\*  
latus, eris *n.* side, flank\*  
laxus, *a, um* loose, open, lax  
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse,  
stir†\*  
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble  
Neptūnus, *i m.* Neptune, god of the sea†\*  
opprimō, ere, pressi, pressus overwhelm, crush†  
placidus, *a, um* calm, quiet, peaceful†\*  
pontus, *i m.* sea\*  
prōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look out (on), see†  
refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour back†  
rima, *ae f.* crack, fissure†  
ruīna, *ae f.* downfall, ruin†  
sentio, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus feel, perceive†  
stāgnum, *i n.* still waters, depth†  
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*  
vadum, *i n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)  
validus, *a, um* strong, stout, mighty†  
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry, convey†\*

120. Ilionei: gen., with the final *ei* pronounced as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. (nāvem) fortis Achātae. Jam . . . jam: anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413.

121. et (nāvem) quā vectus (est) Abās, et (nāvem) quā (vectus est) Alētēs. et quā . . . et quā: anaphora; App. 413.

122. laxis compāgibus: abl. of means or instrument, or abl. abs. omnēs (nāvēs).

123. rimis: abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331. Cf. ll. 83, 105. imbrem = aquam maris.

124-156. Neptune, god of the sea, intervenes; he rebukes the winds and calms the sea.

124. magnō miscērī murmure: alliteration (*m*) and onomatopoeia; App. 411,

434. murmure: abl. of attendant circumstance or manner; App. 329, 328.

125. ēmissam (esse).

126. refūsa (esse). (ex) vadis: abl. of separation; App. 340. (in) altō: over the sea; abl. of place where; App. 319. commōtus (animō): although disturbed in spirit, as a god he maintains an outward calm (placidum caput of l. 127).

127. (ex) undā: abl. of separation; App. 340; from the crest of the wave; App. 246.

128. (in) tōtō aequare: abl. of place where; App. 319.

129. Trōās: acc. pl., a Greek form. (et videt) Trōas oppressōs (esse). caeli ruīnā: hyperbole; App. 428.

130. latuere = latuerunt; App. 204, 4. frātre: Neptune was Juno's brother. and he knew her tricky nature (doli) and her ugly temper (irae).



*Altieri, Rome*

JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS AGAINST THE SHIP OF AENEAS

*Lucio Massani*



*Alinari, Rome*

## NEPTUNE

*Lateran Museum*

In his left hand the god holds a trident; in the right, a seashell. His right foot rests on the rostrum of a ship, and behind him is a dolphin, one of the creatures of his domain.

Eurum *ad sē* Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc tālia fātur:

"Tantane vōs generis tenuit fidūcia vestri?

Jam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī,  
miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs?

Quōs ego — ! sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs. 135

Post mihi nōn simili poenā commissa luētis.

Mātūrāte fugam rēgique haec dicite vestrō:  
nōn illi imperium pelagi saevumque tridentem,  
sed mihi sorte datum. Tenet ille immānia saxa,  
vestrās, Eure, domōs; illā sē jactet in aulā 140

Aeolus et clausō ventōrum carcere rēgnet."

Sic ait et dictō citius tumida aequora plācat

Aeolus, *i m.* god of the winds  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture†\*  
aula, *ae f.* court, hall†  
carcer, eris *m.* prison, inclosure  
citō quickly, soon†  
claudō, ere, sī, sus (*in*)close, hem  
in†\*  
commissum, *i n.* fault, crime  
compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(*i*)tus compose,  
construct, calm, quiet†  
dehinc then, thereupon†  
Eurus, *i m.* (east) wind  
fidūcia, *ae f.* confidence, trust†  
jactō (*1*) toss, buffet, vaunt\*  
luō, ere, i atone for†  
mātūrō (*1*) hasten, speed; ripen†

miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse, stir  
(up)\*  
mōlēs, *is f.* mass, burden, heap\*  
plācō (*1*) calm, quiet†  
post after (*acc.*); afterwards†\*  
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus surpass, be better†  
rēgnō (*1*) rule, reign†  
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
similis, e like, similar†\*  
sine without (*abl.*)†\*  
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, destiny†\*  
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Nep-  
tune as god of the sea†  
tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen†  
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own†\*  
Zephyrus, *i m.* (west) wind†

131. dehinc: one syllable by synizesis;  
App. 403. tālia (dicta).

132. generis fidūcia vestri: this verse  
is sarcastic; the winds were of divine ori-  
gin, being descended from Aurora, goddess  
of the dawn, and from Astaeus, a Titan  
rival of the gods. caelum terramque:  
hyperbole; App. 428.

134. miscēre, tollere: depend on au-  
dētis, as complementary infinitives; App.  
259.

135. Quōs = Vōs. Quōs ego —: a good  
example of *apostrophe*; App. 416; i.e.,  
instead of completing his sentence, the  
speaker breaks off abruptly and leaves to  
the imagination, as being beyond the  
power of adequate expression in words,  
just what sort of dire punishment he may  
inflict upon the guilty winds; Quōs is  
thus the object and ego the subject of the  
unexpressed verb.

136. nōn simili poenā: *abl.* of means;  
App. 331; *by no similar punishment*, i.e.,  
by a much greater one; this figure of  
speech is called *litotes*; App. 431.

137. rēgi vestrō = Aeolō.

138. illi: dat. of indir. obj. in em-  
phatic position contrasted with mihi in  
the same position in the following line.  
tridentem: the well-known symbol of  
Neptune as god of the sea. imperium,  
tridentem: subjects of datum (esse), an  
inf. in indir. disc., dependent on dicite,  
in l. 137.

139. sorte: when Saturn was over-  
thrown, the three gods, Jupiter, Neptune,  
and Pluto, divided his dominion among  
them by lot, Jupiter receiving the do-  
minion of heaven, Neptune of the sea,  
and Pluto of the realm of the dead in the  
lower world.

140. vestrās: referring to all the winds,  
although Neptune is directly addressing  
Eurus only.

140-141. illā, clausō: emphatic by  
position. jactet, rēgnet: volitive sub-  
junctives; App. 254. (in) clausō car-  
cere: *abl.* of place where; App. 319.

142. ait: third sing. of ajō. dictō:  
*abl.* with compar.; App. 327.



- collētāsque fugat nūbēs sōlemque redūcit.  
 Cŷmothoē *simul et* Tritōn adnexus acūtō  
 145 dētrūdunt nāvīs scopulō; levat *ipse* tridentī  
*et vastās* aperit syrtīs *et* temperat *aequor*  
*atque* rotīs *summās* levibus perlābitur undās.  
 Ac velutī *magnō in* populō *cum* saepe coōrta est  
 sēditio saevitque *animīs* ignōbile vulgus;  
 150 *jamque* facēs *et* saxa volant, furor arma ministrat;  
*tum, pietāte* gravem *ac* meritīs *sī forte* virum quem  
 cōnsplexēre, silent arrēctisq̄ auribus astant;  
*ille* regit *dictīs* animōs *et* pectora mulcet:  
*sīc cūctus* pelagī cecidit fragor, *aequora* postquam  
 155 prōspiciēs *genitor* caelōque invectus apertō

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, keen  
 adnitor, i, sus (nixus) strive, lean against†  
 aperiō, ire, uī, ertus open, disclose\*  
 apertus, a, um open, clear†  
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, prick up†  
 a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (near, by)†\*  
 auris, is f. ear†\*  
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, subside†\*  
 colligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, gather†  
 cōnspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, be-  
 hold†  
 coōrior, iri, ortus (a)rise†  
 Cŷmothoē, ēs f. a sea nymph†  
 dētrūdō, ere, sī, sus push off, dislodge†  
 fax, facis f. firebrand, torch†\*  
 fragor, ōris m. crash, uproar†  
 fugō (1) put to flight, rout†  
 furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, rage†\*  
 gravis, e heavy, weighty; venerable†\*  
 ignōbilis, e inglorious, common†  
 invehō, ere, ēxi, ectus carry in, convey†  
 levis, e light, swift†  
 levō (1) lift, raise†  
 meritum, i n. desert, service, merit  
 ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply†

mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm  
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog\*  
 perlābor, i, lāpsus glide over†  
 pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, duty\*  
 populus, i m. people, nation, crowd\*  
 postquam after (that), when†\*  
 prōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look out on  
 redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, bring  
 back†  
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, control†\*  
 rota, ae f. wheel; chariot†  
 saepe often†\*  
 saeviō, ire, ivi (iī), itus rage, be fierce†  
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sēditio, ōnis f. riot, strife†  
 sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still†  
 sōl, sōlis m. sun, day†\*  
 syrtis, is f. sand bar, reef  
 temperō (1) calm, control  
 tridēns, entis m. trident, symbol of Nep-  
 tune  
 Tritōn, onis m. a minor sea-god†  
 velut(i) as, just as\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed†\*  
 vulgus, i n. (m. crowd, throng, herd†

144. Cŷmothoē: nom.; a Greek form.

145. ipse: the master (Neptune). See note on ipsōs (l. 40). (dē) scopulō: abl. of separation; App. 340. levat: with the trident as a lever. tridenti: abl. of an i-stem.

147. rotīs levibus: abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. velutī saepe cum: just as often (happens) when; this passage (ll. 148-156) is one of Vergil's most famous similes; App. 441.

149. animīs: abl. of place where or manner; App. 319, 328.

150. facēs: very dangerous in a city with so many wooden buildings as there were

in ancient Rome. furor arma ministrat: in their fury any object serves as a missile.

151. quem: some, the indefinite pronoun. pietāte, meritīs: abl. of cause or respect with gravem; App. 325; 332.

152. arrēctis auribus: abl. abs. of manner; App. 343, 328. arrēctis auribus astant: alliteration; App. 411. cōnsplexēre = cōnsplexērunt; App. 204, 4. silent, astant: plurals, because of the collective idea in vulgus and populō; App. 236, a.

154-155. sic: correlative with velutī in l. 148. postquam genitor... flectit et... dat. aequora: obj. of prōspiciēs.

155. (in) caelō apertō: abl. of place



*flectit equōs currūque volāns dat lōra secundō.*

*Dēfessī Aeneadae quae proxima litora cursū  
contendunt petere, et Libyae vertuntur ad ōrās.*

*Est in sēcessū longō locus: insula portum*

*efficit objectū laterum, quibus omnis ab altō*

130

*frangitur inque sinūs scindit sēsē unda reductōs.*

*Hinc atque hinc vastae rūpēs geminūque minantur*

*in caelum scopulī, quōrum sub vertice latē*

*aequora tūta silent; tum silvīs scaena coruscīs*

*dēsUPER, horrentīque ātrum nemos imminet umbrā;*

165

*fronte sub adversā scopulis pendentibus antrum,*

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing\*

**Aeneadae, (ār)um m.** descendants (followers) of Aeneas†

**altum, ī n.** the deep (sea); heaven

**antrum, ī n.** cave, cavern\*

**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive; hasten†

**coruscus, a, um** waving, quivering, flashing†

**currus, ūs m.** chariot, car\*

**dēfessus, a, um** weary, tired, worn†

**dēsUPER** from above†

**efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** make, form†

**flectō, ere, exī, exus** bend, turn, guide†

**frangō, ere, frēgī, fractus** break, shatter\*

**frōns, ontis f.** front, face, brow†\*  
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, tremble†\*

**immineō, ēre** overhang, threaten†

**insula, ae f.** island†

**latē** widely, far and wide

**latus, eris n.** side, flank\*

**Libya, ae f.** region of North Africa\*

**lōrum, ī n.** rein, thong†

**minor, āri, ātus** threaten, tower†

**nemus, oris n.** (sacred) grove, forest†\*

**objectus, ūs m.** projection, barrier†

**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang\*

**proximus, a, um** nearest†

**reducō, ere, dūxī, ductus** bring back, lead back

**rūpēs, is f.** crag, cliff†\*

**scaena, ae f.** background, stage†

**scindō, ere, scidi, scissus** split, divide†

**scopulus, ī m.** rock, cliff\*

**sēcessus, ūs m.** inlet, recess†

**secundus, a, um** following, favorable, obedient†\*

**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, be still

**sinus, ūs m.** fold, gulf, bay†\*

**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure†\*

**vertex, icis m.** summit, top\*

**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, (ex)change\*  
**volō** (1) fly, speed\*

where; App. 319. **genitor:** Neptune.  
**invectus (currū):** riding in his car.

156. **flectit...** dat: historical presents;  
App. 351, 1, a. **currū:** dat. of indir. obj.;  
App. 295.

157-207. Aeneas, with seven out of twenty ships, lands on the coast of North Africa near Carthage. He kills seven fine stags, which he divides among his comrades, whom he tries to console and encourage.

157-158. **Aeneadae litora, quae (sunt) proxima, cursū petere contendunt.**

159-160. **insula efficit (hunc locum) portum.** portum: predicate acc. in **sēcessū longō:** the inlet extends deep into the land.

160. **quibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

160-161. **omnis unda (veniēns) ab altō frangitur et sē in sinūs reductōs scindit. sēsē = sē.** Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

162. **Hinc atque hinc:** on (from) this side and that, i.e., on both sides. **rūpēs (sunt).**

164. **scaena:** the place resembles a stage with its scenery. **silvīs coruscīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

165. **horrentī umbrā:** abl. of cause if taken with **ātrum**, or of manner if taken with **imminet**; App. 332, 328. **horrenti:** abl. of an *i*-stem; this word is probably used here to suggest the shade of bristling evergreens, such as cedars, firs, or pines.

166. **scopulis pendentibus:** abl. of quality or material; App. 330, 324.

- intus aquae dulcēs vivōque sedilia saxō,  
 nymphārum domus. *Hic fessās nōn vincula nāvīs*  
*ulla tenent, uncō nōn alligat ancora morsū.*  
 170 *Hūc septem Aenēās collēctis nāvibus omnī*  
*ex numerō subit; q̄c magnō tellūris amōre*  
*ēgressī optātā potiuntur Trōes harēnā*  
*et sale tābentis artūs in litore pōnunt.*  
*Ac primum silici scintillam excūdit Achātēs*  
 175 *suscēpitque ignem foliis atque ārida circum*  
*nūtrimenta dedit rapuitque in fōmite flammam.*  
*Tum Cererem corruptam undīs Cereāliaque arma*  
*expediunt fessī rērum, frūgēsque receptās*

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
 alligō (1) bind, hold (to)†  
 ancora, *ae f.* anchor†  
 aqua, *ae f.* water\*  
 āridus, *a, um* dry†  
 artus, *ūs m.* joint, limb†\*  
 Cereālis, *e of Ceres*, (goddess of) grain†  
 Cerēs, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain†  
 colligō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* collect, gather  
 corruptō, *ere, rūpi, ruptus* spoil, ruin†  
 dulcis, *e* sweet, dear, fresh†\*  
 ēgredior, *i, gressus* go out, disembark†  
 excūdō, *ere, di, sus* strike out†  
 expediō, *ire, ivi (ii), itus* bring out. prepare†  
 folium, (i) *i n.* leaf†  
 fōmes, *itis m.* tinder, fuel, shaving†  
 frūx, *frūgis f.* fruit, grain†  
 harēnā, *ae f.* sand, beach\*  
 intus within†  
 morsus, *ūs m.* bite, fluke, bit†

numerus, *i m.* number, multitude†\*  
 nūtrimentum, *i n.* food, fuel, nourishment†  
 nymp̄ha, *ae f.* nymph, a minor divinity of nature, represented as a beautiful maiden  
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
 potior, *iri, itus* gain, win (*abl.*)†  
 rapiō, *ere, ui, ptus* snatch (up), whirl\*  
 recipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* take back, recover†\*  
 sal, *salis n. (m.)* salt (water), sea  
 scintilla, *ae f.* spark†  
 sedile, *is n.* seat, bench†  
 septem seven  
 silex, *icis m. (f.)* flint†  
 suscipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* catch (up). receive†  
 tābeō, *ēre* drip, soak, melt, waste†  
 Trōs, *Trōis m.* Trojan\*  
 uncus, *a, um* curved, bent, hooked†  
 vinc(u)lum, *i n.* chain, bond, cable\*  
 vivus, *a, um* living, natural, alive†

167. vivō saxō: denotes natural, not artificial, seats.

168. domus: in apposition with antrum, the cave just described; nymphs were supposed to frequent remote spots with beautiful natural scenery. Hic: adverb, here; observe that the i is long in the adverb but short in the pronoun. fessās nāvīs: personification; App. 437; or possibly a transferred epithet; the Trojans were tired; App. 446.

169. ancora: anachronistic; hooked anchors were not used at that time. alligat (nāvīs). uncō morsū: abl. of means; App. 331.

170. collēctis nāvibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. omnī ex numerō: we see from l. 393 that Aeneas had set out with twenty ships.

171. magnō amōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

172. Trōēs: nom. pl., a Greek form. optātā harēnā: abl. with potior; App. 342.

173. sale: abl. of means with tābentis.

174. silici: dat. of separation; App. 305.

175. foliis: abl. of means; App. 331. circum: adv. modifying dedit: he places fuel around; or else understand circum (ignem).

177. Cererem: the goddess of grain, by metonymy for grain; App. 433. Cereālia arma: the utensils of Ceres, i.e., utensils for grinding and for cooking grain.

178. expediunt (ex nāvibus). rērum:

*et torrere parant flammis et frangere saxo.*

*Aenēas scopulum intereā cōnscondit, et omnem* 180  
*prōspectum lātē pelagō petit, Anthea sī quem*  
*jactātum ventō videat Phrygiāsque birēmīs*  
*aut Capyn aut celsīs in puppibus arma Caīcī.*  
*Nāvem in cōnspectū nūllam, trīs litore cervōs*  
*prōspicit errantīs; hōs tōta armenta sequuntur* 185  
*ā tergō et longum per vallis pascitur agmen.*  
*Cōnstitit hīc arcumque manū celerisque sagittās*  
*corripuit, fidus quae tēla gerēbat Achātēs,*  
*ductōrēsque ipsōs primum capita alta ferentīs*  
*cornibus arboreīs sternit, tum vulgus et omnem* 190

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
 Antheus, *ei, acc. ea, m.* comrade of Aeneas†  
 arboreus, *a, um* branching, tree-like†  
 arcus, *ūs m.* bow†\*  
 armentum, *i n.* herd, drove†  
 birēmīs, *is f.* bireme, galley (with two banks of oars)†  
 Caīcus, *i m.* comrade of Aeneas†  
 Capys, *yos, acc. yn, m.* comrade of Aeneas†  
 celer, *eris, ere* swift†\*  
 celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering\*  
 cervus, *i m.* stag, deer†  
 cōnscondō, *ere, i, ēnsus* climb, mount†  
 cōnsistō, *ere, stiti, stitus* stop, settle†\*  
 cōnspectus, *ūs m.* sight, view  
 cornū, *ūs n.* horn†  
 corripio, *ere, uī, reptus* snatch (up)\*

ductor, *ōris m.* leader†  
 fidus, *a, um* faithful, trusty\*  
 frangō, *ere, frēgi, fractus* break, crush\*  
 gerō, *ere, gessi, gestus* carry (on)\*  
 intereā meanwhile, meantime\*  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet\*  
 lātē widely, far and wide  
 pascor, *i, pāstus* feed, graze†  
 Phrygius, *a, um* Phrygian, Trojan†\*  
 prōspectus, *ūs m.* view†  
 prōspiciō, *ere, spexi, spectus* look out on, see  
 sagitta, *ae f.* arrow†  
 scopulus, *i m.* rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sternō, *ere, strāvi, strātus* lay low, spread, strew†\*  
 tergum, *i n.* back, hide, rear†\*  
 torreo, *ēre, uī, tostus* parch, roast†  
 trēs, *tria* three\*  
 vallis, *is f.* valley†  
 vulgus, *i n. (m.)* crowd, throng, herd

gen. with the adj. *fessī*; App. 287, *weary of their misfortunes. receptās (ex mari).*

179. *torrere*: to make it easier to grind. *frangere*: to make coarse meal. *flammis, saxo*: ablatives of means; App. 331.

181. *pelagō*: dat. of direction = in pelagus; App. 306, or else = in pelagō, abl. of place where; App. 319. *quem*: indef. *any*, modifying *Anthea*, an acc., Greek form, *if he can see any Antheus*; in English we should say *if he can see anything of Antheus*.

182. *videat*: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

183. *Capyn*: acc., a Greek form. *puppibus*: poetic plural. *arma*: especially shields fastened on the ship and conspicuous at a great distance.

184. *Nāvem* (*prōspicit*). (*in*) *litore*: abl. of place where; App. 319. *Nāvem*

*nūllam, trīs cervōs*: chiasmus and asyndeton; App. 420, 418.

185. *hōs* (*cervōs*): the three stags are at the head of the feeding herd.

186. *vallis*: plural, but probably referring to a single valley; see the note on *irae* (l. 11), and cf. App. 243.

187. *Cōnstitit* (*Aenēas*). *hīc*: adverb, *here*; distinguish from the pronoun which has a short *i*.

188. *tēla*: attracted into the rel. clause refers back to *arcum* and *sagittās*, objects of *corripuit*.

189-191. *ductōrēs*: the three stags (l. 184). *tum vulgus* (*sternit*) *et omnem turbam* *miscet, agēs* (*eōs = cervōs*) *tēlis inter frondea nemora*.

190. *cornibus arboreīs*: abl. of quality; App. 330. *tum vulgus* (*sternit*). *vulgus*: acc., *the herd*, as opposed to the leaders, *ductōrēs*.

- miscet agēns tēlis nemora inter frondea turbam;  
 nec prius absistit quam septem ingentia victor  
 corpora fundat humi et numerum cum nāvibus aequet.  
 Hinc portum petit et sociōs partitur in om̄is.
- 195 Vīna bonus quae deinde cadis onerārat Acestor  
 litore Trīnaciō dederatque abeuntibus hērōs  
 dīvidit, et dictis maerentia pectora mulcet:  
 "Ō socii (neque enim ignārī sumus ante malōrum),  
 Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque finem.
- 200 Vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantis  
 accestis scopulōs, vōs et Cyclōpia saxa

abeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus depart†\*  
 absistō, ere, stiti cease, stop†  
 accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach†  
 aequō (1) (make) equal†\*  
 bonus, a, um good, kind(ly), useful†\*  
 cadus, ī m. jar, urn†  
 Cyclōpius, a, um Cyclopean, of the Cy-  
 clopes, huge one-eyed giants of Sicily†  
 deinde then, thereupon, next†\*  
 dividō, ere, visi, visus divide, distribute†  
 enim for, indeed, surely\*  
 frondeus, a, um leafy†  
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior†\*  
 humus, ī f. ground, soil, earth†\*  
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced†\*  
 maereō, ēre mourn, grieve (for)†  
 malum, ī n. evil, misfortune, trouble†\*  
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus confuse, mix,  
 mingle\*  
 mulceō, ēre, lsi, lsus soothe, calm  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest\*

numerus, ī m. number, multitude\*  
 onerō (1) load, burden†  
 partior, iri, itus distribute, divide†  
 patior, ī, passus suffer, endure\*  
 penitus within, deep(ly), wholly†\*  
 prius first, sooner†  
 quam how, than, as†\*  
 quoque also\*  
 rabiēs, ēi f. rage, madness, fury†  
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 Scyllaeus, a, um of Scylla, a ravenous  
 sea-monster, part woman and part fish,  
 girdled with fierce dogs and destructive  
 to mariners who attempted to sail past  
 her cave situated on a narrow strait  
 opposite the great whirlpool Cha-  
 rrybdis†  
 septem seven  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar†\*  
 Trīnacrīus, a, um Trīnacrīan, Sicilian†  
 turba, ae f. mob, crowd†  
 vīnum, ī n. wine†\*

191. nemora: poetic plural. turbam:  
 the vulgus has now become a panic-  
 stricken and tumultuous turba, a mob.

192. victor: (as) victor; apposition  
 with Aenēas the subject understood.

193. humi: loc.; App. 37, c. numerum  
 (cervōrum). cum nāvibus = cum numerō  
 nāvium. aequet: i.e., one deer for each  
 ship. fundat, aequet: temporal or an-  
 ticipatory with priusquam; App. 376, a.

194. et partitur (cervōs) in (among)  
 omnis sociōs (suōs).

195-197. Deinde vīna, quae bonus  
 Acestor onerā(ve)rat (in) cadis (in)  
 Trīnaciō litore et quae (ille) hērōs de-  
 derat (illis = Teucrīs) abeuntibus,  
 dividit (Aenēas). deinde: two syllables  
 by synizesis; App. 403. onerā(ve)rat:  
 App. 204. cadis: dat. of direction; App.  
 306; or else = in cadis, abl. of place  
 where; App. 319. Vīna...dīvidit  
 (Aenēas).

196. hērōs (Acestor): nom. sing.,  
 Greek forms. Aestes had entertained  
 Aeneas and his comrades during the pre-  
 ceding winter and had furnished them  
 with supplies for the rest of their journey.  
 abeuntibus (Teucrīs): indir. obj. of de-  
 derat.

197. pectora (suōrum sociōrum).

199. Ō (vōs) passi graviōra (mala).  
 his (malis): indir. obj. of dabit; App.  
 295.

201. acces(sis)tis: App. 204. vōs et:  
 correlative with vōs et in l. 200; anaph-  
 ora; App. 413. Cyclōpia: of the Cyclopes,  
 huge one-eyed giants, one of whom, Poly-  
 phemus, had killed and eaten several of  
 the comrades of Ulysses while they were  
 shut up in his cave. Ulysses and his men  
 finally succeeded in blinding Polyphemus  
 and escaping. For the story, see Aeneid,  
 III, ll. 613-638, and the ninth book of  
 Homer's Odyssey.



expertī: revocāte *animōs* maestumque timōrem  
mittite; forsā et haec ōlim meminisse juvābit.

Per variōs cāsūs, per tot discrimina rērum  
tendimus in Latium, sēdēs ubi fāta quietās  
ostendunt; illic fās rēgna resurgere Trojae.

205

Dūrāte, et vōsmet rēbus servāte secundis."

Tālia vōce refert cūrīsque ingentibus aeger  
spem vultū simulat, premit altum corde dolōrem.

Illī sē praedae accingunt dapibusque futūrīs:

210

tergora diripiunt costīs et vīscera nūdant;

pars in frustra secant veribusque trementia figunt,

accingō, ere, inxi, inctus gird†  
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary†\*  
cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings\*  
costa, ae *f.* rib, side†  
daps, dapis *f.* feast, banquet†\*  
diripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear from†  
discrimen, inis *n.* crisis, danger†  
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, suffering\*  
dūrō (1) harden, endure†  
exerior, iri, pertus try, experience†  
fās *n.* indecl. divine will, right, duty\*  
figō, ere, fixi, fixus pierce, fasten†\*  
fors(it)an perhaps, perchance, possibly†  
frustum, ī *n.* piece, part†  
illic there†  
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please†\*  
Latium, (1)l *n.* district of central Italy  
around Rome\*  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy†\*  
memini, isse remember, recall†  
nūdō (1) (lay) bare, strip†

ōlim once, at some time\*  
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, promise†\*  
praeda, ae *f.* booty, prey†  
premo, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,  
control\*  
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful†  
resurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise  
again†  
revocō (1) recall, restore†  
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, divide†\*  
secundus, a, um following, favorable\*  
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign†  
spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation†\*  
tergus, oris, *n.* back, hide†  
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety†  
tot so many\*  
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver†\*  
varius, a, um varied, different†\*  
verū, ūs *n.* broach, spit, spike†  
vīscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh†  
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face†\*

202. experti (estis).

203. mittite: *dismiss.* et = etiam, even.  
haec: obj. of meminisse. forsā et haec,  
etc.: perhaps at some time we shall be  
glad to remember even these things. A  
famous verse, and one often quoted.  
juvābit (nōs): it will please (us), with  
meminisse as subject.

205. tendimus (cursum) in Latium:  
the poet "nods" for a moment, as Aeneas  
is not yet supposed to know anything  
about Latium.

206. fās (est), etc.: it is the divine will  
for the Trojan realm there to rise again.  
rēgna: poetic plural; App. 243.

207. vōsmet: an emphatic form of vōs.

208-222. The Trojans first feast and  
then lament their lost comrades.

208. Tālia (dicta). vōce: contrasted  
with corde of l. 209. refert (Aenēās).  
cūrīs ingentibus: abl. of cause with aeger;  
App. 332. aeger: (although) sick at heart.

209. (in) vultū: abl. of place where  
or means, sharply contrasted with corde.  
corde: abl. of place where or means.  
spem: contrasted with dolōrem. altum  
corde: deep in his heart. spem simulat,  
premit dolōrem: this figure is known as  
*chiasmus*. The contrast is here empha-  
sized by placing the two pairs of words in  
inverse (reverse) order; that is, spem  
begins the first clause and is contrasted  
with dolōrem, which ends the second,  
while simulat ends the first clause and is  
thus contrasted with premit, which be-  
gins the second; App. 420; see the note  
on l. 184.

210. Illi: Teucrī. praedae, dapibus:  
datives of purpose; App. 303; i.e., they  
prepare themselves for the venison and  
the banquet. dapibus: poetic plural.

211. costis: abl. of separation; App.  
320, 340.

212. pars (sociōrum) secant (vīscera)  
in frustra: the use of the plural verb with



- litore aëna locant aliū flammāsque ministrant.  
 Tum victū revocant virīs, fūsique per herbam  
 215 implentur veteris Bacchī pinguisque ferinae.  
 Postquam exēpta famēs epulis mēnsaeque remōtae,  
 āmissōs longō sociōs sermōne requirunt,  
 spemque metumque inter dubiī, seu vivere crēdant  
 sive extrēma patī nec jam exaudire vocātōs.  
 220 Praecipuē pius Aenēās nunc ācris Orontī,  
 nunc Amycī cāsum gemit et crūdēlia sēcum  
 fāta Lycī fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.

acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited†  
 aënum, i n. bronze (vessel, kettle)†  
 amittō, ere, mīsi, missus lose, let  
 go†  
 Amycus, i m. a Trojan†  
 Bacchus, i m. (god of) wine†  
 Cloanthus, i m. a Trojan†  
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust†  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody†  
 dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering†  
 epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast  
 exaudiō, ire, īvi (ii), itus hear, hearken†  
 eximō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus take away, re-  
 move†  
 extrēma, ōrum n. final fate, death†  
 famēs, is f. hunger†  
 ferina, ae f. game, venison†  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant\*  
 gemō, ere, ui, itus groan (for), lament†  
 Gyas, ae, acc. ān, m. a Trojan†  
 herba, ae f. grass, herb(age)†

impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill (with) (gen.)†  
 locō (1) place, locate, establish†  
 Lycus, i m. a Trojan†  
 mēnsa, ae f. table†  
 metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety†  
 ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply  
 Orontēs, is (i, ae) m. Trojan leader  
 patior, i, passus endure, suffer\*  
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile†  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 praecipuē especially†  
 removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove†  
 requirō, ere, quisivī (siī), quisitus seek  
 again, deplore†  
 revocō (1) recall, restore  
 sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech†  
 seu, sive whether, or (if)†  
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation  
 vetus, eris old, former, ancient\*  
 victus, ūs m. living, food, victuals†  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live†

a singular (collective) subject is common in many languages, including English; App. 236, a. trementia (frusta): the flesh of the recently slain animals is still quivering. veribus: abl. of means, App. 331.

213. (in) litore: abl. of place where; App. 319.

214. virīs: acc. pl. of vīs, an i-stem; observe the quantity, distinguishing it from viris, dat. or abl. of vir, man.

215. implentur: a middle voice or reflexive use; they fill themselves; App. 115, 2, a; 309. Bacchī, ferinae: gen. with special verb, impleō; App. 287. Bacchus: god of wine, by metonymy for wine.

216. exēpta (est). mēnsae remōtae (sunt): in Vergil's day the tables were removed at the end of the banquet; so this phrase came to mean simply the end of the feasting. Vergil uses it here in that general sense, as Aeneas and

his companions presumably had no tables.

218. inter spemque metumque dubiī: anastrophe; App. 414. seu (sociōs suōs) vivere crēdant: deliberative indir. quest.; App. 348, 349; the clause is dependent on dubiī, which modifies Teucrī understood as subject of requirunt.

219. extrēma = mortem: euphemism; App. 423. vocātōs (sociōs): refers to the Roman custom (conclāmātiō) of loudly calling the name of the dead three times, as a part of the funeral ceremony.

220. Praecipuē: modifying gemit, not pius. pius: not pious, but devoted, loyal, noble; see note on pietāte (l. 10). Aenēās ācris Orontī (cāsum gemit).

221. sēcum = cum sē; i.e., silently; for the thought compare ll. 208-209.

222. fāta, Gyān, Cloanthum (gemit Aenēās). fortem, fortem: pathetic repetition. Gyān: acc., a Greek form.

*Et jam finis erat, cum Juppiter aethere summō  
dispiciēns mare vēlivolum terrāsque jacentis  
litoraue et lātōs populōs, sic vertice caeli* 225  
*cōstitit et Libyae dēfixit lūmina rēgnīs.  
Atque illum tālis jactantem pectore cūrās  
trīstior et lacrimīs oculōs suffūsa nitentis  
adloquitur Venus: "Ō quī rēs hominumque deumque  
aeternis regis imperiīs et fulmine terrēs,* 230  
*quid meus Aenēās in tē committere tantum,  
quid Trōes potuēre, quibus tot fūnera passis  
cūctus ob Italiam terrārum clauditur orbis?  
Certē hinc Rōmānōs olim volventibus annis,*

adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost†  
aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting\*  
aethēr, eris m. upper air, sky, ether\*  
annus, i m. year\*  
certē certainly, surely†  
claudō, ere, sī, sus close, shut\*  
committō, ere, misī, missus commit†  
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stītus stand (fast),  
rest\*  
dēfigō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten†  
dispiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, discern,  
descry†  
fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning†\*  
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster†\*  
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (outspread, low)\*  
jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder\*

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious†\*  
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa\*  
nitēns, entis bright, shining†  
ob on account of (acc.)  
olim once, at some time\*  
orbis, is m. circle, orb, earth†\*  
patior, i, passus endure, suffer\*  
populus, i m. people, race, nation\*  
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct\*  
Rōmānus, a, um Roman\*  
suffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus fill, suffuse†  
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†  
tot so many\*  
Trōs, Trōis m. Trojan\*  
vēlivolus, a, um winged with sails†  
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty†\*  
vertex, icis m. summit, head, top\*

223-296. Venus complains to Jupiter of the hard lot of the Trojans and of her son Aeneas. Jupiter consoles her with the promise of universal empire for the Trojans through their descendants, the Roman people.

223. finis (epulārum et dictōrum). There is a change of scene from earth to heaven. (dē) aethere summō: abl. of separation with dispiciēns; App. 340.

224. vēlivolum: a transferred epithet, as it refers to the ships on the sea, instead of the sea itself; App. 446.

225. (in) vertice: abl. of place where.

226. lūmina = oculōs. rēgnis: dat. of direction or abl. of place where; App. 306, 319.

227-229. tālis cūrās: such cares as were natural for the father of gods and king of men, with the government of the universe resting on his shoulders. (in) pectore: abl. of place where; App. 319. illum adloquitur Venus. tristior (quam solita): sadder (than was her wont); Venus as goddess of love and beauty, was pro-

verbially laughter-loving. lacrimis: abl. of means; App. 331. nitentis oculōs: acc. of respect with suffūsa, or else object of suffūsa used as a reflexive verb; App. 115, 2, a; 309.

229-230. Ō (tū) quī rēs regis et terrēs. regis: from regō not from rēx. -que...-que: both...and. de(ōr)um.

231. quid meus Aenēās tantum committere (potuit)? = What (so) great offense, etc. quid...quid: anaphora; App. 413.

232. potuēre = potuerunt (committēre). quibus: dat. of reference or of interest; App. 301. fūnera: obj. of passis which modifies quibus; the Trojans had suffered many disasters (fūnera) in the destruction of their city and during the seven years thereafter, while they wandered as homeless exiles.

233. cūctus orbis terrārum: the whole world, an emotional exaggeration or hyperbole. ob Italiam: on account of Italy, which was destined to be the seat of a great new world-power hostile to Juno's cherished plans.

234-237. Certē pollicitus (es) hinc

- 235 *hinc fore ductōrēs, revocātō ā sanguine Teucrī,*  
*quī mare, quī terrās omnīs diciōne tenērent,*  
*pollicitus. Quae tē, genitor, sententia vertit?*  
*Hōc equidem occāsum Trojae trīstisq̄ ruīnās*  
*sōlābar fātis contrāria fāta rependēs;*
- 240 *nunc eadem fortūna virōs tot cāsibus āctōs*  
*insequitur. Quem dās finem, rēx magne, labōrum?*  
*Antēnor potuit mediīs ēlāpsus Achīvīs*  
*Illyricōs penetrāre sinūs atque intima tūtus*  
*rēgna Liburnōrum et fontem superāre Timāvī,*
- 245 *unde per ōra novem vastō cum murmure montis*  
*it mare prōruptum et pelagō premit arva sonantī.*

Achīvus, a, um Achaeen, Greek†  
 Antēnor, ōris m. Trojan leader, fled after  
 the fall of Troy and settled in northern

Italy at Patavium, modern Padua†  
 contrārius, a, um opposite, opposing†  
 diciō, ōnis f. power, rule, sway†

ductor, ōris m. leader, chief  
 ēlābor, i, lāpsus slip out, escape†  
 equidem indeed, surely†\*

fōns, fontis m. fountain, source†  
 Illyricus, a, um Illyrian, Dalmatian, of

Illyria, a region east of the Adriatic†  
 īnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue\*

intimus, a, um inmost†  
 Liburni, orum m. Liburnians, Illyrians

murmur, uris n. murmur, rumble, roar  
 novem nine†

occāsus, ūs m. fall, destruction†

penetrō (1) enter, penetrate†

polliceor, ēri, itus promise, offer†

premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,  
 overwhelm\*

prōruptus, a, um dashing, furious†  
 rependō, ere, i, ēnsus balance, compen-  
 sate†

revocō (1) recall, restore  
 ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin

sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose†

sinus, ūs m. fold, gulf, bay\*

sōlor, āri, ātus console, find consolation  
 fort†

sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*

superō (1) surpass, pass beyond†\*

Teucer (crus), cri m. early king of  
 Troy†

Timāvus, i m. river of northern Italy,  
 runs underground about twenty-five  
 miles and emerges near the upper end  
 of the Adriatic Sea into which it flows  
 with a strong current†

tot so many\*

tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*

unde whence, from which (whom)\*

vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change, rout\*

Rōmānōs (futūrōs esse), hinc ductōrēs  
 fore (= futūrōs esse) ā revocātō sanguine  
 Teucrī. hinc = ex Aenēā et aliis Teucrīs.  
 volventibus annis: as the years roll (by);  
 abl. abs.; App. 343. hinc . . . hinc:  
 anaphora; App. 413. quī . . . quī: anaph-  
 ora; App. 413.

235. fore = futūrōs esse, inf. in indir.  
 disc., dependent on pollicitus (es) in l.  
 237; App. 263, 390. ā revocātō sanguine:  
 explaining hinc.

236. quī . . . tenērent: rel. clause of  
 purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389.

237. Quae tē sententia vertit: what  
 idea turns you (from your earlier plan)?  
 An opinion may change a person as well  
 as a person may change an opinion.

238. Hōc: neut., abl. of cause or means,  
 with this (hope). occāsum sōlābar: I  
 tried to console myself for the fall; a cona-

tive imperfect, denoting attempted ac-  
 tion; App. 351, 2, a.

239. fātis: abl. of means or dat.;  
 App. 331, 304.

240. Observe the asyndeton; App. 418.  
 cāsibus: abl. of means; App. 331.

242. mediīs Achīvīs: from the midst of  
 the Greeks (fighting around Troy).

243. Illyricōs sinūs: the Adriatic was  
 proverbial for its dangers to navigation.  
 Liburnōrum: a wild and savage people,  
 warlike and hostile to strangers. tūtus: in  
 emphatic position, contrasting his present  
 safety with the dangers previously indi-  
 cated.

245. unde = ex quō fonte (Timāvī).  
 Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

246. (Timāvus) it mare prōruptum:  
 (the Timavus) goes (as) a dashing sea, to  
 indicate the great volume, roar, and

*Hic tamen ille urbem Patavī sēdēsque locāvit  
 Teucrōrum et genti nōmen dedit armaque fixit  
 Trōia, nunc placidā compostus pāce quiēscit:  
 nōs, tua prōgeniēs, caeli quibus adnuis arcem,* 250  
*nāvibus (infandum!) āmissis ūnius ob iram  
 prōdimur atque Italīs longē disjungimur ōrīs.  
 Hic pietātis honōs? Sic nōs in scēptra repōnis?"*  
*Ollī subridēns hominum sator atque deōrum  
 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnat,* 255  
*ōscula libāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:  
 "Parce metū, Cytherēa, manent immōta tuōrum*

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise†  
 Amittō, ere, misi, missus lose, let go\*  
 compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus compose,  
 construct, settle  
 Cytherēa, ae f. Venus, goddess of Cyth-  
 era, a Greek island where Venus was  
 born from the foam of the sea†  
 dehinc thence, thereafter  
 disjungō, ere, jūnxi, jūnctus separate,  
 disconnect†  
 figō, ere, fixi, fixus fasten, fix\*  
 homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken†  
 infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed†  
 Italus, a, um Italian  
 libō (l) taste, touch; pour†  
 locō (l) place, locate, establish\*  
 longē far (from), afar\*  
 metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety\*  
 nāta, ae f. daughter†  
 ob on account of (acc.)  
 ōsculum, i n. dainty lip, kiss†

arcō, ere, peperci (parsī), parsus spare  
 (dat.)†  
 Patavium, (i) i n. city of northern Italy,  
 the modern Padua, about twenty miles  
 west of Venice†  
 pāx, pācis f. peace, quiet, rest†  
 pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, duty\*  
 placidus, a, um peaceful, calm, quiet\*  
 prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, be-  
 tray†  
 prōgeniēs, ēi f. offspring, progeny  
 quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose†  
 repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, re-  
 store  
 sator, ōris m. sower; begetter, father†  
 scēptrum, i n. staff, scepter, power  
 serēnō (l) calm, clear†  
 subrideō, ēre, risi smile (at)†  
 tamen nevertheless, however†  
 tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm\*  
 Trōius, a, um Trojan\*  
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face\*

strong current of the river. *pelagō: with  
 its flood (sea).* Observe the alliteration;  
 App. 411.

247. *Hic:* adverb, *here;* observe the  
 quantity. *Patavī:* appositional gen.;  
 App. 281.

248. *arma fixit:* dedicated his arms to  
 some divinity, by hanging them up in the  
 temple as a sign that he was at peace  
 with the world and would need them no  
 more.

249. *nunc:* asyndeton; App. 418.  
*compos(i)tus:* shortened for metrical  
 reasons. Observe the alliteration; App.  
 411.

250. *nōs:* ego (Venus) et Aenēās et  
 alii Teucrī. Observe the effect obtained  
 by asyndeton; App. 418. *tua prōgeniēs:*  
 apposition with *nōs*. Venus was daughter  
 of Jupiter; Aeneas was her son. *caeli*

*arcem:* means that Aeneas shall become  
 a god; for only gods lived in heaven,  
 while ordinary mortals went to Hades  
 after death. *adnuis:* referring to the  
 solemn nod of assent with which Jupiter  
 ratified his promises.

251. *nāvibus āmissis:* abl. abs.; App.  
 343. *ūnius = Jūnōnis.*

253. (estne) *hic:* for *hoc;* attracted  
 to the masculine gender of the predicate  
 noun *honōs;* App. 240, a.

254. *Ollī = illi:* dat. with compound;  
 App. 298.

256. *tālia (dicta).* *nātae:* added to in-  
 dicate that the kiss is due to the tender  
 affection of a father for his daughter.  
*dehinc:* one syllable by synizesis; App.  
 403.

257. *metū = metui:* dat. with special  
 verb; App. 297.



- fāta tibi; cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī  
moenia sublimemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī*  
260 *magnanimum Aenēān; neque mē sententia vertit.*  
*Hic tibi (fābor enim, quandō haec tē cūra remordet,*  
*longius et volvēns fātōrum arcāna movēbō)*  
*bellum ingēns geret Italiā populōsque ferōcis*  
*contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet,*  
265 *tertia dum Latiō rēgnantem viderit aestās,*  
*ternaque trānsierint Rutulīs hiberna subāctīs.*  
*At puer Ascanius, cui nunc cognōmen Iūlō*  
*additur (Iūs erat, dum rēs stetit Iliā rēgnō),*  
*trīgintā magnōs volvēndīs mēnsibus orbīs*

addō, ere, didī, dītus add†  
aestās, ātis f. summer†  
arcānum, ī n. secret, mystery†  
Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas†  
cognōmen, inis n. (sur)name, cognomen†  
contundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus bruise,  
crush†  
enim for, indeed, truly\*  
ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild†  
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus carry (on), wage\*  
hiberna, ōrum n. winter (quarters)†  
Ilius, a, um Ilian, Trojan†  
Iūs, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas†  
Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas†  
Latium, (i)ī n. district of central Italy\*  
Lavinium, (i)ī n. city in central Italy†  
longē far (from), afar\*  
magnanimus, a, um great-souled†

mēnsis, is m. month†  
mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, law†  
orbis, is m. circle, orb, revolution\*  
populus, ī m. people, race, nation\*  
prōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus promise\*  
quandō when, since†  
rēgnō (l) rule, reign  
remordeō, ēre, dī, rsus gnaw, trouble†  
Rutulus, a, um Rutulian, of the Rutulians  
a tribe of central Italy†  
sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose  
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus subdue†  
sublimis, e on high, aloft, uplifted†  
terni, ae, a three (each), by threes†  
tertius, a, um third†  
trānseō, ire, īi, (ivi), itus pass (by)†  
trīgintā thirty†  
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout\*

258. tibi: dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

259. sublimem: Aeneas shall become a god in heaven; an answer to Venus's complaint in l. 250.

260. neque mē sententia vertit: an answer to the reproachful question of Venus in l. 237. Aenēān: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

261. Hic (Aenēās): subject of geret, l. 263. tibi: dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

262. longius . . . volvens: unrolling (the scroll) of the fates farther. In classical times books were written in the form of scrolls.

263. (Aenēās) bellum ingēns geret: referring to the war with Turnus in Italy, described in the last six books of the *Aeneid*. (in) Italiā: abl. of place where; App. 319.

264. mōrēs, moenia; alliteration; App. 411. virīs (suis).

265. dum viderit, trānsierint: future perf. with dum; App. 373. (Aenēān) rēgnantem.

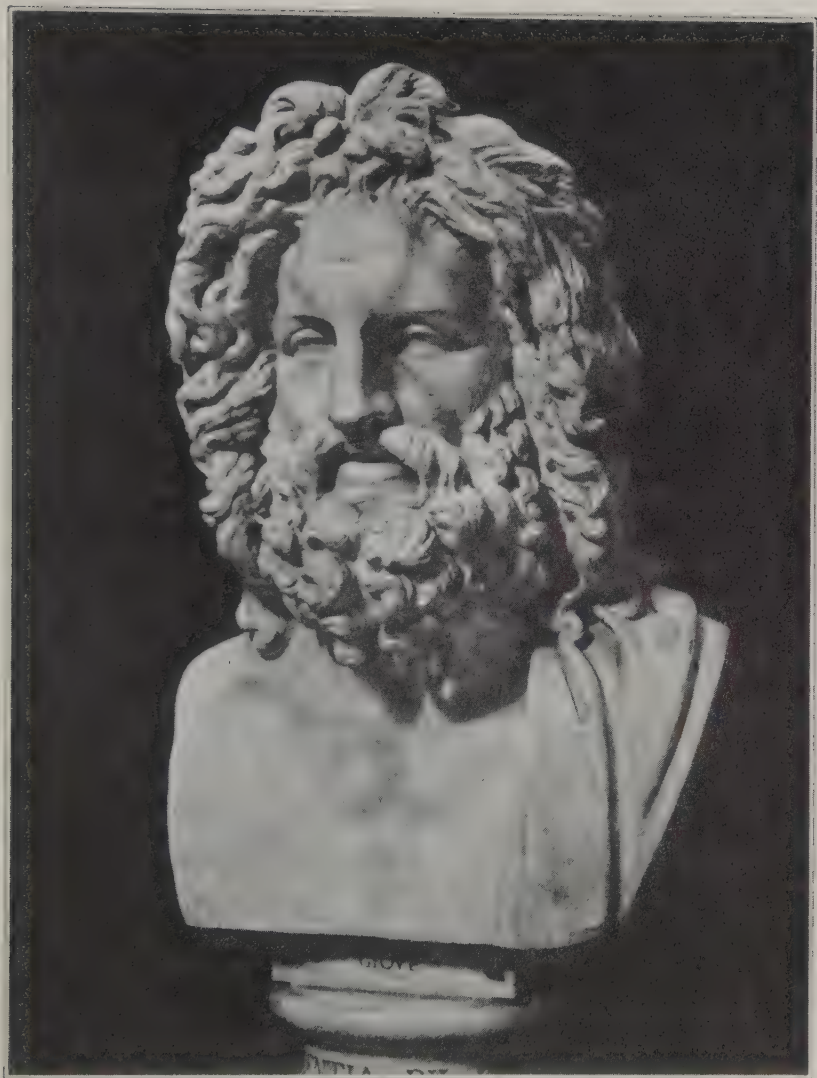
266. Rutulīs subāctīs: abl. abs. or dat. of reference; App. 343, 301. The Rutuli were a native Italian tribe hostile to Aeneas but whom he finally subdued. terna: three; the distributive is often employed instead of the cardinal with words used only in the plural. hiberna, winter quarters, hence winters, years.

267. Iūlō: dat. attracted to the case of cui; App. 242, b. A reminder that the family of Julius Caesar, including Augustus, was descended from Aeneas, through Ascanius (Iulus). Iūs erat (cognōmen). rēs Iliā: the Ilian (Trojan) state.

268. rēgnō: abl. of respect; App. 325. dum stetit: App. 371.

269. orbīs (annōrum): circles of years. poetic for years. volvēndīs mēnsibus: with their swift passing months; abl. of quality or means, App. 330, 331.





*Alinari, Rome*

JUPITER

*Vatican Museum*



*Alinari, Rome*

*National Museum*

### MARS

In spite of his being god of War, Mars is frequently represented as a young and handsome boy.

*imperio explebit, regnumque ab sede Lavini  
transferet, et Longam multā vī mūniet Albam.  
Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos  
gente sub Hectoreā, donec regina sacerdos  
Marte gravis geminam partū dabit Ilia prolem.  
Inde lupae fulvō nutricis tegmine laetus  
Romulus excipiet gentem et Mavortia condet  
moenia Romanosque suō dē nomine dicet.  
His ego nec mētās rerum nec tempora pōnō:*

270

275

**Alba**, *ae f.* Alba Longa, city of central Italy†  
**annus**, *i m.* year\*  
**centum** hundred†\*  
**condō**, *ere, didi, ditus* found, establish\*  
**dōnec** until, while, as long as†  
**excipiō**, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* take (up), inherit†  
**expleō**, *ēre, ēvi, ētus* fill (out), fulfil†  
**fulvus**, *a, um* tawny, yellow†  
**gravis**, *e* heavy, grievous, pregnant\*  
**Hectoreus**, *a, um* Hectorean, of Hector, leader of the Trojans†  
**Ilus**, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan†  
**inde** thence, afterward†\*  
**Lavinium**, (*i*) *n.* city of central Italy  
**Longa**, *ae f.* Alba Longa, a city in central Italy, mother city of Rome

**lupa**, *ae f.* she-wolf†  
**Mars**, *Martis m.* god of war†  
**Mavortius**, *a, um* Martian, of Mars, god of war†  
**mēta**, *ae f.* goal, limit, bound†  
**mūniō**, *ire, ivi (ii), itus* fortify†  
**nūtrix**, *icis f.* nurse†  
**partus**, *ūs m.* birth, offspring†  
**prōlēs**, *is f.* offspring, progeny\*  
**regnō** (*i*) rule, reign  
**Rōmānus**, *a, um* Roman\*  
**Rōmulus**, *i m.* legendary founder of Rome, son of Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal virgin†  
**sacerdōs**, *ōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)†\*  
**teg(i)men**, *inis n.* covering, skin†  
**ter** thrice, three times\*  
**trānsferō**, *ferre, tuli, lātus* transfer†

**270.** *Lavini*: appositional gen.; App. 281. Aeneas founded Lavinium, Ascanius founded Alba Longa.

**271.** *Longam Albam = Alba Longa*; according to tradition, Rome was founded from Alba Longa, a city situated on a long (*Longa*) white (*Alba*) ridge. *multā vī mūniet*: alliteration; App. 411.

**272.** *Hic*: in Alba Longa. *regnabitur*: impersonal, *royal power shall be exercised*. *annōs*: acc. of duration of time; App. 314.

**273-274.** *Hectoreā = Trojānā*, since Hector was the crown prince and the greatest of the Trojans. *regina sacerdos*: a princess priestess (of Vesta); she was the daughter of King Numitor, and her name was Rhea Silvia. *donec Ilia regina sacerdos gravis Marte dabit prolem geminam partū. Ilia (sacerdos)*: another name for Rhea Silvia to indicate her connection with *Ilus* (l. 268) and with *Ilium* (Troy). *Marte gravis*: pregnant by Mars, the god of war. *geminam prolem*: Romulus and Remus. *partū dabit*: shall give by birth, shall bear.

**275.** *Inde*: temporal, then. *lupae fulvō*

*nutricis tegmine*: interlocked order; App. 442. *lupae nutricis*: refers to the well known story that Romulus and Remus were suckled by a she-wolf. *fulvō tegmine*: abl. of cause with the adj. *laetus*; App. 332. As a mark of honor to his foster mother Romulus wore a wolfskin.

**276.** *Mavortia*: Romulus, the founder of Rome, was the son of Mars (*Mavors*), the patron deity of Rome.

**277.** *dicet (= vocabit)* (gentem) *Rōmānōs*: the name Romans being thus fancifully derived from Romulus, in accordance with the well-established legend.

**278.** *His (Rōmānis)*: dat. of reference; App. 301. *tempora = mētās temporum*. *imperium sine fine (Rōmānis) dedi*: a magnificent climax; Aeneas is to rule three years after his victory over the Italian tribes (ll. 265-266), Ascanius for thirty years (l. 269), while Rome is to have dominion world without end. To preserve the symmetry, Vergil represents Alba Longa as ruling three hundred instead of four hundred years, according to the more generally accepted account.

- 280 *imperium sine fine dedī. Quīn aspera Jūnō,*  
*quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatigat,*  
*cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit*  
*Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātā.*  
*Sic placitum. Veniet lūstris lābentibus aetās*  
 285 *cum domus Assaracī Phthiam clārāsque Mycēnās*  
*servitiō premet ac victīs dominābitur Argīs.*  
*Nāscētur pulchrā Trojānus origine Caesar,*  
*imperium Ōceanō, fāmam quī terminet astrīs,*  
*Julius, ā magnō dēmissum nōmen Iūlō.*

aetās, ātis *f.* age, time†

Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, city of southern Greece, home of Diomedes, a Greek chieftain against Troy

asper, era, erum *harsh, rough, fierce\**

Assaracus, i *m.* early king of Troy†

astrum, i *n.* star, constellation†\*

Caesar, aris *m.* (1) Julius Caesar;

(2) Augustus Caesar†

clārus, a, um *clear, bright, illustrious†\**

cōnsilium, (i) i *n.* plan, advice†

dēmittō, ere, misi, missus *send down, drop, lower, derive†\**

dominor, āri, ātus *rule (over) (dat.)†*

dominus, i *m.* lord, master†

fatigō (1) *weary, tire (out)†*

foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus *cherish, fondle*

Iūlus, i *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

Jūlius, (i) i *m.* (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†

lūstrum, i *n.* space of five years, sacred season†

melior, ius *better, superior†*

metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety\*

Mycēnae, ārum *f.* city of central Greece, home of Agamemnon, leader of the Greek expedition against Troy†

nāscor, i, nātus *be born, arise\**

Ōceanus, i *m.* ocean†

origō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source†

Phthia, ae *f.* city and district of northern Greece, home of Achilles, a Greek chieftain against Troy†

placeō, ēre, ui, itus *please (dat.)†*

premō, ere, pressi, pressus *(re)press, subject\**

pulcher, chra, chrum *beautiful, handsome, illustrious\**

quīn *nay (even), (but) that†\**

Rōmānus, a, um *Roman\**

servitium, (i) i *n.* slavery, bondage†

sine *without (abl.)\**

terminō (1) *bound, limit†*

togātus, a, um *toga-clad†*

Trojānus, a, um *Trojan\**

279. Quīn: *yes, even;* introducing an almost unbelievable statement.

280. metū: *abl. of means;* App. 331; because of her fear for Carthage, as represented in ll. 19 ff.; cf. *id metuēns* in l. 23.

281. in melius: *for the better.*

282. rērum: *of the world. -que:* explicative, adding an explanatory statement. togātā: the toga was the characteristic Roman dress.

283. Sic placitum (est): "It is thus decreed." lūstris lābentibus: *abl. abs.; as the years go gliding by;* note the alliteration; App. 411.

284. domus Assaracī: *the house of Assaracus, a Trojan prince; i.e., the Romans, descendants of the Trojans, shall some day conquer and rule Greece. Greece was reduced to a Roman province in 146 B.C.*

285. victīs Argīs: *dat. with special verb or abl. of place where;* App. 297, 319.

286. pulchrā Trojānus origine Caesar: *interlocked order;* App. 442. pulchrā origine: *abl. of quality;* App. 330. Trojānus Caesar: *Augustus, who traced his ancestry back to Aeneas.*

287. (quī) imperium Ōceanō (terminet). quī terminet: *rel. clause of purpose;* App. 388. Ōceanō: *abl. of means. The ancients thought that Oceanus was a great river which flowed around the earth. Cf. Paradise Lost, 12, 369-371:*

"He shall ascend

The throne hereditary, and bound his reign

With earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens."

288. Jūlius: *in apposition with Caesar (in l. 286), and referring to Augustus*



<i>Hunc tū ōlim caelō spoliis Orientis onustum accipiēs sēcūra; vocābitur hic quoque vōtis.</i>	290
<i>Aspera tum positis mītēscent saecula bellis; cāna Fidēs et Vesta, Remō cum frātre Quirīnus jūra dabunt; dirae ferrō et compāgibus artis claudentur Belli portae; Furor impius intus saeva sedēns super arma et centum vinctus aēnis</i>	295

**aēnus**, *a, um* (of) bronze, brazen†  
**artus**, *a, um* close (fitting)†\*  
**asper**, *era, erum* harsh, rough, fierce\*  
**cānus**, *a, um* white, gray, hoary†  
**centum** hundred\*  
**claudō**, *ere, sī, sus* (in)close, fasten\*  
**compāgēs**, *is f.* joint, seam, fastening  
**dirus**, *a, um* dire, awful†\*  
**Fidēs**, *ei f.* Faith, Honor†  
**frāter**, *tris m.* brother\*  
**Furor**, *ōris m.* Madness, Rage, Frenzy  
**impius**, *a, um* unholy, impious, dis-loyal†  
**intus** within  
**jūs, jūris n.** justice, law, right†  
**mītescō**, *ere* become mild†

**ōlim** once, at some time\*  
**onustus**, *a, um* laden, burdened†  
**Oriēs**, *entis m.* Orient, the East†  
**porta**, *ae f.* door, gate, opening\*  
**Quirīnus**, *i m.* Romulus, legendary founder of Rome†  
**quoque** also\*  
**Remus**, *i m.* twin brother of Romulus†\*  
**saeculum**, *i n.* age, generation†  
**saevus**, *a, um* cruel, fierce, stern\*  
**sēcūrus**, *a, um* free from care, untroubled†  
**sedeō**, *ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*\*  
**spolium**, (*i*) *n.* spoils, booty, plunder†  
**Vesta**, *ae f.* goddess of the hearth†  
**vinciō**, *ire, vīxi, vinctus* bind, tie†  
**vōtum**, *i n.* prayer, vow†\*

Caesar who as the adopted son of Julius Caesar took this name. The name Julius was fancifully derived from Iulus, and the latter from Ilus, thus connecting the word with Ilus, one of the early kings of Ilium (Troy). Cf. note on l. 267.

**289.** (in) **caelō**: refers to the deification of Augustus, who was worshipped as a god and as the son of a god, Julius Caesar, even during his lifetime. **Hunc spoliis Orientis onustum**: refers to Augustus Caesar's conquests in the Orient, especially to his recovery from the Parthians of the Roman standards they had captured from Crassus in 53. B.C., and to his victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 B.C.

**290.** **sēcūra**: adjective modifying **tū** which is subject of **accipiēs**. **hic** (Caesar) **quoque**: *he also*, as well as Aeneas, will be worshipped (**vocābitur**) as a god; see ll. 259-260.

**291.** **positis bellis**: *abl. abs.*; App. 343. A prophecy of the golden age of peace, when all wars shall cease. **Aspera positis saecula bellis**: interlocked order; App. 442. This and the following lines (292-296) refer to the expected return of the Golden Age, which was ardently hoped for and often prophesied in antiquity, when all the world would be good

and happy; faith and honor and peace and love would prevail: and sin and wickedness, suffering and sorrow, would be no more.

**292.** **cāna Fidēs**: one of the earliest shrines at Rome was dedicated to the goddess Fides. This line is usually interpreted symbolically: Fides and Vesta represent the honor and sanctity of the old Roman home, while the reconciliation of Romulus and Remus, once estranged, symbolizes the reconciliation of the two chief parties at Rome, long engaged in deadly civil war.

**293.** **ferrō et compāgibus artis**: *abl.* of means with **claudentur**, l. 294.

**294.** **claudentur Belli portae**: apparently referring to the temple of Janus, the doors of which were opened in time of war and closed in time of peace. Augustus closed the temple in 29 B.C., after it had remained continuously opened for more than two centuries. It had been closed only twice before since the foundation of Rome. **impius**: referring to the unholy spirit of civil war.

**295.** **saeva sedēns super**: alliteration; App. 411.

**295-296.** **vinctus post tergum**: (his hands) *bound behind his back*. **ōre**: *abl.* of means or cause, with **fremet**; App.



post tergum nōdis fremet horridus ōre cruentō."

*Haec ait et Majā genitum dēmittit ab altō,  
ut terrae utque novae pateant Karthāginis arcēs  
hospitiō Teucrīs, nē fātī nescia Didō*

300

*finibus arcēret. Volat ille per āera magnum  
rēmigiō ālārū ac Libyae citus astitit ōrīs.*

*Et jam jussa facit, pōnuntque ferōcia Poeni  
corda volente deō; in primīs rēgīna quiētum  
accipit in Teucrōs animum mentemque benignam.*

405

*At pius Aenēās per noctem plūrima volvēns,  
ut primum lūx alma data est, exire locōsque*

āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, mist, fog†  
āla, ae f. wing†\*  
almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)†  
altum, i n. the deep (sea); heaven  
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend  
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (on, at) (dat.)\*  
benignus, a, um kind(ly), benign†  
citus, a, um quick, swift†  
cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings\*  
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel†  
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down,  
drop\*  
exeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus go out†  
ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild  
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar\*  
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget†  
horridus, a, um horrible, bristling†

hospitium, (i) i n. hospitality, welcome†  
jussum, i n. command, order  
Karthāgō, inis f. great commercial city  
of North Africa, rival of Rome  
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa\*  
Maja, ae f. daughter of Atlas and mother  
of Mercury, messenger of the gods†  
nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware†  
nōdus, i m. knot†  
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend†  
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Cartha-  
ginian†  
post behind, after (acc.); after(ward)†\*  
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful  
rēmigium, (i) i n. oarage, rowing†  
tergum, i n. back, hide, rear  
volō (1) fly, speed\*

331, 332. fremet: from rage at not being able to indulge in his favorite sport of encouraging fratricidal strife.

297-304. Mercury is sent to Dido, at Carthage, to prepare the way for Aeneas and the Trojans.

297. ait: third sing. of ajō. Majā: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. Majā genitum: the son of Maja.

298-300. pateant, arcēret: purpose; App. 359; observe the difference in tense, made possible by the fact that the principal verb, dēmittit, as a historical present may be considered either primary or secondary; App. 353, a; 351, 1, a.

299. hospitiō Teucrīs: two datives; App. 301, 303; or hospitiō may be abl. of manner; App. 328. fātī nescia Didō: i.e., Dido might not know that the Trojans were fated to settle in Italy and might repel them from her land as possible invaders.

300. (ā) finibus. (Teucrōs) arcēret: negative purpose; App. 359. āera: acc. sing. from āēr, a Greek form; App. 68.

301. rēmigiō: abl. of means; App. 331; a metaphor from the sea; App. 432. astitit: perfect, to denote instantaneous action, after the historical present, volat. (in) ōrīs.

303. deō volente: abl. abs.; App. 343. in primis: among the first, especially. rēgīna: Dido.

304. in: toward.

305-417. Aeneas sets out to explore the unknown region, and meets his mother Venus disguised as a huntress. The goddess tells him that he is near Carthage, relates the history of Dido, announces the safety of his remaining ships, resumes her form as a divinity, and disappears.

305. plūrima (mente) volvēns.

306-309. ut primum: when first, as soon as. exire, explārare, quaerere, referre: depend on cōstituit in l. 309. Aenēās cōstituit exire locōsque novōs explārare, quaerere quās ōrās accesserit ventō (et quaerere) qui teneant (illōs locōs) referreque exācta sociīs (suīs).

explorāre novās, quās ventō accesserit ōrās,  
quī teneant (nam inculta videt), hominēsne feraene,  
quaerere cōstituit sociisque exācta referre.

Classē in convexō nemorum sub rūpe cavātā 310  
arboribus clausam circum atque horrentibus umbrīs  
occulit; ipse ūnō graditur comitātus Achātē  
bīna manū lātō crispāns hastilia ferrō.

Cui māter mediā sēsē tulit obvia silvā  
virginis ōs habitumque gerēs et virginis arma 315  
Spartānae, vel quālis equōs Thrēissa fatigat  
Harpalcē volucremque fugā praevertitur Hebrum.  
Namque umerīs dē mōreabilem suspenderat arcum

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach, reach  
Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
arbōs (or), oris f. tree†\*  
arcus, ūs m. bow\*  
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos†  
cavō (1) hollow (out)†  
claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, hem in\*  
comitō (1) accompany, attend†  
cōstitutō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, resolve†  
convexum, i n. hollow, valley, sky†  
crispō, āre, ātus brandish, wave†  
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out; deter-  
mine, discover  
explorō (1) explore, search (out)  
fatigō (1) weary, tire (out)  
fera, ae f. wild beast, animal†  
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wear\*  
gradior, i, gressus march, go, proceed†  
habilis, e easily handled, handy†  
habitus, ūs m. appearance, garb†  
Harpalcē, ēs f. Thracian princess and  
huntress, renowned for her speed†

hastile, is n. spear(-shaft), lance†  
Hebrus, i m. slow Thracian river which  
Vergil thought fast†  
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, hu-  
man\*  
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble\*  
incultus, a, um untilled, wild†  
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*  
mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, law\*  
nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest\*  
obvius, a, um in the way, to meet (dat.)†  
occulō, ere, uī, ltus hide, conceal†  
praevertor, i, rsus outstrip, surpass†  
quālis, e of what kind, such (as)†\*  
rūpēs, is f. cliff, crag, rock\*  
Spartānus, a, um Spartan, of Sparta, in  
southern Greece†  
suspendō, ere, i, ēnsus suspend, hang†\*  
Thrēissa, ae f. Thracian, of Thrace, a  
district northeast of Greece†  
virgō, inis f. girl, maid(en)†\*  
volucer, cris, cre swift, winged†\*

307. quās (ōrās) accesserit, quī (eās)  
teneant: indir. questions dependent on  
quaerere; App. 349. ventō: abl. of  
means or cause; App. 331, 332.

308. (ea esse) inculta: ea is neuter  
plural and refers to both locōs and ōrās,  
one a masc. and the other a fem. noun;  
for its gender see App. 239, b. videt:  
with the final syllable long under the  
metrical accent and before the pause;  
App. 394, a. hominēsne feraene (sint).  
-ne, -ne: whether, or.

309. sociis: indirect object. exācta:  
substantively, the things determined,  
learned.

311. horrentibus umbrīs: a trans-  
ferred epithet; horrentibus belongs logi-  
cally to the trees (arboribus) but is  
transferred to their shadows (umbrīs);  
App. 446. Cf. horrenti umbrā (l. 165)  
and note. circum: adverb, round about.

312. ipse (Aenēas): the master; see  
note on ipsius (l. 114). ūnō = sōlō, a  
common meaning. ūnō Achātē: abl. of  
accompaniment without the preposition  
or ablative of means.

313. bīna: this distributive numeral is  
often used instead of the cardinal duo with  
objects that go in pairs. manū: abl. of  
place or means. lātō ferrō: with broad  
iron (point); abl. of quality; App. 330.

314. Cui: Aeneas, dat. with obvia  
which modifies māter. (in) mediā silvā.

316. vel (tālis virginis) quālis...  
fatigat Harpalcē: or (of) such a girl as  
the Thracian Harpalyce (when she) tires  
the horses (by outstripping them in a  
race).

317. Harpalcē: nom., a Greek form.  
fugā: in her swift course. abl. of means;  
App. 331.

318. (dē or in) umeris.

- vēnātrix *dederatque* comam diffundere ventīs,  
 320 nūda genū nōdōque sinūs collēcta fluentis.  
*Ac* prior "Heus," inquit, "juvenēs, mōnstrāte, meārum  
*vidistis sī quam hīc errantem forte sorōrum*  
*succinctam pharetrā et maculōsae tegmine lyncis.*  
*aut spūmantis aprī cursum clāmōre prementem."*  
 325 *Sic* Venus; *et Veneris contrā sīc* filius orsus:  
*"Nulla tuārum audita mihī neque vīsa sorōrum,*  
*Ō quam tē memorem, virgō? Namque haud tibi vultus*  
*mortālis, nec vōx hominem sonat; Ō, dea certē*  
*(an Phoebi soror? An nymphārum sanguinis ūna?),*  
 330 *sīs fēlix nostrumque levēs, quaecumque, labōrem*

an *interrog.* or, whether†\*  
 aper, pri *m.* wild boar†  
 certē certainly, surely  
 colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, col-  
 lect  
 coma, ae *f.* hair†\*  
 contrā opposite, in turn\*  
 diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus scatter†  
 fēlix, icis happy, blessed; propitious†\*  
 filius, (i) *m.* son†  
 fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow†  
 genū, ūs *n.* knee†  
 heus ho! hallo!†  
 homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
 inquam, is, it say†\*  
 juvenis, is *m.* (f.) youth, young (man,  
 woman)†\*  
 levō (l) lift, lighten  
 līnx, lyncis *m.* (f.) lynx, wild cat†  
 maculōsus, a, um spotted†  
 memorō (l) recount, (re)call, relate\*  
 mōnstrō (l) show, point out†\*  
 mortālis, e mortal, human†\*  
 nōdus, i *m.* knot

nūdus, a, um nude, bare†  
 nympha, ae *f.* nymph, a minor divinity,  
 represented in the form of a beautiful  
 maiden  
 ordior, iri, orsus begin, undertake†  
 pharetra, ae *f.* quiver†  
 Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,  
 and prophecy, brother of Diana, god-  
 dess of the chase†\*  
 premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,  
 control, pursue\*  
 prior, ius former, first†\*  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
 whoever, whichever, whatever\*  
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold, hollow, bay\*  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 soror, ōris *f.* sister, comrade\*  
 spūmō (l) foam, froth, spray†\*  
 succingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird (up)†  
 teg(i)men, inis *n.* cover(ing), skin  
 vēnātrix, icis *f.* huntress†  
 Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty\*  
 virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)\*  
 vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face\*

319. vēnātrix: (as a) huntress. diffun-  
 dere: the inf. of purpose, a poetic use;  
 App. 261.

320. genū: acc. of respect; App. 311.  
 sinūs: acc., object of collēcta used as a  
 middle voice; App. 309; refers to her  
 flowing robes.

321. prior: first, before Aeneas could  
 speak.

322. quam: indef., any (one). sī  
 vidistis quam meārum sorōrum hīc er-  
 rantem, mōnstrāte (eam mihī).

325. Sic Venus (dixit). Venus, Ve-  
 neris filius: brought together in the  
 sentence, emphasizing that Venus and  
 Aeneas do not here meet as mother and  
 son. orsus (est).

326. Nulla (soror). audita (est) mihī.  
 mihī: dat. of agent; App. 302; for the  
 length of the final i, see the note on mihī,  
 (l. 8).

327. quam tē (esse) memorem: whom  
 (what) shall I call you? memorem is  
 deliberative subj.; App. 348. tibi: dat.  
 of possession. vultus (est) mortālis.

328. nec vōx hominem sonat: nor does  
 your voice sound human; hominem is  
 cognate acc.; App. 313.

329. an Phoebi soror (es)? Phoebi  
 soror: i.e., Phoebe, Diana, "the huntress  
 queen, chaste and fair." sanguinis =  
 generis: part. gen. with ūna.

330. sis, levēs: vol. or opt. subj.;  
 App. 253, 254. quaecumque (es).

*et quō sub caelō tandem, quibus orbis in ōris  
jactēmur doceās; ignārī hominumque locōrumque  
errāmus ventō hūc vastīs et flūctibus actī:  
multa tibi ante ārās nostrā cadet hostia dextrā."*

*Tum Venus: "Haud equidem tālī mē dignor honōre; 335  
virginibus Tyriīs mōs est gestāre pharetram  
purpureōque altē sūrās vincīre coturnō.  
Pūnica rēgna vidēs, Tyriōs et Agēnoris urbem;  
sed finēs Libycī, genus intractābile bellō.  
Imperium Dīdō Tyriā regit urbe profecta, 340  
germānum fugiēns. Longa est injūria, longae  
ambāgēs; sed summa sequar fastigia rērum.  
Huic conjūnx Sŷchaeus erat, dītissimus agrī*

Agēnor, oris *m.* king of Phoenicia†  
ager, grī *m.* land, field, territory†\*  
altē on high, high up†  
ambāgēs, is *f.* turning, devious tale†  
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
cot(h)urnus, ī *m.* high boot, buskin†  
dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy (*abl.*)†  
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†  
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell†\*  
equidem indeed, surely\*  
fastigium, (i)ī *n.* summit, top, point†  
germānus, ī *m.* brother†\*  
gestō (1) bear, wear, carry†  
homō, inis *m. (f.)* man, mortal, hu-  
man\*  
hostia, ae *f.* victim, sacrifice†  
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, insult, injustice

intractābilis, e unmanageable, intract-  
able†  
jactō (1) toss, buffet\*  
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-  
trict of North Africa†\*  
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law\*  
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, world\*  
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver  
proficiscor, ī, fectus set out, depart†  
Pūnicus, a, um Phoenician, Punic,  
Carthaginian†  
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson†  
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct\*  
sūra, ae *f.* (calf of) leg†  
Sŷchaeus, ī *m.* deceased husband of Dido†  
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty\*  
vinciō, ire, vīxi, vinctus bind, tie  
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)\*

331-332. *et (mē) doceās sub quō caelō  
tandem (jactēmur), in quibus ōris orbis  
(terrārum) jactēmur. quō sub caelō ...  
jactēmur:* indir. quest.; App. 349. *do-  
ceās:* vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254.  
-que: with the final *e* elided before the  
initial vowel of the next verse. Such a  
verse is called *hypermetric*; App. 402.

333. *ventō, flūctibus:* *abl.* of means;  
App. 331. *vastīs:* construe with *flūcti-  
bus*.

334. *multa hostia cadet tibi nostrā  
dextrā (manū) ante ārās (tuās):* Aeneas  
promises a generous sacrifice to this un-  
known goddess, if she will grant his  
prayer. He wishes to make a good  
bargain, representing the proverbial *dō  
ut dēs* of Roman religion. *nostrā (= meā)  
dextrā (manū):* *abl.* of means.

335-336. *Tum Venus (dixit). honōre:*  
*abl.* with *dignor*; App. 337, *u.* *virginibus:*  
*dat.* of possession or reference; App.  
299, 301. *Tyriīs:* Carthage was settled

from Tyre; cf. *Tyrī tenuēre colōni*  
(l. 12).

336-337. "Do not think me a goddess  
because I bear a bow and quiver, and am  
dressed in hunting costume. This is  
customary among Tyrian girls."

337. *purpureō:* Tyrian "purple"  
(really *scarlet*) was famous.

338. *Pūnica:* a word related to  
*Phoenician*. Agēnoris: as a Phoenician  
settlement, Carthage could be called the  
city of Agenor, founder of the Phoenician  
race.

339. *finēs (sunt) Libycī. genus:* in ap-  
position with Libyans, implied in *Libycī*.

340. (ex) *Tyriā urbe profecta:* *having  
come from Tyre*.

341. *Longa est injūria = longum est  
dicere (nārrāre) injūriam: the story of  
her wrongs is a long one. longae (sunt).*

343. *Huic (Didōni):* *dat.* of possession;  
App. 299. *agri:* *gen.* with *adj.*, *dītis-  
simus:* App. 287; *richest in land*.



- Phoenicū, *et magnō miserae* dilēctus amōre,  
 345 *cui pater intāctam dederat primīsque* jugārat  
 ōminibus. *Sed rēgna* Tyri germānus habēbat  
 Pygmaliōn, scelere ante aliōs immānior omnīs.  
*Quōs inter medius vēnit furor.* Ille Sychaeum  
 impius ante ārās atque aurī caecus amōre  
 350 clam ferrō incautum superat, sēcūrus amōrum  
 germānae; factumque diū cēlāvit et aegram  
*multa* malus simulāns vānā spē lūsit amantem.  
*Īpsa sed in somnīs* inhumātī vēnit imāgō  
 conjugis ōra modīs attollēns pallida mīris;  
 355 crūdēlis ārās trājectaque pectora ferrō  
 nūdāvit, caecumque domūs scelus omne retēxit.

aeger, gra, grum sick (at heart), weary\*  
 amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover†  
 attollō, ere lift, raise†\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark†\*  
 cēlō (1) hide, conceal†  
 clam secretly†  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce\*  
 diligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish†  
 diū a long time, long†  
 factum, i *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit†\*  
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, rage\*  
 germāna, ae *f.* sister  
 germānus, i *m.* brother\*  
 imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost†\*  
 impius, a, um unholy, unnatural, dis-  
 loyal  
 incautus, a, um unsuspecting, careless†  
 inhumātus, a, um unburied†  
 intāctus, a, um untouched, virgin†  
 jugō (1) join, unite, yoke together†  
 lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, deceive, mock†

malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked\*  
 mirus, a, um wonderful, marvelous†  
 modus, i *m.* manner, measure†\*  
 nūdō (1) bare, expose  
 ōmen, inis *n.* omen, auspices†\*  
 pallidus, a, um pale†  
 Phoenix, icis *m.* Phoenician†  
 Pygmaliōn, ōnis *m.* wicked brother of  
 Dido†  
 retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus uncover, dis-  
 close†  
 scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin†\*  
 sēcūrus, a, um free from care, careless,  
 heedless (*gen.*)  
 simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign  
 spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation\*  
 superō (1) overcome, surpass; kill\*  
 Sychaeus, i *m.* deceased husband of Dido  
 trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus pierce†  
 Tyrus, i *f.* famous city of Phoenicia†  
 vānus, a, um empty, idle, false†

344. (Didōnī) *miserae*: dat. of agent; App. 302.

345. *pater* = Bēlus. (*eam* = Didōnem) *intāctam*. jugā(ve)rat. ōminibus: abl. of means; App. 331; by metonymy for *marriage*, since the omens were always consulted for weddings; App. 433.

347. *scelere*: abl. of respect with *immānior*; App. 325.

348-351. *inter quōs* = *inter Pygmaliōnem et Sychaeum*; anastrophe; App. 414. Ille (= Pygmaliōn) *impius atque caecus amōre aurī, sēcūrus amōrum germānae (suae), clam ferrō superat Sychaeum incautum ante ārās*. Observe how strongly the speaker portrays the wicked character of Pygmalion and his disregard for all human or divine considerations.

349. *amōre*: abl. of cause; App. 332

350. *amōrum*: obj. gen. with adj. *sēcūrus*; App. 284; *reckless of his sister's love* (for her husband).

351. *aegram*: modifies *amantem*, which is used substantively, *lover, loving wife*.

352. *multa simulāns*: to account for the absence of Sychaeus. *lūsit vānā spē* (Didōnem) *aegram amantem*; *sed ipsa imāgō inhumātī conjugis* (Sychaei) *vēnit in somnīs* (ad *eam* = Didōnem).

353. *inhumātī*: the ancients believed that unless the corpse were properly buried, the ghost of the dead would wander restlessly about.

354. *modīs mīris*: alliteration; abl. of manner, with *pallida*; App. 328.

355. *ārās, pectora*: poetic plural. *ferrō*: abl. of means.

356. *domūs*: *gen.*



*Tum celerāre fugam patriāque excēdere suādet  
auxiliumque viae veterēs tellūre recludit  
thēsaurōs, ignōtum argenti pondus et aurī.*

*Hīs commōta fugam Didō sociōsque parābat.*

360

*Conveniunt quibus aut odium crudēle tyrannī  
aut metus ācer erat; nāvīs, quae forte parātae,  
corripiunt onerantque aurō. Portantur avārī  
Pygmalionis opēs pelagō; dux fēmina factī.*

*Dēvēnere locōs ubi nunc ingentia cernēs*

365

*moenia surgentemque novae Karthāginis arcem,  
mercātique solum, factī dē nōmine Byrsam,  
taurīnō quantum possent circumdare tergō.*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited\*  
argentum, i n. silver†  
auxilium, (i) i n. help, aid, assistance†  
avārus, a, um covetous, greedy†  
Byrsa, ae f. citadel of Carthage†  
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed†  
circumdō, are, dedī, datus surround  
commoveō, ere, mōvī, mōtus move,  
arouse  
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come together,  
assemble†  
corripio, ere, uī, repts snatch (up),  
seize\*  
crudēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce\*  
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive (at)†  
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief-  
tain†  
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, de-  
part†  
factum, i n. deed, undertaking, exploit\*  
fēmina, ae f. woman†  
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange†

Karthāgō, inis f. great commercial city of

North Africa, rival of Rome

mercōr, āri, ātus buy, purchase†

metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety\*

odium, (i) i n. hate, hatred, enmity†

onerō (1) load, burden

ops, opis f. help, resources, wealth, power\*

patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*

pondus, eris n. weight, burden†

portō (1) carry (off), bear, bring\*

Pygmalion, ōnis m. wicked brother of  
Dido

quantus, a, um how great, how much,  
how many, as much (as)†\*

recludō, ere, sī, sus disclose, reveal†

solum, i n. soil, ground, earth†\*

suādeō, ēre, āsi, āsus advise, urge†

taurinus, a, um of a bull†

tergum, i n. back, hide\*

thēsaurus, i m. treasure, hoard†

tyrannus, i m. tyrant, usurper, ruler†

vetus, eris old, ancient, former\*

357. suādet: the ghost urges Dido to flee. celerāre, excēdere; infinitives with suādet; ordinary prose would employ ut with the subjunctive.

358. auxilium viae: (as) an aid for her flight; auxilium is in apposition with thēsaurōs. veterēs: and so unknown to Pygmalion.

360. Hīs (dictis Sychaei).

361. (illi) conveniunt. tyrannī: of Pygmalion; obj. gen. with odium and metus; App. 284.

362. parātae (sunt).

364. pelagō: abl. of route; App. 338. opēs: the Roman historian Tacitus (Annals, 16, 1) says that the Emperor Nero sent a commission to Carthage to find the gold which Dido had brought and presumably buried there. fēmina (erat) dux facti: compare the inscription Dux

fēmina facti which was stamped on the medals struck to commemorate the defeat of the Spanish Armada by the British in 1588, while Elizabeth was queen of England.

365. Dēvēnere = dēvēnērunt; App. 204, 4. (ad or in) locōs; acc. of place whither; App. 315.

367-368. mercāti (sunt). (tantum) solum (vocātum) Byrsam: (as much) ground or land (called) Byrsa. Byrsam: a Greek word meaning bull's hide, later confused with the Carthaginian (Punic) word bosra, meaning ciuadel; hence the story that the Libyan natives agreed to sell to the Phoenicians as much land as could be covered with a bull's hide and that the Carthaginians cut the hide into long strips, thus securing a considerable area.

- Sed vōs quī tandem? Quibus aut vēnistis ab ōrīs?*  
 370 *Quōve tenētis iter?" Quāerentī tālibus ille*  
*suspīrāns īmōque trahēns ā pectore vōcem:*  
*"Ō dea, sī prīmā repetēns ab oriġine pergam*  
*et vacet annālīs nostrōrum audīre labōrum,*  
 ante diem clausō compōnet Vesper Olympō.  
 375 *Nōs Trojā antiqūā, sī vestrās forte per aurīs*  
*Trojae nōmen iit, diversa per aequora vectōs*  
*forte suā Libycīs tempestās appulit ōrīs.*  
*Sum pius Aenēās, raptōs quī ex hoste penātīs*  
*classe vehō mēcum, fāmā super aethera nōtus.*  
 380 *Ītaliā quāerō patriam et genus ab Jove summō.*  
*Bis dēnīs Phrygiū cōnscendī nāvibus aequor,*

aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky, ether\*  
 annālīs, is m. story, record, annals†  
 appellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive to (dat.)†  
 auris, is f. ear\*  
 bis twice\*  
 claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, fasten\*  
 compōnō, ere, posui, positus compose, construct, settle  
 cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, embark  
 dēnī, ae, a ten (each), by tens†  
 diversus, a, um scattered, various\*  
 hostis, is m. (f.) stranger, enemy, foe†\*  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey†\*  
 Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa\*  
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar†\*

Olympus, i m. Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven†  
 origō, inis f. origin, beginning, source  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
 penātēs, ium m. household gods\*  
 pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctus proceed†  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (up), rob\*  
 repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus seek again, repeat, retrace†  
 suspīrō (i) draw a deep breath, sigh†  
 tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm; time\*  
 vacō (i) be free (from), be at leisure†  
 vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey\*  
 Vesper, eris (erī) m. (god of the) evening (star)†  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*

369. *Sed quī (estis) vōs?* It is Aeneas's turn to speak.

370. (*Venerī*) *quāerentī tālibus (vōcibus) ille* (*Aenēās dixit*).

372. *Ō dea:* Aeneas insists upon his contention that he is addressing a goddess, in spite of Venus's denial (l. 335-337); or is it merely flattery paid to a beautiful young woman? *Sī pergam (dicere annālīs nostrōrum labōrum):* a future less vivid condition; App. 381.

372-373. *et (sī) vacet (tibi):* and if you should have the leisure; *vacet* is used impersonally. *audīre:* inf. of purpose; App. 261.

374. *ante:* sooner, that is, than my story would be told. *clausō Olympō:* abl. abs.; when Phoebus, the sun god, returned to Olympus at the end of the day, the doors of heaven were closed for the night.

375-377. *tempestās suā forte appulit nōs vectōs (ab) antiqūā Trojā — sī forte*

*nōmen Trojae iit per auris vestrās — per diversa aequora Libycīs ōrīs (= ad Libycās ōrās).* *Nōs:* acc., obj. of *appulit*, in l. 377. *Trojā antiqūā (vectōs):* abl. of place whence without a preposition; App. 320, a.

377. *forte suā:* contrary to the plans and desires of Aeneas. *ōrīs:* dat. with a compound; App. 298.

378. *pius:* see the note on *pietāte* (l. 10) and on *pius* (l. 220).

379. *classe:* abl. of means. *fāmā:* abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. Naïve self-esteem, not conceit. *aethera:* acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

380. (*quāerō*) *Ītaliā patriam et genus (patrium) ab Jove:* refers to the legend that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter and Eleuca, and founder of the Trojan race, had formerly lived in Italy.

381. *Bis dēnīs:* twice ten; more poetic than simply *twenty*. With adverbs of multiplication, as *bis*, etc., the distribu-

*mātre deā mōnstrante viam data fāta secūtus;*  
*vix septem convulsae undīs Eurōque supersunt.*  
*Ipse ignōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō,*  
*Eurōpā atque Asiā pulsus.” Nec plūra querentem*  
*passa Venus mediō sic interfāta dolōre est:*

385

“Quisquis es, *haud*, crēdō, invisus caelestibus *aurās*  
*vītālīs carpis, Tyriam quā advēneris urbem.*  
*Perge modo atque hinc tē rēgīnae ad līmina perfer.*  
*Namque tībī reducēs sociōs classemque relātam*  
*nuntiō et in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus āctam,*  
*nī frūstrā augurium vānī docuēre parentēs.*  
*Aspice bis sēnōs laetantīs agmine cycinōs,*

390

adveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive, reach†  
 Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind  
 Asia, *ae f.* Asia (Minor)†  
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look  
 at†\*  
 augurium, (i)ī *n.* augury, prophecy†  
 bis twice\*  
 caelestēs, ium *m. (f.)* divinities, gods  
 carpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck, take, consume†  
 convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear, shatter†  
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust\*  
 cycinus, i *m.* swan†  
 dēsertum, i *n.* desert, wastef  
 doceō, ēre, ui, ctus teach, instruct\*  
 dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion\*  
 egeō, ēre, ui be needy, lack†  
 Eurōpa, *ae f.* Europe†  
 Eurus, i *m.* (east) wind  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly†\*  
 ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange  
 interfor, fāri, fātus interrupt†  
 invisus, a, um hateful, hated, odious

laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult†  
 Libya, *ae f.* district of North Africa\*  
 modo only, (just) now†  
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out\*  
 nī, nisi if not, unless, except\*  
 nuntiō (1) announce†  
 patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow\*  
 pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus drive, force†  
 peragrō (1) wander through†  
 perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear, betake†  
 pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctus proceed  
 queror, i, questus complain, lament†  
 quisquis, quicquid whoever, whatever†  
 redux, ucis led back, restored†  
 sēni, ae, a six (each), by sixes†  
 septem seven  
 supersum, esse, fui survive, remain†  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 vānus, a, um empty, idle, false  
 Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty\*  
 vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change, rout\*  
 vītālīs, e of life, vital†

tive numerals are commonly employed instead of the cardinals. Phrygium *aequor*: the sea near Troy. *nāvibus*: abl. of means; App. 331.

382. (meā) *mātre deā mōnstrante*: abl. abs.; App. 343.

384. (ego) *ipse ignōtus*: his person is unknown at present, even though his fame is widespread (l. 379).

385. (ex) *Eurōpā*, (ex) *Asiā*: ablatives of separation. *Eurōpā* = *Italiā*: due to Juno's interference; compare ll. 251-252. *Asiā* = *Trojā*: because of the destruction of Troy. *plūra* (*Aenēan*) *querentem*. *Venus nōn passa* (*eum* = *Aenēan*) *querentem plūra* (= *queri plūra*) *sic interfāta* (*est in*) *mediō dolōre*. *plūra*: obj. of *querentem*; *Aenēan* is understood as object of *passa*.

387-388. *haud invisus*: this figure of

speech is called *litotes*; App. 431. *caelestibus*: dat. with *invisus*. *aurās vītālīs carpis*: *you breathe, live*. *quī advēneris*: rel. clause of characteristic, with additional idea of cause; App. 389. (*ad*) *urbem*.

389. *perfer*: imp. of *perferō*; App. 202.

390-391. *classem*: his twelve lost ships. *nam tībī nuntiō sociōs* (*tuos esse*) *reducēs classemque* (*tuam esse*) *relātam et āctam in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus*.

391. *in tūtum* (*portum*). *versīs Aquilōnibus*: abl. abs.; App. 343. *āctam*: from *agō*; modifies *classem*.

392. *docuēre* = *docuērunt* (*mā*).

393. *sēnōs*: see note on *dēnis* (l. 381). The two groups of swans, which had been separated through fright and had reunited after the danger was past, correspond to

395 aetheriā quōs lāpsa plagā Jovis āles apertō  
turbābat caelō; nunc terrās ordine longō  
aut capere aut captās jam dēspectāre videntur:  
ut reducēs illī lūdunt stridentibus ālis  
et coetū cīnxēre polum cantūsque dedēre,  
400 haud aliter puppēsque tuae pūbēsque tuōrum  
aut portum tenet aut plēnō subit ōstia vēlō.  
Perge modo et, quā tē dūcit via, dērige gressum."

*Dixit et āvertēns roseā cervīce refulsit,  
ambrosiaequē comae divīnum vertice odōrem  
spirāvēre; pedēs vestis dēflūxit ad īmōs;*

aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal†  
āla, ae f. wing\*  
āles, itis m. (f.) bird, fowl†  
aliter otherwise†\*  
ambrosius, a, um ambrosial, immortal†  
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear  
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (aside), avert\*  
cantus, ūs m. song, melody, music†  
cervix, icis f. neck†  
cīngō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus encircle, gird\*  
coetus, ūs m. company, band, flock†  
coma, ae f. hair\*  
dēfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow down†  
dērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus direct, guide†  
dēspectō (1) look down (on)†  
divinus, a, um divine, holy†  
gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait†  
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock

modo only, (just) now  
odor, ōris m. odor, fragrance†  
ordō, inis m. order, line, array†\*  
ōstium, (i) ī n. mouth, harbor, entrance  
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed  
plaga, ae f. region, tract†  
plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling†  
polus, ī m. pole, sky, heaven  
pūbēs, is f. youth, young men†\*  
quā where(by), in any way  
redux, ucis led back, restored  
refulgeō, ēre, lsi shine, gleam†  
roseus, a, um rosy, pink†  
spirō (1) breathe (forth), exhale†  
strid(e)ō, ēre, di creak, rustle, whirl  
turbō (1) throw into confusion, agitate†\*  
vertex, icis m. top, summit, head\*  
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), robe†\*

the two groups of the twelve ships under Ilioneus, which will reunite after a short separation. Thus sociōs reducēs of l. 390 corresponds to ut reducēs illī of l. 397. agmine: abl. of manner; App. 328; the swans had just been put to flight and scattered by the eagle.

394. quōs āles Jovis lāpsa aetheriā plagā turbābat (in) apertō caelō. Jovis āles: the eagle was the bird of Jove and bore his thunderbolt. (dē) aetheriā plagā: from the height of heaven.

395-396. terrās capere: to alight. caelō: abl. of place where or of route; App. 319, 338. nunc videntur: now, after the eagle has disappeared, the swans are seen in two groups. One group, in a long row, returns to its feeding place on the land; the other group flies above and gazes down at the places occupied (terrās captās) by their comrades.

396. captās (terrās) dēspectāre: to

look down upon the places (terrās) already occupied.

397. illī = cycnī.

398. coetū: abl. of manner; App. 328. cīnxēre, dedēre = cīnxērunt, dedērunt; App. 204, 4. cantūs: acc. plural.

399. haud aliter: litotes; App. 431. The main point of the comparison is in the happy return to safety of both swans and Trojans after their disaster. -que ... -que: polysyndeton; App. 439.

400. tenet, subit: the subjects are puppēs and pūbēs, but the verbs agree in number with pūbēs, the nearest; App. 236, b.

402. Dixit (Venus) et (sē) āvertēns. cervīce: abl. of means.

403. (ā) vertice: abl. of separation. divīnum odōrem: a special fragrance is often attributed to the gods.

404. spirāvēre = spirāvērunt. vestis dēflūxit: with the exception of Diana, all the goddesses wore flowing robes.



*et vera incessu patuit dea. Ille ubi matrem* 405  
*agnōvit tālī fugientem est vōce secūtus:*  
*"Quid nātum totiēns, crūdēlis tū quoque, falsīs*  
*lūdis imāginibus? Cūr dextrae jungere dextram*  
*nōn datur ac vērās audīre et reddere vōcēs?"*  
*Tālībus incūsāt gressumque ad moenia tendit.* 410  
*At Venus obscūrō gradientīs āere saepsit,*  
*et multō nebulae circum dea fūdīt amictū,*  
*cernere nē quīs eōs neu quis contingere posset*  
*mōlīrīve moram aut veniendī poscere causās.*  
*Ipsa Paphum sublīmīs abit sēdēsque revīsīt* 415  
*laeta suās, ubi templum illī, centumque Sabaeō*  
*tūre calēt ārae sertīsque recentibus hālant.*

abeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus depart\*  
 āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, mist, fog  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize†\*  
 amictus, ūs m. wrap, robe†  
 caleō, ēre, uī be hot, burn†  
 causa, ae f. cause, reason\*  
 centum hundred\*  
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall\*  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody\*  
 cūr why?†  
 falsus, a, um false, deceitful, pretended†  
 gradior, ī, gressus step, go, proceed  
 gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait  
 hālō (1) breathe (forth), be fragrant†  
 imāgō, inīs f. image, shape, ghost\*  
 incessus, ūs m. walk, gait, stride†  
 incūsō (1) reproach, chide, blame†  
 jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke\*  
 lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock  
 mōlior, irī, itus work, effect, make  
 mora, ae f. delay, hindrance, hesitation†\*

nebula, ae f. cloud, mist, fog†  
 neu, nēve and (that) not, and lest†  
 obscūrus, a, um dark†\*  
 Paphus (os), ī f. city of Cyprus, famous  
 center of the worship of Venus†  
 pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident  
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek†\*  
 quoque also\*  
 recēns, entis fresh, recent†  
 reddō, ere, c dī, dītus return, reply†\*  
 revisō, ere revisit†  
 Sabaeus, a, um Sabaeen, of Saba in south-  
 ern Arabia, famous for its incense†  
 saepiō, ire, psī, ptus hedge in, inclose†  
 sertum, ī n. wreath, garland†  
 sublīmīs, e on high, aloft, uplifted  
 templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary†\*  
 totiēns so often, so many times†  
 tūs, tūris n. 'incense, unguent†  
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty\*  
 vērūs, a, um true, real, honest†\*

405. Ille: Aeneas. The hiatus between *dea* and *Ille* is justified by the pause in thought after *dea*; cf. *Samō: hic* (l. 16).

406. (eam) *fugientem*.

407. *Quid tū quoque crūdēlis totiēns lūdis (mē) nātum (tuum) falsīs imāginibus? quid: adverbial, why? nātum (tuum): emphatic by position. tū quoque: "even you, as well as others who might be expected to deceive me."*

408. *dextrae (manūi): dat. with jungere*; App. 297.

409. *vērās vōcēs: contrasted with falsīs imāginibus* of l. 407.

410. *Tālībus (dictis Aenēas) incūsāt (mātrēm suam). moenia (Karthāginīs).*

411. *obscūrō āere: such a concealing cloud or mist is a device very common in*

epic tradition and in folk tales. (*Aenēan Achātēnque*) *gradientis*.

412. *circum (eōs) fūdīt: surrounded (them). dea: (as) a goddess, i.e., by her supernatural power.*

413. *quis: indef. cernere (eōs). posset: negative purpose*; App. 359.

414. *mōlīrī moram: alliteration. veniendī: a gerund in the gen. modifying causās.*

415. *Ipsa: Venus; see the note on ipsa* (l. 42) and on *ipsius* (l. 114). *Paphum: a.c. of place to which*; App. 315, a.

416. *laeta: contrasted with tristior* (l. 228). *templum (est) illi. illi: Veneri, dat. of possession*; App. 299. *Sabaeō: cf. Paradise Lost, 4, 162:*

"Sabaean odors from the spicy shore  
 Of Araby the blest."

	Corripuere viam interea, qua semita monstrat.	
420	Jamque ascendebant collem, qui plurimus urbi imminet adversasque aspectat desuper arcēs. Miratur molem Aeneas, magalia quondam, miratur portās strepitumque et strata viarum. Instant ardentēs Tyrii: pars ducere muros moliŕique arcem et manibus subvolvere saxa, 425 pars optare locum tecto et concludere sulcō; jura magistratūsque legunt sanctumque senatum. Hic portūs alii effodiunt; hic alta theātris fundamenta locant alii, immānisque columnās rūpibus excidunt, scaenis decora alta futuris. 430 Quālis apēs aestate novā per flōrea rūra exercet sub sole labor, cum gentis adultōs	
	adultus, a, um grown, adult† adversus, a, um opposite, facing* aestās, ātis f. summer apis, is f. bee† ascendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount† a(d)spectō (l) look at, see, face† collis, is m. hill† columna, ae f. column, pillar† concludō, ere, sī, sus (in)close† corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up), hasten on* decus, oris n. ornament, beauty, dig- nity† desuper from above effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig out, excavate† excidō, ere, ī, sus cut out, destroy† exerceō, ēre, uī, itus busy, train†* flōreus, a, um flowery† fundamentum, ī n. foundation† immineō, ēre overhang, menace (dat.) instō, āre, stitī urge on, press on (dat.)† interea meanwhile, meantime* jūs, jūris n. law, justice, decree legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather†*	locō (l) place, locate, establish* magalia, ium n. huts, hovels† magistrātus, ūs m. magistrate, officer† miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire†* mōles, is f. mass, burden, structure* mōlior, irī, itus work, effect, make mōnstrō (l) show, point out* mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart†* optō (l) choose, desire, hope (for)* porta, ae f. gate, door, opening* quā where(by), in any way quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as* rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag* rūs, rūris n. country (district)† sāctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered†* scaena, ae f. stage, background semita, ae f. path† senātus, ūs m. senate, council of elders† sōl, sōlis m. sun; day* strātum, ī n. pavement; bed† strepitus, ūs m. noise, uproar† subvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll up† sulcus, ī m. furrow, trench, ditch† theātrum, ī n. theater†

418-436. Aeneas and Achates, rendered invisible by Venus, proceed to Carthage and admire the rising city.

418. (Aeneas Achatesque) corripuerunt viam: they hurried along their way. semita (se) monstrat.

419. plurimus: with imposing size. urbi: dat. with compound; App. 298.

421. molem (urbis). quondam: before the erection of the city. Miratur... miratur: anaphora; App. 413.

423. ducere: extend; this and the following infinitives depend on Instant; App. 259.

423-425. pars, pars: in partitive apposition with Tyrii.

425. tecto: for a house; dat. of purpose; App. 303. concludere (locum tecti) sulcō: for the foundation.

426. magistratūs: acc. plural.

427-428. alii... alii: some... others.

429. (ex) rūpibus: the typical open-air theater of classical times was commonly excavated from a hillside. scaenis: dat. decora: apposition with columnās.

430-431. (tālis est labor illis) quālis (labor) exercet apēs: the simile is famous; cf. App. 441. aestate novā: abl. of time; App. 322.

ēdūcunt fētūs, *aut cum liquentia mella*  
*stīpant et dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,*  
*aut onera accipiunt venientum, aut agmīne factō*  
 ignāvum fūcōs pecus ā praesēpibus arcent; 435  
 fervet opus redolentque thymō fragrantia mella.  
 “Ō fortūnātī, quōrum jam moenia surgunt!”  
*Aenēās ait et fastīgia suspicit urbis.*  
 Īnfert sē saeptus nebulā (mīrābile dictū)  
 per mediōs, miscetque virīs neque cernitur ūllī. 440  
 Lūcus in urbe fuit mediā, laetissimus umbrae,  
 quō prīmum jactātī undīs et turbine Poenī  
 effōdēre locō signum, quod rēgia Jūnō  
 mōnstrārat, caput ācris equī; sīc nam fore bellō  
 ēgregiam et facilem vīctū per saecula gentem. 445

ācer, cris, cre sharp, keen, spirited\*  
 arceō, ēre, ūī keep off, defend  
 cella, ae f. cell, storeroom†  
 distendō, ere, ī, ntus distend, stretch†  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fresh\*  
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead forth†  
 effodiō, ere, fōdi, fossus dig out, excavate  
 ēgregius, a, um remarkable, distinguished†  
 facilis, e easy†  
 fastigium, (i)ī n. summit, top, height  
 ferv(e)ō, ēre, (ferbu)ī glow, boil†  
 fētus, ūs m. offspring, brood, swarm†  
 fortūnātus, a, um fortunate, blessed†  
 fragrans, antis fragrant, sweet-smelling†  
 fūcus, ī m. drone†  
 ignāvus, a, um lazy, idle†  
 inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear (in, into)  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet\*  
 liquēns, entis liquid, flowing†  
 lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood†\*

mel, mellis n. honey†  
 mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous†  
 misceō, ēre, ūī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out\*  
 nebula, ae f. cloud, mist, fog  
 nectar, aris n. nectar†  
 onus, eris n. burden, load†  
 opus, eris n. work, deed, toil†\*  
 pecus, oris n. flock, herd, swarm†\*  
 Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian  
 praesēpe, is n. stall, hive†  
 redoleō, ēre, ūī be fragrant, smell (of)†  
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly†\*  
 saeculum, ī n. generation; age  
 saepiō, ire, psi, ptus hedge in, inclose  
 signum, ī n. sign, token, signal†\*  
 stīpō (1) stuff, crowd, stow†  
 suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look up (at)†  
 thymum, ī n. thyme, a flowering plant†  
 turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive

434. venient(i)um (apium).

435. fūcōs: the drones; apposition with ignāvum pecus.

437-493. Aeneas visits the temple of Juno where he sees depicted the leading incidents of the Trojan War.

437. Ō fortūnātī: substantively; O fortunate ones! jam moenia surgunt: Aeneas was impatiently looking forward to the time when the walls of his own city would rise.

438. ait: third sing. of ajō.

439. dictū: supine, abl. of respect with mīrābile; App. 271, 325.

440. per mediōs (virōs): through the midst (of) the men; App. 246. (sē) miscet

viris: viris is dat. with miscet; App. 297. ūllī: dat. of agent; App. 302.

441. umbrae: gen. with adj.; App. 287.

442. (in) quō . . . locō = ubi. jactātī: on their stormy voyage from Tyre. prīmum: immediately after landing.

443. effōdēre = effōdērunt.

444. mōnstrā(ve)rat: App. 204, 1. caput equi: a common device on Carthaginian coins. fore = futūram esse: indirect statement depending on dixerat implied in mōnstrā(ve)rat; App. 263.

445. vīctū: supine, abl. of respect with facilem; App. 271, 325, easy to live, to sustain, referring to the great commercial success of Carthage. gentem (Pūnicam).

*Hic templum Jūnōnī ingēns Sidōnia Dīdō*  
condēbat, *dōnīs* opulentum et *nūmine* *dīvae*,  
*aerea* cui gradibus *surgēbant* *līmina* nexaeque  
aere trabēs, foribus cardō stridēbat aēnīs.

- 450 *Hōc primum in lūcō nova rēs oblāta timōrem*  
*lēniit, hīc primum Aenēās spērāre salūtem*  
*ausus et adflīctīs melius cōfidere rēbus.*  
*Namque sub ingentī lūstrat dum singula templō*  
*rēgīnam opperiēns, dum quae fortūna sit urbī*  
455 *artificumque manūs intrā sē operumque labōrem*  
*mīratur, videt Iliacās ex ordine pugnās*  
*bellaque jam fāmā tōtum vulgāta per orbem,*  
*Atridās Priamumque et saevum ambōbus Achillem.*

Achillēs, is (i) *m.* Greek chieftain\*  
adfligō, ere, xī, ctus strike down, shat-  
ter†  
aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen  
aereus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen†  
aes, aeris *n.* bronze\*  
ambō, ae, ō both†  
artifex, icis *m.* artist, artisan†  
Atridēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus, (1) Aga-  
memnon, (2) Menelaus; leaders of the  
Greeks against Troy†  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket†  
condō, ere, didī, ditus found, build\*  
cōnfidō, ere, sus sum trust (in) (*dat.*)†  
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance†  
gradus, ūs *m.* step, stride, gait†  
Iliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan\*  
intrā within, among (*acc.*)†  
lēniō, ire, ivī (ii), itus soothe, soften†  
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood\*

lūstrō (i) purify, survey, traverse†\*  
melior, ius better, superior†  
miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire\*  
nectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus bind, fasten†  
offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present†  
opperior, iri, per(i)tus await, wait for†  
opulentus, a, um rich, wealthy†  
opus, eris *n.* work, deed, toil\*  
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth\*  
ordō, inis *m.* order, line, array\*  
pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight†\*  
saevus, a, um fierce, harsh, stern\*  
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health†  
Sidōnius, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician†  
singuli, ae, a separate, single†  
spērō (i) hope (for), expect†\*  
strid(e)ō, ēre, dī grate, creak, whirl  
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
timor, ōris *m.* fear, anxiety, dread  
trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber†  
vulgō (i) publish, make known†

446. Sidōnia: *Phoenician*; Tyre or Sidon, each a famous Phoenician city, came to be synonymous with Phoenicia.

447. dōnīs, nūmine: ablatives of respect depending on opulentum; App. 325.

448-449. cui surgēbant gradibus aerea līmina trabēsque nexae aere, (et) cardō stridēbat foribus aēnīs. aerea, aere, aēnīs: the lavish use of costly bronze helps to indicate the magnificence of the temple. cui gradibus: on the steps of which; cui is dat. of reference, with the force of a genitive; App. 301. nexae (erant). -que: the elision of the final e before the initial diphthong of the first word of the next line forms a hypermetric verse: cf. l. 332 and see App. 402.

449. aere: abl. of means. foribus

aēnīs: abl. of place where or dat. of reference; App. 319, 301.

450. timōrem (Aenēae).

452. ausus (est). rēbus: abl. or dat. with special verb, cōfidere; App. 319, 297.

454. sit: subjunctive in an indir. quest.; App. 349. urbi: dat. of possession; App. 299.

455. artificum manūs intrā sē: the rival deeds of skill of the artists, referring to the temple and its equipment.

456. ex ordine: in order. fāmā: abl. of means. tōtum orbem (terrārum): the whole world.

458. ambōbus (Atridīs Priamōque): Achilles was fighting against the Trojans, and of course was hostile to Priam, the



Cōnstitit et lacrimāns "Quis jam locus" inquit "Achātē,  
 quae regiō in terrīs nostrī nōn plēna labōris?  
 460  
 En Priamus. Sunt hīc etiam sua praemia laudī;  
 sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt.  
 Solve metūs; feret haec aliquam tibi fāma salūtem."  
 Sic ait atque animum pictūrā pascit inānī  
 multa gemēns, largōque ūmectat flūmine vultum.  
 465  
 Namque vidēbat utī bellantēs Pergama circum  
 hāc fugerent Grajī, premeret Trojāna juventūs,  
 hāc Phryges, instāret currū cristātus Achillēs.  
 Nec procul hinc Rhēsī niveis tentōria vērīs

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*

Achillēs, *is (i) m.* Greek chieftain\*

aliqui, *qua, quod* some, any†\*

bellō (1) war, battle†

cōsistō, *ere, stitī, stitus* stand fast, halt\*

cristātus, *a, um* plumed, crested†

currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car\*

en see! look! behold!†

etiam also, even\*

flūmen, *inis n.* river, stream†\*

gemō, *ere, uī, itus* groan (for), lament

Grajus, *a, um* Greek†\*

hāc here, there†

inānis, *e* empty, idle, vain†\*

inquam, *is, it* say\*

instō, *āre, stitī* press on, urge (on)

juventūs, *ūtis f.* youth, young men†\*

lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament†

largus, *a, um* copious, plentiful†

laus, *laudis f.* praise, glory, merit†\*

metus, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety\*

mortālis, *e* mortal, human\*

niveus, *a, um* snowy, white†

pascō, *ere, pāvi, pāstus* feed (on), graze

Pergama, *ōrum n.* (citadel of) Troy†\*

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan†

pictūra, *ae f.* picture, painting†

plēnus, *a, um* full, complete, swelling

praemium, (i) *i n.* reward, prize†\*

premō, *ere, pressi, pressus* (re)press, urge\*

regiō, *ōnis f.* region, district†

Rhēsus, *i m.* Thracian prince, ally of the Trojans, slain on the first night after his arrival at Troy†

salūs, *ūtis f.* safety, security, health

solvō, *ere, ī, solūtus* loose, dismiss\*

tangō, *ere, tetigī, tāctus* touch†\*

tentōrium, (i) *i n.* tent†

Trojānus, *a, um* Trojan\*

ūmectō (1) wet, moisten†

vultus, *ūs m.* countenance, face\*

Trojan king; furthermore, a bitter feud arose near the end of the war between Achilles and the sons of Atreus, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, because Agamemnon had forcibly deprived Achilles of one of his war prizes, a captive girl Briseis. This feud was the occasion of the "Wrath of Achilles," the theme of Homer's *Iliad*.

459. lacrimāns: see the note on frīgore (l. 92). Achātē: vocative.

460. nōn (est) plēna.

461. hīc etiam: here also, as well as elsewhere. laudī: dat. of possession; App. 299.

462. lacrimae rērum: compassion for suffering. mentem mortālia: alliteration, heightening the pathos. mortālia: substantively, human (woes).

463. metūs: acc. pl. haec fāma (Teu-crōrum).

464. ait: third sing. of ajō.

466-467. utī hāc Grajī bellantēs circum

Pergama fugerent. utī: how; introduces three indirect questions. Grajī: pl. of Grajus and pronounced as though spelled Grajī, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b.

467-468. fugerent, premeret, instāret: subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349. hāc... hāc: here... there, in the series of pictures being described.

463. Phryges (fugerent). cristātus: the Homeric warrior wore a helmet with waving plumes.

469. Nec procul hinc: in another picture. Rhēsī: an ally of the Trojans. The oracle had proclaimed that Troy could not be captured if Rhesus's horses ever drank of the waters of the Xanthus or grazed on the Trojan meadows. Ulysses and Diomedes surprised Rhesus on the night of his arrival, killed him, and drove off his horses before they had partaken of the fateful water and grass.

- 470 agnōscit lacrimāns, *prīmō quae prōdita somnō*  
*Tydidēs multā vastābat caede cruentus,*  
*ardentisque āvertit equōs in castiū prius quam*  
*pābula gustāssent Trojae Xanthumque bibissent.*  
*Parte aliā fugiēns āmissis Trōilus armīs,*  
 475 *īnfēlīx puer atque impār congressus Achillī,*  
*fertur equīs currūque haeret resupinus inānī,*  
*lōra tenēns tamen; huic cervīxque comaeque trahuntur*  
*per terram, et versā pulvis īnscribitur hastā.*  
*Intereā ad templum nōn aquae Palladis ībant*  
 480 *crīnibus Īliades passīs peplumque ferēbant*  
*suppliciter, trīstēs et tūnsae pectora palmīs;*

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain\*  
 aequus, a, um equal, even, impartial†  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose\*  
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert\*  
 bibō, ere, ī drink (of, in)†  
 caedēs, is *f.* slaughter†  
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment†\*  
 cervix, icis *f.* neck  
 coma, ae *f.* hair\*  
 congregior, ī, gressus meet, fight with  
 (dat.)†  
 crīnis, is *m.* locks, hair†\*  
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*  
 gustō (1) taste, eat†  
 haerō, ēre, haesī, haesus hang, cling  
 to (dat.)†\*  
 hasta, ae *f.* spear†  
 Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman†  
 impār, aris unequal, ill-matched†  
 inānis, e empty, idle, vain\*  
 īnscribō, ere, psī, ptus mark†  
 intereā meanwhile, meantime\*

lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament  
 lōrum, ī *n.* thong, rein  
 pābulum, ī *n.* fodder, pasture†  
 Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-  
 dom and the arts  
 palma, ae *f.* palm, hand\*  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, dishevel†\*  
 peplus (um), ī *m.* (n.) robe, gown†  
 prius former, sooner, first  
 prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, be-  
 tray  
 pulvis, eris *m.* dust†  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 resupinus, a, um supine, on the back†  
 suppliciter beseechingly, humbly†  
 tamen nevertheless, however\*  
 templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine\*  
 Trōilus, ī *m.* youngest son of Priam†  
 tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus beat†  
 Tydidēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,  
 famous Greek chieftain  
 vastō (1) ravage, devastate, (lay) waste†  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout\*  
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

470. *prīmō prōdita*: alliteration.  
*prīmō somnō*: abl. of time when or means;  
 App. 322, 331.

471. *vastābat*: action represented as  
 taking place in the picture. *caede cruen-*  
*tus*: alliteration. *multā caede*: abl. of  
 manner; App. 328.

472. *in castra*: i.e., to the Greek  
 camp.

473. *gustā(vi)ssent, bibissent*: descrip-  
 tive or anticipatory; App. 376, a.

474. (in) *Parte aliā*: in a fourth pic-  
 ture. *āmissis armīs*: abl. abs., referring  
 to only a part of his arms, such as his  
 shield, for he still holds his spear  
 Trōilus: slain by Achilles.

475. *impār congressus Achillī*: *unequal*  
*to Achilles in battle.*

476. His foot seems to have caught in  
 the chariot as he fell backward. *currū*  
*inānī*: abl. with *haeret*; App. 319.

477. *huic*: dat. of reference equivalent  
 to a genitive.

478. *versā hastā*: with trailing (lit.  
 turned) spear. *pulvis*: with the last  
 syllable irregularly long for metrical con-  
 venience.

479. *nōn aquae*: hostile, because of  
 the adverse Judgment of Paris.

480. *crīnibus passīs*: abl. of quality;  
 App. 330. *passīs*: from *pandō*; di-  
 shevelled hair was a sign of mourning.  
*peplum*: a fine gown, as an offering to the  
 goddess.

481. *pectora*: acc., with the "middle"  
 participle, *tūnsae*; App. 309.

*dīva* solō fixōs oculōs āversa tenēbat.

Ter circum Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs  
exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achillēs.

Tum vērō ingentem gemitum dat pectore ab imō,  
ut spolia, ut currūs, utque ipsum corpus amīcī  
tendentemque manūs Priamum cōnspexit inermīs. 485

Sē quoque principibus permixtum agnōvit Achīvīs,  
Ēōāsque aciēs et nigrī Memnonis arma.

Dūcit Amāzonidum lūnātis agmīna peltīs 490

Penthesilēa furēns medūsque in milibus ardet,  
aurea subnectēns exsertae cingula mammae  
bellātrīx, audetque virīs concurrere virgō.

*Haec dum Dardaniō Aenēae mīranda videntur,*

Achillēs, is (i) *m.* Greek chieftain\*  
Achīvus, *a, um* Achaeen, Greek  
aciēs, *ēi f.* edge, battle line, army†\*  
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize\*  
Amāzonis, *idis f.* Amazon, female warrior†  
amicus, *i m.* friend†\*  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
aureus, *a, um* gold(en), of gold†\*  
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert\*  
bellātrīx, *icis f.* warrior†  
cingulum, *i n.* belt, girdle†  
concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run together, fight with (*dat.*)†  
cōnspicīō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold  
currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car\*  
Dardanius, *a, um* Dardanian, Trojan†\*  
Ēōus, *a, um* of the dawn, eastern†  
exanimus, *a, um* breathless, lifeless†  
exserō, ere, uī, rtus thrust out, expose†  
figō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten\*  
gemitus, *ūs m.* groan, lament†\*  
Hector, *oris, acc. ora, m.* Trojan leader\*  
Īliacus, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan\*

inermis, *e* unarmed†  
lūnātus, *a, um* crescent, moon-shaped†  
mamma, *ae f.* breast, pap†  
Memnōn, *onis m.* Ethiopian king, son of Aurora and ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†  
mille; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand†\*  
mīrandus, *a, um* wonderful, marvelous  
mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
niger, *gra, grum* black, dusky†\*  
pelta, *ae f.* light shield†  
Penthesilēa, *ae f.* queen of the Amazons, ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†  
permisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle†  
princeps, *cipis m. (f.)* chief, leader†  
quoque also\*  
raptō (i) snatch, drag†  
solum, *i n.* soil, ground, earth\*  
spolium, (i) *i n.* spoil(s), booty, plunder  
subnectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus fasten beneath†  
ter thrice, three times\*  
vendō, ere, didī, ditus sell†  
vērō truly, indeed, but†  
virgō, *inis f.* girl, maid(en)\*

482. *dīva* (Pallas). solō: *dat.* of direction; App. 306; her eyes were directed to the ground, as a sign of sullen displeasure.

483. *Hectora*: *acc.*, a Greek form; App. 68. This sixth picture represents the ransom of Hector's body from Achilles, who had dragged it thrice around the walls of Troy.

484. *aurō*: *abl.* of price; App. 336. *corpus vendēbat Achillēs* (Priamō).

485. (*Aenēas*) *dat.*

486. *currūs*: poetic plural; the chariot with which Achilles dragged Hector around Troy. *ut, ut, ut*: anaphora; App. 413.

487. *spolia*: taken by Achilles from Hector. *manūs inermīs*: as a suppliant.

488. *principibus*: *dat.*, or *abl.* with *permixtum*.

489. *Ēōāsque aciēs* (agnōvit): Trojan allies from Ethiopia led by Memnon.

490. *lūnātis peltis*: *abl.* of quality; App. 330; crescent shields were characteristic of the Amazons.

493. *virīs*: *dat.* with the special verb, *concurrere*. *virgō*: (although) a girl; contrasted with *virīs*.

494-508. Dido visits the temple and gives audience to her subjects.

494. *Dardaniō*: *Trojan*; used here to indicate why these scenes had so much meaning for Aeneas.

- 495 *dum stupet obtūtūque haeret dēfixus in ūnō,*  
*rēgīna ad templum, formā pulcherrima Dīdō,*  
*incessit magnā juvenum stipante catervā.*  
*Quālis in Eurōtae ripīs aut per juga Cynthī*  
*exercet Diāna chorōs, quam mille secūtāe*  
500 *hinc atque hinc glomerantur Orēades; illa pharetram*  
*fert umerō gradiēnsque deās superēminet omnīs*  
*(Lātōnae tacitum pertemptant gaudia pectus):*  
*tālis erat Dīdō, tālem sē laeta ferēbat*  
*per mediōs instāns operī rēgnisque futūrīs.*  
505 *Tum foribus divae, mediā testūdine templī,*  
*saepta armīs soliōque altē subnixa resēdit.*  
*Jūra dabat lēgēsque virīs, operumque labōrem*  
*partibus aequābat jūstīs aut sorte trahēbat:*

**aequō** (1) equal(ize)\*  
**altē** on high, loftily  
**catervā**, **ae f.** band, troop, crowd†  
**chorus**, **i m.** chorus, dance, band†  
**Cynthus**, **i m.** mountain in Delos, birth-  
place of Apollo and Diana†  
**dēfigō**, **ere, fixi, fixus fix**, fasten  
**Diāna**, **ae f.** goddess of the hunt and of  
the mountains†  
**Eurōtās**, **ae m.** river of Sparta, center of  
the worship of Diana†  
**exerceō**, **ēre, ui, itus** busy, train\*  
**foris**, **is f.** door, gate, entrance  
**forma**, **ae f.** form, beauty, shape\*  
**gaudium**, (i) **i n.** joy, rejoicing†  
**glomerō** (1) gather, roll together†  
**gradior**, **i, gressus** step, go, proceed  
**haereō**, **ēre, haesi, haesus** hang, cling  
(to)\*  
**incēdō**, **ere, cessi, cessus** march, go  
(majestically)  
**instō**, **āre, stiti** press on, urge (*dat.*)  
**jugum**, **i n.** yoke, (mountain) ridge†\*  
**jūs, jūris** **n.** law, justice, right  
**jūstus**, **a, um** just, fair, right(eous)†

**juvenis**, **is m. (f.)** youth, young (man  
woman)\*  
**Lātōna**, **ae f.** mother of Apollo and Diana†  
**lēx, lēgis** **f.** law, regulation, decree†  
**mille**; **pl. milia, ium n.** thousand\*  
**obtūtus**, **ūs m.** gaze, view†  
**opus, eris** **n.** work, deed, toil\*  
**Orēas, adis** **f.** Oread, a mountain nymph†  
**pertemptō** (1) try; master, possess†  
**pharetra**, **ae f.** quiver  
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, hand-  
some, illustrious\*  
**quālis**, **e** such (as), of what sort\*  
**residō**, **ere, sēdi** sit down†  
**ripa**, **ae f.** bank, shore†\*  
**saepiō**, **ire, psi, ptus** hedge in, inclose  
**solium**, (i) **i n.** throne, seat†  
**sors, rtis** **f.** lot, fate, destiny\*  
**stipō** (1) stuff, crowd, throng, stow  
**stupeō**, **ēre, ui** stand agape, be dazed†  
**subnixus, a, um** resting on (*abl.*)†  
**superēmineō**, **ēre** tower above†  
**tacitus, a, um** silent, speechless, still†  
**templum, i n.** temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
**testūdō**, **inis f.** tortoise, vault, dome†

496. **formā**: *abl. of respect with pulcherrima*: App. 325.

497. **stipante catervā**: *abl. abs.*; App. 343.

498. **Quālis**: correlative with **tālis**, (l. 503).

499. **Diāna**: with long *i*; elsewhere with short *i*.

500. **illa**: **Diāna**. **hinc atque hinc**: *on this side and on that; on both sides*.

501. (in) **umerō**. **deās** (**Orēadas**).

502. **tacitum pectus**: *as indicating joy too deep for words*.

504. **per mediōs** (**virōs**).

505. **divae**: *of the shrine* (lit. *of the goddess*).

505-506. (in) **foribus**, (in) **testūdine**, (in) **soliō**.

507. **virīs** (**Tyriis**): her subjects. The use of temples for the transaction of public business was very common in ancient Rome; hence Vergil assigned a similar custom to the Carthaginians.

508. **sorte trahēbat**: *assigned the work by lot*.





AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE  
A Greek vase in the Metropolitan Museum of Art.



*Gransdorff Bros.*

### DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE

*Turner*

Turner's famous painting. The boys sailing toy ships in the foreground hint at the future naval greatness or Carthage and the fatal wars with Rome.

*cum subitō Aenēās concursū accēdere magnō*  
*Anthea Sergestumque videt fortemque Cloanthum* 510  
*Teucrōrumque aliōs, āter quōs aequore turbō*  
*dispulerat penitusque aliās āvēxerat ōrās.*  
*Obstipuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achātēs*  
*laetitiāque metūque; avidī conjungere dextrās*  
*ardēbant; sed rēs animōs incognita turbat.* 515  
*Dissimulant et nūbe cavā speculantur amictī*  
*quae fortūna virīs, classem quō litore linquant,*  
*quid veniant; cūctīs nam lēctī nāvibus ibant*  
*ōrantēs veniam et templum clāmōre petēbant.*  
*Postquam intrōgressī et cōram data cōpia fandī,* 520  
*maximus Īlioneus placidō sīc pectore coepit:*  
*“Ō rēgīna, novam cui condere Juppiter urbem*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach  
 Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of  
 Aeneas\*  
 amictiō, ire, uī (ixī), ictus infold, wrap†  
 Antheus, ei, acc. ea, *m.* Trojan leader  
 āvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear away†  
 avidus, a, um eager, greedy†  
 cavus, a, um hollow\*  
 Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader  
 coepī, isse, coeptus begin†  
 concursus, ūs *m.* throng, crowd†  
 condō, ere, didī, ditus found, build\*  
 conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join†  
 cōpia, ae *f.* abundance; opportunity†  
 cōram face to face, in the presence†  
 dispellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive apart,  
 disperse, scatter†  
 dissimulō (1) hide, disguise†  
 fortis, e strong, brave, valiant\*  
 Īlioneus, ei *m.* Trojan leader  
 incognitus, a, um unknown†

intrōgredior, ī, gressus enter, go in(to)†  
 laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight†  
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather\*  
 linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert†\*  
 metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread\*  
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog\*  
 obstipēscō, ere, stipuī stand agape†\*  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech†\*  
 penitus deep within, deeply, wholly\*  
 percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus strike, as-  
 pound†  
 placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful\*  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†\*  
 speculor, āri, ātus spy out, watch†  
 subitō suddenly\*  
 templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctu-  
 ary\*  
 turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm  
 turbō (1) confuse, disturb, perplex\*  
 venia, ae *f.* favor, grace, pardon†

509-560. A deputation from the miss-  
 ing Trojan ships waits on Dido to com-  
 plain of the outrages of her people and  
 bewail the loss of their leader Aeneas.

509-512. *cum Aenēās subitō videt*  
*accēdere Anthea* (acc.) *Sergestumque*  
*fortemque Cloanthum aliōsque Teucrō-*  
*rum, quōs āter turbō dispulerat* (in)  
*aequore. concursū magnō:* abl. of  
 manner; App. 328. (ad) *aliās ōrās.*

513. *ipse:* Aeneas; see the note on l.  
 114. *simul... simul = et... et.* per-  
 cussus (est.)

515. *rēs incognita:* the uncertainty of  
 the situation keeps them silent.

516. *Dissimulant* (animōs).

517. *quae* (sit) *fortūna:* indir. quest.;

App. 349. *virīs:* dat. of possession. (in)  
*quō litore.*

517-518. *linquant, veniant:* subjunc-  
 tives in indir. quest.; App. 349.

518. *quid = cūr, why?* (virī) *lēctī.*  
 (ex) *cūctīs nāvibus.*

519. *clāmōre:* abl. of manner; App.  
 328.

520. *intrōgressī* (sunt illi *Teucrī*) *et*  
*data* (est) *cōpia fandī. fandī:* of speak-  
 ing; a gerund.

521. *maximur* (nātū): the eldest, the  
 leader. *Īlioneus:* with the *eu* pronounced  
 as a diphthong (one syllable). *placidō*  
*pectore:* as befitting his age and dig-  
 nity.

522-523. *condere, frēnāre:* objects of  
*dedit, granted.*

- jūstitiāque dedit gentis frēnāre superbās,  
 Trōes tē miserī, ventis maria omnia vectī,  
 525 ōrāmus; prohibē infandōs ā nāvibus ignīs,  
 parce piō generī et propius rēs aspice nostrās.  
 Nōn nōs aut ferrō Libycōs populāre penātis  
 vēnimus, aut raptās ad litora vertere praedās;  
 nōn ea vīs animō nec tanta superbia victis.  
 530 Est locus, Hesperiam Graji cognōmine dīcunt,  
 terra antiq̄ua, potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae;  
 Oenōtrī coluēre virī; nunc fāma minōrēs  
 Ītaliā dīxisse ducis dē nōmine gentem.  
 Hic cursus fuit,

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look at,  
see\*

cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, cognomen  
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, cherish,  
inhabit\*

dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, guide, chieftain\*  
frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain  
glaeba, ae *f.* soil, clod, glebe†  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*

Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy†  
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed  
jūstitia, ae *f.* justice, equity†  
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-  
trict of North Africa\*

minōrēs, um *m.* descendants†  
Oenōtr(i)us, a, um Oenotrian, of Oeno-  
tria, in southern Italy†

ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
parcō, ere, peperci (parsī), parsus spare  
(*dat.*)

penātēs, ium *m.* household (gods)\*  
populō (1) ravage, plunder, devastate†  
potēns, entis ruling, powerful\*  
praeda, ae *f.* booty, prey  
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus keep off, pro-  
hibit†

prope near, close; *compar.* propius†\*  
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), seize\*  
superbia, ae *f.* pride, haughtiness†  
superbus, a, um haughty, proud\*  
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*  
ūber, eris *n.* udder; fertility†  
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey\*  
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, drive away\*

523. gentis: the native Libyan tribes.

524. Trōes miserī: in apposition with  
nōs the understood subject of ōrāmus.  
ventis vectī: alliteration, heightening the  
pathos. (per) maria omnia.

525. ā nāvibus (nostris).

526. parce piō: alliteration. piō  
generī: the Trojans; generī is *dat.* with  
special verb; App. 297.

527. Nōn: emphatic. populāre penā-  
tis: alliteration.

527-528. populāre, vertere: *inf.* of  
purpose.

529. vīs (est). victis: referring to the  
capture of Troy by the Greeks. animō,  
victis: *datives* of possession. superbia  
(est).

530. Graji dicunt (= vocant) (illum  
locum) Hesperiam. Hesperia literally  
means "Land of the Evening" or "Western  
Land." Compare Hesperus, the evening  
star. This name for Italy came from the  
Greeks (Graji dicunt), as Vergil indi-  
cates. Graji: *pl.* of Grajus and pro-

nounced as though spelled Grajji, making  
the first syllable long by position; App.  
6, b.

531. armīs, ūbere: *abl.* of respect or  
cause with potēns; App. 325, 332.

532. Oenōtrī: evidently derived from  
a Greek word, Oenōtria, "Vineland,"  
since grapes were much cultivated in  
Italy. coluēre = coluērunt. fāma (est)  
= dicunt, and so followed by *indir. disc.*;  
App. 263. minōrēs: subject of dīxisse =  
vocāvisse.

533. ducis: Italus was a legendary  
king of one of the native Italian tribes  
(the Oenotrians). The word Italy is  
probably related to the word vitulus, bull,  
and therefore means "Land of Herds."  
gentem, Italiā: two accusatives; App.  
316, a.

534. Hic cursus (nōbīs) fuit. There  
are more than fifty such incomplete lines  
in the Aeneid, one of the marks of the  
unfinished state of the poem at Vergil's  
death. See Introd. 5.



*cum subitō adsurgēns flūctū nimbōsus Oriōn* 535  
*in vada caeca tulit penitusque procācibus Austrīs*  
*perque undās superante salō perque invia saxa*  
*dispulit; hūc paucī vestrīs adnāvimus ōrīs.*  
*Quod genus hoc hominum? Quaeve hunc tam barbara mōrem*  
*permittit patria? Hospitiō prohibēmur harēnae;* 540  
*bella cient primāque vetant cōsistere terrā.*  
*Sī genus hūmānum et mortālia temnitis arma,*  
*at spērāte deōs memorēs fandī atque nefandī.*  
*Rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter*  
*nec pietāte fuit, nec bellō major et armīs.* 545  
*Quem sī fāta virum servant, sī vēscitur aurā*  
*aetheriā neque adhūc crūdēlibus occubat umbrīs,*

adhūc as yet, still, so far†  
 adnō (1) swim, float (to) (dat.)†  
 adsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise†  
 aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal  
 alter, era, erum the other (of two), second†\*  
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind\*  
 barbarus, a, um foreign, savage†  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus arouse, excite, stir†\*  
 cōsistō, ere, stiti, stitus stand (fast)\*  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody\*  
 dispellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive apart, scatter, disperse  
 fandus, a, um speakable, right  
 harēna, ae f. sand, beach\*  
 homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
 hospitium, (i) n. hospitality, refuge  
 hūmānus, a, um human, of men†  
 invius, a, um pathless, impenetrable†  
 iūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous)  
 memor, oris mindful, remembering\*  
 mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly\*

mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, law\*  
 nefandus, a, um unspeakable, wrong†  
 nimbōsus, a, um stormy, rainy†  
 occubō, āre lie (dead)†  
 Oriōn, ōnis m. constellation, whose rising and setting come in the rainy season†  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
 paucus, a, um little, few, scanty†\*  
 penitus deep within, deeply, wholly\*  
 permittō, ere, misi, missus allow, grant†  
 pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, duty\*  
 procāx, ācis wanton, boisterous†  
 prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus keep off, prohibit  
 salum, i n. the (salt) sea†  
 spērō (1) hope (for), expect\*  
 subitō suddenly\*  
 superō (1) overcome, surpass\*  
 tam so, so much, so very, such†\*  
 temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain†  
 vadum, i n. shallow, shoal, depth(s)  
 vēscor, i feed on; breathe (abl.)†  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
 vetō, āre, ui, itus prohibit, forbid, prevent

535. flūctū: abl. of place where; App. 319.

536-538. procācibus Austrīs: abl. of means. tulit (nōs). dispulitque (nōs) procācibus Austrīs penitus perque undās perque invia saxa, salō superante (nōs).

537. superante salō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

538. paucī (nōs): subject of adnāvimus. vestrīs ōrīs = ad vestrās ōrās; dat. of direction; App. 306.

539. Quod genus (est) hoc. hoc: pronounced hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. hunc mōrem: the Trojans

had not been allowed to beach and repair their ships (l. 551).

540. (ab) hospitio.

541. (virī tuī) cient. vetant (nōs). (in) primā terrā: abl. of place, on the first (part of, edge of) your land; that is, on the beach.

543. memorēs (esse).

544. nōbīs: dat. of possession; App. 299. quō: abl. with compar.; App. 327.

545. pietāte, bellō, armīs: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

547. aetheriā: as opposed to the lower world. (in) umbrīs (mortis): abl. of place where; App. 319; the lower world, Hades.

- nōn metus, officiō *nec tē* certāsse priōrem  
 paeniteat: *sunt et Siculis regiōnibus urbēs*  
 550 *armaque, Trojānōque ā sanguine clārus Acestēs.*  
*Quassātam ventis liceat subducere classem*  
*et silvis aptāre trabēs et stringere rēmōs,*  
*sī datur Italiā sociis et rēge receptō*  
*tendere, ut Italiā laeti Latiumque petāmus;*  
 555 *sīn absūmpta salūs, et tē, pater optime Teucrum,*  
*pontus habet Libyae nec spēs jam restat Iūli,*  
*at freta Sicaniae saltem sēdēsque parātās,*  
*unde hūc advectī, rēgemque petāmus Acestēn.”*  
*Tālibus Ilioneus; cūctī simul ōre fremēbant*  
 560 *Dardanidae.*  
*Tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:*

absūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take away,  
 destroy, consume†  
 advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey (to)†  
 aptō (1) fit, shape, equip†  
 breviter shortly, briefly†  
 certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie†  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan†  
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus let down, drop,  
 lower\*  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, applaud\*  
 fretum, i n. strait, sea†  
 Ilioneus, ei m. Trojan leader  
 Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
 Latium, (i) i n. district of central Italy\*  
 Libya, ae f. district of North Africa\*  
 licet, ēre, uit, itum be permitted†\*  
 metus, ūs m. fear, anxiety, dread\*  
 officiū, (i) i n. service, duty, kindness†  
 optimus, a, um best, noblest, finest†  
 paenitet, ēre, uit it repents†

pontus, i m. sea\*  
 prior, ius former, first\*  
 profor, fāri, fātus speak, say†  
 quassō (1) shake, shatter†  
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, recover\*  
 regiō, ōnis f. region, district  
 restō, āre, stiti remain, survive†  
 saltem at least†  
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, security, health  
 Sicania, ae f. Sicily, a large island south  
 of Italy†  
 Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily  
 sīn but if, if, however†  
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*  
 stringō, ere, strinxī, strictus strip, graze†  
 subducō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw up,  
 beach, remove†  
 trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan\*  
 unde whence, from which source\*  
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face\*

548. nōn (est) metus (nōbis). certā-  
 (vi)sse: App. 204. officiō: abl. of res-  
 pect; App. 325.

549. paeniteat: vol. (jussive) subj.;  
 App. 254; *do not regret to have been the*  
*first to contend in rivalry of kindness.* sunt  
 et(iam) (nōbis in) Siculis regiōnibus:  
 even though Aeneas be dead, our Sicilian  
 kinsmen will repay your kindness.

551. liceat (nōbis) subducere classem  
 (nostram) quassātam ventis. ventis: abl.  
 of means; App. 331. liceat (nōbis): vol.  
 (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

552. aptāre trabēs: for repairing the  
 ships. (in) silvis: abl. of place where; App.  
 319. stringere rēmōs: trim (branches into)  
 oars, acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

553-554. sociis et rēge receptō: abl.

abs.; receptō: agreeing with the nearer of  
 the two nouns which it modifies. ut laeti  
 petāmus Italiā Latiumque, sī (nōbis)  
 datur tendere (cursum ad, in) Italiā.  
 ut... petāmus: purpose; App. 359.

555. absūmpta (est). pater optime:  
 Aeneas. Teuc(rō)rum.

557. sēdēs (in Sicania) parātās.

558. advectī (sumus). petāmus: vol.  
 (hortatory) subj.; App. 254.

559. Tālibus (dictis) Ilioneus (dixit).

561-578. Dido replies kindly and con-  
 soles the Trojans, offering them assist-  
 ance and promising to send messengers  
 in search of Aeneas.

561. vultum: object of dēmissa, used  
 in the "middle" voice; App. 309; with

"Solvite corde metum, *Teucrī*, sēclūdite cūrās.

*Rēs dūra et rēgnī novitās mē tālia cōgunt*  
*mōliri et lātē finīs custōde tuērī.*

*Quis genus Aeneadam, quis Trojae nesciat urbem,*  
*virtūtēsque virōsque aut tantī incendia bellī?*

565

*Nōn obtūnsa adeō gestāmus pectora Poenī,*  
*nec tam āversus equōs Tyriā Sōl jungit ab urbe.*

*Seu vōs Hesperiam magnam Sāturniaque arva*

*sive Erycis finīs rēgemque optātis Acestēn,*  
*auxiliō tūtōs dīmittam opibusque juvābō.*

570

*Vultis et hīs mēcūm pariter cōsidere rēgnīs?*

*Urbem quam statuō, vestra est; subdūcite nāvīs;*

*Trōs Tyriusque mihi nullō discriminē agētur.*

adeō so (far), event†

Aeneadae, ārum *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas

auxilium, (i) *n.* aid, help, assistance\*

āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert\*

cōgō, ere, cōgē, cōactus force, compel†\*

cōsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle, rest†\*

cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings\*

custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian)†\*

dīmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, send away, let go, dismiss†

discrimen, inis *n.* difference, crisis

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern†\*

Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas, who settled in Sicily where he gave his name to a mountain and city†

gestō (l) bear, wear, carry

Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy

incendium, (i) *n.* fire, conflagration†

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke\*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please\*

lātē far and wide, widely

metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread\*

mōlior, iri, itus work, contrive, make  
nesciō, ire, ivī, (iī) not know, beignorant†  
novitās, ātis *f.* novelty, newness†

obtundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus blunt, dull†  
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power  
optō (l) desire, choose, hope (for)\*

pariter equally, on equal terms†\*

Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian  
Sāturnius, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn,  
an early Italian god who ruled during  
the Golden Age

sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus exclude, shut out†  
seu, sive or (if), whether

Sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day; Sōl, Sōlis sun-god\*

solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, dismiss, relax\*

statuō, ere, uī, itus establish, build†

subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw up,  
beach, remove

tam so, so much, so very, such\*

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*

tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect†\*

tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*

vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*

virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence†\*

downcast look, because of her modesty, a characteristic much cultivated and highly prized among ancient women, especially young women.

563. *Rēs dūra*: harsh necessity, referring to the dangers to the new settlement from the wild Libyan tribes and from her brother Pygmalion. *tālia*: the harsh treatment of which the Trojans complain.

565. *Quis genus Aenead(ā)rum* (nesciat)? nesciat: deliberative, subj.; App. 348.

566. *tanti bellī*: the Trojan War.

567. *Nōn obtūnsa adeō pectora*: we are not so dull, that we do not know the name and fame of Troy and the Trojans.

568. *nec tam adversus*, etc.: we are not so far removed from the rest of the world with its activities. The rising and setting of the sun were thought of as due to the course of the sun-god in his chariot.

569. *Sāturnia = Italian*, because Saturn was the chief god of Italy, where he had ruled during the Golden Age.

570. *Erycis finis*: Sicily.

571. (*vōs*) *tūtōs*.

572. (*in*) *rēgnis*.

573. *Urbem*: attracted from the nom. into the case of the following relative *quam*; App. 242, a.

574. *Trōs Tyriusque*, etc.: this expression has become proverbial for impartial

- 575 *Atque utinam rēx ipse Notō compulsus eōdem  
adforet Aenēās! Equidem per litora certōs  
dimittam et Libyae lūstrāre extrēma jubēbō,  
sī quibus ējectus silvīs aut urbibus errat.*"
- Hīs animum arrēcti dictīs et fortis Achātēs  
et pater Aenēās jamdūdum ērumpere nūbem  
ardēbant. Prior Aenēān compellat Achātēs:  
"Nāte deā, quae nunc animō sententia surgit?  
Omnia tūta vidēs, classem sociōsque receptōs.  
Ūnus abest, mediō in flūctū quem vidimus ipsī  
585 summersum; dictīs respondent cētera māt̄ris."*
- Vix ea fātus erat cum circumfūsa repente  
scindit sē nūbēs et in aethera purgat apertum.  
Restitit Aenēās clārāque in lūce refulsit  
ōs umerōsque deō similis; namque ipsa decōram  
590 caesariem nātō genetrīx lūmenque iuventae*

absum, esse, āfui be absent, lack†  
Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
aether, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky, ether\*  
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear  
arigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, prick up  
caesariēs, ei f. (long) hair, locks†  
certus, a, um sure, trustworthy\*  
cēterus, a, um the rest, the other(s)†  
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round†  
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
compellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, force†  
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to†  
decōrus, a, um beautiful, graceful, seemly†  
dimitto, ere, misi, missus send away, let go, dismiss  
ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw out, eject†  
equidem indeed, surely, to be sure\*  
ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (out), burst (forth)†  
extrēmus, a, um furthest, last, extreme\*  
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant\*

genetrīx, icis f. mother†  
jamdūdum long ago, long since, for some time†  
juventa, ae f. youth, young manhood†  
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa\*  
lūstrō (1) purify, survey, traverse\*  
Notus, i m. (south) wind  
nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog\*  
prior, ius former, sooner, first\*  
purgō (1) clear, cleanse, melt†  
recipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, recover\*  
refulgeō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glitter  
repente suddenly†  
respondeō, ēre, dī, ōnsus (cor)respond†\*  
restō, āre, stiti remain  
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, part  
sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose  
similis, e like, similar (dat., gen.)\*  
summergō (subm-), ere, rsi, rsus sink, drown  
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
utinam would that! O that!†

justice. Tyrius: Carthaginian. mihi: dat. of agent.; App. 302.

576. adforet: opt. subj.; App. 253. certōs (virōs).

578. sī: in case that. ējectus (ex undīs). (in) silvīs, (in) urbibus. quibus: any, indef. pronoun.

579-594. To the surprise of all, Aeneas suddenly appears.

579. animum: acc. of respect; App. 311.

581. Aenēān: acc., a Greek form.

582. Nāte deā: goddess-born, deā being abl. of source; App. 323. (in) animō.

584. Ūnus: Orontēs: see ll. 113 ff.

585. dictīs māt̄ris (tuae): referring to the prophecy of Venus (ll. 390 ff.).

586. fātus erat (Achātēs).

587. (nūbēs sē) purgat.

589-591. ōs umerōsque: accusatives of respect; App. 311. namque genetrīx ipsa (Venus) adflā(ve)rat nātō (suō) decōram caesariem lūmenque purpureum iuventae et laetōs honōrēs. ipsa genetrīx: Venus, as goddess of beauty. nātō:



*purpureum et laetōs oculīs* adflārat honōrēs:

quāle *manūs* addunt eborī decus, *aut ubi* flāvō  
argentum Pariusve lapis circumdatur aurō.

*Tum sic rēgīnam* adloquitur cūctisque repente  
imprōvisus ait: "Cōram, quem quaeritis, adsum,  
Trōius Aenēās, Libycīs ēreptus ab undīs.

Ō sōla infandōs Trojae miserāta labōrēs,  
quae nōs, relliquiās Danaum, terraeque marisque  
omnibus exhaustīs jam cāsibus, omnium egēnōs,  
urbe, domō sociās, grātēs persolvere dignās  
nōn opis est nostrae, Dīdō, nec quidquid ubique est  
gentis Dardaniae, magnum quae sparsa per orbem.  
Dī tibi, sī qua piōs respectant nūmina, sī quid

595

600

addō, ere, didi, ditus add\*  
adflō (1) breathe on (*dat.*)†  
adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost  
argentum, i *n.* silver  
circumdō, are, dedi, datus surround†  
cōram face to face, in the presence  
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
decus, oris *n.* ornament, beauty, dignity  
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly†  
ebur, oris *n.* ivory†  
egēnus, a, um needy, lacking (*gen.*)†  
exhauriō, ire, hausi, haustus drain, ex-  
haust†  
flāvus, a, um tawny, yellow†  
grātēs, ium *f.* gratitude, thanks†  
imprōvisus, a, um unexpected, unfore-  
seen†  
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed  
lapis, idis *m.* stone†

Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-  
trict of North Africa\*  
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate†\*  
ops, opis *f.* help, power, resources, wealth\*  
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth\*  
Parius, a, um Parian, of Paros, a Greek  
island noted for its fine marble; marble†  
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay (fully)†  
purpureus, a, um red, purple, radiant  
quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as\*  
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever  
re(1)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant, leav-  
ings  
repente suddenly  
respectō (1) regard, look at†  
sociō (1) join, ally, share, associate  
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, disperse†\*  
Trōius, a, um Trojan\*  
ubique everywhere, anywhere†

*dat.* with compound adflā(ve)rat; App.  
298. *lūmen purpureum:* ruddy glow.  
*laetōs honōrēs:* joyous grace.

592. (tāle) decus quāle: (*such*) beauty  
*as. manūs:* nom. pl.; the hands (of an  
artist).

593. aurō: abl. of means; App. 331.

594-612. Aeneas profusely thanks  
Dido for her kindness.

594. cūctis: *dat.*, depends on im-  
prōvisus.

595. (ego), quem quaeritis, adsum.

597. Ō (tū) sōla.

598. quae: subj. of sociās, l. 600.  
*re(1)liquiās Dana(ōr)um:* see the note on  
l. 30.

599. omnium: *gen.* with adj.; App.  
287.

600. urbe, domō: abl. of means or  
place where. Dido had not only admitted  
the Trojans to the city, but had of-  
fered them the hospitality of her own  
home.

601-602. opis: pred. gen. of posses-  
sion; App. 283; *it is not in our power.*  
*nec (est opis Dardaniae gentis), quid-*  
*quid Dardaniae gentis est ubique quae*  
*(est) sparsa per magnum orbem (ter-*  
*rārum). nec quidquid:* *nor (in the power*  
*of) whatever of the Trojan race there is*  
*anywhere. gentis:* part. gen.; App. 286.

603. Dī: emphatic by position; subject  
of ferant in l. 605. *qua, quid:* indef. *tibi:*  
with ferant in l. 605.

603-604. sī quid, etc.: *if justice is*  
*(counts for) anything anywhere. sibi:*  
*dat.* of reference; App. 301. *rēcti:* *gen.*  
with the adj. cōnscius; App. 287.

605 ūsquam jūstītia est et mēns sibi cōnscia rēctī,  
 praemia digna ferant. Quae tē tam laeta tulērunt  
 saecula? Quī tantū tālem genuēre parentēs?  
 In freta dum fluvīi current, dum montibus umbrae  
 lūstrābunt convexa, polus dum sīdera pascet,  
 semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt,  
 610 quae mē cumque vocant terrae." Sic fātus amicum  
 Ilionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,  
 post aliōs, fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.

Obstipuit primō aspectū Sidōnia Dīdō,  
 cāsū deinde virī tantō, et sic ore locūta est:  
 615 "Quis tē, nāte deā, per tanta pericula cāsus  
 īnsequitur? Quae vīs immānibus applicat ōrīs?  
 Tūne ille Aenēās quem Dardaniō Anchīsae  
 alma Venus Phrygiū genuit Simoēntis ad undam?"

almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)  
 amicus, i m. friend\*  
 applico, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) drive to†  
 a(d)spectus, ūs m. sight, view†  
 Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader  
 cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware†  
 convexum, i n. hollow, valley, sky  
 cumque; see quicumque  
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, flow†  
 Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
 deinde then, thereupon, next\*  
 dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly  
 fluvius, (i) i m. river, stream†  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant\*  
 fretum, i n. strait, sea  
 gignō, ere, genui, genitus bear, beget  
 Gyās, ae, acc. ān, m. Trojan leader  
 Ilioneus, ei, acc. ēa, m. Trojan leader  
 īnsequor, i, secūtus follow, pursue\*  
 jūstītia, ae f. justice, right(eousness)  
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left†  
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*

loquor, i, locūtus speak, say†\*  
 lūstrō (l) survey, traverse, purify\*  
 obstipēscō, ere, stipui stand agape\*  
 pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed, graze  
 peric(u)lum, i n. risk, danger, peril†  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 polus, i m. pole, sky, heaven  
 post after, behind (acc.); afterward, next\*  
 praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize\*  
 quī, quae, quod; see quicumque  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
 who(so)ever, what(so)ever\*  
 rēctum, i n. right, justice, virtue  
 saeculum, i n. generation, age  
 semper always, ever, forever†\*  
 Serestus, i m. Trojan leader  
 Sidōnius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a  
 famous Phoenician city  
 Simois, entis m. river near Troy  
 tam so (much, very), such\*  
 ūsquam anywhere, at any time†  
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty\*

605. ferant: opt. subj.; App. 253.  
 606. tālem (fēminam, lady). genuēre = genuērunt.  
 607. montibus: dat. of reference or abl. of place.  
 608. polus sīdera pascet: according to some of the ancient philosophers, fine particles of fire in the highest heavens furnish the fuel for the light of the stars.  
 610. quae: to be taken with cumque; this separation of the parts of a compound word is called *tnesis*; App. 445.  
 611. Ilionēa: acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. dextrā (manū), laevā (manū): an example of chiasmus; App. 420.  
 612. post: adverbial, *afterward, next*. Gyān: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

613-630. Dido welcomes Aeneas, telling him that she already knew of him and his fame.

613-614. aspectū (virī). cāsū: abl. of cause; App. 332. deinde: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

615. nāte deā: goddess-born. Quis cāsus: the ordinary form of the interrogative adj. is quī; App. 111, a.

616. ōrīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

617. Tūne = esne tū. Dardaniō Anchīsae: note the hiatus and the spondaic line; App. 399, 395.

618. alma: a common epithet of Venus.

*Atque equidem Teucrum meminī Sidōna venīre  
finibus expulsum patrīs, nova rēgna petentem* 620  
*auxiliō Bēli; genitor tum Bēlus opimam*  
*vastābat Cyprum et victor diciōne tenēbat.*  
*Tempore jam ex illō cāsus mihi cognitus urbis*  
*Trojānae nōmenque tuum rēgēsque Pelasgī.*  
*Ipse hostis Teucrōs insignī laude ferēbat* 625  
*sēque ortum antiquā Teucrōrum ā stirpe volēbat.*  
*Quāre agile, Ō tēctis, juvenēs, succēdite nostrīs.*  
*Mē quoque per multōs similis fortūna laborēs*  
*jactātam hāc dēmum voluit cōsistere terrā.*  
*Nōn ignāra malī miserīs succurrere discō.”* 630  
*Sic memorat; simul Aenēan in rēgia dūcit*  
*tēcta, simul dīvum templis indicit honōrem.*

**auxilium**, (i) *n.* aid, help, assistance\*

**Bēlus**, *i m.* Phoenician king†  
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn; know†  
**cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast),  
halt\*

**Cyprus**, *i f.* large island in the eastern  
Mediterranean†

**dēmum** at length, finally†

**diciō, ōnis f.** sway, rule, power

**discō, ere, didici** learn (how)†

**equidem** indeed, surely, truly\*

**expellō, ere, puli, pulsus** drive out, ban-  
ish†

**hostis**, *is m. (f.)* stranger, enemy, foe\*

**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced\*

**indicō, ere, dixi, dictus** appoint, decree†

**insignis, e** distinguished, marked\*

**jactō** (1) toss, buffet\*

**juvenis**, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,  
woman)\*

**laus, laudis f.** praise, glory, merit\*

**malum, i n.** evil, misfortune, trouble\*

**meminī, isse** remember, recall

**memorō** (1) recount, (re)call, say\*

**opimus, a, um** rich, fertile, fat†

**orior, iri, ortus** rise, spring†

**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek†

**quārē** wherefore, therefore, why†

**quoque** also\*

**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly\*

**Sidōn, ōnis, acc. ōna, f.** famous Phoeni-  
cian city†

**similis, e** similar, like\*

**stirps, pis f.** stock, stem, race†

**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go under, ap-  
proach, enter (*dat.*)†

**succurrō, ere, curri, cursus** help, aid  
(*dat.*)†

**templum, i n.** temple, shrine, sanctuary\*

**Teucer (crus), cri m.** early Trojan king†

**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan\*

**vastō** (1) ravage, (lay) waste, devastate

619. **Sidōna**: *acc.*, a Greek form; App. 68. **Teucrum**: *subj.* of **venire**. He had been expelled by his father, Telamon, for not bringing back his brother Ajax safely from the Trojan War, and had gone to Phoenicia. Ajax had been disgraced in the Greek army, had gone mad, and had committed suicide.

621. **genitor (meus)**.

622. **(Cyprum) tenēbat**.

623. **cognitus (est)**.

624. **rēgēs Pelasgī**: such as Agamemnon, Menelaüs, Achilles, Diomedes, Ulysses, and Nestor.

625. **Ipse (Teucer) hostis**: (*Teucer*) himself (*though*) an enemy. **ferēbat**: *ex- tolled*. **laude**: *abl.* of manner; App. 328.

626. **volēbat**: *would have it (that)*.

Note that **volēbat** rhymes with **ferēbat** at the end of l. 625. **ortum (esse)**.

627. **tēctis**: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

629. (*in*) **hāc terrā**.

630. **malī miseris**: the effect is heightened by bringing these two words together, and by the alliteration. **miseris**: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

631-642. Dido escorts Aeneas and his party to her palace and prepares to entertain them at dinner.

631. **Aenēan**: *acc.*, a Greek form; App. 66.

632. **dīv(ōr)um**. (*in*) **templis**: *abl.* of place where; App. 319. **honōrem**: *an honor (to the gods), a sacrifice*.

- Nec minus intereā sociīs ad litora mittit*  
 vīginti taurōs, *magnōrum* horrentia centum  
 635 terga suum, pinguīs centum *cum mātibus* agnōs,  
*mūnera* laetitiamque dīi.  
*At domus* interior rēgālī splendida luxū  
 instruitur, *mediū*que parant convīvia tēctīs;  
 arte labōrātae vestēs ostrōque superbō,  
 640 *ingēns* argentum mēnsis, caelātaque in aurō  
 fortia facta patrum, seriēs longissima rērum  
 per tot ducta virōs antiquā ab origine gentis.  
*Aenēas* (neque enim patrius cōsistere mentem  
 passus amor) rapidum ad nāvīs praemittit Achātēn,  
 645 Ascaniō ferat haec ipsumque ad moenia dūcat;  
 omnis in Ascaniō cārī stat cūra parentis.

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of  
 Aeneas\*  
 agnus, i *m.* lamb†  
 argentum, i *n.* silver  
 ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice†\*  
 Ascanius, (i) i *m.* son of Aeneas\*  
 caelō (l) engrave, carve, chase†  
 cārūs, a, um dear, fond, beloved\*  
 centum hundred\*  
 cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast),  
 rest\*  
 convīvium, (i) i *n.* banquet, feast†  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 factum, i *n.* deed, undertaking, ex-  
 ploit\*  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant\*  
 horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, trem-  
 ble\*  
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array,  
 equip, build, instruct†  
 intereā meanwhile, meantime\*  
 interior, ius inside, inner

labōrō (l) work, form†  
 laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight  
 luxus, ūs *m.* luxury, magnificence†  
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table\*  
 minor, us less, smaller, slighter†  
 origō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source  
 ostrum, i *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson†  
 patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow\*  
 pinguīs, e fat, rich, fertile  
 praemittō, ere, misi, missus send (be-  
 fore, forth)†  
 rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying\*  
 rēgālīs, e royal, regal, kingly†  
 seriēs, ei *f.* succession, series, row†  
 splendidus, a, um bright, resplendent†  
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*  
 sūs, suis *m.* (f.) hog, pig, swine†  
 taurus, i *m.* bull, bullock, ox†\*  
 tergum, i *n.* back, hide\*  
 tot so many\*  
 vestis, is *f.* robe, cloth(ing), tapestry\*  
 vīginti twenty†

633. sociis (Aenēae). Nec minus:  
*likewise, moreover.*

635. suum: gen. pl. of sūs.

636. mūnera: (as) gifts, in apposition  
 with taurōs, terga, agnōs. dīi: gen. of  
 diēs, an old form. Another incomplete  
 line; cf. l. 534 and note.

637. interior domus: the inner (part of  
 the) palace.

638. (in) tēctis.

639. vestēs (instruuntur). arte: abl.  
 of manner; App. 328; dependent on  
 labōrātae. ostrō superbō: abl. of quality;  
 App. 330. The Tyrian "purple" was  
 famous; cf. line 337.

640. ingēns: massive or a vast amount.  
 (in) mēnsis.

641. fortia facta: alliteration. patrum:  
 of her ancestors.

642. ducta: modifies seriēs (l. 641).

643-656. Aeneas sends Achates to  
 bring Ascanius, and some costly presents  
 for Dido.

644. passus (est).

645. Ascaniō: dat. of direction; (ut)  
 ferat, dūcat: purpose; App. 306; or sub-  
 stantive clauses developed from the voli-  
 tive, dependent upon the idea of bidding  
 implied in praemittit Achātēn; App. 360.



*Mūnera praetereā Īliacīs ērepta ruīnis*  
*ferre jubet, pallam signīs aurōque rigentem*  
*et circumtextum croceō vēlāmen acanthō,*  
*ornātūs Argivae Helenae, quōs illa Mycēnis,* 650  
*Pergama cum peteret inconcessōsque hymenaeōs,*  
*extulerat, mātris Lēdae mirābile dōnum;*  
*praetereā scēptrum, Īlionē quod gesserat ōlim,*  
*maximā nātārum Priamī, collōque monile*  
*bācātum, et duplicem gemmīs aurōque corōnam.* 655  
*Haec cele āns iter ad nāvīs tendēbat Achātēs.*  
*At Cytherēa novās artīs, nova pectore versat*  
*cōnsilia, ut faciem mūtātus et ōra Cupidō*

**acanthus**, *i m.* acanthus, a flowering plant†  
**Achātēs**, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*

**Argivus**, *a, um* Argive, of Argos, a Greek city

**ars, artis f.** art(istry), skill, artifice\*

**bācātus**, *a, um* set (strung) with pearls†

**celerō** (1) hasten, speed, hurry

**circumtexō, ere, uī, xtus** embroider, weave around†

**collum**, *i n.* neck†\*

**cōnsilium**, (*i i n.* plan, advice

**corōna**, *ae f.* crown, garland†

**croceus**, *a, um* yellow, saffron†

**Cupidō, inis m.** Cupid, god of love†

**Cytherēa**, *ae f.* the Cytherean, Venus, who was born on the island of Cythera

**duplex, icis** double, two(fold)

**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry off, lift\*

**faciēs, ēi f.** face, appearance†\*

**gemma**, *ae f.* gem, jewel†

**gerō, ere, gessi, gestus** carry (on), wear, wage\*

**Helena**, *ae f.* Helen, famous Greek

woman, married to Menelaüs; she eloped with Paris and thus brought on the Trojan War†

**hymenaeus**, *i m.* (god of) marriage†

**Īliacus**, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan\*

**Īlionē, ēs f.** eldest daughter of Priam†

**inconcessus**, *a, um* illegal, forbidden†

**iter, itineris n.** way, road, journey\*

**Lēda**, *ae f.* mother of Helen†

**mirābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous

**monile**, *is n.* collar, necklace†

**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter†\*

**Mycēnae, ārum f.** Greek city

**nāta**, *ae f.* daughter

**ōlim** once, at some time\*

**ornātus, ūs m.** ornament, adornment†

**palla**, *ae f.* cloak, mantle, robe†

**Pergama, ōrum n.** (citadel of) Troy\*

**praetereā** besides, henceforth\*

**rigēns, entis** stiff, rigid†

**ruīna**, *ae f.* downfall, ruin

**scēptrum**, *i n.* staff, scepter, power

**signum**, *i n.* sign, token, figure\*

**vēlāmen, inis n.** garment, robe, veil†

**versō** (1) keep turning, revolve†

**647. (ex) ruīnis:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **Mūnera:** cf. l. 636; such an exchange of gifts between host and guest was common in antiquity and is still found among many peoples.

**648. (Achātēn) ferre jubet.**

**649. acanthō:** a common element in the decorative art of antiquity and well known from its use as one of the features of the capital of the Corinthian column.

**650. ornātūs:** acc. pl., apposition with **pallam** and **vēlāmen**, which in turn are in apposition with **mūnera**. **Mycēnis:** place from which; App. 320.

**651. peteret:** cum temporal, with a long final syllable before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, a.

**inconcessōs hymenaeōs:** her fateful marriage with Paris.

**653. Īlionē:** nom., a Greek form; App. 66.

**654. maxima (nātū):** *eldest*. **collō:** dat. of purpose; a collar for the neck.

**655. gemmīs aurōque:** abl. of means or of manner; App. 331, 328.

**656. Haec:** obj. of **celerāns**.

**657-698. Venus substitutes Cupid for Ascanius, that Dido may fall in love with Aeneas.**

**657. (in) pectore. novās, nova:** rhetorical repetition, called anaphora.

**658. faciem et ōra:** objects of the "middle" participle **mūtātus**; App. 309.

- prō dulcī Ascaniō veniat, dōnīsq̄ue furentem  
 660 incendat rēgīnam atque ossibus implicet ignem.  
 Quippe domum timet ambigūam Tyriōsq̄ue bilinguīs,  
 ūrit atrōx Jūnō et sub noctem cūra recursat.  
 Ergō hīs āligerum dictīs adfātur Amōrem:  
 "Nāte, meae vīrēs, mea magna potentia, sōlus,  
 665 nāte, patris summī quī tēla Typhōea temnis,  
 ad tē cōfugiō et supplex tua nūmina poscō.  
 Frāter ut Aenēās pelagō tuus omnia circum  
 litora jactētur odiis Jūnōnis acerbae,  
 nōta tibi, et nostrō doliustī saepe dolōre.  
 670 Nunc Phoenissa tenet Dīdō blandisque morātur

acerbus, a, um bitter, cruel, harsh†  
 adfor, fārī, fātus address, speak to†  
 āliger, era, erum winged†  
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, deceitful†  
 Amor, ōris m. Love, Cupid†  
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas\*  
 atrōx, ōcis dark, fierce, savage†  
 bilinguis, e double-tongued, dishonest†  
 blandus, a, um caressing, persuasive†  
 cōfugiō, ere, fūgī flee (for help)†  
 doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer  
 dolor, ōris m. pain, grief, anger, passion\*  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear\*  
 ergō therefore, then†\*  
 frāter, tris m. brother\*  
 implicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus) infold,  
 mingle, encircle†  
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, fire†\*  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet\*

moror, āri, ātus delay, linger; detain†\*  
 nōtus, a, um (well)known, familiar\*  
 odium, (i)ī n. hate, hatred, enmity  
 os, ossis n. bone†\*  
 Phoenissa, ae f. Phoenician (woman)†  
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek\*  
 potentia, ae f. power, might, strength†  
 prō before, for (abl.)\*  
 quippe truly, forsooth, surely, indeed  
 recursō (1) keep recurring, return†  
 saepe often\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain  
 timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread†\*  
 Typhōeus, a, um Typhoean, of Typhoeus,  
 a giant who while trying to capture  
 heaven was slain by Jupiter with his  
 thunderbolt†  
 ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, inflame†

659. dōnīs: abl. of means with incendet. furentem: proleptic; App. 440; may inflame the mad queen, i.e., may inflame the queen to madness. See the note on l. 69.

659-660. veniat, incendat, implicet: purpose; App. 359.

660. ossibus: her innermost nature, where her deepest feelings were. ossibus: dat. with a compound; App. 298. ignem (amōris).

661. ambigūam, bilinguīs: one's enemies are likely to be characterized as lying scoundrels. The Romans came to hate the Carthaginians during the Punic Wars so bitterly that Pūnica fidēs became synonymous for treachery.

662. ūrit (Venerem) atrōx Jūnō: (the thought of) cruel Juno inflames (Venus with anxiety).

664. sōlus: nom., although preceded by the voc. nāte.

665. patris summī: Jovis. tēla: thun-

derbolts with which Jupiter overthrew the giant Typhoeus, who along with the other giants was attempting to capture heaven by storm. The ancients loved to represent Cupid as scorning the thunderbolts of Jove, as a mark of the resistless power of Love. This was sometimes summed up in the proverb omnia vincit amor.

666. supplex: (as) a suppliant.

667-669. ut frāter . . . nōta (sunt): how your brother (Aeneas) is tossed about is known to you. (in) pelagō.

668. jactētur: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. The last syllable is lengthened before the pause under the metrical accent; App. 394, a.

669. nōta (sunt): for nōtum est; a Greek construction. nostrō = meō; compare the use of the "editorial we" in English. doliustī dolōre: pleonasm; App. 438.

670. (eum) tenet.

*vōcibus, et vereor quō sē Jūnōnia vertant  
hospitia: haud tantō cessābit cardine rērum.  
Quōcircā capere ante dolis et cingere flammā  
rēgīnam meditor, nē quō sē nūmine mūtet,  
sed magnō Aenēae mēcum teneātur amōre.* 675  
*Quā facere id possīs nostram nunc accipe mentem:  
rēgius accītū cārī genitōris ad urbem  
Sīdoniam puer īre parat, mea maxima cūra,  
dōna ferēs pelagō et flammīs restantia Trojae;  
hunc ego sōpītum somnō super alta Cythēra  
aut super Īdalium sacrātā sēde recondam,  
nē quā scire dolōs mediūve occurrere possit.  
Tū faciem illius noctem nōn amplius ūnam  
falle dolō et nōtōs puerī puer indue vultūs,  
ut, cum tē gremiō accipiet laetissima Dīdō* 685

**accītus**, ūs *m.* summons, call†  
**amplius** more, longer, farther†  
**cardō**, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, crisis  
**cārus**, a, um dear, fond, beloved\*  
**cessō** (1) delay, cease, hesitate†  
**cingō**, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround, gird\*  
**Cythēra**, ōrum *n.* island south of Greece,  
birthplace of Venus†  
**dolus**, ī *m.* trick, deceit, wiles, fraud\*  
**faciēs**, ēī *f.* face, appearance\*  
**fallō**, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, counter-  
feit†\*  
**gremium**, (i)ī *n.* lap, bosom, embrace†  
**hospitium**, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, welcome  
**Īdalium**, (i)ī *n.* mountain of Cyprus,  
sacred to Venus†  
**induō**, ere, uī, ūtus put on, don†  
**Jūnōnius**, a, um of Juno†

**meditor**, āri, ātus consider, plan, intend†  
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
**nōtus**, a, um (well)known, familiar\*  
**occurrō**, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
meet, thwart (*dat.*)†  
**quā**, by what (any) way (means), how,  
where(by), in any way  
**quōcircā** wherefore†  
**recondō**, ere, didi, ditus hide, establish†  
**rēgius**, a, um royal, regal, kingly\*  
**restō**, āre, stiti remain, survive  
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate†\*  
**sciō**, īre, īvi (īi), itus know (how)  
**Sidōnius**, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician  
**sōpītus**, a, um asleep, sleeping, lulled†  
**vereor**, ēri, itus fear, dread†  
**vertō**, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout\*  
**vultus**, ūs *m.* countenance, face\*

**671. Jūnōnia**: Venus suspects Juno as  
having inspired the hospitality of Dido.  
**vertant**: subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349.

**672. cardine**: *at such a crisis*, abl. of  
time when; App. 322.

**673. capere dolis, cingere flammā**:  
military terms. **flammā** (amōris).

**674. quō**: indefinite. **mūtet**: nega-  
tive purpose; App. 359. **nūmine** (Jūnō-  
nis).

**675. (ut) teneātur (Dīdō)**: purpose;  
App. 359.

**676. possīs**: subj. in an indir. quest.;  
App. 349.

**677. accītū**: abl. of cause; App. 332.  
**urbem Sīdoniam = Carthāginem**. See  
note on Sīdōnia in l. 446.

**677-678. rēgius puer**: Ascanius.

**679. (ē, ex) pelagō et flammīs**: abl. of  
separation; App. 340.

**680-681. somnō**: with sōpītum, abl. of  
means or manner; pleonasm; App. 438.  
**Cythēra, Īdalium**: favorite haunts of  
Venus.

**681. (in) sacrātā sēde**: in some temple,  
shrine, or holy place.

**682. quā (viā)**: indefinite. **possit**  
(Ascanius): negative purpose; App. 359.  
**occurrere (dolīs)**: and thus interfere with  
my plans.

**683. noctem nōn amplius ūnam**: *for  
one night, no longer. noctem*: acc. of  
duration; App. 314.

**684. puerī puer**: brought together, to  
show how easy the masquerade would be  
for Cupid.

**685-688. ut...inspirēs...fallās**: pur-  
pose; App. 359. (in) gremiō. **laticem**  
**Lyaeum**: alliteration. **laticem Lyaeum =**  
**vīnum, wine**, because Lyaeus, another

rēgālis inter mēnsās laticemque Lyaeum,  
cum dabit amplexūs atque ōscula dulcia figet,  
occultum inspīrēs ignem fallāsque venēnō.”

690

Pāret Amor dictīs cārae genetricis, et ālās  
exuit et gressū gaudēns incēdit Iūli.  
At Venus Ascaniō placidam per membra quiētem  
inrigat, et fōtum gremiō dea tollit in altōs  
Idaliae lūcōs, ubi mollis amāracus illum  
flōribus et dulcī aspirāns complectitur umbrā.

695

Jamque ibat dictō pārēns et dōna Cupidō  
rēgia portābat Tyrīs duce laetus Achātē.  
Cum venit, aulaeis jam sē rēgīna superbīs  
aureā composuit spondā mediamque locāvit,

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of

Aeneas\*

āla, *ae f.* wing\*

amāracus, *i m. (f.)* sweet marjoram†

amplexus, *ūs m.* embrace, fold†

Ascanius, *(i) i m.* son of Aeneas\*

a(d)spirō *(1)* breathe (on), blow on†

aulaea, *ōrum n.* curtains, tapestry†

aureus, *a, um* gold(en), of gold\*

cārus, *a, um* dear, fond, beloved\*

complector, *i, exus* embrace, infold†

compōnō, *ere, posuī, pos(i)tus* compose,  
construct, settle

Cupidō, *inis m.* Cupid, god of love

dulcis, *e* sweet, dear, fragrant\*

dux, *ducis m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief-  
tain\*

exuō, *ere, uī, ūtus* put off, doff†

fallō, *ere, fefelli, falsus* deceive, counter-  
feit\*

figō, *ere, fixī, fixus* fix, fasten, plant\*

flōs, *flōris m.* flower, blossom, bloom†

foveō, *ēre, fōvī, fōtus* cherish, fondle

gaudeō, *ēre, gāvisus* sum rejoice, exult†

genetrix, *icis f.* mother

gremium, *(i) i n.* lap, bosom, embrace

gressus, *ūs m.* step, walk, gait

Idalia, *ae f.* mountain of Cyprus, sacred  
to Venus

incēdō, *ere, cessī, cessus* go (majesti-  
cally), stride

inrigō *(1)* irrigate, steep, diffuse†

inspirō *(1)* breathe in(to), inspire†

Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

latex, *icis m.* liquid, water, wine†

locō *(1)* locate, place, establish\*

lūcus, *i m.* (sacred) grove, forest\*

Lyaeus, *a, um* Lyaeus, of Lyaeus  
(Bacchus), god of wine†

membrum, *i n.* member, limb, part\*

mēnsa, *ae f.* table\*

mollis, *e* soft, gentle, tender†

occulō, *ere, uī, ultus* hide, conceal

ōsculum, *i n.* dainty lip, kiss

pāreō, *ēre, uī, itus* yield, obey (*dat.*)†

placidus, *a, um* calm, peaceful, quiet\*

portō *(1)* carry (away), bear, bring\*

quiēs, *ētis f.* rest, sleep, peace†\*

rēgālis, *e* royal, regal, kingly

rēgius, *a, um* royal, regal, kingly\*

spondā, *ae f.* couch†

superbus, *a, um* proud, haughty\*

venēnum, *i n.* poison, venom†

Venus, *eris f.* goddess of love and beauty\*

name for Bacchus, was god of wine.  
(rēgina Didō) dabit. ignem (amōris),  
venēnō (amōris).

689. dictis: dat. with special verb;  
App. 297.

690. gressū: abl. of cause with gau-  
dēns; App. 332.

691. Ascaniō: dat. of reference; App.  
301.

692. (eum) fōtum (in) gremiō.

694. flōribus, umbrā: ablatives of  
means with complectitur.

695. dictō: dat. with special verb;  
App. 297.

696. Tyrīs: dat. of reference; App.  
301. Achātē: abl. of cause with laetus,  
or abl. abs. with duce; App. 332, 343.

697. venit (Cupidō): present tense,  
when he comes, the queen has (already)  
arranged herself. (in) aulaeis.

698. aureā: two syllables by synizesis;  
App. 403. (in) spondā (sē) mediam locā-  
vit: placed herself on a couch in the midst,  
the place of honor, as befitted a queen.



<i>jam pater Aenēās et jam Trojāna</i> juvenūtū conveniunt, strātōque super discumbitur ostrō.	700
<i>Dant manibus famulī lymphās Cereremque</i> canistrīs expediunt tōnsisque ferunt mantēlia villis. <i>Quinquāgintā</i> intus famulae, quibus ordine longam cūra penum struere et flammīs adolēre penātīs; centum aliae totidemque parēs aetāte ministrī, quī dapibus mēnsās onerent et pōcula pōnant. <i>Nec nōn et Tyrī per limina laeta</i> frequentēs convēnere, torīs jussī discumbere pictīs. <i>Mirantur dōna Aenēae</i> , mirantur Iūlum, flagrantisque deī vultūs simulātaque verba, pallamque et pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō.	705 710

**acanthus**, *i m.* acanthus, a flowering plant  
**adoleō**, *ēre*, *ui*, *ultus* magnify, honor†  
**aetās**, *ātis f.* age, time  
**canistrum**, *i n.* basket, hamper†  
**centum** hundred\*  
**Cerēs**, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain; bread  
**conveniō**, *ire*, *venī*, *ventus* come together,  
assemble, agree, harmonize  
**croceus**, *a, um* saffron, yellow  
**daps**, *dapis f.* banquet, feast\*  
**discumbō**, *ere*, *cubui*, *cubitus* recline (at  
table)†  
**expediō**, *ire*, *ivi* (*ii*), *itus* bring forth  
**famula**, *ae f.* maid-servant†  
**famulus**, *i m.* man-servant, page†  
**flagrō** (*l*) burn, blaze, glow†  
**frequēns**, *entis* thronging, crowded†  
**intus** within, inside  
**Iūlus**, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
**juvenūtūs**, *ūtis f.* youth, young men\*  
**lympa**, *ae f.* water†  
**mantēle**, *is n.* napkin, towel†  
**mēnsa**, *ae f.* table\*  
**minister**, *tri m.* man-servant, attendant†

**mīror**, *ārī*, *ātus* wonder (at), admire\*  
**onerō** (*l*) load, burden  
**ordō**, *inis m.* order, line, array\*  
**ostrum**, *i n.* purple, scarlet, crimson  
**palla**, *ae f.* cloak, robe, mantle  
**pār**, *paris* equal, similar, even†\*  
**penātēs**, *ium m.* household gods\*  
**penus**, *ūs (i) m. (f.)* food, store†  
**pingō**, *ere*, *pinxi*, *pictus* paint, embroider†  
**pōculum**, *i n.* cup, goblet†  
**quinquāgintā** fifty†  
**simulō** (*l*) imitate, pretend, feign  
**sternō**, *ere*, *strāvī*, *strātus* lay low,  
spread, strew\*  
**struō**, *ere*, *strūxī*, *strūctus* arrange, pile  
(up), construct, contrive†  
**tondeō**, *ēre*, *totondī*, *tōnsus* shear, clip†  
**torus**, *i m.* (banqueting) couch†\*  
**totidem** as many, so many†  
**Trojānus**, *a, um* Trojan\*  
**vēlāmen**, *inis n.* garment, robe, veil  
**verbum**, *i n.* word, speech†  
**villus**, *i m.* tuft, nap, hair, bristle†  
**vultus**, *ūs m.* countenance, face\*

699-747. The great banquet in Dido's palace.

700. **discumbitur**: impersonal, *it is reclined = they (the guests) recline*. The ancient Romans reclined at banquets.

701. **manibus**: *for (washing) their hands*; dat. of purpose; App. 303. **Cererem**: Ceres, goddess of grain, used here by metonymy for bread; App. 433. (**ex**) **canistris**.

702. **tōnsis villis**: abl. of quality; App. 330.

703. **intus**: *within (the serving rooms)*. **famulae (sunt)**. **quibus (erat) cūra**: dat. of possession. (**in, ex**) **ordine**.

704. **flammis adolere penatis**: *to honor the household gods with fires (on the altars)*.

705. **aetate**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

706. **onerent, pōnant**: purpose; App. 359, 388.

707. **Nec nōn**: *likewise*. **et**: *also*. **laeta**: a transferred epithet; it was really the people who were happy, not the doorways.

708. **convēnere = convēnerunt**. (**in**) **toris**.

709. **Iūlum**: really Cupid, masquerading as Iulus (Ascanius).

710. **dei (Cupidinis)**.

711. **pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō**: interlocked order; App. 442.

*Praecipuē infelix, pesti dēvōta futūrae,  
expleri mentem nequit ardēscitque tuendō  
Phoenissa, et pariter puerō dōnīsque movētur.*

715

*Ille ubi complexū Aenēae collōque pependit  
et magnum falsi implēvit genitōris amōrem,  
rēginam petit. Haec oculis, haec pectore tōtō  
haeret et interdum gremiō fovet inscia Dīdō  
insidat quantus miserae deus. At memor ille  
mātris Acidaliae paulātim abolēre Sychaeum  
incipit et vivō temptat praevertēre amōre  
jam pridem residēs animōs dēsuētaque corda.*

720

*Postquam prīma quies epulis mēnsaeque remōtae,  
crātēras magnōs statuunt et vīna corōnant.*

**aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus** abolish, remove†  
**Acidalius, a, um** Acidalian, of Acidalia,  
a fountain in Boeotia, sacred to Venus†  
**ardēscō, ere, arsi** catch fire, burn†  
**collum, ī n.** neck\*  
**complexus, ūs m.** embrace†  
**cor, cordis n.** heart, spirit, feelings\*  
**corōnō (1)** crown, wreath†  
**crātēr, ēris m.** (mixing) bowl, urn†  
**dēsuētus, a, um** unaccustomed, disused†  
**dēvoveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus** vow, doom,  
devote†  
**epulae, ārum f.** banquet, feast  
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete, sat-  
isfy  
**falsus, a, um** false, deceitful, pretended  
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** fondle, cherish  
**gremium, (i) n.** lap, bosom, embrace  
**haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus** hang, cling  
(to)\*  
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy  
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, under-  
take†  
**inscius, a, um** ignorant, unaware†  
**insidō, ere, sēdī, sessus** settle on†  
**interdum** sometimes, at times†

**memor, oris** mindful, remembering, un-  
forgetting\*  
**mēnsa, ae f.** table\*  
**nequeō, ire, ivi (ii), itus** be unable†  
**pariter** equally, on equal terms\*  
**paulātim** gradually, little by little†  
**pendeō, ēre, pependi** hang\*  
**pestis, is f.** plague, ruin, destruction†  
**Phoenissa, ae f.** Phoenician (woman),  
Dido  
**postquam** after (that), when\*  
**praecipuē** especially  
**praevertō, ere, ī, rsus** occupy first, out-  
strip, surpass  
**pridem** long ago, long since, for some time†  
**quantus, a, um** how much, how great,  
how many\*  
**quies, ētis f.** calm, peace, quiet, lull\*  
**removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove  
**reses, idis inert, unstirred, sluggish†**  
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, build  
**Sychaeus, ī m.** deceased husband of Dido  
**temptō (1)** try, test, attempt, seek†\*  
**tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus)** watch, guard\*  
**vinum, ī n.** wine\*  
**vivus, a, um** living, natural, alive

**712. pesti futūrae dēvōta:** her love was to cause her destruction, as is told in the fourth book of the *Aeneid*.

**713. tuendō:** gerund; from *tueor*, abl. of means; App. 269, 331; with (by) gazing.

**714. Phoenissa:** Dido. *puerō:* abl., thought of as means, coördinate with *dōnis*.

**718. (in) gremiō.**

**719. insidat:** subj. in an indir. quest., depending on *inscia*; App. 349. *miserae:* substantively, the unfortunate (woman), proleptic; dat. with compound; App. 440, 298. *ille:* Cupidō.

**720. mātris Acidaliae:** of his Acidalian mother (Venus). *mātris:* gen. with the adj. *memor*; App. 287. *abolēre Sychaeum:* to make her forget Sychaeus entirely.

**721. vivō amōre:** with a living love for Aeneas; contrasted with her old love for the dead Sychaeus.

**722. dēsuēta corda:** her heart (now) having become unaccustomed (to love).

**723. epulis (fuit):** dat. of possession; App. 299; when the first lull came in the feasting. *mēnsae remōtae (sunt).* Cf. l. 216.

**724. crātērās:** acc. pl., a Greek form.

Fit strepitus tectis vocemque per ampla volutant  
 atria; dependent lychni laquearibus aureis  
 incensi et noctem flammis funalia vincunt.  
 Hic regina gravem gemmis aurorque poposcit  
 implēvitque merō pateram, quam Bēlus et omnēs  
 ā Bēlō solitī; tum facta silentia tectis:  
 "Juppiter, hospitibus nam tē dare jūra loquuntur,  
 hunc laetum Tyriusque diem Trojāque profectis  
 esse velis, nostrōsque hujus meminisse minores.  
 Adsit laetitiae Bacchus dator et bona Jūnō;  
 et vōs, Ō coetum, Tyriū, celebrāte faventēs."  
 Dixit et in mēnsam laticum libāvit honōrem  
 prīmaque, libātō, summō tenus attigit ōre;  
 tum Bitiae dedit increpitāns; ille impiger hausit

725

730

735

amphus, a, um ample, full, spacious†  
 atrium, (i) i n. great hall, atrium†  
 attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach†  
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*  
 Bacchus, i m. (god of) wine  
 Bēlus, i m. early Phoenician king†  
 Bitiās, ae m. Carthaginian courtier†  
 bonus, a, um good, kind(ly), useful\*  
 celebrō (1) throng, attend, honor†  
 coetus, ūs m. assembly, crowd, company  
 dator, ōris m. giver, bestower†  
 dēpendeō, ēre hang down (from) (abl.)†  
 faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus favor, befriend†  
 fiō, fierī, factus become, be made  
 funāle, is n. taper, lamp†  
 gemma, ae f. gem, jewel  
 gravis, e heavy, weighty, serious\*  
 hauriō, ire, haurī, haustus drain, draw (off)†  
 hospes, itis m. guest, host, stranger†  
 impiger, gra, grum eager, quick†  
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy\*

incendō, ere, i, ēnsus light, inflame\*  
 increpitō (1) challenge, chide†  
 jūs, jūris n. law, right, decree  
 laetitia, ae f. joy, gladness, delight  
 laquear, āris n. fretted (paneled) ceiling†  
 latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine  
 libō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)  
 loquor, i, locūtus speak, say\*  
 lychnus, i m. lamp, chandelier†  
 meminī, isse remember, recall (gen.)  
 mēnsa, ae f. table\*  
 merum, i n. unmixed wine†  
 minōrēs, um m. descendants, posterity  
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl†  
 poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek\*  
 proficiscor, i, factus set out, depart  
 silentium, (i) i n. silence, quiet, repose†  
 soleō, ēre, solitus sum be accustomed†  
 strepitus, ūs m. noise, uproar  
 tenus up to, as far as (abl.)†  
 volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

The wine was mixed with water and was not brought in till the guests had finished eating. *vina corōnant: they encircle the wine* (bowls) with garlands and wreaths of leaves and flowers, a usual custom at Roman and Greek banquets.

725. strepitus: the sound of joyful revelry. (in) tectis.

726. (dē) laquearibus. aureis: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

728. pateram gravem gemmis aurōque.

729. Bēlus: a remote ancestor of Dido, not to be confused with Belus, her father, mentioned in l. 621. omnēs ā Bēlō: all those (descended from) Belus.

730. solitī(erant implēre). facta (sunt). silentia: poetic plural. (in) tectis.

731. Juppiter: Dido invokes the blessing of Jupiter as god of hospitality.

732. velis hunc diem esse laetum. (his) Trojā profectis = Teucris.

733. velis: opt. subj.; App. 253. hujus (diēi).

734. Adsit: opt.; App. 253. laetitiae: obj. gen. with dator; App. 284.

735. coetum: obj. of celebrāte. faventēs: speaking no unpropitious word, graciously.

736. honōrem: honor (to the gods), offering.

737. libātō: impersonal abl. abs., a libation having been poured; App. 343. summō ōre: with a dainty feminine sip, to observe the ancient proprieties.

738. dedit (pateram).

- spūmantem pateram et plēnō sē prōluit aurō;  
 740 post alī procerēs. Citharā crīnitus Iōpās  
 personat aurātā, docuit quem maximus Atlās.  
*Hic canit errantem lūnam sōlisque labōrēs,*  
 unde hominum genus et pecudēs, unde imber et ignēs,  
 745 Arctūrum pluviāsque Hyadas geminōsque Triōnēs;  
*quid tantum Ōceanō properent sē tingere sōlēs*  
*hibernī, vel quae tardis mora noctibus obstet.*  
*Ingeminant plausū Tyriū, Trōesque sequuntur.*  
*Nec nōn et variō noctem sermōne trahēbat*  
*infelix Didō longumque bibēbat amōrem,*

Arctūrus, *i m.* bright star in the constellation Boōtes, which rose in the stormy season†

Atlās, *antis m.* god who supported the sky on his shoulders; high mountain of northwest Africa†

aurātus, *a, um* gilded†

bibō, *ere, i* drink (of, in)

canō, *ere, cecini, cantus* sing (of), chant, proclaim\*

cithara, *ae f.* harp, lyre, either†

crīnitus, *a, um* long-haired†

doceō, *ēre, uī, ctus* teach, instruct\*

hibernus, *a, um* wintry, of winter

homō, *inis m. (f.)* man, mortal, human\*

Hyades, *um f.* constellation, rising in the stormy season†

imber, *bris m.* rain, flood, water

ingeminō (1) redouble†

Iōpās, *ae m.* Phoenician bard†

lūna, *ae f.* moon†\*

mora, *ae f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation\*

obstō, *āre, stiti, status* oppose, hinder (*dat.*)†

Ōceanus, *i m.* ocean

patera, *ae f.* (libation) bowl

pecus, *udis f.* member of flock, animal†\*

personō, *āre, uī, itus* sound, play†

plausus, *ūs m.* clapping, applause†

plēnus, *a, um* full, filled

pluvius, *a, um* watery, rainy†

post after (*acc.*); afterward, then\*

procer, *eris m.* noble, lord†

prōluō, *ere, uī, ūtus* drench, wash†

properō (1) hasten, hurry†

sermō, *ōnis m.* conversation, speech

sōl, *sōlis m.* sun; day\*

spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray

tardus, *a, um* slow, late, lazy†

ting(u)ō, *ere, tinxī, tinctus* wet, dip†

Triōnēs, *um m.* constellations, the Greater and Lesser Bear†

Trōs, *Trōis m.* Trojan\*

unde whence, from what source (cause)\*

varius, *a, um* varied, different\*

739. plēnō aurō: the full (cup of) gold.

740. post = postea. procerēs (pateram hausérunt). Citharā: abl. of instrument or means; App. 331. crīnitus: long-haired, a style often affected by artists even today.

742. Hic: Iōpās. lūnam, labōrēs: cognate acc. with canit, stating themes of the song; cf. arma virumque canō (l. 1). sōlis labōrēs: eclipses, since the sun was thought of as struggling and suffering during an eclipse.

743. unde hominum genus (sit): the first of a series of indirect questions depending on canit. unde (sint) ignēs (Jovis): lightnings.

745. quid hibernī sōlēs properent

tantum: why the winter days are so short and the nights so long. (in) Ōceanō.

746. properent, obstet: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349. tardis noctibus (hibernis): dat. with compound; App. 298.

748-756. Dido, smitten with love for Aeneas, begs him to tell all about himself and his adventures, beginning with the fall of Troy.

748. Nec nōn et: likewise, also.

749. infelix: cf. pesti dēvōta futūrae, (l. 712). longum amōrem: deep (draughts of) love.



*multa super Priamō rogitāns, super Hectore multa;* 750  
*nunc quibus Aurōrae vēnisset filius armīs,*  
*nunc quālēs Diomēdis equī, nunc quantus Achillēs.*  
 "Immō age et ā primā dīc, hospes, origine nōbīs  
 insidiās" inquit "Danaum cāsūsque tuōrum  
 errōresque tuōs; nam tē jam septima portat 755  
 omnibus errantem terrīs et flūctibus aestās."

**Achillēs, is (ī) m.** Greek chieftain\*

**aestās, ātis f.** summer

**Aurōra, ae f.** goddess of dawn, mother of Memnon, a Trojan ally†\*

**Diomēdēs, is m.** Greek chieftain, who captured the horses of Aeneas, the finest under the sun†

**error, ōris m.** wandering, straying†

**filius, (i)ī m.** son

**Hector, oris m.** Trojan leader\*

**hospes, itis m.** guest, host, stranger

**immō** nay (rather), rather†

**inquam, is, it** say\*

**insidiae, ārum f.** ambush, treachery, snare, trick†

**origō, inis f.** origin, beginning, source

**portō (1)** carry, bear, bring\*

**quālīs, e** of what sort, such (as)\*

**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many, as\*

**rogitō (1)** ask (often, eagerly)†

**septimus, a, um** seventh†

**750-752** Dido's questions indicate that her primary interest is not in the things about which she inquires but in Aeneas.

**751.** *quibus armīs . . . vēnisset:* indir. quest.; App. 349.

**752.** *quālēs (essent) equī, quantus (esset)* *Achillēs:* indirect questions; App. 349.

**753.** *dīc:* imp. of *dīcō*; App. 202.

**754.** *Dana(ōr)um.*

**756.** (in) *terrīs* et (in) *flūctibus.*

## BOOK II

CONTICUĒRE *omnēs intentique ōra tenēbant.*

Inde torō pater Aenēās sic orsus ab altō:

“Infandum, rēgina, jubēs renovāre dolōrem,

Trojānās ut opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum

5 ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī  
et quōrum pars magna fuī. Quis tālia fandō

Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūrī mīles Ulixī

temperet ā lacrimīs? Et jam nox ūmida caelō

praecipitat suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.

10 *Sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs*

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn; know  
conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush†  
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly†  
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, pas-  
sion\*

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, tear up†  
inde thence, afterward, thereupon\*  
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed  
intentus, a, um intent, eager, strained†  
lāmentābilis, e lamentable, pitiable, sad†  
mīles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)†

Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly,  
subjects of Achilles†

ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth\*  
ordior, irī, orsus begin, undertake  
praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall†  
renovō (1) renew, revive†  
suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus advise, urge  
temperō (1) control, restrain, refrain  
torus, i *m.* (banqueting) couch, cushion\*  
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
Ulixēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek  
leader†\*

ūmidus, a, um moist, dewy, damp†

1-12. Acceding to Dido's request Aeneas agrees to describe the fall of Troy, in spite of the sorrow renewed by such memories.

1. conticuēre (= conticuērunt), tenēbant: observe the difference in tenses, the perfect denoting instantaneous, completed result, *they grew silent*; the imperf. continued action, *they continued to hold*; App. 351, 2 and 4. ōra (in, ad Aenēan) tenēbant.

2. pater: simply a title of honor and veneration, because of its Roman associations, where it was regularly used of a member of the senatorial and ruling aristocracy. ab altō torō: on which he was reclining at the banquet. orsus (est): from ordior.

3. Infandum: emphatic by position. jubēs (mē) renovāre.

4. Trojānās: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. (fandō) ut

Danaī ēruerint Trojānās opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum (fandō)que (ea) miserrima quae (ego) ipse vīdī. fandō: *by telling. ut: how.*

5. ēruerint: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. miserrima: substantively: *the heart-breaking events.*

6. tālia: substantively, obj. of fandō in l. 6. fandō: gerund of for; abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

7. (quis) mīles. Myrmidonum Dolopumve: part. genitives, depending on quis; App. 286.

8. temperet: deliberative subj.; App. 348. (dē) caelō: the night is personified; App. 437; after passing the zenith at midnight in her chariot, she is now rushing down into the western wave; it is thus after midnight.

9. praecipitat (in mare).

10. sī amor (est tibi) cognōscere = sī vis (from volō) cognōscere; App. 264.

*et breviter Trojae suprēum audire labōrem,*  
quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit  
incipiam.

Fracti bellō fātisque repulsi  
ductōrēs Danaum tot jam lābentibus annis  
instar montis equum divinā Palladis arte  
aedificant, sectāque intexunt abiete costās;  
vōtum prō reditū simulant; ea fāma vagātur.  
Hūc dēlēcta virum sortitī corpora fūrtim  
inclūdunt caecō laterī penitusque cavernās  
ingentis uterumque armātō milite complent.

15

20

abiēs, etis *f.* fir, pine†  
aedicō (1) build, construct, erect†  
annus, *i m.* year, season\*  
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish†  
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice\*  
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely  
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden\*  
caverna, ae *f.* hollow, cavity, cavern†  
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete†  
costa, ae *f.* rib, side  
dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, select†  
divinus, a, um divine, celestial, holy  
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, chieftain, guide  
frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shatter\*  
fūrtim stealthily, secretly, furtively†  
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble\*  
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake\*  
inclūdō, ere, si, sus inclose, confine†  
instar *n. indecl.* likeness, image (*gen.*)†  
intexō, ere, xui, xtus (*in*) weave, cover†  
latus, eris *n.* side, flank\*

lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow†  
memini, isse remember, recall  
miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)  
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom  
and the arts  
penitus deep(ly), within, completely\*  
prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)\*  
quamquam although; however, but†  
reditus, ūs *m.* return (home)†  
refugiō, ere, fūgi flee, retreat, recoil†  
repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus drive back,  
repel†  
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, slice, cleave\*  
simulō (1) pretend, imitate, feign  
sortior, irī, itus draw (by) lot, allot†  
tot so many, as many\*  
uterus, *i m.* belly, womb†  
vagor, āri, ātus wander, spread abroad†  
vōtum, *i n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offer-  
ing\*  
voveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus vow, consecrate

11. Trojae: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. suprēum labōrem: the final agony.

12. lūctū: abl. of cause; App. 332.

13-20. After ten years of unsuccessful effort, the Greeks, worn out by the long siege and lacking confidence in their strength and courage, resort to strategy. They pretend to flee but hide in the neighboring island of Tenedos, leaving behind an enormous wooden horse, in which are concealed the bravest of the Greek leaders.

13. bellō, fātis: ablatives of means; App. 331.

14. ductōrēs = ducēs. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d. lābentibus annis: abl. abs., denoting cause; App. 343. The siege of Troy was now in its tenth and final year.

15. aedificant equum instar montis: "big as a mountain," hyperbole; App. 428. Palladis arte: as goddess of wisdom and the arts, Minerva had inspired the Greeks with the idea and with the skill necessary for its execution.

16. abiete: pronounce abiete here, making the first syllable long by position; App. 401.

17. (Danaī) simulant (equum esse) vōtum prō (suō) reditū: for their (safe) return (home).

18. dēlēcta vir(ōr)um corpora = virōs dēlēctōs. Hūc (= in hunc equum) caecō laterī fūrtim inclūdunt dēlēcta corpora vir(ōr)um, sortitī (ea).

19. caecō laterī = in caecum latus, dat. of direction or with compound; App. 306, 298.

- Est in cōspectū Tenedos, nōtissima fāmā  
insula, dives opum Priamī dum rēgna manēbant,  
nunc tantum sinus et statio male fida carinīs:  
hūc sē prōvecti dēsertō in litore condunt.*
- 25 *Nōs abiisse ratī et ventō petiisse Mycēnās.  
Ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucria lūctū:  
panduntur portae, juvat ire et Dōrica castra  
dēsertōsque vidēre locōs litusque relictum:  
hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;  
classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant.*
- 30 *Pars stupet innūptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae*

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart, go (away)\*  
Achillēs, is (i) m. Greek leader\*  
aciēs, ēi f. edge; battle line, army\*  
carina, ae f. keel, ship†\*  
castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment\*  
certō (i) strive, rival, fight, vie  
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish; hide\*  
cōspectus, ūs m. sight, view  
dēsērō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy (gen.)  
Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly  
Dōricus, a, um Doric, Spartan, Greek†  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
exitiālis, e fatal, destructive, deadly†  
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe\*  
innūptus, a, um unwed, virgin†  
insula, ae f. island  
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please\*  
lūctus, ūs m. grief, mourning, sorrow

male badly, illy, not†  
Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom and the arts†  
Mycēnae, ārum f. Greek city; Greece  
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
ops, opis f. help, resources, power, wealth\*  
pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open, loosen\*  
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
prōvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry, convey†  
reor, rēri, ratus suppose, think, reckon†  
saevus, a, um stern, fierce, raging\*  
sinus, ūs m. fold, hollow, bosom, bay\*  
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed  
solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), free, pay\*  
statio, ōnis f. station, anchorage†  
stupeō, ēre, uī be dazed, stand agape (at)  
tantum so much, so great, only  
Tenedos, i f. small island near Troy†  
Teucria, ae f. Troy, Troyland†

21-30. After the departure of the Greeks, the Trojans rush out to see the deserted camp.

21. Est: there is. in cōspectū (Trojae). fāmā: abl. of respect; App. 325.

22. opum: gen. of respect with the adj. dives; App. 294. Priamī rēgna: poetic plural; App. 243.

23. nunc (insula est) tantum sinus. male fida = infida: unsafe, treacherous; litotes; App. 431. carinīs = nāvibus: dat. with infida; App. 304, 443.

24. hūc = ad hanc insulam. (Danaī) prōvecti (per pelagus).

25. Nōs: contrasted with the treacherous Greeks; App. 247. Nōs ratī (sumus Danaōs) abiisse. ventō: abl. of means; App. 331. Mycēnās = Graeciam, Greece; App. 443.

26. lūctū: abl. of separation; App. 340. omnis longō Teucria lūctū: interlocked order; App. 442

27. juvat (nōs) ire (ex urbe): impersonal, it pleases (us), we delight.

29-30. hic manus (tendēbat). hic... hic... hic: the Trojans point out these places to one another. The anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413. hic (erat) locus classibus (Danaōrum): refers to the place where the Greek vessels had been drawn up on shore. classibus = nāvibus: dat. of reference; App. 301. aciē: abl. of manner; App. 328. hic (Danaī) aciē certāre solēbant.

31-56. The more prudent among them urge the Trojans to destroy the wooden horse. Laocoön takes the lead in this proposal and strikes the side of the horse with his spear.

31. stupet = mirātur: its object is dōnum. exitiāle: fatal (for Troy), as will be seen in the sequel. Minervae: obj. gen.; App. 284.



et mōlem mīrantur equī; prīmusque Thymoetēs  
dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,  
sive dolō seu jam Trojae sīc fāta ferēbant.

At Capys, et quōrum melior sententia mentī, 35  
aut pelagō Danaum insidiās suspectaque dōna  
praecipitāre jubent subjectisque ūrere flammīs,  
aut terebrāre cavās uterī et temptāre latebrās.  
Seinditur incertum studia in contrāria vulgus.

Prīmus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā 40  
Lāocoōn ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,  
et procul: 'Ō miserī, quae tanta insānia, cīvēs?  
Crēditis āvectōs hostīs? Aut ūlla putātis  
dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? Sīc nōtus Ulixēs?

āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, carry, convey  
(away)

Capys, *yo* *m.* Trojan leader

careō, ēre, uī, itus be free from, lack (*abl.*)†

caterva, *ae f.* crowd, band, troop

cavus, *a, um* hollow, vaulted\*

civis, *is m. (f.)* citizen, compatriot†

comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,  
follow†

contrārius, *a, um* opposite, opposing

crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)\*

dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run down†

dolus, *i m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud\*

hortor, ārī, ātus exhort, urge, incite†\*

hostis, *is m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*

ibi there, then†

incertus, *a, um* uncertain, wavering†

insānia, *ae f.* madness, frenzy, folly†

insidiae, ārum *f.* snare, ambush, treachery

intrā within, inside, in(to) (*acc.*)

Lāocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan priest of Nep-  
tune†

latebra, *ae f.* hiding place, cavern, lair†

locō (1) place, locate, establish\*

melior, *ius* better, superior, nobler

mīror, ārī, ātus wonder (at), admire\*

mōlēs, *is f.* (huge) mass, structure, bur-  
den

mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart\*

nōtus, *a, um* (well) known, familiar\*

praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall

putō (1) suppose, think, consider†

scindō, ere, scidī, scissus split, divide

sententia, *ae f.* opinion, purpose, view

sive, seu or (if), whether, either

studium, (i) *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit

subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under†

suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus suspect

temptō (1) try, test, examine, explore\*

terebrō (1) bore into, pierce†

Thymoetēs, *ae m.* Trojan leader†

Ulixēs, *is (ei, i) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek  
leader\*

ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, consume

uterus, *i m.* belly, womb

vulgus, *i n. (m.)* rabble, crowd, herd

32. mīrantur: *pl.* with a collective  
noun, *pars*, although the preceding verb,  
stupet, is singular; App. 236, a.

33. hortātur (equum) dūci et (in) arce  
locārī = hortātur ut equus dūcātur et  
locētur in arce (Trojae): App. 360.

34. dolō: *abl.* of cause; App. 332. fāta  
(sē) ferēbant: *fates were tending*; an oracle  
had foretold that a child born on a certain  
day would cause the destruction of Troy.  
When a child was born to Thymoetes and  
Paris was born to Priam on that day, Priam  
put to death the son of Thymoetes, think-  
ing thereby to avert ruin for the state.

35. et (ei) quōrum sententia melior  
(erat) menti: *and those whose mind had a  
better counsel. menti*: *dat.* of possession;  
App. 299.

36. pelagō: *dat.* of direction; App.  
306. Dana(ōr)um insidiās suspectaque  
dōna = equum.

37. -que = -ve; some advise the de-  
struction of the horse in the sea or by fire;  
others an examination of its contents.  
(nōs) jubent. ūrere (equum) flammīs:  
*abl.* of means; App. 331.

38. cavās latebrās: *obj.* of both tere-  
brāre and temptāre.

40. comitante catervā: *abl. abs.*; App.  
343.

42. et procul (clāmat). insānia (est  
ista).

43. āvectōs (esse).

44. dolīs: *abl.* of separation with  
carēre; App. 340. dōna Dana(ōr)um.  
nōtus (est vōbis) Ulixēs: Ulysses, the

- 45 *Aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achivī,  
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est mächina mūrōs,  
inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēs super urbī,  
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.  
Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentis.*
- 50 *Sic fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam  
in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum  
contorsit. Stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō  
insonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.  
Et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,  
55 impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,  
Trojaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs.*

Achivus, a, um Achaeon, Greek  
aliquis (qui), qua, quid (quod) some(one),  
any(one)\*  
alvus, i f. belly, body†  
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek†  
caverna, ae f. hollow, cavity, cave  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
compāgēs, is f. joint, seam, fastening  
contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus hurl, twirl†  
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (dat.)\*  
curvus, a, um curved, crooked†\*  
dēs super from above  
error, ōris m. error, deceit, trick  
fabricō (1) fashion, make†  
ferus, i m. beast, monster, horse\*  
foedō (1) befoul, defile; mar, mangle†  
gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, moan\*  
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart  
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus impel, drive

inclūdō, ere, si, sus (in)close, confine  
insonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar, echo†  
inspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look into†  
laevus, a, um left, foolish, unlucky\*  
latebra, ae f. hiding place, cavern, lair  
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
lignum, i n. wood, timber†  
mächina, ae f. machine, engine, de-  
vice†  
mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart\*  
occultō (1) hide, conceal, secrete†  
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever  
recutiō, ere, cussi, cussus strike (back),  
shake†  
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake\*  
uterus, i m. belly, womb  
validus, a, um strong, stout, mighty

leader of the Greeks in cunning, craft,  
and treachery.

45. (in) hōc lignō = in hōc equō, qui  
est dē lignō factus: metonymy; App.  
433.

46. mächina (belli).

47. inspectūra, ventūra: the fut. partici-  
ples denote purpose; App. 274. urbī:  
dat. of direction = in urbem; App. 306.

48. nē crēdite: nē with the imp. is a  
poetic use; App. 256, a. equō: dat.  
with crēdō; App. 297.

49. timeō Danaōs et (even) dōna  
ferentis: a favorite quotation. The  
Greeks are so treacherous that they are  
not to be trusted even when making  
gifts (sacrificing, as in this case) to their  
gods.

50. validis ingentem vīribus hastam:  
interlocked order; App. 442. vīribus:  
abl. of manner; App. 328; from vis,  
not vir, as may be seen from the quan-

tity of the i as well as from its case  
form.

51. ferī = equī. compāgibus: with  
curvam, abl. of manner or means; App.  
328, 331.

52. illa = hasta. uterō recussō: abl.  
abs. with causal force; App. 343, a.

53. insonuēre, dedēre = insonuērunt,  
dedērunt; App. 204, 4. gemitum: merely  
the hollow sound.

54. sī, sī: rhetorical repetition, called  
anaphora; App. 413.

54-56. fuisset, stāret, manērēs: con-  
dition contrary to fact, with mixed apod-  
osis (impulerat) for impulsisset; App.  
382, d. sī fāta de(ōr)um (nōn laeva  
fuissent). laeva: unfavorable, hostile.

55. (Lāocoön nōs) impulerat.

56. Troja: pronounce Trojja; App.  
6, b. manērēs: observe the change to the  
second person; personification and apos-  
trophe add to the pathos; App. 417, 437.

Ecce, *manūs* juvenem intereā post terga revīnctum  
pāstōrēs magnō ad rēgem clāmōre trahēbant

Dardanidae, *quī sē ignōtum venientibus* ultrō,  
*hoc ipsum ut* strueret Trojamque aperiret Achivīs, 60  
obtulerat, *fīdēs animī atque in utrumque parātus*,  
seu versāre dolōs seu certae occumbere mortī.

Undique visendī studiō Trojāna juventūs  
circumfūsa *ruit* certantque inlūdere captō.  
*Accipe nunc Danaum insidiās et crimine ab ūnō* 65  
*disce omnīs*.

*Namque ut cōspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis,*

Achivus, a, um Achaeen, Greek  
aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open, reveal\*  
captus, i m. captive, prisoner†  
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie  
certus, a, um sure, certain, fixed, reliable\*  
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round  
cōspectus, ūs m. sight, view, (crowd of)  
spectators

crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, charge†  
Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan  
discō, ere, didicī learn; perf. know  
dolus, i m. deceit, wiles, trick, fraud\*  
ecce see! look! behold!†\*  
fidō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (dat., abl.)†\*  
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange  
inermis, e unarmed  
inlūdō, ere, sī, sus mock, insult (dat.)†  
insidiae, ārum f. snare, ambush, treach-  
ery

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,  
woman)\*

juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*  
occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall; meet  
(dat.)

offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present,  
place before, offer  
pāstor, ōris m. shepherd, herdsman†  
post, afterward(s); behind (acc.)\*  
revinciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus bind, tie  
back†

sive, seu or (if), whether, either  
struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, con-  
trive

studium, (i)ī n. zeal, desire, pursuit  
tergum, i n. back, rear; skin, hide\*  
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
turbō (1) confuse, agitate, disturb\*  
ultrō further(more), voluntarily†\*  
undique on (from) all sides†\*  
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),  
both†\*

versō (1) keep turning; employ  
visō, ere, sī, sus see, gaze on, visit†

57-198. Sinon, a lying Greek, is captured and brought to Priam. He says the horse is an offering to Minerva and will bring good fortune and victory to its possessors.

57-59. Ecce intereā Dardanidae pās-  
tōrēs trahēbant juvenem revīnctum manūs  
post terga. Ecce: introducing a new ele-  
ment in the story. *manūs*: acc., obj. of  
the middle part. *revīnctum*, his hands  
bound behind his back, or acc. of respect;  
App. 309, a; 311.

58. *rēgem* (Priamum). *magnō* (cum)  
clāmōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

59. (juvenem) *quī ultrō obtulerat sē*  
*ignōtum* (pāstōribus Dardanidis = Teu-  
cris) *venientibus*: his name was Sinon.

60. *hoc*: pronounce *hocc*; App. 107,  
3, c. *hoc ipsum*: this very thing, i.e.,  
to be brought before the king and ques-

tioned. *strueret*, *aperiret*: purpose;  
App. 359.

61. *animī*: a loc., in his soul; App. 37, c.

62. *mortī*: dat. with compound; App.

298. *versāre*, *occumbere*: apposition  
with *utrumque*.

63. *visendī*: gen. of gerund, depending  
on *studiō*, abl. of cause; App. 332. *Tro-*  
*jāna*: pronounce *Trojjāna*; App. 6, b.

64. *captō*: dat. with compound; App.

298. *ruit certantque*: for use of singular  
and plural cf. *stupet et mirantur*, ll.  
31-32; App. 236, a.

65. *Dana(ōr)um*: App. 37, d.

66. *omnis* (*Danaōs*): a general con-  
clusion from a specific instance. For  
the incomplete line, see the note on  
I, 534.

67. *ut*: as, its usual meaning with the  
ind. *turbātus*: a pretense on the part of  
Sinon.

- cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspectit:  
*'Heu, quae mē tellūs'* inquit *'quae mē aequora possunt*  
 70 *accipere? aut quid jam miserō mihi dēnique restat,*  
*cui neque apud Danaōs ūsquā locus, et super ipsi*  
*Dardanidae infēnsi poenās cum sanguine poscunt?'*  
*Quō gemitū conversi animi compressus et omnis*  
*impetus. Hortāmur fārī quō sanguine crētus,*  
 75 *quidve ferat; memoret quae sit fidūcia captō.*  
*[Ille haec dēpositā tandem formīdine fātūr:]*  
*'Cūcta equidem tibi, rēx, fuerit quodcumque, fatēbor*  
*vēra,'* inquit; *'neque mē Argolicā dē gente negābō;*  
*hoc primum; nec, sī miserum fortūna Sinōnem*

apud among, at, in (acc.)†  
 Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek  
 circumpiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look  
 round (on)†  
 comprimō, ere, pressi, pressus check,  
 crush, repress†  
 cōnstō, āre, stiti, status stand (fast)  
 convertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change  
 crētus, a, um born, sprung†  
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan  
 dēnique finally, at last, at length†  
 dēpōnō, ere, posui, positus lay down,  
 drop†  
 equidem indeed, truly\*  
 fateor, ēri, fassus confess, agree†  
 fidūcia, ae f. trust, reliance, faith

formidō, inis f. fear, fright, dread, terror†  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, moan\*  
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, exhort, incite\*  
 impetus, ūs m. onset, violence†  
 infēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter†  
 inquam, is, it say\*  
 memorō (1) recall, recount, relate\*  
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 poscō, ere, poscōsi demand, seek, ask\*  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
 whoever, whatever\*  
 restō, āre, stiti remain, be left  
 Sinōn, ōnis m. a lying Greek†  
 ūsquā anywhere, ever  
 vērū, a, um true, real, honest\*

68. circumspectit: the spondaic close, with its slow movement, helps the reader to visualize the slow-turning glance of Sinon as he looks over the crowd.

69. Heu: Sinon artfully seeks to rouse the pity and then to win the confidence of the Trojans. He pretends to be in despair. To his former enemies the Trojans who are in possession of the land are now added the equally hostile Greeks who control the sea. He plays his part with consummate skill and ingenuity. quae tellūs (potest mē accipere).

71. cui locus (est): dat. of possession; App. 299. neque = nōn. et (ā quō). super: adv., besides.

72. poenās cum sanguine (meō) poscunt: they demand punishment with my blood, i.e., my life as penalty.

73. conversi (sunt) animi et compressus (est) impetus. (nostrī) animi: feelings.

74. Hortāmur (illum) fārī. quō sanguine: abl. of source; App. 323. crētus (sit): indir. quest.; App. 349.

75. quid (= quem nuntium) ferat: what he has to say; indir. quest.; App. 349. memoret: indir. command, representing an imp. in dir. disc., depending on hortāmur; App. 390. sit: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. (eī) captō: dat. of possession; App. 299; i.e., what grounds of confidence had induced him to surrender voluntarily and on what did he base his hopes of mercy.

76. haec (dicta). dēpositā formīdine: abl. abs.; App. 343. The "fear" is pretended.

77. fuerit quodcumque: come what may, i.e., no matter what may happen to me.

78. mē (esse).

79. hoc primum (fatēbor, dicam): by first making a true statement of an undoubted fact, but one which a desperate man might have denied, Sinon wins the confidence of the Trojans, who are now more likely to believe the rest of his story. Sinōnem = mē, used for the rhetorical effect. "Others may be liars, but not



finxit, vānum etiam mendācemque improba finget. 80  
*Fandō aliquod sī forte tuās pervēnit ad auris*  
*Bēlidāe nōmen Palamēdis et incluta fāmā*  
*glōria, quem falsā sub prōditiōne Pelasgi*  
*insontem infandō indiciō, quia bella vetābat,*  
*dēmiserē necī, nunc cassum lūmine lūgent:* 85  
*illī mē comitem et cōsanguinitāte propinquum*  
*pauper in arma pater primīs hūc misit ab annis.*  
*Dum stābat rēgnō incolumis rēgumque vigēbat*

aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod) some, any\*  
 annus, i m. year, season\*  
 auris, is f. ear\*  
 Bēlidēs, ae m. descendant of Belust†  
 cassus, a, um empty, deprived of (abl.)†  
 cōsanguinitās. ātis f. kinship (by blood)†  
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down,  
 drop, lower\*  
 etiam also. even, besides, furthermore\*  
 falsus, a, um false, untrue, deceitful  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictus make, form†  
 glōria, ae f. glory, renown, fame, pride†  
 improbus, a, um wicked, bad, cruel†  
 inclutus, a, um famous, renowned†  
 incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact†  
 indicium, (i) i n. charge, information†  
 infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed

insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless†  
 lūgēō, ēre, lūxi, lūctus mourn, lament†  
 mendāx, ācis lying, false, deceitful†  
 nex, necis f. death, murder, destruct-  
 tion†  
 Palamēdēs, is m. wily Greek, destroyed  
 by Ulysses†  
 pauper, eris poor, needy; lowly†  
 Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek  
 perveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive, come  
 (to)†  
 prōditiō, ōnis f. (charge of) treason†  
 propinquus, a, um near (of kin), close†  
 quia because†  
 vānus, a, um empty, idle, false, vain  
 vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent, hinder  
 vigeō, ēre, uī flourish, thrive†

Sinon." miserum: pred., if fortune has made Sinon (me) unfortunate.

80. vānum, mendācem: pred., as is miserum, l. 79. improba (fortūna) finget (mē).

81. Fandō (for): abl. of the gerund, by report; App. 269.

81-82. aliquod nōmen: any (mention of the) name.

81-83. pervēnit nōmen et glōria: the verb is sing. to agree with its nearest subj.; App. 236, b.

82. fāmā: abl. of respect with incluta; App. 325.

82-83. glōria incluta fāmā.

83. falsā sub prōditiōne: under a false (accusation of) treason.

84. infandō indiciō: abl. of means; App. 331. According to the story, Ulysses had hidden a sum of money and a forged letter of Priam in Palamedes's tent; then, on a suggestion of Ulysses, the Greeks searched the tent, found the money and letter, and condemned Palamedes to death. quia vetābat: indicative, since it gives the reasons of the speaker; App. 357. This statement of Sinon is calculated to win the sympathy of the

Trojans by showing that he and his friend were at heart on the Trojan side and were opposed to the war.

85. dēmiserē = dēmiserunt: App. 204, 4. necī = ad necem: dat. of direction; App. 306. (illum) cassum lūmine (vitae). lūmine: abl. of separation; App. 340.

86. illi: emphatic by position; a dat. of reference; App. 301. comitem: (as) a comrade. cōsanguinitāte: abl. of respect; App. 325.

87. pauper, primīs ab annis, misit: clever suggestions of Sinon to arouse pity and to excuse his part in the war by saying that he had been sent when he was a mere child and that his father was forced to this action by his poverty. Going to war as a "soldier of fortune" was a common method among the ancients of gaining wealth. hūc = to Troy. primīs ab annis: "from my earliest youth."

88. rēgnō: abl. of respect with incolumis, or abl. of place where; App. 325, 319.

88-89. (Palamēdēs) stābat rēgumque (Danaōrum) vigēbat (in) conciliis. nōs: emphatic; App. 247.

- 80 conciliis, et nōs aliquod nōmenque decusque  
gessimus. Invidiā postquam pellācis Ulixī  
(haud ignōta loquor) superis concessit ab ōris,  
adflctus vītam in tenebris lūctūque trahēbam  
et cāsum insontis mēcum indignābar amīcī.  
Nec tacuī dēmēns et mē, fors sī qua tulisset,  
95 sī patriōs umquam remeāssem victor ad Argōs,  
prōmīsī ultōrem et verbis odia aspera mōvī.  
Hinc mihi prīma malī lābēs, hinc semper Ulixēs  
criminibus terrēre novīs, hinc spargere vōcēs  
in vulgum ambiguās et quaerere cōnscius arma.  
100 Nec requiēvit enim, dōnec Calchante ministrō —

adfligō, ere, xī, ctus crush, strike down  
aliquī (quis), qua, quod (quid) some(one),  
any(one)\*  
ambiguus, a, um of double meaning,  
doubtful, obscure, ambiguous  
amicus, i m. friend, comrade\*  
Argī, ōrum m. Argos, a city of southern  
Greece; Greece  
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce\*  
Calchās, antis m. a famous Greek seer†  
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw,  
yield†  
concilium, (i) i n. council, assembly†  
cōnscius, a, um conscious (of guilt)  
crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, charge  
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, dignity  
dēmēns, entis mad, insane, foolish†  
dōnec until, while, as long as  
enim for, indeed, surely\*  
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, carry (on)\*  
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange  
indignor, āri, ātus be angry (at)  
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless

invidia, ae f. envy, malice, grudge†  
lābēs, is f. slip, defect, stain, ruin†  
loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell\*  
lūctus, ūs m. grief, mourning, sorrow  
malum, i n. evil, trouble, misfortune\*  
minister, tri m. servant, helper  
odium, (i) i n. hate, hatred, enmity  
pellāx, ācis deceitful, wily, crafty†  
postquam after (that), when\*  
prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise\*  
remeō (i) return, go back†  
requiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose†  
semper always, ever\*  
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sow\*  
taceō, ēre, uī, itus be silent, hush\*  
tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom†  
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m. Ulysses, a wily Greek  
leader\*  
ultor, ōris m. avenger†  
umquam ever, at any time†  
verbum, i n. word, speech, talk  
vulgus, i n. (m.) rabble, crowd, herd

89. (in) conciliis, abl. of place where;  
App. 319. et nōs: I also; the "editorial  
we."

90. Invidiā Ulixī: Ulysses is said to  
have borne a special grudge against  
Palamedes, because the latter detected his  
pretended madness when he was trying to  
avoid going to the Trojan War. Invidiā:  
abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

91. (Palamedēs) superis concessit ab  
ōris = died, used euphemistically for was  
killed; App. 423.

93. mēcum = cum mē: privately, in  
secret; App. 321.

93-96. mē prōmīsī ultōrem: I prom-  
ise myself (as) an avenger.

94. dēmēns: "fool that I was." sī  
qua fors (mē) tulisset (ad Argōs patriōs).

95. Argōs: used for Greece; App. 443.

96. verbis (meis). odia (Ulixis).

97. lābēs (mihi fuit). Ulixēs: nom.  
subject of the hist. infinitives terrēre,  
spargere, quaerere; App. 277. mihi: dat.  
of reference; App. 301.

98. terrēre (mē). vōcēs: rumors.

99. vulgum: masc. acc., a rare form.  
cōnscius (suī malī): conscious (of his  
guilt). arma (in mē): an opportunity to  
use violence against me.

100. Calchante ministrō: abl. abs.;  
App. 343; for the aposiopesis, see the note  
on Quōs ego, I, 135, and compare App.  
416. Sinon skillfully stops his narra-  
tive, just when he has aroused the  
curiosity of his audience to the highest  
pitch.

*sed quid ego haec autem nēquiquam ingrāta revolvō,  
quidve moror? Si omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achīvōs,  
idque audire sat est, jamdūdum sūmite poenās:  
hoc Ithacus velit et magnō mercentur Atrīdae.'*

*Tum vērō ardēmus scītārī et quaerere causās,* 105

*ignārī scelerum tantōrum artisue Pelasgae.*

*Prōsequitur pavitāns et fictō pectore fatur:*

*'Saepe fugam Danaī Trojā cupiēre relictā*

*mōliri et longō fessī discēdere bellō;*

*fēcissentque utinam! Saepe illōs aspera pontī* 110

*interclūsit hiems et terruit Auster euntis.*

*Praecipuē cum jam hic trabibus contextus acernīs*

**acernus, a, um** (of) maple†  
**Achivus, a, um** Achaeans, Greek  
**ars, artis f.** art(istry), skill, cunning\*  
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce\*  
**Atridēs, ae m.** son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs  
**Auster, trī m.** (south) wind\*  
**autem** moreover, but, however†\*  
**causa, ae f.** cause, reason, occasion\*  
**contexō, ere, xui, xtus** weave, construct†  
**cupiō, ere, ivi (ii), itus** desire, wish†  
**discēdō, ere, cessi, cessus** depart†  
**fictus, a, um** feigned, false, pretended  
**hiems, emis f.** winter; storm\*  
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced\*  
**ingrātus, a, um** unpleasant, ungrateful†  
**interclūdō, ere, si, sus** shut off, hinder†  
**Ithacus, a, um** Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses†  
**jamdūdum** long since, at once  
**mercor, āri, ātus** buy, purchase, trade

**mōlior, iri, itus** undertake, do, make, build  
**moror, āri, ātus** delay, linger; detain\*  
**nēquiquam** in vain, uselessly, idly†\*  
**ordō, inis m.** order, array, rank, row\*  
**pavitō (1)** tremble, be afraid†  
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek  
**pontus, i m.** sea, waves\*  
**praecipuē** especially, particularly  
**prōsequor, i, secūtus** proceed, follow†  
**revolvō, ere, i, volūtus (un)** roll, revolve, tell†  
**saepe** often, frequently\*  
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)†\*  
**scelus, eris n.** crime, villainy, sin\*  
**scitor, āri, ātus** inquire, seek to know†  
**sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus** take, exact†  
**terreō, ēre, ui, itus** terrify, frighten  
**trabs (trabēs), trabis f.** beam, timber  
**utinam** O that! would that!  
**vērō** truly, indeed, but

101. *ego*: observe the emphasis denoted by the pronoun as though to say "who am I to be telling you this?" See App. 247. *haec (dicta vōbis) ingrāta*.

102. *quid (why) (vōs) moror. Si omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achīvōs: if you consider all Greeks in the same class (as scoundrels); abl. of manner; App. 328.*

103. *id audire = mē esse Danaum (Achivum). sūmite poenās*: punishment was looked upon as a fine, which the inflictor takes and the sufferer gives. Hence *sūmere poenās = inflict (literally take) punishment*, while *dare poenās = suffer (literally give) punishment*.

104. *hoc*: pronounce *hocc*, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. *Ithacus = Ulixēs. velit, mercentur*: subjunctives; *apodosis (conclusion)* of less vivid future with the protasis (condit. clause) omitted;

App. 381. *magnō*: abl. of price, used substantively, with a great (price); App. 336. A clever suggestion; the Trojans would please their own bitterest foes, Ulysses and the sons of Atreus, if they should put Sinon to death.

107. (*Sinōn*) *prōsequitur. fictō pectore*: abl. of manner; App. 328.

108. *Trojā*: pronounce *Trojā*; App. 6, b; 15. *Trojā relictā*: abl. abs.; App. 343. *cupiēre = cupiērunt*: App. 204, 4.

108-109. *bellō*: abl. of means with *fessī*; App. 331. *fugam*: obj. of *mōliri* = *parāre magnō cum labōre*.

110. *fēcissent (id)*: subj. in an unfulfilled wish (opt.); App. 253.

111. (*illōs*) *euntis*: trying to go, a conative pres. part.; the storms prevented them as often as they tried to sail home; App. 351, 1, c.

112. *acernīs*: the horse is variously

- 115 *stāret equus tōtō sonuērunt aethere nimbī.*  
*Suspēnsī Eurypylum scitātum ōrācula Phoebī*  
*mittimus, isque adytīs haec tristia dicta reportat:*  
*"Sanguine plācāstis ventōs et virgine caesā,*  
*cum primum Īliacās, Danaī, vēnistis ad ōrās:*  
*sanguine quaerendī reditūs animāque litandum*  
*Argolicā." Vulgī quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs,*  
 120 *obstipuēre animī gelidusque per īma cucurrit*  
*ossa tremor, cui fāta parent, quem poscat Apollō.*  
*Hīc Ithacus vātem magnō Calchanta tumultū*

**adytum**, *i n.* inner shrine, sanctuary†  
**aethēr**, *eris m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
**Apollō**, *inis m.* god of light, music, and prophecy†\*  
**Argolicus**, *a, um* Argive, Greek  
**auris**, *is f.* ear\*  
**caedō**, *ere, cecidī*, *caesus* cut (down), slay†  
**Calchās**, *antis m.* a famous Greek seer  
**currō**, *ere, cucurri, cursus* run, flow  
**Eurypylus**, *i m.* Greek leader†  
**gelidus**, *a, um* icy, cold, chilly†  
**Īliacus**, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan\*  
**Ithacus**, *a, um* Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses  
**litō** (1) sacrifice (acceptably), appease†  
**nimbus**, *i m.* storm cloud, rainstorm\*

**obstipēscō**, *ere, stipuī* be dazed, stand agape\*  
**ōrāculum**, *i n.* oracle, prophecy†  
**os**, *ossis n.* bone\*  
**Phoebus**, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
**placō** (1) appease, propitiate, placate  
**poscō**, *ere, poposci* demand, seek, ask\*  
**reditus**, *ūs m.* return (home)  
**reportō** (1) bring back, report†  
**scītor**, *ārī, ātus* inquire, seek to know  
**sonō**, *āre, uī, itus* (re)sound, roar\*  
**suspēnsus**, *a, um* doubtful, anxious†  
**tremor**, *ōris m.* trembling, shaking†  
**tumultus**, *ūs m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub†  
**virgō**, *inis f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*  
**vulgus**, *i n. (m.)* crowd, rabble, herd

represented by Vergil; here it is of maple; in l. 16 it was of pine; in the later passages it is of oak. Instead of using the general word *wood*, the poet strives to employ specific terms, at the expense of consistency.

**113.** *stāret*: subj. with descriptive cum; App. 378. *tōtō aethere*: abl. of place where; App. 319.

**114.** (*nōs*) *suspēnsī. scitātum*: supine after a verb of motion to express purpose; App. 270. *ōrācula Phoebī*: apparently at Delphi, where the most famous oracle of Apollo was located. The next most important oracle was at Delos, Apollo's birthplace.

**115.** (*ex*) *adytis* (Phoebī).

**116.** *plācā(vi)stis. virgine caesā*: this refers to the sacrifice of Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon, at Aulis, where the Greek fleet was detained by adverse winds on the eve of sailing for Troy. After Iphigenia had been sacrificed to Diana in obedience to the divine command, the gods sent favorable winds which wafted the Greek fleet straight to Troy. For a modern treatment of this

story read Tennyson's *Dream of Fair Women*.

**118.** *sanguine*: cf. *sanguine* in l. 116, and for the rhetorical repetition known as *anaphora* see App. 413. *quaerendī (sunt nōbis) reditūs, litandum (est nōbis)*: passive periphrastics denoting necessity; App. 199, b. Observe the shift from the personal (*quaerendī*) to the impersonal (*litandum*) construction. *reditūs*: poetic plural; App. 243. *animā*: abl. of means. *litandum (est)*: *it must be sacrificed, sacrifice must be made*.

**119.** *quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs vulgī*: as (when) this report had come to the ears of the rabble. Observe the Latin use of the relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative.

**120.** *obstipuēre* = *obstipuērunt*: App. 204, 4. *per īma ossa*: *through the marrow*; literally *through the innermost (part of their) bones*: App. 246.

**121.** *cui fāta (tālem mortem) parent. parent, poscat*: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

**122.** *vātem magnō Calchanta (acc.) tumultū*: interlocked order; App. 442.



prōtrahit in mediōs; quae sint ea nūmina dīvum  
flāgitat. Et mihi jam multī crūdēle canēbant  
artificis scelus, et tacitī ventūra vidēbant.

125

Bis quīnōs silet ille diēs tēctusque recūsāt  
prōdere vōce suā quemquam aut oppōnere mortī.  
Vix tandem, magnīs Ithacī clāmōribus actus,  
compositō rumpit vōcem et mē dēstinat ārae.

Adsēnsēre omnēs et, quae sibi quisque timēbat,  
ūnius in miserī exitium conversa tulēre.

130

Jamque diēs infanda aderat; mihi sacra parārī  
et salsae frūgēs et circum tempora vittae.

Ēripuī, fateor, lētō mē et vincula rūpī,

limōsōque lacū per noctem obsērus in ulvā

135

adsentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus assent, agree†  
artifex, fīcis m. contriver, plotter  
bis twice\*  
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), proph-  
esy, proclaim, chant\*  
compositum, ī n. compact, agreement,  
prearrangement  
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change  
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody\*  
dēstinō (1) demand (urgently), importune†  
exitium, (i) ī n. destruction, ruin†  
fateor, ēri, fassus confess, agree  
flāgitō (1) demand (urgently), importune†  
frūx, frūgis f. fruit, grain, meal  
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed  
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a  
Greek island, home of Ulysses  
lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere†  
lētum, ī n. death, destruction, ruin†\*  
limōsus, a, um muddy, slimy, miry†  
obsērus, a, um dark, hidden, obscure\*  
oppnō, ere, posuī, positus oppose, ex-  
pose†

prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, be-  
tray  
prōtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus drag (forth)†  
quīni, ae, a five (each), by fives†  
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one,  
thing)  
quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)  
each, every (one)†  
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object†  
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst  
(forth), utter†\*  
salsus, a, um salted, salty, briny†  
scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin\*  
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush  
tacitus, a, um silent, peaceful, quiet  
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide†\*  
tempus, oris n. temple, brow  
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
ulva, ae f. sedge, marsh grass†  
ventūrum, ī n. the future, what is (was)  
to come  
vinc(u)lum, ī n. bond, chain, cable\*  
vitta, ae f. fillet, garland, band†\*

123. prōtrahit: Sinon represents Cal-  
chas as pretending to be unwilling. in  
(nōs) mediōs: into our midst; App. 246.  
sint: indir. quest.; App. 349. dīv(ōr)um.

124. mihi: for me; App. 301. mihi  
jam multi: alliteration; App. 411.

125. artificis = Ulixis. taciti: through  
fear of Ulysses. ventūra: substantively,  
"what was coming."

126. quīnōs: the distributive numeral  
for the cardinal, quīnque, as is usual with  
adverbs of multiplication, as bis. Cf. I,  
381, note. ille = Calchās. tēctus: in his  
tent.

127. oppōnere (quemquam) mortī.

129. (ex, dē) compositō (cum Ulixē).  
ārae: dat. rumpit vōcem: cognate acc.,  
he breaks (into) speech = he speaks; or the

verb is used in a causative sense, he causes  
his voice to break (forth); App. 313, 307.

130. Adsēnsēre = adsēnsērunt.

130-131. et (fāta Danaī) tulēre (= tu-  
lērunt): the Greeks were content to let  
Sinon suffer.

131. ūnius in miserī exitium conversa:  
(when) turned to the destruction of one poor  
wretch.

132. parārī: hist. inf.; App. 257.

133. salsae frūgēs: salted meal,  
sprinkled on the victim's head, as a  
preparation for sacrifice. (mea) tempora.  
vittae: fillets, regularly bound on the  
heads of sacrificial victims.

134. Ēripuī mē lētō: dat. or abl. of  
separation; App. 305, 340. fateor: as a  
victim devoted to the gods, it was sac-

dēlitui *dum vēla darent, sī forte dedissent.*

*Nec mihi jam patriam antiquam spēs ūlla videndī,  
nec dulcis nātōs exoptātumque parentem,  
quōs illī fors et poenās ob nostra reposcent*

140

*effugia, et culpam hanc miserōrum morte piābunt.*

*Quod tē per superōs et cōscia nūmina vērī,  
per sī qua est quae restet adhūc mortālibus ūsquam  
intemerāta fidēs, ōrō, miserēre labōrum  
tantōrum, miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis.'*

145

*Hīc lacrimīs vītā damus et miserēscimus ultrō.*

*Ipse virō primus manicās atque arta levārī  
vincla jubet Priamus dictisque ita fātur amicīs:  
'Quisquis es (āmissōs hinc jam obliviscere Grajōs)  
noster eris; mihiq̄ haec ēdissere vēra rogantī:*

adhūc still, as yet, up to this point  
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)†\*  
āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus lose, let go\*  
artus, a, um close, tight, narrow\*  
cōscius, a, um conscious, aware  
culpa, ae f. fault, blame, guilt, sin†  
dēlitēscō, ere, litui hide, skulk, lurk†  
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, deserved  
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
ēdisserō, ere, uī, rtus tell, set forth†  
effugium, (i) i n. flight, escape†  
exoptō (1) desire, long for, crave†  
fidēs, ei f. faith, fidelity, trust(worthi-  
ness), reliance\*  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
intemerātus, a, um inviolate, pure†  
ita thus, so†  
levō (1) lift, relieve, lighten, remove  
manicae, ārum f. handcuff, bond, manacle†

misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate (gen.)†  
miserēscō, ere pity, commiserate†  
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly\*  
obliviscor, i, litus forget (gen., acc.)†  
ōrō (1) beseech, entreat, pray (for)\*  
patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
piō (1) appease, expiate, atone for†  
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid whoever,  
whatever  
quod because, but, therefore†  
repscō, ere demand, seek, claim†  
restō, āre, stitī remain, be left  
rogō (1) ask, seek, request, beg†  
spēs, spei f. hope, expectation\*  
ultrō further, voluntarily\*  
ūsquam anywhere, ever  
vērum, i n. truth, right, reality†  
vērus, a, um true, real, honest\*  
vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain, cable\*

rilege for Sinon to escape and thus thwart the divine will.

136. *dum* (Danaī) *vēla darent*; (*vēla*) *dedissent*: subjunctives of anticipation; App. 374.

137. *mihi*: dat. of possession; App. 299. *spēs ūlla* (est). *patriam*: obj. of *videndī*, the gen. of the gerund.

138. *nātōs*: inconsistent with *primīs ab annis*, l. 87; but great poets such as Vergil and big liars such as Sinon rarely worry over logical consistency.

139. *quōs poenās*: with *reposcent*, which takes two accusatives; App. 316. In English we should say *demand punishment of them*. *illī* (Danaī). *fors et* = *forsitan*, *perhaps*.

140. (meam) *culpam*. (illōrum) *miserōrum*.

141-143. *tē* (= Priamum) *ōrō*.

142-143. *per* (intemerātam fidem), *sī*

*est* (ali) *qua intemerāta fidēs quae restet*. *quae restet*: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

143-144. *miserēre* (meōrum) *labōrum*, *miserēre* (meī) *animī*: rhetorical repetition of the deponent imperative *miserēre* which governs the genitives, *labōrum* and *animī*; App. 289, 413.

144. *digna*: substantively, object of *ferentis*.

145. *miserēscimus* (Sinōnem).

146. *virō*: dat of reference; App. 301.

147. *dictis*: abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. *obliviscere*: imp. Grajōs: pronounce Grajjōs; App. 6, b; 15; the acc. instead of the gen. commonly used with *obliviscor*; App. 288, a.

148-149. *Quisquis es, noster eris*: said to be the technical formula used by a Roman general when receiving a deserter from the enemy.

*quō mōlem hanc immānis equī statuēre? Quis auctor? 150*  
*Quidve petunt? Quae relligiō? Aut quae mächina bellī?’*  
*Dixerat. Ille dolīs instrūctus et arte Pelasgā*  
*sustulit exūtās vinclīs ad sidera palmās:*  
*‘Vōs aeternī ignēs, et nōn violābile vestrum*  
*testor nūmen,’ ait, ‘vōs ārae ēnsēsque nefandī, 155*  
*quōs fūgī, vittaetque deum, quās hostia gessi:*  
*fās mihi Grajōrum sacrāta resolvere jūra,*  
*fās ōdisse virōs atque omnia ferre sub aurās,*  
*sī qua tegunt; teneor patriae nec lēgibus ūllīs.*  
*Tū modo prōmissis maneās servātaque servēs 160*  
*Troja fidem, sī vēra feram, sī magna rependam.*  
*Omnis spēs Danaum et coeptī fidūcia bellī*  
*Palladis auxiliis semper stetit. Impius ex quō*

aeternus, a, um eternal, undying\*  
 ars, artis f. art(istry), cunning, skill\*  
 auctor, ōris m. author, maker, originator†  
 auxilium, (i)ī n. help, aid, assistance\*  
 coepi, isse, ptus begin, commence  
 dolus, ī m. deceit, treachery, fraud\*  
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife†\*  
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus strip, free, doff  
 fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will\*  
 fidēs, ei f. faith, fidelity, trustworthiness,  
 reliance\*  
 fidūcia, ae f. confidence, reliance, trust  
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, wear\*  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 hostia, ae f. (sacrificial) victim  
 impius, a, um impious, disloyal, wicked  
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus instruct,  
 construct, build, arrange  
 jūs, jūris n. law, right, oath, justice  
 lēx, lēgis f. law, decree, regulation  
 mächina, ae f. machine, engine, device  
 modo only, (just) now  
 mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, structure, burden\*

nefandus, a, um unutterable, accursed  
 ōdī, isse hate, loathe, detest†  
 Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wis-  
 dom and the arts  
 palma, ae f. palm, hand\*  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
 Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek  
 prōmissum, ī n. promise, agreement  
 re(1)ligiō, ōnis f. religion, offering†  
 rependō, ere, ī, pēnsus repay, requite  
 resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus break, free†  
 sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow\*  
 semper always, ever\*  
 spēs, spei f. hope, expectation\*  
 statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish  
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, hide\*  
 testor, āri, ātus (call to) witness, in-  
 voke†  
 vērūm, ī n. truth, right, reality  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
 vinc(u)lum, ī n. bond, chain, cable\*  
 violābilis, e violable, to be violated†  
 vitta, ae f. fillet, garland, band\*

150. quō: for what purpose? statuēre = statuērunt (Danai). quis (fuit) auctor.

151. quae (est), quae (est). Sinon had, of course, been waiting for just such questions.

152. dixerat (Priamus). ille (Sinōn).

153. vinclīs: abl. of separation; App. 340; the form vinculis (- - -) can not be used in hexameter.

154. aeternī ignēs = sidera, although it is broad daylight. nōn violābile = inviolable; not to be desecrated (by perjury).

156. de(ōr)um. hostia: (as) a sacrificial victim. Sinon swears by all that is good and holy, that he may gain greater

credence for the lies he is planning to tell.

157-158. fās (est), fās (est): rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

158. sub aurās = into the light of day.

159. sī qua (Danai) tegunt: the use of the indicative would imply that there are secrets to disclose. nec teneor patriae lēgibus ūllīs.

160. (in) prōmissis: abl. of place where; App. 319. maneās, servēs: vol. subj.; App. 254.

161. Troja: vocative. magna (prae-mia): rich returns.

162. Dana(ōr)um. bellī: obj. gen.; App. 284.

163. auxiliis: abl. of means or place;

- Tydidēs *sed* enim scelerumque inventor Ulixēs  
 165 fātāle adgressī sacrātō āvellere templō  
 Palladium caesis *summae* custōdibus *arcis*  
 corripuēre *sacram* effigiem *manibusque* cruentīs  
 virgineās ausī *divae* contingere vittās:  
*ex illō* fluere *ac* retrō sublāpsa *referri*  
 170 spēs *Danaum*, frāctae *virēs*, āversa *deae mēns*.  
*Nec* dubiīs *ea* signa *dedit* Trītōnia mōnstrīs.  
*Vix positum* castris simulācrum: *arsēre* coruscae  
*lūminibus flammae* arrēctīs, salsusque *per* artūs  
 sūdor *ii*t, *terque ipsa* solō (mirābile dictū)  
 175 ēmicuit *parmamque ferēns* hastamque trementem.

adgredior, *i*, gressus attack, undertake†  
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, arouse  
 artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body\*  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear away†  
 āvertō, ere, *i*, rsus, turn away, avert\*  
 caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down), kill  
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment\*  
 contingō, ere, tigi, tāctus touch; befall\*  
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
 coruscus, *a*, um flashing, bright, quivering  
 cruentus, *a*, um bloody, cruel  
 custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*  
 dubius, *a*, um doubtful, uncertain  
 effigiēs, ēī *f.* image, statue, effigy†  
 ēmicō, āre, uī flash forth, dash forth†  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 fātālis, *e* fatal, fated, fateful†  
 fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, ebb, vanish  
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shat-  
 ter\*  
 hasta, *ae f.* spear, dart, lance  
 inventor, ōris *m.* inventor, contriver†  
 mirābilis, *e* wonderful, marvelous

mōnstrum, *i* *n.* prodigy, omen, portent†\*  
 Palladium, (i) *i* *n.* statue of Pallas†  
 parma, *ae f.* shield, buckler†  
 retrō back, backward†  
 sacrō (l) dedicate, consecrate, hallow\*  
 salsus, *a*, um salted, salty, briny  
 scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin\*  
 signum, *i* *n.* sign, mark, token, signal\*  
 simulācrum, *i* *n.* image, statue, likeness†  
 solum, *i* *n.* soil, ground, earth\*  
 spēs, spei *f.* hope, expectation\*  
 sublābor, *i*, lāpsus slip down, fall†  
 sūdor, ōris *m.* sweat, perspiration†  
 templum, *i* *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
 ter thrice, three times\*  
 tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake\*  
 Trītōnia, *ae f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-  
 dom and the arts†  
 Tydidēs, *ae m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,  
 a Greek leader  
 Ulixēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek  
 leader\*  
 virgineus, *a*, um maidenly, pure†  
 vitta, *ae f.* fillet, garland, band\*

App. 331, 319. *ex quō* (tempore): correlative with *ex illō* (tempore) in l. 169.

165. *templō*: abl. of separation; App. 320, 340.

165-166. *fātāle Palladium*: the oracle had proclaimed that Troy was fated to be impregnable so long as the image of Pallas (the Palladium) remained in the citadel of Troy. Ulysses and Diomedes disguised themselves, entered the citadel, and succeeded in carrying off the image to the Greek camp.

166. *caesis custōdibus*: abl. abs.; App. 343.

167. *corripuēre* = *corripuerunt*; App. 204, 4.

168. *ausī* (sunt). *vittās*: fillets were commonly worn by images of the gods, by their representatives (priests and

priestesses), and by sacrificial victims, such as Sinon (l. 133). *divae*: *Minerva*'s.

169. *ex illō* (tempore): correlative with *ex quō* (tempore), l. 163. *fluere*, *referri*: historical infinitives, App. 257.

170. *frāctae* (sunt) *virēs*, *āversa* (est) *deae mēns*.

171. *ea* signa: perhaps here for *ejus* rei signa, a common usage; i.e., signs of her anger.

172. *positum* (erat in) *castris* (*Danaōrum*). *arsēre* = *arsērunt*; App. 204, 4.

173. *lūminibus* (= *oculis*) *arrēctīs* (*irā*). *lūminibus*: abl. of separation; App. 340.

174. *ipsa* (*dea*): the image itself, i.e., without external aid. (*ā*) *solō*: abl. of separation; App. 340. *mirābile dictū*: App. 271, 325.



Exemplō temptanda fugā canit aequora Calchās,  
*nec posse Argolicis exscindī Pergama tēlis*  
*ōmina nī repetant Argīs nūmenque redūcant*  
*quod pelagō et curvis sēcum āvēxere carinīs.*  
*Et nunc quod patriās ventō petiēre Mycēnās,*  
*arma deōsque parant comitēs pelagōque remēnsō*  
*imprōvisī aderunt. Ita dīgerit ōmina Calchās.*  
*Hanc prō Palladiō monitī, prō nūmine laesō*  
*effigiem statuēre, nefās quae trīste piāret.*  
*Hanc tamen immēnsam Calchās attollere mōlem*  
*rōboribus textīs caelōque ēdūcere jussit,*  
*nē recipī portīs aut dūcī in moenia posset,*

180

185

**Argī, ōrum** *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece

**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek

**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear\*

**āvēhō, ere, vēxi, vectus** carry away; convey

**Calchās, antis** *m.* a famous Greek seer  
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), proclaim, prophesy, chant\*

**carīna, ae** *f.* keel, ship\*

**curvus, a, um** curved, bent, winding\*

**dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus** distribute; explain†

**ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus** draw out, erect  
**effigiēs, ēi** *f.* image, statue, effigy

**exscindō, ere, scidi, scissus** cut out, destroy†

**exemplō** immediately, at once, suddenly  
**immēnsus, a, um** immense, immeasurable†

**imprōvisus, a, um** unforeseen, sudden  
*ita* thus, so

**laedō, ere, si, sus** hurt, offend, strike

**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, structure, burden\*

**moneō, ēre, ui, itus** warn, advise†

**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* a Greek city

**nefās** *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety†\*

**nisi, nī** unless, if not\*

**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, sign, portent\*

**Palladium, (i)** *n.* statue of Pallas

**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy\*

**piō (1)** appease, expiate, atone for

**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal\*

**prō** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)\*

**recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus** receive, accept\*

**redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus** lead back, bring back, restore

**remētiōr, iri, mēnsus** remeasure, recross†

**repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus** reseek, repeat

**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength†\*

**statuō, ere, ui, ūtus** set up, establish

**tamen** nevertheless, however, but\*

**temptō (1)** try, test, seek, examine\*

**texō, ere, xui, xtus** weave, cover†

**176-177.** *temptanda (esse) aequora*, *posse*: indir. disc. with *canit*; App. 263.

**178.** *repetant (ex) Argīs, redūcant*: subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b.* This refers to a Roman custom. If a general met with bad luck on an expedition, he returned to Rome to obtain new auspices (*ōmina repetere*).

**179.** *quod*: refers to *nūmen*, the divine favor which they had brought with them when they came from Greece. *sēcum* = cum *sē*; App. 321, *a.* *curvis carinīs*: *abl.* of means; App. 331. *pelagō*: *by sea*, *abl.* of the route; App. 338. *āvēxere* = *āvēxerunt*.

**180.** *ventō*: *abl.* of means; App. 331. *petiēre* = *petivērunt*.

**181.** *arma (nova)*. *pelagō remēnsō*: *abl. abs.*; App. 343. *remēnsō*: with passive force, although a deponent verb.

**182.** *ita*: refers to ll. 176-179, the following sentence being thrown in parenthetically by Sinon as representing his own view.

**183.** (*Danai*) *monitī*: by the prodigies and their interpretation by Calchas, ll. 172-179.

**184.** *statuēre* = *statuērunt*. *nefās*: the theft of the Palladium by Ulysses and Diomedes, ll. 164-168. *piāret*: *rel. clause* of purpose; App. 388.

**185.** *immēnsam*: *pred. acc.*; the Greeks were to build the image so large that the Trojans would not be able to take it into the city and thus secure its protecting power for themselves.

**186.** *rōboribus*: *abl.* of material; App. 324. See the note on *acernis*, l. 112. *caelō*: *dat.* of direction; App. 306.

**187.** *nē posset*: negative purpose App. 359.

- neu populum antiquā sub religiōne tuērī.  
*Nam sī vestra manus violāset dōna Minervae,*  
 190 *tum magnum exitium (quod dī prius ōmen in ipsum*  
*convertant!) Priamī imperiō Phrygibusque futurum;*  
*sīn manibus vestrīs vestram ascendisset in urbem,*  
*ultrō Asiam magnō Pelopēa ad moenia bellō*  
*ventūram et nostrōs ea fāta manēre nepōtēs.'*  
 195 *Tālibus insidiīs perjūrique arte Sinōnis*  
*crēdita rēs, captique dolīs lacrimisque coāctīs*  
*quōs neque Tȳdidēs nec Lārisaeus Achillēs,*  
*nōn annī domuēre decem, nōn mille carīnae.*  
*Hic aliud majus miserīs multōque tremendum*  
 200 *objicitur magis atque imprōvida pectora turbat.*

Achillēs, is (i, ei) *m.* Greek leader\*  
 annus, i *m.* year, season\*  
 ars, artis *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill\*  
 a(d)scendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount  
 Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)  
 carina, ae *f.* keel, ship\*  
 cōgō, ere, cōgēi, cōactus force, compel\*  
 convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change  
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)\*  
 decem ten†  
 dolus, i *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud\*  
 domō, āre, ui, itus subdue, crush†  
 exitium, (i) *n.* destruction, ruin  
 imprōvidus, a, um unforeseeing, heed-  
 less†  
 insidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, snare, treach-  
 ery  
 Lāris(s)aeus, a, um Larissaeon, of Larissa,  
 a city of northern Greece†  
 magis more, rather\*  
 mille; *pl.* milia, ium *n.* thousand\*  
 Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and  
 the arts

nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant†\*  
 nēve, neu nor, neither, or lest  
 objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus present, place  
 before†  
 ōmen, inis *n.* omen, sign, portent\*  
 Pelopēus, a, um of Pelops, legendary  
 Greek king for whom the Peloponnesus  
 was named; Greek†  
 perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous†  
 Phryx, Phrygis *m.* Phrygian, Trojan  
 populus, i *m.* people, race, nation\*  
 prius sooner, before  
 re(l)igiō, ōnis *f.* religion, offering  
 sīn but if, if, however  
 Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek  
 tremendus, a, um terrible, dreadful  
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect\*  
 turbō (1) confuse, agitate, disturb\*  
 Tȳdidēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,  
 a Greek leader  
 ultrō voluntarily, further\*  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
 violō (1) violate, outrage, profane†

188. antiquā sub re(l)igiōne: *under shelter of their ancient faith.* The horse if taken into the city would serve the purpose of the stolen Palladium in protecting Troy. neu (haec effigiēs posset) tuērī populum (Trojae).

189. sī violāset: subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, b. Minervae: obj. gen.; App. 284.

190. ipsum (Calchanta).

190-191. exitium futurum (esse): inf. in indir. disc., quoting Calchas's supposed statement; App. 263.

191. convertant: opt. subj.; App. 253.

192. sīn ascendisset (ille equus): subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; cf. violāset in l. 189; App. 390, a

193. Asiam: Trojam. Pelopēa: the Greek leaders, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, were descendants of Pelops.

194. ventūram (esse), manēre: indir. disc.; App. 263. nepōtēs: obj. of manēre.

196. crēdita (est), captique (sumus). rēs: the story of Sinon.

197. neque Tȳdidēs (domuit) nec Achillēs (domuit).

198. domuēre = domuērunt.

199-227. As a punishment for Laocoön, who had struck the wooden horse with his spear, Minerva sends two horrible serpents which destroy him and his two little sons.

199-200. Hic aliud (another omen) majus multōque magis tremendum objici-

*Corcoran Gallery of Art*

# THE TROJAN HORSE

*Henri Paul Motte*





*Alinari, Rome*

LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS

*Vatican Museum*



Lāocoōn, *ductus* Neptūnō sorte sacerdot̄s,  
 sollemnīs taurum *ingentem* mactābat *ad ārās*.  
 Ecce autem *geminī ā* Tenedō tranquilla *per alta*  
 (horrēscō *referēns*) immēnsis orbibus anguēs  
 incumbunt *pelagō* pariterque *ad litora tendunt*; 205  
*pectora quōrum inter fluctūs* arrēcta jubaeque  
 sanguineae superant *undās*; *pars* cētera pontum  
 pōne legit *sinuatque* immēnsa volūmine terga.  
 Fit sonitus spūmante salō; *jamque arva tenēbant*  
*ardentisque oculōs* suffectī *sanguine et ignī* 210  
 sībila lambēbant linguīs vibrantibus ōra.  
 Diffugimus visū exsanguēs. *Illī agmine* certō  
 Lāocoōnta *petunt*; *et primum* parva duōrum  
 corpora *nātōrum* serpēns amplexus uterque

altum, *i n.* the deep (sea); heaven  
 amplector, *i*, plexus embrace, enfold†\*  
 anguis, *is m. (f.)* snake, serpent†  
 arrigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* raise, rear  
 autem moreover, but, however\*  
 certus, *a, um* sure, fixed, certain, reliable\*  
 cēterus, *a, um* rest, remaining, other  
 diffugiō, *ere, fūgi* flee apart, scatter†  
 duo, *ae, o* two†\*  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*

exsanguis, *e* bloodless, lifeless, pale†  
 fio, fieri, factus become, arise  
 horrēscō, *ere, horruī* shudder, tremble†  
 immēnsus, *a, um* immense, immeasur-  
 able  
 incumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* lean upon,  
 overhang, lower (over) (*dat.*)  
 juba, *ae f.* mane, crest†  
 lambō, *ere* lick, lap†  
 Lāocoōn, *ontis m.* Trojan priest of Nep-  
 tune  
 legō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* choose; skim\*  
 lingua, *ae f.* tongue, language†  
 mactō (*1*) sacrifice, slaughter; honor†  
 Neptūnus, *i m.* Neptune, god of the  
 sea\*

orbis, *is m.* circle, fold, coil; earth\*  
 pariter equally, side by side\*  
 parvus, *a, um* small, little†\*  
 pōne behind, after†  
 pontus, *i m.* sea, waves\*  
 sacerdot̄s, *dōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)\*  
 salum, *i n.* (the salt) sea, brine  
 sanguineus, *a, um* bloody, blood-red†  
 serpēns, *entis m. (f.)* serpent, snake†  
 sībilus, *a, um* hissing, whirring†  
 sinuō (*1*) fold, curve, twist, wind†  
 sollemnīs, *e* annual, customary, solemn†  
 sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, noise, crash†  
 sors, *rtis f.* lot, fate, destiny, oracle\*  
 spūmō (*1*) foam, froth, spray\*  
 sufficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectus* supply, suffuse†  
 superō (*1*) surmount, overcome, sur-  
 vive\*  
 taurus, *i m.* bull, bullock, ox\*  
 Tenedos, *i f.* small island near Troy  
 tergum, *i n.* back, body, rear\*  
 tranquillus, *a, um* tranquil, calm†  
 uterque, *utraque, utrumque* each, both\*  
 vibrō (*1*) quiver, vibrate, dart†  
 visus, *ūs m.* sight, view, vision, aspect†  
 volūmen, *inis n.* fold, coil, roll†

tur (nōbīs) miseris. majus: pronounce  
 majjus; App. 6, b.

201. Neptūnō: *dat. of reference*; App.  
 301. ductus sorte: *drawn (chosen) by lot*.

203-204. autem ecce geminī anguēs  
 immēnsibus orbibus — horrēscō (*haec*  
*dicta*) *referēns* — (*venientēs*) ā Tenedō:  
 symbolizing the later coming of the  
 Greek ships from Tenedos, bringing  
 destruction with them. immēnsibus  
 orbibus: *abl. of quality or manner*;  
 App. 330, 328.

205. pelagō: *dat. with compound*;  
 App. 298.

208. volūmine: *abl. of manner or re-*  
*spect*; App. 328, 325.

209. spūmante salō: *abl. abs.*; App.  
 343.

210. oculōs: *obj. of the middle parti-*  
*ciple suffectī*; App. 309, a.

212. visū: *abl. of cause with exsan-*  
*guēs*; App. 332.

213. Lāocoōnta: *acc., a Greek form*;  
 App. 68.

- 215        *implicat et miserōs morsū dēpascitur artūs;*  
              *post ipsum auxiliō subeuntem ac tēla ferentem*  
              *corripiunt spīrisque ligant ingentibus; et jam*  
              *bis medium amplexī, bis collō squāmea circum*  
              *terga datī superant capite et cervicibus altīs.*
- 220        *Ille simul manibus tendit divellere nōdōs*  
              *perfūsus saniē vittās ātrōque venēnō,*  
              *clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit:*  
              *quālis mūgitus, fūgit cum saucius āram*  
              *taurus et incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.*
- 225        *At geminī lāpsū dēlūbra ad summa dracōnēs*  
              *effugiunt saevaeque petunt Tritōnidis arcem,*  
              *sub pedibusque deae clipeique sub orbe teguntur.*  
              *Tum vērō tremefacta novus per pectora cūctīs*

**amplector**, *i*, **plexus** embrace, enfold\*  
**artus**, *ūs m.* joint, limb, body\*  
**auxilium**, (*i*) *n.* help, aid, assistance\*  
**bis** twice\*  
**cervix**, *icis f.* neck  
**clipeus**, *i m.* shield, buckler†\*  
**collum**, *i n.* neck\*  
**corripio**, *ere, uī, reptus* seize, snatch up\*  
**dēlūbrum**, *i n.* shrine, temple, fane†  
**dēpascor**, *i, pāstus* feed on, devour†  
**divellō**, *ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus* tear apart†  
**dracō**, *ōnis m.* dragon, serpent†  
**effugiō**, *ere, fūgī* flee, escape†  
**excutiō**, *ere, cussī, cussus* shake off\*  
**horrendus**, *a, um* horrible, horrifying\*  
**implicō**, *āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)* en-  
       twine  
**incertus**, *a, um* uncertain, ill-aimed  
**lāpsus**, *ūs m.* gliding, rolling, sinking†  
**ligō** (*i*) bind, tie, fasten†  
**morsus**, *ūs m.* bite, biting, jaws, fangs  
**mūgitus**, *ūs m.* bellow(ing), roar†

**nōdus**, *i m.* knot; fold, coil  
**orbis**, *is m.* circle, fold, coil; earth\*  
**perfundō**, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* soak, drench†  
       post after(ward); behind (*acc.*)\*  
**quālis**, *e* (such) as, of what sort\*  
**saevus**, *a, um* fierce, cruel, stern\*  
**saniēs**, *ēi f.* blood, gore†  
**saucius**, *a, um* wounded, stricken†  
**secūris**, *is f.* ax†  
**spīra**, *ae f.* fold, coil, spire†  
**squāmeus**, *a, um* scaly†  
**superō** (*i*) surmount, overcome, survive  
**taurus**, *i m.* bull, bullock, ox\*  
**tegō**, *ere, tēxī, tēctus* cover, hide\*  
**tergum**, *i n.* back, body, rear\*  
**tremefaciō**, *ere, fēcī, factus* make tremble.  
       appall, alarm†  
**Tritōnis**, *idis f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-  
       dom and the arts†  
**venēnum**, *i n.* poison, venom, drug  
**vērō** truly, indeed, but  
**vitta**, *ae f.* fillet, garland, band\*

**216.** *post:* afterward, adv. *ipsum* (*Lāocoōnta*). *auxiliō:* dat. of purpose; App. 303.

**218.** *circum:* with *datī* = *circumdatī*, placed around; App. 445. *medium* (*illum* = *Lāocoōnta*). *collō:* dat. with the compound *circumdatī*; App. 298.

**219.** *terga:* obj. of the middle part. *datī*, having placed; App. 309, *a. superant* (*illum* = *Lāocoōnta*). *capite:* for capitibus, which could not be used in dactylic verse because of its three successive short syllables; abl. of means or degree of difference; App. 331, 335.

**220.** *Ille:* *Lāocoōn*.

**221.** *vittās:* acc. with *perfūsus*, a middle part. or acc. of respect; App. 309, *a*; 311.

**223.** (*tālis est mūgitus Lāocoōntis*) *quālis (est) mūgitus (tauri)*; a simile; App. 441.

**224.** (*ā*) *cervice*.

**225.** *lāpsū:* with a gliding (movement); abl. of manner; App. 328. *dēlūbra summa* = *dēlūbra arcis Trojae*, where the temple of Minerva stood, l. 226.

**226.** *saevae:* angry, hostile (to the Trojans).

**227.** *deae* = the statue of the goddess. *teguntur:* a middle use = *sē tegunt*; App. 309. Many statues of Minerva show a snake at her feet, which may have given rise to this feature of the story.

**228-249.** Partly induced by the lying speech of Sinon and partly frightened by

insinuat pavor, et scelus expendisse merentem  
 Lāocoōnta ferunt, sacrum quī cuspide rōbur 230  
 laeserit et tergō scelerātā intorserit hastam.  
 Dūcendum ad sēdēs simulācrum ōrandaque divae  
 nūmina conclāmant.  
 Dividimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.  
 Accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum 235  
 subiiciunt lāpsūs, et stuppea vincula collō  
 intendunt: scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs  
 fēta armīs. Puerī circum innūptaeque puellae  
 sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent:  
 illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbi. 240  
 Ō patria, Ō divum domus Īlium et incluta bellō

accingō, ere, cīnxi, cīntus gird (on),  
 equip  
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant\*  
 collum, ī n. neck\*  
 conclāmō (1) cry, shout, exclaim†  
 contingō, ere, tigi, tāctus touch, befall\*  
 cuspis, pidis f. point, spear, lance  
 dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus divide, separate  
 expendō, ere, ī, pēsus expiate, pay  
 (for)†  
 fātālis, e fatal, deadly, fated, fateful  
 fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant, filled  
 fūnis, is m. rope, cable†  
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult  
 hasta, ae f. spear, dart, lance  
 Īlium, (i) ī n. Ilium, Troy  
 inclutus, a, um famous, renowned  
 inlābor, ī, lāpsus glide in(to) (dat.)†  
 innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin  
 insinuō (1) wind, creep, coil†  
 intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, extend†  
 intorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus hurl (against)  
 (dat.)†  
 laedō, ere, ī, sus strike, hurt, offend

Lāocoōn, ontis m. Trojan priest of Neptune  
 lāpsus, ūs m. gliding, rolling, sinking  
 māchina, ae f. machine, engine, device  
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn†\*  
 minor, āri, ātus tower; threaten (dat.)  
 mūrū, ī m. (city) wall, rampart\*  
 opus, eris n. work, task, deed, labor\*  
 ōrō (1) entreat, pray (for), beseech\*  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open, loosen\*  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
 pavor, ōris m. terror, shuddering, alarm†  
 puella, ae f. girl†  
 rōbur, oris n. oak, strength\*  
 rota, ae f. wheel  
 scandō, ere, ī, scānsus mount, climb†  
 scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked†  
 scelus, eris n. crime, impiety, sin\*  
 simulācrum, ī n. image, statue, likeness  
 stuppeus, a, um hempen, (of) tow†  
 subiiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under  
 (dat.)  
 tergum, ī n. back, body, rear\*  
 vinc(u)lum, ī n. chain, bond, cable\*

the portentous death of Laocoön, the  
 Trojans make a breach in the walls of  
 the city, drag the horse inside, and hold  
 high carnival as a thanksgiving to the  
 gods for the preservation of their city.

228. cūctis: dat. of reference; App. 301.

229-230. insinuat (sē). expendisse: indir. disc. with ferunt, say; App. 263.

231. laeserit, intorserit: causal relative clause, or characteristic, with causal force; App. 389. tergō: dat. with compound; App. 298.

232. Dūcendum (esse), ōranda (esse). ad sēdēs (deōrum) = ad delūbra summa, 225 = arcem. divae (Minervae).

234. For the unfinished line, see the note on I, 534.

235. omnēs (sē) accingunt operī. operī: dat. of purpose; App. 303. rotārum lāpsūs: rollings (glidings) of wheels = rolling wheels; App. 425. pedibus (equi): dat. with compound.

236. (ā) collō: App. 340; or dat. with a compound; App. 298.

238. armīs: abl. with fēta; App. 337. circum (equum).

239. sacra (carmina): sacred songs.

240. illa (māchina) = equus. urbī: dat. with compound; App. 298.

241. div(ōr)um domus: in apposition with Īlium. Note the apostrophe and personification; App. 417, 437.

- moenia Dardanidum! quater ipsō in limine portae  
 substitit atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedere;  
 instāmus tamen immemorēs caecique furōre  
 245 † mōnstrum infēlix sacrātā sistimus arce.  
 Tunc etiam fātis aperit Cassandra futūrīs  
 ōra deī jussū nōn umquam crēdita Teucrīs.  
 Nōs dēlūbra deum miserī, quibus ultimus esset  
 ille diēs, fēstā vēlāmus fronde per urbem.  
 250 Vertitur intereā caelum et ruit Ōceanō nox  
 involvēns umbrā magnā terramque polumque  
 Myrmidonumque dolōs; fūsi per moenia Teucrī  
 conticuēre; sopor fessōs complectitur artūs.

aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open, disclose\*  
 artus, ūs m. joint, limb, body\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
 Cassandra, ae f. Trojan prophetess, never  
 believed†  
 complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold  
 conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush  
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (dat.)\*  
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan  
 dēlūbrum, ī n. shrine, temple, fane  
 dolus, ī m. deceit, treachery, fraud\*  
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
 fēstus, a, um festal, festive†  
 frōns, frondis f. branch, foliage†  
 furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, fury\*  
 immemor, oris unmindful, heedless†  
 instō, āre, stitī press on, pursue  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 involvō, ere, ī, volūtus wrap, envelop†

jus-us, ūs m. command, order, behest†  
 mōnstrum, ī n. omen, portent, monster\*  
 Myrmidones, um m. Greeks of Thessaly,  
 subjects of Achilles  
 Ōceanus, ī m. ocean  
 polus, ī m. pole; heavens, sky  
 porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
 quater four times  
 sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow\*  
 sistō, ere, steti, status stand, stop, stay†  
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, crash, noise  
 sopor, ōris m. sleep, slumber†  
 subsistō, ere, stitī stop, halt, resist†  
 tamen nevertheless, however, but\*  
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest†  
 umquam ever, at any time  
 uterus, ī m. belly, womb  
 vēlō (1) veil, cover, deck, cloth†  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, revolve, change\*

242. Dardanid(ār)um: App. 34, b.  
 in limine: to stop or stumble on the  
 threshold was considered a bad omen and  
 sure to bring misfortune.

243. (ab) uterō: abl. of separation;  
 App. 340. dedere = dedērunt: App. 204,  
 4.

245. (in) sacrātā arce: as containing  
 the temple and statues of the gods; abl.  
 of place where; App. 319, b.

246. fātis futūrīs: abl. of means or  
 dat. of purpose; App. 331, 303.

247. deī: Apollo. nōn crēdita: Cas-  
 sandra had been beloved of Apollo, who  
 had granted her the gift of prophecy.  
 Because she finally played him false,  
 Apollo placed upon her the necessity of  
 forever prophesying and of never being  
 believed. Even today such a prophet is  
 often called a Cassandra. Teucrīs: dat.  
 of agent; App. 302.

248. quibus esset: adversative rel.  
 clause or characteristic with accessory  
 notion of cause; App. 388, 389.

248-249. Nōs: emphatic; App. 247.  
 Nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs esset ultimus,  
 vēlāmus dēlūbra de(ōr)um.

250-267. That night, while the Trojans  
 sleep, the Greeks return from Tenedos  
 and enter the city through the breach  
 made by the Trojans to introduce the  
 horse. Sinon opens the fastenings of the  
 horse, releasing the Greek warriors, who  
 open the gates of Troy and join their  
 forces with the troops from the ships and  
 proceed to lay waste the city with fire  
 and sword.

250. Vertitur caelum: The ancients  
 believed that the earth remained station-  
 ary, while the heavens, including sun,  
 moon, and stars, revolved around it. (ex)  
 Ōceanō: night was conceived as "rising"  
 from the ocean as the sun sank into it.

252. fūsi per moenia: thus scattered  
 and disorganized the Trojans were later  
 unable to oppose the attacking Greeks.

253. conticuēre = conticuērunt.





*Granstaff Bros.*

CASSANDRA, THE PROPHETESS, ON THE WALLS OF TROY

*Rossetti*

This Trojan princess was granted the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who later as punishment decreed that no one should believe her. Behind her a warrior buckles on his greaves. Priam and Hecuba in the background.



*Alinari, Rome*

*Vatican Museum*

MINERVA

On her breast is the Medusa and coiling at her feet the serpent.

*Et jam Argīva phalānx instrūctīs nāvibus ibat*  
*ā Tenedō tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae* 255  
*litora nōta petēns, flammās cum rēgia puppis*  
*extulerat, fātisque deum dēfēnsus inīquīs*  
*inclūsōs uterō Danaōs et pīnea fūrtim*  
*laxat claustra Sinōn. Illōs patefactus ad aurās*  
*reddit equus, laetique cavō sē rōbore prōmunt* 260  
*Thessandrus Sthenelusque ducēs et dirus Ulixēs,*  
*dēmīssum lāpsī per fūnem, Acamāsque Thoāsque*  
*Pēlidēsque Neoptolemus prīmusque Machāon*  
*et Menelāus et ipsæ doli fabricātōr Epēos.*

**Acamās, antis** *m.* Greek leader†  
**amicus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)\*  
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek  
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted\*  
**claustra, ōrum n.** barrier, bar, bolt  
**dēfendō, ere, i, fēnsus** ward off, protect†  
**dēmīttō, ere, mīsi, missus** let down, drop\*  
**dirus, a, um** dire, fearful, dreadful\*  
**dolus, i m.** deceit, treachery, trick, fraud\*  
**dux, ducis m. (f.)** leader, guide, chief\*  
**efferrō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus** lift, carry off\*  
**Epēos, i m.** Greek leader, maker of the wooden horse†  
**fabricātōr, ōris m.** constructor, maker†  
**fūnis, is m.** rope, cable  
**fūrtim** stealthily, furtively, secretly  
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus (in)** close, confine  
**inīquus, a, um** unfair, unjust, hostile†  
**instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus** equip, array, build; instruct  
**laxō (1)** loosen, free, open, release†  
**lūna, ae f.** moon, moonlight\*  
**Machāon, onis m.** Greek leader and surgeon†

**Menelāus, i m.** Greek leader, Helen's husband†  
**Neoptolemus, i m.** Greek leader, son of Achilles†  
**nōtus, a, um (well)** known, familiar\*  
**patefactō, ere, fēci, factus** lay open†  
**Pēlidēs, ae m.** descendant of Peleus†  
**phalānx, angis f.** phalanx, troop†  
**pīneus, a, um** of pine†  
**prōmō, ere, mpsi, mptus** bring forth†  
**reddō, ere, didi, ditus** return, give back, render\*  
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly\*  
**rōbur, oris n.** oak, strength\*  
**silentium, (i)ī n.** silence, quiet, stillness  
**Sinōn, ōnis m.** a lying Greek  
**Sthenelus, i m.** Greek leader†  
**tacitus, a, um** silent, still, quiet  
**Tenedos, i f.** small island near Troy  
**Thessandrus, i m.** Greek leader†  
**Thoās, antis m.** Greek leader†  
**Ulixēs, is (ei, ī) m.** Ulysses, a wily Greek leader\*  
**uterus, i m.** womb, belly

**254. phalānx instrūctīs nāvibus:** the fleet in battle order; abl. of quality; App. 330.

**255. amīca: friendly** (to the attacking Greeks). **tacitae lūnae:** cf. "how still the moonlight sleeps upon that bank."

**256. flammās:** as a signal for the other ships, but especially for Sinon, that he might know when to open the horse and let out the Greeks. **rēgia puppis:** the flagship of the commander-in-chief, Agamemnon. **nōta:** since they had encamped there for ten years.

**257. de(ōr)um. inīquīs: unfriendly** (to the Trojans).

**258. (in) uterō (equi):** abl. of place where; App. 319, b. **pīnea:** in l. 16 the

horse is of fir, in l. 112 of maple, in l. 186 of oak, here of pine; but there is no accounting for poetic caprice.

**258-259. Danaōs et claustra laxat:** for the hysteron proteron, see l. 353; for the zeugma see I, 356 and II, 54, and compare App. 429, 447. **ad aurās:** to the open air.

**260. (ex) rōbore.**

**262. lāpsi:** having descended, deponent participle.

**263. prīmus:** noble; Machaon was probably not the first to climb down, and he was certainly not the leader or most prominent.

**264. doli fabricātōr = equi fabricātōr** here.



- 235 Invādunt urbem somnō vinōque sepultam;  
caeduntur vigilēs, portisque patentibus omnīs  
accipiunt sociōs atque agmina cōnsicia jungunt.  
Tempus erat quō prīma quīēs mortālibus aegrīs  
incipit et dōnō dīvum grātissima serpit.
- 270 In somnīs, ecce, ante oculos maestissimus Hector  
vīsus adesse mihī largōsque effundere flētūs,  
raptātus bigīs ut quondam, āterque cruentō  
pulvere perque pedēs trājectus lōra tumentīs.  
Ei mihī, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō
- 275 Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī,  
vel Danaum Phrygiōs jaculātus puppibus ignīs;  
squālentem barbam et concrētōs sanguine crinīs

Achillēs, ī (is, eī) *m.* Greek leader\*  
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
barba, ae *f.* beard, whiskers†  
bigae, ārum *f.* two-horse chariot†  
caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down), kill  
concrētus, a, um grown together, hard-  
ened, matted†  
cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate  
crinis, is *m.* hair, looks, tresses\*  
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
ecce look! see! behold!\*  
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out\*  
ei alas! ah!†  
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, booty; slough†  
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament†  
grātus, a, um welcome, pleasing, grate-  
ful†  
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader\*  
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, under-  
take\*  
induō, ere, uī, ūtus don, clothe, put on  
invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, invade†  
jaculor, āri, ātus hurl, throw, fling  
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, unite\*

largus, a, um abundant, copious  
lōrum, ī *n.* thong, leather strap, rein  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
mortālis, is *m.* mortal, man, human\*  
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident  
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit\*  
pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust  
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort\*  
quantus, a, um how great, how much.  
how many, as\*  
quīēs, ētis *f.* quiet, rest, sleep, peace\*  
raptō (1) snatch, drag, carry off  
redeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus return†  
sepeliō, ire, īvi (īi), pultus bury†  
serpō, ere, psī, ptus creep (on), crawl†  
squāleō, ēre, uī be rough, be filthy†  
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw across,  
pierce  
tumeō, ēre, uī swell, be swollen†  
vigil, īlis *m.* (*f.*) guard, watchman, sen-  
tinel†  
vinum, ī *n.* wine\*

266. portis: abl. of route, a variety of  
the abl. of means; App. 338, 331.

267. sociōs (ex navibus).

268-297. The ghost of Hector appears  
to Aeneas in a dream and urges him to  
flee from the doomed city and to rescue  
the paternal gods from destruction.

268. quō: abl. of time when; App. 322.

269. div(ōr)um.

270. (meōs) oculōs.

271. vīsus (est) adesse: seemed to  
appear.

272. raptātus bigīs (Achillis): for the  
story, cf. I, 483-484 and the note.

273. pedēs trājectus lōra: his feet

pierced with thongs; pedēs is used with  
the preposition per and lōra is object of  
the participle trājectus used as a middle;  
App. 309, a.

274. mihī: dat. of reference or in-  
terest with the interjection ei; App. 301.

275. exuviās: object of indūtus, used  
as a middle participle; App. 309, a.  
Hector had slain and despoiled Patroclus,  
who was wearing the armor of his friend  
Achilles.

276. Dana(ōr)um puppibus: dat. of  
direction or reference; App. 306, 301.  
This refers to the battle around the  
Greek ships, when the Trojans under  
Hector almost captured the Greek camp  
and set fire to several of the ships.



vulneraque illa gerēns, quae circum plūrima mūrōs  
accēpit patriōs. Ultrō flēns ipse vidēbar  
compellāre virum et maestās exprōmere vōcēs: 280  
'Ō lūx Dardaniae, spēs Ō fidissima Teucrum,  
quae tantae tenuēre morae? Quibus Hector ab ōrīs  
expectāte venīs? Ut tē post multa tuōrum  
fūnera, post variōs hominumque urbisque labōrēs  
dēfessī aspīcimus! Quae causa indigna serēnōs 285  
foedāvit vultūs? Aut cūr haec vulnera cernō?'  
Ille nihil, nec mē quaerentem vāna morātur,  
sed graviter gemitūs imō dē pectore dūcēns,  
'Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs' ait 'ēripe flammīs.  
Hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troja. 290  
Sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā  
dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.  
Sacra suōsque tibi commendat Troja penātīs;  
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quare  
magna, pererrātō statuēs quae dēnique pontō.' 295

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
(at)  
causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion\*  
commendō (1) intrust, commit†  
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to  
culmen, inis n. top, summit, peak, roof†  
cūr why? for what reason?  
Dardania, ae f. city of Dardanus, Troy†  
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus defend, protect  
dēfessus, a, um weary, tired, worn  
dēnique finally, at last  
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
exprōmō, ere, mpsi, mptus express,  
bring forth†  
expectō (1) await (eagerly), expect†\*  
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe\*  
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament†  
foedō (1) defile, befoul, mar, mangle  
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*  
gemitus, ūs m. groan, lament, roar\*  
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, carry (on)\*  
graviter heavily, grievously  
Hector, oris m. Trojan leader\*

homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
indignus, a, um undeserved, unworthy†  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
morum, āri, ātus delay, tarry, heed\*  
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart\*  
nihil, nīl nothing, not at all†  
patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
penātēs, ium m. household gods\*  
pererrō (1) wander through, traverse†  
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
pontus, ī m. sea, waves\*  
post after, behind (acc.); afterward\*  
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
serēnus, a, um serene, calm, fair, clear†  
spēs, speī f. hope, expectation\*  
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish  
ultrō voluntarily, further\*  
vānus, a, um vain, idle, useless, false  
varius, a, um various, manifold, diverse\*  
vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*  
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

278. circum mūrōs.  
281. Teucr(ōr)um.  
282. tenuēre = (tē) tenuerunt.  
282-283. Hector expectāte: voc. (tū)  
venis.  
283. Ut: how gladly.  
285-286. serēnōs vultūs (tuōs), haec  
vulnera (tua).  
287. Ille (dicit) nihil.  
289. nāte: voc. nāte deā: goddess-  
born; literally, born from a goddess.

291-292. Sat... datum (est ā tē). sī  
(quā) dextrā dēfendī possent, hāc (dextrā  
meā), dēfēnsa fuissent.  
293. (sua) sacra: the sacred emblems,  
statues, etc. comitēs: (as) comrades, in  
apposition with hōs.  
294. moenia = urbem, as often. hīs  
(penātibus): dat. of reference; App. 301.  
295. pererrātō pontō: abl. abs.; App.  
343. quae (moenia magna) dēnique  
statuēs, pontō pererrātō.

*Sic ait et manibus vittas Vestamque potentem  
aeternumque adytis effert penetrabilibus ignem.*

- 300 Diversō intereā miscentur moenia luctū,  
et magis atque magis, quamquam sēcrēta parentis  
*Anchisae domus arboribusque obtecta recessit,*  
clārēscunt sonitūs armōrumque ingruit horror.  
*Excitior somnō et summī fastigia tecti*  
ascēnsū superō atque arrēctis auribus astō:  
305 *in segetem velut cum flamma furentibus Austris*  
incidit, aut rapidus montānō flūmine torrēns  
sternit agrōs, sternit sata laeta boumque labōrēs  
praecipitisque trahit silvās: stupet inscius altō  
accipiēns sonitum saxi dē vertice pāstor.  
*Tum vērō manifesta fidēs, Danaumque patēscunt*

adytū, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary  
aeternus, a, um eternal, undying\*  
ager, grī *m.* field, territory, land\*  
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree, wood(s)\*  
arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, prick up  
a(d)scēnsus, ūs *m.* climbing, ascent†  
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)\*  
auris, is *f.* ear\*  
Auster, trī *m.* (south) wind\*  
bōs, bovis *m.* (f.) bull, ox, cow†  
clārēscō, ere, clārui grow clear†  
diversus, a, um diverse, scattered\*  
effērō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth,  
lift\*  
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake out\*  
fastigium, (i)ī *n.* roof, battlement, top  
fidēs, eī *f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthi-  
ness\*  
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood\*  
horror, ōris *m.* horror, alarm, fright†  
incidō, ere, cidi fall (on) (*dat.*)†  
ingruō, ere, uī rush (on, in), assail (*dat.*)†  
inscius, a, um ignorant, inexperienced  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, sorrow, lament  
magis more, rather\*  
manifestus, a, um clear, plain, manifest†

misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle, con-  
fuse\*  
montānus, a, um (of a) mountain†  
obtegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, hide†  
pāstor, ōris *m.* shepherd, herdsman  
patēscō, ere, patui lie open, be disclosed†  
penetrālis, e inmost, interior†  
potēns, entis powerful, mighty\*  
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitate†  
quamquam although, however, but  
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, hurrying\*  
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus retire, with-  
draw†  
sata, ōrum *n.* crops, harvest†  
sēcrētus, a, um separate, remote, secret†  
seges, etis *f.* crop, harvest, grain field†  
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash\*  
sternō, ere, strāvi, strātus lay low, strew,  
spread\*  
stupeō, ēre, uī be dazed (at), stand agape  
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive\*  
torrēns, entis *m.* torrent  
velut(i) as, just as\*  
vērō truly, indeed, but  
vertex, icis *m.* vertex, summit, peak\*  
Vesta, ae *f.* goddess of the hearth  
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band\*

297. aeternum ignem: the sacred fire of Vesta which was never allowed to go out, and from which was always kindled the fire which was given to each colony sent out from Rome.

298-369. Aeneas, however, preferring an honorable death to what he considered a dishonorable flight, finds a few comrades and rushes vainly into battle.

298. moenia = urbs = Troja. miscen-  
tur: is filled; the word suggests confusion.

301. (nōbis) ingruit horror.

302. somnō: abl. of separation; App. 340.

304. furentibus Austris: abl. abs., denoting attendant circumstance; App. 343.

305. montānō flūmine: abl. of means with either rapidus or sternit; App. 331.

306. sternit, sternit: rhetorical repetition called anaphora; App. 413. bo(v)um labōrēs: (the products of) the oxen's toil.

308. accipiēns = audiēns.

309. manifesta (est) fidēs: the truth (of the situation) was fully revealed; or Sinon's perjured faith was manifest.

insidiae. <i>Jam Dēiphobī dedit ampla ruīnam</i>	310
<i>Volcānō superante domus, jam proximus ardet</i>	
<i>Ūcalegōn; Sīgēa ignī freta lāta relūcent.</i>	
<i>Exoritur clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum.</i>	
<i>Arma amēns capiō; nec sat ratiōnis in armīs,</i>	
<i>sed glomerāre manum bellō et concurrere in arcem</i>	315
<i>cum sociīs ardent animī; furor īraque mentem</i>	
<i>praecipitat, pulchrumque morī succurrit in armīs.</i>	
<i>Ecce autem tēlis Panthūs ēlāpsus Achīvum,</i>	
<i>Panthūs Othryadēs, arcis Phoebique sacerdōs,</i>	
<i>sacra manū victōsque deōs parvumque nepōtem</i>	320
<i>ipse trahit cursūque amēns ad limina tendit.</i>	

Achīvus, a, um Achaeān, Greek  
amēns, entis mad, insane, distracted†  
amplius, a, um spacious, large, full, wide  
autem but, however, moreover\*  
clangor, ōris m. clang, blare, noise†  
concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run to-  
gether, fight (with), struggle  
Dēiphobus, ī m. Trojan leader, Helen's  
husband after the death of Paris†  
ecce see! look! behold!\*  
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape  
exorior, iri, ortus arise, spring up†  
fretum, ī n. strait, sea, waters  
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, fury\*  
glomerō (1) gather, roll together  
insidiae, ārum f. ambush, treachery,  
snare  
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*  
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish†\*  
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant\*  
Othryadēs, ae m. son of Othryst†  
Panthūs, ī m. Trojan leader†

parvus, a, um small, little\*  
Phoebus, ī m. Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
praecipitō (1) throw headlong, urge on,  
fall, sink  
proximus, a, um next, neighbor(ing)  
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-  
some, illustrious, glorious\*  
ratiō, ōnis f. reason, cause, method†  
relūceō, ēre, lūxī shine back, reflect†  
ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin, collapse  
sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*  
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
Sīgēus, a, um of Sigeūm, a promontory  
near Troy†  
succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus succor,  
occur  
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive\*  
tuba, ae f. trumpet†  
Ūcalegōn, ontis m. Trojan leader†  
Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī m. Vulcan, (god  
of) fire†

310. Dēiphobī: as Helen's present husband he draws the pent-up fury of the Greeks.

311. dedit ruīnam = ruit. Volcānō = ignī: metonymy; abl. abs.; App. 433, 343.

311-312. ardet Ūcalegōn: a shortened way of saying domus Ūcalegontis ardet.

312. ignī: abl. of means; App. 331.

313. Exoritur: of the third conjugation here; it agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, b. vir(ōr)um.

314. nec (est) ratiōnis: part. gen. with sat(is); App. 286; I am too dazed to form a clear plan and I seize my arms without any adequate reason.

315-316. (meī) animī ardent glome-  
rāre et concurrere. bellō: dat. of pur-

pose; App. 303. (meī) animī: poetic plural; App. 243. (meam) mentem.

317. (esse) pulchrum morī in armīs succurrit (mihi): it occurs to me that it is glorious to die in arms.

318. Panthūs: nom. sing. with ū, a Greek form; App. 67. Achīv(ōr)um.

318-319. Panthūs, Panthūs: observe the rhetorical effect obtained by repetition; App. 413.

319. arcis: site of the temple of Apollo as well as that of various other shrines of the gods.

320. sacra: as in l. 293. victōs deōs: the gods fought for their people; and when the gods were conquered the people were also defeated.

321. (nostra) limina = limina Anchī-

- '*Quō rēs summa locō, Panthū? Quam prendimus arcem?*'  
*Vix ea fātus eram gemitū cum tālia reddit:*  
*'Vēnit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus*  
 325 *Dardaniae. Fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns*  
*glōria Teucrōrum; feros omnia Juppiter Argōs*  
*trānstulit; incēnsā Danaī dominantur in urbe.*  
*Arduus armātōs mediīs in moenibus astāns*  
*fundit equus victorque Sinōn incendia miscet*  
 330 *insultāns. Portis aliī bipatentibus adsunt,*  
*mīlia quot magnīs umquam vēnēre Mycēnis;*  
*obsēdere aliī tēlis angusta viārum*  
*oppositis; stat ferrī aciēs mūcrōne coruscō*  
*stricta, parāta necī; vix primā proelia temptant*

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle line, army\*  
 angustum, ī *n.* narrow place, strait†  
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering†\*  
 Argī, ōrum *m.* city and district of south-  
 ern Greece  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)\*  
 bipatēns, entis doubly open, double†  
 coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, quivering  
 Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy  
 dominor, āri, ātus rule, hold sway  
 ferus, a, um wild, fierce, cruel, savage†\*  
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, lament, roar\*  
 glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride  
 Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Īlium, Troy  
 incendium, (i)ī *n.* fire, conflagration  
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, inflame,  
 fire\*  
 inēluctābilis, e inevitable, inescapable†  
 insultō (1) leap upon, taunt, insult†  
 mīlle; *pl.* mīlia, ium *n.* thousand\*

misceō, ēre, cui, mixtus mix, mingle,  
 confuse\*  
 mūcrō, ōnis *m.* point, edge, blade†  
 Mycēnae, ārum *f.* city of Greece, home  
 of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks  
 against Troy  
 nex, necis *f.* death, destruction, murder  
 obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset†  
 oppositus, a, um opposing, hostile  
 Panthūs, ī *m.* Trojan leader  
 porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
 pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp†  
 proelium, (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, fight†  
 quot as many as, how many†  
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, reply\*  
 Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek  
 stringō, ere, inxi, ictus draw, graze  
 temptō (1) try, test, venture, examine\*  
 trānsferō, ferre, tuli, lātus transfer  
 Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*  
 umquam ever, at any time

sae, mei patris. cursū: abl. of manner;  
 App. 328.

322. Quō (in) locō (est) rēs summa =  
 in what situation is the state (rēs summa)?  
 or in what spot is the chief conflict?  
 Panthū: voc., a Greek form; App. 67.  
 pre(he)ndimus: with a future sense;  
 what position are we trying to hold, now  
 that the main aim is untenable? See App.  
 351, 1, c; 348, a.

323. tālia (dicta). gemitū: abl. of  
 manner; App. 328.

324. Panthus practically says: "No  
 use to resist; we have no position any-  
 where to defend; our last day has come."  
 summa: final.

325. Dardaniae: dat. of direction or  
 reference; App. 306, 301. Trōes fuimus,  
 fuit Īlium: observe the pathos of the  
 tense: *We have been (but we are no*

longer) Trojans; *Troy is a thing of the*  
*past*; App. 351, 4, a.

326. ferus: hostile (to the Trojans).  
 (ad) Argōs = to Greece; App. 443.

328. Arduus armātōs: alliteration;  
 App. 411. equus armātōs (virōs) fun-  
 dit.

330. aliī . . . alii: some . . . others. Por-  
 tis bipatentibus: through wide-open gates;  
 abl. of route; App. 338.

331. mīlia quot: as many thousands  
 as. vēnēre (= vēnērunt) Mycēnis: abl.  
 of place whence; App. 320.

332. obsēdere = obsēdērunt. aliī (Da-  
 nai). tēlis oppositis: abl. of means;  
 App. 331. angusta (loca).

333. mūcrōne coruscō: abl. of quality;  
 App. 330.

334. necī (Teucrōrum): for the slaugh-  
 ter (of the Trojans).



portarum vigilēs et caecō Mārte resistunt.*	335
<i>Tālibus Othryadae dictīs et nūmine divum in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis Erīnys, quō fremitus vocat et sublātus ad aethera clāmor.</i>	
Addunt sē sociōs Rhipeus et maximus armīs	
Ēpytus, oblātī per lūnam, Hypanisque Dymāsque	340
et laterī adglomerant nostrō, juvenisque Coroebus	
Mygdonidēs — illīs ad Trojam forte diēbus	
vēnerat insānō Cassandrae incēnsus amōre	
et gener auxilium Priamō Phrygibusque ferēbat,	
īnfēlix quī nōn spōnsae praecepta furentis	345
audierit!	
Quōs ubi cōnfertōs audēre in proelia vīdī,	
incipiō super hīs: 'Juvenēs, fortissima frūstrā	

addō, ere, didī, dītus add\*  
 adglomerō (1) roll together, gather, join†  
 aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky,  
 ether\*  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 auxilium, (i)ī n. help, aid, assistance\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
 Cassandra, ae f. prophetess, daughter of  
 Priam, never believed  
 cōnfertus, a, um crowded, packed†  
 Coroebus, i m. suitor of Cassandra,  
 daughter of Priam†  
 Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader†  
 Ēpytus, i m. Trojan leader†  
 Erīnys, yos f. a Fury, Curse†  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout\*  
 fremitus, ūs m. (up)roar, din, applause†  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
 gener, erī m. (prospective) son-in-law†  
 Hypanis, is m. Trojan leader†

incendō, ere, i, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame\*  
 incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-  
 take\*  
 insānus, a, um mad, insane, frenzied†  
 juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,  
 woman)\*  
 latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
 lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
 Mārs, rtis m. (god of) war  
 Mygdonidēs, ae m. son of Mygdon†  
 offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present  
 Othryadēs, ae m. son of Othrys, Panthus  
 Phryx, Phrygis m. Phrygian, Trojan  
 porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
 praeceptum, i n. precept, advice†  
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fray, fight  
 resistō, ere, stitī resist, halt, stop  
 Rhipeus, i m. Trojan leader†  
 spōnsa, ae f. fiancée, wife†  
 vigil, ilis m. guard, watchman, sentinel

335. caecō Mārte (= bellō): in blind warfare, that is fighting in the dark; abl. of place where; App. 319, 433.

336. dictis: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332. div(ō)rūm.

337. tristis Erīnys (belli mē vocat): the fell fury (of battle calls me).

338. aethera: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

339. sociōs (mihi). armīs: abl. of respect with maximus, mighty in battle; App. 325.

340. oblātī (mihi) per lūnam (= lūcem lūnae).

341. laterī nostrō (sē) adglomerant: attach (themselves) to me.

342. illis diēbus: abl. of time when; App. 322.

343. (Coroebus)vēnerat. Cassandrae: for Cassandra, obj. gen.; App. 284.

344. gener: as a (prospective) son-in-law.

345. infēlix (vir). furentis: to the ancients and to primitive peoples a raving person was "touched of God," and his utterances were inspired by the divinity; so of Cassandra (spōnsae) here.

346. audierit: rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory notion of cause; App. 389; cf. l. 231.

347. audēre in proelia: were bold for battle.

348. super: adv. hīs (dictīs): abl. of means. frūstrā: in vain; since resistance is useless.

- 350 *pectora, si vōbīs audentem extrēma cupidō  
certa sequī, quae sit rēbus fortūna vidētis;  
excessēre omnēs adytīs ārisque relictīs  
dī quibus imperium hoc steterat; succurritis urbī  
incēnsae: moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.  
Ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salutē.*
- 355 *Sic animīs juvenum furor additus. Inde, lupī ceu  
raptōrēs ātrā in nebulā, quōs improba ventris  
exēgit caecōs rabiēs catulique relictī  
faucibus exspectant siccis, per tēla, per hostīs  
vādimus haud dubiam in mortem mediaeque tenēmus  
urbis iter; nox ātra cavā circumvolat umbrā.  
Quis clādem illius noctis, quis fūnera fandō  
explicet aut possit lacrimīs aequāre labōrēs?*
- 360

addō, ere, didi, ditus add\*  
adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary  
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level\*  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
catulus, ī *m.* cub, puppy, whelp†  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable\*  
ceu as, just as, as if†  
circumvolō (1) flit around, hover around†  
clādēs, is *f.* slaughter, ruin, havoc†  
cupidō, inis *f.* love, desire, eagerness†  
dubius, a, um doubtful, uncertain  
excēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart, retire  
exigō, ere, ēgi, āctus drive (out)  
explicō, āre, āvi (uī), ātus (itus) express,  
unfold, explain†  
exspectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)\*  
extrēma, ōrum *n.* extremity, last hazard,  
death\*  
faucēs, ium *f.* throat, jaws; pass†

fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster\*  
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury\*  
hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
imprubus, a, um wicked, evil, cruel  
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame\*  
inde thence, thereupon, next\*  
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man,  
woman)\*  
lupus, ī *m.* wolf†  
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
nebula, ae *f.* cloud, fog, mist  
rabiēs, ēi *f.* rage, madness, fury  
raptor, ōris *m.* robber; *adj.* ravenous†  
salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health  
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty†  
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose\*  
succurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run to  
aid, succor (*dat.*)  
vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march†  
venter, tris *m.* belly, stomach†

349-350. *pectora*: apposition with *juvenēs*. *si vōbīs (est) certa cupidō sequī (mē) audentem extrēma*. *vōbīs*: *dat.* of possession; App. 299. *cupidō (est)*. *sequī*: depends on *cupidō*; App. 264. *quae fortūna sit*: *indir. quest.*; App. 349. (*nostris*) *rēbus*: *dat.* of possession; App. 299.

351. *adytis ārisque relictis*: *abl. abs.*; App. 343. *excessēre dī*: the ancient gods are regularly represented as deserting cities about to be captured.

352. *quibus*: *by whose aid*; *abl.* of means; App. 331. *urbī*: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

353. *moriāmur et ruāmus*: *volitives*; App. 254. This is an example of *hysteron proteron*; App. 429; i.e., the act repre-

sented by *ruāmus* really comes before that of *moriāmur*, although *moriāmur* precedes in the sentence. This is a permissible device, as it indicates *priority of interest*, instead of the usual *priority of time*. See the note on 258-259.

354. *Ūna salūs (est) victis*. *victis*: *dat.* of possession; App. 299.

355. *additus (est)*.

356-357. *ventris rabiēs* = *mad hunger, raving hunger*.

360. *urbis*: *gen.* of possession; App. 283, or of quality; App. 285.

361. *fūnera fandō*: *alliteration*; App. 411. *Quis (explicit) clādem*.

362. *explicit, possit*: *deliberative or potential subjunctives*; App. 348, 252. *lacrimis*: *abl.* of means, App. 331.

*Urbs antiqua ruit multōs domināta per annōs;  
plūrima perque viās sternuntur inertia passim  
corpora perque domōs et relligiōsa deōrum* 365  
*līmīna. Nec solī poenās dant sanguine Teucrī;  
quondam etiam victīs redit in praecordia virtūs  
victōresque cadunt Danaī. Crūdēlis ubīque  
lūctus, ubīque pavor et plūrima mortis imāgō.*

*Prīmus sē Danaum magnā comitante catervā* 370  
*Androgeōs offert nōbīs, socia agmina crēdēns  
īnscius, atque ultrō verbīs compellat amicīs:  
'Fēstīnāte, virī! Nam quae tam sēra morātur  
sēgnitiēs? Aliī rapiunt incēnsa feruntque  
Pergama: vōs celsīs nunc prīmum ā nāvibus ītis?'* 375  
*Dīxit, et extemplō (neque enim respōnsa dabantur  
fida satis) sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostīs.*

amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
Androgeōs, ī (ō) m. Greek leader†  
annus, ī m. year, season\*  
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
caterva, ae f. crowd, troop, band  
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering\*  
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,  
follow  
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to  
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust\*  
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody\*  
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip, fall, sink†  
dominor, āri, ātus rule, hold sway  
enim for, indeed, truly  
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
extemplō suddenly, at once, immediately  
fēstīnō (1) hurry, hasten, speed†\*  
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe\*  
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
imāgo, inis f. image, form, ghost\*  
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, inflame\*  
iners, rtis inactive, lifeless, tame†  
īnscius, a, um ignorant, unaware

lūctus, ūs m. grief, sorrow, lament  
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, detain\*  
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present  
passim everywhere, all about†\*  
pavor, ōris m. terror, shuddering, alarm  
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
praecordia, ōrum n. heart, breast†  
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus plunder, snatch (up)  
redeō, īre, īī (īvī), itus return  
re(1)ligiōsus, a, um holy, sacred†  
respōnsum, ī n. answer, reply†  
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
sēgnitiēs, ēī f. sloth, laziness†  
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel  
sērus, a, um (too) late, slow†  
socius, a, um allied, associated†  
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew,  
spread\*  
tam so (much), so very, such\*  
ubīque everywhere, anywhere  
ultrō voluntarily, further\*  
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk  
virtūs, ūtis f. valor, manhood, excellence\*

364-365. inertia corpora: of the slain Trojans.

365. et = and even.

366. poenās dant: suffer punishment; see the note on sūmite poenās in l. 103.

367. victis: dat. of reference; App. 301.

369. lūctus (est). pavor: with the final syllable lengthened for metrical reasons; App. 394, a. plūrima: many a.

370-402. Aeneas and his comrades gain some initial successes, and on the advice of Coroebus, one of their number, they exchange their own armor for that

of the Greeks they had slain. This trick gives them an advantage, and their success increases.

370. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

371. crēdēns (nōs esse) socia agmina (= Danaōs).

372. (nōs) compellat.

373. (vōs) morātur.

374. incēnsa Pergama: obj. of both rapiunt and ferunt.

375. vōs: emphatic, as always when expressed as subject; App. 247.

377. dēlāpsus (esse) = sē dēlāpsum esse.

- Obstipuit retrōque pedem cum vōce repressit.  
 Imprōvisum aspris velutī quī sentibus anguem  
 380 pressit humī nītēns trepidusque repente refūgit  
 attollentem trās et caerula colla tumentem,  
 haud secus Androgeōs visū tremefactus abibat.  
 Inruimus dēnsīs et circumfundimur armīs,  
 ignārōsque locī passim et formīdine captōs  
 385 sternimus. Aspirat primō Fortūna labōrī.  
 Atque hīc successū exsultāns animīsque Coroebus  
 'Ō sociū, quā prīma' inquit 'fortūna salūtis  
 mōnstrat iter, quāque ostendit sē dextra, sequāmur:  
 mūtēmus clipeōs Danaumque insignia nōbis  
 390 aptēmus. Dolus an virtūs, quis in hoste requīrat?

abeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus depart, retreat\*  
 an whether, or\*  
 Androgeōs, ī (ō) m. Greek leader  
 anguis, is m. snake, serpent  
 aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish\*  
 asper, (e)ra, (e)rum harsh, rough, fierce\*  
 a(d)spirō (1) breathe upon, favor (dat.)  
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear\*  
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark blue, bluish  
 black†\*  
 circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round  
 clipeus, ī m. shield, buckler\*  
 collum, ī n. neck\*  
 Coroebus, ī m. suitor of Cassandra  
 dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense†\*  
 dolus, ī m. deceit, treachery, fraud\*  
 exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge,  
 exult†  
 formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread  
 hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 humus, ī f. ground, earth, soil\*  
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced\*  
 imprōvisus, a, um unforeseen, unexpected  
 inquam, is, it say\*  
 inruō, ere, uī rush in†  
 insigne, is n. mark, badge, device†  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach\*

mūtō (1) (ex)change, alter, transform\*  
 nitor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, clumb, step  
 firmly†  
 obstipēscō, ere, pui be dazed, stand  
 agape\*  
 ostendō, ere, ī, tus show, display\*  
 passim everywhere, all about\*  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,  
 trample\*  
 quā where(by), in any (some) way  
 refugio, ere, fugi flee, retreat, recoil  
 repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly  
 reprīmō, ere, pressi, pressus check†  
 requirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus seek, ask  
 (for)  
 retrō back, backward  
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, deliverance, health  
 secus otherwise, differently†  
 sentis, is m. brier, bramble†  
 sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew,  
 spread\*  
 successus, ūs m. success, progress†  
 tremefactus, a, um trembling, appalled  
 trepidus, a, um alarmed, agitated†  
 tumeō, ēre, uī swell; be swollen  
 velut(i) as, just as\*  
 virtūs, ūtis f. valor, manhood, excellence\*  
 visus, ūs m. sight, appearance, view

378. retrō: pleonastic with the re in repressit; App. 438.

379. aspris = asperis, a form (- - -) which could not be used in hexameter; (in) sentibus aspris. veluti (ille) qui.

380. humi: loc.; App. 37, c.

381. (anguem) attollentem. colla: acc. of respect; App. 311.

382. haud secus: litotes; App. 431.

383. circumfundimur (iis): middle; we pour ourselves around (them), i.e., we surround them; App. 309. dēnsis (armis): abl. of means.

385. labōrī: dat. with compound; App. 298.

386. successū, animis: ablatives of cause; App. 332.

387-388. salūtis: obj. gen. with iter; App. 284. (fortūna) ostendit sē. dextra: irregularly agreeing with fortūna instead of with sē.

388-390. sequāmur, mūtēmus, aptēmus: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

390. Dolus an virtūs (sit): indir. quest.; App. 349. requīrat: deliberative quest.; App. 348.



*Arma dabunt ipsi.* Sīc fātus deinde comantem  
 Androgeō galeam clipeīque insigne decōrum  
 induitur laterīque Argivum accommodat ēnsem.  
*Hoc Rhipeus, hoc ipse Dymās omnisque juventūs  
 laeta facit:* spoliis sē quisque recentibus armat.  
 Vādimus immixtī Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō  
 multaque per caecam congressī proelia noctem  
 cōnserimus, multōs Danaum dēmittimus Orcō.  
 Diffugiunt aliī ad nāvīs et litora cursū  
 fida petunt; pars ingentem formīdine turpī  
 scandunt rūsus equum et nōtā conduntur in alvō.

395

400

*Heu nihil invitīs fās quemquam fidere dīvīs!*

accommodō (1) fit, adjust†  
 alvus, ī f. belly, body  
 Androgeōs, ī (ō) m. Greek leader  
 Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden\*  
 clipeus, ī m. shield, buckler\*  
 comāns, antis hairy, crested†  
 condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide\*  
 congregior, ī, gressus meet, encounter  
 cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus join, engage in†  
 decōrus, a, um ornamental, becoming  
 deinde thereupon, then, next  
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down\*  
 diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee (apart), scatter  
 Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader  
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife\*  
 fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will\*  
 fidō, ere, fisus sum trust, confide, rely  
 (in, on) (dat., abl.)\*  
 fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe\*  
 formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread  
 galea, ae f. helmet

immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle, mix  
 (with) (dat.)†  
 induō, ere, uī, ūtus, don, clothe, put  
 on  
 insigne, is n. mark, badge, device  
 invitus, a, um unwilling, unfriendly†  
 juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*  
 latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
 nihil, nil nothing, not at all  
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
 Orcus, ī m. (god of) death, Hades†  
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fray, fight  
 quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one,  
 thing)  
 quisque, quaeque, quodque each, every  
 (one)  
 recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late  
 Rhipeus, ī m. Trojan leader  
 rūsus, um again, anew, back(ward)†\*  
 scandō, ere, ī, ānsus climb, mount  
 spolium, (i)ī n. spoils, booty, plunder  
 turpis, e shameful, disgraceful, foul†  
 vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march

391. deinde: two syllables by syni-  
 zesis; App. 403.

392. Androgeō: gen., a Greek form;  
 App. 67.

394. Hoc (facit) Rhipeus. hoc: pron-  
 ounce hocc, making a long syllable;  
 App. 107, 3, c. ipse: also, a not uncom-  
 mon meaning. omnis juventūs = omnēs  
 juvenēs.

396. Danaīs: dat. with compound;  
 App. 298. haud nūmine nostrō: abl. of  
 attendant circumstance; App. 329; not  
 under the protection of our own (= friendly)  
 divinities. By donning Greek armor, the  
 Trojans forfeit the protection of their own  
 gods.

397. congressī (Danaōs).

398. Dana(ōr)um. Orcō: dat. of di-  
 rection, = ad Orcum; App. 306.

399. aliī (Danaī). cursū: abl. of  
 manner; App. 328.

400. fida litora: where their ships  
 were.

401. conduntur: middle = sē condunt;  
 App. 309.

402-430. The Trojans, disguised in  
 Greek armor, see Cassandra, the be-  
 trothed of Coroeus, being dragged from  
 the shrine of Minerva by Ajax and his  
 comrades. In trying to rescue her,  
 Coroeus is killed, and the other Trojans  
 are overwhelmed by the weapons of their  
 friends who are ignorant of their disguise.

402. fās (est). nihil: adverbial, not  
 at all. divis: dat. with a special verb,  
 fidere; App. 297.

- Ecce trahēbātūr passīs Priamēia virgō  
 crinibus ā templō Cassandra adytisque Minervae  
 405 ad caelum tendēns ardentia lūmina frūstrā,  
 lūmina, nam tenerās arcēbant vincula palmās.  
 Nōn tulit hanc speciem furiātā mente Coroebus  
 et sēsē medium injēcit peritūrus in agmen.  
 Cōnsequimur cūctī et dēnsīs incurrimus armīs.  
 410 Hic primum ex altō dēlūbrī culmine tēlīs  
 nostrōrum obruimur oriturque miserrima caedēs  
 armōrum faciē et Grajārum errōre jubārum.  
 Tum Danaī gemitū atque ēreptae virginis irā  
 undique collēctī invādunt, ācerrimus Ajāx  
 415 et geminī Atridae Dolopumque exercitus omnis;

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited\*  
 adytum, i n. inner shrine, sanctuary  
 Ajāx, ācis m. Greek leader, captor of  
 Cassandra\*  
 arceō, ēre, uī confine, restrain, defend  
 Atridēs, ae m. son of Atreus: (1) Agamem-  
 non, (2) Menelaüs  
 caedēs, is f. slaughter, massacre, murder  
 Cassandra, ae f. prophetess, daughter of  
 Priam, never believed  
 colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather  
 cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake†  
 Coroebus, i m. suitor of Cassandra  
 crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses\*  
 culmen, inis n. top, summit, peak, roof\*  
 dēlūbrum, i n. shrine, temple, fane  
 dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense\*  
 Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 error, ōris m. error, deceit, trick  
 exercitus. ūs m. army, host, band†  
 faciēs, ēī f. appearance, form, aspect\*  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
 furiō (1) frenzy, madden, infuriate†

gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament\*  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 incurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run in(to),  
 attack†  
 injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw in(to)†  
 invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, march in  
 juba, ae f. mane, crest  
 Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom and  
 the arts  
 obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, crush  
 orior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring (up)  
 palma, ae f. palm, hand\*  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread, loosen,  
 dishevel\*  
 pereō, ire, iī (ivī), itus perish, die†  
 Priamēius, a, um of Priam, Priam's†  
 speciēs, ēī f. sight, spectacle, appear-  
 ance†  
 templum, i n. temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
 tener, era, erum tender, delicate, soft†  
 undique on (from) all sides\*  
 vinc(u)lum, i n. chain, bond, cable\*  
 virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, maid(en),  
 daughter\*

403. trahēbātūr: by Ajax; see I, 39-45;  
 observe the picturesque effect of the im-  
 perf.; App. 351. 2. Priamēia virgō: the  
 daughter of Priam, the adj. being equiva-  
 lent to the gen., as often.

403-404. passīs crinibus: abl. of  
 means or quality; App. 331, 330.

405-406. lūmina, lūmina: repetition for  
 the sake of the rhetorical effect; App. 413.

407. Coroebus: Cassandra's lover,  
 ll. 341-346.

409. (Danaīs) incurrimus. dēnsīs ar-  
 mīs: abl. of means; cf. I. 383.

410. primum: correlative with tum,  
 l. 412. dēlūbrī: of Minerva, l. 404.

411. obruimur: with the final syllable  
 long under the metrical accent and before

the pause; App. 394, a. oritur: of the third  
 conjugation here. Cf. exoritur, l. 313.

412. faciē, errōre: ablatives of cause;  
 App. 332. Grajārum: pronounce Grajjā-  
 rum; App. 6, b. errōre jubārum: the  
 mistake of (caused by) the Greek crests,  
 subj. gen.; App. 284.

413. ēreptae virginis (Cassandrae):  
 subj. gen.; the wrath of (caused by) the girl  
 snatched (from them), or gen. of definition;  
 App. 284, 282. gemitū: abl. of manner;  
 App. 328. irā: abl. of cause; App. 332.

414. collēctī: middle; App. 309. in-  
 vādunt (nōs). Ajāx: pronounced Ajjāx;  
 App. 6, b.

415. geminī = duo: they were not  
 twins.

adversī ruptō ceu quondam turbine ventī  
 cōnfligunt, Zephyrusque Notusque et laetus Eōis  
 Euris equis; stridunt silvae saevitque tridentī  
 spūmeus atque imō Nēreus ciet aequora fundō.  
 Illī etiam, sī quōs obscurā nocte per umbram  
 fūdīmus insidiīs tōtāque agitāvimus urbe,  
 appārent; primī clipeōs mentītaque tēla  
 agnōscunt atque ōra sonō discordia signant.  
 Illicet obruimur numerō; primusque Coroebus  
 Pēneleī dextrā divae armipotentis ad āram  
 prōcumbit; cadit et Rhipeus, iūstissimus ūnus  
 quī fuit in Teucrīs et servantissimus aequi  
 (dīs aliter vīsum); pereunt Hypanisque Dymāsque

420

425

adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
 aequum, i n. justice, right(eousness)†  
 agitō (1) drive, stir, buffet, pursue†  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 aliter otherwise, differently  
 appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear  
 armipotēns, entis powerful in arms†  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 ceu (just) as, as if  
 cieō, ēre, civī, citus stir (up), arouse\*  
 clipeus, i m. shield, buckler\*  
 cōnfligō, ere, xī, ctus clash, struggle†  
 Coroebus, i m. suitor of Cassandra  
 discors, rdis differing, discordant†  
 Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader  
 Eōus, a, um eastern, of the dawn  
 etiam also, even, besides, yet. still\*  
 Euris, i m. (east) wind  
 fundus, i m. bottom, base, depth(s)†  
 Hypanis, is m. Trojan leader  
 illicet immediately, at once†  
 insidiāe, ārum f. ambush, snare, treach-  
 ery

iustus, a, um just, fair, right(eous), true  
 mentior, irī, itus deceive, lie, pretend†  
 Nēreus, i m. a minor sea god†  
 Notus, i m. (south) wind  
 numerus, i m. number, multitude\*  
 obruō, ere, ruī, rutus overwhelm, crush  
 obscurus, a, um dark, hidden, gloomy\*  
 Pēneleus, ei m. Greek leader†  
 pereō, ire, iī (ivī), itus perish, die  
 prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall, sink†  
 Rhipeus, \* m. Trojan leader  
 rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst  
 (forth)\*  
 saevio, ire, ivī (ii) itus rage, be fierce  
 servāns, antis observant, heedful†  
 signō (1) observe, mark, indicate†  
 sonus, i m. sound, noise, speech†  
 spūmeus, a, um foamy, frothy†  
 strid(e)ō, ēre, i creak, roar, rustle  
 tridēns, entis m. trident, three-pronged  
 spear  
 turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm  
 Zephyrus, i m. (west) wind

416-417. ceu quondam turbine ruptō, ventī cōnfligunt adversī: a simile; App. 441. turbine ruptō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

418. equis: abl. of cause with laetus; App. 332. The wind god was conceived as driving his swift steeds like some great warrior. stridunt: of the third conjugation here, but ordinarily of the second. tridentī: abl. of means; App. 331.

418-419. Note the alliteration of s; App. 411.

419. spūmeus Nēreus. (ex) fundō.

420-422. Illī (Danai) appārent. sī quōs: indef. insidiīs: by the trick or exchanging armor and insignia; see ll. 389-395. tōtā urbe abl. of route or space over which; App. 338.

422-423. (illī Danaī) primī . . . agnōscunt atque . . . signant. sonō: abl. of respect with discordia; App. 325. The Trojans and Greeks are represented as speaking the same language (ōra) but with a dialect differing (discordia) in sound (sonō). (nostra) ōra.

425. dextrā (manū). divae armipotentis: Minervae.

426. iūstissimus ūnus: ūnus is often thus used simply to emphasize the superlative and is not to be translated.

427. servantissimus aequi: most devoted to justice; aequi is used substantively as an obj. gen.; App. 284.

428. dis aliter visum (est): the gods decreed otherwise (lit., it seemed otherwise)

- 430 cōnfixi ā sociīs; nec tē tua plūrima, Panthū,  
lābentem pietās nec Apollinis infula tēxit.  
Īliaci cinerēs et flamma extrēma meōrum,  
testor, in occāsū vestrō nec tēla nec ūllās  
vītāvisse vicēs Danaum et, sī fāta fuissent  
ut caderem, meruisse manū. Divellimur inde,  
435 Īphitus et Peliās mēcum (quōrum Īphitus aevō  
jam gravior, Peliās et vulnere tardus Ulixī),  
prōtinus ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī.  
Hic vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cētera nūquam  
bella forent, nūllī tōtā morerentur in urbe,  
440 sīc Mārtem indomitum Danaōsque ad tēcta ruentīs

aevum, *i n.* age, life, time, eternity†  
Apollō, *inis m.* god of light, music, and  
prophecy\*  
cadō, *ere, cecidī, cāsus* fall, sink, die\*  
cēterus, *a, um* other, remaining, rest  
ceu *as, just as, as if*  
cinis, *eris m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the  
dead)†\*  
cōnfigō, *ere, xī, xus* pierce, transfix†  
divellō, *ere, ī, vulsus* tear apart  
extrēmus, *a, um* extreme, final, last\*  
gravis, *e* heavy, grievous, serious\*  
Īliacus, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan\*  
inde thence, thereupon, next\*  
indomitus, *a, um* uncontrolled, ungov-  
ernable†  
infula, *ae f.* fillet, garland, band†  
Īphitus, *i m.* Trojan leader†  
Mārs, *rtis m.* (god of) war  
mereō, *ēre, uī, itus* deserve, merit, earn\*

moriōr, *ī, mortuus* die, perish\*  
nūquam nowhere, never†  
occāsus, *ūs m.* sinking, fall, destruction  
Panthūs, *i m.* Trojan leader  
Peliās, *ae m.* Trojan leader†  
pietās, *ātis f.* piety, devotion, loyalty,  
sense of duty, righteousness, nobility\*  
prōtinus immediately, at once†  
pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, fray, com-  
bat\*  
tardus, *a, um* slow, retarded, lazy, late  
tegō, *ere, tēxī, tēctus* cover, protect\*  
testor, *ārī, ātus* call to witness, testify  
Ulixēs, *is (ei, ī) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek  
leader\*  
vērō truly, indeed, but  
vester, *tra, trum* your(s), your own\*  
vicis (*gen.*) *f.* (inter)change; fortune†  
vitō (1) shun, avoid, dodge, escape†  
vulnus, *eris n.* wound, deadly blow\*

to the gods); the underlying thought seems to be: "if any one deserved to survive the fall of Troy it was the righteous Rhipeus, but the ways of the gods are past finding out."

429. (suīs) sociīs: Trojans on the roof of the temple, misled by their armor into believing Aeneas and his companions to be Greeks. Panthū: voc., a Greek form; App. 67.

430. infula: fillets were worn by priests and others, such as sacrificial victims, to indicate their sanctity and their consecration to the divinity.

431-505. Aeneas and his comrades hasten to the palace of Priam, which is being stormed.

431. meōrum: substantively, of my people, as though the flames of Troy were the funeral flames of his people. cinerēs, flamma: vocatives.

432-433. (vōs) testor, (mē) vītāvisse, indir. statement; App. 263.

433. vicēs Dana(ōr)um: perils of (from) the Greeks, subj. gen.; App. 284. si fuissent: protasis of condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

434. ut caderem: depends partly on fāta, partly on meruisse; App. 364. (mē) meruisse (ut caderem) manū (for my deeds); or construe: Dana(ōr)um manū.

435-436. Īphitus et Peliās: in parti-tive apposition with nōs understood as subject of divellimur. mēcum = cum mē: App. 321, a. quōrum Īphitus (est) gravior, et Peliās (est) tardus. Ulixī: subj. gen. with vulnere, the wound of (in-flicted by) Ulysses; App. 284.

437. vocātī: agrees with the subj. of divellimur.

438. pugnam (cernimus).

439. ceu . . . forent, (ceu) . . . more-  
rentur: condit. comparisons; App. 383.



*cernimus obsessumque actā testūdine limen.*

*Haerent parietibus scālae postisque sub ipsōs  
nituntur gradibus clipeōsque ad tēla sinistris  
prōtēcti obijciunt, prēnsant fastigia dextris.*

*Dardanidae contrā turrīs ac tōta domōrum*

445

*culmina convellunt; hīs sē, quandō ultima cernunt,*

*extrēmā jam in morte parant dēfendere tēlis;*

*aurātāsque trabēs, veterum decora alta parentum,*

*dēvolvunt; aliū strictis mūcrōnibus imās*

*obsēdere forēs, hās servant agmine dēnsō.*

450

*Instaurātī animī rēgis succurrere tēctis*

*auxiliōque levāre virōs vimque addere victis.*

*Limen erat caecaeque forēs et pervius ūsus*

*tēctōrum inter sē Priamī, postēsque relictī*

addō, ere, didī, dītus add\*  
aurātus, a, um gilded, golden  
auxilium, (i)ī n. help, aid, assistance\*  
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler\*  
contrā opposite, on the other side\*  
convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter  
culmen, inis n. summit, top, peak, roof\*  
Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan  
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, dignity  
dēfendō, ere, i, ēnsus defend, protect  
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense\*  
dēvolvō, ere, i, volūtus roll down†  
extrēmus, a, um extreme, utter, last\*  
fastigium, (i)ī n. roof, top, summit  
foris, is f. door, gate, entrance  
gradus, ūs m. step, gait, stride, rung  
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling to  
(dat.)\*

instaurō (1) renew, refresh†

levō (1) relieve, lighten, lift, remove

mūcrō, ōnis m. edge, point, sword

nitor, i, sus (nixus) climb on, rest on  
(abl.)

objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hold toward  
obsidēō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset  
pariēs, ietis m. house-wall, wall†

pervius, a, um passable, traversable†

postis, is m. post, door, gate†

pr(eh)ēnsō (1) seize, grasp, clutch†

prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect†

quandō when, since, because

scālae, ārum f. ladder, stairway†

sinistra, ae f. left hand†

stringō, ere, inxi, ictus draw, strip, graze

succurrō, ere, i, cursus succor (dat.)

testūdō, inis f. tortoise, roof of over-  
lapping shields held by soldiers over  
their heads

trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber

turrīs, is f. tower, turret†

ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest\*

ūsus, ūs m. employment, use†

vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

441. actā testūdine: abl. abs.; App. 343. An assaulting party, protected by their upraised shields and bearing a fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell; hence the Romans gave it the name, testūdō, tortoise.

442. parietibus: dat. or abl. with haerent; App. 319, 297; pronounced here as though spelled parjetibus so that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

443. gradibus: up the rungs; abl. of route; App. 338.

445-446. contrā: adv. turrīs, culmina: objects of convellunt. ultima (fāta) = mortem.

446-447. histēlis: abl. of means; App. 331. sē dēfendere parant.

449. aliī (Teucrī).

450. obsēdere = obsēderunt: App. 204, 4.

451. Instaurātī (sunt) animī (nostrī). tēctis: dat. with compound, succurrere; App. 298.

452. auxiliō: abl. of means; App. 331. victis (Teucris): dat. with compound; App. 298.

453. erat: agreeing with its nearest subject, limen; App. 236, b. pervius ūsus: a passable use, a way through which one might pass, coördinate with limen, forēs, and postēs.

454. inter sē: connecting the different parts of the palace (tēctōrum) with each other. tēctōrum: poetic plural; App. 243. relictī: secluded, unknown except to members of Priam's family.

- 455 *ā tergō, infelix quā sē, dum rēgna manēbant,*  
 saepius Andromachē ferre incommitāta solēbat  
*ad socerōs et avō puerum Astyanacta trahēbat.*  
*Ēvādō ad summī fastigia culminis, unde*  
*tēla manū miserī jactābant inrita Teucrī.*
- 460 *Turrim in praecipiti stantem summīsq; sub astra*  
*ēductam tēctis, unde omnis Troja vidērī*  
*et Danaum solitae nāvēs et Achāica castra,*  
*adgressī ferrō circum, quā summa labantīs*  
*jūctūrās tabulāta dabant, convellimus altīs*
- 465 *sēdibus impulimusq; ea lapsa repente ruīnam*  
*cum sonitū trahit et Danaum super agmina lātē*  
*incidit. Ast aliī subeunt, nec saxa nec ūllum*  
*tēlōrum intereā cessat genus.*  
*Vestibulum ante ipsum prīmōq; in limine Pyrrhus*

Achāicus, a, um Achaeon, Greek†  
 adgredior, i, gressus approach, attack  
 Andromachē, ēs (a, ae) f. wife of Hector†  
 astrum, i n. star, constellation\*  
 Astyanax, actis m. infant son of Hector  
 and Andromache†  
 avus, i m. grandfather; ancestor†  
 castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment\*  
 cessō (1) yield, delay, cease  
 convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter  
 culmen, inis n. summit, top, peak, roof\*  
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead forth, raise  
 ēvādō, ere, si, sus go out, traverse,  
 mount†  
 fastigium, (i) i n. roof, top, summit  
 impellō, ere, puli, pulsus push forward  
 incidō, ere, i fall (on); chance upon  
 incommitātus, a, um unaccompanied†  
 inritus, a, um useless, vain, unavailing†

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter\*  
 jūctūra, ae f. joint, fastening†  
 labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate†  
 lātē widely, far and wide  
 praeceps, cipitis n. precipice, sheer edge\*  
 Pyrrhus, i m. Neoptolemus, son of  
 Achilles†  
 quā where(by), in any (some) way  
 repente suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly  
 ruīna, ae f. ruin, downfall, collapse  
 saepe often, frequently\*  
 socer, eri m. father (parent)-in-law†  
 solēō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed  
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, noise, crash\*  
 tabulātum, i n. floor, story†  
 tergum, i n. back, body, rear\*  
 turris, is f. tower, turret  
 unde whence, from which place\*  
 vestibulum, i n. entry, vestibule†

455. *rēgna* (Priamī): poetic plural; App. 243.

455-456. *infelix Andromachē sē ferre solēbat*. To Aeneas, who is relating the story, Andromache was *infelix*, because of the loss of Hector who had been slain by Achilles and because of the death of her son Astyanax, who was killed by the Greeks after the fall of Troy.

456. *saepius*: very often, quite often, a common use of the comparative.

457. *socerōs*: parents-in-law, Priam and Hecuba. *avō* = Priamō: dat. of direction; App. 306 = *ad Priamum*. *Astyanacta*: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

458. *Ēvādō ad fastigia*: I mount to the

roof (after entering the palace by the secret passage just described).

460-464. *Turrim adgressi convellimus impulimusq; tēctis*: abl. of separation; App. 340. *in praecipiti*: on the sheer edge. *Troja (solita est) vidērī et nāvēs Dana-(ōr)um solitae (sunt vidērī)*: a watch tower. *ferrō*: iron tools, such as crow-bars.

464-465. *(ex) altīs sēdibus*: abl. of separation; App. 340.

466. *Dana-(ōr)um*.

467. *aliī* (Danaī).

468. *cessat*: agrees with *ūllum genus*, its nearest subject; App. 236, b.

469. *Pyrrhus*: Achilles's young son who has just come to Troy.

exsultat *tēlis et lūce* coruscus aēnā;  
 quālis ubi in lūcem coluber mala grāmina pāstus,  
 frīgida sub terrā tumidum quem brūma tegēbat,  
 nunc, positīs novus exuviīs nitidusque juventā,  
 lūbrica convolvit *sublātō pectore* terga  
 arduus ad sōlem, et linguīs micat *ōre* trisulcīs.  
 Ūnā *ingēns* Periphās et equōrum agitātor Achilles,  
 armiger Automedōn, ūnā omnis Scȳria pūbēs  
 succēdunt *tēctō et flammās* ad culmina jactant.  
 Ipse inter primōs correptā dūra bipennī  
 līmina perrumpit postisque ā cardine vellit  
 aerātōs; jamque excisā trabe firma cavāvit  
 rōbora et ingentem lātō dedit *ōre* fenestram.

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader\*  
 aēnus, a, um bronze, brazen  
 aerātus, a, um bronze, brazen†  
 agitātor, ōris *m.* driver, charioteer†  
 arduus, a, um high, steep, lofty\*  
 armiger, erī *m.* armorbearer, squire†  
 Automedōn, ontis *m.* Greek leader†  
 bipennis, is *f.* double ax†  
 brūma, ae *f.* midwinter†  
 cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket  
 cavō (1) hollow out  
 coluber, brī *m.* snake, serpent†  
 convolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll, coil†  
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
 coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, waving  
 culmen, inis *n.* top, summit, peak, roof\*  
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 excidō, ere, ī, sus cut out; destroy  
 exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult  
 exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils; skin, slough  
 fenestra, ae *f.* window, opening, breach†  
 firmus, a, um firm, strong, solid†  
 frigidus, a, um cold, frosty, chill†  
 grāmen, inis *n.* grass, herb, plant†  
 jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter\*  
 juvena, ae *f.* youth, young manhood  
 lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*

lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language  
 lūbricus, a, um slippery, slimy†  
 malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked, baneful\*  
 micō, āre, uī flash, quiver, dart  
 nitidus, a, um shining, bright, sleek†  
 pascor, ī, pāstus feed (on), graze, eat  
 Periphās, antis *m.* Greek leader†  
 perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break  
 through†  
 postis, is *m.* post, door, gate  
 pūbēs, is *f.* youth, young men\*  
 quālis, e such (as), of what sort\*  
 rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength\*  
 Scȳrius, a, um Scyrian, of Scyros, an  
 island of the Aegean where Neoptole-  
 mus (Pyrrhus) was born†  
 sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day\*  
 succēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach  
 (dat.)  
 tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect\*  
 tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear\*  
 trabs (trabēs), is *f.* beam, timber  
 trisulcus, a, um threefold, tripartite,  
 forked†  
 tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling  
 ūnā together, at the same time  
 vellō, ere, vulsi, vulsus tear (up)†

470. *tēlis et lūce aēnā coruscus* =  
 flashing and gleaming in his bronze armor.  
 For a further description see III, 467-  
 468.

471-475. *quālis est coluber ubi, pās-  
 tus mala grāmina, quem tumidum frīgida  
 brūma sub terrā tegēbat, nunc novus,  
 exuviīs positīs, nitidusque juventā, in  
 lūcem (ēvādēns) sublātō pectore arduus  
 ad sōlem lūbrica terga convolvit, et lin-  
 guīs trisulcīs (in) ōre micat.* mala  
 grāmina pāstus: the ancients thought  
 that serpents derived their venom from  
 feeding on poisonous herbs (mala grā-

mina). tumidum: with venom. positīs:  
 shed. linguīs trisulcīs: abl. of means;  
 App. 331; the ancients thought that the  
 serpent's tongue had three forks.

478. *tēctō (Priamī):* dat. with com-  
 pound; App. 298.

479. Ipse (Pyrrhus): see the note on  
 ipsius, I, 114. correptā bipennī: abl. abs.  
 or means; App. 343, 331.

479-480. *correptā dūra bipennī līmina:*  
 interlocked order; App. 442. *līmina:*  
 the doors.

482. *lātō ōre:* wide-mouthed; abl. of  
 quality; App. 330.

- Appāret *domus* intus et ātria longa patēscunt,  
 appārent *Priamī* et veterum penetrālia rēgum,  
 485 *armātōsque vident stantīs in limine primō.*  
*At domus* interior gemitū miserōque tumultū  
 miscētur, penitusque cavāe plangōribus aedēs  
 fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmor.  
*Tum pavidae tēctīs mātērēs ingentibus errant*  
 490 *amplexaeque tenent postīs atque ōscula figunt.*  
*Instat vī patriā* Pyrrhus; *nec claustra nec ipsī*  
*custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō*  
*jānuā, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.*  
*Fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs primōsque* trucidant  
 495 *immissī Danaī et lātē loca milite complent.*

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance†  
 aedēs, ium *f.* house, home†  
 amplexor, ī, exus embrace, encompass\*  
 appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear  
 ariēs, etis *m.* (battering) ram†  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium  
 aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold\*  
 cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket  
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
 claustrum, ī *n.* bolt, fastening, barrier  
 compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete  
 crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated\*  
 custōs, ōdis *m. (f.)* guard(ian), sentinel\*  
 ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move from†  
 fēmineus, a, um feminine, women's†  
 feriō, ire strike, smite, beat, kill  
 figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, print\*  
 fiō, fieri, factus become, be made  
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament\*  
 immittō, ere, misī, missus let in†  
 instō, āre, stitī press on, urge on  
 interior, ius inner, interior  
 intus within, inside  
 jānuā, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance†

labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate  
 lātē widely, far and wide  
 miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)  
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
 ōsculum, ī *n.* dainty lips; kiss  
 patēscō, ere, uī open up, be revealed  
 pavidus, a, um fearful, frightened†  
 penetrālia, ium *n.* chamber, sanctuary,  
 inner room  
 penitus (deep) within, inside, completely\*  
 plangor, ōris *m.* clamor, wailing, beating  
 (of the breast), shriek†  
 postis, is *m.* post, door, gate  
 prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall, sink  
 Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of  
 Achilles  
 rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst  
 (forth)\*  
 sufferō, ferre, sustulī, sublātus with-  
 stand, endure†  
 trucidō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher†  
 tumultus, ūs *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub  
 ululō (1) howl, shriek, wail†  
 valeō, ēre, uī be strong, avail, be able†  
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

483. ātria: Vergil has in mind the general arrangement of a Roman house rather than that of an ancient Trojan palace.

483-484. Appāret, appārent: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

485. armātōs (Teucrōs): mentioned in ll. 449-450. (Danai) vident.

486. domus interior: the inner house = the interior of the house; App. 246; contrasted with the scene at the entrance (in limine primō).

488. ferit sīdera clāmor: hyperbole; App. 428.

489. (in) tēctīs.

490. ōscula: of farewell.

491. vī patriā: with his father's might, patriā = patris = Achillis (gen.).

492. sufferre (Pyrrhum). ariete crēbrō: abl. of means; App. 331; with the frequent (battering) ram, with the repeated blows of the battering ram; ariete, pronounced arjete here, that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

493. cardine: abl. of separation with ēmōtī; App. 340.

494. via vī: alliteration; App. 411. aditūs: acc. of effect; App. 307; cf. "he broke a hole in the ice." primōs (virōs): mentioned in l. 485.



*Nōn sic, aggeribus ruptis cum spūmeus amnis  
exiit oppositāsque ēvicit gurgite mōlēs,  
fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnīs  
cum stabulis armenta trahit. Vīdī ipse furentem  
caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in limine Atridās,* 500  
*vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās  
sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignīs.  
Quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs ampla nepōtum,  
barbaricō postēs aurō spoliisque superbī  
procubuēre; tenent Danaī quā dēficit ignis.* 505

*Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās.  
Urbis utī captae cāsum convulsaque vīdit  
līmīna tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,*

**agger, eris** *m.* mound, heap, dike, dam  
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream, torrent†\*  
**amplus, a, um** ample, full, spacious, wide  
**amentum, ī n.** herd, flock, drove, cattle  
**Atridēs, ae** *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamem-  
non, (2) Menelaūs  
**barbaricus, a, um** barbaric, foreign†  
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre  
**centum** hundred\*  
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter  
**cumulus, ī m.** heap, mass, pile  
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** fail, be lacking†  
**ēvincō, ere, vici, victus** overcome, sur-  
mount†  
**exeō, ire, īi (īvī), itus** go forth, depart  
**foedō (1)** defile, pollute, disfigure  
**fors(it)an** perhaps, possibly, perchance†  
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, abyss, gulf\*  
**Hecuba, ae** *f.* wife of Priam†  
**hostis, is** *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, structure, dike\*  
**Neoptolemus, ī m.** Pyrrhus, son of Achil-  
les

**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
**nurus, ūs** *f.* daughter(-in-law)†  
**oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus** oppose, place  
against  
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* chamber, sanctuary,  
inner room  
**postis, is** *m.* post, door, gate  
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall (for-  
ward), sink  
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way  
**quīnquāgintā** fifty  
**requirō, ere, sivi, situs** ask, seek  
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst\*  
(forth)\*  
**sacrō (1)** hallow, consecrate, dedi-  
cate\*  
**spēs, ei** *f.* hope, expectation\*  
**spolium, (i)ī n.** spoils, booty, plunder  
**spūmeus, a, um** foamy, frothy  
**stabulum, ī n.** stable, stall, abode†  
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty\*  
**thalamus, ī m.** marriage chamber, bed-  
room†\*

**496-498.** *Nōn sic spūmeus amnis fer-  
tur = not so (furiously) does a foaming  
river rush onward;* litotes and a simile;  
App. 431, 441. **exiit:** from its channel.  
**fertur furēns, cumulō campōs:** double  
alliteration; App. 411. **cumulō:** abl. of  
manner; App. 328; as in I, 105.

**500.** **caede:** abl. of manner with **fu-  
rentem;** App. 328, a.

**501.** **nurūs:** daughters and daughters-  
in-law; Priam and Hecuba had fifty of  
each.

**502.** **foedantem ignīs.**

**503.** **illi:** those famous, as often. **tha-  
lamī:** of Priam's fifty sons and their wives.

**504.** **aurō spoliisque:** abl. of means or  
cause limiting **superbī;** App. 331, 332.

**barbaricō:** from a Roman or Greek point  
of view; foreign.

**505.** **prōcubuēre = prōcubuērunt;** App.  
204, 4.

**506-558.** Hecuba and Priam take  
refuge at the altar in the court of the  
palace, but Priam is nevertheless ruth-  
lessly slain by Pyrrhus.

**506.** **quae fuerint Priamī fāta:** indir.  
quest.; App. 349. **requirās:** potential  
subjunctive; or it may be taken as a  
subjunctive in an indirect question in-  
troduced by **an** and dependent upon **fors  
sit** (in **forsitan**); **sit** would then be a  
potential subjunctive.

- 510 *arma diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō*  
circumdat nēquiquam umerīs et inūtile ferrum  
cingitur, *ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostīs.*  
*Aedibus in mediīs nūdōque sub aetheris axe*  
*ingēns āra fuit juxtāque veterrima laurus*  
incumbēns ārae atque umbrā complexa penātīs.  
515 *Hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquiquam altāria circum,*  
praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,  
condēnsae et divum amplexae simulācra sedēbant.  
*Ipsū autem sūptīs Priamū juvenālibus armīs*  
*ut vīdit, 'Quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime conjūnx,*  
520 *impulit hīs cingī tēlīs? Aut quō ruis?' inquit.*  
*'Nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs*  
*tempus eget; nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet Hector.*

aedēs, ium *f.* house, home  
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether  
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity  
altāria, ium *n.* altar†  
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold\*  
autem but, however, moreover\*  
auxilium, (ī) ī *n.* aid, help, assistance\*  
axis, is *m.* axle, axis; height†  
ceū (just) as, as if  
cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctus gird, encircle\*  
circumdō, dare, dedi, datus surround,  
place around (*dat.*)  
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon†  
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold  
condēnsus, a, um crowded, thick, dense†  
dēfēnsor, ōris *m.* defender, protector†  
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense\*  
dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, unused  
dirus, a, um dire, awful, dreadful\*  
diū a long time, long  
egeō, ēre, uī need, lack, require (*abl.*)  
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader, son of  
Priam and Hecuba\*  
Hecuba, ae *f.* wife of Priam

hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus urge, drive  
incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lean (on,  
over) (*dat.*)  
inquam, is, it say\*  
inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless†  
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)†\*  
juvenālis, e youthful, of a young man†  
juxtā next, close at hand†\*  
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel (tree)†  
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
nāta, ae *f.* daughter  
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
nūdus, a, um naked, bare, nude, open  
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods\*  
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitate\*  
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit\*  
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire†  
simulācrum, ī *n.* image, statue, likeness  
sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, assume  
tam so (much), such\*  
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm; season\*  
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake\*  
vetus, eris ancient, old, aged, former\*

509-510. senior (Priamus) umeris trementibus aevō arma diū dēsuēta nēquiquam circumdat. senior: with the intensive meaning of the comparative, though a very old man.

510. umeris: *dat.* with compound; App. 298. ferrum: *obj.* of the middle verb cingitur, he girds on his sword; App. 309.

512. Aedibus in mediis: in the inner court of the palace, open to the sky; App. 246. As usual in such descriptions, the details are those of a wealthy Roman house of Vergil's own time.

514. ārae: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

515. altāria circum = circum altāria: App. 414.

516. ātrā tempestāte: *abl.* of means with the verbal idea implied in praecipitēs.

517. div(ōr)um.

518. sūptīs armīs: *abl. abs.*; App. 343.

520. (tē) impulit. cingī: middle, to gird yourself; App. 309.

521. auxiliō, dēfēnsōribus: *ablatives* with eget; App. 340. The idea seems to be: "human strength is unavailing, and only the gods and their sacred altars can protect us now."

522. adforet = adesset: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

*Hūc tandem concēde; haec āra tuēbitur omnīs,  
aut moriēre simul.' Sīc ōre effāta recēpit  
ad sēsē et sacrā longaevum in sēde locāvit.*

523

Ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī dē caede Politēs,  
ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostiis  
porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat  
saucius. *Illum ardēns infēstō vulnerē Pyrrhus  
insequitur, jam jamque manū tenet et premit hastā.*  
*Ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsit et ōra parentum,  
concidit ac multō vītam cum sanguine fūdit.*

530

*Hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā jam morte tenētur,  
nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī iraeque pepercit:  
'At tibi prō scelere,' exclāmat, 'prō tālibus ausīs  
dī, si qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,  
persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant*

535

abstineō, ēre, ui, tentus refrain, restrain†  
ātrium, (i)ī n. great hall, atrium  
ausum, ī n. daring deed, daring†  
autem but, however, moreover\*  
caedēs, is f. slaughter, murder, mas-  
sacre

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, come  
concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)†  
cūrō (J) regard, care (for), heed†  
dignus, a, um worthy, suitable, fit(ting)  
ecce see! look! behold!†  
effor, āri, ātus speak, utter, say†  
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape  
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come forth  
exclāmō (1) cry (out), shout, exclaim†  
grātēs, ium f. thanks, requital, reward  
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart  
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
infēstus, a, um hostile, threatening†  
insequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue\*  
locō (1) place, establish, locate\*  
longaevus, a, um aged, very old†  
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify\*  
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*

parcō, ere, peperci (parsī), parsus spare  
(dat.)

persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay fully  
pietās, ātis f. loyalty, righteousness,  
justice, sense of duty, nobility\*

Politēs, ae m. son of Priam, slain by  
Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)†

porticus, ūs f. colonnade, corridor, por-  
tico†

praemium, (i)ī n. reward, prize\*

premo, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,  
pierce\*

prō for, in behalf of, before (abl.)\*

Pyrrhus, ī m. Neoptolemus, son of  
Achilles

quamquam although, however, but  
recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, accept\*

reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, render\*

saucius, a, um wounded, hurt

scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin\*

tamen however, nevertheless, but\*

tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) protect, watch\*

vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free†

vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*

523. concēde: imp.; come here. (nōs)  
omnīs.

524. moriēre = moriēris, fut. 2nd sing.;  
App. 204, 4. simul (cum nōbis). ōre:  
picturesque pleonasm; App. 438. recēpit  
(longaevum Priamū n.).

525. sacrā in sēde = in āra.

526. Pyrrhī: subj. gen. with caede;  
App. 284.

528. porticibus: around the inner  
court of the palace; abl. of the route;  
App. 338.

529. Illum: Politēn. infēstō vulnerē:  
with hostile weapon (which would inflict  
a wound).

530. (illum) tenet et (illum) premit.  
jam jam: rhetorical repetition to portray  
the excited anticipation of Pyrrhus and  
the frenzied fear of Polites; App. 413.

531. ante oculōs et ōra parentum.

534. vōcī iraeque: datives with special  
verb; App. 297.

535-537. At dī tibi persolvant grātēs  
(= grātiās) dignās. (in) caelō. quae

- dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum  
*fēcistī et patriōs foedastī fūnere vultūs.*  
 540 *At nōn ille, satum quō tē mentīris, Achillēs*  
*tālis in hoste fuit Priamō; sed jūra fidemque*  
*supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsangue sepulcrō*  
*reddidit Hectoreum mēque in mea rēgna remisit.'*  
*Sic fātus senior tēlumque imbelles sine ictū*  
 545 *conjecit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,*  
*et summō clipeī nēquiquam umbōne pependit.*  
*Cui Pyrrhus: 'Referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis*  
*Pēlidae genitōrī. Illī mea tristia facta*  
*dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.*

Achillēs, is (ī, ei) *m.* Greek leader\*  
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze\*  
 clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler\*  
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, shoot†  
 cōram before the face, face to face  
 dēbitus, a, um due, owed, destined†  
 dēgener, eris degenerate, ignoble, base†  
 ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
 ērubescō, ere, ērubui reverence, blush  
 (before)†  
 exsanguis, e bloodless, lifeless, pale  
 factum, ī *n.* deed, exploit, undertaking\*  
 fidēs, ei *f.* faith, fidelity, reliance\*  
 foedō (ī) defile, pollute, disfigure  
 fūnus, eris *n.* death, funeral, disaster\*  
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, Trojan  
 leader, son of Priam  
 hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, wound†  
 imbellis, e unworlike, harmless†  
 jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, justice  
 lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*  
 meminī, isse remember, recall  
 mentior, iri, itus lie, deceive, pretend

nārrō (1) relate, recount, report, nar-  
 rate†  
 Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of  
 Achilles  
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 nuntius, (ī) *m.* messenger, message†  
 Pēlidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Peleus,  
 Achilles†  
 pendeō, ēre, pependī hang\*  
 prōtinus immediately, forthwith  
 Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of  
 Achilles  
 raucus, a, um hoarse, sounding, clanging†  
 reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, render\*  
 remittō, ere, misi, missus send back†  
 repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus drive back,  
 repel  
 senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire  
 sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, burial†  
 serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, beget†\*  
 sine without (*abl.*)\*  
 supplex, icis *m. (f.)* suppliant\*  
 umbō, ōnis *m.* boss, knob, shield†  
 vultus, ūs *m.* face, countenance, gaze\*

cūret: rel. clause of characteristic; App.  
 389. persolvant, reddant: opt.; App.  
 253. grātēs: reward, requital.

538. (tibi) qui. mē cernere = ut  
 cernam: depends on fēcisti.

539. foedā(vi)stī. fūnere (nātī).

540. ille: *that famous*, as often. (ex)  
 quō mentīris tē (esse) satum. mentīris:  
*you falsely say.* quō: *abl. of source*; App.  
 323.

541. After the death of Hector, Priam  
 had ransomed his corpse from Achilles.  
 Cf. I, 483-484. in hoste Priamō: *in the*  
*case of, toward his enemy Priam*; Priam's  
 use of his own name adds a touch of  
 pathos.

542. sepulcrō: *dat. of purpose*; App.  
 303.

543. Hectoreum = Hectoris: an adj.  
 for a gen. is a common usage.

544. Sic fātus (est) senior.

545. repulsum (est).

546. (dē) summō umbōne: App. 246;  
 Priam's spear had stuck in the top of the  
 boss of Pyrrhus's shield and now hung  
 there harmless.

547. Pyrrhus (dixit). Referēs et ibis:  
 hysteron proteron; App. 429; the futures  
 are here used with the force of imperatives,  
*go and tell*; App. 351, 3, a. nuntius: (*as*)  
*a messenger*.

548. (meō) genitōrī = Achillī.

548-549. mea tristia facta dēgenerem-  
 que Neoptolemum: *ironical and mock-*  
*ing*.

549. mementō: *imp.*



*Nunc morere.* *Hoc dicēns altāria ad ipsa trementem* 550  
*trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,*  
*implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum*  
*extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.*  
*Haec finis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum*  
*sorte tulit Trojam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem* 555  
*Pergama, tot quondam populis terrisque superbum*  
*rēgnātōrem Asiae. Jacet ingēns litore truncus,*  
*āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.*  
*At mē tum prīmum saevus circumstetit horror.*  
*Obstipui; subiit cārī genitōris imāgō,* 560  
*ut rēgem aequaevum crūdēlī vulnere vīdī*  
*vītam exhālantem; subiit dēserta Creūsa*  
*et direpta domus et parvī cāsus Iūli.*

*abdō, ere, didī, ditus* hide, bury  
*aequaevus, a, um* of equal age†  
*altāria, ium n.* altar  
*Asia, ae f.* Asia (Minor)  
*āvellō, ere, ui, vulsus* tear from  
*capulus, ī m.* hilt, handle, head†  
*cārus, a, um* dear, beloved, fond\*  
*circumstō, āre, stetī* surround, stand  
 around†  
*coma, ae f.* hair, locks, tresses\*  
*coruscus, a, um* flashing, bright, waving  
*Creūsa, ae f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the  
 sack of Troy†  
*crūdēlis, e* cruel, bloody, bitter\*  
*dēsērō, ere, ui, rtus* desert, forsake\*  
*diripiō, ere, ui, reptus* plunder, ravage  
*efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus* raise, lift\*  
*ēnsis, is m.* sword, knife\*  
*exhālō (1)* breathe out, exhale†  
*exitus, ūs m.* exit, issue, end†  
*horror, ōris m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm  
*imāgō, inis f.* image, picture, likeness\*  
*implicō, āre, āvī (ui), ātus (itus)* entwine

*incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus* burn, fire\*  
*Iūlus, ī m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
*jaceō, ēre, ui, itus* lie (low, outspread)\*  
*laeva, ae f.* left hand  
*lāpsō, āre* slip, stumble, totter, fall†  
*latus, eris n.* side, flank\*  
*moriōr, ī, mortuus* die, perish\*  
*obstipēscō, ere, stipui* be dazed, stand  
 agape\*  
*parvus, a, um* small, little\*  
*Pergama, ōrum n.* (citadel of) Troy\*  
*populus, ī m.* people, nation, race\*  
*prōlābor, ī, lāpsus* slide, fall, perish†  
*rēgnātōr, ōris m.* ruler, sovereign, lord†  
*saevus, a, um* cruel, stern, fierce\*  
*sine* without (*abl.*)\*  
*sors, rtis f.* lot, fate, destiny; oracle\*  
*superbus, a, um* proud, haughty\*  
*tenus, to, up to, as far as (abl.)*  
*tot* so many\*  
*tremō, ere, ui* tremble, shake, quiver\*  
*truncus, ī m.* trunk, body, torso†  
*vulnus, eris n.* wound, deadly blow\*

550. *morere*: imp. *altāria ad ipsa*: an act of unspeakable impiety. *tremem* (Priamum): from old age and anger, not from fear.

561. *lāpsantem sanguine nātī*: a touch of pathos.

552-553. *coruscum (ēnsem). laterī* = in *latus*: dat. of direction; App. 306.

554. *Haec (fuit) finis*: *Haec* is attracted to the gender of the predicate, *finis*, which is here feminine, though ordinarily masculine. *hic(c) exitus (vītae)*.

556. *populis terrisque*: ablatives of cause with *superbum*; App. 332.

557. *Asiae*: obj. gen. with *rēgnātōrem*; App. 284. (in) *litore*: his headless corpse is thrown out on the beach for the dogs

and birds to devour. It is said that Vergil here has in mind the fate of Pompey, once one of the world's most powerful men; he was defeated in battle, lost his power, and was finally beheaded in Egypt, where his body was cast out and allowed to lie on the beach.

559-566. The sight of Priam so brutally slain reminds Aeneas of the danger of his own aged father, Anchises, and of his wife and child.

560. *subiit (meam mentem)*.

561. *aequaevum*: Anchises was of about the same age as Priam.

563. *direpta*: in my imagination. *domus*: nom. sing. with the final syllable

*Respiciō et quae sit mē circum cōpia lūstrō.*

565

*Dēseruēre omnēs dēfessī, et corpora saltū  
ad terram mīsere aut ignibus aegra dedere.*

*Jamque adeō super ūnus eram, cum līmina Vestae  
servantem et tacitam sēcrētā in sēde latentem  
Tyndarida aspiciō; dant clāra incendia lūcem  
errantī passimque oculōs per cūcta ferentī.*

570

*Illa sibi infestōs ēversa ob Pergama Teucrōs  
et poenās Danaum et dēserti conjugis irās  
praemetuēns, Trojae et patriae commūnis Erinys,  
abdiderat sēsē atque ārīs invisa sedēbat.*

575

*Exarsere ignēs animō; subit ira cadentem*

abdō, ere, didī, ditus hide, bury  
adeō indeed, so much, truly  
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
(at)\*  
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
commūnis, e common, mutual, general†  
cōpia, ae f. abundance, plenty, forces  
dēfessus, a, um tired, weary, worn  
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
Erinys, yos f. Fury, Curse  
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy  
exardēscō, ere, arsi, arsus blaze (up)†  
incendium, (i)ī n. blaze, conflagration  
infestus, a, um hostile, threatening

invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious  
lateō, ēre, uī hide, lie hid, lurk\*  
lūstrō (l) survey; traverse; purify\*  
ob on account of, for (acc.)  
passim everywhere, all about\*  
patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
praemetuō, ere fear beforehand†  
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back†\*  
saltus, ūs m. leap, bound, dancing†  
sēcrētus, a, um remote, hidden, secret  
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit\*  
tacitus, a, um silent, still, quiet  
Tyndaris, idis f. daughter of Tyndarus,  
Helen†  
Vesta, ae f. goddess of the hearth

long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, a.

564. *Respiciō*: Aeneas on the roof of the palace had been so fascinated in looking down on the murder of Priam that he had forgotten all else. He now looks around for his followers and finds them gone. *quae cōpia (virōrum)*. *sit*: indir. quest.; App. 349. *mē circum* = *circum mē*: App. 414.

565. *saltū*: abl. of means or manner.

565-566. *dēseruēre, misere, dedere* = *dēseruerunt, miserunt, dederunt*.

566. *aegra (corpora)*: *wearied and wounded (bodies)*.

567-633. Seeing that all is lost, Aeneas turns to go, when he catches sight of Helen, the cause of all the trouble, crouching just inside a temple of Vesta. He prepares to kill her but is restrained by his mother, Venus, who appears and urges him to hurry home to protect his family.

567-588. The best manuscripts of Vergil do not have these lines, and many

scholars consider the passage spurious, as they are inconsistent with VI, 494-530. This inconsistency may be due to the unfinished condition of the poem or to the unaccountable caprice of the poet.

567. *super*: adv. to be taken with *eram*. *ūnus supereram*: *I alone survived*.

569. *Tyndarida*: acc., a Greek form; App. 68. *clāra incendia lūcem dant*: explains why Aeneas could see Helen.

570. (*mihi*) *errantī*.

571-573. *Illa, commūnis Erinys Trojae et patriae (suae), praemetuēns Teucrōs infestōs sibi, etc. Dana(ōr)um*: subj. gen.; App. 284. *dēserti conjugis irās*: Menelaüs's anger.

574. (*in*) *ārīs*. (*Tyndaris*) *invisa* (ab omnibus) *sedēbat*.

575. *ignēs (irae)*. *Exarsere* = *exarsērunt*. (*in meō*) *animō*. *subit (mē) ulcisci et sūmere*: the infinitives are complementary, depending on the idea of wishing implied in *ira*, the angry desire; App. 259, 264.

ulciscī patriam et scelerātās sūmere poenās.

‘Scilicet haec Spartam incolumis patriāsque Mycēnās  
aspiciet, partōque ibit rēgīna triumphō,

conjugiumque domumque patris nātōsque vidēbit

Īliadum turbā et Phrygiīs comitāta ministris?

580

Occiderit ferrō Priamus? Troja arserit ignī?

Dardanium totiēns sūdārit sanguine litus?

Nōn ita. Namque etsi nullum memorābile nōmen

fēmineā in poenā est nec habet victōria laudem,

585

extīnxisse nefās tamen et sūmpsisse merentis

laudābor poenās, animumque explēsse iuvābit

ultrīcis flammae et cinerēs satiāsse meōrum.’

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
(at)\*

cinis, eris *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the  
dead)\*

comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,  
follow

conjugium, (i)ī *n.* marriage; husband†

Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*

etsi although, even if†

explēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (with), sate  
(*gen.*)

extinguō, ere, īnxī, īctus extinguish,  
destroy†

fēmineus, a, um of (over) a woman,  
feminine

Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman

incolumis, e safe, sound, unharmed

ita thus, so

iuvō, āre, iuvī, jūtus help, please\*

laudō (1) praise, commend, laud, ex-  
toll†

laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit\*

memorābilis, e memorable, glorious†

mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*

minister, trī *m.* attendant, servant

Mycēnae, ārum *f.* a city of Greece, home  
of Agamemnon

nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, impious  
wretch\*

occidō, ere, ī, cāsus fall, sink, die†

pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, produce†

patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*

Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*

satiō (1) satisfy, sate, satiate, glut†

scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked, in-  
famous

scilicet doubtless, of course, forsooth†

Sparta, ae *f.* country of Greece, home of  
Helen and Menelaüs†

sūdō (1) sweat, perspire†

sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, exact

tamen however, nevertheless, moreover\*

totiēns so many times

triumphus, ī *m.* triumph, victory†

turba, ae *f.* mob, crowd, throng; tumult

ulciscor, ī, ultus avenge; punish†

ultrix, icis avenging, vengeful†

victōria, ae *f.* victory, conquest, triumph†

576. sūmere: *exact, inflict. scelerātās poenās = sceleris poenās: punishment of (for) her crime.*

577. Scilicet: *forsooth; ironical; App. 430.*

578. partō triumphō: *abl. abs.; App. 343.*

579. conjugium = *conjugem.*

580. turbā, ministris: *ablatives of accompaniment with the participle comitāta, which here has a passive meaning; App. 321.*

581-582. Occiderit, arserit, sūdā(ve)-rit: *fut. perfects; i.e., shall she return in triumph home when all Troy has perished?*

583. Nōn ita (erit): *it shall not be! See App. 351, 3, a.*

584. fēmineā in poenā: *the adj. is here equivalent to the obj. gen.; App. 284; punishment (exactd) of a woman. (fēminea) victōria: victory over a woman.*

585-586. extīnxisse nefās laudābor: *I shall be praised for having destroyed that abomination; i.e., Helen. merentis poenās = meritās poenās: deserved punishment.*

586. (mē) iuvābit: *used impersonally, with explē(vi)sse et satiā(vi)sse as its subject; App. 258.*

587. flammae: *gen. with the special verb, explē(vi)sse, to have sated my soul with the vengeful flame; App. 287. meōrum: substantively, of my people.*

590 *Tālia jactābam et furiātā mente ferēbar,*  
*cum mihi sē, nōn ante oculis tam clāra, videndam*  
*obtulit et pūrā per noctem in lūce refulsit*  
*alma parēns, cōfessa deam quālisque vidērī*  
*caelicolis et quanta solet, dextrāque prehensum*  
*continuit roseōque haec insuper addidit ōre:*  
*‘Nāte, quis indomitās tantus dolor excitat irās?*  
 595 *Quid furis aut quōnam nostrī tibi cūra recessit?*  
*Nōn prius aspicīēs ubi fessum aetāte parentem*  
*liqueris Anchīsēn, superet conjūnxne Creūsa*  
*Ascaniusque puer? Quōs omnīs undique Grajae*  
*circum errant aciēs et, nī mea cūra resistat,*  
 600 *jam flammae tulerint inimicus et hauserit ēnsis.*

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle line, army\*  
 addō, ere, didī, dītus add\*  
 aetās, ātis *f.* age, (time of) life, time  
 almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)  
 Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas\*  
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
 (at)\*  
 caelicola, ae *m. (f.)* divinity, deity†  
 circum around, about†  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 cōfiteor, ērī, fessus confess, reveal†  
 contineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold together,  
 restrain, check†  
 Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the  
 sack of Troy  
 dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, pas-  
 sion\*  
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife\*  
 excitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†  
 furiō (1) madden, frenzy, infuriate  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, drink;  
 destroy

indomitus, a, um uncontrolled, ungovern-  
 able  
 inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
 insuper in addition, above  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder, blurt out\*  
 linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, forsake\*  
 nisi, nī unless, if not\*  
 offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present  
 pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp  
 prius sooner, before, first  
 pūrus, a, um pure, bright, clean, clear†  
 quālis, e (such) as, of what sort\*  
 quantus, a, um as great as, how great\*  
 quōnam whither, where on earth†  
 recedō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, retire,  
 withdraw  
 refulgeō, ēre, lsī, lsus shine, gleam  
 resistō, ere, stitī resist, oppose  
 roseus, a, um rosy, red, pink  
 soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed  
 superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive\*  
 tam so (much), such\*  
 undique everywhere, from all sides\*

588. *Tālia* (dicta).

589-591. *cum* (mea) *alma parēns nōn ante tam clāra* (meis) *oculis obtulit sē mihi videndam. videndam:* the gerundive expressing purpose, *to be seen*; App. 268. *alma parēns Aenēae = Venus. cōfessa* (sē esse) *deam.*

591-593. *caelicolis:* dat. with *vidērī. quālis, quanta:* the gods surpassed human beings in form and stature. *dextrā mē prehensum continuit:* *grasped me by my right hand and held me back*; Aeneas had already raised his sword to strike Helen.

593-594. *haec* (dicta). *Nāte:* voc.

(tuās) *irās. quis:* the regular form of the interrog. adj. is *qui*; App. 111, *a.*

595. *nostrī:* *for me* (and mine); obj. gen.; App. 284, 247, *a.* *Venus* thus identifies herself with the family of Aeneas. *tibi:* ethical dat. or dat. of reference; App. 300, 301.

596-597. *Nōn = nōnne. ubi:* *in what condition. ubi . . . liqueris, conjūnxne superet:* indir. questions; App. 349.

598. *Quōs omnīs circum = circum quōs omnīs;* App. 414.

599-600. *nī resistat, (eōs) tulerint, (eōs) hauserit:* condit. and conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382, *c.*



*Nōn tibi Tyndaridis faciēs invīsa Lacaenae  
culpātusve Paris, divum inclēmentia, divum,  
hās ēvertit opēs sternitque ā culmine Trojam.  
Aspice (namque omnem, quae nunc obducta tuenti  
mortālīs hebetat visūs tibi et ūmida circum  
cāligat, nūbem ēripiam; tū nē qua parentis  
jussa timē neu praeceptīs pārēre recūsā):  
hīc, ubi disjectās mōlēs āvulsaque saxīs  
saxa vidēs, mixtōque undantem pulvere fūmum,  
Neptūnus mūrōs magnōque ēmōta tridentī  
fundāmenta quatit tōtamque ā sēdibus urbem*

605

610

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
(at)\*  
āvellō, ere, (vuls)i, vulsus tear from  
cāligō, āre, āvī be dark, darken†  
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof\*  
culpō (1) blame, censure, reprove†  
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw apart,  
scatter  
ēmōvō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove, up-  
heave  
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy  
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, appearance, form\*  
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fog, fume†  
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base  
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken†  
inclēmentia, ae *f.* cruelty, harshness†  
invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious  
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest  
Lacaenus, a, um Laconian, of Laconia  
(Sparta), a district of southern Greece,  
home of Helen†  
miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, bur-  
den\*  
mortālīs, e mortal, human, earthly\*

mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the  
sea\*  
nēve, neu neither, nor, or not  
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist\*  
obducō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw over†  
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth\*  
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)  
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with  
Helen and thus caused the Trojan war  
praeceptum, ī *n.* advice, instruction  
pulvis, eris *m.* dust  
quatō, ere, quassus shake, shatter†  
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object  
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew,  
spread\*  
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of  
Neptune  
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect\*  
Tyndāris, idis *f.* daughter of Tyndarus,  
Helen  
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy  
undō (1) swell, roll, wave†  
visus, ūs *m.* sight, view, aspect, vision

601. tibi: ethical dat. or dat. of refer-  
ence. nōn Tyndaridis faciēs (hās opēs  
ēvertit).

602. div(ōr)um, div(ōr)um: rhetorical  
repetition; App. 413; emphasizing that  
it is the vengeance of the gods, not Helen's  
beauty, which is responsible for the de-  
struction of Troy. Juno and Minerva  
were vengeful toward Troy because of the  
adverse Judgment of Paris, while Nep-  
tune was angry at being cheated by  
Laomedon; see note on l. 610.

604. Aspice: imp.

604-606. namque ēripiam omnem nū-  
bem, quae nunc obducta hebetat mortālīs  
visūs tibi tuenti, et (ēripiam omnem  
nūbem quae) ūmida circum (tē). tibi  
is dat. of reference with hebetat visūs;  
App. 301. (quae) ūmida circum (tē)

cāligat: which spreads a dark veil of mist  
around (you).

606. parentis: use of the noun, in-  
stead of the personal pronoun, mei, for  
rhetorical effect.

606-607. tū: emphatic; App. 247. nē  
timē, neu recūsā: the pres. imp. with  
nē is chiefly poetical; App. 256, a. prae-  
ceptis: dat. with special verb; App.  
297.

609. mixtō pulvere: abl. abs.

610. Neptūnus: Neptune and Apollo  
had built the walls of Troy for Laomedon,  
father of Priam. When the work was  
finished, Laomedon not only refused to  
pay the gods the price agreed upon,  
but expelled them from his kingdom.  
Neptune is now getting his revenge by  
destroying the walls he had built.

ēruit. *Hīc Jūnō Scaeās saevisissima portās  
prīma tenet sociumque furēns ā nāvibus agmen  
ferrō accīncta vocat.*

- 615 *Jam summās arcēs Tritōnia, respice, Pallas  
insēdit limbō effulgēns et Gorgone saevā.  
Ipse pater Danaīs animōs vīrisque secundās  
sufficit, ipse deōs in Dardana suscitāt arma.  
Ēripe, nāte, fugam finemque impōne labōrī.*
- 620 *Nūsquam aberō et tūtum patriō tē līmine sistam.\*  
Dixerat et spissis noctis sē condidit umbrīs.  
Appārent dirae faciēs inimicaque Trojae  
nūmina magna deum.*

- Tum vērō omne mihī vīsum cōnsidere in ignīs  
Īlium et ex īmō vertī Neptūnia Troja;  
ac velutī summīs antīquam in montibus ornum  
cum ferrō accīsam crēbrisque bipennibus īstant  
ēruere agricolae certātīm; illa ūsque minātūr*

absum, esse, āfui be absent, be distant  
accidō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew†  
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird, equip  
agricola, ae m. farmer, rustic†  
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear  
bipennis, is f. double ax  
certātīm in rivalry, zealously†  
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, hide\*  
cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle, sink\*  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant\*  
Dardanus, a, um Dardanian, Trojan†  
dirus, a, um dire, fearful, dreadful\*  
effulgeō, ēre, lsi flash, glitter, gleam†  
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, tear up  
faciēs, ēī f. face, form, appearance\*  
Gorgō, onis f. Gorgon, a monster with  
serpent locks and the power of turning  
beholders into stone; the head of one of  
them, Medusa, was fixed on the Aegis,  
the serpent-fringed shield of Minerva†  
Īlium, (i) ī n. Ilium, Troy  
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on)  
(dat.)\*  
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
insidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit in (on), occupy  
īnstō, āre, stitī press, urge (on)

limbus, ī m. border, hem, fringe†  
minor, āri, ātus threaten, menace; tower  
Neptūnius, a, um of Neptune, god of the  
sea†  
nūsquam nowhere, never  
ornus, ī f. ash (tree)†  
Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wis-  
dom and the arts  
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
respi-ciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back (at)\*  
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of chief  
gate at Troy†  
secundus, a, um favorable, prosperous,  
second\*  
sistō, ere, steti, status stand, set(tle), stop  
socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly  
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded†  
sufficiō, ere, fēci, fectus supply, suffuse  
suscitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†  
Tritōnius, a, um Tritonian  
tūtus, a, um safe, secure, protected\*  
ūsque continuously, constantly†  
velut(i) as, just as\*  
vērō truly, indeed, but  
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change\*

612-613. Jūnō prīma (as leader, fore-  
most) furēns.

613. socium agmen (Danaōrum).

615. respice: imp.

617. Ipse pater (Juppiter).

618. in: against.

619. Ēripe: imp. (tuam) fugam, (tuō)  
labōrī.

620. (in) līmine patriō: at your father's  
threshold, on your father's doorstep.

622. dirae faciēs (deōrum): made  
visible to Aeneas by his mother's magic  
power, ll. 604-606.

623. de(ōr)um.

624. visum (est) cōnsidere in ignis:  
seemed to sink into flames.

625. Neptūnia Troja: because, ac-  
cording to the myth, Neptune had built  
the walls of Troy. See the note on l. 610.

626-628. ac velutī cum agricolae in

*et tremefacta comam concussō vertice nūtat,*  
*vulneribus dōnec paulātim ēvicta suprēmum* 630  
*congemuit trāxitque jugīs āvulsa ruīnam.*  
*Dēscendō ac dūcente deō flammam inter et hostīs*  
*expediōr: dant tēla locum flammaeque recēdunt.*

*Atque ubi jam patriae perventum ad līmina sēdis*  
*antiquāsque domōs, genitor, quem tollere in altōs* 635  
*optābam prīmum montīs prīmumque petēbam,*  
*abnegat excisā vītā prōdūcere Trojā*  
*exsiliumque patī. 'Vōs Ō, quibus integer aevi*  
*sanguis,' ait, 'solidaeque suō stant rōbore vīrēs,*  
*vōs agitāte fugam.* 640

*Mē sī caelicolae voluissent dūcere vītā,*  
*hās mihi servāssent sēdēs. Satis ūna superque*

*abnegō* (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†  
*aevum*, i n. age, life, time, eternity  
*agitō* (1) pursue, drive, buffet, hasten  
*āvellō*, ere, (vuls)ī, vultus tear from  
*caelicola*, ae m. (f.) divinity, deity  
*coma*, ae f. hair, locks, tresses, foliage\*  
*concutiō*, ere, cussi, cassus shake†  
*congemō*, ere, uī groan, moan, sigh†  
*dēscendō*, ere, ī, ēasus descend†  
*dōnec* until, while, as long as  
*ēvincō*, ere, vici, victus overcome  
*excidō*, ere, ī, sus cut off, destroy  
*expediō*, ire, ivi (ii), itus extricate, bring  
 out, prepare  
*exsilium*, (i) i n. exile, place of exile†  
*hostis*, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*

*integer*, gra, grum whole, sound†  
*jugum*, i n. yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
*nūtō* (1) nod, totter, sway†  
*optō* (1) wish, desire, choose, select\*  
*patori*, ī, passus suffer, endure; permit\*  
*paulātī* n gradually, little by little  
*pervenīō*, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive  
*prōdūcō*, ere, dūxī, ductus prolong†  
*recēdō*, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw  
*rōbur*, oris n. oak, strength\*  
*ruīna*, ae f. ruin, downfall, collapse  
*sat(is)* enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
*solidus*, a, um solid, firm, staunch†  
*tremefactus*, a, um trembling, quivering  
*vertex*, icis m. summit, top, head\*  
*vulnus*, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*

*summīs montibus certātim antiquam*  
*ornum ēruere instant: a simile; App.*  
 441. *illa* (ornus) *minātur: ut threatens*  
 (to fall).

629. *comam*: acc. of respect with  
*tremefacta*; App. 311. *vertice*: abl. of  
 means; *the tree nods (with) its head.*

630. *suprēmum*: substantively; *has*  
*groaned its last.*

631. *trāxit ruīnam*: falls with a crash,  
 dragging down other objects with it. (ā)  
*jugis* (montis) *āvulsa.*

632. *Dēscendō* (ex arce). *dūcente deō*  
 (Venere): abl. abs.; App. 343. *deō*:  
 feminine here, referring to Venus. *inter*  
*flammam et hostis.*

633. *expediōr*: middle = *mē expediō*;  
 App. 309. *dant* (mihi) *locum: give way*  
*before me.*

634-704. Anchises at first refuses to  
 survive the destruction of the city, but

is finally induced by a double portent of  
 the gods to flee with Aeneas.

634. *perventum* (est mihi) = *pervēnī*:  
 with the emphasis upon the action rather  
 than the actor.

635. *tollere*: Anchises had been lamed  
 by lightning and could not walk; see note  
 on ll. 648-649.

635-636. *altōs montīs.*

636. *prīmum*, *prīmum*: rhetorical repe-  
 titio; App. 413.

637. *excisā Trojā*: abl. abs.

638. *Vōs*: emphatically contrasted  
 with *mē* in l. 641; App. 247. *quibus*: dat.  
 of possession; App. 299. *aevi*: gen. with  
*integer*; App. 287.

639. *sanguis* (est). *rōbore*: abl. of  
 means.

640. *vōs*: emphatic; App. 247, 413.

641-642. *sī voluissent, servā(vi)ssent*:  
 condit. contrary to fact; App. 382. *satis*

*vīdimus excidia et captae superāvimus urbī.*

*Sic Ō sic positum adfātī discēdite corpus.*

645

*Ipse manū mortem inveniam; miserēbitur hostis  
exuviāsque petet. Facilis jactūra sepulcrī.*

*Jam pridem invīsus dīvīs et inūtilis annōs  
dēmoror, ex quō mē dīvum pater atque hominum rēx  
fulminis adflāvit ventis et contigit ignī.'*

650

*Tālia perstābat memorāns fixusque manēbat.*

*Nōs contrā effūsī lacrimīs conjūnxque Creūsa*

*Ascaniusque omnisque domus, nē vertere sēcum*

adflo (1) breathe upon, blow upon (*dat.*)

edfor, fārī, fātus address, accost\*

annus, ī *m.* year, season\*

Ascanius, (i) ī *m.* son of Aeneas\*

contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach\*

contrā on the other side\*

Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind  
at the sack of Troy

dēmoror, āri, ātus delay, hinder, pro-  
long†

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, with-  
draw

effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out\*

excidium, (i) ī *n.* destruction, downfall

exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, plunder, booty

facilis, e easy, endurable, favorable

figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, imprint\*

fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning\*

homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, mortal, human\*

hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*

inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless

inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come upon†

invīsus, a, um hateful, hated, odious

jactūra, ae *f.* throwing away, loss†

memorō (1) recount, (re)call, say\*

misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate  
(*gen.*)\*

perstō, āre, stitī, status persist, continue†

pridem long since, long ago, for some time

sepulcrum, ī *n.* tomb, burial

superō (1) surmount, survive (*dat.*)\*

vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change\*

*ūna superque: enough and more (than enough) have I seen one destruction and have survived one capture of the city.* Anchises refers to a previous capture of Troy by Hercules, who had been promised the hand of the Princess Hesione in marriage. When her father, King Laomedon, broke the promise, Hercules captured and sacked the city.

643. *urbī: dat. with compound (superāvimus = superfuimus); App. 298.*

644. *adfātī (meum) corpus:* refers to the custom of calling "valē" thrice to the dead before the body was buried or burned. *positum: laid out, pōnere* being the technical expression for laying out a corpse. Anchises thus bids them to treat him as already dead. Probably he stretches himself out on a couch as though dead to add vividness to his appeal.

645. *manū mortem inveniam:* alliteration; App 411. *manū:* I shall die fighting (*manū*), i.e., by provoking the enemy to kill me; or *manū* may hint at suicide. Cf. l. 434, *ut caderem meruisse manū*. *miserēbitur hostis:* or an enemy through pity (said ironically) will be willing to kill me.

646. *Facilis (est) jactūra sepulcrī:* said with the greatest bitterness and the resignation of despair, since the loss of ceremonial burial was counted one of the most grievous of calamities; see notes on I, 95, 353.

647-648. *Jam pridem dēmoror annōs:* too long have I delayed the years (which wish to bear me to death); App. 351, l. b. *ex (eō tempore) quō:* since the time when. *dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx = Jupiter.* Anchises had foolishly boasted of the love of Venus and had been lamed by a stroke of lightning for his impiety.

649. *adflāvit (mihi). ventis, ignī:* ablatives of means; some ancient philosophers thought that lightning was driven by swift gusts of wind.

650. *Tālia (dicta).*

651. *Nōs:* emphatic contrast; App. 247. *effūsī (sumus) lacrimīs:* we were dissolved in tears. *lacrimīs* is abl. of manner or means.

651-653. *-que . . . -que . . . -que: both . . . and . . . and.*

652-653. *nē . . . vellet:* subst. clause developed from the vol., dependent on the idea of entreaty implied in *effūsī*



*cūncta pater fātōque urgenti incumbere vellet.*  
*Abnegat inceptōque et sēdibus haeret in isdem.*  
*Rūrsus in arma feror mortemque miserrimus optō.* 655  
*Nam quod cōnsilium aut quae jam fortūna dabātur?*  
*‘Mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō*  
*spērāstī tantumque nefās patriō excidit ore?*  
*Sī nihil ex tantā superīs placet urbe relinqui,*  
*et sedet hoc animō peritūraeque addere Trojae* 660  
*tēque tuōsque juvat: patet istī jānuā lētō,*  
*jamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,*  
*nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obruncat ad ārās.*  
*Hoc erat, alma parēns, quod mē per tēla, per ignīs*  
*ēripis, ut mediūs hostem in penetrālibus utque* 665  
*Ascanium patremque meum juxtāque Creūsam*

abnegō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)  
 addō, ere, didī, ditus add\*  
 almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing  
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. Iulus, son of Aeneas\*  
 cōnsilium, (i)ī n. plan, advice; council  
 Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind  
 at the sack of Troy  
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus bear forth,  
 lift\*  
 excidō, ere, i fall (from), perish  
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling  
 (to)\*  
 hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 inceptum, i n. beginning, plan, attempt  
 incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lean on  
 (dat.)  
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
 jānuā, ae f. door, doorway, entrance

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please\*  
 juxtā next, near(by), at the same time\*  
 lētum, i n. death, destruction, ruin\*  
 nefās n. indecl. crime, impiety, sin\*  
 nihil, nil nothing, not at all  
 obruncō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher,  
 kill†  
 optō (1) wish, desire, choose, select\*  
 pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend  
 penetrālia, ium n. sanctuary, chamber  
 pereō, ire, ī (ivī), itus perish, die  
 placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (dat.)  
 Pyrrhus, i m. Neoptolemus, son of  
 Achilles  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, backward\*  
 sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit, be fixed\*  
 spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose\*  
 urgeō, ēre, ursī press, urge, incite

(sumus). sēcum = cum sē; App. 321, a.  
 vertere sēcum cūncta: because the rest  
 of the family would remain with him, un-  
 less Anchises were willing to go. fātō:  
 dat. with compound; App. 298. incum-  
 bere: to lean on (add his weight to) our  
 overwhelming fate.

654. (in eōdem) inceptō et sēdibus  
 haeret in isdem: he remains fixed in his  
 purpose and his place. One word thus  
 governing two or more others in a  
 different sense is an example of what is  
 called *zeugma*. Compare Dickens, who  
 says of a lady that she departed "in a  
 flood of tears and a sedan chair," and  
 see App. 447.

657-658. spērā(vi)stine, genitor, mē  
 posse efferre pedem. tē relictō: abl. abs.

659. superis: dat. with special verb;  
 App. 297. nihil: subj. of relinqui.

660. hoc = hocc: subject of sedet, and  
 explained by the following clause; App.  
 107, 3, c. (tuō) animō: abl. of place  
 where.

661. tēque tuōsque: objects of addere.  
 et sī (tē) juvat.

662. jam: in a moment, immediately.

663. patris, patrem: with varying  
 quantity of the first syllable, since it is  
 composed of a short vowel followed by a  
 mute and a liquid, making the syllable  
 common, i.e., either long or short, ac-  
 cording to whether it is read pa-tris or  
 pat-ris, pa-trem or pat-rem; App. 11, 17,  
 18. (quī obruncat) nātum, (quī) patrem  
 obruncat: the pres. ind., "Pyrrhus is  
 accustomed to slaughter"; App. 351, 1.

664-665. Hoc: pronounce hocc, mak-  
 ing a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. Hoc  
 erat quod mē ēripis: was it for this that

- alterum in alterius mactātōs sanguine cernam?  
*Arma, virī, ferte arma; vocat lūx ultima victōs.*  
 Reddite mē Danaīs; sinite īnstaūrātā revīsam  
 670 proelia. Numquam omnēs hodiē moriēmur inultī.  
*Hinc ferrō accingor rūrsus clipeōque sinistram*  
*īnserābam aptāns mēque extrā tēcta ferēbam.*  
 Ecce autem complexa pedēs in limine conjūnx  
 haerebat, parvumque patrī tendēbat Iūlum:  
 675 'Sī peritūrus abīs, et nōs rape in omnia tēcum;  
 sīn aliquam expertus sūmptīs spem pōnis in armīs,  
*hanc primum tūtāre domum. Cui parvus Iūlus,*  
*cui pater et conjūnx quondam tua dicta relinquitur?'*  
*Tālia vōciferāns gemitū tēctum omne replēbat,*  
 680 *cum sūbitum dictūque oritur mirābile mōnstrum.*  
*Namque manūs inter maestōrumque ōra parentum*  
*ecce levis summō dē vertice vīsus Iūli*

abeō, ire, ii (ivi), itus depart\*  
 accingō, ere, cīaxī, cinctus gird, equip  
 aliquis, qua, quid some, any\*  
 alter, era, erum the other (of two),  
 one (of two)\*  
 aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish  
 autem however, but, moreover\*  
 clipeus, ī m. shield, buckler\*  
 complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 experior, irī, pertus try, test  
 extrā outside, beyond (acc.)†  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament\*  
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling (to)\*  
 hodiē today, this day, now†  
 insertō (1) insert, thrust into†  
 instaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat  
 inultus, a, um unavenged†  
 Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
 levis, e light, slight, flickering  
 mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor  
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
 mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous

mōnstrum, ī n. omen, prodigy, monster\*  
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 numquam never, at no time, not†  
 orior, irī, ortus (a)rise, spring up  
 parvus, a, um small, little\*  
 pereō, ire, ii (ivi), itus perish, die  
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fray, combat  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, drag\*  
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, give  
 back\*  
 repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill†  
 revisō, ere see again, revisit  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
 sīn but if  
 sinistra, ae f. left hand  
 sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow\*  
 spēs, spei f. hope, expectation\*  
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
 sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take (up)  
 tūtōr, āri, ātus protect, guard†  
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest\*  
 vertex, icis m. summit, head, peak\*  
 vōciferor, āri, ātus scream, shout†

you save(d) me? alma parēns = Venus.  
 ut, ut: rhetorical repetition, indicating  
 excitement; App. 413.

667. alterum in alterius mactātōs:  
 slaughtered, one in the blood of the other.  
 ut . . . cernam: clause of purpose in appo-  
 sition with hoc; App. 359.

668. lūx = diēs or lūx (vitae).

669. īnstaūrātā = instaurem et. (ut) re-  
 visam: a subst. vol. clause used as obj.  
 of sinite; App. 360.

671. ferrō accingor: middle; I gird  
 (myself) with my sword; App. 309.

674. patrī = mihi: but thus used here  
 to emphasize the paternal relation.

675. et: also. tēcum = cum tē: App.  
 321, a.

677. tūtāre: imp. Iūlus (relinquitur).

678. (tuus) pater (relinquitur). dicta  
 (= vocāta): in agreement with ego  
 understood subj. of relinquitur.

679. Tālia (dicta).

680. dictū: supine; abl. of respect  
 with mirābile; App. 271, 325.

681. inter manūs et ōra.

682-684. levis apex (flammae) visus

*fundere lūmen apex, tāctūque innoxia mollis  
lambere flamma comās et circum tempora pascī.  
Nōs pavidī trepidāre metū crīnemque flagrantem*

686

*excutere et sānctōs restinguere fontibus ignīs.  
At pater Anchīsēs oculōs ad sīdera laetus*

*extulit et caelō palmās cum vōce tetendit:  
'Juppiter omnipotēns, precibus sī flecteris ūllīs,  
aspice nōs, hoc tantum, et sī pietāte merēmur,*

690

*dā deinde augurium, pater, atque haec ōmina firmā.'*  
*Vix ea fātus erat senior, subitōque fragōre  
intonuit laevum, et dē caelō lāpsa per umbrās  
stēlla facem dūcēns multā cum lūce cucurrit.*

*Illam summa super lābentem culmina tēctī  
cernimus Idaeā clāram sē condere silvā*

695

**apex**, **apicis** *m.* point, spike, tongue†  
**a(d)spiciō**, **ere**, **spexi**, **spectus** behold, look  
(at)\*

**augurium**, (*i*) *n.* omen, augury  
**clārus**, **a**, **um** clear, bright, illustrious\*  
**coma**, **ae f.** hair, locks, tresses\*  
**condō**, **ere**, **didī**, **ditus** establish; hide\*  
**crīnis**, *is m.* hair, locks, tresses\*  
**culmen**, *inis n.* summit, top, peak, roof\*  
**currō**, **ere**, **cucurri**, **cursus** run, speed  
deinde then, thereupon, next\*  
**efferō**, **ferre**, **extuli**, **ēlātus** lift, carry off\*  
**excutiō**, **ere**, **cussī**, **cussus** shake off,  
shake out\*

**fax**, **facis f.** torch, blaze, firebrand\*  
**firmō** (1) confirm, strengthen, ratify†  
**flagrō** (1) blaze, burn, glow  
**flectō**, **ere**, **flexi**, **flexus** bend, turn  
**fōns**, **fontis m.** fountain, water  
**fragor**, **ōris m.** crash, thunder, roar  
**Idaeus**, **a**, **um** of Ida, a high mountain  
near Troy†

**innoxius**, **a**, **um** harmless, innocent†

**intonō**, **āre**, **uī** thunder, roar  
**laevus**, **a**, **um** left (hand), on the left\*  
**lambō**, **ere** lick, lap  
**mereor**, **ērī**, **itus** deserve, merit, earn  
**metus**, **ūs m.** fear, fright, anxiety\*  
**mollis**, **e** soft, gentle, delicate, mild  
**ōmen**, **inis n. omen, prodigy, portent  
**omnipotēns**, **entis** almighty, omnipotent  
**palma**, **ae f.** palm, hand\*  
**pascor**, **i**, **pāstus** feed (on), graze  
**pavidus**, **a**, **um** frightened, timid  
**pietās**, **ātis f.** piety, devotion, loyalty,  
sense of duty, righteousness, nobility\*  
**prex**, **precis f.** prayer, entreaty†\*  
**restinguō**, **ere**, **inxi**, **inctus** extinguish†  
**sānctus**, **a**, **um** holy, sacred, revered\*  
**senior**, **ōris m. old (aged) man, sire  
**stēlla**, **ae f. star, meteor†  
**subitus**, **a**, **um** sudden, unexpected  
**tāctus**, **ūs m. touch†  
**tantum** only (so much)  
**tempus**, **ōris n. temple, brow  
**trepidō** (1) tremble, hurry excitedly†**********

(est) **fundere lūmen**, **flammaque**, **innoxia**  
**tāctū**, (*visa est*) **lambere mollis comās**.  
**fundere lūmen apex**: supposed by those  
versed in omens to presage future royal  
power, the subject of such a divine demon-  
stration becoming the light of his people.  
According to the tradition, Servius Tullius,  
one of the legendary kings of early Rome,  
had a similar experience as a child. **tāctū**:  
abl. of respect, "doing no harm by touch-  
ing"; App. 325.

685-686. **Nōs**: emphatic; App. 247.  
**trepidāre**, **excutere**, **restinguere**: histor-  
ical infinitives, with a conative mean-  
ing for the last two, *we tried to*; App.  
267; 351, 1, c.

686. **sānctōs**: because of their divine  
origin. **fontibus** = *aquīs*: *water*; me-  
tonymy; App. 433, 243.

688. **caelō** = *ad caelum*: dat. of direc-  
tion; App. 306.

690. **hoc tantum** (*quaerō*): *only so  
much (do I ask)*.

690-691. **a(d)spice**, **dā**, **firmā**: impera-  
tives. The Romans often asked for a  
second omen to confirm the first.

692. **senior**: as in ll. 509, 544.

693. **intonuit laevum**: *it thundered on  
the left*, which was considered a good omen.  
**laevum**: best taken as an adverbial acc.;  
App. 93, 94, 310.

694. **stēlla**: *a meteor*. **facem dūcēns**:

- signantemque viās; tum longō limite sulcus  
 dat lūcem et lātē circum loca sulphure fūmant.  
 Hic vērō victus genitor sē tollit ad aurās  
 700 adfāturque deōs et sānctum sīdus adōrat.  
 'Jam iam nūlla mora est; sequor et quā dūcitis adsum,  
 dī patriī; servāte domum, servāte nepōtem.  
 Vestrum hoc augurium, vestrōque in nūmine Troja est.  
 Cēdō equidem nec, nāte, tībī comes ire recūsō.'  
 705 Dixerat ille, et jam per moenia clārior ignis  
 audītur, propiusque aestūs incendia volvunt.  
 'Ergō age, cāre pater, cervīci impōnere nostrae;  
 ipse subibō umeris nec mē labor iste gravābit;  
 quō rēs cumque cadent, ūnum et commūne perīclum,  
 710 ūna salūs ambōbus erit. Mihi parvus Iūlus  
 sit comes, et longē servet vestigia conjūnx.

adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost\*  
 adōrō (1) entreat, worship, honor  
 aestus, ūs *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat  
 ambō, ae, ō both  
 augurium, (i) *i n.* omen, augury  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*  
 cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, cease; go†\*  
 cervix, icis *f.* neck  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 commūnis, e common, mutual, general  
 cumque *see* quō... cumque†  
 equidem indeed, truly\*  
 ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
 fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume†  
 gravō (1) burden, load, oppress†  
 impōnō, ere, posui, positus place (on) (*dat.*)\*  
 incendium, (i) *i n.* flame, conflagration  
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
 Iūlus, i *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

lātē widely, far and wide  
 limes, itis *m.* path, boundary, trail†  
 longē far (away), (from) afar\*  
 mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
 nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
 parvus, a, um small, little\*  
 peric(u)lum, i *n.* danger, peril, risk  
 prope near; *compar.* propius nearer\*  
 quā where(by), in any (some) way  
 quō... cumque (quōcumque) whereso-  
 ever, whithersoever†  
 recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object  
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, deliverance, health  
 sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered\*  
 signō (1) mark (out), indicate  
 sulcus, i *m.* furrow, trench, track  
 sulphur, uris *n.* sulphur, brimstone†  
 vērō truly, indeed, but  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
 vestigium, (i) *i n.* step, track, trace†\*

making a trail of light by "drawing a torch" across the sky.

697. (nostrās) viās: indicating that they should flee to the forests of Mt. Ida for protection. longō limite: long drawn; abl. of quality; App. 330.

698. circum: adv.

699. sē tollit ad aurās: arises (from his couch).

702. domum: family, household; metonymy; App. 433. (meum) nepōtem = Ascanium.

703. Vestrum (est), vestrō: rhetorical repetition; App. 413. Troja: Anchises considered that all that remained of Troy was this one family.

705-745. Aeneas places his aged father, Anchises, on his shoulders, and

thus bearing him and the images of the gods, he flees, accompanied by his young son, Ascanius, and his wife, Creūsa, but loses Creūsa on the way.

706. aestūs: acc. plural.

707. impōnere: imp. middle, place yourself; App. 309. cervīci: on my shoulders; dat. with compound; App. 298.

708. (tē) subibō. umeris: abl. of means.

709. quō... cumque: separated by tmesis; App. 445. peric(u)lum (erit).

710. (nōbis) ambōbus. Mihi: dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301.

711. sit, servet: volitive subjunctives; App. 254. (mea) vestigia: i.e., let Creūsa follow.





*Art Extension Society, New York*

### THE FALL OF TROY

*Baroccio*

Aeneas is carrying his father, Anchises. Little Iulus is at the left and Creusa, his wife, is following him.



*Metropolitan Museum of Art*

ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS

*Hector Le Roux*

*Vôs, famulî, quae dicam animîs advertite vestrîs.*

*Est urbe ēgressis tumulus templumque vetustum*

*dēsertae Cereris, juxtāque antiq̄ua cupressus*

*relligiōne patrum multōs servāta per annōs.*

715

*Hanc ex diversō sēdem veniēmus in ūnam.*

*Tū, genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque penātis;*

*mē bellō ē tantō digressum et caede recentī*

*attrectāre nefās, dōnec mē flūmine vivō*

*abluerō.'*

720

*Haec fātus lātōs umerōs subjectaque colla*

*veste super fulvique insternor pelle leōnis,*

*succēdōque onerī; dextrae sē parvus Iūlus*

*implicuit sequiturque patrem nōn passibus aequis;*

*pōne subit conjūnx. Ferimur per opāca locōrum,*

725

abluō, ere, ī, ūtus wash, purify†  
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward, re-  
gard†

aequus, a, um equal, even, just

annus, ī m. year, season\*

attrectō (1) handle, touch†

caedēs, is f. slaughter, blood(shed), mur-  
der

Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain

collum, ī n. neck\*

cupressus, ī f. cypress†

dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*

digredior, ī, gressus (de)part, go away†

diversus, a, um different, various\*

dōnec until, as long as, while

ēgredior, ī, gressus go forth, depart

famulus, ī m. servant, attendant

flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood\*

fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond

implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) enfold,  
wind, twine, cling (dat.)

insternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay on, cover,  
spread, strew†

Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

juxtā next, near (by), close, nigh\*

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*

leō, ōnis m. lion†

nefās n. indecl. guilt, impiety, wrong\*

onus, eris n. burden, load, weight

opācus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy†

parvus, a, um small, little\*

passus, ūs m. step, pace, gait, stride†

pellis, is f. hide, skin, pelt†

penātēs, ium m. household gods\*

pōne behind, from behind

recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late

re(1)ligiō, ōnis f. religion, sanctity

subjiō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under

succēdō, ere, cessi, cessus go under,  
approach (dat.)

templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary\*

tumulus, ī m. mound, hill†\*

vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*

vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

vetustus, a, um old, ancient, former†

vivus, a, um living, alive; running

712. (ea) quae dicam: *what I shall say*; dicam is fut. indic.

713-714. (ex) urbe. (illis) ēgressis: dat. of reference; App. 301. templum dēsertae Cereris: hypallage for dēsertum templum Cereris; App. 426. cupressus (est).

715. re(1)ligiōne: abl. of cause; App. 332; an example of tree worship, one of the more primitive forms of religion.

716. in hanc ūnam sēdem. ex diversō: *from different (directions)*; they were not to go together, because so large a group would be sure to attract the attention of the Greeks.

717. Tū: emphatically contrasted with mē; App. 247.

718-719. nefās (est) mē, digressum ē tantō bellō et caede recentī, attrectāre (sacra patriōsque penātis). flūmine vivō: running water was supposed to be especially pure and was much used in religious ceremonies.

721. umerōs, colla: objects of insternor, used as a middle; *I cover my shoulders and neck*; App. 309.

722. veste, pelle: ablatives of means. super: adv.

723. onerī: dat. with compound; App.

298. dextrae: dat. with compound.

725. opāca locōrum = opāca loca.

- et mē, quem dūdum nōn ūlla injecta movēbant  
tēla neque adversō glomerātī ex agmine Graji,  
nunc omnēs terrent aerae, sonus excitat omnis  
suspēnsū et pariter comitūque onerique timentem.*  
730 *Jamque propinquābam portis omnemque vidēbar  
ēvāsisse viām, subitō cum crēber ad auris  
vīsus adesse pedum sonitus, genitorque per umbram  
prōspiciēns 'nāte' exclāmat 'fuge, nāte; propinquant.  
Ardentīs clipeōs atque aera micantia cernō.'*  
735 *Hīc mihi nescio quod trepidō male nūmen amicum  
cōnfūsam ēripuit mentem. Namque āvia cursū  
dum sequor et nōtā excēdō regiōne viārum,  
heu miserō conjūnx fātōne ērepta Creūsa  
substitit, errāvitne viā seu lassa resēdit,  
740 incertum; nec post oculis est reddita nostrīs.  
Nec prius āmissam respexī animumve reflexī*

adversus, a, um opposing, facing\*  
aes, aeris *n.* bronze\*  
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose\*  
auris, is *f.* ear\*  
āvius, a, um pathless, remote†  
clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler\*  
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus confuse†  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous\*  
Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind  
at the sack of Troy  
dūdum for a long time, long since†  
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus traverse, escape  
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart  
excitō (1) arouse, startle, stir (up)  
exclāmō (1) cry out, shout, exclaim  
glomerō (1) roll together, assemble  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful  
injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast on  
lassus, a, um tired, weary, worn (out)†  
male badly, poorly, not  
micō, āre, uī flash, glitter, vibrate, dart  
nesciō, ire, ivī (ii) not know, know not

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
onus, eris *n.* burden, load, weight  
pariter equally, side by side\*  
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
post behind, after (*acc.*); afterward\*  
prius sooner, before, formerly  
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)†  
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look forth  
reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, give back,  
render\*  
reflectō, ere, flexī, flexus turn back†  
regiō, ōnis *f.* region, district  
residō, ere, sēdī sit down  
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back  
(at, for)\*  
sive, seu or (if), whether  
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, crash, roar, noise\*  
sonus, ī *m.* sound, noise, roar,  
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
subsistō, ere, stiti halt, stop, withstand  
suspēnsus, a, um doubtful, anxious  
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
trepidus, a, um agitated, alarmed

726-729. omnēs aerae mē suspēnsūm  
et timentem terrent. Graji: pronounce  
Grajī, making the first syllable long by  
position; App. 6, b. comiti: Ascaniō.  
oneri: Anchisae.

730. portis: dat. with special verb;  
App. 297.

732. vīsus (est): seemed.

733. (Danai) propinquant.

734. aera = tēla.

735. mihi trepidō: dat. of separation;  
App. 305. nescio: with the final o irreg-  
ularly short; nescio quod nūmen: I don't

know what divinity = some divinity or  
other. male amicum = inimicum: un-  
friendly, hostile; litotes; App. 431.

736. āvia (loca): out-of-the-way section.

738-740. heu, conjūnxne Creūsa,  
ērepta miserō fātō, substitit, errāvitne  
(ex) viā, seu lassa resēdit, (est) incer-  
tum: snatched away, alas! by an unhappy  
fate, did my wife Creūsa halt? etc. (mihi)  
miserō: dat. of separation; App. 305. -ne  
... -ne, seu: whether ... or, or; the three  
clauses depend loosely on incertum (est).

741. Nec (eam = Creūsam) āmissam



quam tumulum *antiquae* Cereris *sēdemque* sacrātam  
vēnimus: hīc demum collēctis omnibus ūna  
dēfuit, et comitēs nātumque virumque fefellit.

Quem nōn incūsāvi āmēns hominumque deōrumque, 745  
aut quid in ēversā vidī crūdēlius urbe?

Ascanium Anchīsēnque patrem Teucrōsque penātis  
commendō sociis et curvā valle recondō;  
ipse urbem repetō et cingor fulgentibus armīs.

Stat cāsūs renovāre omnīs omnemque revertī 750  
per Trojam et rūsus caput objectāre periclis.

Principiō mūrōs obscūraque lūmina portae,  
quā gressum extuleram, repetō et vestigia retrō  
observāta sequor per noctem et lūmine lūstrō:  
horror ubique animō, simul ipsa silentia terrent. 755

āmēns, entis mad, insane, distracted  
Ascanius, (i) m. son of Aeneas\*  
Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain  
cingō, ere, c nxi, cinctus gird, encircle\*  
colligō, ere lēgi, lēctus collect, gather  
commendō (1) intrust, commit  
crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody\*  
curvus, a, um curved, winding, bent\*  
dēmum at length, finally  
dēsum, esse, fui be absent, lack†  
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth,  
raise, lift\*  
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy  
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, baffle,  
elude, escape the notice of\*  
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi gleam, flash, glitter†  
gressus, ūs m. step, course, gait  
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
horror, ōris m. horror, terror, shudder(ing)  
incūsō (1) accuse, blame, chide  
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify\*  
mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart\*

objectō (1) throw to, expose†  
obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy\*  
observō (1) observe, watch, note†  
penātēs, ium m. household gods\*  
peric(u)lum, i n. danger, peril, risk  
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
principiō first(ly), at first†  
quā where(by), in any (some) way  
quam than, how, as\*  
recondō, ere, didī, ditus establish; hide  
renovō (1) renew, revive  
repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus seek again  
retrō back(ward), again  
revertor, ī, rsus return, turn back†  
rūsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*  
silentium, (i) n. silence, stillness, quiet  
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify  
tumulus, i m. hill, mound\*  
ubique everywhere, anywhere  
vallis, is f. valley, vale, dale  
vestigium, (i) n. step, track, trace\*

respexī animumve reflexī: nor did I look  
back for her lost as she was or cast a thought  
behind. In the excitement and confusion,  
Aeneas forgets to look back for his wife  
or even to think of her. Thus he loses  
her. It may be noted here that it is  
essential to the plot that Aeneas should  
be without a wife both at Carthage and  
when he finally arrives in Latium.

742. (ad) tumulum, (ad) sēdem.

743. collēctis omnibus: abl. abs.

745. Quem hominumque deōrumque:  
partitive genitives; App. 286. deōrum-  
que: the final e is elided before the initial  
diphthong of the next verse, making l.  
745 hypermetric; App. 402.

Creūsa, but is met by her ghost, who in-  
forms him of her death and urges him to  
hasten his flight from Troy.

748. (in) curvā valle.

749. urbem repetō et cingor armīs: for  
the hysteron proteron, see the note on  
l. 353; App. 429. cingor: middle = mē  
cingō; App. 309.

750. Stat (mihi sententia): I am  
determined.

751. (meum) caput = vitam.

752. Principiō: correlative with inde,  
in l. 756.

754. lūmine = oculō: used here for the  
sake of the alliteration or for metrical  
reasons, or both.

755. horror (est meō) animō.

746-794. Aeneas returns to search for

Inde domum, sī forte pedem, sī forte tulisset,  
mē referō: inruerant Danaī et tēctum omne tenēbant.  
Illicet ignis edāx summa ad fastigia ventō  
volvit; exsuperant flammae, furit aestus ad aurās.

760 Prōcēdō et Priamī sēdēs arcemque revīsō:  
et jam porticibus vacuīs Jūnōnis asylō  
custōdēs lēctī Phoenix et dirus Ulixēs  
praedam adservābant. Hūc undique Trōia gaze  
incēnsis ērepta adytīs, mēnsaeque deōrum  
765 crātēresque aurō solidī, captīvaque vestis  
congeritur. Puerī et pavidae longō ordine matrēs  
stant circum.

Ausus quīn etiam vōcēs jactāre per umbram  
implēvī clāmōre viās, maestusque Creūsam  
770 nēquiquam ingemināns iterumque iterumque rocāvī.  
Quaerentī et tēctīs urbis sine fine ruentī  
īnfelix simulācrum atque ipsius umbra Creūsae

adservō (1) guard, watch†  
adytum, i n. inner shrine, sanctuary  
aestus, ūs m. flood, tide, surge; heat  
asylum, i n. refuge, sanctuary†  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
captivus, a, um captive, captured†  
congerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap up†  
crātēr, ēris m. mixing bowl  
Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind  
at the sack of Troy  
custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), keeper\*  
dirus, a, um dire, terrible, cursed\*  
edāx, ācis devouring, eating, consuming†  
etiam even, also, besides, yet, still\*  
exsuperō (1) surmount, mount (high)†  
fastigium, (i) i n. top, roof, summit  
gaza, ae f. wealth, treasure  
illicet immediately, at once  
impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy\*  
incendō, ere, i, ēnsus burn, kindle\*  
inde thence, thereupon\*  
ingeminō (1) redouble, repeat, increase  
inruō, ere, uī rush in

iterum again, anew, a second time†\*  
jactō (1) hurl, toss, fling; utter\*  
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, collect\*  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
mēnsa, ere f. table\*  
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
ordō, inis m. order, array, row\*  
pavidus, a, um terrified, fearful  
Phoenix, icis m. Greek leader†  
porticus, ūs f. colonnade, portico  
praeda, ae f. booty, spoils, prey  
prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance†  
quīn nay even, (but) that\*  
revīsō, ere see again, revisit  
simulācrum, i n. image, phantom, likeness  
sine without (abl.)\*  
solidus, a, um solid, firm, massive  
Trōius, a, um Trojan\*  
Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m. Ulysses, a wily Greek  
leader\*  
undique everywhere, from all sides\*  
vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free  
vestis, is f. garment, cloth(ing), robe\*

756. sī forte, sī forte: rhetorical repetition, representing the repeated thought in the mind of Aeneas; App. 413. sī tulisset: implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

759. ad aurās = ad caelum.

761. (in) porticibus: ablative of place where. asylō: in apposition with porticibus; the use of this Greek word, meaning a place not to be plundered, emphasizes the impiety of the Greeks in thus desecrating the holy sanctuary of Juno's temple.

764. adytis: dat. of separation; App. 305. mēnsae: tables on which food and other offerings were placed for the gods.

765. aurō: abl. of material; App. 324.

766. congeritur: agreeing in number with the nearest subject; App. 236, b. Puerī, matrēs (= fēminae): to be carried off into slavery.

770. iterumque iterumque: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

771. (in) tēctis.

771-773. mihi quaerentī et ruentī si-

*vīsa mihi ante oculōs et nōtā major imāgō.*

Obstipui, steteruntque comae et vōx faucibus haesit.

*Tum sic adfārī et cūrās hīs dēmere dictīs:*

775

*‘Quid tantum insānō juvat indulgēre dolōrī,*

*Ō dulcis conjūnx? Nōn haec sine nūmine divum*

*ēveniunt; nec tē hinc comitem asportāre Creūsam*

*fās, aut ille sinit superī rēgnātor Olympī.*

*Longa tibi exsilia et vastum maris aequor arandum,*

780

*et terram. Hesperiam veniēs, ubi Lȳdius arva*

*inter opīma virum lēnī fuit agmine Thybris:*

*illic rēs laetae rēgnumque et rēgia conjūnx*

*parta tibi; lacrimās dilēctae pelle Creūsae.*

*Nōn ego Myrmidonum sēdēs Dolopumve superbās*

785

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost\*

arō (1) plow, furrow, till†

asportō (1) carry away, carry from†

coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses\*

Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy

dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus remove, take away†

diligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish

Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly

dolor, ōris m. grief, anger, pain, passion\*

dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*

ēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come out, happen†

exsiliū, (i) i n. exile, place of exile

fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will\*

faucēs, ium f. jaws, throat; pass

fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, ebb, stream

haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick, cling (to)\*

Hesperius, a, um Hesperian, western, Italian

illic there, at that place

imāgō, inis f. image, phantom, likeness\*

indulgeō, ēre, lsi, ltus indulge in, yield to (dat.)†

insānus, a, um mad, frantic, insane

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please\*

lēnis, e gentle, soft, mild†

Lȳdius, a, um Lydian, of Lydia, a country of Asia Minor, earlier home of the Etruscans who settled in Italy and probably founded Rome†

Myrmidones, um m. Greeks of Thes-saly

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*

obstipescō, ere, stipui be dazed, stand agape\*

Olympus, i m. a Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven

opīmus, a, um rich, fertile, sumptuous

pariō, ere, peperī, partus acquire, win, produce

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (away), dismiss

rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly\*

rēgnātor, ōris m. ruler, sovereign, lord

sine without (abl.)\*

sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow\*

superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*

Thybris, (id)is m. Tiber, a river of Italy†

mūlacrum et umbra Creūsae visa (est).

infelix: a transferred epithet; App. 446.

ipsius: for the short penult, see the note on illius, I, 16. visa (est): agrees with its nearest subject. (imagine mihi) nōtā:

abl. with comparative; App. 327. The

shades of the dead, as well as the gods, regularly appeared as larger than human beings.

774. steterunt: with short penult.

775. (Creūsa) adfārī et dēmere: historical infinitives; App. 257.

776. Quid = cūr: why? (tē) juvat. dolōrī: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

777. Nōn sine nūmine: litotes; App.

431. div(ōr)um.

778. comitem: (as) a comrade.

779. fās (est). aut = nec. rēgnātor: Jupiter.

780. exsilia tibi (ferenda sunt). arandum (est tuis nāvibus).

781. (ad) terram.

782. vir(ōr)um: gen. with opīma; App. 287.

783. rēgia conjūnx: Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus, was married to Aeneas shortly after his arrival in Italy.

784. parta (est): agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, b. Creūsae:

obj. gen., tears of (for) Creūsa; App. 284.

785. ego: emphatic, as always when expressed; App. 247.

aspiciam aut Grajīs servitum mātribus ībō,  
Dardanis et divae Veneris nurus;  
sed mē magna deum genetrix hīs dētinēt ōrīs.  
*Jamque valē et nātī servā commūnis amōrem.*'

790 *Haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem et multa volentem  
dicere dēseruit, tenuisque recessit in aurās.  
Ter cōnātus ibi collō dare braccia circum;  
ter frūstrā comprēnsa manūs effūgit imāgō,  
pār levibus ventīs volucrique simillima somnō.*

795 *Sic dēmum sociōs cōnsūptā nocte revisō.  
Atque hīc ingentem comitum adflūxisse novōrum  
invenīō admīrāns numerum, mātresque virōsque,  
collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus.  
Undique convēnere animīs opibusque parātī*

adflūō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow together†  
admīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire†  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
(at)\*

bracchium, (i) ī n. (fore) arm†\*  
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather  
collum, ī n. neck\*  
commūnis, e common, mutual, general  
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp†  
cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor†  
cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume,  
waste†  
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come together,  
assemble

Dardanis, idis f. Trojan woman†  
dēmum at length, finally  
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
dētinēō, ēre, uī, tentus detain, hold  
back†  
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, flee from  
exsilium, (i) ī n. exile, place of exile  
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
genetrix, icis f. mother  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
ibi there, then  
imāgō, inis f. image, likeness, phantom\*

inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come  
upon  
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament  
levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight  
miserābilis, e miserable, wretched  
numerus, ī m. number, multitude\*  
nurus, ūs f. daughter-in-law  
ops, opis f. help, resources, power,  
wealth\*  
pār, paris equal, like, similar (dat.)\*  
pūbēs, is f. youth, young men\*  
recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart, re-  
tire  
revisō, ere revisit, see again  
serviō, ire, ivi (ii), itus be a slave, serve  
(dat.)†  
similis, e like, similar (dat.)\*  
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine†  
ter thrice, three times\*  
undique everywhere, from all sides\*  
valeō, ēre, uī be strong, fare well, b  
able  
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and  
beauty\*  
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift\*  
vulgus, ī n. (m.) crowd, rabble, herd

786. servitum: supine in um after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

788. de(ōr)um genetrix: Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods. (in) ōrīs.

790. (mē) lacrimantem.

792. cōnātus (sum). collō dare braccia circum: to place my arms around her neck; circum is here an adverb.

794. ventis, somnō: dat. with the adj., pār; App. 304.

795-804. Aeneas returns to his comrades and finds a great number of men and women collected ready to follow wherever he may be willing to lead them.

798. exsiliō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

799. convēnere = convēnērunt. animis, opibus: ablatives of respect; App. 325. parātī (ire mēcum).



*in quāscumque velim pelagō dēdūcere terrās.  
Jamque jugīs summae surgēbat Lūcifer Idae  
dūcēbatque diem, Danaīque obsessa tenēbant  
līmīna portārum, nec spēs opis ūlla dabātur.  
Cessī et sublātō montīs genitōre petīvī.*

800

**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, depart\*  
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead forth,  
launch†

**Ida, ae f.** mountain near Troy†

**jugum, ī n.** yoke, (mountain) ridge\*

**Lūcifer, erī m.** morning star, light-  
bringer†

**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset  
**ops, opis f.** help, resources, wealth,  
power\*

**porta, ae f.** gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**  
whoever, whatever\*

**spēs, spei f.** hope, expectation\*

**800. velim:** subj. in implied indir.  
disc.; App. 390. **dēdūcere:** the technical  
word among the Romans for leading out  
a colony.

**801. (in) jugīs:** abl. of place where.

**803. spēs opis:** hope of helping Troy  
or of receiving help from Troy.

**804. montis:** Mt. Ida, near Troy, thus  
following the trail blazed out by the  
meteor; see l. 697.

## BOOK III

- POSTQUAM rēs Asiae Priamūque ēvertere gentem  
 immeritam vīsum superīs, ceciditque superbum  
 Īlium et omnis humō fūmat Neptūnia Troja,  
 diversa exsilia et dēsertās quaerere terrās  
 5 auguriīs agimur dīvum, classemque sub ipsā  
 Antandrō et Phrygiae mōlimur montibus Īdae,  
 incertī quō fāta ferant, ubi sistere dētur,  
 contrahimusque virōs. Vix prima incēperat aestās  
 et pater Anchīsēs dare fātis vēla jubēbat,  
 10 litora cum patriae lacrimāns portūsque relinquō  
 et campōs ubi Troja fuit. Feror exsul in altum

aestās, ātis *f.* summer, summer time  
 altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven  
 Antandros (us), ī *f.* town near Troy†  
 Asia, *ae f.* Asia (Minor)  
 augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, prophecy  
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 contrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus draw to-  
 gether, gather†  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, abandon\*  
 diversus, a, um separated, far apart\*  
 ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy  
 exsilium, (i)ī *n.* (place of) exile  
 exsul, ulis *m. (f.)* exile, refugee†  
 fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume  
 humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth\*  
 Īda, *ae f.* mountain near Troy

Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy  
 immeritus, a, um undeserving, guilt-  
 less†  
 incertus, a, um doubtful, uncertain  
 incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-  
 take\*  
 lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament  
 mōlior, iri, itus do, make, build, effect  
 Neptūnius, a, um Neptunian, of Neptune,  
 god of the sea, who with the help of  
 Apollo built the walls of Troy  
 patria, *ae f.* fatherland, country\*  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 sistō, ere, steti, status set(tle), stop  
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*

1-12. The Trojan survivors build a fleet near Antandros at the foot of Mt. Ida and set sail in search of new homes.

1. rēs, gentem: objects of ēvertere. ēvertere: subj. of vīsum (est), it seemed (best); App. 258.

2. immeritam: emphatic by position. superis (deis).

3. (ab) humō: abl. of separation; App. 340. Neptūnia Troja: see II, 610, 625, and note.

4. dēsertās: the small band of Trojans were too weak to seize any lands already occupied.

5. auguriīs dīv(ōr)um.

7. incertī: an inconsistency with the prediction of Creūsa, II, 781; due either to the caprice of the poet, to the un-

finished condition of the poem, or to the fact that Aeneas did not trust the proph-  
 ecies of his wife. (nōs) ferant, dētur: indirect questions, depending on incertī; App. 349. dētur (nōbīs): it is granted; the subject is sistere; App. 258.

8. prima aestās: the first (of) summer; App. 246; the Trojan fugitives had spent the winter near Antandros.

9. pater Anchīsēs: in ancient Roman times the father (pater familiās) was the recognized head of the house. dare fātis vēla: modeled on the expression dare ventis vēla, but indicating the spirit of the Trojans as they set out trusting to the gods and "with a heart for any fate."

11. Troja fuit: cf. II, 325, fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium, and the note.

*cum sociis nātōque, penātibus et magnis dīs.*

*Terra procul vastis colitur Māvortia campis*  
(Thrāces arant) ācrī quondam rēgnāta Lycūrgō,  
hospitium antiquum Trojae sociique penātēs 15  
*dum fortuna fuit. Feror hūc et litore curvō*  
*moenia prīma locō fātis ingressus iniquis*  
*Aeneadāsque meō nōmen dē nōmine fingō.*

*Sacra Diōnaeae mātīrī dīvisque ferēbam*  
auspiciibus coeptōrum operum, *superōque* nitentem 20  
*caelicolum rēgī mactābam in litore taurum.*  
*Forte fuit juxtā tumulus, quō cornea summō*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited\*  
Aeneadae, ārum *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas  
arō (1) plow, till, cultivate  
auspex, icis *m. (f.)* seer, guardian, guide†  
caelicola, ae *m. (f.)* god, divinity  
coepi, isse, ptus begin, undertake  
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor\*  
corneus, a, um of cornel, a kind of tree†  
curvus, a, um bent, curved, winding\*  
Diōnaeus, a, um Dionean, of Dione, mother of Venus†  
fingō, ere, finxī, fictus form, make, fashion  
hospitium, (i) *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance, friend(ship)

ingredior, i, gressus enter, begin, land†  
iniquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust, unfair, adverse  
juxtā close, near, next, nigh (*acc.*)\*  
locō (1) place, establish, locate\*  
Lycūrgus, i *m.* king of Thrace†  
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor  
Māvortius, a, um martial, beloved of Mars, god of war  
nitēns, entis shining, white, sleek  
opus, eris *n.* work, task, labor, deed\*  
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods\*  
rēgnō (1) rule, reign, govern, sway  
socius, a, um allied, friendly  
taurus, i *m.* bull, bullock, ox\*  
Thrāx, ācis *m.* Thracian†  
tumulus, i *m.* mound, hill, tomb\*

12. *cum sociis nātōque, penātibus et magnis dīs*: indicating the various factors of most importance for the future. The penātēs, household gods, are here distinguished from the major divinities (magnī dī), such as Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, Minerva, Vesta, etc. Observe the spondaic verse giving a solemn and majestic close; App. 395.

13-18. Founding of Aenos, or Aenea, in Thrace.

13. *procul (ā Trojā)*: at a (little) distance, only across the Hellespont, a narrow strait. *campis*: abl. of quality or of place where; App. 330, 319. *terra Māvortia*: the chief god of the fierce Thracians was Mars, the brutal god of war.

14. *Thrācēs*: nom. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a. (illam terram)* Thrāces arant. *ācrī Lycūrgō*: dat. of agent; App. 302. He had attacked the women attendants of Bacchus with an ox goad. For this he was first blinded and then destroyed by Jupiter.

15. *hospitium antiquum Trojae (fuit) et penātēs (fuērunt) socii (cum penātibus Trojae).*

16. *dum fortuna (Trojae) fuit*: some of the same pathos as in II, 325, *fuit Ilīum. (in) litore.*

17. *ingressus (terram). fātis iniquis*: abl. abs.; App. 343.

18. *Aeneadās*: apposition with *nōmen*; App. 241. Either Aenos, at the mouth of the Hebrus, or Aenea, on the west coast of Thrace, may be referred to here; or Vergil may have confused the two towns. *nōmen (meis viris) fingō.*

19-48. Aeneas prepares to offer sacrifice, but is deterred by the omens of the murdered Polydorus.

19. *Diōnaeae mātīrī*: Venus, the mother of Aeneas and daughter of Dione. *dīvisque (aliis).*

20-21. *auspiciibus*: apposition with *mātīrī dīvisque*; App. 241. *superō regi caelicol(ār)um*: Jupiter.

22. *tumulus*: a mound formed by the

- 25 *virgulta et dēnsis hastilibus horrida myrtus.*  
*Accessi viridemque ab humō convellere silvam*  
*cōnātus, rāmīs tegerem ut frondentibus ārās,*  
*horrendum et dictū videō mīrābile mōnstrum.*  
*Nam quae prīma solō ruptis rādicibus arbōs*  
*vellitur, huic ātrō liquuntur sanguine guttae*  
*et terram tābō maculant. Mihi frigidus horror*  
30 *membra quatit gelidusque coīt formidine sanguis.*  
*Rūrsus et alterius lentum convellere vīmen*  
*insequor et causās penitus temptāre latentis:*  
*āter et alterius sequitur dē cortice sanguis.*  
*Multa movēns animō nymphās venerābar agrestis*

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach, reach  
 agrestis, e rustic, rural†  
 alter, era, erum another (of two), second\*  
 arbōs (or), oris f. tree, wood(s)\*  
 causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion\*  
 coō, ire, ii (ivī), itus come together,  
 curdle†  
 cōnor, āri, ātus try, attempt, endeavor  
 convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter  
 cortex, icis m. (f.) bark, rind, shell†  
 dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense\*  
 formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread  
 frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty  
 frondēns, entis leafy, fronded†  
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy  
 gutta, ae f. drop†  
 hostile, ilis n. spear-shaft, shoot  
 horrendus, a, um dreadful, horrible\*  
 horridus, a, um bristling, horrible  
 horror, ōris m. shudder, terror, dread  
 humus, i f. ground, soil, earth\*  
 insequor, i, secūtus follow, proceed\*  
 latēns, entis hiding, hidden, secret  
 lentus, a, um pliant, tough, flexible†  
 liquor, i flow, trickle, drip, run†

maculō (1) spot, stain, pollute†  
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
 mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous  
 mōnstrum, i n. omen, prodigy, monster\*  
 myrtus, i f. myrtle, a shrub sacred to  
 Venus and the dead†  
 nympha, ae f. nymph, one of the demi-  
 goddesses who presided over the sea,  
 rivers, fountains, forests, trees, etc.  
 penitus within, far, wholly, deeply\*  
 quatō, ere, quassus shake, shatter  
 rādis, icis f. root†  
 rāmūs, i m. branch, bough, shoot†\*  
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst  
 (forth)\*  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
 solum, i n. ground, soil\*  
 tābum, i n. corruption; gore, blood†  
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect\*  
 temptō (1) try, test, explore, examine\*  
 vellō, ere, vulsi, vulsus tear (up)  
 veneror, āri, ātus reverence, supplicate†  
 vimen, inis n. twig, shoot, wither†  
 virgultum, i n. thicket, bush, copse†  
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous†\*

action of the wind and waves over the  
 unburied body of Polydorus. quō (in)  
 summō (erant): on the summit of which  
 (were); App. 246.

23. *virgulta (erant). hastilibus:* the  
 cornel and myrtle shoots were often used  
 as spear shafts and are here called *hastilia*  
 for the additional reason given in the  
 story which follows.

24. (tumulum) *accessi. silvam:* thicket.  
*cōnātus (sum). ut tegerem:* purpose;  
 App. 359.

26. *dictū:* supine, used as abl. of re-  
 spect with *mirābile*; App. 271.

27-28. *ruptis rādicibus:* abl. abs.;  
 App. 343. *nam guttae ātrō sanguine*

(= *ātri sanguinis*) *liquuntur huic arbori*  
 (= *ex hac arbore*) *quae vellitur prima.*  
 (ex) solō. *arbōs:* attracted into the rel.  
 clause, becoming nom. instead of dat.;  
 App. 242, a. *huic (arbori):* dat. of sepa-  
 ration; App. 305. *ātrō sanguine:* abl. of  
 quality denoting material; App. 330,  
 324.

29. *Mihi:* dat. of reference equivalent  
 to a possessive adjective.

30. *gelidus:* proleptic; App. 440.  
*formidine:* abl. of cause; App. 332.

31. *alterius (arboris).*

34. *movēns: pondering. (meō) animō:*  
 abl. of place where or means; App. 319,  
 331. *nymphās:* as patron deities of the



Grādīvumque patrem, Geticis quī praesidet arvīs, 35  
 rīte secundārent vīsūs ōmenque levārent.  
 Tertia sed postquam majōre hastilia nīsū  
 adgredior genibusque adversae obluctor harēnae  
 (ēloquar an sileam?) gemitus lacrimābilis imō  
 auditur tumultō et vōx reddita fertur ad aurīs: 40  
 'Quid miserum, Aenēā, lacerās? Jam parce sepultō,  
 parce piās scelerāre manūs. Nōn mē tibi Troja  
 externum tulit aut cruor hic dē stipite mānat.  
 Heu fuge crūdēlis terrās, fuge lītus avārum:  
 nam Polydōrus ego. Hīc cōnfixum ferrea tēxit 45  
 tēlōrum seges et jaculīs incrēvit acūtīs.'

acūtus, a, um sharp, keen, pointed  
 adgredior, i, gressus approach, attack<sup>1</sup>  
 adversus, a, um opposite, facing, op-  
 posing\*  
 an whether, or\*  
 auris, is f. ear\*  
 avārus, a, um greedy, avaricious  
 cōnfigō, ere, xi, xus pierce, transfix  
 crūdēlis, e cruel. bitter, bloody\*  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore†  
 ēloquor, i, locūtus speak (out), declare†  
 externus, a, um foreign, strange†  
 ferreus, a, um (of) iron†  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament\*  
 genū, ūs n. knee  
 Geticus, a, um Getic, of the Getae, a  
 people on the Danube†  
 Grādīvus, i m. Mars, god of war†  
 harēna, ae f. sand, beach\*  
 hostile, ilis n. spear shaft, spear-like shoot  
 incrēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus grow up (in)†  
 jaculum, i n. spear, javelin†  
 lacerō (1) tear, lacerate, mutilate†  
 lacrimābilis, e tearful, mournful†  
 levō (1) lighten, alleviate, lift, remove

mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)†  
 nīsus, ūs m. effort, struggle, exertion†  
 obluctor, āri, ātus struggle against  
 (dat.)†  
 ōmen, inis n. omen, sign, portent\*  
 parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare,  
 refrain, forbear (dat.)  
 Polydōrus, i m. son of Priam, killed by  
 Polymnestor, king of Thrace†  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 praesideō, ēre, sēdi, sessus preside over  
 (dat.)†  
 reddō, ere, didi, dītus give (back),  
 utter, render, return\*  
 rīte duly, fittingly, with due ceremony†  
 scelerō (1) defile, pollute, stain  
 secundō (1) prosper, make favorable†  
 seges, etis f. crop, harvest, grain field  
 sepultus, i m. one buried, corpse  
 sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush  
 stipes, itis m. trunk, stock, shoot†  
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect\*  
 tertius, a, um third\*  
 tumulus, i m. mound, hill, tomb\*  
 visus, ūs m. sight, view, vision, aspect

place. All trees, groves, fountains, and streams were sacred to the nymphs.

35. arvīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

36. (ut) secundārent, levārent: subst. clauses developed from vol. or opt. and depending upon venerābar, I was beseeching; App. 360, 253.

38. genibus: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331. harēnae: dat. with compound; App. 298.

39-40. ēloquar an sileam: deliberative questions; App. 348. (ex) imō tumultō: from the lowest (depths of the) mound; App. 246. (meās) aurīs.

41. (mē) miserum. (mihi) sepultō: dat. with special verb, parce; App. 297.

42-43. (tuās) piās manūs. tibi externum. cruor (externus tuō cruōri). nōn dē stipite (arboris sed dē meō corpore) hic cruor mānat.

44. crūdēlis, avārum: transferred epithets; App. 446.

45-46. ego (sum). (mē) cōnfixum. ferrea tēlōrum seges: Polydorus had been pierced with a number of spears, which had taken root in his slain body and produced the myrtle grove. jaculīs acūtīs: abl. of quality or material with seges; App. 330, 324.

*Tum vērō ancipitī mentem formidine pressus  
obstupui steteruntque comae et vōx faucibus haesit.*

- 50 *Hunc Polydōrum aurī quondam cum pondere magnō  
infelix Priamus furtim mandārat alendum  
Thrēiciō rēgī, cum jam diffideret armīs  
Dardaniae cingīque urbem obsidiōne vidēret.  
Ille, ut opēs frāctae Teucrum et Fortūna recessit,  
rēs Agamemnoniās victrićiaque arma secūtus*  
55 *fās omne abrumpit: Polydōrum obtruncat, et aurō  
vī potitur. Quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis,  
aurī sacra famēs! Postquam pavor ossa reliquit,  
dēlectōs populi ad procerēs primumque parentem*

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off)†  
Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon,  
leader of the Greeks against Troy†  
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear†  
anceps, cipitis doubtful, double†  
cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus surround,  
gird(le)\*  
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus force (together),  
drive\*  
coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses\*  
Dardania, ae f. city of Dardanus, Troy  
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select  
diffidō, ere, sus sum distrust, mistrust  
(dat.)†  
famēs, is f. hunger, famine, greed  
fās n. indecl. justice, right, divine will\*  
faucēs, ium f. throat, jaws; pass  
formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread  
frangō, ere, frēgī, fractus break, shatter\*  
furtim stealthily, secretly, furtively  
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus stick (to)  
(dat.)\*  
mandō (1) intrust, commit†

mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly\*  
obsidiō, ōnis f. siege, blockade†  
obstipēscō, ere, stipui be amazed, stand  
agape\*  
obtruncō (1) kill, slaughter, slay, butcher  
ops, opis f. help, resources, power, wealth\*  
os, ossis n. bone  
pavor, ōris m. terror, shudder(ing), alarm  
Polydōrus, ī m. son of Priam, treacher-  
ously murdered by Polymnestor, king  
of Thrace  
pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass, load  
populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*  
postquam after (that), when\*  
potior, iri, itus possess, gain (abl.)  
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (op)press,  
repress, check, control\*  
procer, eris m. leader, chief, noble  
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart  
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace.  
a country northeast of Greece†  
vērō truly, indeed, but  
victrix, icis f. victorious, conquering†

47. ancipitī formidine: from the sight  
and the voice. mentem: acc. of respect  
with pressus (= oppressus); App. 311.

48. steterunt: with short penult.

49-56. The story of the murder of  
Polydorus.

50. mandā(ve)rat. alendum: the ge-  
rundive expressing purpose, to be reared;  
App. 268.

51-52. Thrēiciō rēgī: Polymnestor.  
armis: abl. or dat. with diffideret; App.  
297, 325. (Priamus) diffideret, vidēret:  
cum descriptive; App. 378.

53. Ille = Thrēicius rēx (l. 51) = Polym-  
nestor. frāctae (sunt). Teucr(ōr)um.  
Fortūna (Teucrōrum).

54. rēs: fortunes. secūtus: (treacher-  
ously) going over to.

55. fās omne abrumpit: he was bound  
by treaty and by the sacred ties of hospi-  
tality to Troy. aurō: abl. with potitur;  
App. 342.

56. vī: abl. of manner; App. 328.  
potitur: here of the third conjugation,  
but ordinarily of the fourth. Quid: cog-  
nate acc. (inner obj.); App. 313; or  
supply facere.

57-68. The Trojans in solemn session  
decide to give Polydorus a proper burial  
and abandon the haunted spot.

57. aurī: obj. gen., greed, hunger of  
(for) gold; App. 284. sacra: accursed;  
sacer meant anything set aside or conse-  
crated to the gods, and hence here devoted  
to destruction. (mea) ossa.

58. primumparentem (meum): Aeneas

*mōnstra deum referō, et quae sit sententia poscō.  
 Omnibus idem animus, sceleratā excēdere terrā,  
 linquī pollūtum hospitium et dare classibus Austrōs.  
 Ergō instaurāmus Polydōrō fūnus: et ingēns  
 aggeritur tumulō tellūs; stant mānibus ārae,  
 caeruleis maestae vittis ātrāque cupressō,  
 et circum Īliades crīnem dē mōre solūtāe;  
 inferimus tepidō spūmantia cymbia lacte  
 sanguinis et sacrī paterās, animamque sepulcrō  
 condimus et magnā suprēmum vōce ciēmus.*

60

65

**aggerō, ere, gessi, gestus** heap (up)†  
**Auster, tri m.** (south) wind\*  
**caeruleus, a, um** dark (blue), sable\*  
**cieō, ēre, civi, citus** rouse, summon,  
 stir (up), excite, invoke\*  
**condō, ere, didi, ditus** lay (away), hide,  
 found, establish\*  
**crinis, is m.** hair, locks, tresses\*  
**cupressus, i f.** cypress, a tree sacred to  
 the dead and often planted around  
 tombs  
**cymbium, (i) i n.** bowl†  
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently\*  
**excēdō, ere, cessi, cessus** withdraw,  
 depart (abl.)  
**fūnus, eris n.** funeral, death, disaster\*  
**hospitium, (i) i n.** hospitality, ally, alli-  
 ance  
**Īlias, adis f.** Trojan (woman)  
**inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus** bring to, offer

**instaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat  
**lac, lactis n.** milk†  
**linquō, ere, liqui, lictus** leave, desert\*  
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
**mānēs, ium m.** (souls of) the dead, shades,  
 ghost; Hades†\*  
**mōnstrum, i n.** omen, prodigy, monster\*  
**mōs, mōris m.** custom, ritual, law\*  
**patera, ae f.** (libation) bowl  
**polluō, ere, ui, ūtus** defile, profane, pollute†  
**Polydōrus, i m.** son of Priam  
**poscō, ere, poposci** demand, seek, ask\*  
**scelerō** (1) defile, pollute, stain  
**sententia, ae f.** opinion, purpose, view  
**sepulcrum, i n.** tomb, grave, burial  
**solvō, ere, i, solūtus** loose, pay, free\*  
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth\*  
**tepidus, a, um** warm, tepid†  
**tumulus, i m.** mound, hill, tomb\*  
**vitta, ae f.** fillet, ribbon, band\*

consults the Trojan chiefs in turn, as though they were Roman senators; and Anchises, as *princeps*, first in rank and age, speaks first.

**59. de(ōr)um. referō:** according to the Roman custom of consulting the senate when important prodigies occurred, *referō* being the technical word for laying a matter before that body. *quae sententia sit:* indir. quest.; App. 349.

**60-61. Omnibus (est):** dat. of possession; App. 299. (*nōs*) *excēdere*, (*nōs*) *linquī*, (*nōs*) *dare:* in apposition with *animus*. *dare classibus Austrōs (ventōs):* a poetical variation of the more usual expression *dare ventis classēs (vēla)*. Cf. III, 9, *dare fātis vēla*, and see App. 426.

**62. instaurāmus:** it was important that all funerals should be properly performed, with all due ceremonies, as otherwise the soul of the dead would not be able to rest in peace. Polymnestor had not given Polydorus a proper burial, and so this ceremony is duly per-

formed by Aeneas. The description of the funeral is adapted to Roman custom.

**63. mānibus (Polydōri):** to the soul (of Polydorus), dat. of reference; App. 301.

**65. Īliades (stant). crīnem solūtāe:** a conventional sign of grief; *crīnem* is obj. of the middle part. *solūtāe;* App. 309, a.

**66. tepidō lacte:** freshly milked; abl. of material; App. 324. Other common offerings to the dead were wine, honey, and oil.

**67-68. sanguinis sacrī:** the blood of victims sacrificed to the gods. *animam condimus:* we "lay the ghost," by giving the body a proper burial, and thus enabling the soul to cross the river Styx and to rest in peace in Hades. The souls of the unburied must wander in misery for a hundred years. *suprēmum:* adverbial; for the last (time); see note on I, 219, and on II, 644. The poet is describing the usual Roman rite.

- Inde ubi *prīma* fidēs *pelagō*, *plācātaque ventī*  
 70 *dant mariā et lēnis crepitāns vocat Auster in altum*,  
*dēdūcunt sociī nāvīs et litora complent*.  
*Prōvehimur portū terraeque urbēsque recēdunt*.  
*Sacra marī colitur mediō grātissima tellūs*  
*Nēreīdum mātī et Neptūnō Aegaeō*,  
 75 *quam pius Arquitenēns ōrās et litora circum*  
*errantem Myconō ē celsā Gyarōque revīnxit*,  
*immōtamque colī dedit et contemnere ventōs*.  
*Hūc feror: haec fessōs tūtō placidissima portū*  
*accipit. Egressī venerāmur Apollinis urbem*.

**Aegaeus, a, um** of the Aegean Sea†  
**altum, i n.** the deep (sea); heaven  
**Apollō, inis m.** god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
**Arquitenēns (arci-), entis m.** archer, Apollo†  
**Auster, trī m.** (south) wind\*  
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering\*  
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor\*  
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete  
**contemnō, ere, tempī, temptus** despise, scorn†  
**crepitō (1)** crackle, rustle, creak†  
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw down, launch  
**ēgredior, ī, gressus** step out, disembark  
**fides, ei f.** faith, trust(worthiness)\*

**grātus, a, um** pleasing, agreeable, grateful  
**Gyaros, ī f.** an island in the Aegean†  
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable  
*inde* thence, after that, next\*  
**lēnis, e** gentle, soft, mild, light  
**Myconus, ī f.** an island in the Aegean†  
**Neptūnus, ī m.** Neptune, god of the sea\*  
**Nēreīs, idis f.** a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus†  
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet\*  
**plācō (1)** propitiate, calm, quiet  
**prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry (forward), convey  
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, recede  
**revīnciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus** bind (fast)  
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure\*  
**veneror, āri, ātus** reverence, supplicate

69-89. They land in Delos to consult the oracle.

69. (est) *pelagō*: dat. of possession; App. 299; or abl. = *fidēs* (est *nōbis* in) *pelagō*; App. 319; or dat. with the construction of *fidō*; App. 297. *ventī* (*positī*).

70. *vocat* (*nōs*).

71. *dēdūcunt*: *launch*; *subdūcere* is the technical term for beaching vessels on the shore at the end of a voyage, and *dēdūcō* is the technical term for launching them or drawing them down into the water again.

72. (*ā, ex*) *portū. recēdunt*: an optical illusion familiar to all travelers.

73-74. (in) *mediō marī*: in the midst of the sea. *sacra tellūs*: the island of Delos, sacred to Apollo as his birthplace. *grātissima mātī Nēreīdum et Neptūnō. Nēreīdum mātī*: Doris, goddess of the sea and wife of the sea god Nereus. *mātī et Neptūnō Aegaeō*: note the two cases

of hiatus and the spondaic fifth foot; App. 399, 395.

75. *pius Arquitenēns*: (*Apollo*) in (*filial*) devotion. According to the story, the goddess Latona was an outcast and could find no land willing to receive her till she came to Delos, at that time a floating island. The island allowed her to remain, where she gave birth to the twins, Apollo and Diana. In gratitude for this hospitality, Apollo bound Delos fast to the neighboring islands and so made it a firm and habitable land. *errantem circum ōrās et litora*. App. 414.

76. *ē celsā Myconō Gyarōque*: off lofty *Myconus* and *Gyaros*. *Myconus* is in fact a low island.

77. *dedit* (*illam terram esse*) *immōtam et colī et contemnere ventōs*: formerly the island had been floating around at the mercy of the wind and waves and was uninhabitable.

78-79. *haec* (*tellūs*) *accipit* (*nōs*) *fessōs. Apollinis urbem*: Delos, a city of the same name as the island.



*Rēx Anius, rēx idem hominum Phoebique sacerdos,* 80  
*vittis et sacrā redimītus tempora laurō*  
*occurrit; veterem Anchīsēn agnōvit amicum.*  
*Jungimus hospitio dextrās et tēcta subimus.*

*Templa deī saxō venerābar strūcta vetustō:*  
*'Dā propriam, Thymbraee, domum; dā moenia fessīs* 85  
*et genus et mānsūram urbem; servā altera Trojae*  
*Pergama, reliquiās Danaum atque immītis Achilli.*  
*Quem sequimur? Quōve ire jubēs? Ubi pōnere sēdēs?*  
*Dā, pater, augurium atque animīs inlābere nostrīs.'*

*Vix ea fātus eram: tremere omnia vīsa repente,* 90  
*līmīnaque laurusque deī, tōtusque movērī*  
*mōns circum et mūgīre adytīs cortīna reclusīs.*

**Achillēs**, is (ei, ī) *m.* Greek leader\*  
**adytum**, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary  
**agnōscō**, ere, nōvi, nitus recognize\*  
**alter**, era, erum another (of two), second\*  
**amicus**, ī *m.* friend, comrade\*  
**Anius**, (i) ī *m.* king of Delos†  
**augurium**, (i) ī *n.* augury, omen, portent  
**cortīna**, ae *f.* tripod, caldron, on which  
the priestess sat when delivering  
oracles†  
**homō**, inis *m.* (f.) man, mortal, human\*  
**hospitium**, (i) ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance  
**immitis**, e cruel, harsh, fierce, unfeeling  
**inlābor**, ī, lāpsus glide (into) (*dat.*)  
**jungō**, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke\*  
**laurus**, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen tree  
sacred to Apollo  
**mūgiō**, ire, ivi (ii), itus bellow, roar†  
**occurrō**, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
meet (*dat.*)  
**Pergama**, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy\*

**Phoebus**, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
**proprius**, a, um one's own, secure, per-  
manent  
**reclūdō**, ere, ī, sus open, disclose  
**redimiō**, ire, ii (ivi), itus bind around,  
encircle†  
**re(1)liquiae**, ārum *f.* rest, remnant, leav-  
ings  
**repente** suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly  
**sacerdos**, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)\*  
**struō**, ere, ūxi, ūctus heap up, build  
**templum**, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
**tempus**, oris *n.* temple, brow  
**Thymbraeus**, a, um of Thymbra, a city  
of the Troad, sacred to Apollo†  
**tremō**, ere, ui tremble, quiver, shake\*  
**veneror**, āri, ātus reverence, supplicate  
**vetus**, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*  
**vetustus**, a, um old, ancient, former  
**vitta**, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band\*

80. *idem*: the union of government and religion is common among primitive peoples, as at Rome under the early kings.

81. *vittis*: as a symbol of his priestly office. *tempora*: temples; object of the middle participle *redimītus*; App. 309, a. *laurō sacrā* (Apollinī).

82. (nōbīs) *occurrit. veterem amicum.*

83. *hospitiō*: abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. *saxō vetustō*: abl. of material; App. 324.

85. *Thymbraee* (Apollō): voc. *Dā* (nōbīs). *dā* (nōbīs) *fessīs*.

86. *mānsūram*: that shall abide.

87. *re(1)liquiās Dana(ōr)um atque immitis Achilli*: subj. genitives, as in I, 30, the remnants of (allowed to escape by) the Danaans, etc.; App. 284.

88. *Quem sequimur*: the pres. ind. is occasionally used where one would expect the fut. ind. (*quem sequēmur*) or the deliberative subj. (*quem sequāmur*); App. 348, a, 351, 1, c. See note on II, 322, *quam prendimus arcem. (jubēs) pōnere.*

89. *pater*: a common appellation for an ancient god. *animīs*: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

90-98. The oracle bids them seek the "ancient mother of their race," i.e. the original home of the Trojans.

90. *ea* (*dicta*). *vīsa* (*sunt*): true pass. of *videō*, were seen.

91. *līmīnaque*: with *e* forming a long syllable; App. 394, a. Cf. *pulvis*, I, 478, and *domus*, II, 563.

92. *mōns*: Mt. Cynthus, sacred to

- Summissi petimus terram et vix fertur ad auris.  
 'Dardanidae duri, quae vos a stirpe parentum  
 95 prima tulit tellus, eadem vos ubere laeto  
 accipiet reducēs. Antiquam exquirite matrem.  
 Hic domus Aenēae cunctis dominabitur oris  
 et nati natorum et qui nascentur ab illis.'  
 Haec Phoebus; mixtoque ingens exorta tumultu  
 100 laetitia, et cuncti quae sint ea moenia quaerunt,  
 quo Phoebus vocet errantis jubeatque reverti.  
 Tum genitor veterum volvens monimenta virorum  
 'Audite, O proceres,' ait 'et spes discite vestrās.  
 Crēta Jovis magni mediō jacet insula pontō,  
 105 mōns Idaeus ubi et gentis cunābula nostrae.  
 Centum urbēs habitant magnās, uberrima rēgna,

auris, is f. ear\*

centum hundred\*

Crēta, ae f. large island in the eastern Mediterranean†

cunābula, ōrum n. cradle, birthplace†

Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan

discō, ere, didici learn (how)

dominor, āri, ātus hold sway, rule, govern

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, rough\*

exorior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up

exquirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus search (out)†

habitō (1) dwell, inhabit, possess†

Idaeus, a, um Idaean, of Ida, a mountain near Troy and one in Crete

insula, ae f. island

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*

laetitia, ae f. joy, delight, gladness

miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle, mix\*

monimentum (monumentum), ī n. reminder, memorial, record, tradition†

nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise\*

Phoebus, ī m. Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy\*

pontus, ī m. sea, waves\*

procer, eris m. leader, chief, noble

redux, ducis returning, restored

revertor, ī, rsus turn back, return

spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*

stirps, is f. stock, lineage, stem, race

summissus, a, um prostrate, humble†

tumultus, ūs m. tumult, uproar, din

uber, eris n. fertility, wealth, bosom;

adj. rich, fertile†

vester, tra, trum your (own), yours\*

vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

Apollo. cortina: the kettle on the tripod which served as a seat for the priestess when she delivered the oracles.

93. Summissi petimus terram: we fall low on the ground, fall prostrate.

94-95. Dardanidae: descendants of Dardanus. Dardanus had once lived in Italy, making the term especially appropriate here. quae tellus prima tulit vos: as later developments show, this reference was to Italy, but the Trojans failed to understand it so. Ancient oracles were commonly ambiguous. eadem (tellus).

97. Hic = in hac terrā, vestrā antiquā mātē. ōris: dat. with special verb, or abl. of place where; App. 297, 319.

98. et (ei) quī.

99-120. Led by Anchises's false interpretation of the oracle they sail for Crete.

99. Haec (dicta) Phoebus (fātus est). exorta (est). mixtō tumultū: abl. abs.; App. 343.

100-101. ea moenia: the city; promised by Apollo, ll. 95-98. sint, vocet, jubeat: subjunctives in indirect questions; App. 349. quō Phoebus (nōs) errantis vocet jubeatque (nōs) reverti.

102. volvens: as though written on a scroll, the form of the ancient book. (meus genitor): Anchisēs.

104. Crēta Jovis magni: since Jove was born and reared there. mediō (in) pontō: in the midst of the sea; App. 246.

105. mōns Idaeus (est) et cunābula (sunt). There was a Mt. Ida in Crete as well as in the Troad, evidence to Anchises of the Cretan origin of the Trojans.

106. (illi viri Crētae) habitant. rēgna: each city formed an independent kingdom.

*maximus unde pater, sī rīte audīta recorder,*  
*Teucus Rhoetēas primum est advectus in ōrās,*  
*optāvitque locum rēgnō. Nōndum Īlium et arcēs*  
*Pergameae steterant; habitābant vallibus īmīs.* 110  
*Hinc māter cultrix Cybeli Corybantiaque aera*  
*Īdaeumque nemus, hinc fida silentia sacrīs,*  
*et jūctī currum dominae subiēre leōnēs.*  
*Ergō agite et dīvum dūcunt quā jussa sequāmur:*  
*plācēmus ventōs et Gnōsia rēgna petāmus.* 115  
*Nec longō distant cursū: modo Juppiter adsit,*  
*tertia lūx classem Crētaeis sistet in ōrīs.'*  
*Sic fātus meritōs ārīs mactāvit honōrēs,*

**advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus** carry to, convey

**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze, bronze cymbals, used in the worship of Cybele\*

**Corybantius, a, um** of the Corybantes, priests of Cybele, Mother of the Gods†

**Crētaeus, a, um** Cretan, of Crete†

**cultrix, icis** *f.* dweller, inhabitant†

**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car\*

**Cybelus, i** *m.* mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods†

**distō, āre** stand apart, be distant†

**domina, ae** *f.* mistress, queen, lady†

**ergō** therefore, hence, consequently\*

**fidus, a, um** faithful, true, trustworthy\*

**Gnōs(s)ius, a, um** of Gnosus, a city of Crete†

**habitō (1)** dwell, inhabit, possess

**Īdaeus, a, um** of Mt. Ida, near Troy and in Crete

**Īlium, (i)** *i n.* Ilium, Troy

**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke\*

**jussum, i** *n.* command, order, behest

**leō, ōnis** *m.* lion

**mactō (1)** sacrifice, slaughter; honor

**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, merit, earn\*

**modo** only, (just) now

**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*

**nōndum** not yet†

**optō (1)** wish (for), choose, hope (for)\*

**Pergameus, a, um** of Pergamum, Trojan†

**plācō (1)** propitiate, calm, quiet, soothe

**quā** where(by), in any (some) way

**recorder, āri, ātus** recall, remember†

**Rhoetēus, a, um** of Rhoeteum, a promontory near Troy†

**rīte** duly, with proper ceremonies

**silentium, (i)** *n.* silence, mystery, quiet

**sistō, ere, steti, status** station, set(tle)

**tertius, a, um** third\*

**Teucus (cer), cri** *m.* early king of Troy

**unde** whence, from which place\*

**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale

107. (noster) **maximus (nātū) pater:** our eldest (earliest) ancestor. **audita:** what I have heard.

109. **rēgnō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303.

110. (illī virī) **habitābant:** cf. l. 106, **habitant.** (in) vallibus.

111. **Hinc: ex Crētā. Hinc (vēnit) māter (deōrum) cultrix (montis) Cybeli.** Cybeli: obj. gen. with **cultrix;** App. 284. **Corybantia aera:** the Corybantes, priests and attendants of Cybele, accompanied the processions of the goddess with loud clashing of cymbals and violent, ecstatic dancing and leaping.

112. **Īdaeum nemus:** a grove on Mt. Ida sacred to the goddess. **nemus:** with the last syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.* **silentia sacrīs:** according to this account, the secret and mysterious

ceremonies of Cybele and the custom of representing her as being drawn in a chariot by a yoke of lions all came from Crete. **sacrīs:** dat. of reference with **vēnit** understood.

113. **currum subiēre (= subiērun):** went beneath the car = went beneath the yoke of the car. Cybele was often represented in a chariot drawn by lions or other wild animals.

114-115. **sequāmur, quā jussa de-(ōr)um (nōs) dūcunt. sequāmur, placēmus, petāmus:** vol.; App. 254.

116. **Nec longō cursū:** about 150 miles; abl. of degree of difference; App. 335. **Juppiter:** as the god of the sky, of the weather, and of storms. **adsit:** subj. in a proviso clause; App. 375.

117. **lūx (diēi).** (nostram) classem.

118. **sic fātus (Anchisēs).**

120 taurum Neptūnō, taurum tibi, pulcher Apollō,  
nigram Hiemī pecudem, Zephyrīs fēlicibus albam.

*Fāma volat pulsum rēgnīs cessisse paternīs*  
*Īdomenēa ducem, dēsertaque litora Crētae,*  
*hoste vacāre domum sēdēsque astāre relictās.*  
125 *Linquimus Ortygiae portūs pelagōque volāmus*  
*bacchātamque jugis Naxum viridemque Donūsam,*  
*Ōlearum niveamque Parum sparsāsque per aequor*  
*Cycladas, et crēbris legimus freta cōnsita terrīs.*  
*Nauticus exoritur variō certāmine clāmor:*  
*hortantur socii Crētā proavōsque petāmus.*

130 *Prōsequitur surgēns ā puppi ventus euntīs,*

albus, a, um white†\*  
Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and  
prophecy\*  
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, ready)\*  
bacchor, āri, ātus revel (over), traverse  
in Bacchic revel, celebrate the rites  
of Bacchus†  
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, yield\*  
certāmen, inis n. rivalry, contest†\*  
cōserō, ere, sēvi, situs sow, scatter,  
sprinkle†  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous\*  
Crēta, ae f. large island in the eastern  
Mediterranean  
Cyclades, um f. islands of the Aegean†  
dēsērō, ere, ui, rtus abandon, desert\*  
Donūsa, ae f. island of the Aegean†  
dux, ducis m. leader, guide, pilot\*  
exior, irī, ortus (a)rise, spring up  
fēlix, icis happy, favorable, fortunate\*  
fretum, i n. strait, sea, waters  
Hiems, emis f. Winter, Storm\*  
hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite\*  
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
Īdomeneus, ei m. king of Crete†  
jugum, i n. yoke, (mountain) ridge\*

legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, skim\*  
linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert\*  
nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical†  
Naxos, i f. island of the Aegean†  
Neptūnus, i m. Neptune, god of the sea\*  
niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky\*  
niveus, a, um white, snowy  
Ōlearus (os), i f. island of the Aegean†  
Ortygia, ae f. early name of Delos, an  
island of the Aegean†  
Paros, i f. island of the Aegean, famous  
for its clear white marble†  
paternus, a, um paternal, ancestral†  
pecus, udis f. animal, member of flock\*  
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (out)  
proavus, i m. ancestor, forefather†  
prōsequor, i, secūtus accompany, attend  
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
illustrious, noble\*  
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus strew, scatter\*  
taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox\*  
vacō (1) be empty, be free (abl.)  
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse\*  
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*  
volō (1) fly (forth, abroad)\*  
Zephyrus, i m. the (west) wind

120. albam (pecudem): white victims were offered to kindly divinities, black victims to destructive ones.

121-134. The founding of the Cretan Pergamum.

121-123. (ex) rēgnīs. cessisse, dēserta (esse), vacāre, astāre: indir. statement depending on *fāma volat* = *dicunt*; App. 390. Observe the differences of tense; App. 351, 1 and 4. *Īdomenēa*: acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. The legend relates that Idomeneus was overtaken by a storm while returning from the expedition against Troy, and vowed to the god of the sea that he would sacrifice the first one who met him on

his safe return home. This proved to be his own son, and the gods in anger at such a sacrifice sent a pestilence which caused Idomeneus to be driven from Crete and later to settle in Italy. *dēserta* (esse). *hoste*: abl. of separation with *vacāre*; App. 340.

124. *pelagō*: abl. of route; App. 338.

125-127. *bacchātam*: used passively. (in) *jugis*. *Naxum*, *Donūsam*, *Ōlearum*, *Parum*, *Cycladas*, *freta*: objects of *legimus*.

128. *variō certāmine*: the ships are racing each other.

129. (ut) *petāmus*: subst. vol. clause; App. 360.

130. (nōs) *euntis*: as we sail.



*et tandem antīquīs Cūrētum adlābimur ōrīs.*  
*Ergō avidus mūrōs optātae mōlior urbīs*  
*Pergameamque vocō, et laetam cognōmine gentem*  
*hortor amāre focōs arcemque attollere tēctīs.*

*Jamque ferē siccō subductae lītore puppēs;* 135  
*cōnūbiīs arvīsque novīs operāta juventūs;*  
*jūra domōsque dabam: subitō cum tābida membrīs*  
*corruptō caelī tractū miserandaque vēnit*  
*arboribusque satisque luēs et lētifer annus.*  
*Linquēbant dulcīs animās aut aegra trahēbant* 140  
*corpora; tum sterilis exūrere Sīrius agrōs,*

*adlābor*, *i*, *lāpsus* glide to (*dat.*)†  
*aeger*, *grā*, *grum* sick, weary, wretched\*  
*ager*, *grī m.* field, territory, land\*  
*amō* (1) love, cherish, like\*  
*annus*, *i m.* year; season\*  
*arbōs* (*or*), *oris f.* tree; wood(s)\*  
*attollō*, *ere* raise, lift, rear\*  
*avidus*, *a*, *um* eager, desirous  
*cognōmen*, *inis n.* (sur)name, title  
*cōnūbium*, (*i*) *i n.* marriage, wedlock  
*corrumpō*, *ere*, *rūpī*, *ruptus* break up,  
 spoil, taint  
*Cūrētes*, *um m.* Cretan priests of Jupiter  
 identified with the Corybantest†  
*dulcis*, *e* sweet, dear, fond\*  
*ergō* therefore, then, consequently\*  
*exūrō*, *ere*, *ussī*, *ustus* burn (up), con-  
 sume  
*ferē* almost, about†  
*focus*, *i m.* hearth, fireplace, home†  
*hortor*, *ārī*, *ātus* urge, encourage, incite\*  
*jūs*, *jūris n.* law, right, justice, decree

*juventūs*, *ūtis f.* youth, young men\*  
*lētifer*, *era*, *erum* deadly, death-bearing†  
*linquō*, *ere*, *liqui*, *lictus* leave, give up\*  
*luēs*, *is f.* blight, pestilence, plague†  
*membrum*, *i n.* member, limb, body\*  
*miserandus*, *a*, *um* piteous, pitiable  
*mōlior*, *irī*, *ītus* do, make, build, effect  
*mūrus*, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
*operor*, *ārī*, *ātus* be busy, be occupied  
 with (*dat.*)†  
*optō* (1) desire, choose, wish, hope (for)\*  
*Pergameus*, *a*, *um* of Pergamum, Tro-  
 jan  
*sata*, *ōrum n.* crops, harvest  
*siccus*, *a*, *um* dry, thirsty  
*Sīrius*, (*i*) *i m.* the dog star†  
*sterilis*, *e* barren, unfruitful, sterile†  
*subdūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus* draw up,  
 beach, remove  
*subitō* suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
*tābidus*, *a*, *um* wasting, decayed†  
*tractus*, *ūs m.* region, quarter†

131. *Cūrētum*: priests and attendants of Jupiter during his infancy in Crete. *ōrīs*: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

133. (*et hanc urbem*) *vocō Pergameam*: Pergamum, a Cretan city, is thus connected by Vergil with Troy (Pergamum) and the wanderings of Aeneas. *cognōmine*: *abl.* of cause with *laetam*; App. 332.

134. *hortor amāre* = *hortor ut ament*: App. 360, *a*. *tēctīs*: *for (to protect) their homes*; *dat.* of reference; App. 301.

135-146. A grievous pestilence falls upon man and beast and all living things, and they prepare to consult the oracle again.

135. (*in*) *lītore subductae* (*erant*): the ships were drawn up on land when not in active use and were launched only

on the occasion of a voyage. See the note on l. 71.

136. *cōnūbiīs*: pronounced here as though spelled *cōnūbjīs*, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. *cōnūbiīs*, *arvīs*: *datives* or *ablatives* of means with *operāta* (*erat*); App. 331.

137-139. *cum subitō*, *corruptō caeli tractū*, *vēnit* (*there came*) *membrīs arboribusque satisque tābida miserandaque luēs*. *membrīs*: *dat.* of direction with *vēnit*, or of reference; App. 306, 301.

138. *corruptō tractū*: *abl. abs.*, or *abl.* of source; App. 343, 323. This was formerly a common explanation of plagues, usually interpreted as being produced by divine wrath.

141. *sterilis*: *proleptic*; *Sīrius parched the fields bare*, i.e., till they became bare; App. 440. *Sīrius*: the Dog Star rises with the sun in the latter part of summer,

ārēbant herbae et victum seges aegra negābat.  
 Rūrsus ad ōrāclum Ortygiae Phoebumque remēnsō  
 hortātur pater īre marī veniamque precārī,  
 145 *quam fessīs finem rēbus ferat, unde labōrum*  
*temptāre auxilium jubeat, quō vertere cursūs.*

*Nox erat et terrīs animālia somnus habēbat:*  
*effigiēs sacrae dīvum Phrygiūque penātēs,*  
*quōs mēcum ab Trojā mediūque ex ignibus urbis*  
 150 *extuleram, vīsī ante oculōs astāre jacentis*  
*in somnīs multō manifestī lūmine, quā sē*  
*plēna per īnsertās fundēbat lūna fenestrās;*  
*tum sic adfārī et cūrās hīs dēmere dictīs:*  
*‘Quod tibi dēlātō Ortygiam dictūrus Apollō est,*

adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost\*  
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
 animal, ālis n. animal, living thing†  
 Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 āreō, ēre, uī be dry; parch†  
 a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, ready)\*  
 auxilium, (i)ī n. aid, help, assistance\*  
 dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (down) to,  
 convey†  
 dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus remove  
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus carry forth,  
 raise\*  
 effigiēs, ēi f. image, likeness, ghost  
 fenestra, ae f. window, opening  
 herba, ae f. grass, herbage, sward\*  
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite\*  
 īnsērō, ere, uī, rtus place, insert†  
 jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*  
 lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
 manifestus, a, um clear, plain, manifest

negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)  
 ōrāc(u)lum, ī n. oracle, prophecy  
 Ortygia, ae f. ancient name of Delos,  
 an island in the Aegean  
 penātēs, ium m. household gods\*  
 Phoebus, ī m. Apollo, god of light, music,  
 and prophecy\*  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling  
 precor, āri, ātus pray (for, to), invoke†\*  
 quā where, where(by), in any (some)  
 way  
 remētiōr, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, re-  
 traverse  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
 seges, etis f. crop, harvest, grain field  
 temptō (1) try, seek, test, examine\*  
 unde whence, from what source\*  
 venia, ae f. favor, pardon, grace  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, (ex)change\*  
 victus, ūs m. food, living, victuals

during the intensely hot weather known  
 as "dog days" (canicular days), once  
 thought to be due to the combined heat  
 of the Dog Star (Sirius) and the sun.  
 exūrere: hist. inf.; App. 257.

143-144. remēnsō marī: abl. abs.,  
 remēnsō being used as a passive. pater  
 (Anchisēs) hortātur (nōs) īre = ut eāmus;  
 App. 360, a.

145-146. quam finem ferat (Phoebus),  
 unde (nōs) temptāre auxilium jubeat,  
 quō (jubeat nōs) vertere cursūs: indir.  
 questions depending on the idea of asking  
 implied in veniam precārī; App. 349.  
 (nōbis) fessīs. labōrum auxilium: *help*  
*of (for) our troubles;* obj. gen.; App.  
 284.

147-171. The penates (household gods)  
 appear to Aeneas by night and tell him

to leave Crete and seek a western land  
 called Hesperia by the Greeks but Italy  
 by the inhabitants.

147. (in) terrīs.

148-151. effigiēs Phrygiūque penātēs  
 . . . vīsī (sunt) astāre. dīv(ōr)um. jacen-  
 tis (meī) in somnīs: *as I lay asleep.*

151. manifesti: modifying effigiēs  
 Phrygiūque penātēs, and agreeing with  
 the latter. quā: adv.

152. īnsertās: *set* (in the walls).

153. adfārī, dēmere: depending on  
 vīsī sunt understood, or else historical in-  
 finitives, with effigiēs Phrygiūque penātēs  
 (understood) as subject; App. 257.  
 cūrās (meās).

154. dēlātō: *having arrived*, i.e., if you  
 should go. Ortygiam: acc. of place to  
 which; App. 315, a.

*hīc canit et tua nōs ēn ultrō ad līmīna mittit.* 155  
*Nōs tē Dardaniā incēnsā tuaque arma secūtī,*  
*nōs tumidum sub tē permēnsī classibus aequor,*  
*īdem ventūrōs tōliēmus in astra nepōtēs*  
*imperiumque urbī dabimus. Tū moenia magnīs*  
*magna parā longumque fugae nē linque labōrem.* 160  
*Mūtandae sēdēs. Nōn haec tibi lītora suāsīt*  
*Dēlius aut Crētae jussit cōnsidere Apollō.*  
*Est locus, Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine dīcunt,*  
*terra antīqua, potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae;*  
*Oenōtrī coluēre virī; nunc fāma minōrēs* 165  
*Ītaliā dīxisse ducis dē nōmine gentem:*  
*hae nōbīs propriae sēdēs, hīnc Dardanus ortus*  
*Īasiusque pater, genus ā quō princepe nostrum.*

**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation\*  
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant\*  
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title  
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor, foster\*  
**cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle  
**Crēta, ae** *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean  
**Dardania, ae** *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy  
**Dardanus, ī** *m.* early king of Troy†  
**Dēlius, a, um** Delian, of Delos, birth-place of Apollo†  
**dux, ducis** *m.* leader, guide, pilot\*  
**ēn** lo! behold! see! look!  
**glaeba, ae** *f.* soil, sod, glebe  
**Grajus, a, um** Greek\*  
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* Italy, Westland

**Īasius, (i)ī** *m.* brother of Dardanus†  
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, burn\*  
**linquō, ere, liquī, lictus** leave, desert, omit\*  
**minōrēs, um** *m.* descendants, posterity  
**mūtō (1)** (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
**Oenōtr(i)us, a, um** of Oenotria, a district of southern Italy  
**orior, irī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up  
**permētiōr, irī, mēnsus** measure through, traverse†  
**potēns, entis** powerful, mighty\*  
**princeps, cipis** *m.* first, chief, leader  
**proprius, a, um** one's own, secure, permanent  
**suādēō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus** persuade, recommend  
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, surging  
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, bosom, fertility  
**ultrō** beyond, voluntarily\*

**156-157.** *Dardaniā incēnsā:* abl. abs. sub *tē* = *tē* duce. *Nōs secūtī* (sumus), *nōs permēnsī* (sumus).

**158.** (*nōs*) *īdem. tuōs nepōtēs:* refers to the power and the glory of the Roman race, and especially to the deification of Julius and Augustus Caesar, who traced their ancestry to Aeneas.

**159-160.** (*tuae*) *urbī:* Rome. *moenia magnis magna:* mighty walls for the mighty. With *magnis* understand either *viris* or *rēbus*. Perhaps the poet deliberately left it ambiguous. *moenia magnis magna, longum linque labōrem:* intentionally impressive alliteration; App. 411.

**160.** *parā, linque:* imperatives; the use of *nē* with the imp. is poetic; App. 256, a.

**161.** *Mūtandae* (sunt).

**162.** *Crētae:* loc.; the only example in the *Aeneid* of the loc. case of an island; App 345.

**163.** *Grajī:* pronounce *Grajīi*; App. 6, b. (*quem*) *Grajī dicunt* (= *vocant*) *Hesperiam*. ll. 163-166 = I, 530-533.

**164.** *armīs, ūbere:* ablatives of respect; App. 325.

**165.** *Oenōtrī viri coluēre* (= *coluērunt terram*). *fāma* (est) = *dicunt*.

**166.** *dixisse* (= *vocāvisse*) *gentem Ītaliā. dē nōmine ducis* (Itali).

**167.** *sēdēs* (sunt), *ortus* (est).

**167-168.** *Dardanus Īasiusque:* Dardanus and his brother *Īasius* were born in Etruria. On growing up, Dardanus emigrated to Asia Minor and married the

- Surge age et haec laetus longaevō dicta parentī*  
 170 *haud dubitanda refer: Corythum terrāsque requirat*  
*Ausonias: Dictaea negat tibi Juppiter arva.*  
*Tālibus attonitus visis et vōce deōrum*  
*(nec sopor illud erat, sed cōram agnōscere vultūs*  
*vēlātāsque comās praesentiaque ōra vidēbat;*  
 175 *tum gelidus tōtō mānābat corpore sūdor)*  
*corripio ē strātis corpus tendōque supinās*  
*ad caelum cum vōce manūs et mūnera libō*  
*intemerāta focīs. Perfectō laetus honōre*  
*Anchīsēn faciō certum remque ordine pandō.*  
 180 *Agnōvit prōlem ambiguum geminōsque parentīs,*  
*sēque novō veterum dēceptum errōre locōrum.*  
*Tum memorat: 'Nāte, Īliacīs exercite fātis,*

agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, ambiguous  
 attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, astounded†  
 Ausonius, a, um Italian, Ausonian  
 certus, a, um determined, sure, fixed, reliable; certum facere inform\*  
 coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses\*  
 cōram face to face, before the face  
 corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
 Corythus, i m. a city of northern Italy, Cortona†  
 dēcipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus deceive†  
 Dictaeus, a, um Dictean, of Dicte, a Cretan mountain†  
 dubitō (1) waver, doubt, hesitate†  
 error, ōris m. mistake, wandering  
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass\*  
 focus, i m. hearth, fireplace, home  
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy  
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*

intemerātus, a, um pure, undefiled  
 libō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)  
 longaevus, a, um long-lived, aged  
 mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)  
 memorō (1) (re)call, relate, recount, say\*  
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)  
 ordō, inis m. order, arrangement, array\*  
 pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open, reveal\*  
 perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish, execute, finish, perfect†  
 praesēns, entis present, at hand  
 prōlēs, is f. offspring, progeny, race\*  
 requirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus (re)seek  
 sopor, ōris m. slumber, sleep  
 strāta, ōrum n. bed; pavement  
 sūdor, ōris m. sweat, perspiration  
 supinus, a, um supine, upturned†  
 vēlō (1) cover, veil, envelop, wrap (up)  
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*  
 visum, i n. sight, appearance, vision†  
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

daughter of Teucer or Teucrus (l. 108), from whom he inherited the kingdom of Troy. Iasius emigrated to Samothrace.  
 pater: a purely honorary title here. ā quō principe (Dardanō ortum est) nostrum genus.

169. longaevō parentī (tuō): Anchises.

170. refer: imp. (Anchīsēs) requirat: vol. (jussive) subj. or indir. command; App. 254, 390, b.

172-191. Aeneas reports his vision to Anchises, and the Trojans set sail happy at the prospect of soon ending their wanderings.

172. (ego) attonitus.

173. vultūs (deōrum).

175. corpore: abl. of separation; App. 340.

176-177. supinās manūs: the attitude of prayer; compare the note on palmās, I, 93. mūnera: offerings of wine.

178. focīs: upon the hearth, which served as the altar of the penates; dat. of direction; App. 306.

180. ambiguum prōlem geminōsque parentis: i.e., Teucer in Crete and Dardanus in Italy.

181. dēceptum (esse). locōrum: obj. gen.; App. 284. novō veterum: the words are contrasted by being brought together, a Vergilian conceit. novō veterum errōre locōrum: interlocked order; App. 442.

182. Nāte, exercite: vocatives.



*sōla mihī tālīs cāsūs Cassandra canēbat.*

*Nunc repetō haec generī portendere dēbīta nostrō  
et saepe Hesperiam, saepe Itāla rēgna vocāre.*

185

*Sed quis ad Hesperiae ventūrōs litora Teucrōs  
crēderet? Aut quem tum vātēs Cassandra movēret?  
Cēdāmus Phoebō et monitī meliōra sequāmur.'*

*Sic ait, et cūctī dictō pārēmus ovantēs.*

*Hanc quoque dēserimus sēdem paucisque relictīs  
vēla damus vastumque cavā trabe currimus aequor.*

190

*Postquam altum tenuēre ratēs nec jam amplius ūllae  
appārent terrae, caelum undique et undique pontus,  
tum mihī caeruleus suprā caput astitit imber  
noctem hiememque ferēs, et inhorruit unda tenebrīs.*

195

*Continuō ventī volvunt mare magnaue surgunt  
aequora, dispersi jactāmur gurgite vastō;*

**altum**, *i n.* the deep (sea); heaven  
**amplius** *comp. adv.* more, farther  
**appāreō**, *ēre, uī, itus* appear  
**a(d)stō**, *āre, stiti* stand (by, near)\*  
**caerul(e)us**, *a, um* dark (blue), gloomy\*  
**canō**, *ere, cecinī, cantus* sing (of), proph-  
esy, chant, proclaim\*  
**Cassandra**, *ae f.* daughter of Priam, a  
prophetess whom none believed  
**cavus**, *a, um* hollow, vaulted\*  
**cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessus* yield, fall to\*  
**continuō** immediately, at once†  
**crēdō**, *ere, didī, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)\*  
**currō**, *ere, cucurri, cursus* run (over)  
**dēbeō**, *ēre, uī, itus* owe, be due, be  
destined  
**dēserō**, *ere, uī, rtus* desert, abandon\*  
**dispergō**, *ere, rsi, rsus* scatter, disperse†  
**gurgis**, *itis m.* whirl(pool, wind), flood\*  
**Hesperia**, *ae f.* Italy, Westland  
**hiems**, *emis f.* storm, winter\*  
**imber**, *bris m.* rain, storm, flood, water  
**inhorreō**, *ēre, uī* shiver, bristle†

**Italus**, *a, um* Italian, of Italy  
**jactō** (1) toss (about), buffet, hurl, fling\*  
**melior**, *ius* better, superior, preferable  
**moneō**, *ēre, uī, itus* advise, warn (of)  
**ovō** (1) triumph, rejoice, exult†  
**pāreō**, *ēre, uī, itus* obey, yield (*dat.*)  
**paucus**, *a, um* small, few, meager\*  
**Phoebus**, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
**pontus**, *i m.* sea; waves\*  
**portendō**, *ere, ī, ntus* foreshadow, stretch  
forth†  
**postquam** after (that), when\*  
**quoque** also, even, too, likewise\*  
**ratis**, *is f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
**repetō**, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* reseek, recall,  
repeat  
**saepe** often, frequently\*  
**suprā** over, above (*acc.*)†  
**tenebrae**, *arum f.* darkness, gloom  
**trabs** (*trabēs*), *trabis f.* beam, timber,  
ship  
**undique** on (from) all sides\*

184. **repetō** (Cassandram) **porten-  
dere** (= **portendisse**). See the note on  
II, 247, for Cassandra's prophecies. **dē-  
bita**: (*as*) *due*.

185. (Cassandram) **saepe Hesperiam**  
(**vocāre**), **saepe Itāla rēgna vocāre**. **vo-  
cāre**: *spoke of, mentioned*.

186-187. **crēderet, movēret**: deliber-  
ative subjunctives; App. 348. **vātēs**:  
(*as*) *a seer*.

188. **Cēdāmus**: *vol. subj.*; App.  
254.

189. **dictō**: *dat.* with special verb;  
App. 297.

190. **paucis relictis**: to account for

the legend that Cretan Pergamum was  
founded by Trojans. See I. 133.

191. **vēla** (**ventis**) **damus**.

192-218. Soon after leaving Crete a  
violent storm drives the Trojans out of  
their course to the Strophades, some  
small islands infested by Harpies.

192. **tenuēre** = **tenuērunt**.

193. (**et postquam**) **caelum** (**appāret**).

195. **tenebrīs**: *abl.* of manner or  
means; App. 328, 331.

196. **ventī volvunt mare magna**:  
double alliteration of **v v** and **m m**.

197. (**in**) **gurgite**.

- involvere diem nimbi et nox ūmida caelum  
 abstulit, ingeminant abruptis nūbibus ignēs.  
 200 Excutimur cursū et caecis errāmus in undīs.  
 Ipse diem noctemque negat discernere caelō  
 nec meminisse viae mediā Palinūrus in undā.  
 Trīs adeō incertōs caecā cāligine sōlēs  
 errāmus pelagō, totidem sine sīdere noctēs.  
 205 Quārtō terra diē primum sē attollere tandem  
 vīsa, aperire procul montis ac volvere fūmum.  
 Vēla cadunt, rēmīs insurgimus; haud mora, nautae  
 adnixi torquent spūmās et caerula verrunt.  
 Servātum ex undīs Strophadum mē litora primum  
 210 excipiunt. Strophades Grajō stant nōmine dictae  
 insulae Īoniō in magnō, quās dira Celaenō

abrupō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off  
 adeō to such an extent, indeed  
 adnitor, ī, sus (nixus) lean upon, strive  
 aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open (out)\*  
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
 auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away,  
 rob†  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue), gloomy\*  
 cāligō, inis f. fog, darkness, gloom†  
 Celaenō, ūs f. a harpy†  
 dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful\*  
 discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus distinguish,  
 discern†  
 excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch  
 excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off, drive  
 from\*  
 fūmus, ī m. smoke, vapor, fume  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 incertus, a, um indistinguishable, un-  
 certain  
 ingeminō (1) redouble, increase, repeat

insula, ae f. island  
 insurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on)  
 (dat.)†  
 involvō, ere, ī, volūtus envelop, wrap in  
 Īonius, a, um Ionian (Sea), Greek†  
 meminī, isse remember, recall (gen.)  
 mora, ae f. delay, pause, hindrance\*  
 nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner†  
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say not (no)  
 nimbus, ī m. storm cloud, rainstorm\*  
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist\*  
 Palinūrus, ī m. Trojan pilot†\*  
 quārtus, a, um fourth†  
 sine without (abl.)\*  
 sōl, sōlis m. sun; day\*  
 spūma, ae f. foam, froth, spray  
 Strophades, um f. islands of the Ionian  
 Sea†  
 torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, toss, sway\*  
 totidem an equal number, so many  
 trēs, tria three\*  
 ūmidus, a, um wet, damp, moist  
 verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

198. involvere = involvērunt.

201. Ipse Palinūrus: the master (pilot).  
 (sē) discernere (in) caelō.

202. viae: gen. with meminisse; App.  
 288. nec meminisse = et (negat sē) me-  
 minisse: inf. of indir. statement; App. 263.

203. Trīs incertōs sōlēs (= diēs): it  
 was so dark that it was uncertain whether  
 day or night prevailed; acc. of duration  
 of time; App. 314. caecā cāligine: abl.  
 of cause with incertōs; App. 332.

204. (in) pelagō: or abl. of the route;  
 App. 338. totidem noctēs (errāmus).

205-206. terra vīsa (est) sē attollere,  
 aperire, ac volvere. volvere fumum: to  
 send up wreaths of smoke.

207. Vēla cadunt: on nearing the  
 shore, the ancients furled the sails of  
 their boats and used the oars. rēmīs:  
 dat. with compound; App. 298. mora  
 (est).

208. caerul(e)a (aequora).

210. dictae = vocatae. stant = sunt,  
 but more picturesque.

211-213. insulae: with the final diph-  
 thong shortened before the initial vowel  
 of the following word. This is called  
 semi-hiatus; App. 400. Īoniō (mari).  
 Phinēia domus: to punish Phineus  
 for his crimes, Jupiter blinded him  
 and sent the Harpies, which defiled  
 his food when he attempted to eat. Two

Harpyiaequae colunt aliae, Phinēia postquam  
 clausa domus mēnsāsque metū liquēre priōrēs.  
 Trīstius haud illis mōnstrum, nec saevior ūlla  
 pestis et īra deum Stygiis sēsē extulit undīs. 215  
 Virginei volucrum vultūs, foedissima ventris  
 prōluviēs uncaeque manūs et pallida semper  
 ōra famē.  
 Hūc ubi dēlātī portūs intrāvimus, ecce  
 laeta boum passim campīs armenta vidēmus 220  
 caprigenumque pecus nūllō custōde per herbās.  
 Inruimus ferrō et divōs ipsumque vocāmus  
 in partem praedamque Jovem; tum litore curvō  
 exstruimusque torōs dapibusque epulāmur opīmīs.

armentum, ī *n.* herd, drove (of cattle)  
 bōs, bovis *m.* (*f.*) ox, bull, cow  
 caprigenus, a, um goat(-born)†  
 claudō, ere, ī, sus shut (in), (in)close\*  
 colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit\*  
 curvus, a, um bent, curved, wind-  
 ing\*  
 custōs, ōdis *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), keeper\*  
 daps, is *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*  
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring down,  
 convey  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry (out),  
 raise\*  
 epulor, āri, ātus feast, banquet (*abl.*)†  
 exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build (up),  
 pile†  
 famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed  
 foedus, a, um foul, filthy, loathsome†  
 Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a ravenous monster  
 with the body of a bird and the face  
 of a woman†  
 herba, ae *f.* grass, herb(age), sward\*  
 inruō, ere, uī fall (on), rush on  
 intrō (1) enter, penetrate†  
 linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert\*  
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table\*

metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety\*  
 mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, monster, prodigy\*  
 opimus, a, um rich, sumptuous, fer-  
 tile  
 pallidus, a, um pale, pallid, wan  
 passim everywhere, all about\*  
 pecus, oris *n.* herd, flock, drove\*  
 pestis, is *f.* plague, pestilence, curse  
 Phinēus, a, um of Phineus, king of  
 Thrace, blinded by the gods and  
 tormented by the harpies for his crimes†  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 praeda, ae *f.* booty, plunder, spoils  
 prior, ius former, previous, prior\*  
 prōluviēs, ēi *f.* overflow, excrement†  
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
 semper always, ever\*  
 Stygius, a, um Stygian, infernal, of the  
 River Styx in Hades†\*  
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
 torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed\*  
 uncus, a, um curved, hooked, bent  
 venter, tris *m.* belly, maw  
 virgineus, a, um of a girl, maidenly;  
 pure  
 volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl†  
 vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect\*

of the Argonauts, Zetes and Calais,  
 finally chased the Harpies away, and  
 they then took up their abode in the  
 Strophades. **Harpyiae:** yi form a diph-  
 thong, pronounced *ue*.

213. clausa (est). metū: *abl.* of cause;  
 App. 332. liquēre = liquērint.

214. illis: *abl.* with comparative; App.  
 327. mōnstrum (sē extulit).

215. de(ōr)um.

216. vultūs (erant).

218. famē: with long *e*, as though of  
 the fifth declension; *abl.* of cause.

219-244. The Harpies rudely disturb  
 the sacrificial banquet of the Trojans  
 but are finally beaten off.

221. caprigenum pecus: *flock of goats*.  
 nūllō custōde: *with no one to guard them*;  
*abl. abs.*; App. 343.

222-223. ferrō: *abl.* of means. divōs  
 vocāmus: i.e., a portion of the booty was  
 promised to the gods as a sacrifice, on  
 condition that they would help the Tro-  
 jans secure it. (in) litore.

224. torōs: *couches of turf on which*

- 225 *At subitae horrifico lapsu de montibus adsunt*  
*Harpyiae et magnis quatiunt clangoribus alas,*  
*diripiuntque dapēs contactūque omnia foedant*  
*immundo; tum vox taetrum dira inter odorem.*  
*Rursum in secessu longo sub rupe cavata*  
 230 *[arboribus clausa circum atque horrentibus umbris]*  
*instruimus mensas arisque repōnimus ignem;*  
*rursum ex diverso caeli caecisque latebris*  
*turba sonans praedam pedibus circumvolat uncis,*  
*polluit ore dapēs. Socii tunc arma capessant*  
 235 *edicō, et dirā bellum cum gente gerendum.*  
*Haud secus ac iussū faciunt tectosque per herbam*  
*dispōnunt ensis et scūta latentia condunt.*  
*Ergo ubi delapsae sonitum per curva dedere*

**ala, ae f.** wing\*

**arbōs (or), oris f.** tree, wood(s)\*

**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark\*

**capessō, ere, ivi (ii), itus** seize (eagerly)

**cavō (1)** hollow (out)

**circumvolō (1)** fly around

**clangor, oris m.** noise, whirl, clang

**claudō, ere, si, sus** shut (in), (in)close\*

**condō, ere, didi, ditus** establish, found, place; hide\*

**contactus, ūs m.** contact, touch†

**curvus, a, um** bent, curved, winding\*

**daps, is f.** (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*

**dēlabor, i, lapsus** glide down, slip (down)

**diripiō, ere, ui, reptus** tear apart, plunder

**dirus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful\*

**dispōnō, ere, posui, positus** arrange, distribute†

**diversus, a, um** separate(d), different\*

**edicō, ere, dixi, dictus** proclaim, order†

**ēnsis, is m.** sword, knife\*

**ergō** therefore, hence, consequently\*

**foedō (1)** defile, pollute, befoul

**gerō, ere, gessi, gestus** bear, wage\*

**Harpyia, ae f.** harpy, a ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird

**herba, ae f.** grass, herb(age), sward\*

**horreō, ere, ui** bristle, shudder(at)\*

**horrificus, a, um** horrible, horrifying†

**immundus, a, um** foul, filthy, dirty†

**instruō, ere, struxi, structus** build (up), equip, array, heap up, instruct

**lapsus, ūs m.** gliding, slip, swoop

**latebra, ae f.** hiding place, retreat, lair

**latēns, entis** hiding, hidden, secret

**mēnsa, ae f.** table\*

**odor, oris m.** odor, scent, stench

**polluō, ere, ui, ūtus** defile, pollute, profane

**praeda, ae f.** booty, plunder, spoils

**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter

**repōnō, ere, posui, positus** replace\*

**rūpēs, is f.** rock, cliff, crag\*

**rursus, um** again, anew, back(ward)\*

**scūtum, i n.** shield

**secessus, ūs m.** retreat, recess, nook

**secus** otherwise, differently

**sonitus, ūs m.** sound, roar, crash, noise

**sonō, āre, ui, itus** (re)sound, roar\*

**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected

**taeter, tra, trum** foul, filthy, loathsome†

**tegō, ere, tēxi, tectus** hide, cover\*

**turba, ae f.** crowd, mob, throng, uproar

**uncus, a, um** curved, bent, hooked

to recline at the banquet. **dapibus:** abl. with **epulāmur** = **vēscimur**; App. 342; a variety of the abl. of means.

**226.** **magnis clangoribus;** with a terrible din of their wings.

**228.** **vox dira (est).**

**229-230.** Almost the same as I, 310-311.

**232.** **diversō = diversā parte.**

**233.** **pedibus:** abl. of means. **turba (Harpyiārum).**

**234.** **(nostrās) dapēs. (ut) capessant:** a subst. vol. clause, depending on **edicō**; App. 360.

**235.** **gerendum (esse):** indir. statement, depending on **edicō**; App. 263, 360, *a.* **dirā gente (Harpyiārum).**

**236-237.** **ac: than. tectōs, latentia:** proleptic; equivalent to **ita dispōnunt ēnsis ut tegantur et ita condunt scūta ut lateant**; App. 440.

**238.** **dedere = dedērunt.**



*litora, dat signum speculā Mīsēnus ab altā*  
*aere cavō. Invādunt socii et nova proelia temptant,* 240  
*obscēnās pelagi ferrō foedāre volucris.*  
*Sed neque vim plūmīs ūllam nec vulnera tergō*  
*accipiunt, celerique fugā sub sīdera lāpsae*  
*sēmēsam praedam et vestigia foeda relinquunt.*  
*Ūna in praecelsā cōnsēdit rūpe Celaenō,* 245  
*īnfēlix vātēs, rumpitque hanc pectore vōcem:*  
*‘Bellum etiam prō caede boum strātisque juvencis,*  
*Lāomedontiadae, bellumne inferre parātis*  
*et patriō Harpyiās insōntis pellere rēgnō?*  
*Accipite ergō animīs atque haec mea figite dicta,* 250  
*quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns, mihi Phoebus Apollō*  
*praedixit, vōbīs Furiarum ego maxima pandō.*

**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze (utensil, trumpet)\*  
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**bōs, bovis** *m. (f.)* bull, ox, cow  
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre  
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted\*

**Celaenō, ūs** *f.* a harpy  
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, speedy\*  
**cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus** sit, settle\*  
**ergō** therefore, hence, consequently\*

**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
**figō, ere, xi, xus** fix, fasten, (im)print\*  
**foedō** (1) defile, mangle, disfigure  
**foedus, a, um** filthy, foul, loathsome

**Furiae, ārum** *f.* Furies, avenging spirits  
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman

**inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus** bring to, offer, wage

**insōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless  
**invādō, ere, si, sus** go (into), attack  
**juvencus, i** *m.* bullock, steer, ox†\*

**Lāomedontiadēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Laomedon; Trojan†

**Mīsēnus, i** *m.* Trojan trumpeter†

**obscēnus, a, um** disgusting, filthy, foul†  
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent  
**pandō, ere, i, passus** open (up), disclose\*  
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive (away), strike

**Phoebus, i** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**plūma, ae** *f.* feather, plume†  
**praecelsus, a, um** lofty, high†  
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, plunder, spoils

**praedicō, ere, dixī, dictus** foretell, predict†  
**prō** in behalf of, (in return) for (*abl.*)\*  
**proelium, (i)** *n.* battle, conflict, fray  
**rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus** break, burst (forth), utter\*

**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag\*

**sēmēsus, a, um** half-eaten†

**signum, i** *n.* sign(al), mark, token\*

**specula, ae** *f.* lookout, height, watch-tower†  
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay (low, down), strew, spread, fell\*

**temptō** (1) try, seek, test, examine\*

**tergum, i** *n.* back, hide, rear\*

**vestigium, (i)** *n.* step, track, trace\*

**volucris, is** *f.* bird, fowl

**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow\*

240. **aere cavō** = **tubā**, with the trumpet.  
**nova proelia**: strange (unusual) combats.

241. **foedāre**: in loose apposition with **proelia**.

242. (in) **plūmīs**, (in) **tergō**: the weapons of the Trojans glance from the feathers and the backs of the Harpies.

243. **sub**: up toward.

245-258. In revenge, Celaeno, leader of the Harpies, gives a horrifying oracle.

246. **rumpit vōcem**: breaks forth (with) this cry; **vōcem** is cognate acc.; App. 313. See II, 129, and note. (ex) **pectore**.

247. **Bellum**: emphatic by position and by rhetorical repetition; App. 413. **prō** (in return for) **caede bo(v)um**: sarcastic.

248. **Lāomedontiadae**: in derision, as Laomedon, the legendary ancestor of the Trojans, was a famous perjurer and cheat. See II, 610, and note. **inferre** (nōbis).

249. (ē) **patriō rēgnō** (nostrō). **Harpyiās**: yi form a diphthong pronounced *we*.

250-251. (in) **animis**. **quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns** (praedixit). **pater omnipotēns**: Jupiter.

252. (quae) **ego maxima** (nātū) **Furiā-**

- Italiam cursū petitis ventisque vocātis:*  
*ibitis Italiam portūsque intrāre licēbit.*  
 255 *Sed nōn ante datam cingētis moenibus urbem*  
*quam vōs dira famēs nostraeque injūria caedis*  
*ambēsās subigat mālīs absūmere mēnsās.*  
*Dixit, et in silvam pennīs ablāta refūgit.*  
*At sociūs subitā gelidus formīdine sanguis*  
 260 *dēriguit: cecidēre animī, nec jam amplius armīs,*  
*sed vōtis precibusque jūbent exposcere pācem,*  
*sive deae seu sint dirae obscēnaeque volucrēs.*  
*Et pater Anchīsēs passīs dē lītore palmīs*  
*nūmina magna vocat meritōsque indicit honōrēs:*  
 265 *‘Dī, prohibēte minās; dī, tālem āvertite cāsum*  
*et placidī servāte piōs.’ Tum lītore fūnem*

absūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus consume, destroy  
 ambedō, ere, ēdi, ēsus eat, gnaw around†  
 amplius more (abundantly)  
 auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus carry off, remove, bear away  
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus avert, turn away\*  
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 caedēs, is f. slaughter, murder, massacre  
 cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus surround, gird(le)\*  
 dērigēscō, ere, rigūi stiffen, freeze†  
 dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful\*  
 exposcō, ere, poposci demand, beg, ask†  
 famēs, is f. hunger, famine, greed  
 formidō, inis f. fear, fright, terror, dread  
 funis, is m. rope, cable, line, cord  
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy  
 indicō, ere, dixi, dictus proclaim  
 injūria, ae f. wrong, injury, injustice  
 intrō (1) enter, penetrate

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is allowed\*  
 māla, ae f. jaw, cheek-bone†  
 mēnsa, ae f. table\*  
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn\*  
 minae, ārum f. threat, menace, danger†  
 obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting  
 palma, ae f. palm, hand\*  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), reveal\*  
 pāx, pācis f. peace, indulgence, favor  
 penna, ae f. wing, feather†  
 placidus, a, um peaceful, gracious, calm\*  
 prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty\*  
 prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus forbid, hinder  
 quam than, how, as†  
 refugiō, ere, fūgi flee (back), retire  
 sive, seu whether, or (if)  
 subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus compel, force under  
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
 volucris, is f. bird, fowl  
 vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

rum pandō: a poetic confusion of the Furies and Harpies, which were supposed to be distinct.

253-254. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328. ventis vocātis: alliteration. Italiam, Italiam: intentionally impressive iteration. (ad) Italiam. (vōbis) licēbit.

255. ante . . . quam: sooner . . . than, until. datam (ā fātis).

256. famēs: a punishment to fit the crime. nostrae injūria caedis: the wrong of our (attempted slaughter) = the wrong you have done by trying to slay us, oppositional gen.; App. 281. nostrae: equivalent to an obj. gen.; App. 284.

257. subigat: with ante quam; App. 376, a. ambēsās mēnsās (vestrās): this dreadful prophecy is fulfilled in a harmless manner. The Trojans after arriving in

Italy use broad cakes as plates on which to spread their food. After consuming the layer of food, they finally eat these cakes, thus devouring their "tables" and fulfilling the prophecy. See VII, 112-129.

259-288. In great alarm the Trojans depart and soon reach Actium where they celebrate games in honor of Apollo, and then remain for the winter.

259. sociis: dat. of reference; App. 301.

260. cecidēre = cecidērunt.

261. jubent (mē).

262. sive (illae Harpyiae) sint deae: subj. in informal indir. disc.; App. 390, a.

263. passis palmis: the usual attitude of prayer. See I, 93, and note.

266. (nōs) piōs. fūnem: collective.

dēripere excussōsque jubet laxāre rudentis.  
*Tendunt vēla Notī: fugimus spūmantibus undīs*  
*quā cursum ventusque gubernātorque vocābat.*

*Jam mediō appāret flūctū nemorōsa Zacynthos* 270

*Dulichiumque Samēque et Nēritos ardua saxīs.*

*Effugimus scopulōs Ithacae, Lāertia rēgna,*  
*et terram altricem saevī exsecrāmur Ulixī.*

*Mox et Leucātae nimbōsa cacūmina montis*  
*et formidātus aperitur Apollō.* 275

*Hunc petimus fessī et parvae succēdimus urbī;*  
*ancora dē prōrā jacitur, stant litore puppēs.*

*Ergō inspērātā tandem tellūre potitī*  
*lūstrāmurque Jovī vōtisque incendimus ārās,*  
*Actiaque Īliacīs celebrāmus litora lūdīs.* 280

**Actius, a, um** of Actium, a promontory of western Greece†

**altrix, icis f.** nurse, nourisher†

**ancora, ae f.** anchor

**aperiō, ire, ui, rtus** open (out), loom\*

**Apollō, inis m.** god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear

**arduus, a, um** high, steep, difficult

**cacūmen, inis n.** summit, top, peak†

**celebrō (1)** throng, celebrate, solemnize

**dēripio, ere, ui, reptus** tear away

**Dulichium, (i)ī n.** island of the Ionian Sea†

**effugiō, ere, fūgi** escape (from), flee

**ergō** therefore, then, thence, consequently\*

**excutio, ere, i, cussus** shake out, loose(n), unfold\*

**exsecror, āri, ātus** curse, execrate, revile†

**formidō (1)** fear, dread, be afraid†

**gubernātor, ōris m.** helmsman, pilot†

**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian, of Īlium\*

**incendō, ere, i, ēnsus** kindle, burn\*

**inspērātus, a, um** unhoped for†

**Ithaca, ae f.** island of the Ionian Sea, kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader†

**iaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl†

**Lāertius, a, um** of Laertes, father of Ulysses†

**laxō (1)** loose(n), relax, open, free

**Leucāta, ae f.** promontory of Leucas in western Greece†

**lūdus, i m.** play, game, sport, contest†

**lūstrō (1)** purify, traverse, survey\*

**mox** presently, soon†

**nauta, ae m.** sailor, seaman, mariner

**nemorōsus, a, um** wooded, woody†

**Nēritos, i f.** island of the Ionian Sea†

**nimbōsus, a, um** cloudy, stormy

**Notus, i m.** (south) wind

**parvus, a, um** small, little\*

**potior, iri, itus** gain, possess (abl.)

**prōra, ae f.** prow

**quā** where(by), in any (some) way

**rudēns, entis m.** rope, cable, sheet

**saevus, a, um** cruel, fierce, stern\*

**Samē, ēs f.** island of the Ionian Sea†

**scopulus, i m.** rock, crag, cliff\*

**spūmō (1)** foam, froth, spray\*

**succēdō, ere, cessi, cessus** approach (dat.)

**Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m.** Ulysses, wily Greek leader\*

**vōtum, i n.** vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

**Zacynthus (os), i f.** island of the Ionian Sea†

263. undis: abl. of the route; App. 338.

270. (in) flūctū.

271. saxīs: abl. of cause. *ardua saxīs:* with its lofty crags.

273. Ulixī: obj. gen.; App. 284.

275. nautis: dat. of agent or reference; App. 302, 301. Apollō: i.e., the temple of Apollo at Actium, dreaded by sailors on account of the dangers to navigation in that region.

276. Hunc (Apollinem) = hoc templum Apollinis. urbī: dat. with compound. Actium became famous as the scene of the great naval victory of Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra in 31 B.C.

277. (in) litore.

278. tellūre: abl. with potior; App. 342.

279. vōtis: abl. of means.

280. Īliacīs lūdīs: abl. of means. A festival had been celebrated here in an-

- Exercent *patriās oleō lābente* palaestrās  
 nūdātī *sociī*: *juvat ēvāsisse tot urbēs*  
*Argolicās mediōsque fugam tenuisse per hostīs*.  
 Intereā *magnum sōl* circumvolvitur annum  
 285 *et glaciālis hiems Aquilōnibus asperat undās*:  
 aere cavō clipeum, *magnī gestāmen* Abantis,  
 postibus adversīs figō *et rem* carmine signō:  
*AENĒAS HAEC DĒ DANAĪS VICTŌRIBUS ARMA*.  
 Linqere *tum portūs jubeō et cōsidere trānstrīs*.  
 290 Certātīm *sociī* feriunt mare *et aequora* verrunt.  
 Prōtinus āeriās Phaeācum abscondimus *arcēs*  
*litoraue Ēpirī* legimus *portūque subīmus*

Abās, *antis m.* king of Argos†  
 abscondō, *ere, (di)di, ditus* hide; see  
 disappear†  
 adversus, *a, um* opposite, facing\*  
 āerius, *a, um* airy, lofty, towering†  
 aes, *aeris n.* bronze (implement)\*  
 annus, *i m.* year, circuit; season\*  
 Aquilō, *ōnis m.* (north) wind  
 Argolicus, *a, um* Argive, Greek  
 asperō (1) roughen†  
 carmen, *inis n.* song, verse, poem†  
 cavus, *a, um* hollow, vaulted\*  
 certātīm in rivalry, emulously, eagerly  
 circumvolvō, *ere, volūtus* roll around†  
 clipeus, *i m.* shield, buckler\*  
 cōnsidō, *ere, sēdi, sessus* sit (down),  
 settle\*  
 Ēpirus, *i f.* a district of northwestern  
 Greece†  
 ēvādō, *ere, sī, sus* go forth, escape (from)  
 exerceō, *ēre, uī, itus* practice, drive,  
 engage in, harass\*  
 feriō, *ire* strike, smite, kill  
 figō, *ere, xī, xus* fasten, fix (in)print\*

gestāmen, *inis n.* equipment, accoutre-  
 ment†  
 glaciālis, *e icy, cold*†  
 hiems, *emis f.* winter, storm\*  
 hostis, *is m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 juvō, *āre, jūvi, jūtus* help, please\*  
 legō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* gather, choose, pass  
 (by), skirt\*  
 linqūō, *ere, liqui, lictus* leave, desert\*  
 nūdō (1) bare, strip, expose, uncover  
 oleum, *i n.* oil†  
 palaestra, *ae f.* wrestling (place, bout)†  
 Phaeāces, *um m.* Phaeacians, a mythi-  
 cal people off the western coast of  
 Greece†  
 postis, *is m.* column, post, portal, door  
 prōtinus immediately, continuously  
 signō (1) sign, mark, designate  
 sōl, *sōlis m.* sun; day\*  
 tot so many, as many\*  
 trānstrum, *i n.* cross bench, rowers'  
 bench, thwart†  
 verrō, *ere, ī, rsus* sweep (over), scour

cient times and was renewed by Augustus  
 in honor of his victory at Actium in 31 B.C.  
 Vergil assigns the original foundation of  
 the festival and games to Aeneas, to add  
 to their renown and to bestow a bit of  
 delicate flattery on Augustus.

281. *oleō lābente*: the ancient ath-  
 letes, especially wrestlers, oiled them-  
 selves.

282. *nūdātī*: ancient athletes wore no  
 clothing while playing their games. *juvat*  
 (*nōs*): *we rejoice*.

284. *annus*: obj. of *circum* in *circum-*  
*volvitur*, or cognate acc. of the middle  
 verb; App. 308, 309, 313.

286. *aere cavō*: abl. of quality denot-  
 ing material; App. 330, 324.

287. (*in*) *postibus adversis*: on the  
 entrance pillars (of the temple). *carmine*:  
 such poetical inscriptions were common.

288. *Aenēas* (*dedit Apollini*) *Haec*  
*Arma* (*tracta*) *Dē Danaīs Victōribus*.  
*Victōribus*: *victorious*, but not wholly so,  
 as Aeneas's inscription means to show.

289-299. They land in Epirus, now  
 under the rule of Trojan Helenus and  
 Andromache, after the death of Pyrrhus.

289. (*in*) *trānstrīs*.

292. *portū*: dat. with compound.



Chāoniō et celsam Būthrōtī accēdimus urbem.

*Hīc incredibilis rērum fāma occupat auris,  
Priamidēn Helenum Grajās rēgnāre per urbīs* 295  
*conjugiō Aeacidāe Pyrrhī scēptrisque potitum,  
et patriō Andromachēn iterum cēssisse marītō.*  
*Obstipui mīrōque incēsum pectus amōre  
compellāre virum et cāsūs cognōscere tantōs.*  
*Prōgredior portū classīs et litora linguēns,* 300  
*sollemnīs cum forte dapēs et trīstia dōna  
ante urbem in lūcō falsī Simoēntis ad undam  
libābat cinerī Andromachē mānisque vocābat  
Hectoreum ad tumulum, viridī quem caespīte inānem*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach  
Aeacidēs, ae m. descendant of Aeacus,  
grandfather of Achilles

Andromachē, ēs f. wife of Hector

auris, is f. ear\*

Būthrōtum, ī n. city of Epirus†

caespēs, itis m. turf, sod†

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, retire,  
fall to\*

celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering\*

Chāonius, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia,  
a district of northwestern Greece†

cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), em-  
bers\*

cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn

compellō (1) address, speak to, accost

conjugium, (i) ī n. wedlock, wife, husband  
daps, is f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*

falsus, a, um false, pretended, mock,  
counterfeit

Grajus, a, um Greek\*

Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan  
hero

Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam†

inānis, e empty, vain, useless\*

incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus kindle, burn\*

incrēdibilis, e unbelievable, incredible†

iterum again, a second time, anew\*

libō (1) pour out, offer (as a libation)

linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert\*

lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood

mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead\*

maritus, ī m. husband†

mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous

obstipēscō, ere, stipui be amazed, stand  
agape\*

occupō (1) possess; surprise; occupy†

potior, iri, itus gain, possess (abl.)

Priamidēs, ae m. descendant of Priam†

prōgredior, ī, gressus advance†

Pyrrhus, ī m. Neoptolemus, son of  
Achilles

rēgnō (1) reign, rule, govern, sway

scēptrum, ī n. scepter, (royal) power

Simois, entis m. river near Troy

sollemnis, e annual, solemn, customary

tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb\*

viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*

294. (nōstrās) auris.

295. rēgnāre: indir. statement depend-  
ing on the idea of saying implied in fāma;  
App. 390, 263.

296. conjugio (=conjugue=Andromachē)  
scēptrisque: ablatives with the verb  
potior; App. 342. Andromache, the ill-  
fated wife of Hector, had been allotted  
in the distribution of the booty to  
Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus), son of Achilles  
and descendant of Aeacus. scēptris:  
poetic plural; App. 243.

297. patriō: i.e., Trojan.

298-299. amōre: abl. of means. in-  
cēnsus (est) pectus (meum). amōre  
compellāre: desire to speak to. Cf.  
amor cognōscere, II, 10, and see App. 264.

300-343. The pathetic meeting of

Aeneas with Andromache at the empty  
tomb of Hector.

300. (ā) portū.

301. dapēs, dōna: food offerings to  
the dead. Such offerings usually con-  
sisted of wine, milk, oil, honey, and some-  
times of more solid foods, such as eggs  
and beans.

302. falsī Simoēntis: i.e., a Simois  
named after the one at Troy.

303. cinerī: i.e., of Hector. mānīs  
vocābat: to the sacrificial meal.

304. tumulum inānem: an empty  
tomb erected here in honor of Hector,  
whose ashes had been buried at Troy.  
Such monuments, common in antiquity,  
were called cenotaphs. caespīte: abl. of  
material; App. 324.

- 305 *et geminās, causam lacrimīs, sacrāverat ārās.*  
*Ut mē cōnspexit venientem et Trōia circum*  
*arma amēns vidit, magnīs exterrita mōnstrīs*  
*dēriguit vīsū in mediō, calor ossa reliquit;*  
*lābitur et longō vix tandem tempore fātur:*
- 310 'Vērane tē faciēs, vērūs mihi nuntius adfers,  
*nāte deā? Vivisne? Aut, sī lūx alma recessit,*  
*Hector ubi est?' Dīxit, lacrimāsque effūdīt et omnem*  
*implēvit clāmōre locum. Vix pauca furentī*  
*subjiciō et rārīs turbātus vōcibus hīscō:*
- 315 'Vivō equidem vītāque extrēma per omnia dūcō;  
*nē dubitā, nam vēra vidēs.*  
*Heu! quis tē cāsus dējectam conjuge tantō*  
*excipit, aut quae digna satis fortūna revīsīt,*  
*Hectoris Andromachē? Pyrrhīn cōnūbia servās?'*

adferō, *ferre*, tulī, lātus bring to, present†  
 almus, *a, um* kind(ly), nourishing  
 amēns, *entis* crazy, frantic, distracted  
 Andromachē, *ēs f.* wife of Hector  
 calor, *ōris m.* heat, warmth, glow†  
 causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
 cōnspiciō, *ere, spexī, spectus* see, look at  
 cōnūbium, (*i*) *n.* marriage, wedlock  
 dējiciō, *ere, jēcī, jectus* cast down†  
 dērigescō, *ere, rigui* stiffen, freeze  
 dignus, *a, um* worthy (of), suitable (*abl.*)  
 dubitō (*l*) doubt, hesitate, waver  
 effundō, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* pour out, shed\*  
 equidem indeed, surely, truly\*  
 excipio, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* receive, catch  
 exterrēō, *ēre, uī, itus* frighten, startle†  
 extrēma, *ōrum n.* extremity, death, end\*  
 faciēs, *ēi f.* appearance, face, form\*  
 Hector, *oris m.* Trojan leader\*  
 hīscō, *ere* gape, falter, stammer†

impleō, *ēre, ēvī, ētus* fill, satisfy\*  
 mōnstrum, (*i m.* prodigy, omen, marvel\*  
 nuntius, (*i*) *m.* messenger, message  
 os, *ossis n.* bone\*  
 paucus, *a, um* small, few, scanty\*  
 Pyrrhus, (*i m.* Neoptolemus, son of  
 Achilles  
 rārūs, *a, um* rare, disjointed, broken  
 recedō, *ere, cessī, cessus* withdraw, re-  
 ceede, depart  
 revīsō, *ere* revisit, see again  
 sacrō (*l*) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*  
 sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
 subjiciō, *ere, jēcī, jectus* place beneath,  
 interpose  
 Trōius, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy\*  
 turbō (*l*) disturb, trouble, agitate\*  
 vērūs, *a, um* true, real, genuine\*  
 vīsus, *ūs m.* sight, view, vision, aspect  
 vivō, *ere, vixī, victus* live, be alive

305. *causam lacrimīs*: a cause for tears; dat. of reference; App. 301.

306. *Ut (Andromachē) mē cōnspexit.* Ut: as, when.

307. *mōnstrīs*: the sudden appearance of Aeneas, whom she thought dead, seems miraculous to her, and she thinks it must be his ghost.

308. *vīsū in mediō*: as she gazed; App. 246.

309. *longō tempore* = post longum tempus; App. 322.

310. *faciēs, nuntius*: in apposition with the subject of *adfers*, (as) a true appearance and true messenger, do you present yourself?

312. *Hector ubi est*: if Aeneas had

come from the land of the shades, he should be accompanied by Hector or at least be able to bring news of him, since Hector was his old friend and comrade. Andromache's first thought is of her beloved Hector.

313. (*ei*) *furentī*: with difficulty do I reply briefly to her in her passionate appeal.

314. *rārīs vōcibus*: with broken words, *abl.* of manner; App. 328.

317. *dējectam conjuge tantō*: fallen from the high honor of being Hector's wife.

319. *Pyrrhīn(e)*: Andromache had been married, against her will, to her captor Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, but he was now dead.

<i>Dējēcīt vultum et dēmissā vōce locūta est:</i>	320
<i>‘Ō fēlix ūna ante aliās Priamēia virgō,</i> <i>hostilem ad tumultum Trojae sub moenibus altīs</i> <i>jussa morī, quae sortītūs nōn pertulit ūllōs</i> <i>nec victōris herī tetigit captīva cubile!</i>	
<i>Nōs patriā incēnsā diversa per aequora vectae</i>	325
<i>stirpis Achillēae fastūs juvenemque superbum</i> <i>servitiō ēnixae tulimus; quī deinde secūtus</i> <i>Lēdaeam Hermionēn Lacedaemoniōsque hymenaeōs</i> <i>mē famulō famulamque Helenō trāsmisit habendam.</i>	
<i>Ast illum ēreptae magnō flammātus amōre</i>	330
<i>conjugis et scelerum Furiis agitātus Orestēs</i>	

**Achillēus, a, um** of Achilles, a Greek leader†

**agitō (1)** drive, harass, pursue, agitate

**captivus, a, um** captive, captured

**cubile, is n.** couch, bed†

**deinde** then, thereafter, next\*

**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast down

**dēmittō, ere, misī, missus** send down, lower\*

**diversus, a, um** separate(d), different\*

**ēnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** bear, give birth to†

**famula, ae f.** bondswoman, maidservant

**famulus, ī m.** slave, manservant

**fastus, ūs m.** disdain, insolence, pride†

**fēlix, icis** happy, fortunate, blessed\*

**flammō (1)** inflame, fire, kindle†

**Furiae, ārum f.** Furies, avenging spirits

**Helenus, ī m.** a prophet, son of Priam

**Hermionē, ēs f.** daughter of Helen†

**herus, ī m.** master, owner, lord†

**hostilis, e** hostile, of an enemy†

**hymenaeus, ī m.** Hymen, (god of) marriage

**incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus** kindle, burn\*

**juvenis, is m. (f.)** youth, young (man, woman)\*

**Lacedaemonius, a, um** of Lacedaemon (Sparta), a district of southern Greece†

**Lēdaeus, a, um** of Leda, mother of Helen†

**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk\*

**moriōr, ī, mortuus** die, perish\*

**Orestēs, is m.** son of Agamemnon; he killed his mother to avenge the murder of his father, and for this was pursued by the Furies†

**patria, ae f.** fatherland, country, home town\*

**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** endure, bear (to the end)

**Priamēius, a, um** of Priam, king of Troy

**scelus, eris n.** crime, guilt, sin, villainy\*

**servitium, (i) ī n.** slavery, bondage

**sortitus, ūs m.** (drawing of) lots, allotment†

**stirps, is f.** stock, lineage, stem, race

**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty\*

**tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus** touch, reach\*

**trāsmittō, ere, misī, missus** transmit, hand over†

**tumulus, ī m.** mound, tomb\*

**vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus** bear, convey\*

**virgō, inis f.** (unmarried) girl, daughter\*

**vultus, ūs m.** countenance, face, aspect\*

**321. Priamēia (= Priamī) virgō:** Polyxena, who was sacrificed by the Greeks as an offering at the tomb of Achilles.

**323. sortītūs:** the captives and other booty were regularly distributed among the victors by lot.

**325. nōs = ego:** the "editorial we," contrasted with Polyxena; App. 247.

**326. stirpis Achillēae:** Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles. **fastūs, juvenem:** objects of tulimus.

**327. (in) servitiō:** as a captive slave. **ēnixae:** having borne (him) children, a son Molossus according to tradition. **quī = is = Pyrrhus.**

**328. Lēdaeam Hermionēn:** Hermione, daughter of Helen and granddaughter of

Leda. Her home was in Lacedaemon, a district of southern Greece.

**329. famulō famulam:** the words are intentionally emphasized by being brought together. **mē famulō famulam Helenō:** interlocked order; App. 442. **habendam:** gerundive expressing purpose; App. 268.

**330-331. illum: Pyrrhus. ēreptae conjugis:** obj. gen.; App. 284. Hermione had been betrothed to Orestes, but was later given in marriage to Pyrrhus. **scelerum Furiis agitātus Orestēs:** on his return from the Trojan war, Agamemnon, father of Orestes, had been murdered by his own wife, Clytaemnestra, and her lover, Aegisthus. To avenge this crime, Orestes killed the guilty pair, but for

- excipit incautum patriāsque obtruncat ad ārās.  
 Morte Neoptolemī rēgnōrum reddita cessit  
 pars Helenō, quā Chāoniōs cognōmine campōs  
 335 Chāoniamque omnem Trojānō ā Chāone dīxit,  
 Pergamaque Īliacamque jugīs hanc addidit arcem.  
 Sed tibi quā cursum ventī, quae fāta dedēre?  
 Aut quisnam ignārum nostrīs deus appulit ōrīs?  
 Quid puer Ascanius? Superatne et vēscitur aurā?  
 340 quem tibi jam Troja —  
 Ecqua tamen puerō est āmissae cūra parentis?  
 Ecquid in antiquam virtutem animōsque virilīs  
 et pater Aenēās et avunculus excitat Hector?’  
 Tālia fundēbat lacrimāns longōsque ciēbat  
 345 incassum flētūs, cum sēsē ā moenibus hērōs

addō, ere, didī, ditus add\*  
 āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose\*  
 appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive to (dat.)  
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas\*  
 avunculus, ī m. maternal uncle†  
 cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, fall to\*  
 Chāōn, onis m. son of Priam  
 Chāonia, ae f. a region of northwestern  
 Greece†  
 Chāonius, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia,  
 a district of northwestern Greece†  
 cieō, ēre, civī, citus arouse, excite, pro-  
 duce, stir up\*  
 cognōmen, inis n. (sur)name, title  
 ecquis, qua, quid any(one, at all)†  
 excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch  
 excitō (1) arouse, excite, stir up  
 flētus, ūs m. weeping, lamentation, tears  
 Hector, oris m. Trojan leader\*  
 Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam

hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*  
 incassum in vain, uselessly†  
 incautus, a, um heedless, unaware  
 jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
 lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament  
 Neoptolemus, ī m. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles  
 obtruncō (1) slay, kill, slaughter, butcher  
 Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
 quisnam, quāenam, quidnam who (which,  
 what) in the world†  
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back, duly),  
 cede, return, render\*  
 superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive\*  
 tamen nevertheless, however, but\*  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 vēscor, ī feed on, breathe (abl.)  
 virilis, e manly, heroic, virile†  
 virtūs, ūtis f. manliness, valor, virtue\*

murdering his mother he was driven mad by the Furies.

332. patriās ad ārās: at an altar raised to Achilles at Delphi.

333. Morte: abl. of time; App. 322.

334. cognōmine: abl. of respect; App. 325.

335. omnem: for omne, attracted to the gender of the predicate noun Chāoniam, called the plains Chaonian and the whole land Chaonia, from Chaon, a brother of Helenus, who had been accidentally killed by him. dixit = vocāvit.

337. venti (dedērunt). dedēre = dedērunt (cursum tibi).

338. (tē) ignārum: unaware (that we lived here). ōris: dat. with compound; App. 298.

339. Quid (agit) Ascanius: how fares Ascanius? the usual Roman formula for

inquiring of one's health. aurā: abl. with vēscor; App. 342.

340. An incomplete verse and sentence, broken off for the pathetic effect. See the note on I, 534.

341. āmissae parentis: Creūsa; Andromache assumes that Creūsa has been killed or captured; parentis is obj. gen.; App. 284.

343. avunculus Hector: Creūsa was a sister of Hector. excitat: does the glory of their achievements rouse him to emulate them?

344-440. Helenus, who is both prophet and king, receives the Trojans hospitably and warns them of their coming dangers on land and sea.

344. Tālia (dicta).



Priamidēs *multis* Helenus comitantibus adfert,  
 agnōscitque suōs laetusque ad limina dūcit,  
 et multum lacrimās verba inter singula fundit.  
 Prōcēdō et parvam Trojam simulātaque magnīs  
 Pergama et ārentem Xanthī cognōmine rīvum 350  
 agnōscō, Scaeaēque amplector limina portae.  
 Nec nōn et Teucrī sociā simul urbe fruuntur.  
 Illōs porticibus rēx accipiēbat in amplīs:  
 aulāi mediō libābant pōcula Bacchī  
 impositis aurō dapibus, paterāsque tenēbant. 355  
 Jamque diēs alterque diēs prōcessit, et aurae  
 vēla vocant tumidōque inflātur carbasus Austrō:  
 hīs vātem adgredior dictīs ac tālia quaesō:

adferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring to, present  
 adgredior, ī, gressus approach, address  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 alter, era, erum another (of two), second\*  
 amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold\*  
 amplus, a, um large, spacious, broad, full  
 ārēns, entis dry parched, arid  
 aula, ae f. hall, court, palace  
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind\*  
 Bacchus, ī m. (god of) wine  
 carbasus, ī f. flax, sail†  
 cognōmen, inis n. (sur)name, title  
 comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,  
 follow  
 daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*  
 fruor, ī, fructus enjoy (abl.)†  
 Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam  
 impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place (on)\*  
 inflō (1) blow in(to), inflate, swell†  
 libō (1) pour (as a libation), offer

medium, (i) ī n. middle, midst, center  
 parvus, a, um small, little\*  
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl  
 Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
 pōculum, ī n. (drinking) cup, goblet  
 porta, ae f. gate, exit, portal, entrance\*  
 porticus, ūs m. colonnade, portico  
 Priamidēs, ae m. descendant of Priam  
 prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance, pass,  
 proceed  
 quaesō, ere, sīvī, sītus beg, seek, inquire†  
 rivus, ī m. stream, rivulet, brook†  
 Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of a famous  
 gate in the walls at Troy  
 simulō (1) imitate, pretend, make like  
 singulus, a, um separate, single, one by one  
 socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly  
 tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling  
 verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk  
 Xanthus, ī m. river near Troy†

347. suōs: *his* fellow countrymen =  
 nōs. dūcit (nōs).

348. multum lacrimās fūdit: *weeps*  
*copious tears (of joy)*. multum: adverb.

349-350. magnīs (Pergamis): dat.  
 with simulāta. parvam, ārentem: in this  
 reproduction of their old Trojan home,  
 everything is on a much smaller scale than  
 the original; the city itself is parva and the  
 river ārēns in marked contrast with  
 the lofty Troy and the "deep-eddying"  
 Xanthus in Asia Minor. Xanthī: appositive  
 gen. with cognōmine. cognōmine:  
 abl. of quality; App. 330.

351. amplector limina: in joy at the  
 revival of old memories, Aeneas em-  
 braces the gateway copied after the great  
 Scaean gate at Troy. Embracing the  
 gate or doorpost was an ancient custom  
 of those who had been away from home  
 a long time.

352. Nec nōn et: *likewise also*. urbe:  
 abl. with fruor; App. 342.

353. rēx: Helenus. accipiēbat: im-  
 perf. of repeated action; App. 351, 2;  
*day after day the king entertained them*,  
 l. 356.

354. aulāi = aulae: an archaic form;  
 App. 34, b. Observe that it has three  
 syllables (au-lā-i) whereas aulae has only  
 two (au-lae). (in) mediō. Bacchī: by  
 metonymy for vinī, *wine*; App. 433.  
 libābant: a ceremony regularly performed  
 at each banquet; App. 351, 2.

355. impositis dapibus: abl. abs.;  
 App. 343. aurō: *gold* = golden trays;  
 App. 433; dat. with compound, im-  
 positis; App. 298. paterās tenēbant: a  
 detail added for the sake of vividness.

356. diēs alterque diēs: *day after day*.

358. vātem: Helenus was a famous  
 seer. quaesō: old form of quaerō.

- 360 'Trojugena, interpres *dīvum*, *quī nūmina* Phoebī,  
*quī tripodas*, *Clariī laurōs*, *quī sīdera* sentīs  
*et volucrum linguās et praepetis ōmina* pennae,  
*fāre age* (namque omnis cursum mihi prospera dīxit  
relligiō, et cūctī suāsērunt nūmine dīvī  
*Ītaliā petere et terrās temptāre* repostās;  
365 *sōla novum dictūque nefās* Harpyia Celaenō  
prōdigium canit et trīstīs dēnuntiat īrās  
obscēnamque famem) *quae prīma perīcula vītō?*  
*Quidve sequēns tantōs possim superāre labōrēs?*  
*Hīc Helenus caesis prīmum dē mōre* juvencīs  
370 *exōrat pācem dīvum vittāsque* resolvit  
*sacrātī capitis, mēque ad tua līmina*, Phoebe,  
*ipse manū multō suspēsum nūmine dūcit*,

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down),  
kill  
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,  
prophecy, proclaim\*  
Celaenō, ūs *f.* chief harpy  
Clarius, a, um Clarian, of Claros, a  
center of the worship of Apollo†  
dēnuntiō (1) announce, foretell, threaten†  
exōrō (1) entreat, beg, win, persuade†  
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed  
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous  
monster with the body of a bird and  
the face of a woman  
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam  
interpres, pretis *m.* interpreter, agent†  
juvencus, i *m.* bullock, ox, steer\*  
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen sacred  
to Apollo  
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language  
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, rule, ritual, law\*  
nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, sin\*  
obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting, foul  
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign\*

pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose  
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather  
peric(u)lum, ī *n.* peril, danger, risk  
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
praepes, etis flying, flyer†  
prōdigium, (i) ī *n.* omen, portent†  
prosperus, a, um favorable, fortunate†  
re(1)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, prophecy  
repos(i)tus, a, um stored (up), remote  
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, open  
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*  
sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive,  
understand, know  
suādeo, ēre, suāsī, suāsus persuade, urge  
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive\*  
suspēsus, a, um suspended, anxious  
temptō (1) try, seek, test, attempt\*  
tripūs, podis *m.* tripod, oracle†  
Trojugena, ae *m.* Trojan-born†  
vītō (1) avoid, shun, dodge, escape  
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, wreath\*  
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl

359-360. Trojugena, interpres: voca-  
tives. dīv(ōr)um. quī (sentis) nūmina  
Phoebī, quī (sentis) tripodas, (quī sentis)  
laurōs. tripodas, laurōs: sacred to  
Apollo. sidera sentis: as an astrologer.

361. volucrum linguās: ancient seers  
were supposed to understand and in-  
terpret the language and movements of  
birds and animals.

362. fāre: imp. of for.

363-364. suāsērunt (mē) petere. repo-  
s(i)tās: the uncontracted form (vvv-)   
could not be used in hexameter.

365-366. Harpyia: yi form a diph-  
thong, pronounced we. novum prōdigium.  
dictū nefās: a horror to tell, dictū being  
the abl. of the supine; App. 271.

367. vītō: for the ind. compare the  
note on sequimur, III, 88, and see App  
351, 1, c; 348, a.

368. Quid sequēns: (by) following  
what (course). possim: conclusion of a  
future less vivid condition, the condition  
being implied in sequēns; App. 381.

369. caesis juvencīs: abl. abs.

370. pācem dīvum (Phoebum): two  
accusatives; App. 316. vittās resolvit:  
in order that he may yield himself com-  
pletely to the influence of the god, the  
seer loosens the fillets, which he had worn  
while sacrificing, and unbinds his gar-  
ments.

372. (mē) suspēsum multō nūmine:  
deeply moved by the divine presence.

*atque haec deinde canit dīvinō ex ōre sacerdot̄s:*

*‘Nāte deā (nam tē majōribus īre per altum  
auspiciis manifesta fidēs, sīc fāta deum rēx  
sortitur voluitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō),  
pauca tibi ē multīs, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs  
aequora et Ausoniō possīs cōsīdere portū,  
expediam dictīs: prohibent nam cētera Parcae  
scire Helenum fārīque vetat Sātūrnīa Jūnō.  
Principiō Ītaliā, quā tū jam rēre propinquā  
vicinōsque, ignāre, parās invādere portūs,  
longa procul longīs via dividit invia terrīs.  
Ante et Trīnacrīā lentandus rēmus in undā  
et salis Ausoniī lūstrandum nāvibus aequor  
infernīque lacūs Aeaeaeque īnsula Circae,*

**Aeaeus**, a, um of Aeaea, of Colchis, original home of Circe†

**altum**, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven

**Ausoniū**, a, um Ausonian, Italian†

**auspicium**, (i) ī n. augury, auspice(s)†

**canō**, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim\*

**cēterus**, a, um other, rest, remaining

**Circē**, ēs (ae) f. famous enchantress, daughter of the Sun, who settled on an island off the western coast of Italy†

**cōsīdō**, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (on), settle\*

**deinde** then, thereupon, next\*

**dividō**, ere, visi, visus divide, separate

**divinus**, a, um divine, inspired, sacred  
**expediō**, ire, ivi (iī), itus disentangle, explain

**fidēs**, eī f. faith, fidelity, evidence\*

**Helenus**, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam

**hospitus**, a, um strange; hospitable†

**ignārus**, a, um ignorant, unaware\*

**infernus**, a, um of the underworld, infernal†

**insula**, ae f. island

**invādō**, ere, sī, sus go (into), attack

**invius**, a, um pathless, trackless

**lacus**, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere

**lentō** (1) bend†

**lūstrō** (l) traverse; survey; purify\*

**manifestus**, a, um clear, evident

**ordō**, inis m. arrangement, order, rank\*

**Parcae**, ārum f. the Fates

**paucus**, a, um little, slight, few\*

**principiō** first(ly), in the first place

**prohibeō**, ēre, uī, itus forbid, hinder

**propinquus**, a, um near, neighboring

**reor**, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon

**sacerdot̄s**, otis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*

**sal**, salis m. (n.) salt, sea, brine

**Sātūrnīus**, a, um of Saturn, father of the gods

**sciō**, ire, ivi, itus know (how), understand

**sortior**, iri, itus obtain by lot, allot

**Trīnacrīus**, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian

**tūtus**, a, um protected, safe, secure\*

**vertō**, ere, ī, r̄sus turn, change\*

**vetō**, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent, hinder

**vicinus**, a, um near, close at hand†

**vicis** (gen.; no nom.) f. change, alternation, fortune

**374-375.** *Nāte deā: goddess-born! majōribus auspiciis:* abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. *tē ire:* indir. statement with *manifesta fidēs* (est), *it* is clearly true; App. 263.

**376.** *ordō* (rērum).

**377-379.** *pauca expediam. quō* (= ut eō) *lūstrēs et possis:* purpose; App. 359. (in) *portū*.

**380.** *Helenum = mē:* intentionally impressive use of the third person instead of the first. *vetat* (eum = mē).

**381.** *Ītaliā:* the eastern coast of Italy was quite near, but not the part of Italy

where Aeneas was fated to settle; this he must reach by a long and circuitous journey. *rēre = rēris*, from *reor*; App. 204, 4.

**381-383.** *longa via invia dividit Ītaliā procul* (ā tē) *longīs terrīs. (cujus) portūs parās invādere.* Line 383 is an alliterative and jingling verse, to give an oracular effect. Observe the cumulative effect of *longa procul longīs*, to indicate the great distance to be traveled.

**384-385.** *Ante: with quam* in l. 387. *lentandus* (est), *lūstrandum* (est).

**386.** *infernī lacūs:* the region of

- quam tūtā possīs urbem compōnere terrā.  
 Signa tibi dīcam, tū condita mente tenētō:  
 cum tibi sollicitō sēcrētī ad flūminis undam  
 390 lītoreis ingēns inventa sub ilicibus sūs  
 trīgintā capitum fētūs ēnixa jacēbit,  
 alba, solō recubāns, albī circum ūbera nātī,  
 is locus urbis erit, requiēs ea certa labōrum.  
 Nec tū mēnsārum morsūs horrēsce futūrōs:  
 395 fāta viam invenient aderitque vocātus Apollō.  
 Hās autem terrās Italique hanc lītoris ōram,  
 proxima quae nostrī perfunditur aequoris aestū,  
 effuge; cūcta malis habitantur moenia Grajis.  
 Hīc et Nāryciī posuērunt moenia Locri,  
 400 et Sallentinōs obsēdit milite campōs

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide  
 albus, a, um white\*  
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 autem but, however, moreover\*  
 certus, a, um certain, sure, fixed, reliable\*  
 compōnō, ere, posuī, positus put together,  
 build, compose  
 condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, found;  
 hide\*  
 effugiō, ere, fūgī escape (from), avoid  
 ēnitor, ī, sus (nixus) bear, give birth (to)  
 fētus, ūs *m.* young, offspring, brood  
 flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess  
 horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder (at), dread  
 ilex, icis *f.* holm oak†  
 invenio, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come  
 upon  
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy  
 jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*  
 litoreus, a, um of the shore†  
 Locrius, a, um Locrian, Greek†

malus, a, um bad, wicked, evil\*  
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table\*  
 miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), troops  
 morsus, ūs *m.* bite, eating, gnawing  
 Nārycius, a, um of Naryx, a city of  
 Greece†  
 obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset  
 perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour through,  
 bathe  
 proximus, a, um next, nearest, closest  
 quam than, how, as\*  
 recubō (1) lie, recline†  
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) *f.* rest, repose, respite†  
 Sallentinus, a, um Sallentinian, of the  
 Sallentini, an Italian tribe†  
 sēcrētus, a, um secret, secluded, remote,  
 lonely  
 signum, ī *n.* sign, token, signal, mark\*  
 sollicitus, a, um anxious, worried†  
 solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth\*  
 sūs, suis *m.* (f.) hog, pig, swine  
 trigintā thirty  
 tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure\*  
 ūber, eris *n.* udder, bosom, fertility

Avernus in Campania, where one of the entrances to the lower world was reputed to be.

387. possīs: subj. with ante quam; App. 376, a. (in) terrā.

388. (haec signa) condita mente tenētō. tenētō: fut. imp. of teneō.

389-390. tibi sollicitō: dat. of agent with inventa, or dat. of reference; App. 302, 301. lītoreis: growing on the banks (of the Tiber).

391. trigintā capitum: gen. of definition; App. 282. fētūs: obj. of ēnixa.

392. (in) solō = in terrā = humī. albī

nātī (jacēbunt): the prophecy is fulfilled in VIII, 82.

393. ea (erit) certa requiēs.

394. horrēsce: imp.

396-398. Hās terrās, hanc ōram effuge: apparently Helenus points toward the nearest parts of Italy, inhabited by Greeks and hence called Magna Graecia, contrasted with the more remote section where Aeneas was to settle. Grajis: pronounce Grajjīs; App. 6, b; dat. of agent; App. 302.

400. milite: collective, soldiery; abl. of means.



Lyctius Īdomeneus; *hīc illa* ducis Meliboei  
 parva Philoctētae subnixa Petēlia mūrō.  
*Quin ubi* trānsmisssae steterint trāns *aequora classēs*  
*et positīs ārīs jam vōta in lītore solvēs,*  
 purpureō vēlāre comās adoportus amictū, 405  
*nē qua inter sānctōs ignīs in honōre deōrum*  
 hostilis faciēs occurrat *et ōmina turbet.*  
*Hunc sociū* mōrem *sacrōrum, hunc ipse tenētō;*  
*hāc castī maneant in relligiōne nepōtēs.*  
*Ast ubi* digressum Siculae tē admōverit *ōrae* 410  
*ventus, et angustī rārēscēt claustra Pelōrī,*  
 laeva tībī tellūs *et longō* laeva petantur  
*aequora circuitū; dextrum fuge litus et undās.*

admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move to,  
 bring to (dat.)†  
 adoperiō, ire, uī, rtus cover†  
 amictus, ūs *m.* veil, wrap, robe  
 angustus, a, um narrow, strait  
 castus, a, um pure, chaste, holy†  
 circuitus, ūs *m.* circuit, detour†  
 claustrum, ī *n.* barrier, straits, bar  
 coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses\*  
 digredior, ī, gressus separate, depart  
 dux, ducis *m.* (f.) leader, guide, chief\*  
 faciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, face, form\*  
 hostilis, e hostile, unfavorable  
 Īdomeneus, ei *m.* Cretan king who settled  
 in Italy  
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*  
 Lyctius, a, um Lyctian, of Lyctus, a  
 Cretan city†  
 Meliboeus, a, um of Meliboea, a city of  
 Thessaly†  
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ceremony, ritual\*  
 mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
 nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
 occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
 meet (dat.)

ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign\*  
 parvus, a, um small, little\*  
 Pelōrus (um), ī *m.* (n.) northeastern  
 promontory of Sicily†  
 Petēlia, ae *f.* city of southern Italy  
 founded by Philoctetes†  
 Philoctētēs, ae *m.* Greek leader of Meli-  
 boeus who settled in Italy†  
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson  
 quin nay even, but that, why not\*  
 rārēscō, ere widen, (grow) thin†  
 re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, ritual, sacred  
 custom  
 sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered\*  
 Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily  
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtūs loose(n), discharge,  
 pay\*  
 subnitor, ī, sus (nixus) rest on, lean on  
 (dat. or abl.)  
 trāns across, over, beyond (acc.)†  
 trānsmittō, ere, mīsi, missus send across,  
 transmit  
 turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate\*  
 vēlō (1) veil, adorn, wrap, wreath  
 vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

401. Lyctius Īdomeneus: expelled  
 from Crete; see III, 121-123. *illa*: that  
 renowned.

402. Petēlia (est). mūrō: abl. of  
 means with subnitor.

405. vēlāre: imp. passive, with middle  
 force; *veil (for yourself) your head*; refers  
 to the old Roman custom of covering the  
 head while praying, to avoid seeing or  
 hearing anything of evil omen (*hostilis*  
*faciēs*); cf. l. 407. comās: obj. of vēlāre;  
 App. 309, a.

408. Hunc mōrem: Vergil thus assigns  
 a Trojan origin to this good old Roman

custom. socii (tenentō). (tū) tenētō:  
 fut. imp.

410. ōrae: dat. with compound; App.  
 298.

412. laeva tellūs: Sicily. tībī: dat.  
 of agent; App. 302.

413. dextrum litus: Italy; i.e., in-  
 stead of rounding the southern point of  
 Italy, passing along the Italian coast  
 through the straits and turning to the  
 north, Aeneas is told to make the larger  
 circuit around Sicily and thus avoid the  
 dangers of Scylla and Charybdis. fuge:  
 imp.

- 415 *Haec loca vī quondam et vastā convulsa ruīnā*  
*(tantum aevi longinqua valet mūtāre vetustās)*  
*dissiluisse ferunt, cum prōtinus utraque tellūs*  
*ūna foret: vēnīt mediō vī pontus et undīs*  
*Hesperium Siculō latus abscidit, arvaeque et urbēs*  
*lītore diductās angustō interluit aestū.*
- 420 *Dextrum Scylla latus, laevum implacāta Charybdis*  
*obsidet, atque imō barathrī ter gurgite vastōs*  
*sorbet in abruptum flūctūs rūrsusque sub aurās*  
*ērigit alternōs, et sīdera verberat undā.*  
*At Scyllam caecis cohibet spēlunca latebrīs*  
 425 *ōra exsertantem et nāvīs in saxa trahentem.*  
*Prīma hominis faciēs et pulchrō pectore virgō*

**abruptum**, *i n.* depth, abyss, bottom†  
**abscindō**, *ere*, *scidī*, *scissus* cut off,  
 tear (off), rend†  
**aestus**, *ūs m.* boiling, surge, tide  
**aevum**, *i n.* age, life, time, eternity  
**alternus**, *a, um* alternate, alternating  
**angustus**, *a, um* narrow, strait  
**barathrum**, *i n.* abyss, chasm, pit†  
**caecus**, *a, um* blind, hidden, dark\*  
**Charybdis**, *is f.* famous whirlpool near  
 Scylla, between Italy and Sicily†  
**cohibeō**, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* restrain, confine†  
**convellō**, *ere*, *i*, *vulsus* tear (up), shatter,  
 rend  
**diducō**, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus* draw apart,  
 separate†  
**dissiliō**, *ire*, *uī* leap apart†  
**ērigō**, *ere*, *rēxī*, *rēctus* raise, erect†  
**exsertō** (1) thrust forth†  
**faciēs**, *ēi f.* appearance, face, form\*  
**gurgis**, *itis m.* whirlpool, gulf, abyss\*  
**Hesperius**, *a, um* Hesperian, western,  
 Italian†  
**homō**, *inis m. (f.)* man, mortal, human\*  
**implacātus**, *a, um* implacable, insatiable†  
**interluō**, *ere* flow between, wash between†  
**laevus**, *a, um* left (hand), on the left\*

**latebra**, *ae f.* hiding place, lair, retreat  
**latus**, *eris n.* side, flank\*  
**longinquus**, *a, um* long, distant†  
**medium**, (i) *i n.* middle, midst, center  
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
**obsideō**, *ēre*, *sēdī*, *sessus* besiege, beset  
**pontus**, *i m.* sea; waves\*  
**prōtinus** continually, continuously, right  
 on(ward)  
**pulcher**, *chra*, *chrom* beautiful, hand-  
 some, illustrious, noble\*  
**ruīna**, *ae f.* downfall, convulsion  
**rūrsus**, *um* again, anew, back(ward)\*  
**Scylla**, *ae f.* ravenous sea-monster with  
 the body of a beautiful woman en-  
 circled about the waist with dogs or  
 wolves, and with the tail of a fish†  
**Siculus**, *a, um* Sicilian, of Sicily  
**sorbeō**, *ēre*, *uī* suck in, swallow (up)†  
**spēlunca**, *ae f.* cave, cavern, grotto  
**ter** thrice, three times\*  
**uterque**, *utraque*, *utrumque* each (of two),  
 either\*  
**valeō**, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* be strong, be able  
**verberō** (1) beat, lash, strike, whip†  
**vetustās**, *ātis f.* antiquity, (lapse of) time†  
**virgō**, *inis f.* girl, daughter, maiden\*

414-417. *ferunt* (= *dicunt*) *haec loca quondam convulsa vī et vastā ruīnā dissiluisse. aevi* = *temporis. foret: cum* concessive; App. 379. *mediō* = *in medium*: dat. of direction; App. 306. *vī*: abl. of manner; App. 328. *undis*: abl. of means.  
 418. *Hesperium latus: the western side (of Italy). Siculō (latere): from the Sicilian (side).*

419. *litore*: abl. of respect; App. 325; the singular for the plural, referring to

the shores on either side of the straits. *angustō aestū: with a narrow tideway.*

420. *Scylla (obsidet).*

421. (in) *gurgite. ter: three times (a day).*

422. (*Charybdis*) *sorbet.*

424-425. *Scyllam ōra exsertantem et nāvīs trahentem.*

426. *Prima: in front. hominis faciēs (est): her appearance is that of a human. pectore*: abl. of quality; App. 330.

pūbe tenus, postrēma *immānī corpore* pistrīx  
 delphinum caudās uterō commissa lupōrum.  
 Praestat Trinacrii mētās lūstrāre Pachynī  
 cessantem, *longōs et circumflectere cursūs*, 430  
 quam semel informem *vastō vīdisse sub antrō*  
 Scyllam et caeruleis canibus resonantia saxa.  
 Praetereā, *sī qua est Helenō prūdentia vātī*,  
*sī qua fidēs, animum sī vērīs implet Apollō*,  
*ūnum illud tibi, nāte deā, prōque omnibus ūnum* 435  
 praedicam et repetēns iterumque iterumque monēbō,  
 Jūnōnis magnae primum prece nūmen adōrā,  
 Jūnōnī cane vōta libēns dominamque potentem

adōrō (1) honor, entreat, worship  
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)\*  
 canis, is m. (f.) dog, hound†  
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, proclaim\*  
 cauda, ae f. tail†  
 cessō (1) loiter, linger, delay, stop  
 circumflectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend  
 around, turn around, double†  
 committō, ere, misi, missus join  
 to(gether)  
 delphīn, inis m. dolphin, a kind of fish†  
 domina, ae f. lady, mistress, queen  
 fidēs, ei f. faith, trust(worthiness)\*  
 Helenus, i m. a prophet, son of Priam  
 impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy\*  
 informis, e shapeless, monstrous†  
 iterum again, anew, repeatedly\*  
 libēns, entis willing(ly), glad(ly)†  
 lupus, i m. wolf  
 lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify\*  
 mēta, ae f. goal, turning point, limit

moneō, ēre, ui, itus advise, warn  
 Pachynus (um), i m. (n.) southeastern  
 promontory of Sicily†  
 pistrīx, icis f. fish-like sea monster†  
 postrēmus, a, um hindmost, last†  
 potēns, entis powerful, ruling (gen.)\*  
 praedicō, ere, dixi, dictus foretell, predict  
 praestō, āre, stiti, stitus stand before,  
 be superior (better)  
 praetereā besides, also, in addition\*  
 prex, precis f. prayer, vow, entreaty\*  
 prō for, in behalf of, before (abl.)\*  
 prūdentia, ae f. foresight, discretion†  
 pūbēs, is f. waist, loins; youth\*  
 quam than, how, as†\*  
 repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus reseek, repeat,  
 recall  
 resonō (1) (re)sound, roar†  
 Scylla, ae f. a sea-monster  
 semel once (for all)†  
 tenus up to, down to, as far as (abl.)  
 Trinacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian  
 uterus, i m. womb, belly  
 vērūm, i n. truth, right(eousness)  
 vōtum, i n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

427. postrēma (faciēs est): behind.

428. caudās: obj. of commissa used  
 as a middle; App. 309, a. The tails of  
 dolphins are joined to the bodies of  
 wolves. *Gi. Paradise Lost*, 2, 650-655.

"The one seemed woman to the waist,  
 and fair,

But ended foul in many a scaly fold  
 Voluminous and vast, a serpent armed  
 With mortal sting; about her middle  
 round

A cry of hell-hounds never ceasing barked  
 With wide Cerberean mouths full loud."

429. mētās: used figuratively to in-  
 dicate that they should sail around  
 Pachynus as around a turning post in

a race course. (tē) lūstrāre: subj. of  
 praestat; App. 258.

430. cessantem (tē): subj. of lūstrāre.

432. canibus = the dogs or wolves of  
 l. 428; a touch of the poetic caprice which  
 scorns an unimaginative consistency.

433. Helenō = mihi: the third person  
 is used in order to be more impressive.

434. fidēs (est mihi). animum (meum).

435. ūnum: emphatic by repetition,  
 as is iterum below; App. 413.

437-438. adōrā: imp. Jūnōnis, Jū-  
 nōnī: emphatic by position and repeti-  
 tion. cane vōta: utter (chant) your  
 prayers; Roman prayers were often made  
 according to rhythmic formulas. Com-  
 pare the English word *cant* from Latin  
 canō. dominam potentem = Jūnōnem.

- supplicibus superā dōnīs: sic dēnique victor  
 440 Trīnacrīā finīs Italōs mittēre relictā.  
*Hūc ubi dēlātus Cūmaeam accesseris urbem*  
*divinōsque lacūs et Avernā sonantia silvīs,*  
*insānam vātem aspiciēs, quae rūpe sub imā*  
*fāta canit foliisque notās et nōmina mandat.*  
 445 Quaecumque in foliis dēscripsit carmina virgō  
 dīgerit in numerum atque antrō sēclūsa relīquit:  
*illa manent immōta locīs neque ab ordine cēdunt.*  
*Vērū eadem, versō tenuis cum cardine ventus*  
*impulit et tenerās turbāvit jānuā frondēs,*  
 450 numquam deinde cavō volitantia prendere saxō

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go to, approach  
 antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look  
 (at)  
 Avernā, ōrum n. region about Lake  
 Avernus in Italy†  
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, proclaim\*  
 cardō, inis m. hinge, pivot, socket  
 carmen, inis n. song, verse, prophecy  
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
 cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield (to), move\*  
 Cūmaeus, a, um Cumaean, of Cumae, an  
 Italian city, home of the Sibyl, an an-  
 cient prophetess†  
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down,  
 convey  
 deinde then, thereupon, next\*  
 dēnique finally, at last  
 dēscribō, ere, psī, ptus write (down)†  
 dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus distribute,  
 arrange  
 divīnus, a, um divine, sacred, celestial  
 folium, (i)ī n. leaf, foliage  
 frōns, frondis f. leaf, frond, foliage\*  
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable

impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive, stir  
 insānus, a, um insane, frenzied, inspired  
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy  
 jānuā, ae f. door, gate, entrance  
 lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere  
 mandō (1) intrust, command, commend  
 notā, ae f. mark, sign, letter, writing†  
 numerus, ī m. number, order, multitude\*  
 numquam never, at no time  
 ordō, inis m. order, rank, position\*  
 pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp, seize  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
 whoever, whichever, whatever\*  
 rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sēclūdō, ere, si, sus shut (off, up)  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 tener, era, erum tender, soft, delicate  
 tenuis, e thin, slight, fine  
 Trinacria, ae f. Trinacria, Sicily†  
 turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate\*  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change\*  
 vērū but, truly, however  
 virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*  
 volitō (1) fly, flutter†

439. superā: imp.

440. (ad) finīs mittēre (= mittēris):  
 App. 204, 4.

441-462. But Aeneas must first visit  
 the Sibyl, the mad prophetess of Cumae,  
 who will tell him all the rest he needs  
 to know.

442. divīnōs: sacred to the gods of the  
 lower world. silvīs: abl. of means with  
 sonantia.

443. insānam vātem: the famous  
 Cumaean Sibyl. Compare the note on  
 furēs, II, 345.

444. notās et nōmina: written on  
 leaves as prophetic utterances.

445. virgō: the Sibyl.

446. in numerum: in the order of  
 occurrence of the events which she  
 predicts. (in) antrō = rūpe sub imā of  
 l. 443.

447. (in) locīs.

448. eadem (folia): obj. of pre(he)n-  
 dere, in l. 450. Versō cardine (jānuae):  
 abl. abs.; App. 343.

449. jānuā: when opened.

450. (in) cavō saxō = (in) antrō of  
 l. 446.



*nec revocāre sitūs aut jungere carmina cūrat.*  
*Incōnsultī abeunt sēdemque ōdēre Sibyllae.*  
*Hic tibi nē qua morae fuerint dispendia tantī,*  
*quamvis increpitent sociī et vī cursus in altum*  
*vēla vocet, possisque sinūs implēre secundōs,*  
*quīn adeās vātem precibusque ōrācula poscās*  
*ipsa canat vōcemque volēns atque ōra resolvat.*  
*Illa tibi Italiae populōs ventūraque bella*  
*et quō quemque modō fugiāsque ferāsque labōrem*  
*expediat, cursūsque dabit venerāta secundōs.*  
*Haec sunt quae nostrā liceat tē vōce monēri.*  
*Vāde age et ingentem factīs fer ad aethera Trojam.'*

455

460

**abeō, ire, ī (ivī), itus** go away, depart\*  
**adeō, ire, ī (ivī), itus** approach, visit  
**aethēr, eris, acc. era, m.** upper air, heaven,  
 ether

**altum, ī n.** the deep (sea); heaven  
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, proclaim\*

**carmen, inis n.** song, verse, prophecy  
**cūrō (l)** care (to, for), regard, heed  
**dispendium, (i)ī n.** expenditure, cost,  
 loss†

**expediō, ire, ivī (ii), itus** disentangle,  
 explain

**factum, ī n.** deed, achievement, exploit\*  
**impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus** fill, satisfy\*  
**incōnsultus, a, um** unconsulted; un-  
 counseled†

**increpitō (l)** chide, challenge, rebuke  
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus** join, yoke,  
 unite\*

**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is allowed\*

**modus, ī m.** measure, manner, way\*  
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn  
**mora, ae f.** delay, pause, hindrance\*  
**ōdī, isse** hate, detest, loathe  
**ōrāc(u)lum, ī n.** oracle, prophecy  
**populus, ī m.** people, nation, race\*  
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, ask (for)\*  
**prex, precis f.** prayer, entreaty, vow\*  
**quamvis** although, however much†  
**quīn** not that, but that, nay even, why  
 not\*

**quique, quaeque, quodque** each (one),  
 every(one)

**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, open  
**revocō (l)** call back, recall, restore  
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable\*  
**Sibylla, ae f.** ancient Italian prophetess†  
**sinus, ūs m.** fold, bosom, bay, hollow\*  
**situs, ūs m.** situation, position†  
**vādō, ere** go, proceed, rush  
**veneror, āri, ātus** reverence, worship

**451. revocāre sitūs:** to restore (them to) their places.

**452. abeunt:** the subject is general, people who have come to consult the oracle. **ōdēre = ōdērunt.**

**453-457. morae:** subj. gen., damage of delay, i.e., damage caused by delay; App. 284; or appositional gen.; App. 281. **Hic nē qua dispendia morae fuerint tantī tibi quīn adeās vātem precibusque poscās (ut) ipsa (Sibylla) canat ōrācula. fuerint:** vol. subj.; App. 254. **tantī:** of so great value (importance); gen. of value; App. 292. **vī:** abl. of manner. **increpitent, vocet, possis:** concessive subjunctives introduced by **quamvis;** App. 384. **sinūs (vēlōrum).** **sinūs implēre secundōs = sinūs implēre secundis ventis;** **secundōs** thus being a transferred epithet; App. 446. **quīn**

**adeās, poscās:** result; App. 366; or with a negatived expression of preventing; App. 362. **(ut) canat, (ut) resolvat:** subst. clauses developed from the volitive depending on **poscās;** App. 360. **ipsa:** directly, not with leaves, as described in ll. 444 ff.

**459. quō modō fugiās, ferās:** indir. questions, how you can avoid trouble (as far as possible) and how you can bear the rest; App. 349.

**460. venerāta:** used passively, modifying **illa** in l. 458.

**461. Haec sunt (dicta) quae liceat:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quae:** retained secondary obj. of **monēri;** App. 309, a. **tē:** subj. of **monēri.**

**462. Vāde, age, fer:** imperatives. **aethera:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 68.

- Quae postquam vātēs sic ōre effātus amīcō est,*  
*dōna dehinc aurō gravia sectōque elephantō*  
 465 *imperat ad nāvīs ferrī, stipatque carinīs*  
*ingēns argentum Dōdōnaeōsque lebētas,*  
*lōricam cōnsertam hāmīs aurōque trīlicem,*  
*et cōnum insignis galeae cristāsque comantīs,*  
*arma Neoptolemī. Sunt et sua dōna parentī.*  
 470 *Addit equōs, additque ducēs,*  
*rēmīgium supplet, sociōs simul instruit armīs.*  
*Intereā classem vēlīs aptāre jubēbat*  
*Anchīsēs, fieret ventō mora nē qua ferentī.*  
*Quem Phoebī interpres multō compellat honōre:*  
 475 *‘Conjugiō, Anchīsā, Veneris dignāte superbō,*  
*cūra deum, bis Pergameīs ērepte ruīnīs,*

addō, ere, didī, dītus add\*  
 amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
 aptō (1) fit, equip, prepare, furnish  
 argentum, ī n. silver  
 bis twice\*  
 carina, ae f. keel, ship, boat\*  
 comāns, antis hairy, shaggy  
 compellō (1) address, accost, speak to  
 conjugium, (i) ī n. marriage, wedlock  
 cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus join, fasten (to-  
 gether)  
 cōnus, ī m. cone, peak (of helmet)†  
 crista, ae f. crest, plume†  
 dehinc thence, thereupon, next  
 dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy (abl.)  
 Dōdōnaeus, a, um of Dodona, seat of a  
 famous Greek oracle†  
 dux, ducis m. leader, guide, pilot\*  
 effor, fārī, fātus speak out, say  
 elephantus, ī m. elephant, ivory†  
 fiō, fierī, factus become, be made  
 galea, ae f. helmet  
 gravis, e heavy, serious, weighty\*

hāmus, ī m. hook, link†  
 imperō (1) command, bid, order†  
 insignis, e marked, distinguished\*  
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build up,  
 equip  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 interpres, etis m. interpreter, prophet  
 lebēs, ētis m. basin, kettle, caldron†  
 lōrica, ae f. breastplate, cuirass†  
 mora, ae f. delay, pause, hindrance\*  
 Neoptolemus, ī m. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles  
 Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan  
 Phoebus, ī m. Apollo, god of light, music,  
 and prophecy\*  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 rēmīgium, (i) ī n. oarage, body of oarsmen  
 ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin, destruction  
 secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, saw, slice\*  
 stipō (1) stuff, cram, stow, crowd  
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*  
 suppleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (up), supply†  
 trīlix, icis three-ply, triple†  
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty\*

463-505. The Trojans, richly laden with gifts, depart amid the tears and lamentations of all.

464. dōna: making gifts at the meeting and parting of friends was a common mark of esteem and affection. An exchange of gifts was also common, as in I, 647. gravia: with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent.

466. Dōdōnaeōs lebētas: such kettles as were suspended in the sacred grove at Dodona, from the sound of which when struck the priests interpreted the will of Jupiter. lebētas: acc. pl., a Greek form: App. 65, a.

467. lōricam cōnsertam etc.: a coat of mail triply woven of gold chains.

469. sua: appropriate; sua is usually reflexive, but here refers to parentī instead of to the subject; App. 248, a. parentī (meō): Anchises.

473. fieret: negative purpose; App. 359. ventō: dat. of reference. ferenti: favorable.

474. Phoebī interpres: Helenus.

475-476. Conjugiō: abl. with dignor; App. 337, a. dignāte: deponent participle used in passive sense. Anchīsā, dignāte, cūra, ērepte: vocatives. de- (ōr)um. bis: compare the notes on II, 642-643.

ecce tibi Ausoniae tellūs: hanc arripe vĕlīs.  
 Et tamen hanc pelagō praeterlābāre necesse est:  
 Ausoniae pars illa procul quam pandit Apollō.  
 Vāde, ait 'Ō fēlix nātī pietāte. Quid ultrā 480  
 prōvehor et fandō surgentīs dēmoro Austrōs?'  
 Nec minus Andromachē digressū maesta suprēmō  
 fert pictūrātās aurī subtēmine vestīs  
 et Phrygiam Ascaniō chlamydem (nec cēdit honōre)  
 textilibusque onerat dōnīs, ac tālia fātur 485  
 'Accipe et haec, manuum tibi quae monimenta meārum  
 sint, puer, et longum Andromachae testentur amōrem,  
 conjugis Hectoreae. Cape dōna extrēma tuōrum,  
 Ō mihi sōla meī super Astyanactis imāgō.

**Andromachē**, ēs (ae) *f.* wife of Hector  
**Apollō**, inis *m.* god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*

**arripiō**, ere, ul, repts seize (upon)†

**Ascanius**, (i)l *m.* son of Aeneas\*

**Astyanax**, actis *m.* infant child of Hector  
 and Andromache, dashed to death  
 from the walls of Troy by the Greeks

**Ausonia**, ae *f.* Ausonia, Italy†

**Auster**, tri *m.* (south) wind\*

**cēdō**, ere, cessi, cessus yield (to), depart;  
 be inferior\*

**chlamys**, ydis *f.* cloak, mantle†

**dēmoro**, āri, ātus delay, detain, hinder

**digressus**, ūs *m.* departure†

**ecce** see! look! behold!\*

**extrēmus**, a, um final, uttermost, last\*

**fēlix**, icis happy, blessed, fortunate\*

**Hectoreus**, a, um of Hector, a Trojan  
 leader

**imāgō**, inis *f.* likeness, image, phan-  
 tom\*

**maestus**, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
 minus less

**monimentum** (monumentum), i *n.* re-  
 minder, memorial

**necesse** necessary; necessity†

**onerō** (1) burden, load, overwhelm

**pandō**, ere, i, passus spread (open), dis-  
 close\*

**Phrygius**, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*

**pictūrō** (1) embroider, picture†

**pietās**, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of  
 duty, righteousness, nobility\*

**praeterlābor**, i, lāpsus glide past†

**prōvehō**, ere, vēxi, vectus carry forward,  
 convey

**subtēmen**, inis *n.* woof, threads†

**tamen** nevertheless, however, but\*

**testor**, āri, ātus call to witness, testify (to)

**textilis**, e woven, textile†

**ultrā** beyond (*acc.*); further†

**vādō**, ere go, proceed, rush

**vestis**, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

**477-478.** tibi: ethical dat.; App. 300;  
 best left untranslated. **ecce tellūs (est):**  
*yonder lies the land.* **hanc, hanc:** the first  
**hanc** refers to Italy in general, including the  
 part where Aeneas was destined to settle,  
 the second **hanc** refers to the eastern coast  
 of Italy, forbidden to Aeneas. **arripe:** imp.

**478.** (ut) praeterlābāre = (ut) prae-  
 terlābāris: substantive clause developed  
 from the volitive; App. 204, 4; 360; it  
 is subject of necesse est.

**479.** pars illa (est) procul: refers to  
 Latium on the western coast where  
 Aeneas was destined to settle.

**480.** Vāde: imp. pietāte: abl. of cause  
 with fēlix; App. 332. Quid dēmoro  
 Austrōs: *why do I delay the winds,* which  
 are eager to waft your ships on their way?

That is, why do I detain you from sailing  
 with the favorable winds?

**481.** fandō: from for; gerund, abl.  
 of means.

**482.** digressū: abl. of cause.

**484.** honōre: abl. of respect; App.  
 325. **nec (Helenō) cēdit honōre:** *and*  
*she vies with Helenus in showing us honor.*

**485.** tālia (dicta).

**486-488.** et haec: *these also,* as well  
 as the gifts of Helenus. **Accipe, Cape:**  
 imperatives. **quae sint, et testentur:** rel.  
 clauses of purpose; App. 388.

**489.** sōla super: *sole surviving.* **super:**  
 adverbial = *quae superēs.* **Astyanactis:**  
 at the capture of Troy, the Greeks killed  
 the boy Astyanax by hurling him from  
 the wall.

- 490 *Sic oculōs, sic ille manūs, sic ōra ferēbat;*  
*et nunc aequālī tēcum pūbēsceret aevō.*  
*Hōs ego digrediēns lacrimīs adfābar obortīs:*  
*‘Vivite fēlicēs, quibus est fortūna perācta*  
*jam sua: nōs alia ex aliīs in fāta vocāmur.*
- 495 *Vōbīs parta quiēs: nullum maris aequor arandum,*  
*arva neque Ausoniae semper cēdentia retrō*  
*quaerenda. Effigiem Xanthī Trojamque vidētis*  
*quam vestrae fēcēre manūs, meliōribus, optō,*  
*auspiciīs, et quae fuerit minus obvia Grajīs.*
- 500 *Sī quandō Thybrim vicināque Thybridis arva*  
*intrārō gentique meae data moenia cernam,*  
*cognātās urbēs ōlim populōsque propinquōs,*  
*Ēpirō Hesperiam (quibus idem Dardanus auctor*

adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost\*  
 aequālīs, e equal, of the same age†  
 aevum, i n. age, life, time, eternity  
 arō (1) plow, furrow, till  
 auctor, ōris m. founder, author, sponsor  
 Ausonia, ae f. Ausonia, Italy  
 auspiciū, (i) i n. omen, auspice(s)  
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield (to), depart;  
 be inferior\*  
 cognātus, a, um kindred, akin†  
 Dardanus, i m. early Trojan king  
 digredior, ī, gressus depart, separate  
 effigiēs, ēi f. likeness, image, statue  
 Ēpirus, i f. district of northwestern Greece  
 fēlix, icis happy, fortunate, blessed\*  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 Hesperia, ae f. Hesperia, Italy, Westland  
 intrō (1) enter, penetrate  
 melior, ius better, superior  
 minus less

oborior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up†  
 obvius, a, um in the way, exposed (dat.)  
 ōlim once, at some time, formerly\*  
 optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)\*  
 pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, gain  
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, fin-  
 ish†  
 populus, i m. people, nation, race\*  
 propinquus, a, um near, neighboring  
 pūbēscō, ere, pūbui be a youth, grow  
 (up)†  
 quandō ever, when, since  
 quiēs, ētis f. rest, quiet, peace, repose\*  
 retrō back(ward), again, anew  
 semper always, ever, continually\*  
 Thybris, (id) is m. Tiber, a river of Italy  
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
 vicinus, a, um near, neighboring  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive  
 Xanthus, i m. river near Troy

490. Sic (ille ferēbat) oculōs.

491. pūbēsceret: implied condition contrary to fact; App. 382. aevō: abl. of quality; App. 330. Astyanax, if he had lived, would have been about as old as his cousin Ascanius.

493. Vivite: imp. farewell! quibus: dat. of reference.

494. sua: irregularly referring to quibus instead of to the subject; App. 248, a. alia ex aliīs in fāta: from one fate to another.

495. Vōbīs: dat. of reference or of agent. parta (est) quiēs. arandum (est) vōbīs).

497. quaerenda (sunt vōbīs).

498-499. fēcēre = fēcērunt. meliōri-bus auspiciīs: (under) with better auspices

(than those of the original Troy); abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

499. fuerit: fut. perf., will prove to be.

500. Thybridis: gen. with vicinā; App. 287.

501. intrā(ve)rō.

502-505. ōlim faciēmus cognātās urbēs populōsque propinquōs utramque ūnam Trojam animīs. After the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., Augustus founded Nicopolis in Epirus to commemorate his victory. Vergil is probably alluding to this fact in this passage.

503-504. Ēpirō (cognātā et propinquā) Hesperiam. Hesperiam: in partitive apposition with populōs. quibus: dat. of possessor. idem auctor (erat), idem cāsūs (erant). utramque = ambās urbēs.



*atque idem cāsūs), ūnam faciēmus utramque*  
*Trojam animīs: maneat nostrōs ea cūra nepōtēs.* 505  
 Prōvehimur *pelagō* vicīna Ceraunia juxtā,  
 unde iter *Italiam cursusque* brevissimus undīs.  
 Sōl ruit intereā et montēs umbrantur opacī.  
 Sternimur optātae gremiō tellūris ad undam  
 sortitī rēmōs passimque in litore siccō 510  
*corpora cūrāmus: fessōs* sopor inrigat artūs.  
 Necdum orbem mediū Nox Hōris ācta subibat:  
*haud* sēgnis strātō surgit Palinūrus et omnīs  
 explōrat ventōs atque auribus āera captat;  
*sīdera cūncta* notat tacitō lābentia caelō, 515  
 Arctūrum pluviāsque Hyadas geminōsque Triōnēs

āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, cloud, mist  
 Arctūrus, ī m. a bright star in the constellation Boötes  
 artus, ūs m. limb, joint, body\*  
 auris, is f. ear\*  
 brevis, e short, brief, shallow  
 captō (1) (try to) catch, listen (to, for)†  
 Ceraunia, ōrum n. mountain range of the western coast of Greece†  
 cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, refresh  
 explōrō (1) search (out), test, examine  
 gremium, (i) ī n. bosom, lap, embrace  
 hōra, ae f. hour, season, time†  
 Hyades, um f. constellation supposed to bring rain  
 inrigō (1) irrigate, flow into, bedew  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 juxtā near, next (acc.)†\*  
 necdum not yet  
 nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant\*  
 notō (1) mark, observe†  
 opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy†

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)\*  
 orbis, is m. circle, orbit, earth\*  
 Palinūrus, ī m. Trojan pilot  
 passim everywhere, all about\*  
 pluuius, a, um rainy, rain-bringing  
 prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear forward, convey  
 sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive†  
 siccus, a, um dry, thirsty  
 sōl, sōlis m. sun; day\*  
 sopor, ōris m. sleep, slumber  
 sortior, irī, itus get by lot, allot  
 sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay (low), spread, stretch out\*  
 strātum, ī n. bed, couch; pavement  
 tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still  
 Triōnēs, um m. northern constellations, the Great and Little Bear  
 umbrō (1) shade, shadow, cover†  
 unde whence, from which source\*  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both\*  
 vicinus, a, um near, neighboring

utramque: in apposition with urbēs and populōs, but attracted to the gender of Trojam. animis: abl. of respect; App. 325.

506-529. The Trojans skirt the coast of Greece to the point nearest Italy and, after a short rest, sail straight across; at dawn they catch sight of the Promised Land, which they joyfully greet as their future home.

506-507. pelagō, undis: abl. of route. iter (est ad) Italiam. brevissimus: modifies both iter and cursus, but agrees with the nearest; the Adriatic is only some forty miles wide at this point.

508. Sōl ruit (in mare).

509. Sternimur: middle (reflexive), we lay ourselves down. (in) gremiō. ad undam: near the water.

510. sortitī: the hard work is distributed by lot as in I, 507-508; this is done in the evening, so that they may start during the night, if weather conditions prove favorable.

512. orbem: its course through the vaulted heavens. It was not yet midnight, as is seen from necdum medium. hōris: abl. of means.

513. strātō: abl. of separation.

514. auribus captat: listens to.

- armātumque aurō circumspicit Ōriōna.  
 Postquam cūcta videt caelō cōnstāre serēnō,  
 dat clārum ē puppī signum: nōs castra movēmus  
 520 temptāmusque viam et vērōrum pandimus ālās.  
*Jamque rubescēbat stēllis Aurōra fugātis*  
*cum procul obscurōs collis humilemque vidēmus*  
*Italiam. Italiam prīmus conclāmat Achātēs,*  
*Italiam laetō socii clāmōre salūtant.*  
 525 *Tum pater Anchīsēs magnum crātēra corōnā*  
*induit implēvitque merō, divōsque vocāvīt*  
*stāns celsā in puppī:*  
*‘Dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs,*  
*ferte viam ventō facilem et spirāte secundī.’*  
 530 *Crēbrēscunt optātae aurae portusque patēscit*  
*jam propior, templumque appāret in arce Minervae.*

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
 āla, *ae f.* wing\*  
 appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 Aurōra, *ae f.* (goddess of) the dawn\*  
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment\*  
 celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering\*  
 circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look around (upon)  
 clārus, *a, um* clear, distinct, illustrious\*  
 collis, *is m.* hill  
 conclāmō (1) shout, exclaim, cry out  
 cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand firm, be settled†  
 corōna, *ae f.* garland, wreath, crown  
 crātēr, ēris, *acc. ēra, m.* mixing bowl  
 crēbrēscō, ere, brui become frequent, renew†  
 facilis, *e* easy, smooth, favorable  
 fugō (1) put to flight, rout, disperse  
 humilis, *e* low(ly), low-lying, humble†  
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy\*  
 induō, ere, uī, ūtus put on, clothe, wreath  
 merum, *i n.* (unmixed) wine

Minerva, *ae f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts  
 obscurus, *a, um* dark, obscure, gloomy\*  
 optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)\*  
 Ōriōn, ōnis, *acc. ōna, m.* a bright constellation, supposed to represent a famous hunter armed with shining golden weapons  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), reveal\*  
 patēscō, ere, patuī open (up)  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 potēns, entis powerful, ruling (*gen.*)\*  
 propior, ius nearer, closer, nigher  
 rubescō, ere, rubuī blush, redden†  
 salutō (1) greet, salute†  
 secundus, *a, um* second, favorable\*  
 serēnus, *a, um* clear, calm, tranquil  
 signum, *i n.* sign, signal, token, mark\*  
 spirō (1) breathe, blow, exhale  
 stēlla, *ae f.* star, constellation  
 tempestās, ātis *f.* weather, storm, season\*  
 templum, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
 temptō (1) try, test, attempt, examine\*

517. aurō: referring to Orion's belt and upraised sword composed of shining golden stars. Ōriōna: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form; note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

518. (in) caelō.

519. clārum signum: probably with a trumpet. castra movēmus: a military term, used also of naval expeditions.

523-524. Italiam: thrice repeated for effect; the Promised Land at last; cf. App. 413. clāmōre: *abl. of manner socii (mei).*

525. crātēra: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form; see note on I, 724.

527. in puppī: where the images of the patron gods of the ship were carried.

528. maris, terrae, tempestātum: objective genitives, with potentēs; App. 284.

529. (nōbis) ferte: *imp.* ventō: *abl.* of means. spirāte: *imp.*

530-547. The Trojans land and sacrifice according to the Trojan ritual.

530. portus: probably Portus Veneris in southeast Italy.

*Vēla legunt socii et prōrās ad litora torquent.*

*Portus ab Eurōō fluctū curvātus in arcum,*

*objectae salsā spūmant aspergine cautēs,*

*ipse latet: geminō dīmīttunt braccia mūrō*

535

*turriti scopuli refugitque ab litore templum.*

*Quattuor hīc, prīmum ōmen, equōs in grāmine vīdī*

*tondentis campum lātē, candōre nivālī.*

*Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Bellum, Ō terra hospita, portās:*

*bellō armantur equī, bellum haec armenta minantur.*

540

*Sed tamen idem ōlim currū succēdere suētī*

*quadripedēs et frēna jugō concordia ferre:*

*spēs et pācis' ait. Tum nūmina sācta precāmur*

*Palladis armisonae, quae prīma accēpit ovanīs,*

arcus, ūs *m.* arch, bow\*

armentum, *i n.* herd, drove (of cattle)

armisonus, *a, um* (re)sounding with arms†

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*

a(d)spergō, *inis f.* sprinkling, spray†

bracchium, (*i i n.* arm, forearm\*

candor, ōris *m.* whiteness, gleam, glow†

cautēs, *is f.* rock, cliff, ledge†

concor, *rdis* harmonious, concordant†

currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*

curvō (1) curve, bend, arch, wind†

dīmīttō, *ere, mīsi, missus* send away, extend

Eurōus, *a, um* East, Eastern†

frēnum, *i n.* rein, curb, bridle†

grāmen, *inis n.* grass, herb(age), sward

hospitus, *a, um* strange, hospitable

jugum, *i n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge\*

lātē widely, far and wide

lateō, *ēre, uī* lie hid, hide, lurk\*

legō, *ere, lēgī, lēctus* collect, choose, furl, gather in\*

minōr, *āri, ātus* threaten, menace; tower

mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart\*

nivālis, *e* snowy†

objiciō, *ere, jēcī, jectus* place before

ōlim once, (at) some time, formerly\*

ōmen, *inis n.* omen, portent, sign\*

ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph

Pallas, *adis f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts

pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, repose, grace

portō (1) carry, bear, bring, convey\*

precor, *āri, ātus* pray, beg, entreat\*

prōra, *ae f.* prow\*

quadripēs (upēs), *edis m.* quadruped, horse†

quattuor four†

refugiō, *ere, fūgī* flee back, recede

salsus, *a, um* briny, salty

sāctus, *a, um* sacred, holy, revered\*

scopulus, *i m.* rock, cliff, crag\*

spēs, *eī f.* hope, expectation\*

spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*

succēdō, *ere, cessī, cessus* approach submit (to) (*dat.*)

suēscō, *ere, suēvī, suētus* accustom, be accustomed†

tamen nevertheless, however, but\*

templum, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*

tondeō, *ēre, totondī, tōnsus* shear, crop

torqueō, *ēre, rsī, rtus* turn, twist, sway\*

turritus, *a, um* tower-like, with towers, turreted†

532. *Vēla legunt:* they furl their sails and then row the ships to the land.

533. *ab Eurōō fluctū:* abl. of agent, of a non-person, a rare usage; App. 333, 437.

535. *ipse (portus). geminō mūrō:* abl. of quality; App. 330. *dīmīttunt (in mare).*

536. *refugit:* as they near the shore, the temple is seen to be farther back than appeared at a distance.

537. *primum ōmen:* the first sight to

strike the eyes in a new land was often taken as an omen.

538. *candōre:* abl. of quality.

540. *bellō:* dat. of purpose; App. 303. *bellum:* observe the rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

541-542. *idem quadripedēs suētī (sunt) succēdere currū. currū:* dat. with compound; App. 298. *jugō:* abl. of means.

543. *spēs (est) et (also) pācis.*

544. *Palladis armisonae:* they had landed near a temple of Minerva at

- 545 *et capita ante ārās Phrygiō vēlāmur amictū,*  
*praeceptisque Helenī, dederat quae maxima, rīte*  
*Jūnōnī Argivae jussōs adolēmus honorēs.*  
*Haud mora, continuō perfectis ordine vōtis*  
*cornua vēlātārū obvertimus antemnārū,*  
 550 *Grajugenumque domōs suspectaque linquimus arva.*  
*Hinc sinus Herculeī (sī vēra est fāma) Tarentī*  
*cernitur, attollit sē dīva Lacīnia contrā,*  
*Caulōnisque arcēs et nāvifragum Scylacēum.*  
*Tum procul ē flūctū Trinacria cernitur Aetna,*  
 555 *et gemitum ingentem pelagī pulsātaque saxa*  
*audīmus longē frāctāsque ad litora vōcēs,*  
*exsultantque vada atque aestū miscentur harēnae.*

adoleō, ēre, uī, adultus worship, burn  
 aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide  
 Aetna, *ae f.* volcano in Sicily†  
 amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, robe, garment  
 antemna, *ae f.* sail-yard†  
 Argīvus, *a, um* Argive, Greek  
 attollō, *ere* lift, rear, raise\*  
 Caulōn, ōnis *m.* city of South Italy†  
 continuō immediately, forthwith  
 contrā opposite, in reply (to) (*acc.*)\*  
 cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end  
 exsultō (1) leap up, rejoice, exult  
 frangō, *ere, frēgī, frāctus* break, smash\*  
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament\*  
 Grajugena, *ae m.* Grecian-born, Greek†  
 harēna, *ae f.* sand, beach\*  
 Helenus, *i m.* a prophet, son of Priam  
 Herculeus, *a, um* Herculean, of Hercules,  
 god of strength, son of Jupiter and  
 Alcmena, celebrated for his twelve  
 labors while on earth†  
 Lacīnius, *a, um* of Lacinium, a promon-  
 tory of South Italy with a temple of  
 Juno†  
 linquō, *ere, liquī, lictus* leave, desert\*  
 longē far (away), at a distance\*

misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
 mora, *ae f.* delay, pause, hindrance\*  
 nāvifragus, *a, um* ship-wrecking†  
 obvertō, *ere, ī, rsus* turn toward†  
 ordō, inis *m.* order, arrangement, row\*  
 perficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectus* finish, accom-  
 plish  
 Phrygius, *a, um* Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 praeceptum, *i n.* precept, command  
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, batter†  
 rīte duly, according to custom  
 Scylacēum, *i n.* city in southern Italy†  
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hol-  
 low\*  
 suspiciō, *ere, spexī, spectus* look up at;  
 suspect  
 Tarentum, *i n.* city of southern Italy,  
 founded by Hercules†  
 Trinacrius, *a, um* Trinacrian, Sicilian  
 vadum, *i n.* shallow, depths (of waters)  
 vēlō (1) veil, cover (the face), wrap, equip  
 with sails  
 vērus, *a, um* true, real, genuine, hon-  
 est\*  
 vōtum, *i n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offer-  
 ing\*

Castrum Minervae; see l. 531. accēpit  
 (nōs).

545. *capita*: object of the middle verb  
*vēlāmur, we veil* (for ourselves); App.  
 309. They thus follow the instructions  
 given in ll. 405-409.

546. *praeceptis*: according to the be-  
 hests; abl. of accordance; App. 326.  
*maxima*: (as) most important.

547. *Jūnōnī Argivae*: Argos was a  
 famous center of the worship of Juno.

548-569. They sail southward along  
 the eastern coast of Italy and of Sicily to  
 Mt. Etna, where they land.

548. *Haud mora* (est). *ordine*: in  
 due form.

549. *cornua antemnārū*: the tips of  
 the yards. Note the spondaic fifth foot;  
 App. 395.

550. *Grajugen(ār)um*.

552. *dīva Lacīnia* = Juno; here refers  
 to a temple of Juno on the promontory  
 of Lacinium.

553. *arcēs (sē attollunt)*.

554. *ē flūctū*: (rising) from the  
 waves.

555. *pulsāta* (undīs).

556. *vōcēs* (undārū): the roar of the  
 breakers.



*Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Nimīrum hīc illa Charybdis:  
hōs Helenus scopulōs, haec saxa horrenda canēbat.  
Ēripite, Ō sociī, pariterque insurgite rēmīs.'*

560

*Haud minus ac jussī faciunt, prīmusque rudentem  
contorsit laevās prōram Palinūrus ad undās;  
laevam cūcta cohors rēmīs ventisque petivit.  
Tollimur in caelum curvātō gurgite, et idem  
subductā ad mānis imōs dēsēdimus undā.*

565

*Ter scopuli clāmōrem inter cava saxa dedēre,  
ter spūmam ēlisam et rōrantia vīdimus astra.  
Intereā fessōs ventus cum sōle reliquit,  
ignārīque viae Cyclōpum adlābimur ōrīs.*

*Portus ab accessū ventōrum immōtus et ingēns  
ipse: sed horrificis juxtā tonat Aetna ruīnis,  
interdumque ātram prōrumpit ad aethera nūbem*

570

accessus, ūs *m.* approach, access†  
adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to (*dat.*)  
aethēr, eris, *acc.* era, *m.* upper air, sky,  
heaven\*  
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano of Sicily  
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation\*  
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,  
prophecy, proclaim\*  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
Charybdis, is *f.* whirlpool opposite Scylla,  
between Sicily and Italy  
cohors, rtis *f.* troop, mass, fleet†  
contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl  
curvō (1) curve, bend, arch, wind  
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed  
giants on the eastern coast of Sicily  
near Mt. Etna†  
dēsīdō, ere, sēdī sink down, subside†  
ēlīdō, ere, sī, sus dash (out, up)†  
gurgēs, itis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), depth\*  
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam  
horrendus, a, um dreadful, horrible\*  
horrificus, a, um terrifying, horrify-  
ing  
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable

insurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on)  
(*dat.*)  
interdum at times, meanwhile  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
juxtā near, next (*acc.*); close at hand\*  
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*  
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
minus less  
nimīrum doubtless, no wonder, of course†  
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog\*  
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot\*  
pariter equally, all together, in unison,  
side by side\*  
prōra, ae *f.* prow\*  
prōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break forth,  
shoot forth  
rōrō (1) drip with dew, be dewy†  
rudō, ere, īvī (ii), itus roar, creak†  
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin; convulsion  
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag\*  
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day\*  
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray  
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw  
(from beneath), remove  
ter thrice, three times\*  
tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar†

558. hīc (est) illa Charybdis.  
559. Helenus (canēbat), (Helenus)  
canēbat.  
560. Ēripite (vōs), insurgite: impera-  
tives.  
561. ac: *than.*  
564. (nōs) idem.  
565. subductā undā: *abl. abs.*, imply-  
ing cause.  
566. dedēre = dedērunt.  
568. cum sōle: *at sundown.* (nōs)  
fessōs.

569. Cyclōpum ōrīs: *dat.* with com-  
pound; the east coast of Sicily near Mt.  
Etna.

- 570-587. The Trojans pass an uneasy  
night in the neighborhood of the volcano.

- 570-571. Portus (est). ingēns ipse:  
*spacious (in) itself.*

571. ruīnis: *downfall* (of lava, etc.);  
*abl. of cause.*

572. nūbem: *cognate acc.* with prō-  
rumpit; App. 313. Compare rumpit

- turbine fūmantem piceō et candente favillā,  
 attollitque globōs flammārum et sīdera lambit,  
 575 interdum scopulōs āvulsaque viscera montis  
 ērigit ēructāns, liquefactaque saxa sub aurās  
 cum gemitū glomerat fundōque exaestuat imō.  
 Fāma est Enceladi sēmustum fulmine corpus  
 urgērī mōle hāc, ingentemque insuper Aetnam  
 580 impositam ruptis flammam expirāre caminis,  
 et fessum quotiēns mūtet latus, intremere omnem  
 murmure Trinacriam et caelum subtexere fūmō.  
 Noctem illam tēcti silvīs immānia mōnstra  
 perferimus, nec quae sonitum det causa vidēmus.  
 585 Nam neque erant astrōrum ignēs nec lūcidus aethrā  
 sīdereā polus, obscurō sed nūbila caelō,

aethra, *ae f.* radiance, bright light†  
 Aetna, *ae f.* volcano of Sicily  
 astrum, *i n.* star, constellation\*  
 attollō, *ere lift*, rear, raise\*  
 āvellō, *ere, (vuls) i*, vulsus tear away  
 caminus, *i m.* furnace, chimney†  
 candēns, *entis* shining, white, hot†  
 causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
 Enceladus, *i m.* one of the fire-breathing  
 giants who attempted to capture  
 heaven, overthrown by Jupiter's thun-  
 derbolt and buried under Mt. Etna†  
 ērigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* raise, upheave  
 ēructō (1) belch forth, vomit forth†  
 exaestuō (1) boil forth, seethe, surge†  
 expirō (1) breathe out, exhale, die  
 favilla, *ae f.* hot ashes, embers†  
 fulmen, *inis n.* thunderbolt, lightning\*  
 fūmō (1) smoke, steam, fume, reek  
 fūmus, *i m.* smoke, vapor, fume, fog  
 fundus, *i m.* bottom, foundation, base  
 gemitus, *ūs m.* groan, roar, lament\*  
 globus, *i m.* ball, globe, sphere†  
 glomerō (1) roll together, assemble  
 impōnō, *ere, posui, positus* place upon,  
 pile upon\*  
 insuper (from) above  
 interdum at times, meanwhile  
 intremō, *ere, ui* tremble, quake, shake†

lambō, *ere lick*, lap  
 latus, *eris n.* side, flank\*  
 liquefaciō, *ere, fēci, factus* melt, liquefy†  
 lūcidus, *a, um* bright, clear, shining†  
 mōlēs, *is f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*  
 mōnstrum, *i n.* portent, marvel, mon-  
 ster\*  
 murmur, *uris n.* murmur, roar, rumble  
 mūtō (1) (ex)change, turn, transform\*  
 nūbila, *orum n.* clouds, cloudiness†  
 obscurus, *a, um* dark, gloomy, obscure\*  
 perferō, *ferre, tuli, latus* endure  
 piceus, *a, um* pitchy, black†  
 polus, *i m.* pole, sky, heaven  
 quotiēns as often as†  
 rumpō, *ere, rūpi, ruptus* break, burst  
 (forth)\*  
 scopulus, *i m.* rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sēmustum, *a, um* half-burnt, half-con-  
 sumed†  
 sidereus, *a, um* starry, of the stars†  
 sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, crash, noise\*  
 subtexō, *ere, ui, xtus* weave beneath,  
 veil (from below)†  
 tegō, *ere, tēxi, tēctus* cover, bury, hide\*  
 Trinacria, *ae f.* Trinacria, Sicily  
 turbō, *inis m.* whirl (pool, wind), storm  
 urgeō, *ēre, ursi* press (upon), urge, incite  
 viscus, *eris n.* vitals, bowels, flesh

vōcem, II, 129; III, 246. aethera: acc.  
 sing., a Greek form.

577. fundō: abl. of separation.

578-580. corpus expirāre flammam:  
 thus the ancients accounted for the  
 volcano by the story of a great fire-  
 breathing giant buried beneath the  
 mountain.

578. Fāma est = dicunt, and so fol-  
 lowed by indir. disc.; App. 390.

579. mōle hāc (montis).

581. mūtet latus: turns over; thus the  
 ancients accounted for earthquakes, by  
 the story of a great giant buried alive  
 who shook the earth when he tried to  
 turn over.

583. mōnstra: the mysterious noises.

585-586. polus (erat) lūcidus. aethrā:  
 abl. of cause. nūbila (erant) caelō.  
 caelō: dat. of possessor or abl. of place.

*et lūnam in nimbō nox intempesta tenēbat.*

Postera jamque diēs primō surgēbat Eōs  
ūmentemque Aurōra polō dimōverat umbram,  
cum subitō ē silvīs maciē cōnfecta suprēmā 590  
ignōtī nova forma virī miserandaque cultū  
prōcēdit supplexque manūs ad litora tendit.  
Respicimus. Dīra inluviēs immissaque barba,  
cōnserum tegimen spinīs: at cētera Grajus,  
et quondam patrīs ad Trojam missus in armīs. 595  
Isque ubi Dardaniōs habitūs et Trōia vīdit  
arma procul, paulum aspectū conterritus haesit  
continuitque gradum; mox sēsē ad litora praeceps  
cum flētū precibusque tulit: 'Per sīdera testor,  
per superōs atque hoc caelī spirābile lūmen, 600  
tollite mē, Teucrī; quāscumque abdūcite terrās:

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead away, carry  
away†  
a(d)spectus, ūs m. appearance, sight  
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of the) dawn\*  
barba, ae f. beard, whiskers  
cēterus, a, um other, rest, remaining  
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish,  
finish, do thoroughly, wear out†  
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join  
conterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†  
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold together,  
check  
cultus, ūs m. dress, mode of life†  
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
dimoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move apart,  
disperse†  
dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful\*  
Eōs, i m. eastern star, morning star,  
dawn  
flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament  
forma, ae f. form, shape, beauty\*  
gradus, ūs m. step, gait, stride, rung  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
habitus, ūs m. garb, appearance, dress  
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to,  
fast), halt\*  
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange

immittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, let  
grow  
inluviēs, ēī f. filth, dirt, squalor†  
intempestus, a, um unseasonable, gloomy†  
lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
maciēs, ēī f. leanness, emaciation†  
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*  
mox soon, presently  
nimbus, i m. (rain-)cloud\*  
paulum a little, slightly†  
polus, i m. pole, sky, heaven  
posterus, a, um following, rear, next  
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow\*  
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance  
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque  
whoever, whichever, whatever; any\*  
respicio, ere, spexi, spectus look (back),  
look at\*  
spīna, ae f. thorn, backbone†  
spirābilis, e breathable, vital†  
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
teg(i)men, inis n. covering, garment  
testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify  
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
ūmēns, entis dewy, wet†

587. nox intempesta: the dead of night.

588-611. While preparing to set sail the Trojans discover Achaemenides, a Greek who had been deserted by Ulysses when he escaped from the cave of the Cyclops.

588. primō Eōs: at daybreak, abl. of time.

591. nova: strange.

593. Respicimus: the Trojans were departing when their attention is called by the appearance of the strange figure, and they look back. inluviēs (erat illi), barba (erat illi).

594. cōnserum (erat). cētera: acc. of respect; App. 311. Grajus (erat).

599. testor (vōs) = ōrō, precor.

600. lūmen = aera.

601. tollite mē (vōbiscum): take me (with you). (ad) quāscumque terrās.

- hoc sat erit. Scio mē Danaīs ē classibus ūnum  
et bellō Īliacōs fateor petiisse penātis.*  
*Prō quō, sī sceleris tanta est injūria nostrī,*  
 605 *spargite mē in flūctūs vastōque immergite pontō;*  
*sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse juvābit.*  
*Dīxerat et genua amplexus genibusque volūtāns*  
*haerēbat. Quā sit fārī, quō sanguine crētus,*  
*hortāmur, quae deinde agitet fortūna fatērī.*  
 610 *Ipse pater dextram Anchīsēs haud multa morātus*  
*dat juvenī atque animum praesentī pignore firmat.*  
*Ille haec dēpositā tandem formidine fātur:*  
*‘Sum patriā ex Ithacā, comes infēlicis Ulixī,*  
*nōmine Achaemenidēs, Trojam genitōre Adamastō*  
 615 *paupere (mānsissetque utinam fortūna!) profectus.*

**Achaemenidēs, ae m.** comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes†

**Adamastus, ī m.** father of Achaemenides†  
**agitō (1)** drive, pursue, agitate, harass  
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold\*  
**crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētus** grow, spring  
 deinde then, thereupon, next\*  
**dēpōnō, ere, posui, positus** lay aside  
**fateor, ēri, fassus** confess, admit  
**firmō (1)** confirm, strengthen, encourage  
**formidō, inis f.** fear, terror, fright, dread  
**genū, ūs n.** knee

**haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus** stick (to), cling (to) (*dat.*)\*

**homō, inis m. (f.)** man, mortal, human\*  
**hortor, āri, ātus** encourage, urge, incite\*  
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian\*

**immergō, ere, rsi, rsus** plunge into (*dat.*)†

**injūria, ae f.** wrong, injury, injustice  
**Ithaca, ae f.** island-kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader

**juvenis, is m. (f.)** youth, young (man woman)\*

**juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus** help, please\*

**moror, āri, ātus** delay, hesitate, detain\*

**patria, ae f.** fatherland, country\*

**pauper, eris** poor, needy

**penātēs, ium m.** household gods\*

**pereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus** perish, die

**pignus, oris n.** pledge, token, security†

**pontus, ī m.** sea, waves\*

**praesēns, entis** present, immediate

**prō** for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)\*

**proficiscor, ī, fectus** set out, go

**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)\*

**scelus, eris n.** crime, guilt, sin, villainy\*

**sciō, ire, ivī, itus** know (how), understand

**spargō, ere, rsi, rsus** scatter, strew\*

**Ulixēs, is (ei, ī) m.** Ulysses, a wily Greek leader\*

**utinam** would that! O that!

**volūtō (1)** roll (over and over), revolve

**602.** Sciō: with final vowel irregularly short. mē (esse).

**605.** spargite, immergite: imperatives. (in) pontō.

**606.** pereō hominum: hiatus; App. 399. juvābit (mē).

**607-609.** genua (nostra) amplexus genibus (suis) volūtāns (nōbis) haerēbat. hortāmur (illum) fārī quī (= quis) sit (ille) (et) quō sanguine (sit) crētus. (hortāmur eum) fatērī quae fortūna (eum) agitet.

**611.** praesentī pignore: by an immediate pledge (of friendship); i.e., the right hand just given him by Anchises.

**612-654.** Warned by Achaemenides of the ferocity of the Cyclopes, the Trojans immediately set sail, taking Achaemenides with them.

**613.** infēlicis: from the point of view of a Greek.

**614-615.** nōmine: *abl. of respect*; App. 325. (ad) Trojam. genitōre paupere: *abl. abs.; because of my father's poverty*; said to excuse his part in the Trojan War and to win the sympathy of his hearers. Compare Sinon's tale to the same effect, II, 87. mānsisset utinam fortūna: *opt. subj.*; App. 253;



*Hic mē, dum trepidi crūdēlia līmina linquunt,*  
*immemorēs sociū vastō Cyclōpis in antrō*  
*dēseruēre. Domus saniē dapibusque cruentis,*  
*intus opāca, ingēns. Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat*  
*sidera (dī tālem terris āvertite pestem!)* 620  
*nec vīsū facilis nec dictū adfābilis ūllī;*  
*vīsceribus miserōrum et sanguine vēscitur ātrō.*  
*Vīdī egomet duo dē numerō cum corpora nostrō*  
*prēnsa manū magnā mediō resupīnus in antrō*  
*frangeret ad saxum, saniēque aspersa natārent* 625  
*līmina; vīdī ātrō cum membra fluentia tābō*  
*manderet et tepidī tremarent sub dentibus artūs —*  
*haud impūne quidem, nec tālia passus Ulixēs*  
*oblitusve suī est Ithacus discrimine tantō.*  
*Nam simul explētus dapibus vīnōque sepultus* 630

adfābilis, e may be addressed, may be spoken to, approachable, affable†  
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering\*  
 artus, ūs m. joint, limb, body\*  
 a(d)spēgō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle†  
 āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn aside, avert\*  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter\*  
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
 Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants in Sicily  
 daps, dapīs f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*  
 dēns, dentis m. tooth†  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
 discrimen, inis n. crisis, danger, distinction, difference  
 duo, ae, o two, a pair\*  
 expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, stuff, fulfil  
 facilis, e easy, enduring, favorable  
 fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow, stream  
 frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, smash, crush\*  
 immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful  
 impūne with impunity, without punishment†  
 intus within, on the inside

Ithacus, i m. native of Ithaca, Ulysses  
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert\*  
 mandō, ere, i, mānsus crunch, chew†  
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
 natō (1) swim, float, overflow†  
 numerus, i m. number, order\*  
 obliviscor, i, litus forget (gen.)  
 opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, obscure  
 patior, i, passus suffer, endure, permit\*  
 pestis, is f. plague, curse, scourge  
 pre(he)endō, ere, i, ēnsus seize, grasp  
 pulsō (1) beat, smite, lash, batter  
 quidem indeed, surely, at least†  
 resupīnus, a, um supine, flat on the back  
 saniēs, ēī f. blood, gore  
 sepeliō, ire, ivi (ii), sepultus bury, inter  
 tābum, i n. corruption, gore  
 tepidus, a, um warm, tepid  
 tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake\*  
 trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed  
 Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m. Ulysses, a wily Greek leader\*  
 vēscor, i feed on (abl.)  
 vinum, i n. wine\*  
 viscus, eris n. vitals, flesh, bowels

would that our fortune had remained, so that it would not have been necessary for me to go forth as a soldier of fortune!

616. dum: regularly with the pres. ind.; App. 372. trepidi (socii).

617. immemorēs (mei). Cyclōpis: Polyphemus was the name of this particular Cyclops.

618 dēseruēre = dēseruērunt. Domus (Cyclōpis est). saniē, dapibus: ablatives of quality; App. 330

619. Ipse (Cyclōps est) arduus.

620. dī: voc. āvertite: imp.

621. vīsū, dictū: supines; ablatives of respect; App. 271. ūllī: dat. of reference.

622. vīsceribus, sanguine: ablatives with vēscor; App. 342.

628. passus (est).

629. suī: gen. with obliviscor; App. 288; forgot himself, i.e., his accustomed cunning.

630. simul (atque): as soon as.

cervicem inflexam posuit, jacuitque per antrum  
immēsus saniem ēructāns et frustra cruentō  
per somnum commixta merō, nōs magna precātī  
nūmina sortītique vicēs ūnā undique circum  
635 fundimur, et tēlō lūmen terebrāmus acūtō  
ingēns quod torvā solum sub fronte latēbat,  
Argolici clipei aut Phoebēae lampadis instar,  
et tandem laetī sociōrum ulciscimur umbrās.  
Sed fugite, Ō miserī, fugite atque ab litore fūnem  
640 rumpite.

Nam quālis quantusque cavō Polyphēmus in antrō  
lānigerās claudit pecudēs atque ūbera pressat,  
centum aliī curva haec habitant ad litora vulgō  
infandī Cyclōpes et altīs montibus errant.  
645 Tertia jam lūnae sē cornua lūmine complent

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute  
antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
centum hundred\*  
cervix, icis f. neck  
claudō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), (in)close\*  
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler\*  
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle†  
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete  
cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end  
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
curvus, a, um curved, curving, arched\*  
Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-  
eyed, man-eating giants  
ēructō (1) belch out, vomit (forth)  
frōns, frontis f. forehead, front, brow\*  
frustum, i n. piece, fragment, morsel  
fūnis, is m. rope, cable, cord  
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess  
immēsus, a, um enormous, immense  
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed  
inflectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, turn†  
instar n. likeness, appearance (gen.)  
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*  
lampas, adis f. torch, lamp, light†  
lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly†

lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
merum, i n. (unmixed) wine  
pecus, udis f. animal, member of flock\*  
Phoebēus, a, um of Phoebus (Apollo),  
god of light, music, and prophecy†  
Polyphēmus, i m. a one-eyed, man-eating  
giant, one of the Cyclopes†  
precor, āri, ātus pray (to, for), entreat\*  
pressō (1) press, squeeze, crush†  
quālis, e of what sort, what kind\*  
quantus, a, um how great, how much,  
as great as\*  
rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst  
(forth)\*  
saniēs, ēi f. blood, gore  
sortior, iri, itus obtain by lot, allot  
terebrō (1) bore, pierce  
tertius, a, um third\*  
torvus, a, um fierce, scowling, grim†  
ūber, eris n. udder, breast, fertility  
ulciscor, i, ultus avenge, punish  
ūnā together, at the same time  
undique on (from) all sides\*  
vicis (gen.; no nom.) f. change, alterna-  
tion; danger  
vulgō commonly, everywhere†

631. (Cyclōps) posuit. per: denoting the huge size of the monster.

633. merō: given to the Cyclops by Ulysses.

634. vicēs (nostrās): the part each is to play in the following action.

635. tēlō: a sharpened stake, with blazing point. lūmen = oculus, as often.

636. latēbat: the deep-set eye seemed to hide beneath his beetling brow.

637. Argolici clipei (instar): the clipeus was a large round shield, bright

and shining, and big enough to cover the body of a man. Phoebēae lampadis: the sun; gen. with instar, referring to the size and dazzling effect of the Cyclops's eye.

639-640. fugite, rumpite: imperatives.

641-643. quālis quantusque (est) Polyphēmus (quī) claudit, centum (tālēs tantique) aliī habitant.

644. (in) montibus. Cyclōpēs: with short ē, a Greek form; App. 65, a.

645. Tertia: translate as though an

*cum vitam in silvīs inter dēserta ferārū  
lūstra domōsque trahō, vastōsque ab rūpe Cyclōpas  
prōspiciō sonitumque pedum vōcemque tremescō.*

*Victum infēlicem, bācās lapidōsaque corna,  
dant rāmī, et vulsis pascunt rādīcibus herbae.*

650

*Omnia conlūstrāns hanc prīmum ad litora classem  
cōspexī venientem. Huic mē, quaecumque fuisset,  
addixi: satis est gentem effūgisce nefandam.*

*Vōs animam hanc potius quōcumque absūmite lētō.\**

*Vix ea fātus erat summō cum monte vidēmus  
ipsum inter pecudēs vastā sē mōle moventem  
pāstōrem Polyphēmum et litora nōta petentem,  
mōnstrum horrendum, informe, ingēns, cui lūmen adēptum.*

655

**absūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus** consume, destroy

**addicō, ere, dixi, dictus** assign to, surrender†

**adimō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus** remove†

**bāca, ae f.** berry†

**conlūstrō** (1) light up, survey, traverse†  
**cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at

**cornum, i n.** cornel berry†

**Cyclōps, ōpis m.** one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants

**dēserō, ere, ui, rtus** desert, forsake\*

**effugiō, ere, fūgi** escape, shun, avoid

**fera, ae f.** wild beast, animal

**herba, ae f.** herb(age), grass, plant\*

**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, horrible\*

**informis, e** shapeless, monstrous

**lapidōsus, a, um** stony, hard†

**lētum, i n.** death, destruction, ruin\*

**lūstrum, i n.** bog, fen, lair†

**mōlēs, is f.** (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*

**mōnstrum, i n.** portent, monster, marvel\*

**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, terrible

**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar\*

**pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus** feed (on), graze

**pāstor, ōris m.** shepherd, herdsman

**pecus, udis f.** animal, member of a herd\*

**Polyphēmus, i m.** a one-eyed, man-eating giant, one of the Cyclopes

**potius** rather, preferably†

**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** discern, look forth (on)

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever\*

**rādix, icis f.** root

**rāmus, i m.** branch, bough, twig\*

**rūpēs, is f.** rock, cliff, crag\*

**sat(is)** sufficient(ly), enough\*

**sonitus, ūs m.** sound, roar, crash, noise\*

**tremescō, ere** tremble (at), shake†

**vellō, ere, vulsi, vulsus** pluck, pull (up)

**victus, ūs m.** food, victuals, living

**adverb, for the third time; i.e., the moon** has been full three times since . . .

**646-647. cum trahō:** English employs the perfect, *since I have been dragging (out)*. The present tense is used, as in French, to indicate that this condition continues into the present: *I am still dragging (out)*; App. 351, 1, b.

**650. dant (mihi), pascunt (mē). vulsis rādīcibus:** abl. of means.

**652. quaecumque fuisset:** *whatever it should be*, implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

**653. gentem nefandam = the Cyclopes.**

**654. hanc (meam) animam = vitam. potius (quam mē relinquātis). absūmite: imp.**

**655-714.** Frightened by the appearance of Polyphemus and the other Cyclopes, the Trojans flee in terror, but remembering the advice of Helenus, they avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis and sail around the eastern, southern, and western coast of Sicily to Drepanum, where Anchises dies.

**655. summō (in) monte.**

**656. vastā mōle:** abl. of quality or manner; App. 330, 328.

**658.** A shaggy verse, corresponding to the sense. **cui:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **lūmen (= oculus) adēptum (erat).**

- Trunca manum pīnus regit et vestīgia firmat;  
 660 lānigeræ comitantur ovēs; ea sōla voluptās  
 sōlāmenque malī.  
 Postquam altōs tetigit flūctūs et ad æquora vēnit,  
 lūminis effossī fluidum lavit inde cruōrem  
 dentibus infrendēns gemitū, graditurque per æquor  
 665 jam medium, necdum flūctus latera ardua tīnxit.  
 Nōs procul inde fugam trepidī celerāre receptō  
 supplice sīc meritō tacitūque incidere fūnem,  
 vertimus et prōnī certantibus æquora rēmīs.  
 Sēnsit, et ad sonitum vōcis vestīgia torsit.  
 670 Vērū ubi nūlla datur dextrā adfectāre potestās  
 nec potis Īoniōs flūctūs æquāre sequendō,

adfectō (1) grasp (at), seize†  
 æquō (1) equal(ize), match, even, level\*  
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering\*  
 celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
 certō (1) strive, struggle, vie  
 comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,  
 escort, follow\*  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 dēns, dentis m. tooth  
 effodiō, ere, fōdi, fossus dig out, gouge  
 out, excavate  
 firmō (1) strengthen, support  
 fluidus, a, um flowing, liquid, fluid†  
 fūnis, is m. rope, cable, cordage  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament\*  
 gradior, ī, gressus walk, stride, march,  
 go  
 incidō, ere, ī, sus cut†  
 inde then(ce), thereupon, next\*  
 infrend(e)ō, ēre gnash, grate†  
 Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the western  
 coast of Greece  
 lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly  
 latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
 lavō, āre (ere), (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash†  
 malum, ī n. trouble, evil, woe, misfor-  
 tune\*  
 mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit\*

necdum not yet  
 ovis, is f. sheep, ewe†  
 pīnus, ūs (ī) f. pine tree†  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 potestās, ātis f. power, ability, oppor-  
 tunity†  
 potis, e able, powerful†  
 prōnus a, um bending forward, sloping  
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus take (back),  
 welcome, receive\*  
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, guide\*  
 sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, under-  
 stand, feel  
 sōlāmen, inis n. solace, consolation†  
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, crash, noise\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, still  
 tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach\*  
 ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxi, tīnctus wet, tinge  
 torquēō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, sway,  
 turn\*  
 trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed  
 truncus, a, um lopped, trimmed†  
 verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change\*  
 vērū but, indeed, truly  
 vestigium, (ī) n. (foot)step, trace, track\*  
 voluptās, ātis f. pleasure, joy, delight†

659. manum: i.e., he uses the trunk of a pine tree as a cane.

660. (illum) comitantur. ea (erat illi): ea, although referring to ovēs, is attracted into the number and gender of the predicate noun voluptās; App. 240, a.

662. æquora (alta).

663. inde: with water from the sea.

664. dentibus: abl. of means. gemitū: abl. of manner.

666-667. celerāre, incidere: historical infinitives; App. 257. receptō supplice:

abl. abs., referring to Achaemenides. sic meritō: having deserved (it, by warning us of the danger).

668. vertimus et = et vertimus. rēmīs: abl. of means.

669. (Polyphēmusid) sēnsit. vōcis: the splash (of the oars).

670. adfectāre (nōs) potestās: for the prose construction adfectandī (nōs) potestās; App. 264.

671. potis (est Polyphēmus) = potest Polyphēmus. sequendō (nōs).



*clāmōrem immēnsum tollit, quō pontus et omnēs  
contremuēre undae, penitusque exterrita tellūs  
Italiae curvisque immūgiit Aetna cavernis.*

*At genus ē silvīs Cyclōpum et montibus altīs  
excitum ruit ad portūs et litora complent.*

675

*Cernimus astantis nēquiquam lūmine torvō  
Aetnaeōs frātrēs caelō capita alta ferentīs,  
concilium horrendum: quālēs cum vertice celsō  
āeriae quercūs aut cōniferae cyparissī  
cōnstitērunt, silva alta Jovis lūcusve Diānae.*

680

*Praecipitis metus ācer agit quōcumque rudentīs  
excutere et ventīs intendere vēla secundīs.*

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, fierce, spirited\*  
**āerius, a, um** airy, lofty  
**Aetna, ae f.** volcano of Sicily  
**Aetnaeus, a, um** of Etna, a volcano of Sicily†  
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)\*  
**caverna, ae f.** cave, cavern, grotto  
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering\*  
**compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus** fill, complete  
**concilium, (i)ī n.** gathering, assemblage  
**cōnifer, era, erum** cone-bearing†  
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand (firm)  
**contremiscō, ere, tremui** tremble, shake†  
**curvus, a, um** curved, curving, winding\*  
**Cyclōps, ōpis m.** one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants  
**cyparissus, i f.** cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to Diana and the dead†  
**Diāna, ae f.** goddess of the chase, of the moon, and of Hades  
**excitō, ire, ivi (ii), ītus** summon (forth), arouse†

**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake out, loosen\*  
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify  
**frāter, tris m.** brother\*  
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, terrible\*  
**immēnsus, a, um** immense, enormous  
**immūgiō, ire, ivi (ii)** bellow, roar†  
**intendō, ere, i, ntus** stretch (out, to, toward)  
**lūcus, i m.** (sacred) grove, wood\*  
**metus, ūs m.** fear, dread, anxiety\*  
**nēquiquam** in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
**penitus** within, deep(ly), wholly\*  
**pontus, i m.** sea, waves\*  
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost\*  
**quālis, e** of what sort, of what kind, such (as)\*  
**quercus, ūs f.** oak, a tree sacred to Jove†  
**quōcumque** where(so)ever  
**rudēns, entis m.** cable, rope, cordage  
**secundus, a, um** favorable, second\*  
**torvus, a, um** savage, scowling, grim  
**vertex, icis m.** peak, summit, head, top\*

672. quō: abl. of cause.

673. contremuēre = contremuērunt. exterrita (est).

675-676. genus ruit et complent: observe the singular verb followed by the plural, since genus is collective and may take either; App. 236, a.

677. lūmine torvō: with glaring eye; effective use of the singular to emphasize the fact that each Cyclops had but one eye. nēquiquam: because unable to do us harm.

678. caelō: dat. of direction; App. 306. Aetnaeōs frātrēs: the Cyclopes who lived around Mt. Etna.

679. (in) vertice (montis).

681. cōnstitērunt: with the penult irregularly short. silva Jovis = quercūs; lūcus Diānae = cyparissī; since the oak was sacred to Jove and the cypress to Hecate, the Diana of Hades.

682. metus ācer agit (nōs) praecipitis.

683. ventis secundis: abl. of means; apparently a south wind. In their anxiety to escape the Cyclopes the Trojans flee with the wind, in spite of the warning of Helenus, but suddenly recalling the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis, they turn back, and with the aid of the wind, which has veered to the north, they sail safely past the land of the Cyclopes.

- Contrā jussa monent Helenī, Scyllam atque Charybdim  
 685 *inter*, utramque *viam* lēti discrimine parvō,  
 nī teneant cursūs; certum est dare lintea retrō.  
 Ecce autem Boreās angustā ab sēde Pelōri  
*missus adest*: vīvō praetervehor ōstia saxō  
 Pantagiae Megarōsque sinūs Thapsūmque jacentem.  
 690 *Tālia* mōnstrābat relegēns *errāta* retrōrsus  
*litora* Achaemenidēs, *comes infēlicis* Ulixī.  
 Sicaniō praetenta sinū jacet insula contrā  
 Plēmyrium undōsum, *nōmen dixēre* priōrēs  
 Ortygiā. Alphēum fāma est hūc Ēlidis amnem

Achaemenidēs, *ae m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes

Alphēus, *i m.* Greek river (god) in love with the nymph Arethusa, whom he pursued under the sea to Sicily where he reappeared in her fountain at Syracuse†

amnis, *is m.* river, stream\*

angustus, *a, um* narrow, strait  
 autem moreover, however, but\*

Boreās, *ae m.* north wind†

certus, *a, um* certain, fixed, sure, determined\*

Charybdis, *is f.* dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Italy and Sicily  
 contrā opposite, on the contrary, facing (*acc.*)\*

discrimen, *inis n.* crisis, difference; danger  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*

Ēlis, *idis f.* district of southwestern Greece†

Helenus, *i m.* a prophet, son of Priam  
 insula, *ae f.* island

jaceō, *ēre, uī, itus* lie (low, outspread)\*

jussum, *i n.* command, order, behest

lētum, *i n.* death, destruction, ruin\*

linteum, *i n.* linen; sail†

Megarus, *a, um* of Megara, a city of Sicily†  
 moneō, *ēre, uī, itus* advise, warn

mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach\*

nisi, *nī* if not, unless\*

Ortygia, *ae f.* an island off Syracuse  
 ōstium, (i) *i n.* mouth, entrance, harbor

Pantagiās, *ae m.* river of Sicily†

parvus, *a, um* small, little\*

Pelōrus, *i m.* promontory of northeast Sicily

Plēmyrium, (i) *i n.* promontory of Sicily near the harbor of Syracuse†

praetendō, *ere, ī, ntus* stretch before†

praetervehō, *ere, vēxi, vectus* carry (beyond), convey (past)†

prior, *ius* former, sooner, prior\*

relegō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* retrace, pass over again†

retrō back(ward), again, anew

retrōrsus, *um* back(ward)†

Scylla, *ae f.* sea-monster, with the head and body of a woman, girt with dogs or wolves

Sicanus, *a, um* Sicanian, Sicilian†

sinus, *ūs m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow\*

Thapsus, *i m.* city of Sicily†

Ulixēs, *is (ei, ī) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader\*

undōsus, *a, um* full of waves, wave-beaten†

uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both\*

vīvus, *a, um* living, alive, natural

684-685. Contrā inter Scyllam atque Charybdim: App. 414. utramque viam: in apposition with Scyllam atque Charybdim. discrimine parvō: abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. Translate, each a way of death with little difference.

686. nī (socii mei) teneant cursūs: that they should not hold their course; substantive clause developed from volitive, the object of monent; App. 360. nī is here equivalent to nē. certum est (nōbis): we decide; i.e., we determine to risk the dangers of the Cyclopes

rather than those of Scylla and Charybdis.

688. missus: by some thoughtful and sympathetic divinity. vīvō saxō: living (i.e., natural) rock, as in I, 167; abl. of material; App. 324.

690. errāta: having been wandered over (before), modifies litora, and refers to his previous voyage with Ulysses.

692. Sicaniō sinū: dat. with compound, refers to the harbor of Syracuse.

693. dixēre = dixērunt = vocāvērunt.

694-695. fāma est Alphēum amnem Ēlidis ēgisse hūc occultās viās.

occultās ēgisse viās subter mare, quī nunc  
ōre, Arethūsa, tuō Siculis cōfunditur undīs.

695

Jussī nūmina magna locī venerāmur, et inde  
exsuperō praepingue solum stāgnantis Helōrī.

Hinc altās cautēs prōjectaque saxa Pachŷnī  
rādīmus, et fātīs numquam concessa movērī

700

appāret Camerīna procul campīque Gelōī,  
immānisque Gelā fluvīi cognōmine dicta.

Arduus inde Acragās ostentat maxima longē  
moenia, magnanimum quondam generātor equōrum:

tēque datīs linquō ventīs, palmōsa Selinūs,  
et vada dūra legō saxīs Lilybēia caecis.

705

Acragās, antis *m.* Agrigentum, a Greek  
city of southwestern Sicily†

appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear

arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering\*

Arethūsa, ae *f.* nymph of a famous  
Syracusan fountain, beloved by the  
river (god) Alpheūs†

caecus, a, um blind, hidden, secret\*

Camerīna, ae *f.* a Greek city of southern  
Sicily†

cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, ledge

cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, allow

cōfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour together,  
mix

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, dangerous\*

exsuperō (1) rise above, (sur)pass

fluvius, (i) *m.* river, stream, flood

Gelā, ae *f.* a Greek city of southern Sicily†

Gelōus, a, um of Gela, a city of southern  
Sicily†

generātor, ōris *m.* producer, breeder†

Helōrus, i *m.* river of southeastern Sicily†

inde then(ce), thereupon, next\*

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, collect,  
traverse, skim, skirt\*

Lilybēius, a, um Lilybean, of Lilybaeum,  
a promontory on the western coast of  
Sicily†

linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert\*

longē far (away), at a distance\*

magnanimus, a, um great-souled, gen-  
erous, spirited

numquam never, at no time

occulō, ere, uī, ltus hide, secrete, con-  
ceal

ostentō (1) show, display, exhibit, pa-  
rade†

Pachŷnus (um), i *m.* (n.) promontory of  
southeastern Sicily

palmōsus, a, um full of palms, palmy†

praepinguis, e very fat, very rich†

prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast forth, jut†

rādō, ere, i, s scrape, graze, skirt†

Selinūs, untis *f.* city of southwestern  
Sicily†

Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily

solum, i *n.* ground, soil, earth\*

stāgnāns, antis stagnant, marshy†

subter beneath, under (*acc.*)†

vadum, i *n.* shallow, ford, depth

veneror, āri, ātus reverence, entreat

696. ōre, Arethūsa, tuō: at your  
fountain (ōre), Arethusa. According to  
the story, the river Alpheūs of Elis in  
Greece fell in love with the nymph of  
the fountain Arethusa and pursued her  
under the sea to Syracuse, where she  
emerged. Cf. Shelley's *Arethusa*.

697. Jussī: presumably by Helenus.

700. fātīs: abl. of accordance; App.  
326.

701. Camerīna: contrary to the com-  
mands of an oracle, the people of Camerīna  
drained a neighboring marsh of the same  
name, and through this space their ene-  
mies advanced and captured the city.

702. Gelā: nom. sing. with long final  
vowel, a Greek form. fluvīi: there is  
only one other example in Vergil (IX,  
151) of the double i in the gen. ending of  
nouns in ius, ium. dicta = vocāta.

704. magnanim(ōr)um: spirited.  
quondam: from the point of view of  
Vergil, not Aeneas.

705. datīs ventīs: the gods are with  
them and have again changed the winds  
for them, as they have now rounded the  
southern point of Sicily and are veering  
toward the north.

706. saxīs: abl. of cause with dūra,  
dangerous.

*Hinc Drepani mē portus et inlaetābilis ōra  
accipit. Hic pelagi tot tempestātibus āctus  
heu, genilōrem, omnis cūrae cāsūsque levāmen,  
āmittō Anchisēn. Hic mē, pater optime, fessum  
dēseris, heu, tantis nēquiquam ērepte periculis!  
Nec vātēs Helenus, cum multa horrenda monēret,  
hōs mihi praedixit lūctūs, nōn dira Celaenō.  
Hic labor extrēmus, longārum haec mēta viārum.  
Hinc mē digressum vestrīs deus appulit ōris."*

715

*Sic pater Aenēās intentis omnibus ūnus  
fāta renārrābat divum cursūsque docēbat.  
Conticuit tandem factōque hic fine quievit.*

āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose\*  
appellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive to (dat.)  
Celaenō, ūs f. chief of the harpies, foul  
monsters with bodies of birds and faces  
of women  
conticēscō, ere, ticui become silent, hush  
dēserō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake\*  
digredior, i, gressus depart, separate  
dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful\*  
doceō, ēre, ui, ctus teach, inform, tell\*  
Drepanum, i n. city of western Sicily†  
extrēmus, a, um utmost, last, extreme\*  
Helenus, i m. a seer, son of Priam  
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful\*  
inlaetābilis, e mournful, desolate†

intendō, ere, i, ntus stretch (toward, out)  
levāmen, inis n. alleviation, solace†  
lūctus, ūs m. grief, sorrow, lament  
mēta, ae f. turning point, goal, limit  
moneō, ēre, ui, itus advise, warn  
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
optimus, a, um best, finest, dearest  
peric(u)lum, i n. danger, peril, risk  
praedicō, ere, dixi, dictus foretell, predict  
quiescō, ere, ēvi, ētus become quiet, rest\*  
renārrō (1) relate, recount†  
tempestās, ātis f. weather, storm; season\*  
tot so many, as many\*  
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*

707. inlaetābilis: because Anchises died there.

709. cūrae cāsūsque: objective genitives; App. 284.

710-711. pater: voc., modified by optime and ērepte. nēquiquam: since he did not live to reach the Promised Land. peric(u)lis: dat. of separation; the longer form (v-v-) could not be used in hexameter.

712. monēret: cum concessive; App. 379.

713. Celaenō nōn (hōs mihi praedixit lūctūs).

714. Hic (fuit), haec (fuit): the pronouns agree with their predicate nouns, labor and mēta; App. 240, a.

715-718. Setting sail from Drepanum for Italy, the goal of their wanderings,

the Trojans are overtaken by a violent storm and driven to the northern coast of Africa, as described in the first book of the *Aeneid*. Aeneas thus completes the story of his adventures. During the whole recital Dido's interest has been growing, and she has fallen deeply in love with Aeneas as the hero of these marvelous adventures.

715. Hinc: the story thus connects with I, 34 (vix ē cōspectū Siculae tellūris, etc.).

716. intentis omnibus: just as in II, 1, at the beginning of Aeneas's speech.

717. renārrābat: recounted, related (not retold, but went through them again by thus recalling them). div(ōr)um.

718. factō fine: abl. abs. and alliteration; App. 343, 411.



## BOOK IV

*AT rēgīna gravī jamdūdum saucia cūrā  
vulnus alit vēnīs et caecō carpitur ignī.  
Multa virī virtūs animō multusque recursat  
gentis honōs: haerent infixī pectore vultūs  
verbaque, nec placidam membrīs dat cūra quiētem.  
Postera Phoebeā lūstrābat lampade terrās  
ūmentemque Aurōra polō dīmōverat umbram,  
cum sic ūnanimam adloquitur male sāna sorōrem:  
"Anna soror, quae mē suspēnsam insomnia terrent!  
Quis novus hic nostrīs successit sēdibus hospes,*

10

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost  
**alō, ere, uī, (i) tus** nourish, cherish  
**Anna, ae f.** sister of Dido†  
**Aurōra, ae f.** (goddess of) dawn\*  
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark\*  
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, consume, waste  
**dīmōveō, ēre, ōvī, ōtus** divide, remove  
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious\*  
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stick (to),  
cling (to) (*dat.*)\*  
**hospes, itis m. (f.)** guest, host, stranger  
**infigō, ere, xi, xus** fix (in, on), fasten  
**insomnium, (i) ī n.** dream, vision in sleep†  
**jamdūdum** long since, for some time  
**lampas, adis f.** torch, lamp, light  
**lūstrō (i)** traverse; survey; purify\*  
**male** badly, ill, scarce, not  
**membrum, ī n.** member, limb, body\*  
**Phoebeus, a, um** of Phoebus (Apollo),  
god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**placidus, a, um** calm, kindly, quiet\*  
**polus, ī m.** pole, sky, heaven  
**posterus, a, um** following, later, next  
**quiēs, ētis f.** quiet, sleep, rest\*  
**recursō (i)** run back, come back, recur  
**sānus, a, um** sane, sound, rational†  
**saucius, a, um** wounded, hurt  
**soror, ōris f.** sister\*  
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach  
(*dat.*)  
**suspēnsus, a, um** suspended, agitated  
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten  
**ūmēns, entis** moist, dewy, wet  
**ūnanimus, a, um** one-minded, sympathiz-  
ing†  
**vēna, ae f.** vein†  
**verbum, ī n.** word, speech, talk  
**virtūs, ūtis f.** manliness, virtue, valor\*  
**vulnus, eris n.** wound, deadly blow\*  
**vultus, ūs m.** countenance, face, aspect\*

**1-30.** Dido, madly in love with Aeneas, discloses her feelings to her sister Anna.

The Dido episode is one of the most famous in all literature, and its effect on later writers has been marked. One of the best known of the English versions is found in Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*.

**1. At:** denotes the return of the poet to his own narrative and contrasts the restlessness of Dido with the calm (*quiēvit*) indicated by the last line of III. *rēgīna:* Dido. *gravī cūrā:* *passionate love*.

**2. vēnīs, ignī:** ablatives of means.

**3. Multa, multus:** the repetition intentionally strengthens and makes more vivid the idea of frequency and repetition; App. 413. *virī = Aenēae.* *animō = ad animum:* *dat. of direction.*

**4. gentis honōs:** his noble birth, being a member of the royal family and descended from Jupiter and Venus. (*in*) *pectore.*

**5. verba:** the four causes mentioned as arousing the love of the queen for Aeneas are: his courage (*virtūs*), his noble birth (*gentis honōs*), his handsome appearance (*vultūs*), and his fine words (*verba*).

**6-7. Postera Aurōra lūstrābat. Phoebeā lampade =** *with the sun's rays.*

**7. IV, 7 = III, 589.**

**8. male sāna = nōn sāna = insāna:** cf. *male fida = infida*, II, 23; *litotes*; App. 431.

**10. Quis (est) hic novus hospes, (quī) nostrīs sēdibus successit:** *what a marvelous stranger this is, who has come to our house!*

- quem sēsē ōre ferēns, quam fortī pectore et armīs!  
 Crēdō equidem, nec vāna fidēs, genus esse deōrum.  
 Dēgenerēs animōs timor arguit. Heu, quibus ille  
 jactātus fātis! Quae bella exhausta canēbat!  
 15 Sī mihi nōn animō fixum immōtumque sederet  
 nē cui mē vinclo vellem sociāre jugālī,  
 postquam primus amor dēceptam morte fefellit;  
 sī nōn pertaesum thalamī taedaeque fuisset,  
 huic ūnī forsā potuī succumbere culpaē.  
 20 Anna, fatēbor enī, miserī post fāta Sychaeī  
 conjugis et sparsōs frāternā caede penātīs  
 sōlus hic inflexit sēnsūs animumque labantem

Anna, *ae f.* sister of Dido  
 arguō, *ere, ui, ūtus* prove, make clear†  
 caedēs, *is f.* slaughter, murder, massacre  
 canō, *ere, cecini, cantus* sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, recount\*  
 crēdō, *ere, didi, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)\*  
 culpa, *ae f.* fault, blame, weakness, sin  
 dēcipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* deceive  
 dēgener, *eris* degenerate, base, ignoble  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 equidem indeed, truly\*  
 exhauriō, *ire, hausi, haustus* drain, ex-  
 haust; bear [mock\*  
 fallō, *ere, fefelli, falsus* deceive, cheat,  
 fateor, *ēri, fassus* confess, agree  
 fidēs, *ei f.* faith, belief, trust (worthiness)\*  
 figō, *ere, xi, xus* fix, fasten, imprint\*  
 fors(it)an perhaps, perchance  
 fortis, *e* brave, strong, valiant, stout\*  
 frāternus, *a, um* fraternal, of a brother†  
 immōtus, *a, um* unmoved, immovable

inflectō, *ere, flexi, flexus* bend, turn  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, hurl, fling\*  
 jugālīs, *e* of wedlock, matrimonial†  
 labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate  
 penātēs, *ium m.* household gods\*  
 pertaedet, *ēre, taesum* it wearies (*gen.*)†  
 post after, behind (*acc.*); later\*  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 sedeō, *ēre, sēdi, sessus* sit, settle\*  
 sēnsus, *ūs m.* feeling, perception, sense†  
 sociō (1) unite, ally, share (as partner)  
 spargō, *ere, rsi, rsus* scatter, sprinkle\*  
 succumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* yield (to)  
 (*dat.*)†  
 Sychaeus, *i m.* deceased husband of Dido  
 taeda, *ae f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)†  
 thalamus, *i m.* (bridal) chamber, wedlock\*  
 timor, *ōris m.* fear, dread, cowardice  
 vānus, *a, um* vain, empty, idle, groundless  
 vinc(u)lum, *i n.* chain, bond, cable\*

11. quem sēsē ōre ferēns: *how noble in appearance. quam fortī pectore et (fortibus) armīs: ablatives of quality; App. 330.*

12. (illum) esse genus deōrum. nec (mea) fidēs (est) vāna.

13. Dēgenerēs: therefore Aeneas's soul is not dēgener, as he has always been so fearless.

14. jactātus (est).

15. (in) animō. Sī... nōn... sederet: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

16. nē vellem: *not to be willing*, substantive clause, subject of sederet; App. 360. cui: indefinite, *any one*. vinc(u)lō jugālī: *in bonds of wedlock*.

17. (mē) dēceptam fefellit = mē dēcēpit et fefellit.

18. sī nōn (mē) pertaesum fuisset. thalamī, taedae: genitives with the impersonal pertaedet; App. 290. taedae: *the (marriage) torch*, by metonymy for

marriage; App. 433. Torches were carried by attendants in the wedding procession. Cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, XI, 590-591:

"They light the nuptial torch and bid Invoke Hymen."

19. potuī: the ind. instead of the more usual subj. expresses the conclusion in a more positive way, as though it were practically realized; App. 382, d. huic ūnī culpaē: *dat. with compound*; Dido refers to the sin (culpa) of loving Aeneas after having sworn eternal fidelity to her former husband, Sychaeus.

21. frāternā: equivalent to a subj. gen. with caede; *the murder of Sychaeus by my brother*. Cf. I, 343-356.

22-23. sōlus hic (Aenēās). hic: with a short syllable here instead of the more usual long: App. 107, 3, c. (meum)



*Gramstorff Bros.*

THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY

*Luigi Sabatelli*



Gramstorff Bros.

AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT

P.-N. Guérin

Behind Dido and leaning on her couch is Anna. At her side is Cupid, disguised as Ascanius.



impulit. Agnōscō veteris vestīgia flammae.  
*Sed mihi vel tellūs optem prius ima dehiscat*  
*vel pater omnipotēns abigat mē fulmine ad umbrās,* 25  
 pallentis umbrās Erebo noctemque profundam,  
 ante, pudor, quam tē violō aut tua jūra resolvō.  
*Ille meōs, prīmus quī mē sibi jūnxit, amōrēs*  
*abstulit; ille habeat sēcūm servetque sepulcrō.*  
*Sic effāta sinum lacrimīs implēvit obortīs.* 30  
 Anna refert: "Ō lūce magis dilēcta sorōrī,  
 sōlane perpetuā maerēns carpere juventā  
 nec dulcis nātōs Veneris praemia nōris?  
 Id cinerem aut mānīs crēdis cūrāre sepultōs?"

abigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive (away), force†  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 Anna, ae f. sister of Dido  
 auferō, erre, abstulī, ablātus take away,  
 carry off  
 carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume,  
 waste  
 cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (dat.)\*  
 cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, regard  
 dehiscō, ere yawn, gape, open (up)  
 dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus love, cherish  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
 effor, āri, ātus speak out, say  
 Erebus, i m. underworld, Hades†  
 fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning\*  
 impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus strike, drive on  
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, sate\*  
 jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke\*  
 jūs, jūris n. right, law, decree, justice  
 juvena, ae f. youth, young manhood,  
 young womanhood  
 maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine

magis more, rather\*  
 mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; perf. know\*  
 oborior, irī, ortus (a)rise, spring up  
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent  
 optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)\*  
 pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan†  
 perpetuus, a, um continual, lasting†  
 praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize\*  
 prius sooner, before  
 profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast  
 pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor†  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax  
 sepeliō, īre, ivī (ii), pultus bury, inter  
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave, burial  
 sinus, ūs m. fold, bosom, bay, hollow\*  
 soror, ōris f. sister\*  
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty,  
 love\*  
 vestigium, (i) i n. step, track, trace\*  
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*  
 violō (1) outrage, violate, defile

animum labantem impulit = meum animum sic impulit ut labāret; App. 440.

24-25. tellūs ima: the lowest (depths of) the earth; App. 246. prius: with quam, l. 27; but repeated as ante in l. 27 because of the intervening clauses. optem: potential subj.; App. 252. (ut) dehiscat, (ut) abigat: substantive clauses developed from the optative; App. 360. pater omnipotēns = Jupiter. ad umbrās = ad mortem, defined by the next verse.

27. ante: repeating prius of l. 24. pudor: the Romans considered it quite discreditable for a widow to marry.

28. Ille: Sychaeus.

29. habeat (meōs amōrēs) servetque (eōs in) sepulcrō: volitive (jussive) subjunctives; App. 254.

30. lacrimīs: an indication of the

strength of the feeling she is trying to suppress.

31-53. Anna encourages Dido to look forward to marriage with Aeneas.

31. magis dilēcta: more beloved = dearer. lūce (= vitā): abl. with comparative; App. 327. sorōrī = mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302.

32. juventā: abl. of time; practically equivalent to an acc. of duration; App. 322, 314. carpere = carpēris; App. 204, 4.

33. Veneris praemia: the joys of love. nō(ve)ris: fut. perf.; with force of a fut.

34. Id: whether you remarry or not. cinerem aut mānīs (Sychaei). subjects of cūrāre. Anna's answer to Dido's statement in ll. 28-29 is that her actions

- 35 *Estō: aegram nulli quondam flexere mariti,  
non Libyae, non ante Tyrō; despectus Iarbās*  
*ductoresque alii, quos Africa terra triumphis*  
*dives alit: placitōne etiam pugnābis amōri?*  
*Nec venit in mentem quorum cōsederis arvis?*
- 40 *Hinc Gaetulae urbēs, genus insuperabile bellō,*  
*et Numidae infrēni cingunt et inhospita Syrtis;*  
*hinc dēserta siti regiō lātēque furentēs*  
*Barcaeī. Quid bella Tyrō surgentia dicam*  
*germānique minās?*
- 45 *Dīs equidem auspicibus reor et Jūnōne secundā*

aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
 Áfricus, a, um African, of Africa†  
 alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear  
 auspex, icis m. protector, guide; seer  
 Barcaeī, ōrum m. tribe of North Africa†  
 cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround,  
 gird(le)\*  
 cōsīdō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down),  
 settle\*  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
 dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look down  
 on, scorn, despise, disdain†  
 dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy  
 ductor, ōris m. leader, chieftain, guide  
 equidem indeed, surely, truly\*  
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
 flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move  
 Gaetūlus, a, um of the Gaetuli, a tribe  
 of North Africa†  
 germānus, ī m. brother\*  
 Iarbās, ae m. African chieftain, one of  
 Dido's suitors†

infrēnus, a, um unbridled. without  
 bridles†  
 inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild;†  
 insuperābilis, e unconquerable†  
 lātē widely, far and wide  
 Libya, ae f. country of North Africa\*  
 maritus, ī m. (prospective) husband,  
 suitor  
 minae, ārum f. threat, menace, peril  
 Numidae, ārum m. tribe of North Af-  
 rica†  
 placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (dat.)†  
 pugnō (l) fight, oppose, resist (dat.)†  
 regiō, ōnis f. region, district, quarter  
 reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon  
 secundus, a, um second, favorable\*  
 sitis, is f. thirst, drought†  
 Syrtis, is f. region of quicksand on the  
 northern coast of Africa  
 triumphus, ī m. triumph, victory  
 Tyrus, ī f. famous city of Phoenicia,  
 birthplace of Dido

cannot possibly disturb the ashes and shade of Sychaeus.

35. *Estō*: imp. 3d sing. of *sum*; (*so*) *be it, granted that*. (*tē*) *aegram*: while you mourned for your husband (during the time immediately following his death).

36. *Libyae*: loc.; App. 345. (*in*) *Tyrō*: loc. abl. *despectus* (*est tibi*).

37-38. *África terra triumphis dives*: Vergil is thinking of the many triumphs later celebrated by Roman generals for their victories in Africa, triumphis being abl. of respect with *dives*; App. 325. *placitō*: with active force, agreeable, pleasing (to you). *pugnābis* = *resistēs*. *amōri*: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

39. *Nec venit in (tuam) mentem*: does it not occur to you? *quorum cōsederis* (in) *arvis*: indir. quest.; App. 349;

subject of *venit*; what sort of people (i.e., how fierce and hostile) they are in whose territory you have settled.

40-42. *Hinc . . . hinc*: from this side . . . from that side. *infrēni*: unbridled; possibly a play on words, denoting that the Libyans rode their horses without bridles and that they were a wild, fierce, unrestrained (unbridled) tribe. *cingunt* (*tē*). *siti*: abl. of cause with *dēserta*.

43. *Barcaeī* (*sunt*). *Tyrō*: abl. of place from which; App. 320, a.

44. *germāni*: Pygmalion. See I, 346-364, 563-564.

45. *Dīs auspicibus, Jūnōne secundā*: ablatives absolute. *Jūnōne*: both as goddess of marriage and as guardian of Carthage.

*hunc cursum Ìliacās ventō tenuisse carinās.*

*Quam tū urbem, soror, hanc cernēs, quae surgere rēgna  
conjugiō tāli! Teucrum comitantibus armīs  
Pūnica sē quantīs attollet glōria rēbus!*

*Tū modo posce deōs veniam, sacrīsque litātīs  
indulgē hospitio causāsque innecte morandi,  
dum pelagō dēsaevit hiems et aquōsus Oriōn,  
quassātaeque ratēs, dum nōn tractābile caelum."*

50

*Hīs dictīs impēnsō animum flammāvit amōre  
spemque dedit dubiae mentī solvitque pudōrem.*

55

*Principiō dēlūbra adeunt pācemque per ārās  
exquīrunt; mactant lēctās dē mōre bidentīs  
lēgiferae Cererī Phoebōque patrīque Lyaeō,*

adeō, ire, ī (īvi), itus approach  
aquōsus, a, um watery, rainy†  
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
bidēns, entis f. with two teeth, two-  
year old sheep†  
carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat\*  
causa, ae f. cause, reason, pretext\*  
Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain  
comitor, āri, ātus accompany, escort,  
attend, follow\*  
conjugium, (i)ī n. wedlock, husband, wife  
dēlūbrum, ī n. shrine, temple, sanctuary  
dēsaeviō, ire, ivi (ii), itus rage (furiously)†  
dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering  
exquīrō, ere, Quisivi, quisitus seek (out)  
flammō (l) inflame, burn, fire  
glōria, ae f. renown, glory, fame, pride  
hiems, emis f. winter, storm\*  
hospitium, (i)ī n. hospitality, welcome  
Ìliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*  
impēnsus, a, um vast, vehement†  
indulgēō, ēre, lsi, ltus indulge, favor  
(dat.)  
innectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus weave, connect†  
lēgifer, era, erum law-bringing†  
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, collect\*

litō (l) sacrifice (favorably), appease  
Lyaeus, ī m. Bacchus, (god of) wine  
mactō (l) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor  
modo only, (just) now  
moro, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*  
mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner\*  
Oriōn, ōnis m. the storm-bringing con-  
stellation, named for a famous hunter  
transported to heaven  
pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, grace, repose  
Phoebus, ī m. Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask\*  
principiō first(ly), in the first place  
pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor  
Pūnicus, a, um Punic, Carthaginian  
quantus, a, um how great, how much,  
how many\*  
quassō (l) shake, shatter, toss  
ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat\*  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release,  
break down, free, pay\*  
soror, ōris f. sister\*  
spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*  
tractābilis, e manageable, favorable†  
venia, ae f. favor, pardon, grace

46. hunc cursum: *their course hither.*

47. Quam, quae: *how great! what (a)!*  
quam urbem hanc cernēs (surgere), quae  
rēgna (cernēs) surgere.

48. conjugio tāli: abl. of cause.  
Teucr(ōr)um.

49. quantis rēbus: *to what heights of  
achievement!*

50. deōs veniam: two accusatives with  
a verb of asking; App. 316.

52. Oriōn: a constellation rising at  
the rainy and stormy season.

53. quassātae (sunt) ratēs. nōn trac-  
tābile (est) caelum.

54-89. Love drives Dido to frenzy.

54. (jam) impēnsō.

56. (Didō Annae) adeunt. dēlūbra  
(urbis), ārās (urbis). pācem (deōrum),  
or pācem (deōs).

57. bidentis: literally *two-toothed*, be-  
cause of the two prominent teeth sheep  
have when about two years old. At this  
age they were considered especially ac-  
ceptable for sacrifice.

58. lēgiferae: *law-giving*, because of  
the civilizing influence of agriculture on  
early man.

*Double Dative**Jūnōnī ante omnīs, cui vincla jugālia cūrae.**Ipsa tenēns dextrā pateram pulcherrima Dīdō  
candentis vaccae media inter cornua fundit,  
aut ante ōra deum pinguis spatiātur ad ārās,  
īnstauratque diem dōnīs, pecudumque reclusīs  
pectoribus inhiāns spīrantia cōnsulit exta.**Heu, vātum ignārae mentēs! Quid vōta furentem,  
quid dēlūbra juvant? Ēst mollis flamma medullās  
intereā et tacitum vivit sub pectore vulnus.**Ūritur infēlix Dīdō tōtāque vagātur**urbe furēns, quālis conjectā cerva sagittā,**quam procul incautam nemora inter Crēsia fixit**pāstor agēns tēlis liquitque volātile ferrum**nescius: illa fugā silvās saltūsq̄ue peragrat*

candēns, entis white, shining, sleek  
 cerva, ae f. deer, doe†  
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, shoot  
 cōnsulō, ere, ui, ltus consult, consider†  
 cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end  
 Crēsius, a, um of Crete, Cretan†  
 dēlūbrum, i n. shrine, temple, sanctuary  
 edō, ere (ēsse), ēdi, ēsus eat, consume†  
 exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals†  
 figō, ere, xi, xus fix, pierce, imprint\*  
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
 incautus, a, um unaware, unsuspecting  
 inhiō (1) yawn, gape†  
 īnstauro (1) renew, refresh, repeat  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial  
 juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please\*  
 linguō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert\*  
 medulla, ae f. marrow†  
 mollis, e soft, yielding, tender  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware

pāstor, ōris m. shepherd, herdsman  
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl  
 pecus, udīs f. animal (of the flock)\*  
 peragrō (1) wander through, scour  
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile  
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,  
 splendid, handsome, illustrious\*  
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as\*  
 recludō, ere, si, sus open, disclose  
 sagitta, ae f. arrow  
 saltus, ūs m. forest, glade, pasture†  
 spatior, āri, ātus walk, stride†  
 spirō (1) breathe (forth), blow, quiver  
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret  
 ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, consume  
 vacca, ae f. heifer, young cow†  
 vagor, āri, ātus wander, roam  
 vinc(u)lum, i n. chain, bond, cable\*  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive  
 volātilis, e flying, winged, swift†  
 vōtum, i n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*  
 vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*

59. Jūnōnī: as presiding over marriage.  
 ante omnis (aliōs deōs). cui vinc(u)la  
 (sunt) cūrae: cui and cūrae are double  
 datives; App. 303, a.

61. fundit (vinum, wine): it was  
 customary to pour an offering of wine  
 between the horns of the victim as part  
 of the sacrificial ceremony.

62. ante ōra de(ōr)um: i.e., before  
 their images. pinguis: modifying ārās;  
 observe the long vowel of the ending.  
 The altars were fat (rich) with offerings.

63. dōnīs: gifts (to the gods), sacri-  
 fices.

64. pectoribus: with the final syllable  
 irregularly long under the metrical ac-  
 cent; App. 394, a.

65. vātum: the seers who interpret  
 the omens apparently encourage Dido  
 in her hopeless love, not realizing (mentēs  
 ignārae) that she is past praying for.  
 quid vōta (juvant) furentem (amōre): how  
 can sacrifices help one crazed (with love)?

66. Ēst: from edō; observe the long  
 vowel.

69-71. (in) urbe. furēns (amōre).  
 quālis cerva (vagātur), sagittā conjectā  
 (abl. abs.), quam incautam inter  
 Crēsia nemora pāstor agēns tēlis procul  
 fixit. The chance shot of a shepherd has  
 taken effect without his knowing it.  
 quam: refers to the deer (cerva).

72. nescius: i.e., of the success of his  
 shot. fugā: abl. of manner.



Dictaeōs; haeret laterī lētālis harundō.  
*Nunc media Aenēān sēcum per moenia dūcit*  
*Sīdoniāsque ostentat opēs urbemque parātā,* 75  
*incipit effārī mediāque in vōce resistit;*  
*nunc eadem lābente diē convīvia quaerit,*  
*Īliacōsque iterum dēmēns audire labōrēs*  
*exposcit pendetque iterum nārrantis ab ōre.*  
*Post ubi digressī, lūmenque obscūra vicissim* 80  
*lūna premit suādentque cadentia sidera somnōs,*  
*sōla domō maeret vacuā strātisque relictīs*  
*incubat. Illū absēns absentem auditque videtque,*  
*aut gremiō Ascanium genitōris imāgine captā*  
*dētinet, infandum sī fallere possit amōrem.* 85

absēns, entis absent, separated, distant  
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas\*  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, set\*  
 convīvium, (i)ī n. feast, banquet  
 dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted  
 dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus retain, hold back  
 Dictaeus, a, um of Dicte, a mountain in  
 Crete; Cretan  
 digredior, ī, gressus (de)part, separate  
 effor, āri, ātus speak (out), say  
 exposcō, ere, poposcī demand, entreat  
 fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, cheat,  
 mock, beguile\*  
 gremium, (i)ī n. bosom, lap, embrace  
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling to, stick  
 to (dat.)\*  
 harundō, inis f. reed, arrow†  
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*  
 imāgō, inis f. likeness, form, phantom\*  
 incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-  
 take\*  
 incubō, āre, uī, itus recline (upon) (dat.)

infandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable  
 iterum again, anew, a second time\*  
 latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
 lētālis, e deady, mortal, lethal, fatal†  
 lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
 maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine  
 nārrō (1) narrate, tell, recount  
 obscūrus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy\*  
 ops, opis f. help, resources, wealth,  
 power\*  
 ostentō (1) show (off), display, exhibit,  
 parade  
 pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend\*  
 post after, behind (acc.); afterward\*  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press\*  
 resistō, ere, stitī stop, resist (dat.)  
 Sīdonius, a, um of Sidon, a famous city  
 of Phoenicia  
 strātum, ī n. bed, couch; pavement  
 suādeō, ēre, āsi, āsus persuade, advise  
 vacuus, a, um empty, free, vacant  
 vicissim in turn, by turns†

75-76. Sīdoniās: Dido came from Tyre not from Sidon. Vergil's knowledge of geography is hazy, and he often confuses Tyre and Sidon, the two great cities of Phoenicia. Cf. I, 338. opēs urbemque: subtle temptations to the needy Aeneas and his followers (omnium egēnōs, I, 599), who were so eager to found a city where they might end their wanderings. mediā: App. 246.

77. lābente diē: as the day wanes, the usual time for the chief meal.

78. dēmēns: Aeneas's presence would serve to aggravate her unhappy passion.

79. pendet ab ōre (Aenēae) nārrantis: hangs on his words.

80. Post: adv. ubi (omnēs) digressī (sunt). lūmen (suum).

81. premit = reprimit.

82. strātis relictis (ab Aenēā): in the banqueting hall, after the guests have departed, she throws herself on the couch which Aeneas had occupied, to appease her sense of desolation felt in the absence of one secretly loved.

83. absēns absentem: bringing the same or similar words together is a favorite type of play on words among many classical authors.

84. Ascanium: he has now been brought back from Idalium, and Cupid is no longer substituting for him. Vergil, however, tells us nothing of this second exchange. genitōris imāgine: i.e., his resemblance to his father.

85. sī possit: implied indir. quest.; App. 349.

*Nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, nōn arma iuventūs  
exercet portūsve aut prōpugnācula bellō  
tūta parant:* pendent opera interrupta minaeque  
mūrōrum *ingentēs* *aequātaque* *māchina caelō.*

- 90 *Quam simul ac tālī persēnsit peste tenērī* .ND. ST.  
*cāra Jovis conjūnx nec fāmam* *obstāre furōrī,* .ND. ST.  
*tālībūs adgreditur Venerem Sātūrnīa dictīs:*  
“*Ēgregiam vērō laudem et spolia ampla refertis*  
*tūque puerque tuus (magnum et memorābile nūmen),*  
95 *ūna dolō dīvum sī fēmina victa duōrum est.*  
*Nec mē adeō fallit veritam tē moenia nostra*  
*suspectās habuisse domōs Karthāginis altae.*  
*Sed quis erit modus, aut quō nunc certāmine tantō?*  
*Quīn potius pācem aeternam pactōsque hymenaeōs*

adeō to such an extent, so (much)  
adgredior, ī, gressus attack, address  
adsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise  
aequō (1) (make) equal, match, level,  
even\*

aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal\*  
amplus, a, um large, grand, ample, wide  
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*  
certāmen, inis n. contest, rivalry, strife\*  
coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence  
dolus, ī m. deceit, stratagem, fraud\*  
duo, ae, o two\*  
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, noble  
exerceō, ēre, ūi, itus drive, exercise\*  
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, cheat,  
mock, escape the notice (of)\*

fēmina, ae f. woman, female  
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion\*  
hymenaeus, ī m. wedding (hymn); Hymen  
interrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus interrupt†  
iuventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*  
Karthāgō, inis f. Carthage, a city of  
North Africa

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*  
māchina, ae f. machine, engine, device  
memorābilis, e memorable, glorious

minae, ārum f. threat, menace, pinnacle  
modus, ī m. manner, measure, limit\*  
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, battlement\*  
obstō, āre, stiti, status oppose, resist  
(dat.)

opus, eris n. work, labor, deed, task\*  
paciscor, ī, pactus stipulate, bargain, fix†  
pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, grace, repose  
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend\*  
persentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus feel deeply,  
perceive (thoroughly)†  
pestis, is f. plague, destruction, scourge  
potius rather, preferably  
prōpugnāculum, ī n. rampart, battlement†  
quīn that not, but that, why not, nay  
even\*

Sātūrnīa, ae f. daughter of Saturn, Juno  
spolium, (i) ī n. booty, spoils, plunder  
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look from  
beneath, suspect  
turris, is f. tower, turret  
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure\*  
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty;  
love\*

vereor, ēri, itus fear, dread, revere  
vērō truly, indeed, but

87. bellō: dat. of purpose.

88-89. minae mūrōrum: *threatenings of walls = threatening walls.* Cf. II, 235, rotārum lāpsūs, *glidings of wheels = gliding wheels.*

90-128. Juno favors the marriage, that she may turn Aeneas aside from Italy, and so agrees to help Venus consummate the affair, promising to devise a suitable situation.

90. Quam: Dido; subj. of tenērī, that she was held. peste = amōre; or = peste amōris.

91. fāmam: (regard for) *her reputation, good name.* Jovis conjūnx: Juno.

93. Ēgregiam: scornful sarcasm. refertis: a technical term for carrying off the spoils won in battle.

94. puer tuus: Cupid. (est) nūmen (vestrum).

96-97. adeō: *to such an extent* (as you think). tē habuisse: subj. of fallit.

98. modus (certāminis), aut quō (tendimus) certāmine tantō. quō: *whither, how far.*

99. Quīn = cūr nōn. hymenaeōs (Dīdōnis Aenēaeque).

exercēmus? *Habēs totā quod mente petīstī:*  
ardet amāns *Didō trāxitque per ossa furōrem.*  
Commūnem *hunc* ergō populum paribusque regāmus  
auspiciis; liceat Phrygiō servīre maritō  
dōtālisque *tuae Tyriōs* permittere *dextrae.*"

*Ollī* (sēnsit enim simulātā mente locūtā,  
quō rēgnū *Italiae* Libycās āverteret *ōrās*)  
sic contrā est ingressa *Venus*: "*Quis tālia dēmēns*  
abnuat aut tēcū mālīt contendere bellō?  
*Sī* modo quod memorās factum *fortūna* sequātur.  
*Sed fātīs* incerta feror, *sī Juppiter ūnam*  
esse velit *Tyriūs urbem Trojāque* profectis,  
miscērive probet populōs aut foedera jungī.  
*Tū conjūnx, tibi fās* animum temptāre precandō.

100

105

110

129-  
178

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus uod dissent, refuse†  
amō (1) love, like, cherish\*  
auspiciū, (i) i n. auspices, power  
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn aside, avert\*  
commūnis, e (in) common, joint, mutual  
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, contend  
contrā opposite, facing, in reply\*  
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted  
dōtālis, e of a dower, as a dower†  
enim for, indeed, truly\*  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, exercise,  
perform\*  
factum, ī n. deed, act, exploit\*  
fās n. right, justice, decree, law\*  
foedus, eris n. treaty, pact, alliance  
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion\*  
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful  
ingredior, ī, gressus enter, proceed  
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke\*  
Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of  
North Africa\*

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted\*  
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk\*  
mālō, mālī, mālui prefer, wish rather†  
maritus, ī m. husband  
memorō (1) recall, recount, relate, say\*  
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
modo only, (just) now  
os, ossis n. bone\*  
pār, paris equal, like, similar\*  
permittō, ere, misī, missus intrust, allow  
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*  
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*  
probō (1) test, prove, approve†  
profiscor, ī, fectus set out, go  
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct\*  
sentio, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive  
serviō, ire, ivi (ii), itus serve (dat.)  
simulō (1) simulate, counterfeit, pretend  
temptō (1) try, test, seek, examine\*  
*Venus, eris* f. goddess of love and beauty;  
love\*

101. ardet amāns *Didō* = ardet amōre *Didō*.

102-103. paribus auspiciis: with equal authority, since only the highest Roman magistrates had the right to take the auspices. Juno proposes that she and Venus shall preside over the united peoples (Trojans and Carthaginians) with equal authority.

103. liceat (*Didōnī*): vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254. maritō = Aeneas; dat. with special verb, servīre; App. 297.

104. dōtālis: predicatively, as a dowry.

105. Ollī (*Jūnōnī*): an archaic form of illi; it depends on ingressa est (dicere) in l. 107. sēnsit (*Jūnōnem*) locūtā (esse).

106. rēgnū *Italiae*: the (destined) kingdom of Italy. quō (= ut) āverteret: purpose; App. 388. (ad) *ōrās*.

107. Quis dēmēns abnuat: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

109. Sī modo (= utinam) factum *fortūna* sequātur: may fortune attend the deed (of uniting the two peoples); opt. subj.; App. 253. Venus implies, but does not definitely promise, that she would consent under certain vaguely suggested conditions.

110-111. sī...velit: indir. quest.; App. 349. (illis) *Trojā* profectis: dat. of possession; equivalent to Teucris.

113. Tū (es) conjūnx (*Jovis*), tibi (est).

- Perge, sequar." *Tum sīc excēpit rēgia Jūnō:*  
 115 "Mēcum erit iste labor. Nunc quā ratiōne quod instat  
 cōnfieri possit, paucis (adverte) docēbō.  
 Vēnātum Aenēās ūnaque miserrima Dīdō  
 in nemus ire parant, ubi primōs crāstinus ortūs  
 extulerit Titān radiisque retēxerit orbem.  
 120 *Hīs ego nigrantem commixtā grandine nimbū,*  
*dum trepidant ālae saltūsque indāgine cingunt,*  
*dēsUPER infundam et tonitrū caelum omne ciēbō.*  
 Diffugient comitēs et nocte tegentur opācā:  
 spēluncam Dīdō dux et Trojānus eandem  
 125 dēvenient. Aderō et, tua sī mihi certa voluntās,  
 cōnūbiō jungam stabili propriamque dicābō.

advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to, heed  
 āla, ae f. wing, hunters, beaters\*  
 certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable\*  
 cieō, ēre, civī, citus stir up, arouse\*  
 cingō, ere, cīnī, cīctus surround, gird(le)\*  
 commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle  
 cōnfio, fieri, fectus be done, be finished†  
 cōnūbium, (i)ī n. wedlock, matrimony  
 crāstinus, a, um tomorrow's, of tomorrow†  
 dēsUPER from above  
 dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come down, arrive (at)  
 dicō (1) consecrate, assign, proclaim  
 diffugio, ere, fūgi flee apart, scatter  
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform\*  
 dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief\*  
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus carry (out), raise\*  
 excipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus take up, rejoin  
 grandō, inis f. hail(storm, stones)†  
 indāgō, inis f. (circle of) nets, toils†  
 infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (into, upon)†  
 instō, āre, stitī press on, desire, urge

iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
 jungō, ere, jūnī. jūnctus join, yoke\*  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 nigrāns, antis black, dusky, dark†  
 nimbū, ī m. (storm)cloud, rainstorm\*  
 opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, dusky  
 orbis, is m. circle, orb(it), earth\*  
 ortus, ūs m. rising, source†  
 paucus, a, um little, few, slight, scanty\*  
 pergō, ere, perrēxī, rēctus proceed  
 proprius, a, um one's own, permanent  
 radius, (i)ī m. rod, spoke, ray†  
 ratiō, ōnis f. manner, purpose, reason  
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly\*  
 retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus uncover, recover  
 saltus, ūs m. forest, glade, pasture  
 spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern, grotto  
 stabilis, e firm, stable, lasting  
 tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect\*  
 Titān, ānis m. a god, the sun†  
 tonitrus, ūs m. thunder†  
 trepidō (1) tremble; scurry; quiver  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 ūnā at the same time, together  
 vēnor, āri, ātus hunt, go hunting†  
 voluntās, ātis f. will, wish, consent†

115-116. mēcum = cum mē; App. 321, a; here equivalent to meus. quod instat: the business in hand; subj. of possit. quā ratiōne . . . possit: indir. quest.; App. 349. paucis (dictis).

117. Vēnātum: supine of vēnor, after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

120-122. His (Dīdōnī et Aenēae), dum ālae trepidant cinguntque saltūs indāgine, ego infundam dēsUPER nimbū. ālae: troops of beaters, who frighten the game and drive them past the hunters.

122. tonitrū: ordinarily the prerogative of Jove, but here wielded by Juno, as by Pallas (Minerva) in I, 42.

124. (in) spēluncam.

125. Aderō: in her capacity of goddess of marriage (Jūnō Prōnuba). voluntās (est).

126. cōnūbiō: pronounced here as though spelled cōnūbiō, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. jungam (Dīdōnem Aenēae) et (eam) propriam dicābō. This verse is repeated from I, 73.



*Hic hymenaeus erit." Nōn adversāta petentī  
adnuī atque dolīs risit Cytherēa repertīs.*

*Oceanum intereā surgēns Aurōra reliquit.*

*It portūs jubare exortō dēlecta juventūs,* 130

*rētia rāra, plagae, lātō vēnābula ferrō,*

*Massylīque ruunt equitēs et odōra canum vīs.*

*Rēginam thalamō cunctantem ad limina primī*

*Poenōrum expectant, ostrōque insignis et aurō* 135

*stat sonipēs ac frēna ferōx spūmantia mandit.*

*Tandem prōgreditur magnā stipante catervā*

*Sidoniam plectō chlamydem circumdata limbō;*

*cui pharetra ex aurō, crinēs nōdantur in aurum,*

*aurea purpuream subnectit fibula vestem.*

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise  
adversor, āri, ātus oppose, resist (dat.) †  
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*  
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of) dawn\*  
canis, is m. (f.) dog, hound  
caterva, ae f. band, troop, crowd  
chlamys, ydis f. cloak, mantle, cape  
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround,  
encircle

crinis, is m. hair, tresses, locks\*  
cūctor, āri, ātus delay, linger, wait †  
Cytherēa, ae f. Venus, born at Cythera  
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select  
dolus, i m. deceit, stratagem, fraud\*  
eques, itis m. horseman, knight †  
exorior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up  
ex(s)pectō (1) expect, (a)wait, linger\*  
ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, fiery, wild  
fibula, ae f. brooch, buckle, clasp †  
frēnum, i n. bridle, bit, curb  
hymenaeus, i m. wedding (hymn); Hymen  
insignis, e marked, notable, splendid\*  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
jubar, aris n. ray of light, sunshine †  
juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*  
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*  
limbus, i m. border, fringe, hem

mandō, ere, i, mānsus champ, chew  
Massylus, a, um of the Massyli, a people  
of North Africa †  
nōdō (1) (tie in a) knot, bind, fasten †  
Oceanus, i m. Ocean  
odōrus, a, um smelling, keen-scented †  
ostrum, i n. purple, scarlet, crimson  
pharetra, ae f. quiver  
pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider  
plaga, ae f. net, snare, toils †  
Poenus, i m. Carthaginian, Phoenician  
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal\*  
prōgredior, i, gressus advance, proceed  
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson  
rārus, a, um scattered, wide-meshed  
reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find (out) †  
rēte, is n. net, snare, toils †  
rideō, ēre, risi, risus smile, laugh (at) †  
Sidonius, a, um of Sidon, Sidonian  
sonipēs, pedis m. prancing steed †  
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
stipō (1) stuff, stow, crowd, throng  
subnectō, ere, nex(u)i, nexus tie (be-  
neath), fasten  
thalamus, i m. (bridal) chamber, wedlock\*  
vēnābulum, i n. hunting spear †  
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

127. Hic: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a; pronounce hicc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. Nōn adversāta (Jūnōni) petentī: not opposing her request.

128. dolīs (Jūnōnis) repertīs: abl. abs.

129-159. Aeneas and Dido go on a hunting party.

130. portis: abl. of the route or of separation. jubare (sōlis) exortō: abl. abs. juventūs, collective noun = Tyrii et Teucri.

132. ruunt: zeugma, as it strictly applies to only the last two of its subjects, while with the first three it means are hurried forth; App. 447. odōra canum vis: keen-scented pack of hounds, odōra being a transferred epithet; App. 446.

135. Note the alliteration; App. 411.

136. prōgreditur (Didō).

137. chlamydem: object of circumdata used as a middle; App. 309, a.

138. cui pharetra (est); dat. of possession. crinēs nōdantur in aurum: her hair is tied into a knot with gold, i.e., with a golden cord or clasp of some sort.

- 140 *Nec nōn et Phrygii comitēs et laetus Iūlus*  
*incēdunt. Ipse ante aliōs pulcherrimus omnis*  
*infert sē sociūm Aenēās atque agmina iūgit.*  
*Qualis ubi hibernam Lyciam Xanthique fluenta*  
*dēserit ac Dēlum maternam inuisit Apollō*  
 145 *īnstauratque chorōs, mixtique altāria circum*  
*Crētesque Dryopesque fremunt pictique Agathyrsi:*  
*ipse iūgis Cynthi graditur mollique fluentem*  
*fronde prēmīt crīnem fingēns atque implicat aurō,*  
*tēla sonant umeris: haud illō sēgnior ibat*  
 150 *Aenēās, tantum ēgrēgiō decus ēnitet ōre.*  
*Postquam altōs ventum in montis atque inuia lūstra,*  
*ecce ferae saxi dējectae vertice caprae*

Agathyrsi, ōrum *m.* people of Scythia in southeastern Europe†  
 altāria, ium *n.* altar  
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
 capra, ae *f.* she-goat†  
 chorus, i *m.* song, dance, choral band  
 Crētes, ium *m.* Cretans, inhabitants of Crete†  
 crīnis, is *m.* hair, tresses, locks\*  
 Cynthus, i *m.* mountain of Delos  
 decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity  
 dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw (down), dislodge  
 Dēlos, i *f.* island of the Aegean, birth-place of Apollo†  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
 Dryopes, um *m.* a people of northern Greece†  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 ēgrēgius, a, um remarkable, noble  
 ēniteō, ēre, uī shine forth, gleam, glitter†  
 ferus, a, um wild, savage, fierce, cruel\*  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, mold  
 fluentum, i *n.* stream, flood†  
 fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxus flow, stream, ebb  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, shout, groan\*  
 frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, foliage, garland\*  
 gradior, i, gressus walk, stride, march, go

hibernus, a, um wintry, of the winter, stormy  
 implicō, āre, āvi (uī), ātus (itus) entwine  
 incēdō, ere, cessi, cessus go (proudly)  
 inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (to), present  
 instaurō (l) renew, refresh, repeat  
 inuisō, ere, i, sus visit, look on, view†  
 inuius, a, um pathless, trackless  
 Iūlus, i *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
 jugum, i *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
 jungō, ere, iūnxi, iūctus join, yoke\*  
 lūstrum, i *n.* marsh, bog, lair  
 Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor†  
 maternus, a, um maternal, of one's mother†  
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
 mollis, e soft, yielding, tender  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider, tattoo  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press, cover, confine\*  
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious\*  
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as\*  
 sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top\*  
 Xanthus, i *m.* river near Troy†

140. *Nec nōn: likewise.*

142. *Aenēās agmina (sua) iungit (agminibus Didōnis).*

143. *Qualis:* Aeneas is here likened to Apollo, as Dido was likened to Diana in I, 498 ff. *hibernam Lyciam:* his winter quarters in Lycia.

146. *Crētesque:* with a long final syllable under the verse accent, before the pause, and before the following Dr(-); App. 394, a; 16. *Crētes, Dryopes, Agathyrsi:* strange worshippers come from all sorts of remote regions.

147. *ipse:* Apollo.

148. *fronde:* of the laurel, sacred to Apollo.

149. *tēla sonant umeris:* from Homer. Apollo was the archer god. *illō:* abl. with comparative; App. 327.

150. *tantum (quantum Apollinis).*

151. *ventum (est illis):* they came, with the emphasis on the action rather than on the actors.

152. *dējectae:* by the beaters composing the ālae of l. 121.

dēcurrere jugis; *aliā dē parte patentis*  
trāsmittunt cursū campōs atque agmina cervi  
pulverulenta fugā glomerant montisque relinquant. 155  
*At puer Ascanius mediis in vallibus acri*  
gaudet equō jamque hōs cursū, jam praeterit illōs,  
spūmantemque darī pecora inter inertia vōtis  
optat aprum, aut fulvum dēscendere monte leōnem.

Intereā magnō miscērī murmure caelum 160  
incipit, insequitur commixtā grandine nimbus,  
*et Tyrī comitēs passim et Trojāna juventūs*  
Dardaniusque nepōs Veneris diversa per agrōs  
*tecta metū petiēre; ruunt dē montibus amnēs.*  
Spēluncam Dīdō dux et Trojānus eandem 165  
dēveniunt. *Prīma et Tellūs et prōnuba Jūnō*

acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fiery\*  
ager, grī *m.* field, territory, land\*  
amnis, is *m.* river stream\*  
aper, prī *m.* wild boar  
Ascanius, (i) *i m.* son of Aeneas\*  
cervus, i *m.* deer, stag  
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle  
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run  
(down), hasten  
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend  
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come (down),  
arrive (at)  
diversus, a, um separated, different\*  
dux, ducis *m.* (f.) leader, guide, chief\*  
fulvus, a, um tawny, yellow, blond  
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult  
glomerō (1) roll together, gather, collect  
grandō, inis *f.* hail(storm, stones)  
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake\*  
iners, rtis lazy, spiritless, tame, idle  
insequor, ī, secūtus follow\*  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
jugum, i *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
juventūs, ūtis *f.* youth, young men\*

leō, ōnis *m.* lion  
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety\*  
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle,  
confuse\*  
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble  
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
nimbus, i *m.* rainstorm, (storm)cloud\*  
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)\*  
passim everywhere, all about\*  
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend  
pecus, oris *n.* flock, herd  
praetereō, ire, īi (īvī), itus surpass, pass  
(by)†  
prōnuba, ae *f.* matron of honor, bride-  
woman†  
pulverulentus, a, um dusty†  
spēlunca, ae *f.* cave, cavern, grotto  
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
trāsmittō, ere, mīsi, missus cross, send  
across  
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale  
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty;  
love\*  
vōtum, i *n.* vow, prayer, desire\*

154. (sē) trāsmittunt cursū campōs: campōs is object of the preposition trāns in composition, while cursū is abl. of manner; App. 308, 328.

157. equō: abl. of cause.

158. pecora inertia: as ferae caprae and cervi, which Ascanius disdainfully calls tame herds. vōtis: (in answer) to his prayers; indir. obj. with darī.

160-172. While all are intent on the chase, Juno sends a sudden tempest, scattering the party and driving Aeneas and Dido to the same lonely cave, where

they go through a form of marriage under unlucky omens.

163. nepōs Veneris = Ascanius.

166-168. Vergil here indicates the various features in a Roman wedding and represents Nature herself as performing these ceremonies. Earth and Heaven, as universal parents, take the part of human parents in bringing the couple together; the lightnings (ignēs) are the wedding torches (taedae); Juno performs the duty of the matron of honor (prōnuba), and the cries of the mountain nymphs

- dant signum; fulsere ignēs et cōnscius aethēr  
cōnūbiis, summōque ululārunt vertice nymphae.  
Ille diēs prīmus lēti prīmusque malōrum  
170 causa fuit; neque enim speciē fāmāve movētur  
nec jam furtivum Dīdō meditātur amōrem:  
conjugium vocat, hōc praetexit nōmine culpam.  
Exemplō Libyae magnās it Fāma per urbēs,  
Fāma, malum quā nōn aliud vëlōcius ūllum:  
175 mōbilitāte viget vīrīsq̄e adquirit eundō,  
parva metū prīmō, mox sēsē attollit in aurās  
ingrediturque solō et caput inter nūbila condit.  
Illam Terra parēns irā inritāta deōrum  
extrēmam, ut perhibent, Coeō Enceladōque sorōrem

adquirō, ere, quisivī, situs acquire, gain†  
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, heaven, ether\*  
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
Coeus, i *m.* one of the Titans, a giant,  
son of Earth†  
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, hide\*  
conjugium, (i) i *n.* wedlock, husband,  
wife  
cōnscius, a, um conscious, confederate,  
witness  
cōnūbium, (i) i *n.* wedlock, marriage  
culpa, ae *f.* fault, offense, guilt, blame  
Enceladus, i *m.* one of the Titans, a giant,  
son of Earth  
enim for, indeed, truly\*  
exemplō immediately, at once, suddenly  
extrēmus, a, um final, last, furthest\*  
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi shine, flash, gleam  
furtivus, a, um secret, stolen†  
ingredior, i, gressus enter, proceed  
inritō (1) vex, enrage, provoke†

lētum, i *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*  
Libya, ae *f.* country of North Africa\*  
malum, i *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble\*  
meditor, āri, ātus meditate, design  
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety\*  
mōbilitās, ātis *f.* activity, motion, speed†  
mox soon, presently  
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness  
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, minor female di-  
vinity of the forests, waters, etc.  
parvus, a, um small, little\*  
perhibeo, ēre, ui, itus present, say†  
praetexō, ere, ui, xtus fringe, cloak†  
prīmō at first, in the beginning  
signum, i *n.* sign, signal, token, mark\*  
solum, i *n.* ground, soil, earth\*  
soror, ōris *f.* sister\*  
speciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, sight, aspect  
ululō (1) howl, wail, shout, shriek  
vëlōx, ōcis swift, quick, rapid, fleet†  
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top\*  
vigeō, ēre, ui flourish, be strong, thrive

take the place of the wedding song and  
festal cries. **Prima Tellūs:** Earth was  
called *prima* as the oldest of the gods; as  
Mother Earth, the producer and nurse of  
life, she presided over marriage. **prō-  
nuba:** the matron whose function it was  
to join the hand of the bride to that of  
the groom at the wedding.

**167. dant signum:** i.e., for the  
wedding. **ignēs** (*lightnings*): instead of  
the marriage torches ordinarily employed  
at weddings. **cōnscius:** *witness* (to the  
marriage).

**168. cōnūbiis:** *to the marriage;* poetic  
plural; pronounced here as though  
spelled cōnūbjīs, for the sake of the  
meter; App. 401. **ululā(vē)runt:** in-  
stead of the marriage songs ordinarily  
sung at weddings. (*in*) **vertice** (*montis*).

**170-171. speciē fāmāve:** *by* (regard  
for) *appearances or* (for) *her reputation*.  
**movētur nec Dīdō meditātur:** in Latin  
the subject of two such clauses is often  
placed in the second, contrary to English  
usage.

**173-197. Dame Gossip** (*Rumor*)  
spreads exaggerated reports of the love  
affair, finally carrying the news to Iar-  
bas, an African chieftain and one of  
Dido's rejected suitors.

**174. quā:** abl. with compar.; App.  
327. **nōn** (*est*).

**175. eundō:** abl. of the gerund of *eō*;  
App. 269.

**177. (in) solō = (in) terrā.**

**178. deōrum:** obj. gen. with *irā*; App.  
284. **In anger at the gods for slaying her**



prōgenuit *pedibus* celerem et pernīcibus ālis, 180  
 mōnstrum horrendum, *ingēns*, cui quot sunt corpore plūmae,  
 tot vigilēs oculi subter (*mirābile dictū*), → *SURINE*  
 tot linguae, totidem ōra sonant, tot subrigit auris.  
 Nocte volat caelī mediō terraeque per umbram  
 stridēns, nec dulcī dēclinat *lūmīna* somnō; 185  
*lūce* sedet custōs aut summī culmine tēctī  
 turribus aut altīs, et magnās territat urbēs,  
 tam fictī prāvīque tenāx quam nuntia vēri.  
 Haec tum multiplici populōs sermōne replēbat  
 gaudēns, et pariter facta atque infecta canēbat: 190  
*venisse Aenēan Trojānō sanguine crētum,*  
*cui sē pulchra virō dignētur jungere Didō;*

āla, ae f. wing\*

auris, is f. ear\*

canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,  
 tell, proclaim, prophesy\*

celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick\*

crētus, a, um grown, sprung

culmen, inis n. roof, summit, top, peak\*

custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*

dēclinō (1) turn aside, bend down, droop†  
 dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy, deign  
 (abl.)

dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*

factum, i n. deed, act, exploit\*

fictum, i n. falsehood, fiction†

gaudeō, ērē, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult

horrendus, a, um awful, terrible, dire\*

infectus, a, um not done, false†

jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus join, yoke\*

lingua, ae f. tongue, language

medium, (i) i n. middle, center

mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous

mōnstrum, i n. prodigy, portent, mon-  
 ster\*

multiplex, icis manifold, multiple†

nuntia, ae f. messenger†

pariter equally, alike\*

pernīx, icis active, nimble, swift†

plūma, ae f. feather, plume

populus, i m. people, nation, race\*

prāvum, i n. wrong, perverse act†

prōgignō, ere, genui, genitus bring forth,  
 bear†

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
 splendid, illustrious, noble\*

quam how, than, as\*

quot as many as

repleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, stuff

sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit (down),  
 settle\*

sermō, ōnis m. conversation, gossip

sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*

strid(e)ō, ēre, i hiss, whir, rustle

subrigō, ere, surrēxi, rēctus raise, rise†

subter beneath, below†

tam so, as, such\*

tenāx, ācis tenacious, holding (to)†

terrītō (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†

tot so many, as many\*

totidem the same number, so many

Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*

turris, is f. tower, turret

vērūm, i n. truth, right, reality

vigil, ilis wakeful, watchful, sleepless†

volō (1) fly, flit, speed\*

children, the Titans, Earth bore the  
 giants, Rumor being one of them.

181. Rumor is covered with feathers;  
 and beneath each feather is an eye, a  
 tongue, a mouth, and an ear. cui: dat. of  
 possessor.

182. oculi (sunt) subter (plūmās).

183. (Fāma) subrigit tot auris: Rumor  
 raises as many listening ears.

184. caeli mediō terraeque: 'twixt  
 heaven and earth.

185. stridēns: with her wings as she

flies, referring to the buzz of gossip.  
 lūmina (sua) = oculōs, as often.

186-187. lūce: by day, abl. of time;  
 App. 322. (in) culmine aut (in) tur-  
 ribus.

188. ficti: gen. with tenāx; App. 287,

189. Haec = Fāma.

190. facta atque infecta: "fact and  
 fiction." Literally, things done and not  
 done. canēbat: followed by indir. disc.

192. virō = conjugī. jungere: com-  
 plementary int.; App. 259.

nunc hiemem inter sē luxū, quam longa, fovēre  
 rēgnōrum immemorēs turpique cupidine captōs.  
 195 Haec passim dea foeda virum diffundit in ōra.  
 Prōtinus ad rēgem cursūs dētorquet Iarbān  
 incenditque animū dictis atque aggerat irās.

Hic Hammōne satus raptā Garamantide nymphā  
 200 templa Jovī centum lātis immānia rēgnīs,  
 centum ārās posuit vigilemque sacrāverat ignem,  
 excubiās dīvum aeternās, pecudumque cruōre  
 pingue solum et variis flōrentia līmīna sertis.  
 Isque amēns animī et rūmōre accēnsus amārō  
 205 dīcitur ante ārās media inter nūmīna dīvum  
 multa Jovem manibus supplex ōrāsse supinīs:

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, inflame  
 aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting\*  
 aggerō (1) heap up, pile up, increase†  
 amārus, a, um bitter, unpleasant†  
 amēns, entis mad, crazy, frenzied  
 centum hundred\*  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 cupidō, inis f. love, desire, longing  
 dētorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn (away)†  
 diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus scatter, spread  
 excubiae, ārum f. watch(fire), senti-  
 nel†  
 flōreō, ēre, uī bloom, flourish, blossom†  
 foedus, a, um foul, loathsome, filthy  
 foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle  
 Garamantis, idis of the Garamantes, an  
 African tribet  
 Hammōn, ōnis m. god of North Africa,  
 famous for his oracle and identified by  
 the Romans with Jupiter†  
 hiems, emis f. winter, storm\*  
 Iarbās, ae m. African chieftain, one of  
 Dido's unsuccessful suitors  
 immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn, inflame\*  
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious\*  
 luxus, ūs m. luxury, splendor, excess  
 nymphā, ae f. nymph, one of the minor  
 divinities of the forests, waters, etc.  
 ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat\*  
 passim everywhere, all about\*  
 pecus, udīs f. animal (of the flock)\*  
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile  
 prōtinus continuously, immediately  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), seize,  
 ravish\*  
 rūmor, ōris m. rumor, report, gossip†  
 sacrō (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate\*  
 serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget\*  
 sertum, ī n. wreath, garland  
 solum, ī n. ground, soil, earth\*  
 supīnus, a, um flat, upturned  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
 turpis, e shameful, disgraceful  
 varius, a, um varied, different, diverse\*  
 vigil, ilis watchful, wakeful, sleepless

193. (Dīdōnem et Aenēān) inter sē  
 fovēre hiemem quam longa (ea hiems  
 sit). inter sē fovēre: *vere caressing one  
 another the whole long winter*; inter sē is  
 commonly thus employed to denote re-  
 ciprocal action. quam longa (sit): *however  
 long it may be*.

194. rēgnōrum: Carthage and Italy.

195. vīr(ōr)um.

198-218. Iarbas prays to his father,  
 Jupiter Ammon, for help, reproaching  
 him that he had allowed Aeneas, a mere  
 adventurer, to be preferred to himself.

198. Hic: pronounce hicc.

199-200. templa centum (posuit), cen-  
 tum ārās posuit: Latin commonly ex-  
 presses the verb with only the second  
 of two such clauses, English with  
 the first. Compare the note on ll.  
 170-171.

201. excubiās: apposition with ignem;  
 the never-dying fire stands sentry in honor  
 of the gods, like the sacred fire of Vesta  
 at Rome.

202. pingue: from the blood and the  
 fat of the many sacrifices.

203. Is: Iarbas. animī: gen. with  
 amēns; or loc.; App. 287, 37, c.

204. media inter nūmīna: *amid the  
 divine presences*.



- 220 *audivit Omnipotēns, oculōsque ad moenia torsit*  
*rēgia et oblitōs fāmae meliōris amantīs.*  
*Tum sic Mercurium adloquitur ac tālia mandat:*  
*"Vāde age, nāte, vocā Zephyrōs et lābere pennīs*  
*Dardaniumque ducem, Tyriā Karthāgine quī nunc*  
225 *exspectat fātisque datās nōn respicit urbēs,*  
*adloquere et celeris dēfer mea dicta per aurās.*  
*Nōn illum nōbīs genetrix pulcherrima tālem*  
*prōmīsīt Grajumque ideō bis vindicat armīs;*  
*sed fore quī gravidam imperiūs bellōque frementem*  
230 *Ītaliā regeret, genus altō ā sanguine Teucrī*  
*prōderet, ac tōtum sub lēgēs mitteret orbem.*  
*Sī nūlla accendit tantārum glōria rērum*  
*nec super ipse suā mōlītur laude labōrem,*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, inflame  
adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost  
amāns, antis *m. (f.)* lover  
bis twice\*  
celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick\*  
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātus carry (down),  
report  
dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief\*  
ex(s)pectō (1) (a)wait, expect, linger,  
tarry, dally\*  
fremō, ere, ui, itus rage, roar, ring\*  
genetrix, tricis *f.* mother  
glōria, ae *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride  
Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
gravidus, a, um heavy, burdened, preg-  
nant, filled, teeming†  
ideō therefore, for this reason†  
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of  
North Africa  
laus, laudis *f.* glory, praise, merit\*  
lēx, lēgis *f.* law, jurisdiction, term  
mandō (1) command, intrust, enjoin

melior, ius better, superior, preferable  
Mercurius, (i) *m.* messenger of the gods,  
god of commerce, and escort of de-  
parted souls to Hades†  
mōlior, iri, itus do, (strive to) accomplish  
obliviscor, ī, litus forget (*gen.*)  
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent  
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb(it), earth\*  
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather  
prōdō, ere, didi, ditus betray, transmit  
prōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus promise\*  
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,  
splendid, handsome, illustrious\*  
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly\*  
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide\*  
respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
at, regard\*  
Teucer (crus), cri *m.* early king of Troy  
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, sway, hurl\*  
vādō, ere go, proceed, advance  
vindicō (1) vindicate, claim (as free),  
rescue†  
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

220-221. moenia rēgia: of Carthage.  
fāmae: gen. with oblitōs; App. 288.

222. adloquitur: with final syllable  
irregularly long, due to the pause and  
the verse accent; App. 394, a.

223. Zephyrōs, pennīs: he is to use  
every contrivance for speed. lābere:  
imp. pennīs: attached to his sandals.

224. ducem: obj. of the imp. ad-  
loquere, l. 226.

226. dēfer: imp.; App. 202.

227. tālem (virum).

228. ideō: for this purpose; that he  
might dally at ease in Carthage. bis  
vindicat: rescued; once from Diomedes  
(I, 96-98, and notes), and again at the

fall of Troy (II, 620 ff.). armīs: abl. of  
separation.

229-230. sed (genetrix prōmīsīt illum)  
fore (tālem) quī regeret: rel. clause of  
characteristic; App. 389. imperiis: with  
(future) empire.

231. tōtum orbem: through the later  
development of the Roman Empire,  
especially under Augustus, who is here  
thus complimented by the poet.

232. accendit (illum).

233-234. super laude suā. pater: em-  
phatic; could a father do this, and have  
so little true paternal feeling? Ascaniō:  
indir. obj. of invidet. arcēs: dir. obj. of  
invidet.



Ascaniōne *pater Rōmānās* invidet *arcēs*?  
*Quid* struit? *Aut quā* spē inimicā *in gente* morātur  
*nec* prōlem Ausoniam *et Lāvinia* respicit *arva*?  
*Nāviget!* *Haec summa est, hic nostrī nuntius estō.*"

*Dīxerat. Ille patris magnī pārēre parābat*  
*imperio: et primum pedibus tālāria* nequit  
*aurea, quae sublimem ālis sive aequora* suprā  
*seu terram* rapidō pariter *cum flāmine* portant.  
*Tum virgam capit: hāc animās ille ēvocat* Orcō  
*pallentis, aliās sub Tartara trīstia* mittit,  
*dat somnōs* adimitque, *et lūmina* morte resignat.  
*Illā frētus agit ventōs et turbida* trānat  
*nūbila. Jamque volāns apicem et latera* ardua *cernit*  
*Atlantis dūri caelum quī* vertice *fulcit,*

adimō, ere, ēmī, ēemptus take away  
 āla, ae f. wing\*  
 apex, icis m. peak, summit, head  
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering\*  
 Ascanius, (i) i m. son of Aeneas\*  
 Atlās, antis m. god who supports heaven  
 on his shoulders, grandfather of Mer-  
 cury; a mountain of Northwest Africa  
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*  
 Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian  
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 ēvocō (1) call out, summon†  
 flāmen, inis n. breeze, blast, wind†  
 frētus, a, um relying (on) (abl.)†  
 fulciō, ire, lsi, ltus support, prop†  
 inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
 invidēō, ēre, vidī, visus begrudge (dat.)\*  
 latus, eris n. side, flank\*  
 Lāvin(i)us, a, um of Lavinium, an early  
 Italian city  
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, detain\*  
 nāvigō (1) (set) sail, navigate  
 nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexu bind, fasten  
 nūbila, ōrum n. clouds, cloudiness  
 nuntius, (i) i m. messenger, message

Orcus, i m. Hades, (god of) the lower  
 world  
 pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan  
 pārēō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)  
 pariter equally, alike\*  
 portō (1) carry, bear, convey\*  
 prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race\*  
 rapidus, a, um swift, snatching\*  
 resignō (1) (un)seal, open, close†  
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
 at, regard\*  
 Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*  
 sive, seu whether, or, either if, or if  
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*  
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, plan  
 sublimis, e on high, towering, lofty  
 summa, ae f. sum, substance, chief thing†  
 suprā over, above (acc.)  
 tālāria, ium n. (winged) sandals, anklets†  
 Tartara, ōrum n. Hades, the lower world†  
 trānō (1) swim across, float†  
 turbidus, a, um troubled, stormy†  
 vertex, icis m. peak, summit, head, top\*  
 virga, ae f. staff, wand, twig†  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit\*

235. spē inimicā: hiatus; App. 399.  
 inimicā gente: Vergil is thinking of later  
 times when Rome and Carthage were such  
 bitter foes.

237. Nāviget: vol. subj.; App. 254.  
 hic nostrī nuntius estō: *this be our (my)*  
*message.* nostrī: gen. pl. of ego. estō:  
 imp.

238-258. Mercury hastens from  
 Olympus to Carthage.

240. ālis: attached to the tālāria.  
 (illum) sublimem. aequora suprā =  
 suprā aequora: anastrophe; App. 414.

242. virgam: the cādūceus or magic  
 winged wand entwined with serpents.  
 hāc (virgā): as escort of the souls of the  
 dead, Mercury conducted them in both  
 directions; to Hades after death, and  
 back to the upper world as ghosts.

245. Compare the flight of Raphael in  
*Paradise Lost*, V, 255 ff. Illā (virgā):  
 abl. of means with frētus. agit ventōs:  
*oustrips the winds.*

247. Atlantis: in the following de-  
 scription, Vergil skillfully mingles the  
 conception of Atlas as a god and as a  
 mountain.

- 250 Atlantis, cinctum adsiduē cui nūbibus ātrīs  
pīniferum caput et ventō pulsātur et imbrī,  
nīx umerōs īnfūsa tegit, tum flūmina mentō  
praecipitant senis, et glaciē riget horrida barba.  
Hīc prīmum paribus nītens Cyllēnius ālis  
cōnstitit: hīc tōtō praeceps sē corpore ad undās  
mīsīt avī similis, quae circum litora, circum  
255 piscōsōs scopulōs humilis volat aequora juxtā.  
Haud aliter terrās inter caelumque volābat  
lītus harēnōsum ad Libyae, ventōsque secābat  
māternō veniēns ab avō Cyllēnia prōlēs.  
Ut prīmum ālātīs tetigit māgālia plantīs,  
260 Aenēān fundantem arcēs ac tēcta novantem  
cōnspicit. Atque illī stēllātus iaspide fulvā

adsiduē constantly, ever, continually†

āla, ae f. wing\*

ālātus, a, um winged, furnished with wings†

aliter otherwise, differently\*

Atlās, antis m. god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; mountain of Northwest Africa

avis, is f. bird, fowl†

avus, ī m. grandfather; ancestor

barba, ae f. beard, whiskers

cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround, gird(le)\*

cōnspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at  
cōnstō, āre, stiti, status stand firm, halt

Cyllēnius, (i)ī m. the Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury; adj., Cyllēnius, a, um Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury†

flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood\*

fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond

fundō (1) found, build, establish†

glaciēs, ēi f. ice†

harēnōsus, a, um sandy†

horridus, a, um bristling, awful, rough

humilis, e low(ly), low-lying, humble

iaspis, idis f. jasper, a semi-precious stone†

imber, bris m. rain, flood, storm, water

īfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour on (in)

juxtā close (to), next (to) (acc.)\*

Libya, ae f. country of Northwest Africa\*

māgālia, ium n. huts, hovels

māternus, a, um maternal, of a mother

mentum, ī n. chin, beard

nītor, ī, sus (nīxus) strive, rest on (abl.)

nīx, nivis f. snow†

novō (1) renew, make (new), build†

nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist\*

pār, paris equal, balanced, like\*

pīnifer, era, erum pine-bearing†

piscōsus, a, um fishy, fish-haunted†

planta, ae f. heel; sole of foot†

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*

praecipitō (1) fall headlong, hasten  
prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race\*

pulsō (1) beat, strike. lash, batter

rigēō, ēre, uī be stiff, be rigid

scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*

secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*

senex, senis m. old man\*

similis, e like, similar (dat., gen.)\*

stēllātus, a, um starred, star-spangled†

tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach\*

tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect\*

umerus, ī m. shoulder

volō (1) fly, speed, flit\*

248. cinctum (est). cui: whose.

250. (dē) mentō: abl. of separation.

252. Hīc: on the summit of Atlas.  
ālis: abl. of means with nītens.

257. ad lītus: App. 414.

258. māternō avō: Atlas. The mother of Mercury was Maja, daughter of Atlas.

259-278. Mercury finds Aeneas busily engaged in furthering Dido's plans; he delivers his message and disappears.

261-262. stēllātus ēnsis: only the hilt was studded.

ēnsis erat *Tyriōque ardēbat* mūrice laena  
 dēmissa ex umerīs, dives quae mūnera Dīdō  
 fēcērat, et tenuī tēlās discrēverat aurō.  
 Continuō invādīt: "*Tū nunc* Karthāginis altae 265  
 fundāmenta locās pulchramque uxōrius urbem  
 extruis? *Heu, rēgnī rērumque oblīte tuārum!*  
*Ipse deum tibi mē clārō dēmittit Olympō*  
*rēgnātor, caelum ac terrās quī nūmine torquet:*  
*ipse haec ferre jubet celeris mandāta per aurās:* 270  
*Quid struis? Aut quā spē Libycis teris ōtia terrīs?*  
*Sī tē nūlla movet tantārum glōria rērum*  
*[nec super ipse tuā mōliris laude labōrem,]*  
 Ascanium *surgentem et spēs hērēdis Iūli*  
*respice, cui rēgnum Italiae Rōmānaque tellūs* 275  
*dēbētur.*" Tālī Cyllēnius ōre locūtus  
 mortālīs vīsūs mediō sermōne reliquit  
 et procul in tenuem ex oculīs ēvānuīt auram.

Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas\*  
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy\*  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 continuō immediately, at once  
 Cyllēnius, (i)ī *m.* the Cyllenean; Mercury,  
 born on Mt. Cyllene  
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, be  
 destined  
 dēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus let down, send  
 down, lower, drop\*  
 di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy  
 discernō, ere, crēvi, crētus separate  
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife\*  
 ēvānescō, ere, nuī vanish, disappear†  
 exstruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build (up),  
 rear  
 fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base  
 glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride  
 hērēs, ēdis *m.* heir, successor†  
 invādō, ere, si, sus attack, address  
 Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of  
 North Africa  
 laena, ae *f.* (woolen) mantle, cloak†  
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit\*  
 Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a coun-  
 try of North Africa\*

locō (1) place, lay, establish, locate\*  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk\*  
 mandātum, ī *n.* command, order, behest  
 mōlior, īri, itus undertake, accomplish, do  
 mortālīs, e mortal, human, earthly\*  
 mūrex, icis *m.* purple (dye), crimson,  
 scarlet†  
 obliviscor, ī, litus forget (*gen.*)  
 Olympus, ī *m.* Greek mountain, home of  
 the gods; heaven  
 ōtium, (i)ī *n.* leisure; idleness, quiet†  
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
 noble, splendid, illustrious\*  
 rēgnātor, ōris *m.* ruler, lord, director  
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
 at, regard\*  
 Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*  
 sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech  
 spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation\*  
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, contrive  
 tēla, ae *f.* web, textile†  
 tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate  
 terō, ere, trivi, tritus rub, wear, waste†  
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, hurl, sway\*  
 uxōrius, a, um wife-ruled, uxorious, hen-  
 pecked†  
 vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view, aspect

264. tenuī aurō: she had interwoven the warp with fine gold thread.

266. uxōrius: wife-enslaved; used as a term of reproach.

267. oblīte: vocative of the participle of obliviscor. rēgnī rērumque: genitives with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

274. Iūli: obj. gen.

277. mediō (in) sermōne: in the middle (of his) speech, abruptly; App. 246.

278. in tenuem auram: cf. Shakespeare, *Tempest*, IV, i, 148-150:

"These our actors,  
 As I foretold you, were all spirits and  
 Are melted into air, into thin air."

- 280 *Turned into speech?* *Does not take commensurate?*  
*That 1st* At vērō Aenēās aspectū obmūtuit āmēns,  
 arrēctaeque horrōre comae et vōx faucibus haesit,  
 Ardet abire fugā dulcisque relinquere terrās,  
 attonitus tantō monitū imperiōque deōrum.  
 Heu quid agat? Quō nunc rēginam ambire furentem  
 audeat adfātū? Quae prīma exordia sūmat?
- 285 Atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dīvidit illūc  
 in partisque rapit variās perque omnia versat.  
 Haec alternantī potior sententia vīsa est:  
 Mnēsthea Sergestumque vocat fortemque Serestum,  
 classem aptent tacitī sociōsque ad litora cōgant,  
 arma parent et quae rēbus sit causa novandis
- 290 dissimulent; sēsē intereā, quandō optima Dīdō

abeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus depart\*  
 adfātus, ūs *m.* address, speech†  
 alternō (1) change, alternate, waver†  
 ambiō, ire, ivī (ii), itus go around; conciliate†  
 āmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distraught  
 aptō (1) equip, make ready, furnish  
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus erect, stand on end  
 a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance  
 attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, astounded  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
 celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick\*  
 cōgō, ere, coēgi, coactus muster, compel\*  
 coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses\*  
 dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pretend otherwise  
 dīvidō, ere, vīsi, vīsus divide, distribute  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
 exordium, (i) *n.* beginning, commencement†  
 faux, faucis *f.* jaws, throat; gulf

fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout\*  
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to), halt (*dat.*)\*  
 horror, ōris *m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm  
 illūc thither, to that place†  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos), acc. ea, *m.* Trojan leader†\*  
 monitus, ūs *m.* advice, warning†  
 novō (1) renew, make new, alter, build  
 obmūtēscō, ere, tui be dumb, stand speechless†  
 optimus, a, um best, finest  
 potior, ius preferable, better  
 quandō when, since, because  
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus seize, snatch, rob\*  
 sententia, ae *f.* opinion, resolve, view  
 Serestus, i *m.* Trojan leader  
 Sergestus, i *m.* Trojan leader\*  
 sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, employ  
 tacitus, a, um silent, still, secret  
 varius, a, um various, different, diverse\*  
 vērō truly, indeed, but  
 versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

279-295. Obeying the divine commands Aeneas instructs his followers to prepare secretly for the voyage, and seeks a favorable opportunity for informing Dido of his plan to depart.

281. fugā: abl. of manner. relinquere terrās (Carthāginis): Vergil constantly endeavors to represent his hero Aeneas as a man of such thorough devotion (pius Aenēās) that he is ever ready to sacrifice self to the will of Heaven and to surrender whatever life holds most dear, if it be the divine will.

283-284. agat, audeat, sūmat: deliberative subjunctives; App. 348. furentem (amōre).

285. animum celerem dīvidit: Cf. Tennyson, *Passing of Arthur*,

"This way and that dividing the swift mind."

286. rapit (animum), versat (animum).

287. (Aenēae) alternantī: whether he should inform Dido.

289-291. (ut) aptent, cōgant, parent, dissimulent: indir. commands after vocat, which implies et imperat or some such expression; App. 390. rēbus novandis: an expression commonly used for taking a new step, such as a revolution. quae... sit causa: indir. quest.; App. 349.

291-293. sēsē temptātūrū (esse):



*is ignorant such*  
 nesciat et tantōs rumpī nōn spēret amōrēs,  
 temptātūrum aditūs et quae mollissima fandī  
 tempora, quis rēbus dexter modus. Ōcius omnēs  
 imperiō laetī pārent et iussa facessunt.

At rēgina dolōs (quis fallere possit amantem?)

*WICKED*  
 praesēnsit, mōtūsque excēpit *prīma* futūrōs  
 omnia tūta timēns. Eadem impia Fāma furentī  
 detulit armari classem cursumque parārī.  
*TO BE ARMED TO BE PREPARED*  
*SAVED NEEDY*  
 Saevit inops animī tōtamque incēnsa per urbem

bacchātur, quālis commōtis excita sacrīs  
 Thyias, ubi auditō stimulant trietērica Bacchō

orgia nocturnusque vocat clāmōre Cithaerōn.

295  
*But the queen perceives the deceit (as this is able to cheat his and she understands)*  
*AFRAID*

300

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access

amāns, antis *m.* (*f.*) lover

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*

bacchor, āri, ātus rush wildly, rave

Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine

Cithaerōn, ōnis *m.* Greek mountain near Thebes, on which the rites of Bacchus were celebrated†

commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, stir, shake, agitate

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, report

dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud\*

excio, ire, ivi, itus arouse, excite, stir

excipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, catch, understand, reply

facessō, ere, (iv)ī, itus do, make, fulfill†

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat, mock\*

impious, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn\*

inops, opis needy, destitute, bereft (of)†

jussum, ī *n.* command, behest, order

modus, ī *m.* manner, limit, method\*

mollis, e soft, yielding, easy, mild

mōtus, ūs *m.* movement, emotion†

nesciō, ire, ivi (ii) not know, be ignorant

nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal

ōcior, ius swifter, quicker; very swift†

orgia, ōrum *n.* mystic rites, orgies†

pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)

praesentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive first, suspect†

quālis, e of what sort, (such) as\*

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst (forth), utter\*

saevio, ire, ivi (ii), itus rage, storm

spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose\*

stimulō (1) spur, goad, prick, incite†

temptō (1) try, attempt, seek, test\*

Thyias, adis *f.* Bacchantes, a woman devotee of the worship of Bacchus†

timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread\*

trietēricus, a, um triennial†

tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure\*

implied indir. disc., dependent on vocat, l. 288, which implies et dicit or some such expression; App. 390. nesciat: subj. in a dependent clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, b.

293-294. quae tempora (sint), quis modus (sit): indir. questions, objects of temptātūrum (esse); App. 349.

296-330. Dido, learning that the fleet was being equipped and suspecting the truth, bitterly reproaches Aeneas and with tears and prayers attempts to prevail on him to remain.

296. possit: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

298. tūta: (no matter how) safe, with omnia. furentī (Didōni).

300. animī: gen. with adj. inops; App. 287.

302-303. Thyias: yi form a diphthong pronounced *we*. The Bacchic revels celebrated every third year on Mt. Cithaeron, near Thebes, were famous. When the sacra were brought out of the temple and shaken, the Thyiads or Bacchantes ran wild, dressed themselves in fawn skins, and joined the Bacchic orgies, where they brandished the thyrsi (wands), and danced to the accompaniment of clashing cymbals. Cf. Wordsworth, *Duddon Sonnets*, 20:

"Dance like a Bacchanal from rock to rock,  
 Tossing her frantic thyrsus wide and high."

auditō Bacchō: abl. abs.; as the cry 'Bacchus' is heard. The worshippers

*Watch out for this report*

- Tandem hīs Aenēan* <sup>ACCOST</sup> <sup>FURTHER</sup> *compellat vōcibus ultrō:*  
 305 *“Dissimulare etiam spērāstī, perfide, tantum*  
*posse nefās tacitusque meā decēdere terrā?*  
*Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera quondam*  
*nec moritūra tenet crudēli funere Didō?* *Didō about to die*  
*Quin etiam hibernō mōliris sidere classem* *a cruel death.*  
 310 *et medūs properās Aquilōnibus ire per altum,*  
*crudēlis? Quid, sī nōn arva aliēna domōsque*  
*ignōtās peterēs, et Troja antiq̄ua manēret,*  
*Troja per undōsum peterētur classibus aequor?*  
*Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē*  
 315 *(quandō aliud mihi jam miserae nihil ipsa reliquī),*  
*per cōnūbia nostra, per inceptōs hymenaeōs,*  
*sī bene quid dē tē meruī, fuit aut tibi quicquam*  
*dulce meum, miserēre domūs lābentis et istam,*  
*ōrō, sī quis adhūc precibus locus, exue mentem.*  
 320 *Tē propter Libycae gentēs Nomadumque tyrannī*  
*ōdēre, infēnsī Tyrū; tē propter eundem*

adhūc to this point, till now  
 aliēnus, a, um belonging to another,  
 other's, alien, foreign†  
 altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven  
 Aquilō, ōnis m. (north) wind  
 bene well, rightly, securely, fully†  
 compellō (1) address, accost, speak to  
 cōnūbium, (i) ī n. wedlock, marriage  
 crudēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter\*  
 decēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart†  
 dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pre-  
 tend otherwise  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, pleasant, delightful\*  
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, discard\*  
 fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*  
 hibernus, a, um wintry, of the winter  
 hymenaeus, ī m. marriage (song), god  
 of marriage, Hymen  
 ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange  
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake\*  
 infēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter  
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*

Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of  
 North Africa\*

mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
 misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate (gen.)\*  
 mōlior, iri, itus prepare, attempt, do  
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 nefās n. indecl. impiety, sin, crime\*  
 nihil, nil nothing, not at all  
 Nomas, adis m. tribe of North Africa†  
 ōdī, isse hate, detest, loathe  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
 perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious†  
 prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow\*  
 properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
 propter on account of, near (acc.)†  
 quandō when, since, if ever, because  
 quin why not, but that, nay even\*  
 quisquam, quicquam anyone, anything  
 spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose\*  
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret  
 tyrannus, ī m. ruler, chieftain, tyrant  
 ultrō further, voluntarily\*  
 undōsus, a, um billowy, wavy

shouted 'iō Bacche,' and 'Euoē Bacche.'  
 stimulant (illam), vocat (illam).

305-306. etiam spērā(vi)stī, perfide,  
 (tē) posse dissimulāre tantum nefās?

309. hibernō sidere = tempore. The  
 ancients regularly suspended navigation  
 during the winter months.

311-313. Quid, si, etc.: you wouldn't  
 sail now, even if you were going back to  
 secure homes in Troy, and were not (as  
 you are) sailing away to strange foreign

lands (arva aliēna). Troja peterētur  
 (hibernō sidere): the conclusion of the  
 conditions contrary to fact, sī peterēs  
 and sī manēret; App. 382.

314-319. Mē: emphatic by position,  
 obj. of fugis. per lacrimās et per dex-  
 tram. tē: obj. of ōrō. miserēre: imp.  
 domūs: gen. with misereor; App. 289.

319. si quis (indef.). locus (sit).

320-321. gentēs et tyrannī ōdēre (mē).  
 ōdēre = ōdērunt. infēnsī (mihi sunt)

extinctus pudor et, quā sōlā sīdera adibam,  
fāma prior. Cui mē moribundam dēseris, — hospes  
(hoc solum nōmen quoniam dē conjugē restat)?  
Quid moror? An mea Pygmalion dum moenia frāter  
dēstruat aut captam dūcat Gaetūlus Iarbās?  
Saltem sī qua mihi dē tē suscepta fuisset  
ante fugam subolēs, sī quis mihi parvulus aulā  
lūderet Aenēās, quī tamen ōre referret,  
nōn equidem omninō capta ac dēsōta vidēret.”

Dixerat. Ille Jovis monitis immōta tenēbat  
lūmina et obnixus cūram sub corde premēbat.  
Tandem pauca refert: “Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō  
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgīna, negābō

Aeneas speaks back.  
330 The only evidence of Aeneas' feeling.

adeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus approach  
an whether, or\*  
aula, ae f. hall, palace, court  
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
dēserō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake\*  
dēstruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus destroy†  
ēnumerō (1) recount, enumerate†  
equidem indeed, truly, surely\*  
exting(u)ō, ere, inxi, inctus extinguish,  
blot out, destroy, ruin  
frāter, tris m. brother\*  
Gaetūlus, a, um of the Gaetuli, an African  
tribe  
hospes, itis m. (f.) stranger, guest, host  
Iarbās, ae m. African prince, one of Dido's  
suitors  
immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken  
lūdō, ere, si, sus play, sport, mock  
monitum, i n. advice, warning  
moribundus, a, um dying, about to  
die†  
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*

negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)  
numquam never, at no time  
obnitor, i, sus (nixus) struggle†  
omninō altogether, completely, utterly†  
parvulus, a, um tiny, very small, lit-  
tle†  
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty\*  
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,  
crush\*  
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior\*  
pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor  
Pygmalion, ōnis m. wicked brother of  
Dido  
quoniam since, because†  
restō, āre, stiti remain, be left  
saltem at least, at any rate  
subolēs, is f. offspring, progeny, child†  
suscipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus take up, beget,  
bear  
tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
valeō, ēre, ui, itus be strong, be able,  
fare well

Tyrīi: the native chieftains, as well as  
her own people, resented her kindly  
attitude toward Aeneas and the Trojans,  
who were foreigners.

322. et (fāma) quā sīdera adibam:  
was about to gain immortal fame. (ex-  
stincta est) fāma (mea): (my) reputation.

323. moribundam = moritūram.

324. hoc nōmen = hospes. dē con-  
juge = dē nōmine conjugis.

325. Quid (= cūr) moror (mortem  
meam). An (moror): am I waiting? dum  
dēstruat, dūcat: anticipatory subjun-  
ctives with dum; App. 374.

327. suscepta: refers to the Roman  
custom of placing a new-born child on the  
ground before the father, who picked it

up if he wished to acknowledge and rear  
it as his own.

329. referret: characteristic; App.  
389.

331-361. Aeneas replies that he is  
not following his own desires but the  
plans of the gods and the stern decrees  
of fate.

331. Dixerat (Dīdō). monitis: abl.  
of cause with tenēbat.

332. lūmina = oculōs. premēbat = re-  
primēbat: repressing all outward indica-  
tions of his feelings.

333-335. Ego, rēgīna, numquam ne-  
gābō tē prōmeritam (esse dē mē) plūrima  
quae: answer to Dido's sī merui of l. 317.

- 335 prōmeritam, *nec mē meminisse pigēbit* Elissae  
*dum* memor ipse mē, *dum* spiritus hōs regit artūs.  
 Prō rē pauca loquar. *Neque ego hanc abscondere fūrtō*  
*spērāvī (nē finge) fugam, nec conjugis umquam*  
*praetendī taedās aut haec in foedera vēnī.*
- 340 *Mē sī fāta mēis paterentur dūcere vītā*  
*auspiciis et sponte meā compōnere cūrās,*  
*urbem Trojānam primum dulcisque meōrum*  
*relliquiās colerem, Priamī tēcta alta manērent,*  
*et recidīva manū posuissem Pergama victīs.*
- 345 *Sed nunc Italiā magnā Grȳnēus Apollō,*  
*Italiā Lyciae <sup>they order try to reach</sup> jussere capessere sortēs; <sup>fate</sup>*  
*hic amor, haec patria est. Sī tē Karthāginis arcēs*  
*Phoenissam Libycaeque aspectus dētinet urbis,*  
*quae tandem Ausoniā Teucrōs cōnsidere terrā*

abscondō, ere, (di)di, ditus hide  
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member, body\*  
 a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance  
 Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian  
 auspiciū, (i)ī *n.* auspices, authority  
 capessō, ere, ivi, itus (try to) seize, reach  
 colō, ere, ui, cultus cultivate, dwell (in),  
 cherish, honor\*  
 compōnō, ere, posuī, positus put together,  
 settle, calm, quiet  
 cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down),  
 settle\*  
 dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold back, detain  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
 Elissa, ae *f.* Dido†  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictus fashion, pretend,  
 imagine, form, mold  
 foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact  
 fūrtum, i *n.* stealth, theft, trick†  
 Grȳnēus, a, um of Grynium, a town in  
 Asia Minor, with an oracle of Apollo†  
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of  
 North Africa  
 Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a  
 country of North Africa\*

loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk\*  
 Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor  
 meminī, isse remember, recall (*gen.*)  
 memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)\*  
 patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow\*  
 patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*  
 paucus, a, um little, few, scanty\*  
 Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy\*  
 Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician woman, Dido  
 piget, ēre, uit it displeases†  
 praetendō, ere, ī, ntus hold before, use as  
 screen  
 prō instead of, in behalf of, for, before  
 (abl.)\*  
 prōmereor, ēri, itus deserve, render  
 service, merit, earn†  
 recidivus, a, um revived, renewed†  
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide\*  
 re(l)iquiae, ārum *f.* remnants, relics,  
 leavings  
 sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, portion, oracle\*  
 spērō (l) hope (for, to), expect, suppose\*  
 spīritus, ūs *m.* breath, spirit, life, soul†  
 spōns, spontis *f.* wish, will, desire†  
 taeda, ae *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 umquam ever, at any time

valēs = potes. Elissae = Didōnis; *gen.*  
 with meminī; App. 288.

336. *dum* memor (sum) mēi.

337. Prō rē: *in defense of my course.*

338. *nē finge*: poetical negative imper-  
 ative for prose nōli fingere; App. 256, a.

339. praetendī taedās: *held out (the*  
*prospect of) marriage. haec in foedera:*  
*i.e., of marriage.*

340. paterentur: condition contrary to  
 fact; App. 382.

343-344. colerem, manērent, posuis-  
 sem: conclusions contrary to fact; App.  
 382. victis (Teucris): *dat. of reference.*

346. Lyciae sortēs = sortēs Lycii  
 Apollinis.

347. hic: pronounce hicc, making a  
 long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. hic (est)  
 amor, haec patria est: refer to Italy,  
 each pronoun being attracted into the  
 gender of its predicate noun; App. 240, a.

349-350. quae invidia est (tibi) Teu-



*invidia est? Et nōs fās extera quaerere rēgna.* 350  
*Mē patris Anchīsae, quotiēns ūmentibus umbrīs*  
*nox operit terrās, quotiēns astra ignea surgunt,*  
*admonet in somnīs et turbida terret imāgō;*  
*mē puer Ascanius capitisque injūria cārī,*  
*quem rēgnō Hesperiae fraudō et fātālibus arvīs.* 355  
*Nunc etiam interpretes dīvum Jove missus ab ipsō*  
*(testor utrumque caput) celeris mandāta per aurās*  
*dētulit: ipse deum manifestō in lūmine vīdī*  
*intransent mūrōs vōcemque hīs auribus hausī.*  
*Dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlis;*  
*Itāliam nōn sponte sequor."* 360

*Tālia dicentem jamdūdum āversa tuētur*  
*hūc illūc volvēns oculōs tōtumque pererrat*  
*lūminibus tacitis et sic accēnsa profātur:*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle,  
 burn  
 admoneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn†  
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas\*  
 astrum, ī n. star, constellation\*  
 auris, is f. ear\*  
 āvertor, ī, rsus turn away, avert  
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*  
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy\*  
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, re-  
 port  
 dēsino, ere, sivi (ii), situs cease, desist†  
 etiam also, even, besides, furthermore\*  
 exterus, a, um outside, foreign  
 fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine law\*  
 fātālis, e fated, fatal, destined  
 fraudō (1) defraud, deprive, cheat†  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drink (in),  
 drain  
 Hesperia, ae f. Hesperia, Italy, Westland  
 igneus, a, um fiery, flaming†  
 illūc thither, to that place  
 imāgō, inis f. image, likeness, ghost\*  
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle,  
 burn\*

injūria, ae f. wrong, injury, injustice  
 interpretes, etis m. (f.) interpreter, agent  
 intrō (1) enter, penetrate  
 invidia, ae f. grudge, envy, jealousy  
 jamdūdum long since, for a long time  
 mandātum, ī n. command, mandate  
 manifestus, a, um clear, manifest  
 mūrūs, ī m. (city) wall, battlement\*  
 operiō, ire, uī, rtus cover, hide†  
 pererrō (1) wander over, survey  
 profor, āri, ātus speak (out), say  
 querēla, ae f. complaint, lament†  
 quotiēns how often, as often as  
 spōns, spontis f. wish, will, desire  
 tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, se-  
 cret  
 terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify  
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, swear  
 by, testify  
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect,  
 eye\*  
 turbidus, a, um troubled, agitated  
 ūmēns, entis moist, dewy, damp  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),  
 both\*

crōs cōsidere: cōsidere is the subject  
 and invidia the predicate of est.

350. Et: also, too (as well as you).  
 fās (est).

351-353. patris Anchīsae: with imāgō.

354. mē puer Ascanius (movet): (the  
 thought of) my son Ascanius urges me on.  
 capitis cārī = Ascani; obj. gen., the wrong  
 (I am doing) to Ascanius; App. 284.

355. rēgnō, arvis: abl. of separation.

356. interpretes div(ōr)um: Mercury.

357. utrumque = et meum et tuum.

361. sponte (meā).

362-392. Carried away by her furious  
 passion, Dido curses Aeneas and all his  
 race, hurries from his presence, and falls  
 fainting into the arms of her attendants.

362. tuētur: of past action continued  
 into the present, has long been eyeing and  
 is still eyeing; App. 351, 1, b.

363. tōtum (Aenēan) pererrat.

365

"Nec tibi dīva parēns generis nec Dardanus auctor,  
perfide, sed dūris genuit tē cautibus horrēns  
Caucasus Hyrcānaeque admōrunt ūbera tigrēs. <sup>author</sup> <sup>know</sup>

370

Nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad majōra reservō?  
Num flētū ingemuit nostrō? Num lūmina flexit?  
Num lacrimās victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est?  
Quae quibus anteferam? Jam jam nec maxima Jūnō  
nec Sāturnius haec oculīs pater aspicit aequīs.  
Nūquam tūta fidēs. Ejectum litore, egentem  
excēpī et rēgnī dēmēns in parte locāvī.

375

Amīssam classem, sociōs ā morte redūxī  
(heu furiīs incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,  
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Jove missus ab ipsō

admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move to  
aequus, a, um equal, propitious, favor-  
able, just  
amāns, antis m. (f.) lover  
āmittō, ere, misī, missus lose, let go\*  
anteferō, ferre, tuli, lātus set before,  
prefer, choose first†  
Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and  
prophecy\*  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold,  
look (at)\*  
auctor, ōris m. (f.) author, founder, spon-  
sor  
augur, uris m. (f.) augur, prophet†  
Caucasus, i m. rugged mountain range  
between Europe and Asia†  
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag  
Dardanus, i m. early king of Troy  
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, frenzied  
dissimulō (1) pretend otherwise, conceal,  
dissimulate  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, rough\*  
egēns, entis needy, in want, desti-  
tute  
ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast out, eject  
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, take  
fidēs, ei f. faith, trust, confidence\*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move  
flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament  
furiae, ārum f. furies, madness, frenzy  
gignō, ere, genui, genitus bear, produce,  
beget  
horreō, ēre, uī shudder, be rough\*  
Hyrcānus, a, um Hyrcanian, of Hyrcania,  
a wild district on the Caspian Sea†  
incendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, kindle,  
burn\*  
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament  
locō (1) place, locate, establish\*  
Lycius, a, um Lycian, of Lycia, a country  
of Asia Minor  
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*  
num interrog., expecting answer no†  
nūquam nowhere, never  
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious  
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, re-  
store  
reservō (1) reserve, keep back, save†  
Sāturnius, a, um (born) of Saturn, father  
of Jupiter and Juno  
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle\*  
tigris, (id)is m. (f.) tiger, tigress†  
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure\*  
ūber, eris n. udder, breast, fertility

365. tibi (est).

366-367. dūris cautibus: abl. of cause with horrēns or of place where. These are stock comparisons for hard-heartedness in love. admō(vē)runt ūbera (tibi): suckled you.

368. majōra (mala): greater wrongs.

369. flētū: abl. of cause. ingemuit: the third person, since she contemptuously talks about rather than to him. lūmina = oculōs.

370. miseror: with the acc., while

miseror takes the gen. (mē) aman-tem.

371. Quae quibus anteferam: what shall I say (do) first?

372. Sāturnius pater = Juppiter.

373. (in) litore. (eum or tē) egentem: Aeneas had said of himself and his followers that they were omnium egēnōs, I, 599.

376-377. nunc, nunc, nunc: a scornful rejoinder to the nunc, nunc of Aeneas, ll. 345, 356: App. 413.

interpres divum fert horrida jussa per aurās.

Scilicet is superis labor est, ea cūra quiētōs  
solicitat. Neque tēneō neque dicta refellō:

i, sequere Italiam ventis, pete rēgna per undās.

Spērō equidem mediis, si quid pia nūmina possunt,

supplicia hausūrum scopulis et nōmine Didō

saepe vocātūrum. Sequar ātrīs ignibus absēns

et, cum frigida mors animā sēduxerit artus,

omnibus umbra locis aderō. Dabis, improbe, poenās.

Audiam et haec manīs veniet mihi fama sub imōs."

Hīs medium dictis sermōnem abrumpit et aurās

aegra, fugit sēque ex oculis avertit et auferit,

linquens multa metu cūctantem et multa parantem

dicere. Suscipiunt famulae conlapsaque membra

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off  
absēns, entis absent, separated  
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
ertus, ūs m. joint, limb, body\*  
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry  
away, remove  
āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn away, avert\*  
conlābor, i, lāpsus collapse, faint†  
cūctor, āri, ātus delay, hesitate, linger  
equidem indeed, truly, surely\*  
famula, ae f. maid servant  
frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frigid  
hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drink (in),  
drain  
horridus, a, um rough, horrible  
improbus, a, um wicked, cruel  
interpres, etis m. (f.) interpreter, agent

jussum, i n. command, order, behest  
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert\*  
mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety\*  
quiētus, a, um quiet, serene, calm  
refellō, ere, i, contradict, refute†  
saepe often, frequently, again and again\*  
scilicet of course, forsooth, doubtless  
scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
sēducō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw,  
separate†  
sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech  
solicito (1) agitate, disquiet, disturb†  
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose\*  
supplicium, (i) i n. punishment, torture†  
suscipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus take up, rear

378-380. Scornfully sarcastic. is: subj., attracted into the gender of the predicate, App. 240, a. (superōs) quiētōs.

381. i, sequere: imperatives. sequere Italiam: a contemptuous rejoinder to the Italiam sequor of l. 361.

382-384. mediis (in) scopulis: Dido hopes that the ships of Aeneas may be wrecked on reefs in the midst of the sea; App. 246. quid: indef., anything. (tē) hausūrum (esse). Didō: acc., a Greek form; obj. of vocātūrum. ātrīs ignibus: the remorseful thoughts about Dido will pursue Aeneas like furies with their smoking torches. The idea is that, although far away (absēns), she will pursue him with the pangs of a guilty conscience, and after death her ghost will haunt him wherever he may be. Cf. Tasso, Jerusalem Delivered, 16, 59-60:

"Go, cruel man, and take with thee that peace

Thou leav'st with me; I do not bid thee stay.

But I will follow — hope for no release — My angry shade shall haunt thee on thy way;

Like a new Fury I will dog thy path, With torch and serpents armed, to wreak my wrath."

385. animā: the ancients often thought of death as the separation of the body from the soul.

386. umbra: (as) a ghost. Dabis poenās: you shall pay the penalty, suffer punishment.

388-389. aurās (= lūcem) fugit: she rushes indoors.

390. metū: abl. of cause; for fear (of making matters worse).

391-392. Suscipiunt: catch her (as she faints and falls). thalamō: dat. of direction; equivalent to in thalamum. (in) strātis.

- 395 <sup>WHITE</sup> marmoreō referunt thalamo stratisque reponunt. <sup>'N BEDROOM (2ED) LAY AWAY</sup>  
 At pius Aenēas, quamquam lenire dolentem <sup>ALTHOUGH TO CALM GRIEVING</sup>  
 solando cupit et dictis avertere curas, <sup>CONSOLATION WISHES TURN AWAY CARE HAVING BEEN</sup>  
 multa gemens magnōque animum laboractus amore <sup>GROANING SHAKEN BY LOVE</sup>  
 iussa tamen divum exsequitur classemque revisit. <sup>ORDERS IT PERFORMED REVISIT.</sup>  
 Tum verō Teucrī incumbunt et litore celsas <sup>RECLINE UPON BY SHORE HIGH</sup>  
 deducunt totō nāvis. <sup>They LAUNCH LEAFY SWIMS</sup> Natā ūncta carīna, <sup>The ship having been casked</sup>  
 frondentisque ferunt rēmōs et robora silvīs <sup>STRENGTH</sup>  
 400 infabricāta fugae studiō. <sup>ROUGH FLIGHT ZEAL</sup>  
 Migrantis cernās totāque ex urbe ruentis. <sup>DEPARTING YOU DISCERN FALLING</sup>  
 Ac velut ingentem formīcae farris acervum  
 cum populant hiemis memorēs tectōque repōnunt,  
 it nigrum campis agmen praedamque per herbās  
 405 convectant calle angustō: pars grandia trūdunt  
 obnixae frūmenta umerīs, pars agmina cōgunt

acervus, *i m.* heap, pile, mass†  
 angustus, *a, um* narrow, strait  
 avertō, *ere, i, rsus* turn away, avert, di-  
 vert\*  
 callis, *is m.* path, track†  
 carīna, *ae f.* keel; ship, boat\*  
 celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering\*  
 cōgō, *ere, cōēgi, cōactus* bring together,  
 force\*  
 convectō (1) convey, carry along†  
 cupiō, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* desire, wish  
 dēducō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* lead down,  
 launch  
 doleō, *ēre, uī, itus* grieve, suffer, resent  
 exsequor, *i, secūtus* follow out, perform†  
 far, *farris n.* spelt, a kind of grain†  
 formīca, *ae f.* ant†  
 frondēns, *entis* leafy, fronded  
 frūmentum, *i n.* grain, corn†  
 gemō, *ere, uī, itus* groan, lament, roar  
 grandis, *e* large, great, tall, huge†  
 herba, *ae f.* herb(age), grass, plant\*  
 hiems, *emis f.* winter, storm\*  
 incumbō, *ere, cubuī, cubitus* recline upon,  
 urge on (work)  
 infabricātus, *a, um* unfashioned, rough†

iussum, *i n.* command, order, behest  
 labefaciō, *ere, fēci, factus* shake, stagger†  
 lēniō, *ire, ivi (ii), itus* soothe, calm  
 marmoreus, *a, um* (of) marble, white†  
 memor, *oris* mindful, remembering (*gen.*)\*  
 migrō (1) migrate, depart†  
 natō (1) swim, float, overflow  
 niger, *gra, grum* black, dark, dusky\*  
 obnitor, *i, sus (nixus)* push against, strive  
 populō (1) devastate, plunder, ravage  
 praeda, *ae f.* booty, spoils, prey  
 quamquam although, and yet, however  
 repōnō, *ere, posui, pos(i)tus* replace, lay  
 away, store (up), deposit\*  
 revisō, *ere* revisit, see again, return to  
 rōbur, *oris n.* oak, strength\*  
 sōlor, *āri, ātus* console, comfort, solace  
 strātum, *i n.* bed, couch; pavement  
 studium, (i) *i n.* eagerness, desire, zeal  
 tamen nevertheless, however, but\*  
 thalamus, *i m.* bridal chamber, bedroom\*  
 trūdō, *ere, si, sus* push, shove†  
 ūng(u)ō, *ere, ūnxi, ūnctus* anoint, smear,  
 calk†  
 velut(i) as, just as\*  
 verō truly, indeed, but

393-449. Her own efforts proving un-  
 availing, Dido sends her sister Anna,  
 hoping that she may persuade Aeneas;  
 but he is deaf to all entreaties.

393. dolentem (Didōnem).

395. animum: acc. of respect; App.  
311.

397. incumbunt (labōri).

399. frondentis: in their eagerness,

studiō, they do not take time to strip off  
the leaves.

401. cernās: potential subj.; App.  
252.

404-405. it, convectant: the collective  
noun, agmen, may take its verb either  
in the sing. or pl.; App. 236, a.

406. agmina cōgunt: close up the ranks,  
to keep the others from straggling; a  
military term.



castigantque morās, opere omnis sēmita fervet.  
*Quis tibi tum, Dīdō, cernentī tālia sēnsus, 4*  
*quōsve dabās gemitūs, cum litora fervere lātē*  
*prōspicerēs arce ex summā, tōtumque vidērēs 410*  
*miscērī ante oculōs tantīs clāmōribus aequor!*  
*Improbe Amor, quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis!*  
*Īre iterum in lacrimās, iterum temptāre precandō*  
*cōgitur et supplex animōs summittere amōrī,*  
*nē quid inexpertum frūstrā moritūra relinquat. 415*  
*"Anna, vidēs tōtō <sup>TO HAVE HASTENED</sup> properārī litore circum:*  
*undique <sup>FROM ALL SIDES</sup> convēnere; vocat jam carbāsus aurās,*  
*puppibus et laetī nautae imposuere corōnās.*  
*Hunc ego sī potuī tantum <sup>PERFECTLY</sup> spērāre dolōrem,*  
*et perferre, soror, poterō. Miserae hoc tamen ūnum 420*  
*exsequere, Anna, mihī; sōlam nam perfidus ille*  
*tē colere, arcānōs etiam tibi crēdere sēnsūs;*

**Anna**, *ae f.* sister of Dido  
**arcānus**, *a, um* secret, hidden  
**carbasus**, *i f.* linen; sail  
**castigō** (1) reprove, chastise, punish†  
**cōgō**, *ere*, **cōgēi**, **cōactus** bring together,  
*force\**  
**colō**, *ere*, **uī**, **cultus** cultivate, honor\*  
**conveniō**, *ire*, **vēni**, **ventus** come together,  
*convene*  
**corōna**, *ae f.* wreath, garland, crown  
**crēdō**, *ere*, **didi**, **ditus** believe, (in)trust  
*(dat.)\**  
**dolor**, *ōris m.* grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still\*  
**exsequor**, *i*, **secūtus** follow out, perform  
**ferv(e)ō**, **ēre**, (bu)ī boil, be busy  
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
**gemitus**, *ūs m.* groan, roar, lament\*  
**impōnō**, *ere*, **posui**, **positus** place upon,  
*set to (dat.)\**  
**improbus**, *a, um* wicked, cruel, bad  
**inexpertus**, *a, um* untried†  
**iterum** again, anew, a second time\*

**lātē** widely, far and wide  
**misceō**, *ēre*, **uī**, **mixtus** mix, mingle\*  
**mora**, *ae f.* delay, hesitation, loitering\*  
**moriōr**, *i*, **mortuus** die, perish\*  
**mortalis**, *e* mortal, human, earthly\*  
**nauta**, *ae m.* sailor, seaman, mariner  
**opus**, *eris n.* work, toil, task, deed\*  
**perferō**, *ferre*, **tulī**, **lātus** bear, endure  
**perfidus**, *a, um* treacherous, perfidious  
**precor**, **ārī**, **ātus** pray, entreat, invoke\*  
**properō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
**prōspiciō**, *ere*, **spexī**, **spectus** see, be-  
*hold*  
**sēmita**, *ae f.* path  
**sēnsus**, *ūs m.* feeling, perception, sense  
**soror**, *ōris f.* sister\*  
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, suppose\*  
**summittō** (sub), *ere*, **mīsī**, **missus** lower,  
*submit*  
**supplex**, *icis* suppliant, humble\*  
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but\*  
**temptō** (1) try, seek, attempt, test\*  
**undique** on (from) all sides\*

408. **sēnsus** (erat).

409. **fervēre**: as though of the third conjugation, although **fervet**, a second conjugational form, has just occurred, l. 407.

410. **arce**: probably some sort of tall watch tower of Dido's palace.

412. **quid cōgis**: see the note on **quid cōgis**, III, 56.

413. **temptāre** (Aenēan).

415. **nē quid** (indef.) **inexpertum relinquat** (et sic moriātur) **frūstrā**: there would be no object in her dying so long

as there was any possibility of winning back Aeneas.

416. **properārī**: used impersonally.

418. **corōnās**: as a sign of joy at the prospect of immediate departure. On entering or leaving port, sailors often decked their ships with garlands.

420. **perferre poterō**: Dido is deceiving Anna if she has already determined on suicide in case she loses Aeneas.

422. **colere**, **crēdere**: historical infinitives; App. 257.

- sōla virī mollis aditūs et tempora nōrās:*  
 ī, soror, atque hostem <sup>HUMBLE you are opposed to</sup> supplex adfārē superbum:  
 425 *nōn ego cum Danaīs Trojānam excindere gentem*  
 Aulide <sup>swore</sup> iuravi classemve ad Pergama mīsi,  
*nec patris Anchīsae cinēres mānisve revelli-*  
*cūr mea dicta negat durās dēmittere in auris?*  
 430 *Quō rui?* <sup>when</sup> *Extrēmum hoc miserae dei munus amanti:*  
*exspectet facilemque fugam ventōsus ferentis.*  
*Nōn jam coniugium antiquum, quod prōdidit, oro,*  
*nec pulchrō ut Latiō careat rēgnumque relinquat:*  
*tempus ināne petō, requiem spatiumque furōri,*  
*dum mea mē victam doceat fortuna dolēre.*  
 435 *Extrēmam hanc ōrō veniam (miserēre sorōris),*  
*quam mihi cum dederit cumulātam morte remittam."*  
*Tālībūs ōrābat, tālisque miserrima flētūs*  
*fertque refertque soror. Sed nullīs ille movētur*  
*flētibus, aut vōcēs ūllās tractābilis audit;*  
 440 *fāta obstant placidāsque virī deus obstruit aurīs.*

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to\*  
 aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access  
 amāns, antis *m.* (f.) lover  
 Aulis, idis *f.* port in eastern Greece whence  
 the Greek fleet set sail to attack Troy†  
 auris, is *f.* ear\*  
 careō, ēre, uī be without, lack (*abl.*)  
 cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
 coniugium, (i) *n.* wedlock, marriage  
 cumulō (1) heap (up), pile (high)†  
 cūr why? wherefore?  
 dēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus send down,  
 let down, let fall; receive\*  
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform\*  
 doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent  
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 excindō, ere, scidi, scissus destroy,  
 root out  
 ex(s)pectō (1) (a) wait, expect, hope (for)\*  
 extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme\*  
 facilis, e easy, favorable, ready  
 flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, tearful ap-  
 peal, lament  
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion\*  
 hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain\*

jūrō (1) take oath, swear, conspire†  
 Latium, (i) *n.* district in central Italy\*  
 mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
 misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate  
 (*gen.*)  
 mollis, e soft, yielding, gentle, delicate  
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)  
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know\*  
 obstō, āre, stiti, status hinder, oppose  
 obstruō, ere, struxi, strūctus block, stop†  
 ōrō (1) pray (to, for), entreat, beseech\*  
 Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy\*  
 placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), peaceful\*  
 prōdō, ere, didi, ditus betray, hand down  
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,  
 splendid, handsome, illustrious\*  
 remittō, ere, mīsi, missus return, repay  
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) *f.* rest, respite, repose  
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off (up, away)†  
 soror, ōris *f.* sister\*  
 spatium, (i) *n.* space, time, period†  
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 tractābilis, e manageable, gentle  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace

423. tempora: (*suītable*) time (for approach). nō(ve)rās.

429-430. det, expectet: vol. (jussive); App. 254. ventōsus ferentis: favorable winds, a common meaning.

432. pulchrō Latiō: contemptuously; abl. with careat. ut careat, (ut) relinquat: subat. vol. clauses; obj. of ōrō; App. 360.

435. miserēre: imp.

436. cumulātam: participle with quam. referring to the favor (veniam) which she asks for. morte: abl. of time or means. The meaning of Dido's statement is obscure, perhaps intentionally so.

438. fertque refertque (ad Aenēān).

Ac velut annōsō validam cum rōbore quercum  
 Alpīnī Boreae nunc <sup>HERE</sup> hīnc nūnc flātibus <sup>THESE</sup> illīnc  
 ēruere inter sē certant; it stridor, et altae  
 cōnsternunt terram concussō stīpīte frondēs;  
 ipsa haeret scopulis et quantum vertice ad aurās  
 aetheriās, tantum rādīce in Tartara tendit:  
 haud secus adsiduīs hīnc atque hīnc vōcībūs hērōs  
 tunditur, et magnō persentit pectore cūrās;  
 mēns immōta manet, lacrimae volvuntur inānēs.

Tum vērō infēlīx fātīs exterrita Dīdō

mortem ōrat; taedet caelī convexa tuērī.

Quō magis inceptum peragat lūcemque relinquat,  
 vīdit, tūricremīs cum dōna impōneret ārīs,  
 (horrendum <sup>supine</sup> dīcū) laticēs nigrēscere sacrōs  
 fūsaque in obscēnum sē vertere vīna cruōrem.  
 Hoc vīsum nullī, nōn ipsī effāta sorōrī.

adsiduus, a, um constant, unceasing†  
 aetherius, a, um high in the air, airy  
 Alpīnus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps†  
 annōsus, a, um aged, old, full of years†  
 Boreās, ae m. (north) wind  
 certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie  
 concutiō, ere, ussī, ussus shake, shatter  
 cōnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low,  
 strew†

convexum, ī n. hollow, vault, dome  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 effor, āri, ātus speak out, say, tell  
 ēruō, ere, uī, utus uproot, overthrow  
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
 flātus, ūs m. blast, wind, blowing†  
 frōns, ondis f. leaf, foliage, frond\*  
 haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to)  
 (dat.)\*

hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
 horrendus, a, um horrible, dreadful\*  
 illīnc from that side, thence†  
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken  
 impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (dat.)\*  
 inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain\*  
 inceptum, ī n. beginning, undertaking  
 latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine  
 magis more, rather, preferably\*

nigrēscō, ere, grūī turn black, darken†  
 obscēnus, a, um foul, filthy, disgusting  
 ōrō (1) pray (for, to), entreat, beseech\*  
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, finish  
 persentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel  
 quantum how much, how greatly, (as  
 much) as

quercus, ūs f. oak  
 rādīx, icis f. root  
 rōbur, oris n. oak, strength\*  
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 secus otherwise, differently  
 soror, ōris f. sister\*  
 stipes, itis m. stock, trunk, stem  
 stridor, ōris m. noise, creaking, roar  
 taedet, ēre, uī, taesum it wearies†  
 Tartara, ōrum n. the underworld, Hades  
 tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, look at\*  
 tundō, ere, tutūdī, tū(n)sus beat, assail  
 tūricremus, a, um incense-burning†  
 validus, a, um strong, mighty, sturdy  
 velut(i) as, just as\*  
 vērō indeed, truly, but  
 vertex, icis m. top, peak, head, summit\*  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change\*  
 vinum, ī n. wine\*  
 visum, ī n. sight, appearance, vision

441. rōbore: abl. of quality; App. 330.

444. concussō stīpīte: abl. abs.

445. ipsa (quercus).

446. in: toward.

447. hērōs (Aenēās).

450-473. Terrified by omens and dis-

turbed by dreams, Dido determines to die.

451. taedet (eam).

452. Quō peragat, (quō) relinquat: subjunctives of purpose; App. 388.

453. ārīs: dat. with compound.

454-455. An omen of evil.

456. effāta (est Dīdō).

like FAMA  
 his roots  
 go to hell  
 branches  
 to the gods  
 445

*Praetereā fuit in tectis dē marmore templum  
conjugis antiquū, mirō quod honōre colēbat,  
velleribus niveis et fēstā fronde revinctum:*

460

*hinc exaudiri vōcēs et verba vocantis  
vīsa viri, nox cum terrās obscura tenēret,  
sōlaque culminibus fērālī carmine būbō  
saepe queri et longās in flētum dūcere vōcēs;*

465

*multaque praetereā vātum praedicta priōrum  
terribili monitū horrificant. Agit ipse furentem  
in somnīs feras Aenēās, semperque relinquī*

*sōla sibī, semper longam incommitāta vidētur  
īre viam et Tyriōs dēsertā quaerere terrā,*

*Eumenidum velutī dēmēns videt agmina Pentheus  
et sōlem geminum et duplicēs sē ostendere Thēbās,  
aut Agamemnonius scaenīs agitātus Orestēs,  
armātam facibus mātrem et serpentibus atrīs*

470

**Agamemnonius, a, um** of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae

**agitō** (1) drive, hunt, pursue, harass

**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish\*

**būbō, ōnis m. (f.)** owl†

**carmen, inis n.** song, chant, note

**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, honor\*

**culmen, inis n.** roof, top, peak, summit\*

**dēmēns, entis mād, crazy, frenzied**

**dēsērō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake\*

**duplex, icis double, two-fold**

**Eumenides, um f.** Furies, avenging spirits†

**exaudīō, ire, ivi (ii), itus** hear (from)

**fax, facis f.** torch, firebrand\*

**fērālis, e** funereal, of death, fateful†

**ferus, a, um** wild, savage, fierce\*

**fēstus, a, um** festal, festive, holiday

**flētus, ūs m.** weeping, tears, lament

**frōns, ondis f.** leaf, foliage, frond\*

**horrificō** (1) horrify, terrify, alarm†

**incommitātus, a, um** unaccompanied, alone

**marmor, oris n.** marble†

**mīrus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous

**monitus, ūs m.** advice, warning

**niveus, a, um** white, snowy

**obscurus, a, um** dark, dim, gloomy\*

**Orestēs, is (ae) m.** son of Agamemnon and Clytaemnestra; he killed his mother for murdering his father and so was driven mad by the Furies

**ostendō, ere, i, ntus** show, display\*

**Pentheus, ei (eos) m.** legendary king of Thebes, driven mad for opposing the worship of Bacchus; he began to see everything double, and was finally torn to pieces by his mother and aunts†

**praedictum, i n.** prophecy, prediction†

**praetereā** besides, also, in addition\*

**prior, ius** former, ancient, prior\*

**queror, i, questus** complain, (be)wail

**revinciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus** bind, wreath

**saepe** often, frequently, repeatedly\*

**scaena, ae f.** stage, scene, background

**semper** always, ever, repeatedly\*

**serpēns, entis m. (f.)** serpent, snake

**sōl, sōlis m.** sun; day\*

**templum, i n.** temple, shrine, sanctuary\*

**terribilis, e** terrible, terrifying, dire†

**Thēbae, ārum f.** famous Greek city†

**vellus, eris n.** fleece, wool†

**velut(i) as, just as\***

**verbum, i n.** word, speech, talk

457. **templum**: a little chapel in honor of her dead husband, in accordance with a common ancient custom. in **tectis**: probably in the open court within the palace.

460. **hinc** = **ex hōc templō**.

461. **virī** = **conjugis**.

462. **culminibus**: of the palace. **būbō** (**vīsa est**): another evil omen, and so

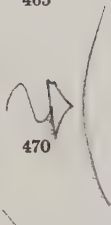
considered by the superstitious even today.

466. in **somnīs**: in her dreams, a not uncommon meaning of **somnus**, especially in the plural.

468. **viam**: cognate acc.; App. 313.

471. **Orestēs**: a favorite subject of Greek and Roman drama; see the notes on III, 331.

Watch  
for this





*cum fugit ultricēque sedent in līmine Dīrae.*

*Ergō ubi concēpit furiās ēvieta dolōre  
dēcrēvitque morī, tempus sēcum ipsa modumque  
exigit, et maestam dictīs adgressa sorōrem  
cōnsilium vultū tegit ac spem fronte serēnat:  
"Invēnī, germāna, viam (grātāre sorōrī)  
quae mihi reddat eum vel eō mē solvat amantem.  
Ōceani fīnem juxtā sōlemque cadentem  
ultimus Aethiopum locus est, ubi maximus Atlās  
axem umerō torquet stēllis ardentibus aptum:  
hinc mihi Massylae gentis mōnstrāta sacerdos,  
Hesperidum templī custōs, epulāsque draconī  
quae dabat et sacrōs servābat in arbore rāmōs,*

473

480

485

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, address  
Aethiops, opis *m.* Ethiopian, African†  
amō (1) love, like, cherish\*  
aptus, a, um fitted, equipped, studded†  
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)\*  
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the  
heavens on his shoulders; high moun-  
tain in Northwest Africa  
axis, is *m.* axle, axis, wheel, vault, sky  
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
concupiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus conceive,  
realize†  
cōnsilium, (i) *n.* plan, advice; council  
custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*  
dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētus decide†  
Dīrae, ārum *f.* Furies  
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
dracō, ōnis *m.* serpent, dragon  
epulae, ārum *f.* feast, banquet, food  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
ēvincō, ere, vici, victus conquer, master  
exigō, ere, ēgi, āctus work out, plan  
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face\*  
furia, ae *f.* fury, madness, frenzy  
germāna, ae *f.* sister  
grātor, āri, ātus congratulate, wish joy  
to (dat.)†  
Hesperides, um *f.* daughters of Atlas  
and Hesperia, keepers of a dragon,

which guarded a magic tree bearing  
golden apples†  
inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come upon  
juxtā close (to), next (*acc.*)\*  
maestus, a, um sad, gloomy, mournful\*  
Massylus, a, um of the Massylians, a  
tribe of North Africa  
modus, ī *m.* manner, method, limit\*  
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct\*  
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
Ōceanus, ī *m.* Ocean  
rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough\*  
reddō, ere, didi, ditus give back, return,  
render, answer\*  
sacerdos, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)\*  
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit, settle\*  
serēnō (1) (make) clear, make serene  
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day\*  
solvo, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay\*  
soror, ōris *f.* sister\*  
spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation\*  
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation  
tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus conceal, cover\*  
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
torqueo, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, sway\*  
ultimus, a, um last, utmost, farthest,  
remotest\*  
ultrix, icis avenging; avenger  
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect\*

473. in limine: to prevent the escape  
of their victim.

474-503. Concealing her plans from  
her sister, Dido builds a great funeral  
pyre in the palace court, pretending that  
she is preparing a magic rite which will  
bring back Aeneas or else free her of her  
love for him.

478. sorōrī: dat. with grātāre, which  
is imp.; App. 297.

479. quae reddat, (quae) solvat: sub-  
junctives of characteristic; App. 389.  
eum, eō: Dido consciously avoids men-  
tioning the name of Aeneas and refers to  
him in the vaguest way possible by using  
the colorless pronoun is rather than one  
more definite, such as ille.

483. hinc = ex hōc locō. mōnstrāta  
(est).

485. et (sic) servābat: by means of  
the dragon, the priestess guards the  
magic tree with its golden apples.

she's dying  
to Amour  
too,  
like  
A.

- spargēns ūmida mella sopōriferumque papāver.  
*Haec sē carminibus prōmittit solvere mentēs*  
*quās velī, ast aliīs dūrās immittere cūrās,*  
 sistere aquam fluvīis et vertere sīdera retrō,  
 490 nocturnōsque movet mānīs: mūgīre vidēbis  
*sub pedibus terram et dēscendere montibus ornōs.*  
 Testor, cāra, deōs et tē, germāna, tuumque  
 dulce caput, magicās invītām accingier artīs.  
*Tū sēcrēta pyram tēctō interiōre sub aurās*  
 495 ērige, et arma virī thalamō quae fixa reliquit  
 impius exuviāsque omnīs lectumque jugālem,  
 quō periī, superimpōnās: abolēre nefandī

aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus destroy, abolish  
 accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīncus surround,  
 gird(le)  
 aqua, ae f. water, waves, flood\*  
 ars, artis f. art, device, artifice, skill\*  
 carmen, inis n. song, poem, incantation,  
 charm  
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*  
 dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
 dūrūs, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, raise  
 exuviae, ārum f. spoils, relics, mementos  
 figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, transfix\*  
 fluvius, (i)ī m. river, stream  
 germāna, ae f. sister  
 immittō, ere, misī, missus send in (to),  
 bring on  
 impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal  
 interior, ius inner, interior  
 invītus, a, um unwilling, reluctant  
 jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial  
 lectus, i m. bed, couch†  
 magicus, a, um magic†

mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
 mel, mellis n. honey  
 mūgiō, ire, ivī (ii), ītus roar, bellow  
 nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutter-  
 able  
 nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal†  
 ornus, i f. ash tree  
 papāver, eris n. poppy, poppy juice  
 pereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus, perish, die  
 prōmittō, ere, misī, missus promise\*  
 pyra, ae f. funeral pile, pyre†  
 retrō backward(s), back  
 sēcrētus, a, um remote, secret, secluded  
 sistō, ere, steti, status stop, stay, set(tle)  
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay\*  
 sopōrifer, era, erum sleep-bringing†  
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
 superimpōnō, ere, posui, positus lay  
 above†  
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify  
 thalamus, i m. bridal chamber, bed-  
 room\*  
 ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, wet  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change\*

486. sopōriferum: used here as a purely ornamental general epithet, as a sleep-producing food would be the last thing in the world for the keeper to give to a dragon which was playing the part of a watchdog.

487-488. *Haec* (sacerdōs). *mentēs* (ā cūrīs) *solvere*, aliīs (mentibus) *cūrās immittere*.

489. *sistere*, *vertere*: some of the stock claims of witches and magicians. *fluvīis*: dat. of reference.

490-491. *nocturnōs mānīs*: ghosts ordinarily appear only at night. *terram mūgīre*, *dēscendere ornōs*: through the magic power of the priestess.

492-493. The better classes of Vergil's

time condemned the use of witchcraft and magic as being unsportsmanlike. (mē) *invītām accingier* = *accingī*: an old form of the passive inf., used as a middle, with *artis* as its obj.; App. 309.

494. (in) *tēctō interiōre sub aurās*: in the courtyard.

495. *virī*: Dido continues to avoid mentioning the name of Aeneas; *virī* here possibly means conjugis, as often.

495-496. *thalamō*, *lectum jugālem*: Dido persists in her contention that Aeneas was actually her husband. See ll. 172 and 324.

497. *superimpōnās*: vol., equivalent to an imp.; App. 254.

*cūncta virī monimenta juvat mōnstratque sacerdōs.*"

*Haec effāta silet, pallor simul occupat ōra.*

*Nōn tamen Anna novīs praetexere fūnera sacrīs* 500

*germānam crēdit, nec tantōs mente furōrēs*

*concipit aut graviōra timet quam morte Sychaei.*

*Ergō jussa parat.*

*At rēgīna pyrā penetrālī in sēde sub aurās*

*ērēctā ingentī taedīs atque ilice sectā,* 505

*intenditque locum sertīs et fronde corōnat*

*fūnereā; super exuviās ēnsemque relictum*

*effigiemque torō locat haud ignāra futūrī.*

*Stant ārae circum et crīnīs effūsa sacerdōs*

*ter centum tonat ōre deōs, Erebumque Chaosque* 510

Anna, *ae f.* sister of Dido

centum hundred\*

Chaos (*nom. and acc.*) *n.* Chaos, (god of) the lower world†

conciṑ, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* conceive, grasp

corōnō (1) crown, wreath, encircle

crēdō, *ere, didi, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)\*

crīnis, *is m.* hair, locks, tresses\*

effigēs, *ēi f.* image, likeness, effigy

effor, *āri, ātus* speak out, say, tell

effundō, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* pour out; discharge

ēnsis, *is m.* sword, knife\*

Erebus, *i m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world

ergō therefore, then, consequently\*

ērigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* erect, raise

exuviae, *ārum f.* spoils, relics, mementoes

frōns, *ondis f.* leaf, foliage, frond\*

fūnereus, *a, um* funereal, of death†

fūnus, *eris n.* funeral, death, disaster\*

furor, *ōris m.* madness, frenzy, passion\*

futūrum, *i n.* the future†

germāna, *ae f.* sister

gravis, *e* heavy, grievous, serious\*

ignārus, *a, um* ignorant, unaware\*

ilex, *icis f.* holm-oak

intendō, *ere, i, ntus* stretch, cover

jussum, *i n.* command, order, behest

juvō, *āre, jūvī, jūtus* help, please\*

locō (1) place, locate, establish\*

monimentum (monumentum), *i n.* reminder, memorial

mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct\*

occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy

pallor, *ōris m.* paleness, pallor†

penetrālīs, *e* inner, innermost

praetexō, *ere, uī, xtus* veil, cover, fringe

pyra, *ae f.* funeral pile, pyre

quam how, than, as\*

sacerdōs, *ōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)\*

secō, *āre, uī, ctus* cut, slice, cleave\*

serta, *ōrum n.* wreath, garland

sileō, *ēre, uī* be silent, hush, be still

Sychaeus, *i m.* deceased husband of

Dido

taeda, *ae f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)

tamen, however, nevertheless, but\*

ter three times, thrice\*

timeō, *ēre, uī* fear, dread, be anxious\*

tonō, *āre, uī, itus* thunder, roar

torus, *i m.* (banqueting) couch, bed\*

498. juvat (mē): the subj. is abolere. mōnstrat (mihī).

500-502. tamen Anna nōn crēdit germānam (Didōnem) praetexere fūnera (his) sacrīs novīs, nec (Anna) tantōs furōrēs (Didōnis) concipit mente (suā). morte: abl. of time.

504-521. Dido offers prayers and sacrifices to the gods of the lower world.

504. penetrālī in sēde = in tēctō interiōre: see l. 494.

507. super: adverb.

508. effigiem (Aenēae): Greek and Roman magicians commonly thus em-

ployed an image of a person or something belonging to him, claiming that thus they could affect the one bewitched and cause him to suffer a fate similar to that experienced by the objects.

509. crīnis: obj. of the middle part. effūsa; App. 309, a.

510-511. deōs: cognate acc.; App. 313. The lower world and its deities were especially invoked in witchcraft and magic rites. ōra: apposition with Hecatēn. tria virginis ōra Diānae: in apposition with and explanatory of tergemina Hecatēn, as the goddess was Luna in heaven, Diana on earth, and

- tergeminamque Hecatēn, tria virginis ōra Diānae.  
 Sparserat et laticēs simulātōs fontis Avernī,  
 falcibus et messae ad lūnam quaeruntur aēnīs  
 pūbentēs herbae nigrī cum lacte venēnī;  
 515 *quaeritur et nāscētis equī dē fronte revulsus*  
*et mātī praeceptus amor.*  
*Ipsa molā manibusque pīs altāria juxtā*  
*ūnum exūta pedem vinclis, in veste recinctā,*  
 testātur moritūra deōs et cōnscia fātī  
 520 *sīdera; tum, sī quod nōn aequō foedere amantīs*  
*cūrae nūmen habet jūstumque memorque, precātur.*  
*Nox erat et placidum carpēbant fessa sopōrem*  
*corpora per terrās, silvaeque et saeva quīerant*

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen  
 aequus, a, um equal, mutual, just  
 altāria, ium *n.* altar  
 amāns, antis *m.* (f.) lover  
 Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Italy,  
 of the lower world\*  
 carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take;  
 enjoy  
 cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate  
 Diāna, ae *f.* goddess of the chase and the  
 moonlight, identified with Hecate  
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, put off  
 falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle†  
 foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact  
 fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, source, spring  
 frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face\*  
 Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world,  
 identified with Diana†  
 herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant\*  
 jūstus, a, um just, true, righteous, fair  
 juxtā next, close (to) (*acc.*)\*  
 lac, lactis *n.* milk, juice, sap  
 latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine  
 lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight\*  
 memor, oris mindful, remembering  
 (*gen.*)\*

metō, ere, messui, messus reap, cut†  
 mola, ae *f.* meal†  
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise\*  
 niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky\*  
 placidus, a, um calm, quiet, kind(ly)\*  
 praeripio, ere, uī, reptus seize first†  
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*  
 pūbēns, entis growing, vigorous†  
 quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus (become) quiet,  
 rest\*  
 recingō, ere, cīnxī, cīntus ungirdle,  
 loosen†  
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (off, up),  
 pluck  
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging\*  
 simulō (l) pretend, simulate, counterfeit  
 sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber  
 spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
 tergeminus, a, um triple, three-fold†  
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify  
 trēs, tria three\*  
 venēnum, ī *n.* poison, drug, venom  
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, fastening, cable\*  
 virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*

Hecate in Hades, and thus was often represented by a three-headed statue. Observe the interlocked order; App. 442.

513. *ad lūnam*: at the right time of the moon, or by moonlight. *aēnīs*: implements of bronze, as belonging to an earlier age, were much used in magical ceremonies.

515-516. *amor revulsus dē fronte nāscētis equī et praeceptus mātī, quaeritur*: the ancients believed that a tumor, called *hippomanēs*, was found on the forehead of a colt at its birth. The mother of the colt bit this off at once; but if she could be forestalled and this tumor secured, it made an unusually

effective love charm (*amor*). *mātī*: dat. with compound.

517. *Ipsa*: Dido; see note on *ipsa*, I, 42.

518. *exūta pedem, recincta*: see the note on I. 509 and the one on III, 370.

520-521. *sī quod (whatever) nūmen. nōn aequō foedere amantīs*: those who love on unequal terms, i.e., those whose love is unrequited.

521. *cūrae habet (sibi)*: *cares for*; *cūrae* is dat. of purpose.

522-523. Dido bewails her fate and strengthens her resolve to die.

523. *quiē(ve)rant*.



*aequora, cum mediō voluntur sīdera lāpsū,  
cum tacet omnis ager, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs,  
quaeque lacūs lātē liquidōs quaeque aspera dūmīs  
rūra tenent, somnō positae sub nocte silentī.* 525

[Lēnibant cūrās et corda oblita labōrum.]

*At nōn infēlix animī Phoenissa neque umquam  
solvitur in somnōs oculisve aut pectore noctem  
accipit: ingeminant cūrae rūrsusque resurgēs  
saevit amor magnōque irārū fluctuat aestū.* 530

*Sic adeō insistit sēcumque ita corde volūtāt:*

*“Ēn, quid agō? Rūrsusne procōs inrīsa priōrēs  
experiar, Nomadumque petam cōnūbia supplex,  
quōs ego sim totiēns jam dēdignāta marītōs?”* 535

*Īliacās igitur classīs atque ultima Teucrum  
jussa sequar? Quiane auxiliō juvat ante levātōs*

adeō to such an extent, so (greatly)  
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide  
ager, grī *m.* field, country, territory\*  
asper, era, erum rough, harsh\*  
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance\*  
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage  
cor, rdīs *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
dēdignor, āri, ātus disdain, scorn†  
dūmus, ī *m.* brier, thicket†  
ēn see! look! behold!  
experior, irī, pertus test, try, learn  
flūctūō (l) fluctuate, wave, surge†  
igitur therefore, accordingly†  
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*  
ingeminō (l) (re)double, repeat, increase  
inrideō, ēre, si, sus laugh (at), mock†  
insistō, ere, stitī begin, continue†  
ita thus, so, in this way  
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest  
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please\*  
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere  
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, slipping, course  
lātē widely, far and wide  
lēniō, ire, ivī (īi), itus soothe, calm  
levō (l) lift, raise, relieve, remove

liquidus, a, um clear, fluid, liquid†  
maritus, ī *m.* husband  
Nomas, adīs *m.* tribe of North Africa  
obliviscor, ī, litus forget (*gen.*)  
pecus, udīs *f.* animal (of the flock)\*  
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (Dido)  
pingō, ere, pinxī, pictus paint, embroider,  
variegate  
prior, ius former, prior, ancient\*  
procus, ī *m.* suitor, lover, wooer†  
quia because  
resurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise  
again  
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
rūs, rūris *n.* country, lands, fields  
saeviō, ire, ivī (īi), itus rage, storm  
silēns, entis silent, still, quiet  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay\*  
supplex, icīs suppliant, humble\*  
taceō, ēre, uī, itus be silent, hush\*  
totiēns so many times, so often  
ultimus, a, um last, uttermost, utmost\*  
umquam ever, at any time  
volucris, is *m. (f.)* bird, fowl  
volūtō (l) revolve, keep turning; ponder

526. quaeque... quaeque: both (those) which... and (those) which. dūmīs: abl. of cause with aspera.

527. (in) somnō. positae: middle, having lain down.

528. Lēnibant = lēniēbant, which cannot be used in hexameter. oblita (erant). labōrum: gen. with oblita; App. 288.

529. animī: loc. or gen. with infēlix. At nōn Phoenissa (Didō cūrās suās lēnibat).

534. quid agō = quid agam: with fut.

or subj. meaning, as in II, 322. See App. 351, 1, c; 348, a. inrīsa: only to be laughed at; proleptic; App. 440.

535. experiar, petam: deliberative questions; App. 348.

536. quōs sim dēdignāta: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. marītōs: (as prospective) husbands.

538-539. Quiane = sequar ea jussa quia. (eōs) juvat (meō) auxiliō (sē esse) ante levātōs et apud (eōs) memorēs stat grātia (meī) facti: bitterly ironical.

- et bene apud memorēs veteris stat grātia factī?  
 540 Quis mē autem, fac velle, sinet ratibusque superbīs  
 invisam accipiet? Nescīs heu, perditā, necdum  
 Lāomedontēae sentis perjūria gentis?  
 Quid tum? Sōla fugā nautās comitābor ovantis?  
 An Tyrīōs omnīque manū stipāta meōrum  
 545 inferar et, quōs Sidoniā vix urbe revelli,  
 rūrsus agam pelagō et ventis dare vēla jubēbō?  
 Quin morere ut merita es, ferrōque āverte dolōrem.  
 Tū lacrimīs ēvicta meis, tū prīma furentem  
 hīs, germāna, malis onerās atque objicis hostī.  
 550 Nōn licuit thalamī expertem sine crimine vītam  
 dēgere mōre ferae, tālis nec tangere cūrās!

an whether, or\*  
 apud among, near, at (acc.)  
 autem moreover, however, but\*  
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert\*  
 bene well, rightly, securely, fully  
 comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,  
 escort, follow\*  
 crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, sin; charge  
 dēgō, ere, ī spend, pass†  
 dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
 ēvincō, ere, vici, victus conquer, over-  
 come  
 expers, rtis free from, without (gen.)†  
 factum, ī n. deed, achievement, act\*  
 fera, ae f. wild beast  
 germāna, ae f. sister  
 grātia, ae f. favor, gratitude, grace†  
 hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear (against);  
 pass. proceed  
 invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious  
 Lāomedontēus, a, um of Laomedon, a  
 notorious perjurer and founder of Troy†  
 licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted\*  
 malum, ī n. evil, misfortune, trouble\*  
 memor, oris mindful, remembering (gen.)\*  
 mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit\*

moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, way\*  
 nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner  
 necdum not yet  
 nesciō, ire, ivi (iī) be ignorant, not know  
 objiciō, ere, jēci, jectus place before,  
 expose (dat.)  
 onerō (1) load, burden, overwhelm  
 ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph  
 perdō, ere, didi, ditus destroy, lose, ruin†  
 perjūrium, (i)ī n. perjury, falsehood†  
 quin but that, why not, nay even\*  
 ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat\*  
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (away, up),  
 pluck  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
 sentiō, ire, sēsi, sēnsus perceive, feel  
 Sidonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a  
 Phoenician city  
 sine without (abl.)\*  
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit\*  
 stipō (1) crowd, attend, throng; stow  
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*  
 tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach\*  
 thalamus, ī m. bridal chamber, bedroom\*  
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

540. fac (mē) velle (sequi jussa Teu-  
 crōrum). fac: suppose; imp.; App. 202.

541. perditā (Dido): addressing herself.

542. Lāomedontēae: see note on III, 248.

543. nautās (Teucrōs) ovantis: cf. l. 418, laeti corōnās, and note.

545-546. inferar (middle) et rūrsus agam (Tyrīōs), quōs vix revelli.

547. Quin morere: nay die, die now. She is addressing herself, as in l. 541. morere: imp.

548. tū prīma: Dido blames Anna for having first encouraged her to yield to her love for Aeneas. (mē) furentem.

549. germāna: voc., though of course Anna is not present.

550. thalamī expertem: without marriage; App. 287. Nōn licuit (mihi): exclamatory; (alas) that I was not permitted!

551. mōre: abl. of manner; like some wild creature, alone in the woods. cūrās (amōris).

*Nōn servāta fidēs cinerī prōmissa Sychaeō.*"

"*Tantōs illa suō rumpēbat pectore questūs:*

*Aenēās celsā in puppī jam certus eundī  
carpēbat somnōs rēbus jam rite parātīs.*

555

*Huic sē forma deī vultū redeuntis eōdem  
obtulit in somnīs rūsusque ita vīsa monēre est,  
omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque  
et crīnīs flāvōs et membra decōra iuventae:*

"*Nāte deā, potes hōc sub cāsū dūcere somnōs,  
nec quae tē circum stent deinde pericula cernīs,  
dēmēns, nec Zephyrōs audīs spirāre secundōs?*

560

*Illa dolōs dirumque nefās in pectore versat  
certa morī, variōsque irārū concitat aestūs.*

*Nōn fugis hinc praeceps, dum praecipitāre potestās?*

565

*Jam mare turbārī trabibus saevāsque vidēbis*

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide  
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take;  
enjoy

celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering\*  
certus, a, um certain, fixed, sure, reliable,  
determined (on) (*gen.*)\*

cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), em-  
bers\*

color, ōris *m.* color, hue, appearance†

concitō (1) excite, arouse, stir (up)†

crinis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses\*

decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly  
deinde then, thereupon, next\*

dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distracted

dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful\*

dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick\*

fidēs, ei *f.* faith, trust, fidelity\*

flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond

forma, ae *f.* shape, beauty, form\*

ita thus, so, in this way

juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood

membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body\*

Mercurius, (i) ī *m.* Mercury, messenger  
of the gods

moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn

moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish\*

nefās *n. indecl.* crime, wickedness, im-  
piety\*

offerō, ferre, tulī, lātus present, offer

peric(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk

potestās, ātis *f.* power, ability, chance

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*

praecipitō (1) throw (fall) headlong, flee

prōmittō, ere, misī, missus promise\*

questus, ūs *m.* complaint, lament†

redeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus return

rite properly, duly, ritually

rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break (off), burst  
(forth), utter\*

rūsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*

saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging\*

secundus, a, um favorable, second\*

similis, e like, similar (*gen., dat.*)\*

spirō (1) breathe (forth), exhale, blow

Sychaeus, a, um of Sychaeus, deceased  
husband of Dido†

trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, ship

turbō (1) confuse, disturb, agitate\*

varius, a, um varied, different, variable\*

versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect\*

Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

552. *Nōn servāta (est mihi) fidēs.*

553. *rumpēbat questūs:* same con-  
struction as *rumpit vōcem*, II, 129.

554-583. Again urged by Mercury to  
hasten his departure, Aeneas arouses  
his sleeping comrades and hurriedly sails  
away by night.

554. *certus eundī* = *certus ire*: de-  
termined to go; *eundī* is objective genitive  
of the gerund from *eō*.

556. *eōdem*: the same, as in II.  
238 ff.

558. *omnia*: acc. of respect. *colōrem-*  
*que*: hypermetric; App. 402.

563. *Illā*: Dido.

564. *morī*: the inf. depends on *certa*;  
App. 265.

565. *praecipitāre (tibi) potestās (est)*.  
*praecipitāre*: dependent on *potestās*;  
App. 264.

566. *trabibus* (*Didōnis*) = *nāvibus*  
*Tyriis*.

conlucēre facēs, jam fervere litora flammīs,  
 sī tē hīs attigerit terrīs Aurōra morantem.

Heia age, rumpe morās. Varium et mutābile semper  
 570 fēmina." Sic fātus noctī sē immiscuit ātrae.

Tum vērō Aenēās subitīs exterritus umbrīs  
 corripit ē somnō corpus sociōsque fatigat  
 praecipitīs: "Vigilāte, virī, et cōsidite trānstrīs;  
 solvite vēla citī. Deus aethere missus ab altō  
 575 fēstināre fugam tortōsque incīdere fūnis  
 ecce iterum instimulat. Sequimur tē, sāncte deōrum,  
 quisquis es, imperiōque iterum pārēmus ovantēs.  
 Adsīs Ō placidusque juvēs et sidera caelō  
 dextra ferās." Dixit vāgināque ēripit ēnsem  
 580 fulmineum strictōque ferit retinācula ferrō.  
 Idem omnīs simul ardor habet, rapiuntque ruuntque;  
 litora dēseruēre, latet sub classibus aequor,

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
 ardor, ōris *m.* ardor, zeal, heat†  
 attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach  
 Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn\*  
 citus, a, um swift, stirred, quick  
 conlucēō, ēre, lūxi shine, gleam, glare†  
 cōsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down),  
 settle, subside\*  
 corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
 ecce see! look! behold!†  
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife\*  
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
 fatigō (1) worry, weary, harass, rouse  
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand\*  
 fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female  
 feriō, ire strike, smite, cut, kill  
 ferv(e)ō, ēre, (bu)ī boil, glow  
 fēstinō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
 fulmineus, a, um flashing, lightning-like†  
 fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cord  
 heia ho! up! come!†  
 immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle (in)  
 (dat.)  
 incidō, ere, ī, sus cut (into)  
 instimulō (1) goad (on), urge, prick†  
 iterum again, anew, a second time\*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please\*  
 lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
 mora, ae *f.* (cause of) delay, hindrance\*  
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*  
 mutābilis, e changeable, fickle†  
 ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph  
 pārēō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)  
 placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), quiet\*  
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
 quisquis, quidquid whoever, whichever,  
 whatever  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), plunder\*  
 retināculum, ī *n.* cable, rope, hawser†  
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break (off), burst  
 (forth), utter\*  
 sāctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered\*  
 semper always, ever, continually\*  
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay\*  
 stringō, ere, strinxī, strictus brush, draw  
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl, sway\*  
 trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing bench, thwart  
 vāgina, ae *f.* sheath, scabbard†  
 varius, a, um varied, different, varia-  
 ble\*  
 vērō truly, indeed, but  
 vigilō (1) awake, wake (up), watch†

567. fervēre: as though of the third conjugation, as in l. 409. flammīs (tuārum nāvium).

568. attigerit: fut. perf.

569-570. Varium et mutābile (est) fēmina: woman is ever fickle and a changeable thing. Observe the gender of the adjectives. noctī: dat. with immiscuit; App. 298.

571. umbrīs: apparition.

575. (nōs) fēstināre, (nōs) incīdere.

576. sāncte deōrum: holy god; part. gen.; App. 286.

578-579. Adsīs, juvēs, ferās: vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. sidera dextra: favorable weather.

581. Idem ardor habet omnīs (Teu- crōs). rapiuntque ruuntque: alliteration; App. 411.

582. dēseruēre: instantaneous perfect.



adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.

*Et jam prīma novō spargēbat lūmine terrās*

Tīthōnī croceum linquēns Aurōra cubile.

585

*Rēgīna ē speculis ut prīmam albēscere lūcem*

*vidit et aequātis classem prōcēdere vēlīs,*

*litoraue et vacuōs sēnsit sine rēmige portūs,*

*terque quaterque manū pectus percussa decōrum*

*flāventisque abscissa comās* "Prō *Juppiter!* *ibit*

590

*hic," ait "et nostrīs inlūserit advena rēgnīs?*

*Nōn arma expedient tōtāque ex urbe sequentur,*

*dēripiēntque ratēs aliū nāvālibus? Ite,*

*ferte citi flammās, date tēla, impellite rēmōs!*

*Quid loquor? Aut ubi sum? Quae mentem insānia mūtāt?* 595

*Infēlix Dīdō, nunc tē facta impia tangunt?*

*Tum decuit, cum scēptra dabās. En dextra fidēsque,*

(LOYALTY)

abscindō, ere, scidi, scissus tear, cut off

adnitor, i, sus (nixus) lean (on), strive

advena, ae m. foreigner, adventurer†

aequō (1) equal(ize), level, square\*

albēscō, ere become white†

Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of) dawn\*

caerula, ōrum n. the (blue) sea

citus, a, um quick, excited, swift

coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses\*

croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy

cubile, is n. couch, bed

decet, ēre, uit be becoming, be fitting†

decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious,

seemly

dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, tear

down

ēn see! look! behold!

expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus disentangle, pre-

pare, bring forth

factum, i n. deed, achievement, act\*

fidēs, ei f. faith, trust, fidelity\*

flāvēns, entis yellow, tawny, blond†

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive on, impel

impius, a, um wicked, disloyal

inlūdō, ere, sī, sus mock, flout (dat.)

insānia, ae f. madness, frenzy, folly

linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, forsake\*

loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk\*

mūtō (ex)change, transform, alter\*

nāvālia, ium n. shipyard, arsenal†

percutiō, ere, cussi, cussus strike, shatter

prō oh! ah!

prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance

quater four times

ratēs, is f. raft, ship, boat\*

rēmex, igis m. rower, oarsman, crew†

scēptrum, i n. scepter, (royal) power

sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus feel, perceive

sine without (abl.)\*

spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*

specula, ae f. watch tower, lookout

spūma, ae f. foam, froth, spray

tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach\*

ter three times, thrice\*

Tithōnus, i m. husband of Aurora†

torqueō, ēre, rsi, rsus twist, whirl, sway\*

vacuus, a, um empty, free, deserted

verrō, ere, i, rsus sweep (over), scour

584-629. Dido's frenzy increases as from her palace window she sees the Trojan fleet depart. She again calls down curses on Aeneas and his followers and prays that some avenger may rise from her ashes to punish such perfidy.

586. ē speculis = arce ex summā: l. 410.

587. aequātis vēlīs: the god has sent a favorable breeze blowing directly from behind.

588. vacuōs: predicate to both litora and portūs; App. 238, 239.

589-591. pectus, comās: objects of the middle participles percussa and abscissa; App. 309, a. terque quaterque: three times, yea even four times, as in I, 94. flāventis comās: blondes were much admired and preferred by the Greeks and Romans. inlūserit: fut. perf. advena: used scornfully, like English adventurer.

591. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.

592. Nōn(ne) (Tyrii) expedient arma.

596. facta impia: her unfaithfulness to the memory of Sychaeus.

597. Tum decuit (tua facta impia

	<i>quem sēcum patriōs ajunt portāre penātis,</i>	
	<i>quem subiisse umerīs cōfectum aetāte parentem!</i>	
600	<i>Nōn potuī abreptum divellere corpus et undīs</i>	TEAR IN PIECES
	<i>spargere? Nōn sociōs, nōn ipsum absumere ferro</i>	SCATTER DESTROY BY SWORD
	<i>Ascanium patriūque epulandum pōnere mēnsis?</i>	
	<i>Vērūm anceps pugnae fuerat fortūna. — Fuisset:</i>	DOUBTFUL BATTLE I DID FEAR
605	<i>quem metui moritūra? Facēs in castra tulissem</i>	FORCES
	<i>implēssemque forōs flammīs nātumque patremque</i>	
	<i>cum genere exstinxem, mēmet super ipsa dedissem.</i>	
	<i>Sōl, quī terrārum flammīs opera omnia lūstrās,</i>	
	<i>tūque hārum interpres cūrārū et cōnschia Jūnō,</i>	
	<i>nocturnisque Hecatē triviis ululāta per urbēs</i>	
610	<i>et Dirae ultricēs et dī morientis Elissae</i>	
	<i>accipite haec, meritūque malis advertite nūmen</i>	ACCEPT EARNED HEED DIVINITY
	<i>et nostrās audite precēs</i>	PRAYERS
	<i>Sī tangere portūs</i>	TOUCH PORT
	<i>abripio, ere, ui, reptus</i>	tear away, seize
	<i>absumō, ere, mpsi, mptus</i>	destroy, consume
	<i>advertō, ere, i, rsus</i>	turn to, heed
	<i>aetās, ātis f.</i>	age, life, time (of life)
	<i>anceps, cipitis</i>	doubtful, double
	<i>Ascanius, (i)ī m.</i>	son of Aeneas*
	<i>castra, ōrum n.</i>	camp, encampment*
	<i>cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus</i>	accomplish; wear out
	<i>cōncius, a, um</i>	conscious; confederate
	<i>Dirae, ārum f.</i>	Furies
	<i>divellō, ere, (vuls)i, vulsus</i>	tear in pieces
	<i>Elissa, ae f.</i>	Dido, queen of Carthage
	<i>epulor, āri, ātus</i>	feast (upon), banquet
	<i>extinguō, ere, inxi, inctus</i>	destroy, blot out, extinguish
	<i>fax, facis f.</i>	torch, firebrand*
	<i>forus, i m.</i>	deck, gangway†
	<i>Hecatē, ēs f.</i>	goddess of the lower world, identified with Diana
	<i>impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus</i>	fill, satisfy*
	<i>tangere tē), cum scēpra dabās (Aenēae).</i>	
	<i>dextra fidēsque (ejus).</i>	

*tangere tē), cum scēpra dabās (Aenēae).*  
*dextra fidēsque (ejus).*

598. *ajunt*: pronounce *ajunt*, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b.

599. *quem (ajunt).*

600. *Nōn* = *nōnne*, as often.

602. *epulandum*: a form of revenge mentioned more than once in ancient legend, the best-known instance being the famous feast where the sons of Thyestes were slain and served up to their father in a banquet.

603. *fuerat*: mixed condition; App. 382, d. *Fuisset*: concessive; (*suppose*) it had been (*so*); App. 384.

604-606. *quem metui moritūra*: whom had I to fear, since I was going to die any-

way? *castra*: where the Trojan ships were beached and protected. *tulissem, implē(vi)ssem, exstinx(iss)em, dedissem*: I could have hurled, etc.; the subjunctives are best taken as potential; App. 252. *cum genere (Teucrōrum)*. *mē dedissem* (in ignis).

609. *Hecatē triviis*: Diana of the Crossroads, where she was worshipped at night by weird cries, howls of dogs, and various magical ceremonies.

612-629. The curse of a dying person was supposed to be especially potent and almost sure to be fulfilled by the gods. Vergil represents this curse as being later fulfilled literally in the life and fortunes of Aeneas.

UNSPEAKABLE

infandum caput ac ferris adnāre necesse est,  
et sic fāta Jovis poscunt, hic terminus haeret.

at bellō audācis populi vexatus et armis,  
finibus extorris, complexū avulsus Iūli

auxilium implōret videatque indigna suorum  
fūnera; nec, cum sē sub lēgēs pācis iniquae  
trādiderit, rēgnō aut optatā lūce fruatur,  
sed cadat ante diem mediāque inhumātus harēnā.

Haec precor, hanc vōcem extrēmam cum sanguine fundō.

Tum vōs, Ō Tyriū, stirpem et genus omne futurum  
exercēte odiīs, cinerīque haec mittite nostrō

mūnera. Nullus amor populis nec foedera suntō. ←

Exoriāre aliquis nostrīs ex ossibus ultor

quī face Dardaniōs ferrōque sequāre colōnōs,  
nunc, ōlim, quōcumque dabunt sē tempore virēs.

adnō (1) swim (float) to (dat.)

aliquis, qua, quid some (one, thing)\*

audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant†

auxilium, (i)ī n. aid, help, assistance\*

avellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*

cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers\*

colōnus, ī m. settler, colonist, farmer

complexus, ūs m. embrace, grasp

Dardan(i)us, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itus work, harass\*

exorior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up

extorris, e outside, foreign†

extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme\*

fax, facis f. torch, fire(brand)\*

foedus, eris n. treaty, agreement, truce

fruor, ī, frūctus (fruitus) enjoy (abl.)

fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*

haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to),  
stand fixed\*

harēna, ae f. sand, beach\*

implōrō (1) implore, beseech, entreat†

indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved

infandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable

inhumātus, a, um unburied

inīquus, a, um unequal, unjust, unfair

Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

lēx, lēgis f. law, condition, compact

necesse indecl. necessary; necessity

odium, (i)ī n. hatred, enmity, grudge

ōlim once, formerly, at some time\*

optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)\*

os, ossis n. bone\*

pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, agreement

populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*

poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask\*

precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque

whoever, whichever, whatever\*

stirps, pis m. (f.) stock, lineage, stem, race

terminus, ī m. boundary, goal, end†

trādō, ere, didi, ditus deliver, transfer†

ultor, ōris m. avenger

vexō (1) agitate, vex, harass, annoy†

613. infandum caput = Aeneas.

615-620. It was customary even up to recent times to open at random some revered book such as the Bible or the Aeneid, and take the first passage meeting the eye as a prophecy of the future. It is said that Charles I of England once tried this and opened the Aeneid at this fateful passage; Intro. 9.

615. audācis populi: this people proved to be the Rutulians.

616. finibus: abl. of separation.

617-620. implōret, videat, fruatur, cadat: volitives or optatives; App. 254, 253. lūce (vitae). (sit) inhumātus.

621 ff. Dido's second prophecy and prayer are also framed in such a way as to find fulfillment in the Second Punic War, when in the "eternal enmity" between Rome and Carthage, Hannibal arose as Dido's avenger (ultor) and brought the Roman Republic to the verge of ruin.

624. populis: Rome and Carthage; dat. of possession.

625. Exoriāre (= exoriāris): vol.; App. 254: rise some avenger!

626. quī sequāre (= sequāris): rel. clause of purpose or of characteristic; App. 388, 389.

627. dabunt sē = dabuntur.

*Litora litoribus contrāria, fluctibus undās  
imprecor, arma armīs: pugnent ipsique nepōtēsque."*

630

*Haec ait, et partis animum versābat in omnīs,  
invisam quaerēns quam primum abrumpere lūcem.  
Tum breviter Barcēn nūtricem adfāta Sychaei,  
namque suam patriā antiquā cinis āter habēbat:*

635

*"Annam, cāra mihī nūtrix, hūc siste sorōrem:*

*dic corpus properet fluviālī spargere lymphā,  
et pecudēs sēcum et mōnstrāta piācula dūcat.*

*Sic veniat, tūque ipsa piā tege tempora vittā.*

*Sacra Jovī Stygiō, quae rīte incepta parāvī,*

*perficere est animus fīnemque impōnere cūrīs*

640

*Dardaniq̄ue rogum capitis permittere flammae."*

*Sic ait. Illa gradum studiō celebrābat anilī.*

abrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break off

adfor, āri, ātus address, accost\*

anilis, e of an old woman, aged†

Anna, ae f. sister of Dido

Barcē, ēs f. nurse of Dido's deceased  
husband Sychaeus†

breviter briefly, shortly, concisely

cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*

celebrō (1) frequent; repeat; hasten

cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead); tomb\*

contrārius, a, um opposite, opposed

Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*

fluviālīs, e of a stream, flowing†

gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride

impōnō, ere, posui, positus place (on, to)

(dat.)\*

imprecor, āri, ātus imprecate, invoke†

incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake\*

invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious

lymp̄ha, ae f. water

mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct\*

nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant\*

nūtrix, icis f. nurse

patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*

pecus, udīs f. animal (of the flock)\*

perficiō, ere, fēci, factus finish, complete

permittō, ere, misi, missus permit, com-  
mit

piāculum, ī n. expiation, expiatory offer-  
ing†

properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed

pugnō (1) fight, battle, oppose, contend

quam how, than, as; quam primum as  
soon as possible\*

rīte duly, properly, ritually

rogus, ī m. funeral pyre†

sistō, ere, stēti, status stand, station,  
stop

soror, ōris f. sister\*

spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*

studium, (i) n. desire, zeal, eagerness

Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a  
river in Hades\*

Sychaeus, ī m. deceased husband of Dido

tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect\*

tempus, oris n. temple, brow

versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band\*

628-629. contrāria: with litora, undās  
and arma. pugnent: vol. or opt.; App.  
254, 253. The verse is hypermetric; App.  
402.

630-705. That nothing may interrupt  
her plan Dido sends away her husband's  
old nurse Barce and kills herself with  
Aeneas's sword on top of the pyre.

631. quam primum: as soon as possible.

633. suam (nūtricem). suam irregu-  
larly referring to Dido rather than to the  
subject of the sentence; App. 248, a.

635. dic: imp.; App. 202. (ut) pro-

peret: subj. in indir. disc. for imp.;  
App. 390. spargere: as a ceremony of  
purification.

637. Sic: with the animals for sac-  
rifice, after she has duly purified herself.  
Dido's real object is to delay the return  
of the nurse and her sister so that she  
may kill herself in the meantime.

638. Jovī Stygiō = Pluto.

639. est animus (mihī) = volō; App.  
264. Dido is concealing her real purpose.

640. Dardaniī capitis = Aeneas, whose  
name Dido avoids mentioning.

641. Illa: Barce, the nurse.



*At trepida et coeptis immānibus effera Dīdō*  
*sanguineam volvens aciem, maculisque trementis*  
*interfusa genas et pallida morte futura,*  
*interiōra domūs inrumpit limina et altōs* 645  
*cōnscendit furibunda gradūs ensemque recludit*  
*Dardanium, nōn hōs quaesitum mūnus in ūsūs.*  
*Hīc, postquam Īliacās vestīs nōtumque cubile*  
*cōnspexit, paulum lacrimis et mente morāta*  
*incubuitque torō dixitque novissima verba:* 650  
*“Dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,*  
*accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolve cūrīs.*  
*Vixi et quem dederat cursum fortūna perēgi,*  
*et nunc magna meī sub terrās ibit imāgō.*  
*Urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī,* 655  
*ulta virum poenās inimicō ā frātre recēpi,*  
*fēlix, heu nimium fēlix, sī litora tantum*

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge, line, eye(sight)\*  
 coeptum, ī *n.* undertaking, beginning  
 cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus mount, climb  
 cōnspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, be-  
 hold  
 cubile, is *n.* couch, bed  
 Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*  
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
 efferus, a, um wild, savage, mad†  
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife\*  
 exsolvo, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free†  
 exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, relics, mementos  
 fēlix, icis happy, fortunate, blessed\*  
 frāter, tris *m.* brother\*  
 furibundus, a, um wild, frenzied†  
 gena, ae *f.* cheek†  
 gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride  
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*  
 imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, image, ghost, soul,  
 form\*  
 incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus recline on  
 (dat.)  
 inimicus, a, um hostile, enemy, unfriendly  
 inrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break into†  
 interfundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour among,  
 suffuse†

interior, ius inner, interior  
 macula, ae *f.* spot, splotch, stain†  
 moror, āri, ātus delay, hesitate, hin-  
 der\*  
 nimium too (much), excessively†  
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
 pallidus, a, um pale, wan, pallid  
 paulum (a) little, slightly, somewhat  
 peragō, ere, ēgi, āctus accomplish, fin-  
 ish  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 praeclārus, a, um very renowned†  
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, take\*  
 recludō, ere, si, sus open, unsheathe  
 sanguineus, a, um bloody, bloodshot  
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow\*  
 statuō, ere, ui, ūtus set (up), found  
 tantum so much, only, merely  
 torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed\*  
 tremō, ere, ui tremble, quiver, shake\*  
 trepidus, a, um trembling, excited  
 ulciscor, ī, ultus avenge, punish  
 ūsus, ūs *m.* use, service, employment  
 verbum, ī *n.* word, speech, talk  
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive

642. coeptis: abl. of cause.

643. aciem (oculōrum).

644. genās: acc. of respect; App. 311.

645. interiōra limina: of the inner court, where the pyre had been erected.

647. quaesitum: Dido had apparently begged the sword of Aeneas, who had given it to her as a keepsake.

648. Īliacās vestis: some more presents from Aeneas; cf. I, 648 ff.

649. lacrimis et mente: in tearful recollection; abl. of manner; App. 328.

650. novissima: last.

652. exsolve (per mortem).

657. fēlix (fuissem): implied conclusion of a condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

- numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carinae."  
*Dixit, et ōs impressa torō* "Moriēmur inultae,  
 660 *sed moriāmur*" *ait.* "Sic, sic juvat ire sub umbrās.  
*Hauriat hunc oculīs ignem crūdēlis ab altō*  
*Dardanus, et nostrae sēcum ferat ōmina mortis."*  
*Dixerat, atque illam media inter tālia ferrō*  
 665 *conlāpsam aspiciunt comitēs, ēnsemque cruōre*  
*spūmantem sparsāsque manūs. It clāmōr ad alta*  
*ātria: concussam bacchātur Fāma per urbem.* ↙  
*Lāmentis gemitūque et fēmineō ululātū*  
*tēcta fremunt, resonat magnīs plangōribus aethēr,*  
*nōn aliter quam sī immissis ruat hostibus omnis*  
 670 *Karthāgō aut antiqua Tyros, flammaeque furentēs*  
*culmina perque hominum volvantur perque deōrum.*  
*Audiit exanimis trepidōque exterrita cursū*  
*unguibus ōra soror foedāns et pectora pugnīs*  
*per mediōs ruit, ac morientem nōmine clāmat:*

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
 aliter otherwise, differently\*  
 altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven  
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold\*  
 ātrium, (i)ī *n.* hall, court, atrium  
 bacchor, āri, ātus rave, rush wildly  
 carina, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat\*  
 clāmō (1) shriek, cry (out), call (on)†  
 concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter  
 conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall in a heap, faint  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody\*  
 cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore  
 culmen, inis *n.* roof, peak, summit, top\*  
 Dardan(i)us, (i)ī *m.* Trojan, Dardanian\*  
 Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*  
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife\*  
 exanimis, e breathless, lifeless†  
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
 fēmineus, a, um feminine, of women  
 foedō (1) pollute, defile, disfigure  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus shout, roar, groan\*  
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament\*  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, drink  
 (in)  
 homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, human, mortal\*

hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 immittō, ere, misi, missus let in, send in  
 imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus press  
 (upon), imprint†  
 inultus, a, um unavenged, unpunished  
 iuvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please\*  
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* city of North Africa  
 lāmenta, ōrum *n.* lamentation, shriek†  
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 numquam never, at no time  
 ōmen, inis *n.* portent, omen, sign\*  
 plangor, ōris *m.* wailing, beating (of  
 breast)  
 pugnus, ī *m.* fist†  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 resonō (1) (re)sound, roar  
 soror, ōris *f.* sister\*  
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
 tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach\*  
 torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed\*  
 trepidus, a, um trembling, excited  
 Tyrus (os), ī *f.* city of Phoenicia, birth-  
 place of Dido  
 ululātus, ūs *m.* wail, shriek, howl, shout†  
 unguis, is *m.* nail, claw†

659. ōs: obj. of the middle part. im-  
 pressa; a farewell kiss.

660. Sic, sic: possibly Dido stabs  
 herself with each sic.

661-662. Hauriat, ferat: volitives;  
 App. 254. Dardanus = Aeneas. ōmina:  
 which will bring him continual sorrow  
 and misfortune.

663. ferrō: abl. of means.

667. fēmineō ululātū: hiatus; App. 399.

669. quam sī ruat: conditional clause  
 of comparison; App. 383.

670. Tyrōs: nom. sing., a Greek form;  
 App. 67.

671. culmina (tēctōrum Didōnis).

672. cursū: abl. of manner.

673. ōra foedāns et pectora: as an ex-  
 pression of grief.



### A ROMAN PERISTYLE

The court of a Roman house in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York,  
around which the antiquities of the Museum are exhibited



*Alinari, Rome*

### THE DEATH OF DIDO

*Guercino*

Until comparatively recently artists painted classical or biblical characters in contemporary costume. Dido is here garbed like a seventeenth-century Italian lady.



"Hoc illud, germāna, fuit? Mē fraude petēbās?  
 Hoc rogos iste mihi, hoc ignēs āraeque parābant?  
 Quid primum dēserta querar? Comitemne sorōrem  
 sprēvistī moriēns? Eadem mē ad fāta vocāssēs:  
 īdem ambās ferrō dolor atque eadem hōra tulisset.  
 Hīs etiam strūxī manībūs patriōsque vocāvī  
 vōce deōs, sic tē ut positā, crūdēlis, abessem?  
 Extīnxtī tē mēque, soror, populumque patrēsque  
 Sīdoniōs urbemque tuam. Date, vulnera lymphīs  
 abluam et, extrēmūs sī quis super hālītus errat,  
 ōre legam." Sic fāta gradūs ēvāserat altōs,  
 sēmianimemque sinū germānam amplexa fovēbat  
 cum gemitū atque ātrōs siccābat veste cruōrēs.  
 Illa gravīs oculōs cōnāta attollere rūrsus  
 dēficit; infixum strīdit sub pectore vulnus.  
 Ter sēsē attollēns cubitōque adnixa levāvit,  
 ter revolūta torō est oculīsque errantibus altō

abluō, ere, uī, ūtus wash (off)  
 absum, esse, āfui be away, be distant  
 adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean on, struggle  
 ambō, ae, ō both  
 amplexor, ī, plexus embrace, enfold\*  
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
 cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor  
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, hardhearted\*  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 cubitum, ī n. elbow, arm†  
 dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint  
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake\*  
 dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
 etiam also, even\*  
 ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go forth (from), pass over  
 extinguiō, ere, inxī, inctus blot out,  
 destroy, extinguish  
 extrēmūs, a, um, final, last, extreme\*  
 foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus fondle, cherish  
 fraus, fraudis f. deceit, guile, fraud†  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament\*  
 germāna, ae f. sister  
 gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride  
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
 hālītus, ūs m. breath, exhalation†

hōra, ae f. hour, season, time  
 īnfigō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, fasten  
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather, catch\*  
 levō (1) lift, lighten, raise, relieve  
 lymphā, ae f. water  
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish\*  
 populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*  
 queror, ī, questus complain, (be)wail  
 revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve  
 rogos, ī m. funeral pyre  
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
 sēmianimis, e half-dead, dying†  
 siccō (1) dry, stanch†  
 Sīdonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a city  
 of Phoenicia  
 sinus, ūs m. fold; bosom; bay; hollow\*  
 soror, ōris f. sister\*  
 spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus scorn, reject  
 strid(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, gurgle, rustle  
 struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, plan  
 ter three times, thrice\*  
 torus, ī m. (banqueting, funeral) couch, bed\*  
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*

675-676. Hoc, hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable. Hoc (fuit) illud (quod parābās): was this (your own death) that which you were planning?

677. Quid querar: deliberative question; App. 348.

678-679. vocā(vi)ssēs, tulisset: best taken as optatives; App. 253.

680. strūxī (tuum rogam).

681. ut abessem: purpose; App. 359.

682. Extīnxt(is)ū.

684. (ut) abluam: an obj. clause. super: adv.

685. ōre legam: it was a Roman custom to catch with a kiss the last breath of a dying kinsman or friend. gradūs: of the funeral pyre.

686. sēmianimem: pronounce sēm-janimem here; App. 401.

689. strīdit: from the gurgling blood.

690. cubitō: abl. of means with adnitor.

691. (in) torō.

*quaesivit caelo lucem ingemuitque repertā.*

- Tum Jūnō omnipotēns longum miserāta dolōrem  
difficilisque obitūs Īrim dēmisit Olympō*  
695 *quae luctantem animam nexōsque resolveret artūs.*  
*Nam quia nec fātō meritā nec morte peribat,*  
*sed misera ante diem subitōque accēnsa furōre,*  
*nōndum illī flāvum Prōserpina vertice crīnem*  
*abstulerat Stygiōque caput damnāverat Orcō.*  
700 *Ergō Īris croceīs per caelum rōscida pennīs*  
*mille trahēns variōs adversō sōle colorēs*  
*dēvolat et suprā caput astitit. "Hunc ego Dītī*  
*sacrum iussa ferō tēque istō corpore solvō."*  
*Sic ait et dextrā crīnem secat: omnis et ūnā*  
705 *dilāpsus calor atque in ventōs vīta recessit.*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn  
adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member\*  
a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (ready, by)\*  
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus take away  
calor, ōris m. heat, warmth, glow  
color, ōris m. color, hue, tint  
crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses\*  
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy  
damnō (1) condemn, sentence, doom, de-  
vote†  
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down, let  
go, drop, lower\*  
dēvolō (1) fly down†  
difficilis, e difficult, hard, painful†  
dilābor, ī, lāpsus glide away, depart†  
Dis, Dītis m. Pluto, god of the lower  
world†  
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond  
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion\*  
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament  
Īris, (id)is f. goddess of the rainbow,  
messenger of Juno†  
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
luctor, āri, ātus struggle, wrestle  
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand\*  
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*

nectō, ere, nexuī, nexus weave, fasten,  
bind  
nōndum not yet  
obitus, ūs m. death, downfall, ruin†  
Olympus, ī m. high Greek mountain,  
home of the gods; heaven  
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent  
Orcus, ī m. (god of) the lower world,  
Hades  
penna, ae f. wing, feather  
pereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus perish, die  
Prōserpina, ae f. Pluto's queen, goddess  
of the lower world†  
quia because  
recedō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, with-  
draw  
reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus find  
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free  
rōscidus, a, um dewy†  
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*  
sōl, sōlis m. sun; day\*  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay\*  
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a  
river in Hades\*  
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
suprā above, over (acc.)  
ūnā together, at the same time  
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse\*  
vertex, icis m. top, peak, head, sum-  
mit\*

692. repertā (lūce): abl. abs.

695. nexōs (animae). resolveret: rel.  
clause of purpose; App. 388. For the  
thought see the note on l. 385.

696. fātō: natural death was supposed  
to be occasioned by a decree of the  
gods.

698. illī: dat. of reference. Prōser-  
pina: she was supposed to cut a lock  
from the head of the dying, as a sort

of offering to the gods of the lower  
world.

701. The rainbow. adversō sōle: abl.  
abs. denoting cause.

702-703. Hunc (crīnem). ego iussa  
(ā Jūnōne). istō = tuō, as often.

705. in ventōs: the soul was identified  
with the breath, anima, spiritus (cf. the  
English word spirit) and at death van-  
ished into the air.

## BOOK V

INTEREĀ *medium Aenēās jam classe tenēbat*  
certus iter *fluctūsque ātrōs Aquilōne secābat*  
*moenia respiciēns, quae jam infēlicis Elissae*  
*conlūcent flammīs. Quae tantum accenderit ignem*  
*causa latet; dūri magnō sed amōre dolōrēs* 5  
*pollūtō, nōtumque furēns quid fēmina possit,*  
*trīste per augurium Teucrōrum pectora dūcunt.*  
*Ut pelagus tenuēre ratēs nec jam amplius ūlla*  
*occurrit tellūs, maria undique et undique caelum,*  
*ollī caeruleus suprā caput astitiū imber* 10

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle  
amplius more, farther  
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind  
a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (ready, by)\*  
augurium, (i)ī *n.* portent, prophecy  
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)\*  
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
certus, a, um certain, determined, fixed\*  
conlūceō, ēre shine (brightly), glare  
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido  
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female  
imber, bris *m.* rain, cloud, storm, flood

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
nōtum, ī, *n.* knowledge  
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
meet (*dat.*)  
polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, outrage, pro-  
fane  
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
at\*  
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*  
suprā above, over (*acc.*)  
undique on (from) all sides\*

1-41. On sailing from Carthage for Italy, Aeneas is driven by a tempest to Drepanum in Sicily, where Anchises had died the previous year. King Acastes again hospitably receives the Trojans.

The fifth book of the *Aeneid* forms a restful episode in the midst of the stirring action of the poem. This episode, with its somewhat tedious account of the games, does not serve any useful purpose in advancing the plot of the poem and may be omitted with less loss than any other of the six books. The fifth book, however, gives the poet a fine opportunity to develop the character of his hero as pious Aenēās, as here displayed in his deep devotion to the memory of his dead father. This is the best justification for the episode. It also furnishes an inter-

esting picture of an ancient athletic contest.

1. Intereā: while Dido carries out her plan to commit suicide.

2. Aquilōne: with ātrōs: specific (north wind) for the general (wind), and really inapplicable here since the Trojans were sailing north. As often, the poet sacrifices logical consistency for the sake of vividness or metrical convenience.

4-5. Quae causa accenderit: indir. quest.; App. 349.

5-7. dūri magnō sed amōre, etc.: but the harsh sufferings when a great love is profaned and the knowledge (of) what a love-crazed woman may do lead the hearts of the Trojans through gloomy forebodings. amōre pollūtō: from Dido's point of view; abl. abs. quid possit: indir.

- noctem hiememque ferēns et inhorruit unda tenebrīs.*  
*Ipse gubernātor puppī Palinūrus ab altā:*  
*"Heu quianam tantī cīnxērunt aethera nimbī?*  
*Quidve, pater Neptūne, parās?"* Sic deinde locūtus  
 15 colligere arma jubet validisque incumbere rēmīs,  
 obliquatque sinūs in ventum ac tālia fatur:  
*"Magnanime Aenēā, nōn, sī mihi Iuppiter auctor*  
*spondeat, hōc spērem Italiam contingere caelō.*  
*Mūtātī trānsversa fremunt et vespere ab ātrō*  
 20 cōnsurgunt ventī, atque in nūbem cōgitur aēr.  
*Nec nōs obnīti contrā nec tendere tantum*  
*sufficimus.* Superat quoniam Fortūna, sequāmur,  
*quōque vocat vertāmus iter.* Nec litora longē  
 fīda reor frāterna Erycis portūsque Sicānōs,  
 25 sī modo rīte memor servāta remētiōra astra."

aēr, aeris *m.* air, mist, fog  
 aethēr, eris, *acc.* era, *m.* upper air, sky\*  
 astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation\*  
 auctor, ōris *m.* founder, originator,  
 sponsor  
 cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround,  
 gird(le)\*  
 cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus force (together)\*  
 colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather  
 cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†  
 contīgō, ere, tigī, tāctus, touch, reach\*  
 contrā against, opposite (*acc.*); in op-  
 position\*  
 deinde then, thence, thereupon\*  
 Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-  
 brother of Aeneas; settled in Sicily  
 fidus, a, um faithful, safe, trustworthy\*  
 frāternus, a, um fraternal, of a brother  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, groan, shout\*  
 gubernātor, ōris *m.* pilot, helmsman  
 hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm\*  
 incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline on,  
 bend to (*dat.*)  
 inhorrēscō, ere, horruī grow rough, shud-  
 der  
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
 longē (from) afar, far off\*  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak; say, tell, talk\*  
 magnanimus, a, um noble, great-souled

memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)\*  
 modo only, (just) now  
 mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
 Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea\*  
 nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm\*  
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog\*  
 obliquō (1) turn sideways, slope, slant†  
 obnītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean against,  
 struggle  
 Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot\*  
 quianam why? wherefore?†  
 quoniam since, because  
 remētiōra, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, retrav-  
 erse  
 reor, rērī, ratus suppose, think, reckon  
 rīte duly, correctly, ritually  
 Sicānus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily†  
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold (of sails); bosom, bay\*  
 spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose\*  
 spondeō, ēre, spōpondī, spōnsus promise,  
 vouch for†  
 sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus suffice, be able  
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive\*  
 tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom  
 trānsversa *adv.* crosswise, athwart (one's  
 course)†  
 validus, a, um strong, powerful, stout  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change\*  
 vesper, eris (erī) *m.* evening (star), west

quest., in apposition with nōtum; App.  
 349. pectora = animōs, mentis.

15-16. arma (nāvium) = vēla, etc. si-  
 nūs (vēlōrum).

17. auctor: (as) guarantor.

18. spondeat: less vivid fut. condition;  
 App. 381. spērem: conclusion.

20. cōgitur aēr: the ancients thought

that clouds were composed of condensed  
 air.

23. litora (abesse): indir. statement  
 with reor; App. 263.

24. frāterna = frātris tui.

25. servāta astra: previously observed,  
 i.e., on their voyage from Sicily to Car-  
 thage.



*Tum pius Aenēās: "Equidem sic poscere ventōs  
jamdūdum et frūstrā cernō tē tendere contrā.*

*Fiecte viam vēlīs. An sit mihi grātor ūlla,  
quōve magis fessās optem dēmittere nāvīs,  
quam quae Dardanium tellūs mihi servat Acestēn* 30  
*et patris Anchīsae gremiō complectitur ossa?"*

*Haec ubi dicta, petunt portūs et vēla secundi  
intendunt Zephyrī; fertur cita gurgite classis,  
et tandem laetī nōtae advertuntur harēnae.*

*At procul ex celsō mirātus vertice montis* 35  
*adventum sociāsque ratēs occurrit Acestēs,  
horridus in jaculīs et pelle Libystidis ursae,  
Trōia Crīnīsō conceptum flūmine māter  
quem genuit. Veterum nōn immemor ille parentum*  
*grātātur reducēs et gazā laetus agrestī* 40

adventus, ūs *m.* arrival, approach†  
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (*dat.*)  
agrestis, e of the fields, rustic  
an whether, or\*  
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering\*  
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited  
complector, ī, plexus embrace, hold  
concipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus conceive  
contrā opposite, against, in opposition\*  
Crīnīsus, ī *m.* river (god) of Sicily†  
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*  
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down,  
land, lower, drop\*  
equidem indeed, surely, truly\*  
flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, turn  
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood\*  
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
gaza, ae *f.* treasure, wealth  
gignō, ere, genui, genitus beget, bear  
grātor, āri, ātus congratulate, wish joy  
to  
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome  
gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom; lap; embrace  
gurgis, itis *m.* whirlpool, deep sea\*  
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach\*  
horridus, a, um rough, bristling

immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful  
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain  
jaculum, ī *n.* spear, dart  
jamdūdum long since, for some time  
Libystis, idis *f.* Libyan, of Libya, a  
country of North Africa†  
magis more, rather, preferably\*  
miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire\*  
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
meet  
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)\*  
os, ossis *n.* bone\*  
pellis, is *f.* skin, hide, pelt  
poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, re-  
quire, ask (for, to)\*  
quam how, than, as\*  
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
reducō, ucis led back, returned, restored  
secundus, a, um second, favorable\*  
socius, a, um allied, fellow, friendly  
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
ursa, ae *f.* she-bear†  
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, head\*  
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*  
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

27. cernō: of a past action continuing into the present; *I (have long perceived and still) perceive*; App. 351, 1, b.

28. vēlīs: abl. of means. ūlla (tellūs) sit: potential; App. 252.

29. quō optem: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. quō = ad quam.

30. quam (than) tellūs quae.

33. gurgite = undā: abl. of route; App. 338.

36. occurrit (illis).

37. pelle: commonly worn in earlier times.

38. māter: Egesta or Segesta. Crīnīsō flūmine: abl. of source; App. 323.

39. Veterum parentum: his ancestry, which makes him related to Aeneas and the other Trojans.

40. (Teucrōs) reducēs.

excipit, *ac fessōs opibus sōlātur amicis.*

Postera *cum primō* stēllās Oriente fugārat  
clāra diēs, sociōs in coetum lītore ab omnī  
advocat *Aenēās tumulique ex aggere fātur:*

45

"Dardanidae magnī, genus altō ā sanguine dīvum,  
annuus exāctis complētur mēnsibus orbis,  
*ex quō* reliquiās divīnīque ossa parentis  
concidimus *terrā* maestāsque sacrāvimus ārās.

50

*Jamque diēs, nisi fallor, adest, quem semper acerbum,*  
semper honōrātum (*sic dī voluistis*) habēbō.

*Hunc ego* Gaetūlis *agerem sī* Syrtibus exsul,  
Argolicōve marī dēprēnsus *et urbe* Mycēnae,  
annua vōta tamen sollemnisque ordine pompās  
exsequer *strueremque suis* altāria dōnīs.

acerbus, a, um bitter, grievous, harsh  
advocō (1) call (to), summon, invite†  
agger, eris *m.* mound, embankment  
altāria, ium *n.* altar  
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
annuus, a, um annual, yearly†  
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek  
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, throng, troop  
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete  
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, found;  
hide, bury\*  
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Dardanus, Trojan  
dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, catch†  
divīnus, a, um divine, sacred, sainted  
exāctus, a, um completed; learned  
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, reply  
exsequor, ī, secūtus fulfil, perform  
exsul, ulis *m. (f.)* exile, refugee  
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, trick\*  
fugō (1) rout, put to flight, disperse  
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, a North African tribe  
honōrō (1) honor, respect, venerate, revere†  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*

mēnsis, is *m.* month  
Mycēnae (a), ārum (ae), *f.* city of Greece, capital of Agamemnon  
nisi, nī if not, unless\*  
ops, opis *f.* help, wealth, resources, power\*  
orbis, is *m.* circle, circuit, orb(it), earth\*  
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, succession\*  
Oriēns, entis *m.* East, dawn  
os, ossis *n.* bone\*  
pompa, ae *f.* (solemn) procession, festival†  
posterus, a, um later, following  
re(1)liquiae, ārum *f.* remains, remnant, leavings, relics  
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*  
semper always, ever, continually\*  
sollemnis, e solemn, annual, stated  
sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace  
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation  
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus heap up, build  
Syrtis, is *f.* sand-banks off the northern coast of Africa  
tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb\*  
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

42-71. Announcement of the funeral games in honor of Anchises, and the prizes for the various contests.

42. fugā(ve)rat.

44. tumulique ex aggere: as Roman generals in Vergil's day addressed their troops from a mound thrown up for the occasion.

45. genus (ortum): a race sprung.

46. exāctis mēnsibus: abl. abs.

47. ex quō (tempore): since. divīni:

Anchises was thought of as having acquired sanctity after death.

50. sic dī voluistis: one of the many examples of the unquestioning faith of the hero and his pious resignation to the will of the gods who do all things well.

51-52. Hunc (diem). (in) Gaetūlis. (in) Syrtibus. (in) mari, (in) urbe. Mycēnae: appositional gen.; App. 281; this word usually has the plural form.

54. exsequer strueremque: conclusions of implied condition contrary to

<i>Nunc ultrō ad cinerēs ipsiūs et ossa parentis</i>	55
<i>haud equidem sine mente, reor, sine nūmine dānum</i>	
<i>adsumus et portūs delātī intrāmus amīcōs.</i>	
<i>Ergō agite et laetum cūctī celebrēmus honōrem:</i>	
<i>poscāmus ventōs, atque haec mē sacra quotannīs</i>	
<i>urbe velīt positā templīs sibi ferre dicātīs.</i>	60
<i>Bīna boum vōbīs Trojā generātus Acestēs</i>	
<i>dat numerō capita in nāvīs; adhibēte penātīs</i>	
<i>et patriōs epulīs et quōs colit hospes Acestēs.</i>	
<i>Praetereā, sī nōna diem mortālībūs alnum</i>	
<i>Aurōra extulerit radiisque retēxerit orbem,</i>	65
<i>p̄ma citae Teucrīs pōnam certāmina classīs;</i>	
<i>quīque pedum cursū valet, et quī vīribūs audāx</i>	
<i>aut jaculō incēdit melior levībūsque sagittīs,</i>	

adhībeō, ēre, uī, itus invite (to), employ†  
almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing  
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant  
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of the) dawn\*  
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos  
bōs, bovis m. (f.) bull, ox, cow  
celebrō (1) throng, solemnize, celebrate  
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle\*  
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited  
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor\*  
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (down, to land), convey  
dicō (1) consecrate, dedicate, proclaim  
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring out, raise\*  
epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast  
equidem indeed, truly, surely\*  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
generātus, a, um born, descended†  
hospes, itis m. host, guest, stranger

incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride  
intrō (1) enter, penetrate  
jaculum, ī n. dart, spear  
levis, e light, swift, slight, quick  
melior, ius better, superior, preferable  
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly\*  
nōnus, a, um ninth†  
numerus, ī m. number, multitude\*  
orbis, is m. circle, circuit, orb(it), earth\*  
os, ossis n. bone\*  
penātēs, ium m. household gods\*  
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask\*  
praetereā besides, in addition, furthermore\*  
quotannīs annually, yearly†  
radius, (i) ī m. spoke, rod, ray  
reor, rērī, ratus suppose, think, reckon  
retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus unveil, reveal  
sagitta, ae f. arrow, shaft, bolt  
sine without (abl.)\*  
templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
ultrō further, voluntarily\*  
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able

fact; App. 382. suīs: irregularly referring to altāria instead of to the subject; App. 248, a.

56. *haud sine mente* (divōrum): i.e., by the will of the gods.

57. *adsumus et intrāmus*: hysteron proteron; App. 429. *intrāmus*: historical present; App. 351, 1, a.

59-60. *poscāmus ventōs*: vol.; App. 254; they are to pray to the manes of Anchises for favorable winds when they get ready to leave. *atque* (ut pater Anchisēs) *velīt, urbe positā, mē ferre* quotannīs *haec sacra templīs dicātīs sibi*: the reference is to the parentālia, an annual Roman festival in honor of the

dead. The *ut*-clause is object of *poscāmus*; App. 360.

61. *Trojā*: abl. of origin with *generātus*; App. 323.

62-63. *numerō*: abl. of respect with *bīna*; App. 325. *adhibēte epulīs et patriōs penātīs et* (*penātīs*) *quōs Acestēs colit*.

64-65. *nōna Aurōra*: referring to the Roman ceremonies of the novemdiāle, a festival celebrated in honor of the deceased nine days after the funeral.

66. *prima*: first of all.

67. *quī*: their antecedents are indicated in *cūctī* of l. 70.

68. *incēdit*: more picturesque than *est*.

- seu crūdō fīdit pugnam committere caestū,  
 70 *cūcti adsint meritaēque exspectent praemia palmae.*  
*Ōre favēte omnēs et cingite tempora rāmīs.*  
*Sic fātus vēlat mātēnā tempora myrtō.*  
*Hoc Helymus facit, hoc aevi mātūrus Acestēs,*  
*hoc puer Ascanius, sequitur quōs cētera pūbēs.*  
 75 *Ille ē conciliō multis cum milibus ibat*  
*ad tumulum magnā mediū comitante catervā.*  
*Hic duo rīte merō libāns carchēsia Bacchō*  
*fundit humī, duo lacte novō, duo sanguine sacro,*  
*purpureōsque jactit flōrēs ac tālia fātur:*  
 80 *“Salvē, sācte parēs, iterum salvēte, recepti*  
*nēquiquam cinerēs animaeque umbraeque paternae.*

**aevum**, *i n.* age, time, life, eternity  
**Ascanius**, (*i i m.* son of Aeneas\*)  
**Bacchus**, *i m.* (god of) wine  
**caestus**, *ūs m.* boxing-glove, gauntlet,  
 made of a thong of raw-hide with balls  
 of lead or iron fastened in; wrapped  
 around the hands of the boxer†  
**carchesium** (*i i n.* cup, goblet†  
**caterva**, *ae f.* troop, band, crowd  
**ceterus**, *a, um* rest, remaining, other(s)  
**cingō**, *ere, cīxi, cinctus* surround,  
 gird(le)\*  
**cinis, eris m.** ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
**comitō** (*1*) accompany, attend, escort  
**committō**, *ere, misi, missus* join, begin  
**concilium**, (*i i n.* assembly, council  
**crūdus**, *a, um* raw, rough, untanned†  
**duo**, *ae, o* two\*  
**expectō** (*1*) expect, await, tarry, hope  
 (for)\*  
**faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautus** favor, befriend  
**fidō, ere, fīsus sum** trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)\*  
**flōs, flōris m.** flower, blossom, bloom  
**Helymus**, *i m.* Sicilian leader†  
**humus**, *i f.* ground, soil, earth\*  
**iterum** again, anew, a second time\*  
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl

**lac, lactis n.** milk  
**libō** (*1*) pour (as a libation), offer  
**māternus**, *a, um* of a mother, maternal  
**mātūrus**, *a, um* mature, grown, ripe, ad-  
 vanced†  
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit\*  
**merus**, *a, um* pure, unmixed  
**mille**; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand\*  
**myrtus**, (*i ūs f.* myrtle, a tree sacred to  
 Venus and to the dead  
**nēquiquam** in vain, uselessly\*  
**palma**, *ae f.* palm, hand, prize\*  
**paternus**, *a, um* of one's father, paternal  
**praemium**, (*i i n.* reward, prize\*  
**pūbēs**, *is f.* youth, (group of) young  
 men\*  
**pugna**, *ae f.* battle, fight, combat, fray\*  
**purpureus**, *a, um* purple, crimson  
**rāmus**, *i m.* branch, limb, bough\*  
**recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus** get back, save\*  
**rīte** duly, correctly, ritually  
**salvēō, ēre** be well, hail, farewell†  
**sāctus**, *a, um* sacred, blessed, sainted\*  
**sive, seu** or (if), whether  
**tempus, oris n.** temple, brow  
**tumulus**, *i m.* mound, tomb\*  
**vēlō** (*1*) veil, cover, wrap, wreath

69. **caestū**: the ancient boxing gloves, made of untanned (crūdō) hide and often weighted with lead and iron, were quite brutal and sometimes deadly. Boxers were often disfigured and sometimes killed in such contests.

71. **Ōre favēte**: *favor with your speech*, i.e., avoid all words of bad omen. The surest way to do this is to refrain from speaking; hence **ōre** (or **linguis**) **favēre**, *preserve a holy silence*, is a common formula used by priests at the beginning of religious rites.

72-103. The propitiatory sacrifice to the manes of Anchises.

73. **Hoc, hoc**: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. **aevi**: gen. of respect with **mātūrus**; App. 294.

75. **Ille**: **Aenēas**.

76. **tumulum** (**Anchisae**).

77. **Bacchō**: abl. of quality; App. 330.

78. **sanguine**: of a sacrificial victim.

80-81. **nēquiquam**: since he did not live to reach Italy, the Promised Land. **cinerēs recepti** (**ex Trojā**).



*Nōn licuit finīs Italōs fātāliaque arva  
nec tēcum Ausonium, quicumque est, quaerere Thybrim."*

*Dixerat haec, adytīs cum lūbricus anguis ab imīs*

*septem ingēns gŷrōs, septēna volūmina trāxit* 85

*amplexus placidē tumulum lāpsusque per ārās,*

*caeruleae cui terga notae maculōsus et aurō*

*squāmam incendēbat fulgor, ceu nūbibus arcus*

*mille jacit variōs adversō sōle colōrēs.*

*Obstipuit visū Aenēās. Ille agmine longō*

*tandem inter paterās et lēvia pōcula serpēns*

*libāvitque dapēs rūrsusque innoxius imō*

*successit tumulō et dēpāsta altāria liquit.*

*Hōc magis inceptōs genitōrī instaurat honōrēs,*

90

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing\*  
**adytum, i n.** inner shrine, sanctuary  
**altāria, ium n.** altar  
**amplector, i, plexus** embrace, encircle\*  
**anguis, is m.** snake, serpent  
**arcus, ūs m.** (rain)bow, arc, arch\*  
**Ausonium, a, um** Ausonian, Italian  
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)\*  
**ceu** as, just as, as if  
**color, ōris m.** color, hue, tint  
**daps, dapis f.** (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*  
**dēpascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus** feed (on)  
**fātālis, e** fatal, fated, destined  
**fulgor, ōris m.** gleam, glitter, sheen†  
**gŷrus, i m.** fold, circle, coil†  
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, brighten\*  
**incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus** begin, undertake\*  
**innoxius, a, um** harmless, innocent  
**instaurō (1)** renew, refresh, repeat  
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy  
**iaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl  
**lēvis, e** smooth, polished, slippery†  
**libō (1)** pour (out), offer, sip, taste  
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted\*  
**linquō, ere, liqui, lictus** leave, forsake\*

**lūbricus, a, um** smooth, slippery, slimy  
**maculōsus, a, um** spotted, mottled, flecked  
**magis** more, rather, preferably\*  
**mille: pl. milia, ium n.** thousand\*  
**nota, ae f.** mark, sign, spot  
**nūbēs, is f.** cloud, mist, fog\*  
**obstipescō, ere, pui** be amazed\*  
**patera, ae f.** (libation) bowl, cup  
**placidē** gently, calmly, peacefully†  
**pōculum, i n.** (drinking) cup, goblet  
**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**  
whoever, whichever, whatever\*  
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)\*  
**septem** seven  
**septēni, ae, a** seven (each) by seven†  
**serpō, ere, psī, ptus** creep, crawl  
**sōl, sōlis m.** sun; day\*  
**squāma, ae f.** scale(s)†  
**succēdō, ere, cessi, cessus** approach (dat.)  
**tergum, i n.** back, hide\*  
**Thybris, (id)is m.** Tiber, a river of Italy  
**tumulus, i m.** mound, tomb\*  
**varius, a, um** varied, different, diverse\*  
**visus, ūs m.** sight, appearance, vision  
**volūmen, inis n.** fold, coil, roll

82. **licuit (mihi quaerere tēcum) finīs Italōs.**

83. **quicumque est:** *whatever the Tiber may be;* intentional insistence of the poet that his hero does not know the land to which he is going but is obediently following the will of the gods. There is perhaps also an additional touch of Roman pride in the implied contrast of the present fame of the Tiber and of Rome.

84. **adytis:** the tomb served as a shrine. **anguis:** the protecting genius, or guardian spirit (divinity) of a place or of a dead person, was often represented as a serpent, and the worship of serpents was very common in antiquity.

85. **septem septēna:** seven, like three, was a sacred, mystical number, supposed to be of great potency in bringing good fortune.

87-88. **cui terga caeruleae notae (incendēbant) et (cui) squāmam fulgor maculōsus aurō incendēbat:** *whose back blue spots brightened, etc., cui* being dat. of reference. **nūbibus:** abl. of place where; App. 319, b.

90. **Ille:** *the serpent;* the pronoun being used, as often, to indicate a change of subject.

94. **instaurat:** because interrupted by the appearance of the serpent. **hōc:** *all the more;* abl. of degree of difference:

- 95      incertus geniumne loci famulumne parentis  
esse putet; caedit binās dē mōre bidentis  
totque suēs, totidem nigrantis terga iuvencoēs,  
vīnaque fundēbat pateris animamque vocābat  
*Acherisae magni mānisque Acheronte remissōs.*
- 100    *Nec nōn et socii, quae cuique est cōpia, laeti*  
*dōna ferunt, onerant ārās mactantque iuvencoēs;*  
ordine aēna locant aliī fūsi<sup>que</sup> per herbam  
subjiciunt veribus prūnās et viscera torrent.
- 105    Expectāta diēs aderat nōnamque serēnā  
Aurōram Phaethontis equi jam lūce vehēbant,  
fāmaque finitimōs et clārī nōmen Acestae  
excierat: laetō complērant litora coetū

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (river of) Hades†  
aēnum, ī *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)  
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn\*  
bidēns, entis *f.* sheep (with two teeth)  
binī, ae, a two (each), by twos  
caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down),  
kill  
clārus, a, um clear, bright, famous\*  
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, gathering  
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete  
cōpia, ae, *f.* abundance, supply; *pl.* forces  
excio, ire, ivi (ii), itus arouse, stir (up)  
ex(s)pectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)\*  
famulus, ī *m.* servant, attendant  
finitimus, ī *m.* neighbor; adjoining people†  
genius, (i)ī *m.* guardian spirit, genius†  
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant\*  
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful  
iuvencoēs, ī *m.* bullock, ox, bull\*  
locō, (1) establish, place, locate, set up\*  
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor  
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead,  
Hades\*  
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner\*

nigrans, antis black, dusky, dark  
nōnus, a, um ninth  
onerō (1) load, burden, overwhelm  
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, line\*  
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl, cup  
Phaethōn, ontis *m.* the sun (god)†  
prūna, ae *f.* live coal, ember†  
putō (1) think, suppose, consider, reckon  
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)  
each, every(one)  
remittō, ere, misi, missus send back, let  
go  
serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene  
subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under  
(*dat.*)  
sūs, suis *m.* (f.) hog, pig, swine  
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide\*  
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus roast, boil, parch  
tot so many\*  
totidem an equal number of, as many  
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey\*  
verū, ūs *n.* spit, spike, broach  
vinum, ī *n.* wine\*  
viscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

App. 335; refers to the favorable omen of the snake's appearance.

95. famulum: thus indicating that Anchises had been admitted among the divinities and had been assigned his own personal attendant. -ne...-ne: whether... or.

96-97. putet: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. This sacrifice is called the *suovetaurilia* (sūs, ovis, taurus). nigrantis: black victims were offered to the shades of the dead and to the gods of the lower world. terga: acc. of respect; App. 311.

99. mānis (ex) Acheronte remissōs:

the souls of the dead could thus be temporarily released from the lower world and partake of the funeral offerings made at their graves. See III, 303.

100. Nec nōn: likewise. quae cuique est cōpia: each according to his means.

102. fūsi: middle; App. 309.

104-113. The gathering of the contestants and spectators.

105. lūce: abl. of manner with vehēbat or of quality with Aurōram; App. 328, 330.

106. fāma: the report of the games and the prizes.

- vīsūrī Aeneadās, pars et certāre parātī.*  
*Mūnera principiō ante oculōs circōque locantur*  
*in mediō, sacrī tripodes viridēsque corōnae* 110  
*et palmae pretium victōribus, armaque et ostrō*  
*perfūsae vestēs, argentī aurique talentum;*  
*et tuba commissōs mediō canit aggere lūdōs.*
- Prīma parēs ineunt gravibus certāmina rēmīs*  
*quattuor ex omnī dēlēctae classe carīnae.* 115  
*Vēlōcem Mnēstheus agit ācī rēmige Pristim,*  
*mox Italus Mnēstheus, genus ā quō nōmine Memmī,*  
*ingentemque Gyās ingentī mōle Chimaeram,*  
*urbis opus, triplici pūbēs quam Dardana versū*  
*impellunt, ternō cōnsurgunt ordine rēmī;* 120  
*Sergestusque, domus tenet ā quō Sergia nōmen,*

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce\*  
**Aeneadās, ae m.** descendant (follower) of Aeneas  
**agger, eris m.** mound, embankment  
**argentum i n.** silver  
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, proclaim, prophesy\*  
**carīna, ae f.** keel; ship, boat\*  
**certāmen, inis n.** contest, struggle\*  
**certō (1)** contend, compete, strive, vie  
**Chimaera, ae f.** fire-breathing monster; name of a ship†  
**circus, i m.** circle, race-course†  
**committō, ere, misī, missus** join, begin  
**cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus** rise  
**corōna, ae f.** wreath, garland, crown  
**Dardanus, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan  
**dēligo, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select  
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious\*  
**Gyās, ae m.** Trojan leader  
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive, impel  
**ineō, ire, ii (īvi), itus** enter†  
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy  
**locō (1)** establish, place, locate, set up\*  
**lūdus, i m.** game, sport, play, contest  
**Memmius, (i)ī m.** noted Roman family†  
**Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m.** Trojan leader\*

**mōlēs, is f.** (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*  
**mox** soon, presently  
**opus, eris n.** work, toil, product, deed\*  
**ordō, inis m.** order, row, rank, bank\*  
**ostrum, i n.** purple, scarlet, crimson  
**palma, ae f.** palm, hand, prize\*  
**pār, paris** equal, well-matched, similar\*  
**perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** drench, dye  
**pretium, (i)ī n.** reward, price, prize  
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place  
**Pristis, is f.** Sea Monster; name of a ship†  
**pūbēs, is f.** youth, (group of) young men\*  
**quattuor** four  
**rēmex, igis m.** rower, oarsman, crew  
**Sergestus, i m.** Trojan leader\*  
**Sergius, a, um** of Sergius, a famous Roman family†  
**talentum, i n.** talent, worth about \$1200†  
**ternus, a, um** three (each), triple  
**triplex, icis** triple, threefold†  
**tripūs, odis m.** tripod  
**tuba, ae f.** trumpet  
**vēlōx, ōcis** swift, speedy, fleet  
**versus, ūs m.** row, tier, line, verse  
**vestis, is f.** cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous\*

108. *vīsūrī*: *desiring to see*; a common meaning of the fut. part.; App. 274.  
*certāre*: inf. with *parātī*, which is pl. with the collective noun *pars*; App. 265.

114-285. Cloanthus wins the boat race.

114. *rēmīs*: abl. of quality.

116. *Pristim*: *Sea Monster*; each of these ships probably bore a figurehead representing its name. *ācī rēmige*: collective.

117. *ā quō nōmine (est) genus Memmī*: the great Roman families loved to trace their ancestry back to Troy. This passage of the *Aeneid* is a good example of the fanciful etymologizing often resorted to in order to establish the connection.

118. *Gyās (agit)*.

119. *urbis opus = urbis instar: the size of a city. triplici versū (rēmōrum)*: a trireme.

121-123. *Sergestus, Sergia, Cloanthus, Cluenti*: more fanciful etymologies. *The*

Centauro invehitur magnā, Scyllāque Cloanthus  
caeruleā, genus unde tibi, Rōmāne Cluentī.

- 125 *Est procul in pelagō saxum spūmantia contrā  
litora, quod tumidis summersum tunditur ōlim  
flūctibus hibernī condunt ubi sidera Cōri;  
tranquillō silet immōtāque attollitur undā  
campus et apricis statio grātissima mergis.  
Hīc viridem Aenēās frondenti ex ilice mētam*
- 130 *cōstituit signum nautis pater, unde revertī  
scirent et longōs ubi circumflectere cursūs.  
Tum loca sorte legunt ipsique in puppibus aurō  
ductōrēs longē effulgent ostrōque decōri;  
cētera pōpuleā vēlātur fronde iuventūs*
- 135 *nūdātōsque umerōs oleō perfūsa nitēscit.*

apricus, a, um sunny, sun-loving†  
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)\*  
Centaurus, i m. monster with the head  
of a man and the body of a horse; f.  
name of a ship†  
cēterus, a, um remaining, other, rest  
circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend,  
turn  
Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader  
Cluentius, (i) famous Roman family†  
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, bury\*  
cōstitutō, ere, uī, ūtus establish  
contrā against, opposite (acc.)\*  
Cōrus, i m. (northwest) wind†  
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly  
ductor, ōris m. leader, commander, chief  
effulgeō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glit-  
ter  
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded  
frōns, frondis f. leaf, foliage, frond\*  
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome  
hibernus, a, um of the winter, win-  
try  
ilex, icis f. holm-oak  
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable  
invehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey  
iuventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*  
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, gather\*  
longē afar, from afar\*

mergus, i m. gull, diver†  
mēta, ae f. turning point, goal, bound  
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner  
nitēscō, ere, nitui shine, glisten, gleam†  
nūdō (1) bare, strip, uncover, expose  
oleum, i n. olive oil  
ōlim at some time, once, formerly\*  
ostrum, i n. purple, crimson, scarlet  
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus bathe, drench  
pōpuleus, a, um (of) poplar, a tree sacred  
to Hercules, the perfect athlete and  
patron saint of athletes†  
revertor, i, rsus return, turn back  
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*  
sciō, ire, ivi (ii), itus know (how), under-  
stand  
Scylla, ae f. sea-monster; name of a ship†  
signum, i n. mark, sign, signal, token\*  
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, hush, be still  
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle\*  
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
statio, ōnis f. station, post, anchorage  
summergō (subm-), ere, rsi, rsus sub-  
merge, sink  
tranquillum, i n. calm (weather)  
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling  
tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus beat, buffet  
unde whence, from which source\*  
vēlō (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreathe  
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*

ability to contrive such distorted deri-  
vations once passed as a mark of real  
scholarship. Cloanthus (invehitur).

124. saxum: a rock just at the surface  
of the water.

126. condunt (nūbibus, with clouds).

127. tranquillō: abl. of time when.  
immōtā undā: abl. abs.

128. campus: (as) a flat surface.

130-131. unde = ex quō locō. unde  
scirent: purpose.

134. cētera iuventūs: the crew, as con-  
trasted with the ductor of each ship.

135. umerōs: obj. of the middle part.  
perfūsa; App. 309, a. oleō: see note on  
III, 281.



Cōnsidunt trānstrīs, intentaque bracchia rēmīs;  
 intentī expectant signum, exsultantiaque haurit  
 corda pavor pulsāns laudumque arrēcta cupidō.  
 Inde ubi clāra dedit sonitum tuba, finibus omnēs,  
 haud mora, prōsiluēre suās; ferit aethera clāmor 140  
 nauticus, adductīs spūmant freta versa lacertīs.  
 Īnfundunt pariter sulcōs, tōtumque dehiscit  
 convulsum rēmīs rōstrisque tridentibus aequor.  
 Nōn tam praecipitēs bijugō certāmine campum  
 corripuēre ruuntque effūsī carcere currūs, 145  
 nec sic immissis aurigae undantia lōra  
 concussēre jugīs prōnique in verbera pendent.  
 Tum plausū fremitūque virum studiisque faventum

adāucō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw to, lead to†  
 aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air,  
 heaven\*  
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, rouse  
 auriga, ae m. charioteer, driver†  
 bijugus, a, um double-yoked, two-  
 horsed; team, chariot†  
 braccium, (i) i n. (fore) arm\*  
 carcer, eris m. prison, barrier, starting  
 point  
 certāmen, inis n. struggle, contest\*  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter  
 cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (on), settle\*  
 convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter  
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, dash  
 over\*  
 cupidō, inis f. desire, love, passion  
 currus, ūs m. chariot, car\*  
 dehiscō, ere, hīvi yawn, open, gape  
 effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out, let go\*  
 ex(s)pectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)\*  
 ex(s)ultō (1) leap up, exult, rejoice  
 favēns, entis m. (f.) partisan, supporter  
 feriō, ire strike, smite, beat, cut, kill  
 fremitus, ūs m. roar, shout(ing)  
 fretum, i n. strait, sea, waters  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, exhaust  
 immittō, ere, misi, missus let go  
 inde thence, after that, next\*

īfundō, ere, fidī, fissus split, cleave†  
 intendō, ere, i, ntus stretch, strain  
 jugum, i n. yoke, team; (mountain) ridge\*  
 lacertus, i m. (upper) arm†  
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*  
 lōrum, i n. thong, rein, check  
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
 nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical  
 pariter equally, side by side\*  
 pavor, ōris m. fear, alarm, anxiety  
 pendeō, ēre, pependī hang\*  
 plausus, ūs m. applause, clapping  
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
 prōnus, a, um leaning forward, prone  
 prōsiliō, ire, uī (īvi, īi) leap forward†  
 pulsō (1) beat, lash, strike, throb, batter  
 rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow†  
 signum, i n. mark, sign, signal, token\*  
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, crash, noise\*  
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
 studium, (i) i n. zeal, desire, pursuit  
 sulcus, i m. furrow, track, trench  
 tam so (much), so greatly, such\*  
 trānstrum, i n. rowing-bench, thwart  
 tridēns, entis triple-pointed, three-  
 toothed  
 tuba, ae f. trumpet  
 undō (1) wave, sway, undulate, fluctuate  
 verber, eris n. blow, lash, whipt  
 verrō, ere, i, rsus sweep (over), scour  
 vertō, ere, i, rsus (over)turn, change\*

136. *intenta* (sunt).  
 139. *finibus*: from their starting places.  
 140. *haud mora* (est) = sine morā.  
 141. *adductis* (ad pectora): as they  
 make the stroke. *versa*: probably from  
*vertō*, turn, but possibly from *verrō*, sweep.  
 144 *bijugō*: with the first syllable  
 short, since the j was originally initial,  
*bijugō* being a compound of *bis*, double,  
 and *jugum*, yoke; App. 6, b.

145. *effūsī*: middle; App. 309. The  
 galleys are compared to chariots in a race,  
 the commanders to the charioteers and  
 the rowers to the horses. *carcere* =  
*finibus* of l. 139.

147. *jugīs* = *equīs*: metonymy and  
 dat. of reference; App. 433, 301.  
 in *verbera* (*danda*) = ut *verbera*  
 dent.

148. *vir* (ōr)um.

- cōnsonat omne nemus, vōcemque inclūsa volūtant  
 150 litora, pulsātī collēs clāmōre resultant.  
 Effugit ante aliōs primisque ēlābitur undīs  
 turbam inter fremitumque Gyās; quem deinde Cloanthus  
 cōnsequitur, melior rēmīs, sed pondere pinus  
 tarda tenet. Post hōs aequō discrimine Pristis  
 155 Centaurusque locum tendunt superāre priōrem;  
 et nunc Pristis habet, nunc victam praeterit ingēns  
 Centaurus, nunc ūnā ambae jūnetisque feruntur  
 frontibus et longā sulcant vada salsa carinā.  
 Jamque propinquābant scopulō mētāque tenēbant  
 160 cum princeps mediōque Gyās in gurgite victor  
 rēctōrem nāvis compellat vōce Menoetē:  
 "Quō tantum mihi dexter abis? Hūc dērige gressum;  
 litus amā et laevā stringat sine palmula cautēs;

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart\*  
 aequus, a, um equal, just, even, fair  
 ambō, ae, ō both  
 amō (1) love, cherish; hug\*  
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat\*  
 cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge  
 Centaurus, i m. monster with the head  
 of a man and the body of a horse;  
 f. name of a ship  
 Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader  
 coilis, is m. hill  
 compellō (1) speak to, address, accost  
 cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake  
 cōnsonō, āre, ui (re)sound, echo†  
 deinde then, thence, thereupon, next\*  
 dērigō (di-), ere, rēxi, rēctus direct  
 discrimen, inis n. difference, interval  
 effugiō, ere, fugi escape, shoot forth  
 ēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide forth, escape  
 fremitus, ūs m. roar, shout(ing)  
 frōns, frontis f. front, forehead, face\*  
 gressus, ūs m. step, course, gait, pace  
 gurgēs, itis m. whirlpool, sea, gulf\*  
 Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader  
 inclūdō, ere, si, sus shut (in), inclose  
 jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūnctus join, yoke\*  
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*  
 melior, ius better, superior, preferable

Menoetēs, ae m. Trojan pilot†  
 mēta, ae f. goal, turning point, bound  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest\*  
 palmula, ae f. oar-blade, oar†  
 pinus, ūs (i) f. pine tree; ship  
 pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass  
 post after, behind (acc.); afterward\*  
 praetereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus pass  
 princeps, cipis first, leading, (as) leader  
 prior, ius former, first, prior\*  
 Pristis, is f. Shark; name of a ship  
 propinquō (1) approach, (draw) near  
 (dat.)  
 pulsō (1) beat, strike, lash, throb, batter  
 rēctor, ōris m. pilot, leader, master†  
 resultō (1) rebound, re-echo, reverberate†  
 salsus, a, um briny, salty  
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit\*  
 stringō, ere, strinxi, strictus brush, graze  
 sulcō (1) plow, furrow, cleave†  
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass,  
 survive\*  
 tardus, a, um delayed, slow, late, lazy  
 turba, ae f. crowd, mob, throng, uproar  
 ūnā together, at the same time  
 vadum, i n. shoal, sea  
 volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

149. inclūsa: surrounded (by the hills).  
 151. primis undis: over the foremost  
 waves, in front of the other ships.  
 152. inter turbam fremitumque.  
 153. pinus = nāvis: metonymy; App.  
 433.  
 154. (Cloanthus) tenet. aequō dis-  
 crimine: abl. of degree of difference;  
 App. 335.  
 155. locum superāre priōrem: to gain  
 the lead.

156. habet (priōrem) locum.  
 157-158. jūnctis frontibus = pariter;  
 cf. l. 142.  
 159. tenēbant: were about to reach;  
 App. 351, 2, a.  
 160. victor: Gyas had been leading  
 thus far.  
 162. mihi: dat. of reference, "to  
 my hurt," or ethical dat.; App. 301,  
 300.  
 163. litus amā: hug the shore; i.e., the

altum aliī teneant." *Dixit; sed caeca Menoetēs saxa timēns prōram pelagī dētorquet ad undās.* 165  
*"Quō diversus abīs?" Iterum "Pete saxa, Menoetē!" cum clāmōre Gyās revocābat, et ecce Cloanthum respicit Instantem tergō et propiōra tenentem. Ille inter nāvemque Gyae scopulōsque sonantis rādīt iter laevum interior subitōque priōrem 170 praeterit et mētīs tenet aequora tūta relictīs. Tum vērō exarsit juvenī dolor ossibus ingēns nec lacrimīs caruēre genae, sēgnemque Menoetēn oblītus decorisque suī sociūmque salūtis in mare praecipitem puppī dēturbat ab altā; 175 ipse gubernāclō rēctor subit, ipse magister hortāturque virōs clāvumque ad litora torquet. At gravis ut fundō vix tandem redditus īmō est jam senior madidāque fluēns in veste Menoetēs*

abeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus depart\*  
 altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven  
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark\*  
 careō, ēre, uī be free from, lack (abl.)  
 clāvus, ī m. helm, rudder, tiller  
 Cloanthus, ī m. Trojan leader  
 decus, oris n. beauty, grace, dignity  
 dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn (aside)  
 dēturbō (1) hurl down, cast down†  
 diversus, a, um apart, separated, aside\*  
 dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 exardēscō, ere, arsi, arsus flame forth  
 fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream, drip  
 fundus, ī m. bottom, foundation, base  
 gena, ae f. cheek  
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
 gubernāc(u)lum, ī n. helm, rudder, tiller†  
 Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader  
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite\*  
 instō, āre, stitī press on, urge (on) (dat.)  
 interior, ius inner, inside, interior  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 iterum again, anew, a second time\*  
 juvenis, is m. youth, young (man, woman)\*  
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*

madidus, a, um wet, dripping†  
 magister, trī m. master, skipper, pilot  
 Menoetēs, ae m. Trojan pilot  
 mēta, ae f. goal, turning point, bound  
 obliviscor, ī, litus forget (gen.)  
 os, ossis n. bone\*  
 praiceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
 praetereō, ire, īi (ivī), itus pass  
 prior, ius former, first, prior\*  
 propior, ius nearer, closer  
 prōra, ae f. prow\*  
 rādō, ere, si, sus scrape, shave; skirt  
 rēctor, ōris m. pilot, leader, master  
 reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, render\*  
 respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see (behind), look back (at), regard\*  
 revocō (1) call back, recall, restore  
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, health, welfare  
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sēgnis, e slow, lazy, inactive  
 senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
 tergum, ī n. back, hide, rear\*  
 timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
 torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, sway\*  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 vērō indeed, truly, but  
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

saxum of l. 124 which served as a turning point. (ut) stringat: obj. of sine, an imp. laevā (manū) on the left.

167. revocābat: conative, he kept trying to call back; App. 351, 2, a.

168. tergō: dat. with compound. (loca) propiōra (saxō): the inside track,

since the rock served as the turning point.

169. Ille (Cloanthus).

170. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313. interior: between Gyas and the rock.

172. juvenī: dat. of reference.

174. soci(ōr)um.

176. ipse (Gyās) rēctor: (as) pilot.

- 180 *summa petit scopulū siccāque in rūpe resēdit.*  
*Illū et lābentem Teucrī et risēre natantem*  
*et salsōs rident revomentem pectore flūctūs.*  
*Hīc laeta extrēmīs spēs est accēnsa duōbus,*  
*Sergestō Mnēstheīque, Gyān superāre morantem.*
- 185 *Sergestus capit ante locum scopulōque propinquat,*  
*nec tōtā tamen ille prior praeēunte carinā;*  
*parte prior, partim rōstrō premit aemula Pristis.*  
*At mediā sociōs incēdēns nāve per ipsōs*  
*hortātur Mnēstheus: "Nunc, nunc insurgite rēmīs,*
- 190 *Hectorēi sociī, Trojae quōs sorte suprēmā*  
*dēlēgī comitēs; nunc illās prōmite virīs,*  
*nunc animōs, quibus in Gaetūlis Syrtibus ūsī*  
*Īoniōque marī Maleaeque sequācibus undīs.*  
*Nōn jam prīma petō Mnēstheus neque vincere certō*  
 195 *(quamquam Ō! — sed superent quibus hoc, Neptūne, dedistī),*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle  
 aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous†  
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat\*  
 certō (l) struggle, contend, vie, compete  
 dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select  
 duo, ae. o two\*  
 extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme\*  
 Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli,  
 an African tribe  
 Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader  
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan  
 leader  
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite\*  
 incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride  
 insurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on)  
 (dat.)  
 Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the west  
 coast of Greece  
 Malea, ae f. promontory of southern  
 Greece, dangerous to navigation†  
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader\*  
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*  
 natō (l) swim, float, overflow  
 Neptūnus, ī m. Neptune, god of the sea\*  
 partim partly, partially†  
 praeēō, īre, ii (ivī), itus go before, lead†

premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,  
 pursue\*  
 prior, ius former, prior, first\*  
 Pristis, is f. Shark; name of a ship  
 prōmō, ere, mpsi, mptus put forth  
 propinquō (l) approach, (draw) near (dat.)  
 quamquam although, however, but  
 residō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down), settle  
 revomō, ere, uī vomit (forth), disgorge†  
 rideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile  
 rōstrum, ī n. beak, snout; prow  
 rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 salsus, a, um briny, salty  
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 sequāx, ācis pursuing, swift†  
 Sergestus, ī m. Trojan leader\*  
 siccus, a, um dry, thirsty  
 sors, rtis f. lot, fortune, portion; ora-  
 cle\*  
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*  
 superō (l) surmount, overcome, surpass,  
 win, survive\*  
 Syrtis, is f. sand-bank off the northern  
 coast of Africa  
 tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
 ūtor, ī, ūsus use, employ, enjoy (abl.)

183. extrēmīs duōbus: dat. of refer-  
 ence,

184. Mnēstheī: dat., a Greek form;  
 two syllables by synizesis; App. 69, 403.

185. ante: adverbial, first, before (the  
 others).

186. praeēunte: with the first syllable  
 short. This prefix is often shortened  
 before a following vowel.

190. sorte suprēmā: abl. of time  
 when.

192. (illōs) animōs, quibus ūsī (estis).  
 quibus: abl. with ūtor; App. 342.

194. prīma (loca). Mnēstheus = ego.

195. quamquam Ō: a wish left un-  
 expressed and thus made more vivid; a  
 good example of effective aposiopesis;  
 App. 416. Cf. I, 135, note.



extrēmōs pudeat rediisse: <i>hoc vincite, cīvēs, et prohibēte nefās.</i> Ollī certāmine summō prōcumbunt: <i>vastīs</i> tremit ictibus aerea <i>puppis</i> subtrahiturque solum, <i>tum</i> crēber anhelitus artūs āridaque ōra quatit, sūdor fluit undique rīvīs.	200
Attulit ipse virīs optātum cāsus honōrem. Namque furēns animī dum prōram ad saxa suburget interior spatiōque subit Sergestus inīquō, infelix saxīs in prōcurrentibus haesit.	
Concussae cautēs et acūtō in mūrce rēmī obnixī crepuere inlisaeque prōra pependit.	205
Cōnsurgunt nautae et magnō clāmōre morantur ferrātāsque trudēs et acūtā cuspidē contōs expediunt frāctōsque legunt in gurgite rēmōs.	
At laetus Mnēstheus successūque ācrior ipsō agmine rēmōrum celerī ventīsque vocātīs	210

acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce\*  
acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute  
adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to  
aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad  
anhēlitus, ūs m. panting, gasping†  
āridus, a, um dry, parched  
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member\*  
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge  
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet\*  
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle, race\*  
civis, is m. (f.) citizen, compatriot  
concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter  
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise  
contus, ī m. boat hook, pike, pole†  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, hurried\*  
crepō, āre, uī, itus clatter, crash†  
cuspis, idis f. point  
expediō, ire, ivī (iī), itus disentangle,  
bring forth  
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme\*  
ferrātus, a, um shod with iron, iron-clad†  
fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, stream, drip  
frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shatter\*  
gurgis, itis m. whirlpool, sea, gulf\*  
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to), stick\*  
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust  
iniquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust  
inlidō, ere, sī, sus strike on, dash on  
interior, ius inner, inside, interior  
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, choose\*

Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader\*  
moror, āri, ātus delay, hinder, tarry\*  
mūrex, icis m. purple (mollusk), rock  
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner  
nefās n. indecl. sin, shame, impiety\*  
obnitor, ī, sus (nixus) press against,  
struggle  
optō (ī) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang\*  
procumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean for-  
ward, incline, recline  
prōcurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus jut, pro-  
ject†  
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, forbid  
prōra, ae f. prow\*  
pudet, ēre, uit it shames†  
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter  
redeō, ire, iī (ivi), itus return  
rivus, ī m. stream, rivulet  
Sergestus, ī m. Trojan leader\*  
solum, ī n. ground, surface (of the sea)\*  
spatium, (i) ī n. space, position  
subtrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus draw (up),  
withdraw†  
suburgo, ēre press close†  
successus, ūs m. success, progress  
sūdor, ōris m. sweat, perspiration  
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake\*  
trudis, is f. pole, pike†  
undique on (from) all sides\*

196. (nōs) extrēmōs.  
197. nefās: i.e., of being last (ex-  
trēmōs rediisse).  
199. solum (maris).  
200. rivis: in streams, abl. of means.  
201. virīs: to Mnēstheus's crew.

202. animī: loc., or a gen. of respect  
with furēns; App. 345, 294.  
204. in saxīs prōcurrentibus: on rocks  
jutting out; beneath the water and hence  
hidden (caeca), l. 164.  
205. Concussae (sunt).

- prōna petit maria et pelagō dēcurrit apertō.  
 Quālis spēluncā subitō commōta columba,  
 cui domus et dulcēs latebrōsō in pūmice nīdī,  
 215 fertur in arva volāns plausumque exterrita pennīs  
 dat tēctō ingentem, mox āere lāpsa quiētō  
 rādīt iter liquidum celeris neque commovet ālās:  
 sic Mnēstheus, sic ipsa fugā secat ultima Pristis  
 220 aequora, sic illam fert impetus ipse volantem.  
 Et primum in scopulō luctantem dēserit altō  
 Sergestum brevibusque vadīs frūstrāque vocantem  
 auxilia et frāctīs discentem currere rēmīs.  
 Inde Gŷān ipsamque ingentī mōle Chimaeram  
 cōnsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō est.  
 225 Sōlus jamque ipsō superest in fine Cloanthus:  
 quem petit et summīs adnexus vīribus urget.  
 Tum vērō ingeminat clāmor cūnctīque sequentem

adnitor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle, strive  
 āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog  
 āla, *ae f.* wing\*  
 apertus, *a, um* open, clear, free  
 auxilium, (i) ī *n.* help, aid, assistance\*  
 brevis, *e* short, shallow, brief  
 cēdō, *ere, cessī, cessus* yield, fall behind\*  
 celer, *eris, ere* swift, quick, fleet\*  
 Chimaera, *ae f.* fire-breathing monster;  
 name of a ship  
 Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader  
 columba, *ae f.* dove, pigeon  
 commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, startle  
 cōnsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake  
 currō, *ere, cucurrī, cursus* run, hasten  
 dēcurrō, *ere, (cu)currī, cursus* run down  
 dēserō, *ere, uī, rtus* desert, forsake\*  
 discō, *ere, didici* learn (how); *perf.* know  
 dulcis, *e* sweet, dear, fond\*  
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
 frangō, *ere, frēgī, frāctus* break, shatter\*  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
 Gŷās, *ae m.* Trojan leader  
 impetus, ūs *m.* impetus, momentum  
 inde then, thence, next\*  
 ingeminō (1) reiterate, (re)double, in-  
 crease  
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
 latebrōsus, *a, um* sheltering, crannied†

liquidus, *a, um* liquid, fluid, clear  
 luctor, āri, ātus struggle, wrestle  
 magister, trī *m.* master, skipper, pilot  
 Mnēstheus, eī (eos) *m.* Trojan leader\*  
 mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*  
 mox soon, presently  
 nidus, ī *m.* nest(ing)†  
 penna, *ae f.* wing, feather  
 plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, beating  
 Pristis, is *f.* Shark; name of a ship  
 prōnus, *a, um* leaning forward, slop-  
 ing downward  
 pūmex, icis *m.* pumice, a porous stone†  
 quālis, *e* of what kind, (such) as\*  
 quiētus, *a, um* calm, peaceful, quiet  
 quoniam since, because  
 rādō, *ere, sī, sus* shave, graze, skim  
 scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag\*  
 secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*  
 Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader\*  
 spēlunca, *ae f.* cave, cavern, grotto  
 spoliō (1) deprive (of), rob, despoil (*abl.*)†  
 subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
 supersum, esse, fūi remain, be left  
 ultimus, *a, um* last, final, farthest\*  
 urgeō, ēre, ursī press, urge  
 vadum, ī *n.* shoal, sea  
 vērō indeed, truly, but  
 volō (1) fly, speed, hasten\*

212. prōna: to one standing on the shore, the sea seems higher than the land and to slope down to it. Cf. dēvēnēre, I, 365; dēlātō, III, 154; dēmittere, V, 29; dēlāti, V, 57.

213-215. Quālis columba, subitō (ex) spēluncā commōta, cui domus et dulcēs nīdī (sunt) in latebrōsō pūmice, fertur, etc.

216. (ex) tēctō = ē spēluncā.

218-219. ipsa Pristis secat ultima aequora. ultima aequora: the home stretch, illam (Pristim).

220. (Pristis) dēserit.

221. vocantem: calling for.

224. cēdit (Chimaera).

227. clāmor: of those on shore.

instigant studiis, resonatque fragoribus aethēr.  
*Hī proprium decus et partum indignantur honorem*  
*nī teneant, vltamque volunt prō laude pacisci;* 230  
*hōs successus alit: possunt, quia posse videntur.*  
*Et fors aequātis cēpissent praemia rōstris,*  
*nī palmās pontō tendēns utrāsque Cloanthus*  
*fūdissetque precēs dīvōsque in vōta vocasset:*  
*"Dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora currō,* 235  
*vōbīs laetus ego hōc candentem in litore taurum*  
*cōstituam ante ārās vōtī reus, extaque salsōs*  
*prōjiciam in flūctūs et vīna liquentia fundam."*  
*Dixit, eumque imīs sub flūctibus audiit omnis*  
*Nēreidum Phorcique chorus Panopēaque virgō,* 240  
*et pater ipse manū magnā Portūnus euntem*  
*impulit: illa Notō citius volucrique sagittā*  
*ad terram fugit et portū sē condidit altō.*  
*Tum satus Anchīsā cūctīs ex mōre vocātis*

aequō (1) equal(ize), even, level, match\*  
aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky\*  
alō, ere, uī, (i) tus nourish, support  
candēns, entis white, shining, sleek  
chorus, i m. band, company, dance  
citō quickly, swiftly  
Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader  
condō, ere, didi, ditus found; bury, hide\*  
cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, stand  
currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, speed (over)  
decus, oris n. beauty, glory, dignity  
exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals  
fragor, ōris m. crash, uproar  
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive on  
indignor, āri, ātus disdain, be angry  
instigō (1) goad, incite, spur, urge on†  
laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*  
liquēns, entis liquid, clear  
mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner\*  
Nēreis, idis f. Nereid, a sea-nymph,  
daughter of Nereus, a sea-god  
nisi, nī if not, unless\*  
Notus, i m. (south) wind  
paciscor, i, pactus pledge, stake  
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize\*  
Panopēa, ae f. a sea-nymph, daughter of  
Nereus†

pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, bear  
Phorcus, i m. a sea-god†  
pontus, i m. sea, waves\*  
Portūnus, i m. god of harbors†  
praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize\*  
prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow\*  
prō for, before, on behalf of (abl.)\*  
prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast forth†  
proprius, a, um one's own, secure  
quia because  
resonō (1) (re) sound, roar  
reus, i m. defendant, debtor, payer†  
rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow  
sagitta, ae f. arrow, bolt, shaft  
salsus, a, um briny, salty  
serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, beget\*  
studium, (i) i n. desire, eagerness, zeal,  
favor, partisanship  
successus, ūs m. success, progress  
taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox\*  
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of  
two), both\*  
vinum, i n. wine\*  
virgō, inis f. girl, daughter, maiden\*  
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift\*  
vōtum, i n. vow, prayer, (votive) offer-  
ing\*

229-231. *Hī...hōs: the sailors of Cloanthus...the sailors of Mnestheus.*  
*nī teneant:* subordinate clause in implied indir. disc.; App. 358.

232. *fors:* perhaps.

233. *pontō:* dat. of direction.

235. *aequora:* obj. of *currō*, used transitively.

237. *vōtī:* gen. with a word of condemning; reus; App. 291.

241. (*nāvem*) euntem.

242. *illa (nāvis Cloanthī).* *Notō, sagittā:* ablatives with the comparative; App. 327.

244. *satus Anchīsā:* Aeneas.

- 245 *victōrem magnā praecōnis vōce* Cloanthum  
*dēclārat viridique advēlat tempora laurō,*  
*mūneraque in nāvis ternōs optāre juvencōs*  
*vīnaque et argenti magnum dat jerre talentum.*  
*Ipsīs praecipuōs ductōribus addit honōrēs:*
- 250 *victōrī chlamydem aurātā, quam plūrima circum*  
*purpura Maeandrō duplici Meliboea cucurrit,*  
*intextusque puer frondōsā rēgius Īdā*  
*vēlēcis jaculō cervōs cursūque fatigat*  
*ācer, anhelantī similis, quem praepes ab Īdā*
- 255 *sublīmē pedibus rapuit Jovis armiger uncīs:*  
*longaevī palmās nēquīquam ad sīdera tendunt*  
*custōdēs, saevitque canum lātrātus in aurās.*  
*At quī deinde locum tenuit virtūte secundum,*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce\*  
 addō, ere, didi, ditus add\*  
 advēlō (1) veil, cover, wreath†  
 anhelō (1) pant, gasp, puff†  
 argentum, ī n. silver  
 armiger, eri m. armor-bearer  
 aurātus, a, um gilded, embroidered with  
 gold  
 canis, is m. (f.) dog, hound  
 cervus, ī m. deer, stag  
 chlamys, ydis f. cloak, scarf, cape  
 Cloanthus, ī m. Trojan leader  
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus, run, speed  
 (over)  
 custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*  
 dēclārō (1) proclaim, make clear†  
 deinde then, next, after that\*  
 ductor, ōris m. leader, commander, chief  
 duplex, icis twofold, double  
 fatigō (1) weary, chase, harass, rouse  
 frondōsus, a, um leafy, fronded†  
 Īda, ae f. mountain near Troy  
 intexō, ere, ui, xtus weave in  
 jaculum, ī n. spear, dart, lance  
 juvencus, ī m. bullock, bull, ox\*  
 lātrātus, ūs m. bark(ing), howl(ing)†  
 laurus, ī (ūs) f. laurel

longaevus, a, um aged, long-lived  
 Maeander, dri m. winding river of Asia  
 Minor; meandering pattern†  
 Meliboeus, a, um Meliboean, of Meliboea,  
 a Thessalian town  
 nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
 palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
 pēs, pedis m. foot  
 praecipuus, a, um especial, choicet  
 praecō, ōnis m. crier, herald†  
 praepes, petis swift, swooping  
 purpura, ae f. purple, crimson†  
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (up), rob\*  
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, princely\*  
 saeviō, ire, ii (ivī), itus rage, storm  
 secundus, a, um second, favorable\*  
 similis, e like, similar (dat.)\*  
 sublīmiz, e lofty, aloft, on high  
 talentum, ī n. a talent, worth about \$1200  
 tempus, oris n. temple, brow  
 ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes  
 uncus, a, um crooked, curved  
 vēlōx, ōcis swift, speedy, fleet  
 vinum, ī n. wine\*  
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*  
 virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, merit, courage\*

247-248. optāre, ferre: infinitives of purpose; App. 261.

250-251. circum quam (chlamydem) plūrima purpura cucurrit.

251. Maeandrō: abl. of manner.

252. puer rēgius: Ganymede, son of Tros, king of Troy. He was carried to heaven by an eagle, to be Jove's cup-bearer. Cf. I, 28. Two scenes are woven in the robe; the first representing the boy as hunting and the second his being

carried away by the eagle while his aged guardians lift their hands toward heaven and his dogs bark at the eagle.

255. Jovis armiger: the eagle was often represented by the ancients as bearing in his talons the thunderbolt, the weapon of Jupiter. Some United States coins bear this device.

257. lātrātus: barking (at the eagle).

258. qui: its antecedent is huic, in l. 259.



lēvibus *huic* hāmīs cōnsertam *aurōque* trilicem  
lōricam, *quam* Dēmoleō dētrāxerat *ipse* 260  
*victor* apud rapidum Simoēnta sub Īliō altō,  
dōnat *habēre*, *virō* decus et tūtāmen in armīs.  
*Vix* illam famulī Phēgeus Sagarisque *ferēbant*  
multiplicem cōnixī *umerīs*; indūtus at ōlim  
Dēmoleos *cursū* pālantis Trōas *agēbat*. 265  
Tertia *dōna* facit *geminōs* ex aere lebētas  
cymbiaque argentō perfecta *atque* aspera signīs.  
*Jamque* adeō dōnātī *omnēs* opibusque superbī  
pūniceīs *ībant* ēvinctī tempora taenīs,  
*cum* saevō ē scopulō *multā* *vix* arte revulsus 270  
āmissis *rēmīs* *atque* ordine dēbilis ūnō  
inrīsam sine *honōre* ratem Sergestus *agēbat*.

adeō to such an extent, so  
aes, aeris *n.* bronze\*  
āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus lose, let go\*  
apud among, at, near (*acc.*)  
argentum, ī *n.* silver  
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, cunning\*  
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce\*  
cōnitor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle†  
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join  
cymbium, (i)ī *n.* bowl, cup  
dēbilis, e weakened, crippled†  
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dig-  
nity  
Dēmoleos (us), ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader†  
dētrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus strip (off)  
(*abl.*)†  
dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant†  
ēvinciō, ire, vinxī, vinctus bind, tie†  
famulus, ī *m.* slave, attendant  
hāmus, ī *m.* hook, link  
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Troy, Ilium  
induō, ere, uī, ūtus clothe, don  
inrideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh at, ridicule  
lebēs, ētis *m.* kettle, caldron  
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery  
lōrica, ae *f.* breastplate, cuirass

multiplex, icis with many folds  
ōlim once, formerly, at some time\*  
ops, opis *f.* aid, wealth, resources, power\*  
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, bank\*  
pālor, āri, ātus straggle, scatter†  
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, form  
Phēgeus, ī *m.* Trojan slave†  
pūniceus, a, um purple, crimson†  
rapidus, a, um swift, quick, whirling\*  
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
revellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear away  
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
Sagaris, is *m.* Trojan slave†  
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag\*  
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader\*  
signum, ī *n.* mark, sign, signal, fig-  
ure\*  
Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy  
sine without (*abl.*)\*  
superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*  
taenia, ae *f.* ribbon, band, fillet†  
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow  
tertius, a, um third\*  
trilix, licis three-leashed, triple-threaded  
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*  
tūtāmen, inis *n.* protection, defense†

260. Dēmoleō: dat. of separation.  
ipse (Aenēās).

261. Īliō altō: semi-hiatus; App. 400.

262. habēre: inf. of purpose; App.

261. in armīs = in bellō: metonymy;  
App. 433.

263. Vix ferēbant: tradition, which  
is regularly handed down by the old men,  
continually insists that everything was  
much better 'in the good old days' and  
that men of former generations were

much stronger and braver than their  
degenerate descendants.

265. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

266. dōna, lebētas: two accusatives  
with a verb of making; App. 316, a. lebē-  
tās: acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, a.

267. aspera signīs: embossed with  
figures.

269. taen(i)īs.

271. ordine ūnō: in one bank of oars;  
abl. of respect; App. 325.

- Quālis saepe *viae* dēprēnsus in aggere serpēns,  
 aerea quem obliquum rota trānsiit aut gravis ictū  
 275 sēminecem liquit saxō lacerumque viātor;  
 nēquiquam longōs fugiēns dat corpore tortūs  
 parte ferōx ardēnsque oculīs et sibila colla  
 arduus attollēns; pars vulnere clauda retentat  
 nexantem nōdis sēque in sua membra plicantem:  
 280 tālī rēmigiō nāvis sē tarda movēbat;  
 vēla facit tamen et vēlis subit ōstia plēnis.  
 Sergestum Aenēās prōmissō mūnere dōnat  
 servātam ob nāvem laetus sociōsque reductōs.  
 Ollī serva datur operum haud ignāra Minervae,  
 285 Crēssa genus, Pholoē, geminīque sub ūbere nātī.  
*Hōc pius Aenēās missō certāmine tendit*  
*grāmineum in campum, quem collibus undique curvīs*

aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad\*  
 agger, eris m. mound, embankment  
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, upraised\*  
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
 certāmen, inis n. struggle, contest, race\*  
 claudus, a, um lame, crippled†  
 collis, is m. hill  
 collum, i n. neck\*  
 Crēssa, ae f. Cretan (woman), of Crete†  
 curvus, a, um curving, bent, winding\*  
 dēpre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus seize, catch  
 dōnō (l) give, present, bestow, grant  
 ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, wild  
 grāmineus, a, um grassy, of grass†  
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
 ictus, ūs m. blow, stroke, wound  
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
 lacer, era, erum mangled, lacerated†  
 linqūō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert\*  
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
 Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom, the  
 arts and handicrafts  
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 nexō, āre bind, twine, weave, coil†  
 nōdus, i m. knot, fold, coil  
 ob on account of, for (the sake of) (acc.)  
 obliquus, a, um aslant, across†

opus, eris n. work, labor, art, product\*  
 ōstium, (i) i n. mouth, entrance, harbor  
 Pholoē, ēs f. a Cretan slave†  
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, swelling  
 plicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus) fold, coil†  
 prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise\*  
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as\*  
 reducō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, bring  
 back  
 rēmigium, (i) i n. oarage, rowing  
 retentō (l) hold back, retard, detain†  
 rota, ae f. wheel, chariot, car  
 saepe often, frequently, repeatedly\*  
 sēminex, necis half-dead†  
 Sergestus, i m. Trojan leader\*  
 serpēns, entis m. (f.) serpent, snake  
 serva, ae f. female slave†  
 sibilus, a, um hissing  
 tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
 tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy  
 tortus, ūs m. twisting, writhing†  
 trānseō, ire, iī (ivī), itus cross, pass (by,  
 beyond)  
 ūber, eris n. udder, breast, fertility  
 undique on (from) all sides\*  
 viātor, ōris m. traveler, wayfarer†  
 vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow\*

273. Quālis: correlative with tāli in l. 280. *viae aggere*: the Roman roads were carried across valleys on high embankments or on arches of masonry.

274-278. *rota*: of a wagon or chariot. *gravis ictū* = *gravi ictū*. *ictū, parte, oculis*: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

276. *fugiēns*: the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, l. c.

284. *datur*: with the final syllable lengthened before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, a. *Minervae*: such as spinning, weaving, and other household accomplishments.

285. *genus*: acc. of respect; App. 311. *sub ūbere*: at her breast.

286-362. By a trick of Nisus, Euryalus wins the foot race.

cingēbant *silvae, mediāque in valle theātrī*  
*circus erat; quō sē multis cum milibus hērōs*  
*cōnsessū medium tulit exstrūctōque resēdit.* 290  
*Hīc, quī forte velint rapidō contendere cursū,*  
*invitat pretiīs animōs, et praemia pōnit.*  
*Undique conveniunt Teucrī mixtīque Sicānī,*  
*Nīsus et Euryalus primī,*  
*Euryalus formā insignis viridīque juventā,* 295  
*Nīsus amōre piō puerī; quōs deinde secūtus*  
*rēgius ēgregiā Priamī dē stirpe Diōrēs;*  
*hunc Salius simul et Patrōn, quōrum alter Acarnān,*  
*alter ab Arcadiō Tegeaeae sanguine gentis:*  
*tum duo Trinacriī juvenēs, Helymus Panopēsque,* 300  
*adsuētī silvīs, comitēs seniōris Aestae;*  
*multī praetereā, quōs fāma obscura recondit.*

**Acarnān, ānis** *m.* Acarnanian, of Acarnania in northwestern Greece†  
**adsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** accustom (to)†  
**alter, era, erum** one (of two), the other (of two)\*

**Arcadius, a, um** Arcadian, of Arcadia in southern Greece†

**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus** surround, gird(le)\*

**circus, ī** *m.* circle, race-course

**cōnsessus, ūs** *m.* assembly, spectators†

**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive, contend

**conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus** assemble

**deinde** then, next, after that\*

**Diōrēs, is** *m.* Trojan noble†

**duo, ae, o** two\*

**ēgregius, a, um** eminent, noble, remarkable

**Euryalus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†

**exstrūctum, ī** *n.* mound, raised platform

**forma, ae** *f.* form, shape, beauty\*

**Helymus, ī** *m.* a Sicilian

**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior\*

**insignis, e** distinguished, marked\*

**invitō** (1) invite, summon, induce, tempt†

**juvenis, is** *m. (f.)* youth, young (man, woman)\*

**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood  
*mille; pl. milia, ium* *n.* thousand\*

**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle\*

**Nīsus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†

**obscurus, a, um** dim, obscure, dusky\*

**Panopēs, ae** *m.* a Sicilian†

**Patrōn, ōnis** *m.* a Greek†

**praemium, (i)** *n.* prize, reward\*

**praetereā** besides, in addition\*

**pretium, (i)** *n.* prize, reward, price

**rapidus, a, um** swift, speedy, whirl-  
 ing\*

**recondō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, hide

**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, princely\*

**residō, ere, sēdī** sit (down)

**Salius, (i)** *m.* a Greek†

**senex, senis; comp. senior** old, aged\*

**Sicānus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily†

**stirps, is** *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem

**Tegeaeus, a, um** Tegean, of Tegea, a city  
 of Arcadia†

**theātrum, tri** *n.* theater, grandstand

**Trinacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicil-  
 ian

**undique** on (from) all sides\*

**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale

**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous\*

**288-289. theātrī circus:** the ancient theater was semicircular in shape. Advantage was usually taken of the head of a valley on a curving hillside as a suitable location for placing the seats. *hērōs* (Aeneās).

**290. cōnsessū:** dat. of purpose, for an assembly; or else dat. of direction, to the assembly. (in) *exstrūctō:* Aeneas prepares to address the assembly, just as a Roman general was accustomed to speak to his soldiers from a raised plat-

form (agger), usually made by heaping up earth and stones.

**291-292. invitat pretiis animōs (eōrum) quī velint. velint:** implied indir. disc.; App. 357. Pope parodies this contest in the *Dunciad*, II, 35 ff.

**294. Nīsus et Euryalus:** the heroes of one of Vergil's most beautiful episodes (IX, 176 ff.) are very effectively introduced here.

**296. puerī:** Euryalus. *secūtus* (est).

**298. Salius (secūtus est). alter (erat).**

- Aenēās quibus in mediīs sīc deinde locūtus:*  
 “*Accipite haec animīs laetāsque advertite mentēs.*  
 305 *Nēmō ex hōc numerō mihi nōn dōnātus abibit.*  
*Gnōsia bīna dabō lēvātō lūcida ferrō*  
*spīcula caelātamque argentō ferre bipennem;*  
*omnibus hīc erit ūnus honōs. Trēs praemia primī*  
*accipient flāvāque caput nectentur olivā.*  
 310 *Primus equum phaleris insignem victor habētō;*  
*alter Amāzoniam pharetram plēnamque sagittīs*  
*Thrēiciis, lātō quam circum amplectitur aurō*  
*balteus et teretī subnectit fibula gemmā;*  
*tertius Argolicā hāc galeā contentus abītō.”*  
 315 *Haec ubi dicta, locum capiunt signōque repente*  
*corripiunt spatia audītō limenque relinquunt,*  
*effūsī nimbō similēs: simul ultima signant.*  
*Primus abit longēque ante omnia corpora Nīsus*

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart\*  
 advertō, ere, i, rsus turn (to), heed  
 alter, era, erum one (of two), the other  
 (of two)\*  
 Amāzonius, a, um of the Amazons, a race  
 of warlike women†  
 amplexor, i, plexus embrace, encircle\*  
 argentum, i n. silver  
 Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek  
 balteus, i m. belt, baldric†  
 binī, ae, a two (each), by twos  
 bipennis, is f. two-edged ax  
 caelō (1) engrave, chase, carve  
 contentus, a, um content, satisfied†  
 corripiō, ere, ui, reptus snatch up, speed  
 over\*  
 deinde then, next, thereafter\*  
 dōnō (1) present, give, reward, bestow  
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour forth,  
 stream\*  
 fibula, ae f. brooch, buckle, clasp  
 flāvus, a, um yellow(ish), tawny, blond  
 galea, ae f. helmet  
 gemma, ae f. gem, jewel  
 Gnōs(s)ius, a, um Gnossian, of Gnossus,  
 a Cretan city  
 insignis, e marked, distinguished, noble\*  
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious\*

lēvō (1) polish, smooth†  
 longē (from) afar, (by) far\*  
 loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, talk\*  
 lūcidus, a, um shining, bright, clear  
 nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten  
 nēmō, inis m. (f.) no one, none†  
 nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm\*  
 Nīsus, i m. a Trojan  
 numerus, i m. number, throng, order\*  
 oliva, ae f. olive†  
 phalerae, ārum f. trappings†  
 pharetra, ae f. quiver  
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, teeming  
 praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize\*  
 repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly  
 sagitta, ae f. arrow, shaft, bolt  
 signō, (1) mark, observe, note  
 signum, i n. sign, signal, mark, token\*  
 similis, e like, similar (dat., gen.)\*  
 spatium, (i) i n. space, distance, course  
 spīcium, i n. spear, dart, arrow†  
 subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind  
 (fasten) under  
 teres, etis smooth, polished, rounded†  
 tertius, a, um third\*  
 Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace  
 trēs, tria three\*  
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest\*

305. mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302.  
 306. (cuique) dabō.  
 307. ferre: inf. of purpose; App.  
 261.  
 308. ūnus = idem.  
 309. caput: obj. of the middle verb,  
 nectentur; App. 309.

312. lātō aurō: abl. of means.  
 313. tereti gemmā: abl. of means.  
 314. galeā: abl. with contentus; App.  
 337. abītō: imper.  
 316. limen: the starting point.  
 317. ultima (loca): the goal. signant  
 (oculis).



ēmicat et ventīs et fulminis ōcior ālis;  
 proximus huic, longō sed proximus intervallō, 320  
 insequitur Salius; spatiō post deinde relicto  
 tertius Euryalus;  
 Euryalumque Helymus sequitur; quō deinde sub ipsō  
 ecce volat calcemque terit jam calce Diōrēs  
 incumbēns umerō, spatia et sī plūra supersint 325  
 trānseat ēlāpsus prior ambiguumque relinquat.  
 Jamque ferē spatiō extrēmō fessique sub ipsam  
 finem adventābant, lēvī cum sanguine Nisus  
 labitur infēlix, caesis ut forte juvenis  
 fūsus humum viridisque super madefēcerat herbās. 330  
 Hīc juvenis jam victor ovāns vestīgia pressō  
 haud tenuit titubāta solō, sed prōnus in ipsō  
 concidit immundōque fimō sacrōque cruōre.  
 Nōn tamen Euryalī, nōn ille oblītus amōrum:

adventō (1) approach, keep coming  
 nearer†  
 āla, ae f. wing\*  
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, uncertain  
 caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down),  
 kill  
 calx, calcis f. heel, foot†  
 concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 deinde then, next, thereafter\*  
 Diōrēs, is m. Trojan nobleman  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, get ahead  
 ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart  
 Euryalus, ī m. a Trojan  
 extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme\*  
 ferē almost, about  
 fimus (um), ī m. (n.) filth, manure†  
 fulmen, inis n. lightning, thunderbolt\*  
 Helymus, ī m. a Sicilian  
 herba, ae f. grass, herb(age), plant\*  
 humus, ī f. ground, soil, earth\*  
 immundus, a, um filthy, dirty, foul  
 incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean on,  
 (dat.)  
 insequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue\*

intervallum, ī n. interval, space between†  
 juvenus, ī m. bullock, bull, ox\*  
 juvenis, is m. (f.) young (man, woman)\*  
 lēvis, e smooth, slippery, polished  
 madefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus wet, soak†  
 Nisus, ī m. a Trojan  
 obliviscor, ī, litus forget (gen.)  
 ocior, ius swifter, faster  
 ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph  
 post behind, after (acc.); afterward\*  
 premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press\*  
 prior, ius prior, former, first\*  
 prōnus, a, um prone, flat  
 proximus, a, um next, closest  
 Salius, (i) ī m. a Greek  
 solum, ī n. ground, soil, earth\*  
 spatium, (i) ī n. space, distance, course  
 supersum, esse, fuī remain, be left  
 tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
 terō, ere, trivī, trītus rub, graze  
 tertius, a, um third\*  
 titubō, (1) totter, stagger, reel†  
 trānseō, ire, īi (ivī), itus pass by  
 vestigium, (i) ī n. step, foothold, track\*  
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed, hasten\*

319. fulminis ālis: the ancients often represented the thunderbolt as winged.

320. A spondaic line; App. 395.

323. quō sub ipsō: close upon him.

324. calcem calce = pedem pede; App. 443.

325-326. supersint: the present here instead of the more usual pluperfect in conditional sentences contrary to fact;

App. 382. trānseat, relinquat: conclusions contrary to fact.

328. finem: irregularly feminine.

330. super: adv. on the surface. fūsus (erat sanguis).

333. sacrō: sacrificial.

334. Nōn (Nisus oblītus est) Euryalī: gen. with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

- 335 *nam sēsē opposuit Saliō per lūbrica surgēns,*  
*ille autem spissā jacuit revolūtus hārēnā:*  
*ēmicat Euryalus et mūnere victor amīcī*  
*prīma tenet, plausūque volat fremitūque secundō.*  
*Post Helymus subit et nunc tertia palma Diōrēs.*
- 340 *Hīc tōtum caveae cōnsessum ingentis et ōra*  
*prīma patrum magnīs Salius clāmōribus implet,*  
*ēreptumque dolō reddī sibi poscit honōrem.*  
*Tūtātur favor Euryalum lacrimaeque decōrae,*  
*grātior et pulchrō veniēns in corpore virtūs.*
- 345 *Adjuvat et magnā prōclāmat vōce Diōrēs,*  
*quī subiit palmae frūstrāque ad praemia vēnit*  
*ultima, sī primī Saliō reddentur honōrēs.*  
*Tum pater Aenēās "Vestra" inquit "mūnera vōbīs*  
*certa manent, puerī et palmam movet ordine nēmō;*  
*mē liceat cāsūs miserārī Insontis amīcī."*
- 350 *Sic fātus tergum Gaetūli immāne leōnis*

adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, assist†  
amicus, ī *m.* friend, lover, comrade\*  
autem however, moreover, but\*  
cavea, ae *f.* hollow, seats (for spectators),  
grand stand†  
certus, a, um fixed, certain, sure, reliable\*  
cōnsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, spectators  
decōrus, a, um beautiful, becoming  
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan nobleman  
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick\*  
ēmīcō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart  
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan  
favor, ōris *m.* favor, popularity†  
fremitus, ūs *m.* shout(ing), roar  
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of Gaetulia  
in Northwest Africa  
grātus, a, um welcome, agreeable  
hārēna, ae *f.* sand, beach\*  
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian  
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy\*  
inquam, is, it say\*  
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless  
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*  
leō, ōnis *m.* lion  
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted, it is  
allowed\*  
lūbricus, a, um slippery, smooth, slimy

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate  
(*gen.*)\*  
nēmō, inis *m.* (f.) no one, none  
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus place in the  
way of (*dat.*)  
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, array\*  
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause  
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek, ask\*  
post behind, after (*acc.*); later\*  
praemium, (i) ī *n.* reward, prize\*  
prōclāmō (1) proclaim, announce†  
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
splendid, illustrious, noble\*  
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, (duly)  
render, give back\*  
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve  
Salius, (i) ī *m.* a Greek  
secundus, a, um second, favorable\*  
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded  
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide\*  
tertius, a, um third\*  
tūtōr, āri, ātus protect, guard, defend  
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest\*  
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence,  
courage\*  
volō (1) fly, speed, hasten\*

335. lūbrica (loca).

336. ille: Salius.

337. Euryalus: with the last syllables  
lengthened under the metrical accent and  
before the pause; App. 394, a.

340-341. ōra prima patrum: in the Ro-

man theater the front seats were occupied  
by the senators (patrēs) and other distin-  
guished persons.

342. reddī = ut reddātur.

345. Adjuvat (Euryalum).

350. liceat: vol.; App. 254.

*dat Saliō villis onerōsum atque unguibus aureis.*  
*Hic Nisus "Sī tanta" inquit "sunt praemia victis,*  
*et tē lāpsōrum miseret, quae mūnera Nisō*  
*digna dabis, prīmam meruī quā laude corōnam* 353  
*nī mē, quae Salium, fortūna inimica tulisset?"*  
*Et simul hīs dictis faciem ostentābat et ūdō*  
*turpia membra fimō. Rīsīt pater optimus ollī*  
*et clipeum efferri iussit, Didymāonis artis,*  
*Neptūnī sacrō Danaīs dē poste refixum.* 360  
*Hōc juvenem egregium praestantī mūnere dōnat.*  
 Post, ubi cōfectī cursūs et dōna perēgit:  
 "Nunc, sī cui virtūs animusque in pectore praesēns,  
 adsit et ēvinctis attollat brachia palmis."  
 Sic ait, et geminum pugnae prōpōnit honōrem, 365

ars, artis *f.* art, skill, workmanship\*  
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*  
 braccium, (i)ī *n.* forearm\*  
 clipeus (um), ī *m. (n.)* shield, buckler\*  
 cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up  
 corōna, ae *f.* crown, wreath, chaplet  
 Didymāon, onis *m.* an unknown artist†  
 dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly  
 dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant  
 efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth,  
 raise\*  
 egregius, a, um eminent, noble, remark-  
 able  
 ēvinciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus bind, tie  
 faciēs, ei *f.* appearance, face, aspect\*  
 fimus (um), ī *m. (n.)* filth, manure  
 inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
 inquam, is, it say\*  
 juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man,  
 woman)\*  
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit\*  
 membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body\*  
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
 miseret, ēre, uī, itum it distresses (*gen.*)

Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea\*  
 nisi, nī if not, unless, except\*  
 Nisus, ī *m.* a Trojan  
 onerōsus, a, um heavy, burdensome†  
 optimus, a, um best, finest  
 ostentō (1) keep showing, exhibit, display  
 palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, finish  
 post behind, after (*acc.*); later\*  
 postis, is *m.* column, post, door, gate  
 praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize\*  
 praesēns, entis present, ready, prompt  
 praestāns, antis excellent, surpassing  
 prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus set forth,  
 display†  
 pugna, ae *f.* fight, battle, fray, com-  
 bat\*  
 refigō, ere, xī, xus unfasten, take down†  
 rideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile  
 Salius, (i)ī *m.* a Greek  
 turpis, e shameful, filthy, disgraceful  
 ūdus, a, um wet, moist, damp†  
 unguis, is *m.* claw, nail, talon  
 villus, ī *m.* shaggy hair, tuft, nap  
 virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence, valor\*

352. aureis: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

354. tē lāpsōrum (virōrum): *acc.* and *gen.* with a verb of pitying; App. 289. Nisō = mihi; therefore quī meruī instead of quī meruit.

355-356. meruī, tulisset: mixed condition; App. 382, d. nī eadem (inimica) fortūna, quae Salium (tulit), mē tulisset. tulisset: *had ruined me.*

357. dictis: *abl.* of accompaniment with simul; App. 321.

359. artis: apposition with clipeum.

360. Danaīs: *dat.* of agent; App. 302.

Apparently this shield had been taken by Aeneas as spoils from the Greeks, who had removed (refixum) it from a temple of Neptune, where it had formerly been dedicated by some worshipper.

363-484. The aged Entellus defeats the youthful boaster, Dares, in boxing.

363. cui (indef.): *dat.* of possession. virtūs (est).

364. adsit: *vol.* (hortatory); App. 254. ēvinctis: i.e., with the caestūs, boxing gloves, mentioned in l. 69.

- victōrī vēlātum aurō vittisque juvenum,*  
*ēnsem atque insignem galeam sōlācia victō.*  
*Nec mora; continuō vastīs cum viribus effert*  
*ōra Darēs magnōque virum sē murmure tollit,*  
 370 *sōlus quī Paridem solitus contendere contrā,*  
*īdemque ad tumulum quō maximus occubat Hector*  
*victōrem Būtēn immānī corpore, quī sē*  
*Bebryciā veniēns Amycī dē gente ferēbat,*  
*perculit et fulvā moribundum extendit harēnā.*  
 375 *Talis prīma Darēs caput altum in proelia tollit,*  
*ostenditque umerōs lātōs alternaque jactat*  
*bracchia prōtendēns et verberat ictibus aurās.*  
*Quaeritur huic alius; nec quisquam ex agmine tantō*  
*audet adire virum manibusque inducere caestūs.*  
 380 *Ergō alacris cūctōsque putāns excēdere palmā*  
*Aenēae stetit ante pedēs, nec plūra morātus*

adeō, ire, ii (ivi), itus approach  
 alacer (cris), cris, cre eager, elated†  
 alternus, a, um alternate, in (by) turns†  
 Amycus, i m. famous boxer†  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 Bebrycia, ae f. Bebrycia, a country in Asia Minor†  
 brachium, (i)ī n. forearm\*  
 Būtēs, ae m. famous boxer†  
 caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet, made of rawhide wrapped around bits of lead and iron  
 contendō, ere, i, ntus struggle, contend  
 continuō at once, immediately  
 contrā against, opposite (acc.); in reply\*  
 Darēs, (ēt)is m. Trojan boxer†  
 efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bear forth, raise\*  
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife\*  
 ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
 excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, retire  
 extendō, ere, i, ntus stretch out, extend†  
 fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond  
 galea, ae f. helmet  
 harēna, ae f. sand, beach\*  
 Hector, oris m. Trojan leader\*

ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust  
 inducō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw on†  
 insignis, e marked, distinguished, noble\*  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, swing, strike\*  
 juvenus, i m. bullock, bull, ox\*  
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious\*  
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
 moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die  
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*  
 murmur, is n. murmur, roar, rumble  
 occubō, āre lie (dead, buried)  
 ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display\*  
 palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
 Paris, idis m. Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war  
 percellō, ere, culī, culsus strike down†  
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fight, contest  
 prōtendō, ere, i, ntus stretch forth†  
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider, ponder  
 quisquam, quaequam, quidquam any(one, thing)  
 sōlācium, (i)ī n. solace, consolation†  
 soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed  
 tumulus, i m. mound, tomb\*  
 vēlō (1) veil, cover, wreath, clothe  
 verberō (1) strike, lash, beat, whip  
 vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band\*

366. vēlātum aurō: referring to the custom of gilding the horns of sacrificial victims.

369. vir(ōr)um.

370. Paridem: Paris, the idol of the ladies, was a great athlete.

371-374. ad tumulum: funeral games were celebrated at the tombs of great

warriors. idem (Darēs) perculit Būtēn, quī veniēns (ex) Bebryciā ferēbat sē (esse) dē gente Amycī. victōrem: champion.

378. huic alius: another to match him.

380. alacris: alacer is the more common form of the nom. masc.



tum laevā taurum cornū tenet atque ita fātūr:  
 “Nāte deā, sī nēmō audet sē crēdere pugnae,  
 quae finis standī? Quō mē decet ūsque tenērī?  
 Dūcere dōna jubē.” Cūctī simul ōre fremēbant  
 Dardanidae reddique virō prōmissa jubēbant.

385

Hīc gravis Entellum dictīs castīgat Acestēs,  
 proximus ut viridante torō cōnsēderat herbae:  
 “Entelle, hērōum quondam fortissime frūstrā,  
 tantane tam patiēns nullō certāmine tollī  
 dōna sinēs? Ubi nunc nōbīs deus ille (magister  
 nēquiquam memorātus) Eryx? Ubi fāma per omnem  
 Trinacriam et spolia illa tuīs pendentia tēctīs?”  
 Ille sub haec: “Nōn laudis amor nec glōria cessit  
 pulsa metū; sed enim gelidus tardante senectā  
 sanguis hebet, frīgēntque effētae in corpore vīrēs.  
 Sī mihi quae quondam fuerat quāque improbus iste  
 exsultat fidēs, sī nunc foret illa iuventās,

390

395

audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 castigō (1) chastise, rebuke, punish  
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, give in\*  
 cōstāmen, inis n. struggle, contest, strife\*  
 cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down),  
 settle\*  
 cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end  
 crēdō, ere, didi, dītus believe, trust (dat.)\*  
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Trojan, Dardanian  
 decet, ēre, uit it is fitting, it is proper  
 effētus, a, um worn out, exhausted†  
 enim for, truly, indeed\*  
 Entellus, i m. Sicilian boxer†  
 Eryx, ycis m. famous Sicilian boxer, half-  
 brother of Aeneas†  
 ex(s)ultō (1) exult, vaunt, boast, rejoice  
 fidō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (dat., abl.)\*  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout\*  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar, shout\*  
 frigeō, ēre be cold, be stiff, freeze†  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy  
 glōria, ae f. fame, glory, reputation  
 gravis, e heavy, weighty, venerable\*  
 hebeō, ēre be blunt, be sluggish†  
 herba, ae f. herb(age), grass, plant\*  
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
 improbus, a, um shameless, wicked  
 iste, ta, tuđ that one (you mention)\*

ita thus, so, in this way  
 iuventās, ātis f. youth, young manhood†\*  
 laeva, ae f. left hand\*  
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*  
 magister, trī m. master, trainer, chief  
 memorō (1) recount, recall, celebrate\*  
 metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety\*  
 nēmō, inis m. (f.) no one, none  
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 patiēns, entis patient, calm, enduring  
 pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus strike, drive (out)  
 pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend\*  
 prōmissum, i n. promise, agreement  
 proximus, a, um next, closest, nearest  
 pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, combat\*  
 quō . . . ūsque = quoūsque how long, to  
 what extent†  
 reddō, ere, didi, dītus give (back), render  
 (duly)\*  
 senecta, ae f. old age, eld, senility†  
 sinō, ere, sīvi, sītus allow, permit\*  
 spoliū, (i) n. spoils, trophy, plunder  
 tam so, to such an extent, such\*  
 tardō (1) hinder, check, retard, impede†  
 taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox\*  
 torus, i m. couch, bank\*  
 Trinacria, ae f. Sicily  
 ūsque see quō . . . ūsque†  
 viridāns, antis green, flourishing†

384. finis: more commonly maas.  
 Quō . . . ūsque = quoūsque: an example  
 of what is known as tmesis; App. 445.

385. jubē (mē) dūcere dōna.

391-392. Ubi nōbīs (est) ille deus  
 Eryx, memorātus nēquiquam (tuus) ma-

gister? Ubi (est) fāma? nōbīs: ethical  
 dat.; App. 300.

393. spolia: won in boxing contests.

397. Sī mihi (foret illa iuventās), quae  
 quondam fuerat. quā: abl. of cause.  
 improbus iste: that braggart = Dares.

- 400 *haud equidem pretiō inductus pulchrōque juvenco  
venissem, nec dōna moror.*" *Sic* deinde locūtus  
in medium geminōs immānī pondere caestūs  
prōjēcit, quibus ācer Eryx in proelia suētus  
ferre manum dūrōque intendere braccia tergō.  
 405 *Obstipuere animi: tantōrum ingentia septem  
terga boum plumbō insūtō ferrōque rigēbant.  
Ante omnis stupet ipse Darēs longēque recūsāt,  
magnanimusque Anchisiadēs et pondus et ipsa  
hūc illūc vinculōrum immēsa volūmina versat.  
Tum senior tālis referēbat pectore vōcēs:*  
 410 *"Quid, sī quis caestūs ipsiūs et Herculis arma  
vidisset tristemque hōc ipsō in litore pugnam?  
Haec germānus Eryx quondam tuus arma gerēbat  
(sanguine cernis adhūc sparsōque infecta cerebrō),  
hīs magnum Alciden contrā stetit, hīs ego suētus,*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce\*

adhūc to this point, thus far, still, yet

Alcidēs, ae m. descendant of Alceus,  
Hercules†

Anchisiadēs, ae m. descendant of An-  
chises, Aeneas†

bōs, bovis m. (f.) bull, ox, cow

bracchium, (i)ī n. forearm\*

caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet

cerebrum, ī n. brain†

contrā against, opposite (acc.)\*

Darēs, (ēt)is m. Trojan boxer

deinde then, next, thereupon\*

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*

equidem indeed, surely, truly\*

Eryx, ycis m. Sicilian boxer, half-brother  
of Aeneas

germānus, ī m. brother\*

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wear\*

Herculēs, is m. god of strength, son of  
Jupiter and Alcmena, noted for his  
twelve labors

illūc thither, in that direction

immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast

indūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead on, draw on

inficiō, ere, feci, fectus taint, stain†

insuō, ere, uī, ūtus sew in†

intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch (out)

juuencus, ī m. bullock, bull, ox\*

longē (from) afar\*

loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk\*

magnanimus, a, um great-souled

medium, (i)ī n. middle, midst, center

moror, āri, ātus delay, care for, hinder\*

obstipēscō, ere, pui be amazed\*

plumbum, ī n. lead†

pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass

pretium, (i)ī n. prize, reward, price

proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fight, contest

prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw forward

pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, combat\*

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-

some, splendid, illustrious\*

recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be  
reluctant

rigēō, ēre, uī be stiff, be rigid

senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire

septem seven

spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*

stupeō, ēre, uī be amazed

suēscō, ere, suēvi, suētus be(come) ac-  
customed

tergum, ī n. back, hide; boxing glove\*

versō (1) roll, revolve, keep turning

vinc(u)lum, ī n. bond, fastening\*

volūmen, inis n. coil, fold, roll

402. suētus (erat).

409. senior: Entellus.

410. ipsiūs Herculis: of Hercules  
himself. The et connects caestūs and  
arma.

411. tristem pugnam: because Eryx  
was killed in it.

412. germānus tuus: he is speaking to  
Aeneas.

413. sanguine, cerebrō: of men he  
had killed in his day.

414. Alciden: the form Herculēn  
(-v-) could not be used in dactylic hex-  
ameter. suētus (eram pugnāre, to fight).

<i>adum melior vīrīs sanguis dabat, aemula necdum</i>	415
<i>temporibus geminīs cānēbat sparsa senectūs.</i>	
<i>Sed sī nostra Darēs haec Trōius arma recūsāt</i>	
<i>idque piō sedet Aenēae, probat auctor Aestēs,</i>	
<i>aequēmus pugnās. Erycis tibi terga remittō</i>	
<i>(solve metūs), et tū Trojānōs exue caestūs."</i>	420
<i>Haec fātus duplicem ex umerīs rejēcit amictum</i>	
<i>et magnōs membrōrum artūs, magna ossa lacertōsque</i>	
<i>exuit atque ingēns mediā cōsistit harēnā.</i>	
<i>Tum satus Anchīsā caestūs pater extulit aequōs</i>	
<i>et paribus palmās ambōrum innexuit armīs.</i>	425
<i>Cōstitit in digitōs extemplō arrēctus uterque</i>	
<i>bracchiaque ad superās interritus extulit aurās.</i>	
<i>Abdūxere retrō longē capita ardua ab ictū</i>	
<i>immiscentque manūs manibus pugnamque lacessunt,</i>	
<i>ille pedum melior mōtū frētusque iuventā,</i>	430

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw  
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous  
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, even\*  
aequus, a, um equal, even, just, fair  
ambō, ae, ō both  
amictus, ūs m. cloak, wrap, mantle  
arduus, a, um lofty, upraised, steep\*  
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, lift  
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member\*  
auctor, ōris m. author, backer, founder  
bracchium, (i)ī n. forearm\*  
caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet  
cāneō, ēre, uī be white (gray, hoary)†  
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)\*  
Darēs, (ēt)is m. Trojan boxer  
digitus, i m. finger, toe†  
duplex, icis double, twofold  
efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus bring forth,  
raise\*  
Eryx, ycis m. Sicilian boxer, half-brother  
of Aeneas  
extemplō suddenly, immediately, forth-  
with  
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus doff, bare, remove  
frētus, a, um depending on (abl.)  
harēnā, ae f. sand, beach\*  
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust  
immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle  
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten  
interritus, a, um undaunted, fearless†

juventa, ae f. youth, young manhood  
lacertus, ī m. upper arm  
laccessō, ere, ivī (ii), itus provoke†  
longē (from) afar, far (away)\*  
melior, ius better, superior, preferable  
membrum, ī n. member, limb, body\*  
metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety\*  
mōtus, ūs m. movement, motion, agility  
necdum not yet  
os, ossis n. bone\*  
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
pār, paris equal, like, similar\*  
probō (1) test, try, prove, approve  
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, combat\*  
recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be re-  
luctant  
rejiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw back†  
remittō, ere, misi, missus let go, give up  
retrō back(ward), again  
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; suit\*  
senectūs, ūtis f. old age, eld, senility†  
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget\*  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), dismiss\*  
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
tempus, oris n. temple, brow  
tergum, ī n. back, hide; boxing glove\*  
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),  
both\*

415. aemula: jealous of my youthful strength.

418. Aenēae: dat. of reference.

419. tibi: dat. of reference. terga = caestūs.

421. rejēcit: pronounce rejēcīt here, making the first syllable long by position.

422. lacertōsque: hypermetric; App. 402.

424. Anchīsā: abl. of source; App. 323.

426. in digitōs (pedum), on their toes.

429. They begin by sparring.

430-431. ille, hic: the former (Dares), the latter (Entellus).

- hic membris et mōle valēns; sed tarda trementī  
genua labant, vastōs quatit aeger anhelitus artūs.  
Multa virī nēquiquam inter sē vulnera jactant,  
multa cavō laterī ingeminant et pectore vastōs  
435 dant sonitūs, erratque aurīs et tempora circum  
crēbra manus, dūrō crepitant sub vulnere mālae.  
Stat gravis Entellus nīsūque immōtus eodem  
corpore tēla modo atque oculīs vigilantibus exit.  
Ille, velut celsam oppugnat quī mōlibus urbem  
440 aut montāna sedet circum castella sub armīs,  
nunc hōs, nunc illōs aditūs, omnemque pererrat  
arte locum et variīs adsubtilibus inritus urget.  
Ostendit dextram insurgēns Entellus et altē  
extulit: ille ictum venientem ā vertice vēlōx  
445 praevidit celerique ēlāpsus corpore cessit;  
Entellus virīs in ventum effudit et ultrō*

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access  
adsultus, ūs *m.* assault, attack†  
aeger, gra, grum sick, painful, weary\*  
altē (on) high, lofty  
anhēlitus, ūs *m.* panting, gasping  
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning\*  
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member\*  
auris, is *f.* ear\*  
castellum, i *n.* fort, castle, fastness†  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, withdraw\*  
celer, eris, ere quick, swift, speedy, fast\*  
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering\*  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated\*  
crepitō (1) rattle, crash, rustle  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus bring forth, lift\*  
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out\*  
ēlābor, i, lāpsus slip (out, aside)  
Entellus, i *m.* Sicilian boxer  
exeō, ire, ii (ivi), itus go out, escape  
genū, ūs *n.* knee  
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust  
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable  
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate  
inritus, a, um useless, ineffectual  
insurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise (on)

jactō (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling\*  
labō (1) totter, stagger, waver  
latus, eris *n.* side, flank\*  
māla, ae *f.* jaw  
membrum, i *n.* member, limb, body\*  
modo only, (just) now  
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, bulk; war engine\*  
montānus, a, um mountain(ous)  
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
nīsus, ūs *m.* effort, strain, po(i)se  
oppugnō (1) attack, storm, assault†\*  
ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display\*  
pererrō (1) wander over, survey, traverse  
praevidēō, ēre, vidī, visus foresee†  
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter  
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; encamp\*  
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, noise, roar  
tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy, retarded  
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow  
tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quaver\*  
ultrō further, voluntarily\*  
urgeō, ēre, ursī press (hard), push, urge  
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able  
varius, a, um varying, different, diverse\*  
vēlōx, ōcis swift, quick, fleet, fast  
velut(i) as, just as\*  
vertex, icis *m.* summit, head, top, peak\*  
vigilāns, antis watchful, watching  
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow\*

431. (ei) trementī: dat. of reference.

432. genua: pronounce as two syllables here, genva; App. 401.

434. multa (vulnera).

439. An attempt to capture a city by assault. Ille: Dares.

440. Siege operations.

444. ā vertice: from above.





THE VENUS OF MELOS

*Louvre*



*Alinari, Rome*

*Vatican Museum*

APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE

On his back, a quiver full of arrows. His right hand draws back the string,  
and with his left he holds his bow.

*ipse gravis graviterque ad terram pondere vastō  
concidit, ut quondam cava concidit aut Erymanthō  
aut Idā in magnā rādīcibus ēruta pīnus.*

*Cōnsurgunt studiīs Teucrī et Trinacria pūbēs;* 450  
*it clāmor caelō prīmusque accurrit Acestēs  
aequaevumque ab humō miserāns attollit amīcum.*

*At nōn tardātus cāsū neque territus hērōs  
ācrior ad pugnam redit ac vim suscitāt irā;*  
*tum pudor incendit virīs et cōnschia virtūs,* 455  
*praecipitemque Darēn ardēns agit aequore tōtō  
nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā.*

*Nec mora nec requiēs: quam multā grandine nimbi  
culminibus crepitant, sic dēnsis ictibus hērōs  
crēber utrāque manū pulsāt versatque Darēta.* 460

*Tum pater Aenēās prōcēdere longius irās  
et saevire animīs Entellum haud passus acerbīs,*

accurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run up†  
acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce\*  
acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad  
aequaevus, a, um equal-aged, of the  
same age  
amicus, i m. friend, lover, comrade\*  
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise\*  
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
concidō, ere, i fall (in a heap)  
cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware  
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant\*  
crepitō (1) rattle, crash, rustle  
culmen, inis n. peak, summit, roof, top\*  
Darēs, (ēt)is, acc. ēn (ēta), m. Trojan  
boxer  
dēnsus, a, um thick, frequent, constant\*  
Entellus, i m. Sicilian boxer  
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin  
Erymanthus, i m. Greek mountain†  
grandō, inis f. hail(stone, storm)  
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
graviter heavily, grievously, seriously  
hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
humus, i f. ground, soil, earth\*  
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust  
Idā, ae f. mountain near Troy  
incendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, burn\*  
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiter-  
ate

longē far, (from) afar\*  
miseror, ari, ātus pity, commiserate\*  
mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm\*  
patior, i, passus endure, suffer, allow\*  
pinus, ūs (i) f. pine tree  
pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass  
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance  
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men\*  
pudor, ōris m. (sense of) shame, honor  
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, com-  
bat\*  
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb  
quam how, than, as\*  
rādix, icis f. root  
redeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus return  
requiēs, ētis (ēi) f. rest, respite, re-  
pose  
saeviō, ire, ivī (iī), itus rage, storm  
sinister, tra, trum left (hand)  
studium, (i)ī n. desire, zeal, eagerness  
suscitō (1) (a)rouse, stir up  
tardō (1) check, hinder, retard  
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
Trinacrius, a, um Sicilian  
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),  
both\*  
versō (1) keep turning, spin, revolve  
virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence, valor\*

448-449. cava pinus. (in) Eryman-  
thō. rādīcibus: abl. of separation.

451. caelō = ad caelum: dat. of di-  
rection; App. 306.

456. aequore: over the plain; abl. of

route; App. 338. Darēn: acc., a Greek  
form; App. 66.

458. quam multā grandine: as thick  
as the hail.

460. Darēta: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

- sed finem imposuit pugnae fessumque Darēta  
ēripuit mulcēns dictis ac tālia fatur:*  
465 "*Infelix, quae tanta animum dēmentia cēpit?*  
*Nōn viris aliās conversaque nūmina sentis?*  
*Cēde deō.*" *Dixitque et proelia vōce dirēmit.*  
*Ast illum fidī aequālēs genua aegra trahentem*  
470 *jactantemque utrōque caput crassumque cruōrem*  
*ōre ējectantem mixtōsque in sanguine dentēs*  
*dūcunt ad nāvīs; galeamque ēnsemque vocātī*  
*accipiunt, palmam Entellō taurumque relinquunt.*  
*Hic victor superāns animis taurōque superbus*  
475 "*Nāte deā, vōsque haec*" inquit "*cognōscite, Teucrī,*  
*et mihi quae fuerint juvenālī in corpore virēs*  
*et quā servētis revocātum ā morte Darēta.*"  
*Dixit, et adversī contrā stetit ōra juvencī*  
*quī dōnum astābat pugnae, dūrōsque reductā*  
480 *librāvit dextrā media inter cornua caestūs*  
*arduus, effrāctōque inlisit in ossa cerebrō:*  
*sternitur exanimisque tremēns prōcumbit humī bōs.*

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing\*  
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, painful, weary\*  
**aequalis, is m. (f.)** comrade, mate  
**arduus, a, um** high, upraised, steep\*  
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (near, by)\*  
**bōs, bovis m. (f.)** bull, ox, cow  
**caestus, ūs m.** boxing glove, gauntlet  
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, retire\*  
**cerebrum, i n.** brain  
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn, recog-  
nize; *perf.* know  
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*)\*  
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change  
**cornū, ūs n.** horn, tip, end  
**crassus, a, um** thick, clotted, coarse†  
**crur, ōris m.** blood, gore  
**Darēs, (ēt)is, acc. ēn (ēta), m.** Trojan  
boxer  
**dēmentia, ae f.** madness, folly, frenzy†  
**dēns, dentis m.** tooth  
**dirimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** separate, end†  
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
**effringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** shatter†  
**ējectō (1)** cast out, vomit, eject†  
**ēnsis, is m.** sword, knife\*  
**Entellus, i m.** Sicilian boxer  
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless  
**fidus, a, um** faithful, safe, trusty\*

**galea, ae f.** helmet  
**genū, ūs n.** knee  
**humus, i f.** ground, soil, earth\*  
**impōnō, ere, posui, positus** place (on)  
(*dat.*)\*  
**inlidō, ere, sī, sus** strike in, dash (in, on)  
**inquam, is, it** say\*  
**jactō (1)** toss, hurl, buffet, fling\*  
**juvenālis, e** youthful, young  
**juvencus, i m.** bullock, bull, ox\*  
**librō (1)** poise, balance, brandish†  
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle\*  
**mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus** soothe, calm, allay  
**os, ossis n.** bone\*  
**palma, ae f.** palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
**prōcumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus** sink for-  
ward, fall; recline  
**proelium, (i) i n.** battle, fight, contest  
**pugna, ae f.** battle, fight, contest, combat\*  
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw back  
**revocō (1)** recall, call back, restore  
**sentio, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus** feel, perceive  
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay (low), fell\*  
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty\*  
**superō (1)** surpass, win, triumph\*  
**taurus, i m.** bull, ox, bullock\*  
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake\*  
**utrōque** to each side, from side to side†

466. *conversa nūmina*: the gods have deserted you and are on the side of Entellus, to whom they have given new strength (*aliās virēs*).

473. *taurō*: abl. of cause.

481. The monosyllabic ending suggests the thud of the falling animal.



*Ille super tālis effundit pectore vōcēs:*

*"Hanc tibi, Eryx, meliōrem animam prō morte Darētis persolvō; hīc victor caestūs artemque repōnō."*

Prōtinus Aenēās celerī certāre sagittā 485  
 invitat quī forte velint et praemia dīcūt,  
 ingentīque manū mālum dē nāve Serestī  
 ērigit et volucrem trājectō in fūne columbam,  
 quō tendant ferrum, mālō suspendit ab altō.  
 Convēnere virī dējectamque aerea sortem 490  
 accēpit galeā; et prīmus clāmōre secundō  
 Hyrtacidae ante omnīs exit locus Hippocoōntis;  
 quem modo nāvālī Mnēstheus certāmine victor  
 cōnsequitur, viridī Mnēstheus ēvīctus olivā.  
 Tertius Eurytiōn, tuus, Ō clārissime, frāter, 495

aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad  
 ars, artis f. art, skill, stratagem, cunning\*  
 caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet  
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet\*  
 certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle\*  
 certō (1) struggle, compete, contest, vie  
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
 columba, ae f. dove, pigeon  
 cōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake  
 conveniō, ire, vēni, ventus assemble  
 Darēs, (ēt)is, acc. ēn (ēta), m. Trojan boxer  
 dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast (down)  
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out\*  
 ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus erect, raise  
 Eryx, ycis m. Sicilian boxer, half-brother  
 of Aeneas  
 Eurytiōn, ōnis m. Lycian archer, ally of  
 the Trojans†  
 ēvinciō, ire, vīnxī, vīctus bind, wreath  
 exeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus go forth, escape  
 frāter, tris m. brother\*  
 fūnis, is m. rope, cord, cable  
 galea, ae f. helmet  
 Hippocoōn, ontis m. Trojan archer†  
 Hyrtacidēs, ae m. son of Hyrtacus, a  
 Trojan†

invitō (1) invite, challenge, summon, in-  
 duce  
 mālus, ī m. mast, staff, pole†  
 melior, ius better, preferable, superior\*  
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader\*  
 modo only, (just) now  
 nāvālis, e naval, of the ships  
 oliva, ae f. olive  
 persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay (fully),  
 render  
 praemium, (i)ī n. reward, prize, premium\*  
 prō before, in behalf of, for (abl.)\*  
 prōtinus immediately, continuously  
 repōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, re-  
 sign\*  
 sagitta, ae f. arrow, bolt, shaft  
 secundus, a, um second, favorable\*  
 Serestus, ī m. Trojan leader  
 sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion; ora-  
 cle\*  
 suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus suspend\*  
 tertius, a, um third\*  
 trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus pass (through,  
 across, over, around)  
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*  
 volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift\*

483. meliōrem: as a more acceptable offering to the god than would be the life of a man.

485-544. Eurytion is first in archery, but the first prize is awarded to Acetes, on account of his age and dignity and because his arrow shot at random into the sky miraculously took fire and left behind a trail of light.

486. invitat (eōs) quī velint: implied indir. disc.; App. 357.

488. trājectō: thrown over (the mast).

489. quō tendant ferrum (= sagittam): rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

490. sortem: the lots were placed in a helmet which was then shaken. The order in which the lots fell out of the helmet determined the order in which the contestants were to try their skill.

491-492. prīmus exit locus: Hippocoōn's lot was the first to fall out.

493. victor: he had won second place.

- Pandare, *quā quondam jussus cōfundere foedus  
in mediōs tēlum torsistī prīmus Achīvōs.*  
Extrēmus galeāque imā subsēdit Acestēs,  
ausus et ipse manū juvenum temptāre labōrem.  
500 Tum validis flexōs incurvant viribus arcūs  
prō sē quisque viri et dēprōmunt tēla pharetrīs,  
prīmaque per caelum nervō stridente sagitta  
Hyrtacidae juvenis volucrīs diverberat aurās,  
et venit adversique infigitur arbore māli.  
505 Intremuit mālus timuitque exterrita pennīs  
āles, et ingentī sonuērunt omnia plausū.  
Post ācer Mnēstheus adductō cōstitit arcū  
alta petēns, pariterque oculōs tēlumque tetendit.  
Ast ipsam miserandus avem contingere ferrō  
510 nōn valuit; nōdōs et vincula linea rūpit

ācer, *cris, cre* sharp, spirited, fierce\*  
Achīvus, *a, um* Achaeān, Greek  
addūcō, *ere, dūxī, ductus* draw (to)  
adversus, *a, um* opposite, facing\*  
āles, *itis m. (f.)* bird, fowl  
altum, *i n.* the deep (sea); the height,  
heaven  
arbōs (or), *oris f.* tree, wood(s)\*  
arcus, *ūs m.* bow, arch, arc\*  
audeō, *ēre, ausus sum* dare, venture\*  
avis, *is f.* bird, fowl  
cōfundō, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* confuse,  
shatter  
cōnstō, *āre, stitī, status* stand (fast)  
contingō, *ere, tigī, tāctus* touch, reach\*  
dēprōmō, *ere, mpsī, mptus* draw forth†  
diverberō (1) strike apart, divide, cleave,  
cut†  
exterreō, *ēre, uī, itus* terrify, frighten  
extrēmus, *a, um* last, final, extreme\*  
flectō, *ere, flexī, flexus* curve, bend  
foedus, *eris n.* treaty, agreement, truce  
galea, *ae f.* helmet  
Hyrtacidēs, *ae m.* son of Hyrtacus, a  
Trojan archer  
incurvō (1) bend, arch, curve†  
infigō, *ere, xī, xus* fasten in, impale  
intremō, *ere, uī* tremble, quiver, shake†  
juvenis, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,  
woman)\*  
lineus, *a, um* of linen, flaxen†  
mālus, *i m.* mast, staff, pole

miseror, *ārī, ātus* pity, commiserate\*  
Mnēstheus, *ei (eos) m.* Trojan leader\*  
nervus, *i m.* tendon, bowstring†  
nōdus, *i m.* knot, fold, coil  
Pandarus, *i m.* Lycian archer, ally of the  
Trojans. While a truce was being ar-  
ranged between the Greeks and Trojans  
he was instigated by Minerva to wound  
Menelaüs, thus breaking the truce†  
pariter equally, side by side\*  
penna, *ae, f.* wing, feather  
pharetra, *ae f.* quiver  
plausus, *ūs m.* clapping, applause  
post after, behind (*acc.*); later\*  
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)\*  
quisque, *quaeque, quidque* (quodque)  
each (one), every (one)  
rumpō, *ere, rūpī, ruptus* break, burst  
(forth)\*  
sagitta, *ae f.* arrow, bolt, shaft  
sonō, *āre, uī, itus* (re)sound, roar\*  
strid(e)ō, *ēre, i* hiss, whirl, buzz, crash  
subsīdō, *ere, sēdī, sessus* subside, re-  
main†  
temptō (1) try, test, attempt; exam-  
ine\*  
timeō, *ēre, uī* fear, dread, be anxious\*  
torqueō, *ēre, rsi, rtus* twist, whirl, shoot\*  
valeō, *ēre, uī, itus* be strong, be able  
validus, *a, um* strong, mighty, stout  
vinc(u)lum, *i n.* fastening, band, cord\*  
volucer, *cris, cre* winged, swift, fleet

496. jussus (ā Minervā).

498. Acestēs = sors Aestae. Aestes's  
lot came out last.

499. et ipse: in spite of the fact that  
he was well advanced in years (aevi  
mātūrus, of l. 73).

501. quisque prō sē: each for himself,  
quisque being in partitive apposition with  
virī.

505. timuit pennīs: fluttered its wings  
in terror (feared by flapping its wings).

508. alta petēns: aiming aloft.

*quīs innexa pedem mālō pendēbat ab altō;  
illa Notōs atque alta volāns in nūbila fugit.*

*Tum rapidus, jamdūdum arcū contenta paratō  
tēla tenēns, frātre Eurytiōn in vōta vocāvit,  
jam vacuō laetam caelō speculātus et ālis* 515  
*plaudentem nigrā figit sub nūbe columbam.*

*Dēcidit exanimis vltamque reliquit in astrīs  
aetheriīs fixamque refert dēlāpsa sagittam.*

*Amisā sōlus palmā superābat Acestēs,  
qui tamen aeriās tēlum contorsit in aurās* 520  
*ostentāns artemque pater arcumque sonantem.*

*Hīc oculīs subitum objicitur magnōque futurum  
auguriō mōnstrum; docuit post exitus ingēns  
sēraque terrificī cecinērunt ōmina vātēs.*

*Namque volāns liquidīs in nūbibus arsit harundō* 525  
*signāvitque viam flammīs tenuisque recessit*

**ærius, a, um** airy, lofty, towering  
**aetherius, a, um** of the upper air, ethereal  
**āla, ae f.** wing\*  
**āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus** let go, lose\*  
**arcus, ūs m.** bow, arch, arc\*  
**ars, artis f.** art, skill, stratagem, cunning\*  
**astrum, ī n.** star, constellation\*  
**augurium, (i) ī n.** omen, portent, augury  
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant,  
predict, proclaim\*  
**columba, ae f.** dove, pigeon  
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, aim, strive  
**contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus** twist, whirl,  
shoot  
**dēcidō, ere, ī** fall, drop†  
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide down, descend  
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform\*  
**Eurytiōn, ōnis m.** Lycian archer, brother  
of Pandarus, ally of Troy  
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless  
**exitus, ūs m.** outcome, result  
**figō, ere, xi, xus** fix, pierce, imprint\*  
**frāter, tris m.** brother\*  
**harundō, inis f.** reed, arrow, shaft  
**innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** tie, fasten  
**jamdūdum** long since, for some time  
**liquidus, a, um** liquid, fluid, clear  
**mālus, ī m.** mast, staff, pole  
**mōnstrum, ī n.** portent, monster, sign\*

**niger, gra, grum** black, dusky\*  
**Notus, ī m.** (south) wind  
**nūbēs, is f.** cloud, fog, mist\*  
**nūbila, ōrum n.** clouds, cloudiness  
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** oppose (to),  
present (to)  
**ōmen, inis n.** omen, portent, token\*  
**ostentō (1)** exhibit, show, display, parade  
**palma, ae f.** palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang\*  
**plaudō, ere, si, sus** clap, flap†  
post after, behind (*acc.*); later\*  
**rapidus, a, um** swift, quick, whirling\*  
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, dis-  
appear  
**sagitta, ae f.** arrow, bolt, shaft  
**sērus, a, um** (too) late, tardy  
**signō (1)** mark, observe, note, notice  
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar\*  
**specular, āri, ātus** spy (out), watch  
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected  
**superō (1)** surmount, surpass, remain\*  
tamen however, nevertheless, but\*  
**tenuis, e** thin, slight, fine, delicate  
**terrificus, a, um** terrifying, dire†  
**vacuus, a, um** empty, free, vacant  
**volō (1)** fly, speed, flit, flutter\*  
**vōtum, ī n.** vow, prayer, (votive) offer-  
ing\*

511. **quīs = quibus:** App. 109, *c. pe-*  
*dem:* obj. of the middle part. **innexa;**  
App. 309, *a.*

512. (in) **Notōs.**

514. **tēla:** poetic plural. **frātre:**  
Pandarus, patron saint of archery.

518. **fixam (in corpore).** **refert (ad**  
**terram).**

521. **pater:** with the final syllable  
lengthened under the metrical accent  
and before the pause; App. 394, *a.*

522-523. **mōnstrum subitum futurum-**  
**que magnō auguriō.**

523. **auguriō:** dat. of purpose; App.  
303. **prō:** adv., *afterward.*

524. **sēra:** the seers chanted forth the

- cōnsūmpta in ventōs: caelō ceu saepe refixa  
trānscurrunt crīnemque volandia sīdera dūcunt.  
Attonitīs haesēre animīs superōsque precātī  
530 Trīnacrīi Teucrīque virī, nec maximus ōmen  
abnuī Aenēās, sed laetum amplexus Acestēn  
mūneribus cumulat magnīs ac tālia fātur;  
"Sūme, pater: nam tē voluit rēx magnus Olympī  
tālībus auspiciīs exsortem dūcere honōrēs.  
535 Ipsius Anchīsae longaevī hoc mūnus habēbis,  
crātēra impressum signīs, quem Thrācius ōlim  
Anchīsae genitōrī in magnō mūnere Cisseus  
ferre suū dederat monimentum et pignus amōris."  
Sīc fātus cingit viridantī tempora laurō  
540 et prīmum ante omnīs victōrem appellat Acestēn.  
Nec bonus Eurytiōn praelātō invidit honōrī,

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod dissent, deny,  
reject  
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold\*  
appellō (1) name, call, address, proclaim†  
attonō, āre, uī, itus stupefy, astound  
auspiciū, (i) ī n. auspice, omen, sign  
bonus, a, um good (ly), kind (ly), noble\*  
ceu as, just as  
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīctus surround, en-  
circle\*  
Cisseus, eī m. king of Thrace and father  
of Hecuba, wife of Priam†  
cōnsūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus consume  
crātēr, ēris, acc. ēra, m. mixing bowl  
crīnis, is m. hair, (flowing) train, locks\*  
cumulō (1) heap up, load (down), increase  
Eurytiōn, ōnis m. Lycian archer, ally of  
Troy  
exsors, rtis choice, special, exempt from  
lot†  
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling to (dat.);  
halt, be amazed\*  
imprimō, ere, pressi, pressus impress,  
embrace  
invidēō, ēre, vīdī, visus begrudge, envy  
(dat.)\*

laurus, ī (ūs) f. laurel  
longaevus, a, um aged, long-lived  
monimentum (monumentum) ī n. re-  
minder, memorial  
ōlim formerly, once, at some time\*  
Olympus, ī m. high mountain in Thessaly,  
home of the gods, heaven  
ōmen, inis n. omen, portent, token\*  
pignus, oris n. pledge, token, proof  
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus prefer†  
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*  
refigō, ere, xī, xus unfasten. The ancients  
thought stars were fixed, a belief per-  
petuated in the term *fixed stars*.  
saepe often, frequently\*  
signum, ī n. sign, figure, mark, carv-  
ing\*  
sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, use, select  
tempus, oris n. temple, brow  
Thrācius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace†  
trānscurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run  
across†  
Trīnacrīus, a, um Sicilian  
viridāns, antis green, verdant, flourish-  
ing  
volō, (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

omens (interpretation) late; i.e., after the  
event had taken place. It is uncertain  
to what event the poet here refers.

527. (dē) caelō.

530-531. nec ōmen abnuī: the Ro-  
mans immediately accepted omens which  
they thought were good, by saying,  
"Ōmen accipiō." They refused to ac-  
cept those which they considered of evil  
portent. By this method they hoped to  
secure the advantages and avoid the dis-  
advantages of the various prodigies sent

as signs by the gods. laetum: apparently  
Acestes also considers it a good omen.

534. exsortem: a term applied to a  
part of the booty excepted from the  
general distribution by lot (sors) and  
bestowed upon some warrior who had  
especially distinguished himself.

538. ferre: inf. of purpose; App. 261.  
suī: obj. gen. with monimentum; App.  
284.

539. tempora (Acestae).

541. Nec praelātō invidit honōrī: bē-



quamvis sōlus avem caelō dējēcit ab altō.

Proximus ingreditur dōnīs quī vincula rūpit,  
extrēmus volucrī quī fixit harundine mālum.

At pater Aenēās nōndum certāmine missō

545

custōdem ad sēsē comitemque impūbis Iūli

Ēpytidēn vocat, et fidam sic fātur ad aurem:

"Vāde age et Ascaniō, sī jam puerile parātum

agmen habet sēcum cursūque instrūxit equōrum,

dūcat avō turmās et sēsē ostendat in armīs

550

dic" ait. Ipse omnem longō discēdere circō

infūsum populū et campōs jubet esse patentīs.

Incēdunt puerī pariterque ante ōra parentum

frēnātīs lūcent in equīs, quōs omnis euntīs

Trīnaciae mirāta fremit Trojaeque juventūs.

555

Omnibus in mōrem tōnsā coma coronā;

Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas\*

auris, is f. ear\*

avis, is f. bird, fowl

avus, ī m. grandfather, ancestor

certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle\*

circus, ī m. circle, race course, circuit

coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses\*

corōna, ae f. wreath, garland, crown

custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*

dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus strike down

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw

Ēpytidēs, ae m. son of Epytus, a Trojan†

extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme\*

fidus, a, um faithful, safe, trusty\*

figō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint\*

fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, applaud\*

frēnō (1) bridle, curb, check, restrain

harundō, inis f. reed, arrow (shaft)

impūbēs, is youthful, boyish†

incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance, stride

infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour in

ingredior, ī, gressus advance, enter

instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array, ar-

range, equip

Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*

juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men\*

lūcēō, ēre, lūxī shine, glisten, gleam†

mālus, ī m. mast, staff, pole

mīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire\*

mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, man-

ner\*

nōndum not yet

ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, exhibit\*

pariter equally, evenly, side by side\*

pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend

populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*

premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press\*

proximus, a, um next, closest

puerilis, e boyish, of boys†

quamvis although, as (much as) you wish

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst

(forth)\*

tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip

Trīnacia, ae f. Sicily

turma, ae f. band, troop, company†

vādō, ere go (on), proceed

vinc(u)lum, ī n. bond, fastening, cable\*

volucer, cris, cre winged, swift; fleet\*

grudged not the honor (to Acestes) preferred (to his own).

543. dōnīs: abl. of respect with proximus; App. 325.

545-603. Ascanius and the noblest of the Trojan youth stage equestrian games and a sham battle in honor of the sainted Anchises.

547. fidam ad aurem: secretly. Aeneas plans a surprise for the spectators.

548-551. Ascaniō dic: observe the shorter form of the imperatives, dic, dūc, fac, fer; App. 202. (ut) dūcat, (ut)

ostendat: indir. commands; App. 390. avō (Anchisae): dat. of reference, in honor of his grandfather. Ipse (Aenēās): see note on I, 42. longō circō: the space cleared was oblong, not round.

554-555. quōs euntīs: obj. of mirāta. omnis juventūs.

556. in mōrem = dē mōre: according to custom. Vergil is here representing that this sport (the Lūdus Trojae), which was an annual affair at Rome in his own day, was of great and revered antiquity. See the note on Iliacis lūdis, III, 280. pressa (est).

cornea bīna *ferunt* praefixa hastilia *ferrō*,  
pars lēvis *umerō* pharetrās; *it pectore summū*  
flexilis obtortī *per* collum circulus *aurī*.

560

Trēs equitum *numerō* turmae ternique *vagantur*  
ductōrēs; *puerī* bis sēnī *quemque secūtī*  
*agmine* partitō *fulgent* paribusque *magistrīs*.  
*Ūna* aciēs *juvenum*, *dūcit* *quam* parvus *ovantem*  
*nōmen* *avī referēns* Priamus, *tua* clāra, Politē,  
prōgeniēs, auctūra Italōs; *quem* Thrācius albīs  
portat *equus* bicolor *maculīs*, *vestigia* *prīmī*  
*alba pedis* *frontemque* *ostentāns* arduus *albam*.  
Alter Atys, *genus* unde Atiū *dūxere* Latīnī,  
parvus Atys *puerōque* *puer* dilēctus Iūlō.

565

aciēs, ēi *f.* edge, battle-line, army\*  
albus, a, um white\*  
alter, era, erum the other (of two), the  
one (of two)\*  
arduus, a, um high, lofty, steep\*  
Atius, (i)ī *m.* famous Roman family†  
Atys, yos *m.* a Trojan†  
augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus increase, mag-  
nify†  
avus, ī *m.* grandfather, ancestor  
bicolor, ōris dappled, of two colors†  
bini, ae, a two (each), by twos  
bis twice\*  
circulus, ī *m.* circlet, necklace†  
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious\*  
collum, ī *n.* neck\*  
corneus, a, um of cornel wood, cornel  
diligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus love, cherish  
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, guide, chief  
eques, itis *m.* horseman, knight  
flexilis, e pliant, flexible†  
frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, brow\*  
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi gleam, glitter, shine  
hastile, is *n.* spear(shaft)  
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy  
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
juvenis, is *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man,  
woman)\*  
Latinus, a, um Latin, of Latium, Roman

lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery  
macula, ae *f.* spot, stain, splotch  
magister, tri *m.* master, trainer, chief  
numerus, ī *m.* number, throng, order\*  
obtorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist†  
ostentō (1) show, display, exhibit, pa-  
rade  
ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph  
pār, paris equal, similar, like, even; pair\*  
partior, iri, itus divide, part, distribute  
parvus, a, um small, little\*  
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver  
Politēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader, legendary  
founder of Politorium, an Italian city  
portō (1) bear, carry, convey, bring\*  
praefigō, ere, xi, xus tip, point†  
Priamus, ī *m.* a Trojan, grandson of  
Priam, king of Troy†  
prōgeniēs, ēi *f.* progeny, descendant  
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)  
each (one)  
sēnī, ae, a six (each), by sixes  
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes  
Thrācius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace  
trēs, tria three\*  
turma, ae *f.* band, troop, company  
unde whence, from which source\*  
vagor, āri, ātus wander, roam, stray  
vestigium, (i)ī *n.* foot(print), step, track\*

557-558. (pars) *ferunt*, pars (ferunt).  
pectore summō: *at their throats*; abl. of  
place; App. 319, 246.

559. per = circum.

560. turmae equitum (sunt) trēs  
numerō: abl. of respect; App. 325.

561. quemque (ductōrem). bis sēnī:  
thus making thirty-six boys, in addition  
to their three leaders.

562. magistris: the ductōrēs of l. 561.  
agmine partitō (in trīs turmās).

563. aciēs (est).

564. Politē: voc., a Greek form; App.  
66.

565. auctūra Italōs: by his descendants  
and great achievements. According to  
legend, the Italian city Politorium was  
founded by Polites.

566-567. primī pedis: *the first (part)*  
*of the foot*, just above the hoof; App. 246.

568. Alter (ductor est) Atys. Atys,  
Atiū: more fanciful etymologizing.

569. puerōque puer dilēctus Iūlō: a  
fine touch of the poet in representing

Extrēmus formāque ante omnīs pulcher Iūlus  
Sidoniō est invecus equō, quem candida Dīdō  
esse suū dederat monimentum et pignus amōris.  
Cētera Trinacriīs pūbēs seniōris Aestae  
fertur equīs.

Excipiunt plausū pavidōs gaudentque tuentēs  
Dardanidae, veterumque agnōscunt ōra parentum.

Postquam omnem laetī cōsēssum oculōsque suōrum  
lūstrāvēre in equīs, signum clāmōre parātīs  
Ēpytidēs longē dedit insonuitque flagellō.

Ollī discurrēre parēs atque agmina ternī  
diductīs solvēre chorīs, rūrsusque vocātī  
convertēre viās infēstaque tēla tulēre.

Inde aliōs ineunt cursūs aliōsque recursūs  
adversī spatiīs, alternōsque orbibus orbīs

adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
alternus, a, um alternate, alternating  
candidus, a, um lustrous, white, fair†  
cēterus, a, um other, remaining, rest  
chorus, i m. band, train, chorus  
cōsēssus, ūs m. assembly, crowd  
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change  
Dardanidēs, ae m. Trojan, Dardanian  
didūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw apart  
discurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run apart†  
Ēpytidēs, ae m. son of Epytus, a Trojan  
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, welcome  
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme\*  
flagellum, i n. whip, scourge, lash†  
forma, ae f. form, beauty, shape\*  
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult  
inde thence, thereupon, next\*  
ineō, ire, īi (īvī), itus enter, undertake  
infēstus, a, um hostile, threatening  
insonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar  
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey  
Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
longē (from) afar, far (away)\*

lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify\*  
monimentum (monumentum), i n. re-  
minder, memorial  
orbis, is m. circle, orb(it), earth\*  
pār, paris equal, similar, like, even; pair\*  
pavidus, a, um fearful, nervous, timid  
pignus, oris n. pledge, token, proof  
plausus, ūs m. clapping, applause  
postquam after (that), when\*  
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men\*  
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-  
some, noble, splendid, illustrious\*  
recursus, ūs m. a running back, retreat†  
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire  
Sidonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a  
Phoenician city  
signum, i n. sign, signal, token, mark\*  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), separate\*  
spatium, (i) i n. space, place, interval  
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes  
Trinacrius, a, um Sicilian  
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, gaze (on)\*  
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

Atys, the ancestor of the Atii, as a bosom friend of Iulus, the ancestor of the Julii. Octavius (Augustus) Caesar was by birth a member of the gens Atia, Julius Caesar of the gens Jūlia. puerō Iūlō: dat. of agent; App. 302.

572. esse: inf. of purpose; App. 261. sui monimentum.

575. (eōs puerōs) pavidōs: shy, nervous, since they were unaccustomed to performing in public.

576. agnōscunt (in pueris).

579. flagellō: abl. of means.

580-582. Vergil is apparently describing the intricate movements of the Lūdus Trojae, which he had himself witnessed at Rome. The various figures and evolutions may be compared to those performed by a well-trained chorus of ballet dancers, with much apparent confusion but always preserving the strictest order. discurrēre, solvēre, tulēre = discurrērunt, etc. infēsta tēla: a sham battle, as pugnae simulācra in l. 585.

584. spatiīs: abl. of respect with adversī.

- 585 impediunt pugnaeque cient simulâcra sub armīs;  
*et nunc terga fugā nūdant, nunc spicula vertunt*  
*infēnsī, factā pariter nunc pāce feruntur.*  
*Ut quondam Crētā fertur Labyrinthus in altā*  
 590 parietibus textum caecis iter ancipitemque  
 mille viis habuisse dolum, quā signa sequendū  
 frangeret indēprēnsus et inremeābilis error:  
*haud aliō Teucrum nātī vestigia cursū*  
*impediunt texuntque fugās et proelia lūdō,*  
*delphīnum similēs quī per maria ūmida nandō*  
 595 Carpathium Libycumque secant (lūduntque per undās).  
*Hunc mōrem cursūs atque haec certāmina prīmus*  
*Ascanius, Longam mūrīs cum cingeret Albam,*  
*retrulit et priscōs docuit celebrāre Latīnōs,*  
*quō puer ipse modō, sēcum quō Trōia pūbēs;*

Alba, *ae f.* Alba Longa, a city in Latium, mother of Rome  
 anceps, cipitis doubtful, perplexing  
 Ascanius, (i) *m.* son of Aeneas\*  
 caecus, *a, um* blind, dark, hidden\*  
 Carpathius, *a, um* Carpathian, of Carpathus, an island of the Aegean Sea†  
 celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize  
 certāmen, inis *n.* contest, struggle\*  
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus stir, (a) rouse\*  
 cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround, gird (le)\*  
 Crēta, *ae f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean  
 delphīn, inis *m.* dolphin, a fish  
 doceō, ēre, ui, ctus teach, tell, inform\*  
 dolus, i *m.* deceit, puzzle, trick, fraud\*  
 error, ōris *m.* wandering, maze, error  
 frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus break (off)\*  
 impediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus hinder, entangle†  
 indēprēnsus, *a, um* undiscovered, insoluble†  
 infēnsus, *a, um* hostile, threatening  
 inremeābilis, *e* irtraceable†  
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
 Labyrinthus, i *m.* the Labyrinth, a famous structure in Crete built by Daedalus for King Minos and full of intricate, winding passages†  
 Latinus, *a, um* Latin, of Latium, Roman

Libycus, *a, um* Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa\*  
 Longa, *ae see* Alba  
 lūdō, ere, si, sus sport, play, mock  
 lūdus, i *m.* sport, play, game, contest  
 mille; *pl.* milia, ium *n.* thousand\*  
 modus, i *m.* manner, measure, limit\*  
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner\*  
 mūrus, i *m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
 nō (1) swim, float  
 nūdō (1) bare, expose, denude, strip  
 pariēs, etis *m.* (house) wall  
 pariter equally, evenly, side by side\*  
 pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, quiet, rest  
 priscus, *a, um* ancient, primitive†  
 proelium, (i) i *n.* battle, fight, contest, fray  
 pūbēs, is *f.* youth, (group of) young men\*  
 pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, contest, combat\*  
 quā where, whereby; in any (some) way  
 secō, āre, ui, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*  
 signum, i *n.* sign, signal, mark, token\*  
 similis, *e* like, similar (*gen., dat.*)\*  
 simulâcrum, i *n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom  
 spiculum, i *n.* spear, dart, arrow  
 tergum, i *n.* back, hide, rear\*  
 texō, ere, ui, xtus weave, intertwine  
 Trōius, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy\*  
 ūmidus, *a, um* moist, watery, wet  
 vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change\*  
 vestigium, (i) i *n.* step, track, trace\*

589. parietibus: pronounce parjetibus here; App. 401.

590-591. mille viis dolum: a maze with a thousand winding ways; abl. of quality. quā frangeret: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

593. lūdō: abl. of manner.

594. delphīnum: gen. with adj., similis; App. 287.

595. Carpathium Libycumque (mare).

599. quō modō puer ipse (celebrāvit), quō (modō) Trōia pūbēs (celebrāvit).



Albānī docuēre suōs; hinc maxima porrō	600
accēpit Rōma et patrium servāvit honōrem;	
Trojaque nunc puerī, Trojānum dicitur agmen.	
Hāc celebrāta tenus sāctō certāmina patrī.	
Hinc primum Fortūna fidem mūtata novāvit.	
Dum variīs tumulō referunt sollemnia lūdīs,	605
Īrim dē caelō mīsīt Sāturnia Jūnō	
Īliacam ad classem ventōsque aspirat euntī,	
multa movēns necdum antiquum saturāta dolōrem.	
Illa viam celerāns per mille colōribus arcum	
nullā vīsa citō dēcurrit trāmite virgō.	610
Cōspicit ingentem concursum et litora lūstrat	
dēsertōsque videt portūs classemque relictam.	
At procul in sōlā sēcētāe Trōades actā	
āmissum Anchīsēn flēbant, cūctaeque profundum	

acta, *ae f.* beach, shore†  
 Albānus, *a, um* Alban, of Alba Longa  
 āmittō, *ere, mīsī, missus* let go, lose\*  
 arcus, *ūs m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc\*  
 a(d)spirō (1) breathe (blow) upon  
 celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize  
 celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
 certāmen, *inis n.* contest, struggle, game\*  
 citus, *a, um* quick, swift  
 color, *ōris m.* color, hue, tint  
 concursus, *ūs m.* crowd, throng  
 cōspiciō, *ere, spexī, spectus* see, look at  
 dēcurro, *ere, (cū)currī, cursus* run down  
 dēsērō, *ere, uī, rtus* desert, forsake\*  
 doceō, *ēre, uī, ctus* teach, tell, inform\*  
 dolor, *ōris m.* grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
 fidēs, *ei f.* faith, protection, fidelity\*  
 fleō, *ēre, ēvī, ētus* weep, bewail, lament  
 hāc . . . tenus = hāctenus so far, still, yet†  
 Īliacus, *a, um* Trojan, Ilīan\*  
 Īris, *idis f.* goddess of the rainbow, messenger of Juno  
 lūdus, *i m.* sport, game, play, contest  
 lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify\*

mille; *pl.* milia, *ium n.* thousand\*  
 mūtō (1) change, transform, shift, alter\*  
 necdum not yet  
 novō (1) make new, alter  
 porrō further, in succession†  
 profundus, *a, um* deep, profound, vast  
 Rōma, *ae f.* Rome  
 sāctus, *a, um* holy, sainted, sacred\*  
 Sāturnius, *a, um* of Saturn, ancient Italian god of agriculture, father of Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several other gods  
 saturō (1) sate, assuage, fill, satisfy†  
 sēcētus, *a, um* remote, secluded, secret  
 sollemne, *is n.* ceremony, rite  
 tenus see hāc . . . tenus†  
 trāmes, *itis m.* path†  
 Trōas, *adis (ados) f.* Trojan woman†  
 Troja, *ae f.* Troy; name of an equestrian game†  
 Trojānus, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy\*  
 tumulus, *i m.* mound, tomb\*  
 varius, *a, um* varying, different, diverse\*  
 virgō, *inis f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*

602. puerī (dicuntur = vocantur) Troja = is cursus puerōrum dicitur Troja. dicitur = vocatur. Vergil is thus assigning a Trojan origin to these games and equestrian evolutions, which had in fact been instituted by Sulla and revived by Julius and Augustus Caesar. See Introd. 6.

603. Hāc . . . tenus = hāctenus: a case of tmesis or separation of a compound word into its original parts; App. 445. celebrāta (sunt) certāmina patrī (Anchisae).

604-663. Juno sends Iris from heaven to the Trojan women, who are weary of

their wanderings, and instigates them to set fire to the fleet, in the hope that Aeneas will be forced to give up his undertaking and to settle in Sicily.

604. novāvit: changed (from good to bad). See the note on novandis, IV, 290.

605. (in) tumulō.

607. (ei) eunti.

608. dolōrem: obj. of the middle part. saturāta; App. 309, a.

609-610. mille colōribus: abl. of quality; App. 330. Illa virgō = Īris. per arcum: down a rainbow. citō trāmite: abl. of the route.

- 615 pontum aspectābant flentēs. *Heu tot vada fessīs  
et tantum superesse maris, vōx omnibus ūna.  
Urbem ōrant, taedet pelagī perferre labōrem.*  
*Ergō inter mediās sēsē haud ignāra nocendi*  
conjicit *et faciemque deae vestemque repōnit;*  
620 fit Beroē, Tmarii *conjūnx* longaeva Doryclī,  
*cui genus et quondam nōmen nātique fuissent,*  
*ac sīc Dardanidum mediam sē mātibus infert.*  
*“Ō miserae, quās nōn manus” inquit “Achāica bellō*  
*trāxerit ad lētum patriae sub moenibus! Ō gēns*  
625 *īnfēlix, cui tē exitiō Fortūna reservat?*  
*Septima post Trojae excidium jam vertitur aestās,*  
*cum freta, cum terrās omnīs, tot inhospita saxa*  
*sīderaue ēmēnsae ferimur, dum per mare magnum*  
*Ītaliā sequimur fugientem et volvimur undīs.*  
630 *Hīc Erycis finēs frāternī atque hospes Aestēs:*  
*quis prohibet mūrōs jacere et dare cīvibus urbem?*

Achāicus, a, um Achaean, Greek  
aestās, ātis *f.* summer (time)  
a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold  
Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman†  
civis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot  
conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling  
Dardanis, idis *f.* Trojan woman  
Doryclus, i *m.* a Greek, husband of Beroē†  
ēmētor, iri, mēnsus measure off, trav-  
erse†  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
Eryx, ycis *m.* half-brother of Aeneas,  
settled in Sicily  
excidium, (i) *n.* destruction, downfall  
exitium, (i) *n.* destruction, doom  
faciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, face, aspect\*  
fiō, fieri, factus become, be made  
fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus weep, bewail, lament  
frāternus, a, um of a brother, fraternal  
fretum, i *n.* strait, sea, waters  
hospes, itis *m.* host, guest, stranger, friend  
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware\*  
inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear in(to)  
inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild  
inquam, is, it say\*

iaciō, ere, jēci, jactus throw (up), erect  
lētum, i *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*  
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived  
mūrus, i *m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
noceō, ēre, ui, itus harm, hurt†  
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*  
perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear, endure  
pontus, i *m.* sea, waves\*  
post after, behind (*acc.*); later\*  
prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus prevent, prohibit  
repōnō, ere, posui, positus replace, lay  
aside\*  
reservō (1) keep (back), reserve, save  
(up)  
septimus, a, um seventh  
supersum, esse, fui remain, be left  
taedet, ēre, uit, taesum it wearies  
Tmarius, a, um Tmarian, of Tmarus, a  
Greek mountain†  
tot so many, as many\*  
vadum, i *n.* shallow, sea  
vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, revolve, roll  
(round)\*  
vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

616. superesse: exclamatory inf.;  
App. 262. vōx (est) ūna (= eadem).

617. Urbem (deōs) ōrant: such verbs  
may take two accusatives, one of the  
person asked and the other of the thing  
requested; App. 316. taedet (eōs).

618. nocendi: gen. of the gerund with  
adj.; App. 287, 266.

619. (Iris) conjicit.

620-621. Beroē cui (magnum) genus  
et (magnum) nōmen nātique (multi)  
fuissent: rel. clause of characteristic,  
with accessory idea of cause; App.  
389.

623-624. trāxerit: causal rel. clause;  
App. 357. For a similar thought compare  
I, 94-96; III, 321-324.

627. freta (omnia).

Ō patria et raptī nēquiquam ex hoste penātēs,  
 nullane jam Trojae dicentur moenia? Nūsquam  
 Hectoreōs amnis, Xanthum et Simoēnta, vidēbō?  
 Quin agite et mēcum Infaustās exūrite puppīs.  
 Nam mihi Cassandrae per somnum vātis imāgō  
 ardentis dare vīsa facēs: 'Hīc quaerite Trojam;  
 hīc domus est' inquit 'vōbīs.' Jam tempus agī rēs,  
 nec tantis mora prōdigiis. En quattuor ārae  
 Neptūnō; deus ipse facēs animumque ministrat."  
 Haec memorāns prīma infēnsū vī corripit ignem  
 sublātāque procūl dextrā cōnixa coruscāt  
 et jacit. Arrēctae mentēs stupefactaque corda  
 Īliadum. Hīc ūna ē multīs, quae maxima nātū,  
 Pyrgō, tot Priamī nātōrum rēgia nūtrix:  
 "Nōn Beroē vōbīs, nōn haec Rhoetēia, matrēs,  
 est Doryclī conjūnx; dīvinī signa decōris  
 ardentisque notāte oculōs; quī spīritus illī,  
 quīs vultus vōcisque sonus vel gressus euntī.

635

640

645

amnis, is *m.* river, stream\*  
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, rouse  
 Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman  
 Cassandra, ae *f.* prophetess, daughter of  
 Priam, believed by none  
 cōnitor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle, strain  
 cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
 corripio, ere, uī, repts snatch (up)\*  
 coruscō (1) flash, wave, brandish†  
 decor, ōris *m.* beauty, grace, charm†  
 divinus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred  
 Doryclus, ī *m.* a Greek  
 ēn see! look! behold!  
 exūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn (up), con-  
 sume  
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand\*  
 gressus, ūs *m.* walk, gait, step, tread  
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan  
 leader  
 hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman, Ilian  
 imāgō, inis *f.* form, likeness, ghost\*  
 infaustus, a, um ill-omened, accursed†  
 infēnsus, a, um hostile, dangerous  
 inquam, is, it say\*  
 jaciō, ere, jēci, jactus throw (up), erect  
 memorō (1) recall, recount, relate\*

ministrō (1) tend, serve, furnish, provide  
 mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance\*  
 nātus, ūs *m.* (only in *abl. sing.*) birth†  
 Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea\*  
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 notō (1) observe, mark, note, notice  
 nūsquam nowhere, never  
 nūtrix, icis *f.* nurse  
 patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*  
 penātēs, ium *m.* household gods\*  
 prōdigium, (ī) *n.* omen, portent, prodigy  
 Pyrgō, ūs *f.* nurse of Priam's children†  
 quattuor four  
 quīn that not, but that, why not, nay  
 even\*  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), rob\*  
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly\*  
 Rhoetēius, a, um Rhoeteian, of Rhoeteūm,  
 a promontory near Troy, Trojan†  
 signum, ī *n.* sign, mark, signal, token\*  
 Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy  
 sonus, ī *m.* sound, tone, noise  
 spīritus, ūs *m.* spirit, air, life, soul  
 stupefaciō, ere, fēci, factus astound†  
 tot so many\*  
 vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect\*  
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

632. nēquiquam: if we must always wander.

633. dicentur = vocābuntur.

636. Cassandrae: eagerly accepted by the women here as prophesying something they want.

638. tempus (est) rēs agī: rēs being subject of the passive inf. agī.

639. nec tantis (est) morā prōdigiis: nor do such prodigies (dat.) admit delay.

644. quae maxima nātū (erat): who was oldest.

646. vōbīs: ethical dat.; App. 300.

648. quī spīritus (sit) illī: indir. quest. after notāte; App. 349.

- 650 *Ipsa egomet dūdum Beroēn digressa reliquī*  
*aegram, indignantem tālī quod sōla carēret*  
*mūnere nec meritōs Anchīsae inferret honōrēs."*  
*Haec effāta.*
- 655 *At matrēs prīmō ancipitēs oculisque malignis*  
*ambiguae spectāre ratēs miserum inter amōrem*  
*praesentis terrae fātisque vocantia rēgna:*  
*cum dea sē paribus per caelum sustulit ālis*  
*ingentemque fugā secuit sub nūbibus arcum.*
- 660 *Tum vērō attonitae mōnstris āctaeque furōre*  
*conclāmant, rapiuntque focis penetrālibus ignem*  
*(pars spoliānt ārās), frondem ac virgulta facēsque*  
*conjiunt. Furit immissis Volcānus habēnis*  
*trānstra per et rēmōs et pictās abiete puppīs.*
- 665 *Nuntius Anchīsae ad tumulum cuneōsque theātrī*  
*incēnsās perfert nāvīs Eumēlus, et ipsī*  
*respiciunt ātram in nimbō volitāre favillam.*

abiēs, etis *f.* fir  
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched\*  
 āla, ae *f.* wing\*  
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, hesitating  
 anceps, cipitis doubtful, uncertain  
 arcus, ūs *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc\*  
 attonitus, a, um amazed, astounded  
 Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman  
 careō, ēre, uī lack, have no part in (*abl.*)  
 conclāmō (1) shout, call, exclaim  
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling  
 cuneus, ei *m.* wedge, block (of seats)†  
 digredior, ī, gressus depart, separate  
 dūdum just now, lately  
 effor, āri, ātus speak, say, declare  
 Eumēlus, ī *m.* a Trojan†  
 favilla, ae *f.* cinder, ashes, embers  
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand\*  
 focus, ī *m.* fireplace, altar  
 frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, frond\*  
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy\*  
 habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check  
 immittō, ere, misī, missus let go, loose  
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire\*  
 indignor, āri, ātus disdain, fret  
 inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear to (*dat.*)

malignus, a, um hostile, spiteful†  
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
 mōnstrum, ī *n.* portent, omen, sign\*  
 nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm\*  
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist\*  
 nuntius, (i)ī *m.* messenger, message  
 pār, paris equal, even, well-balanced\*  
 penetrālis, e inner(most)  
 perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring, report  
 pingō, ere, pīnxi, pictus paint, embroider  
 praesēns, entis present, ready  
 quod because, the fact that  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), rob\*  
 ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
 at, regard\*  
 secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice\*  
 spectō (1) look at, see, view, watch†  
 spoliō (1) strip, plunder, despoil  
 theātrum, ī *n.* theater, grandstand  
 trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing-bench, thwart  
 tumulus, ī *m.* mound, tomb\*  
 vērō indeed, truly, but  
 virgultum, ī *n.* brushwood, bush  
 Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī *m.* (god of) fire  
 volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

651. carēret: subj. giving the reason of some one (Beroē) other than the speaker; App. 358.

655. spectāre: hist. inf.; App. 257.

656. fātis: *abl.* of means. rēgna (Ītaliae sē) vocantia.

658. arcum: acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

662. habēnis: the fire rushes like a swift horse when given free rein.

663. (ex) abiete: pronounce here as though spelled abiete; App. 401.

664-679. Ascanius rushes from the games to save the ships and is followed by Aeneas. The Trojan women hide.

664. cuneōs: the wedge-shaped blocks of seats of the theater.

666. in nimbō: in a cloud (of smoke).



*Prīmus et Ascanius, cursūs ut laetus equestrīs  
ducēbat, sic ācer equō turbāta petivīt  
castra, nec exanimēs possunt retinēre magistrī.  
“Quis furor iste novus? Quō nunc, quō tenditis” inquit, 670  
“heu, miserae civēs? Nōn hostem inimicaque castra  
Argivum, vestrās spēs ūritis. Ēn, ego vester  
Ascanius!” — galeam ante pedēs prōjēcit inānem,  
quā lūdō indūtus bellī simulācra ciēbat.  
Accelerat simul Aenēās, simul agmina Teucrum. 675  
Ast illae dīversa metū per litora passim  
diffugiunt, silvāsque et sicubi concava fūrtim  
saxa petunt; piget inceptī lūcisque, suōsque  
mūtatae agnōscunt excussa pectore Jūnō est.  
Sed nōn idcirco flamma atque incendia vīrīs 680  
indomitās posuere; ūdō sub rōbore vīvit  
stuppa vomēns tardum fūmum, lentusque carīnās*

accelerō (1) hasten (up), hurry†  
ācer, cris, cre keen, spirited, fierce\*  
agnōscō, ere, nōvi, nitus recognize\*  
Argivus, a, um Argive, Greek  
Ascanius, (i) i m. son of Aeneas\*  
carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat\*  
castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment†  
cieō, ēre, civi, citus stir, (a)rouse\*  
civis, is m. (f.) citizen, compatriot  
concavus, a, um hollow, cavernous†  
cieō, ēre, fūgi flee apart, disperse  
diversus, a, um separated, various\*  
ēn see! look! behold!  
equester, tris, tre equestrian, cavalry†  
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless  
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off\*  
fūmus, i m. smoke, vapor, fume  
furor, ōris m. madness, fury, frenzy\*  
fūrtim stealthily, by stealth, furtively  
galea, ae f. helmet  
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger\*  
idcirco for this (reason), therefore†  
inānis, e empty, useless, vain\*  
incendium, (i) i n. fire, conflagration  
inceptum, i n. beginning, undertaking  
indomitus, a, um untamed, wild, fierce

induō, ere, i, ūtus don, clothe, put on  
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
inquam, is, it say\*  
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)\*  
lentus, a, um pliant, slow, tough  
lūdus, i m. game, sport, play, contest  
magister, tri m. trainer, master, chief  
metus, ūs m. fear, fright, anxiety\*  
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter\*  
passim everywhere, all about\*  
piget, ēre, uit, itum it wearies, it repents  
prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling  
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold back†  
rōbur, oris n. oak; strength\*  
sicubi if anywhere, wherever†  
simulacrum, i n. likeness, appearance, pre-  
tence, phantom  
spēs, spei f. hope, expectation\*  
stuppa, ae f. tow, calking, hemp†  
tardus, a, um slow, lazy, late, retarded  
turbō (1) confuse, disorder, disturb\*  
ūdus, a, um moist, damp, wet  
ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn  
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
vivō, ere, vixī, victus live, be alive  
vomō, ere, uī, itus vomit, belch forth†

668. sic: just as he was dressed for the games.

669. castra (nāvium).

671. civēs (meae): my people; an appeal to their loyalty.

673. ante pedēs (eārum): Ascanius remains on his horse.

678. piget (eās).

679. Jūnō: (the power of) Juno.

680-699. Four of the ships burn; but in answer to the fervent prayer of Aeneas, Jupiter sends a heavy rainstorm which extinguishes the fire and saves the rest.

681-682. vīvit stuppa = vīvit ignis in stuppā, the stuppa serving as calking.

- 685 *est vapor et toto descendit corpore pestis,  
nec vires heroum infusaque flumina prorsunt.  
Tum pius Aeneas umeris abscindere vestem  
auxilioque vocare deos et tendere palmās:  
“Juppiter omnipotens, si nondum exosus ad unum  
Trojanos, si quid pietas antiqua laborēs  
respicit humanos, da flammam evadere classē  
nunc, pater, et tenuis Teucrum res eripe leto.  
Vel tu, quod superest, infesto fulmine morti,  
si mereor, demitte tuoque hic obrue dextrā.”  
Vix haec ediderat cum effusis imbris atra  
tempestas sine more furit tonitruque tremescunt  
695 ardua terrarum et campī; ruit aethere toto  
turbidus imber aqua densisque nigerrimus Austris,  
implenturque super puppēs, semusta madescunt  
robora, restinctus donec vapor omnis et omnes  
quattuor amissis servatae a peste carinae.  
700 At pater Aeneas casu concussus acerbo*

abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus tear from  
 acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad  
 aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
 amittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose\*  
 aqua, ae *f.* water, flood, waves\*  
 arduum, ī *n.* height, steep  
 Auster, tri *m.* (south) wind\*  
 auxilium, (i) ī *n.* help, aid, assistance\*  
 carina, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat\*  
 concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter  
 demittō, ere, misi, missus send (hurl) down\*  
 densus, a, um thick, dense, repeated\*  
 descendō, ere, ī, ēsus descend, sink  
 donec until, while, as long as  
 edō, ere, didi, ditus put forth, utter†  
 edō, ere (esse), ēdi, ēsus eat, consume  
 effundō, ere, fudi, fusus pour out\*  
 evadō, ere, si, sus escape, come out  
 exosus, a, um hating utterly, detesting†  
 flumen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood\*  
 fulmen, inis *n.* lightning, thunderbolt\*  
 herōs, oīs *m.* hero, mighty warrior\*  
 humanus, a, um human, mortal, earthly  
 imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, storm, water  
 impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy\*  
 infestus, a, um hostile, destructive  
 infundō, ere, fudi, fusus pour (on, in)  
 letum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*

madescō, ere, dui drip, become wet†  
 mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, wont, precedent\*  
 niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky\*  
 nondum not yet  
 obruō, ere, ui, utus overwhelm, bury  
 omnipotens, entis almighty, omnipotent  
 palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)\*  
 pestis, is *f.* plague, destruction, ruin  
 pietas, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of  
 duty, mercy, justice, nobility\*  
 prorsum, desse, fui be helpful, avail†  
 quattuor four  
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
 at, regard\*  
 restinguō, ere, inxi, inctus extinguish  
 robur, oris *n.* oak; strength\*  
 semustus, a, um half-burned  
 sine without (abl.)\*  
 supersum, esse, fui remain, be left  
 tempestas, ātis *f.* storm; season\*  
 tenuis, e slight, slender, fine, thin  
 tonitrus, ūs *m.* thunder  
 tremescō, ere tremble, shake, quiver  
 Trojanus, a, um Trojan\*  
 turbidus, a, um confused, turbid  
 vapor, ōris *m.* heat, fire, vapor†  
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*

683. *est*: from *edō*; observe the long *ē*.  
 685-686. *abscindere, vocare, tendere*:  
 hist. infinitives; App. 257.

687. *exosus (es). ad unum*: to a man,  
 utterly.

688. (*tua*) *pietas*.

691-692. *demitte (id). quod superest*:  
 this remnant; obj. of *demitte*.

700-718. Nautes advises Aeneas to  
 allow those who are weak and tired out by  
 the journey to found a colony in Sicily.

*nunc hūc ingentīs, nunc illūc pectore cūrās  
mūtābat versāns, Siculīsne resideret arvīs  
oblītus fātōrum, Italāsne capesseret ōrās.  
Tum senior Nautēs, ūnum Trītōnia Pallas  
quem docuit multāque insignem reddidit arte 705  
(haec respōnsa dabat, vel quae portenderet ira  
magna deum vel quae fātōrum posceret ordō) —  
isque hīs Aenēan sōlātus vōcibus infit:  
“Nāte deā, quō fāta trahunt retrahuntque sequāmur;  
quidquid erit, superanda omnis fortūna ferendō est. 710  
Est tibi Dardanius dīvināe stirpis Acestēs:  
hunc cape cōsiliīs socium et conjunge volentem;  
huic trāde āmissīs superant quī nāvibus et quōs  
pertaesum magnī inceptī rērūque tuārum est;  
longaevōsque senēs ac fessās aequore māltrēs 715  
et quidquid tēcū invalidum metuēnsque pericli est  
dēlige, et hīs habeant terrīs sine moenia fessī;*

āmīttō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose\*  
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, wisdom, cunning\*

capessō, ere, ivi (ii), itus strive to gain  
conjungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus join, unite  
cōsiliū, (i) *n.* plan, advice, design  
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*  
dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, select  
dīvinus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred  
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, show, tell\*  
illūc thither, in that direction  
inceptum, i *n.* beginning, undertaking  
infīt speak, say†  
insignis, e marked, eminent, notable\*  
invalidus, a, um weak, feeble, infirm†  
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy  
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived  
metuēns, entis fearful, afraid  
mūtō (1) (ex)change, alter, transform, shift\*

Nautēs, ae *m.* a Trojan†  
obliviscor, i, litus forget (*gen.*)  
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, succession\*  
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom  
and the arts

peric(u)lum, i *n.* danger, peril, risk  
pertaedet, ēre, taesum it wearies  
thoroughly

portendō, ere, i, ntus presage, portend

poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask\*  
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quodquod)  
whoever, whatever, whichever

reddō, ere, didi, ditus render, return\*

residō, ere, sēdi settle, sit (down)

respōnsum, i *n.* reply, answer, response

retrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus drag, draw  
(back), recall†

senex, is *m.* old man, sire\*

senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire

Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily

sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit\*

sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace

stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem

superō (1) surmount, overcome, remain\*

trādō, ere, didi, ditus deliver, transfer

Trītōnius, a, um Tritonian, title of Pallas

versō (1) keep turning, revolve, ponder

702-703. -ne . . . -ne: *whether . . . or.*  
resideret, capesseret: subjunctives in  
indir. questions; App. 349.

706-707. haec respōnsa dabat vel quae  
portenderet ira de(ōr)um: *she (Pallas)*  
*always gave him answers either (as to)*  
*what the anger of the gods portended or;*  
portenderet, posceret: indir. questions;  
App. 349.

708. isque hīs vōcibus: *and he thus.*

711. tibi: dat. of possession. stirpis:  
*gen. of quality; App. 285.*

713. huic: to Acestes. (eōs) quī.

716. peric(u)li: obj. gen. with me-  
tuēns.

717. sine: imp. (in) terrīs. (ut)  
habeant: obj. of sine. fessi: substan-  
tively, *the weary, the wearied.*

*urbem appellābunt permissō nōmine Acestam."*

- 720 *Tālibus incēnsus dictīs seniōris amīcī  
tum vērō in cūrās animō dīdūcitur omnīs.  
Et Nox ātra polum bigīs subvecta tenēbat:  
vīsa dehinc caelō faciēs dēlāpsa parentis  
Anchīsae subitō tālis effundere vōcēs:  
"Nāte, mihī vitā quondam, dum vitā manēbat,  
725 cāre magis, nāte, Īliacis exercite fātīs,  
imperīō Jovis hūc veniō, quī classibus ignem  
dēpulit, et caelō tandem miserātus ab altō est.  
Cōnsiliis pārē quae nunc pulcherrima Nautēs  
dat senior; lēctōs juvenēs, fortissima corda,  
730 dēfer in Ītaliā. Gēns dūra atque aspera cultū  
dēbellanda tibi Latiō est. Dītis tamen ante  
īfernās accēde domōs et Averna per alta*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, come  
to, go to, reach

Acesta, ae f. Segesta, a city of Sicily†  
amīcus, ī m. friend, comrade, lover\*

appellō (1) call, name, proclaim

asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce\*

Averna, ōrum n. region around Lake

Avernus, Avernian realms, entrance to  
Hades, the infernal regions, Hades

bigae, ārum f. yoke, team, chariot

cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*

cōnsilium, (i)ī n. plan, advice, design

cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*

cultus, ūs m. culture, mode of life

dēbellō (1) war down, conquer†

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear away

dehinc thence, then, next

dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend.

dēpellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive off†

didūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus separate, dis-  
tract

Dīs, Dītis m. Pluto, god of the lower  
world

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*

effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter\*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass\*

faciēs, ēī f. appearance, face, aspect\*

fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout\*

Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian\*

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, fire\*

īfernus, a, um of the lower world, in-  
fernal

juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,  
woman)\*

Latium, (i)ī n. district of central Italy\*

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather\*

magis more, rather, preferably\*

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*

Nautēs, ae m. a Trojan

pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)

permittō, ere, misī, missus allow

polus, ī m. pole, sky, heaven

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-  
some, splendid, good fine, noble\*

senex, is old, aged; senior, ōris very old,  
older\*

subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*

subvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey†

tamen however, nevertheless, but\*

vērō truly, verily, indeed, but

718. permissō (ā tē): ordinarily  
Aeneas would be expected to name the  
city for himself. Acestam: Vergil thus  
traces the origin of Segesta to his own  
day.

719-745. That night the ghost of  
Anchises appears to Aeneas in a dream,  
counsels him to follow the advice of  
Nautes, and urges him to sail away to  
Cumae in Italy to consult the Sibyl who  
will disclose the future to him and con-  
duct him to the lower world, where the

future destiny of the Trojan race will be  
revealed.

720. in cūrās omnīs (in) animō dī-  
dūcitur: Aeneas cannot decide what to  
do; hence the dream.

722-723. vīsa (est) effundere.

724-725. Nāte cāre: voc. vitā: abl.  
with comparative; App. 327. cāre magis  
= cārior.

727. miserātus est (tē).

730. dēfer: imp.; App. 202. Gēns  
dūra: the Rutulians.

731. ante: adv.



congressūs *pete, nāte, meōs*. *Nōn mē impia namque*  
*Tartara habent, tristēs umbrae, sed amoena piōrum*  
*concilia Ēlysiumque colō. Hūc casta Sibylla* 735  
*nigrārū multō pecudum tē sanguine dūcet.*  
*Tum genus omne tuum et quae dentur moenia discēs.*  
*Jamque valē; torquet mediōs Nox ūmida cursūs*  
*et mē saevus equīs Oriēns adflāvit anhelis."*  
*Dīxerat et tenuis fūgit ceu fūmus in aurās.* 740  
*Aenēās "Quō deinde ruis? Quō prōripis?" inquit,*  
*"Quem fugis? Aut quis tē nostrīs complexibus arcet?"*  
*Haec memorāns cinerem et sōpitōs suscitāt ignīs,*  
*Pergameumque larem et cānae penetrālia Vestae*  
*farre piō et plēnā supplex venerātur acerrā.* 745  
*Extēplō sociōs primumque accersit Aestēn*

accersō, ere, sivi, situs summon†  
 acerra, ae f. censer (for incense)†  
 adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon  
 amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful†  
 anhelus, a, um panting, heaving†  
 arceō, ēre, uī hinder, restrain, defend  
 castus, a, um chaste, holy, pure, sacred  
 cānus, a, um hoary, gray, venerable  
 ceu as, just as  
 cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
 colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit,  
 honor, cherish\*  
 complexus, ūs m. embrace, grasp  
 concilium, (i)ī n. assembly, gathering  
 congressus, ūs m. meeting, encounter†  
 deinde then, next\*  
 discō, ere, didici learn (how); perf. know  
 Ēlysium, (i)ī n. abode of the blest in  
 Hades†  
 extēplō immediately, at once  
 far, farris n. spelt, a grain  
 fūmus, i m. smoke, vapor, fog  
 impius, a, um wicked, accursed, dis-  
 loyal  
 inquam, is, it say\*

lar, laris m. household god†  
 memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate\*  
 niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky\*  
 Oriēns, entis m. East, dawn  
 pecus, udis f. animal of the flock\*  
 penetrālia, ium n. shrine, chapel  
 Pergameus, a, um Trojan  
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, complete  
 prōripio, ere, uī, repts tear away†  
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
 Sibylla, ae f. a Sibyl, famous Italian  
 prophetess  
 sōpitus, a, um slumbering, sleeping  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 suscito (1) stir, (a)rouse, rekindle  
 Tartara, ōrum n. (abode of sinners in)  
 Hades  
 tenuis, e thin, slight, fine, delicate  
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, turn, sway\*  
 ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy  
 valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able, fare  
 well  
 veneror, āri, ātus worship, honor, ven-  
 erate  
 Vesta, ae f. goddess of the hearth

733. meōs = mēcum.

734. tristēs umbrae: apposition with Tartara.

735. colō. Hūc: hiatus; App. 399.

736. nigrārū: the appropriate color for victims offered to the gloomy gods of the dark world of the dead. See l. 97, and VI, 243 ff. multō sanguine: abl. of means.

737-738. genus: your later descendants who shall be distinguished in Italy. Ghosts commonly appear at night and greatly dislike the light of day. Cf. Hamlet, I, 5, 58 ff.:

"But, soft! methinks I scent the morn-  
 ing air:

Brief let me be . . . Fare thee well at  
 once:

The glow-worm shows the matin to be  
 near,

And 'gins to pale his uneffectual fire."

739. saevus: cruel, since he must flee  
 with the coming of dawn.

741. Quō (tē) prōripis.

744. cānae: a term applied to Vesta  
 as one of the oldest of the divinities.

746-778. Obeying the commands of

- et Jovis imperium et cārī praecepta parentis*  
*ēdocet et quae nunc animō sententia cōnset.*  
*Haud mora cōnsiliis, nec jussa recūsāt Acestēs.*  
 750 *Trānscribunt urbī mātērē populūque volentē*  
*dēpōnunt, animōs nīl magnae laudis egentis.*  
*Ipsī trānstra novant flammisque ambēsa repōnunt*  
*rōbora nāvigiis, aptant rēmōsque rudentisque,*  
*exiguī numerō, sed bellō vivida virtūs.*  
 755 *Intereā Aenēās urbem dēsīgnat arātrō*  
*sortiturque domōs; hoc Īlium et haec loca Trojam*  
*esse jubet. Gaudet rēgnō Trojānus Acestēs*  
*indīcitque forum et patribus dat jūra vocātis.*  
*Tum vicīna astris Erycinō in vertice sēdēs*

ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus eat, consume  
 aptō (1) fit, equip, furnish, prepare  
 arātrum, ī n. plow†  
 astrum, ī n. star, constellation\*  
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond\*  
 cōnsilium, (i)ī n. plan, advice, design  
 cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand fast  
 dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down,  
 leave (behind)  
 dēsīgnō (1) mark off, trace†  
 ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, explain†  
 egeō, ēre, uī lack, require, need, desire,  
 want (gen.)  
 Erycinus, a, um of Eryx, a Sicilian  
 mountaint†  
 exiguus, a, um slight, small, scanty  
 forum, ī n. market-place, assembly†  
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult  
 Īlium, (i)ī n. Troy, Ilium  
 indicō, ere, dixī, dictus proclaim, appoint  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 jūs, jūris n. law, decree, justice, right  
 jussum, ī n. command, order, behest

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*  
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
 nāvīgium, (i)ī n. ship, galley†  
 nihil, nīl nothing, not (at all)  
 novō (1) renew, change, alter  
 numerus, ī m. number, multitude\*  
 populus, ī m. people, nation, race\*  
 praeceptum, ī n. instruction, advice  
 recūsō (1) refuse, decline; recoil  
 repōnō, ere, posuī, positus replace\*  
 rōbur, oris n. oak; strength\*  
 rudēs, entis m. rope, cable, hawser  
 sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose, view  
 sortior, irī, itus allot, cast lots (for)  
 trānscribō, ere, psi, ptus copy off,  
 transfer†  
 trānstrum, ī n. rowing-bench, thwart  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 vertex, icis m. top, head, summit, peak\*  
 vicīnus, a, um near, neighboring  
 virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence,  
 courage\*  
 vividus, a, um living, vigorous†

his father's ghost, Aeneas founds a city in Sicily which he names Acesta, in honor of his old friend, Acestes. There he leaves the women, the old men, and the weaklings, while he with the braver and stronger part of his followers sets out for Italy.

748. quae sententia cōnset: indir. quest.; App. 349.

749. cōnsiliis: dat. of possession with mora (est).

750. populū volentē: any of the people who wish to stay.

751. animōs: apposition with mātērēs and populū. laudis: gen. with a verb of lacking; App. 287.

752. Ipsī: the real men.

753. A hypermetric verse; App. 402.

754. numerō: abl. of respect. bellō: dat. of purpose. virtūs (est).

755. arātrō: the ancient Roman method of marking out the bounds of a new city or colony, as seen in I, 425.

756-757. jubet hoc (esse) Īlium et haec loca esse Trojam: the second half of the sentence repeats the first, as Īlium = Troja. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.

758. patribus dat jūra vocātis: as Augustus was doing at Rome in Vergil's time.

759. Erycinō in vertice sēdēs: a famous temple to Venus stood on Mt. Eryx.

fundātur Venerī Īdalīae, tumulōque sacer dōs 760  
ac lūcus lātē sacer additur Anchisēō.

*Jamque diēs epulāta novem gēns omnis, et ārīs  
factus honōs: placidī strāvērunt aequora ventī  
crēber et aspirāns rūrsus vocat Auster in altum.  
Exoritur prōcurva ingēns per litora flētus; 765  
complexī inter sē noctemque diemque morantur.  
Ipsae jam mātērēs, ipsī, quibus aspera quondam  
vīsa maris faciēs et nōn tolerābile nūmen,  
īre volunt omnemque fugae perferre labōrem.  
Quōs bonus Aenēās dictīs sōlātur amicīs 770  
et cōnsanguineō lacrimāns commendat Acestae.  
Trīs Erycī vitulōs et Tempestātibus agnam  
caedere deinde jubet solvique ex ordine fūnem.  
Ipse caput tōnsae foliīs ēvinctus olivae  
stāns procul in prōrā pateram tenet, extaque salsōs 775  
prōjicit in flūctūs ac vīna liquentia fundit.*

addō, ere, didī, ditus add\*  
agna, ae f. ewe-lamb†  
altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven  
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)\*  
Anchisēus, a, um of Anchises†  
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce\*  
a(d)spirō (1) breathe (upon), blow  
Auster, tri m. (south) wind\*  
bonus, a, um good, noble, kind\*  
caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down),  
kill  
commendō (1) intrust, commend  
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold  
cōnsanguineus, ī m. kinsman (by blood)†  
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated\*  
deinde then, next, thereupon\*  
epulor, āri, ātus feast, banquet  
Eryx, ycis m. half-brother of Aeneas  
ēvinciō, īre, vīnxi, vīctus bind, tie  
exorior, iri, ortus rise, spring up  
exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals  
faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, aspect\*  
flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament  
folium, (i) ī n. leaf, foliage  
fundō (1) found, establish, build  
fūnis, is m. rope, cable, cord  
Īdalius, a, um of Idalium in Cyprus, a  
mountain and city sacred to Venus  
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament

lātē widely, far and wide  
liquēns, entis clear, liquid, fluid  
lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood\*  
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder\*  
novem nine  
oliva, ae f. olive  
ordō, inis m. order, row, rank, array\*  
patera, ae f. (libation) bowl  
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus endure, bear  
placidus, a, um gentle, peaceful, calm\*  
prōcurvus, a, um winding, curved†  
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl forth  
prōra, ae f. prow\*  
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
sacer dōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*  
salsus, a, um briny, salty  
sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace  
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release\*  
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, be-  
calm, spread, strew\*  
Tempestās, ātis f. Storm, Tempest\*  
tolerābilis, e bearable, endurable†  
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip,  
trim, cut  
trēs, tria three\*  
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb\*  
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty\*  
vinum, ī n. wine\*  
vitulus, ī m. (bull) calf, bullock†

760-761. Anchises is thus officially deified. Anchisēō: a spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

762-763. diēs novem: the conventional number of days for funeral ceremonies. epulāta (erat). factus (erat in) ārīs.

766. inter sē: each other.

773. jubet (Teucrōs).

774. caput: obj. of the middle part., ēvinctus; App. 309, a.

775. procul (ab aliis). pateram tenet: to pour a libation.

Prōsequitur surgēns ā puppī ventus euntīs;  
certātim sociī feriunt mare et aequora verrunt.

- At Venus intereā Neptūnum exercita cūrīs  
780 adloquitur tālisque effundit pectore questūs:  
"Jūnōnis gravis ira neque exsaturābile pectus  
cōgunt mē, Neptūne, precēs dēscendere in omnīs;  
quam nec longa diēs pietās nec mītigat ūlla,  
nec Jovis imperiō fātisque infrācta quiescit.  
785 Nōn mediā dē gente Phrygum exēdisse nefandīs  
urbem odiīs satis est nec poenam trāxe per omnem  
relliquiās Trojae: cinerēs atque ossa perēmp̄tae  
insequitur. Causās tantī sciat illa furōris.  
Ipse mihī nūper Libycīs tū testis in undīs  
790 quam mōlem subitō excierit: maria omnia caelō  
miscuit Aeoliīs nēquīquam frēta procellis,  
in rēgnīs hoc ausa tuīs.

adloquor, *i*, locūtus address, accost  
Aeolius, *a*, um of Aeolus, god of winds†  
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, pretext\*  
certātim in rivalry, emulously  
cinis, *eris m.* ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus force (together)\*  
dēscendō, ere, *i*, ēnsus descend, stoop  
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter\*  
excīō, ire, ivī (ii), itus (a)rouse, stir (up)  
exedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus devour, destroy†  
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass\*  
exsaturābilis, *e* satiable, placable†  
feriō, ire strike, smite, cut, kill  
frētus, *a*, um relying on (*abl.*)  
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy\*  
gravis, *e* heavy, grievous, serious\*  
infringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter†  
insequor, *i*, secūtus follow, pursue\*  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
Libycus, *a*, um Libyan, of Libya, a coun-  
try of North Africa\*  
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
mītigō (1) soften, appease, pacify†  
mōlēs, *is f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*

nefandus, *a*, um unspeakable, unutterable  
Neptūnus, *i m.* Neptune, god of the sea\*  
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
nūper recently, lately†  
odium, (i) *i n.* hate, hatred, enmity  
os, ossis *n.* bone\*  
perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus destroy†  
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan  
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of  
duty, justice, nobility\*  
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow\*  
procella, *ae f.* blast, gust, storm  
prōsequor, *i*, secūtus follow, attend  
questus, ūs *m.* complaint, lament  
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, desist, re-  
pose\*  
re(l)iquiae, ārum *f.* remnant(s), rest,  
leavings, relics  
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
sciō, ire, ivī (ii), itus know (how)  
subitō, suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
surgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus (a)rise  
testis, *is m. (f.)* witness†  
Venus, *eris f.* goddess of love and beauty\*  
verrō, ere, *i*, rsus sweep (over), scour

\* 779-834. Neptune, won over by the  
entreaties of Venus, calms the sea for  
Aeneas, giving him a safe voyage to Italy.

781. neque = et nōn.

783. quam: referring to Jūnōnis of  
l. 781. nec longa diēs (mitigat) nec ūlla  
pietās (Aenēae) mitigat. longa diēs =  
longum tempus.

785. exēdisse: a Homeric touch.

786. urbem (Trojam). trāx(iss)e.

787. perēmp̄tae (Trojae).

788. sciat illa: let her know, since no  
one else does; a vol. (jussive) subj.; App.  
254.

789-792. tū testis (erās): the refer-  
ence is to the storm described in I, 81-156.  
excierit: subj. in an indir. quest.; App.  
349. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a  
long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.



*Per scelus ecce etiam Trojānis mātribus āctis*  
*exussit foedē puppīs et classe subēgit*  
*āmissā sociōs ignōtae linquere terrae.* 795  
*Quod superest, ōrō, liceat dare tūta per undās*  
*vēla tibi, liceat Laurentem attingere Thybrim,*  
*sī concessa petō, sī dant ea moenia Parcae."*  
*Tum Sāturnius haec domitor maris ēdidit altī:*  
*"Fās omne est, Cytherēa, mēis tē fidere rēgnīs,* 800  
*unde genus dūcis. Meruī quoque; saepe furōrēs*  
*compressī et rabiem tantam caelīque marisque.*  
*Nec minor in terrīs, Xanthum Simoēntaque testor,*  
*Aenēae mihi cūra tuī. Cum Trōia Achillēs*  
*exanimāta sequēns impingeret agmina mūrīs,* 805  
*mīlia multa daret lētō, gementque replētī*  
*amnēs nec reperire viam atque ēvolvere posset*  
*in mare sē Xanthus, Pēlidae tunc ego forti*

Achillēs, is (ei, ī) *m.* famous Greek leader\*  
 āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose\*  
 amnis, is *m.* river, stream\*

atingō, ere, tigī, tactus touch, reach  
 comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus restrain  
 concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, grant  
 Cytherēa, ae *f.* (goddess) of Cythera,

Venus  
 domitor, ōris *m.* tamer, subduer, ruler†  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*

ēdō, ere, didī, ditus put forth, utter  
 etiam also, even, besides, too\*  
 ēvolvō, ere, i, volūtus roll forth†  
 exanimātus, a, um breathless, lifeless†  
 exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn, consume  
 fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will\*  
 fidō, ere, fīsus sum trust, believe (*dat.*)\*

foedē shamefully, foully†  
 fortis, e strong, brave, valiant, stout\*  
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy\*  
 gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament  
 ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange  
 impingō, ere, pēgī, pāctus dash against†  
 Laurēns, entis Laurentian, of Laurentum,  
 an Italian city†

lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*  
 licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted\*

linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert\*  
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*  
 mille; *pl.* milia, ium *n.* thousand\*

minor, us less, smaller, slighter  
 mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, battlement\*  
 ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat\*  
 Parcae, arum *f.* the (three) Fates  
 Pēlidēs, ae *m.* son of Peleus, Achilles  
 quoque also, too, even, likewise\*  
 rabiēs, ēi *f.* rage, frenzy, fury, madness  
 reperīō, ire, repperī, repertus find  
 repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, cram, jam  
 saepe often, frequently\*

Sāturnius, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn,  
 early Italian god and father of Jupiter,  
 Juno, Neptune, and several other gods

scelus, eris *n.* crime, guilt, sin\*  
 Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy  
 subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus force, compel  
 supersum, esse, fuī remain, survive  
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify  
 Thybris, idis *m.* Tiber, an Italian river  
 Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 unde whence, from which source\*  
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

794-795. classe āmissā: abl. abs.  
 subēgit (Aenēan). terrae: loc. or dat.  
 of indir. obj.

796. Quod superest: the remnant; cf.  
 l. 691. ōrō: parenthetical. liceat: vol.

797. tibi = mari: Neptune being god  
 of the sea. liceat (Aenēae) attingere  
 Laurentem Thybrim.

798. ea moenia: the city to be  
 founded by Aeneas in Italy.

801. unde genus dūcis: according to  
 one account, Venus was born from the  
 foam of the sea near Cythera, hence her  
 name, Cytherēa, l. 800. Meruī (tē fidere  
 mēis rēgnīs).

804-807. mihi cūra (est). cum: descrip-

- congressum *Aenēan nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs*  
 810 *nūbe cavā rapuī, cuperem cum vertere ab īmō*  
*strūcta mēis manibus perjūrae moenia Trojae.*  
*Nunc quoque mēns eadem perstat mihi; pelle timōrēs.*  
*Tūtus, quōs optās, portūs accēdet Avernī.*  
*Ūnus erit tantum āmissum quem gurgite quaerēs;*  
 815 *ūnum prō multīs dabitur caput."*  
*Hīs ubi laeta deae permulsit pectora dictīs,*  
*jungit equōs aurō genitor, spūmantiaque addit*  
*frēna feris manibusque omnīs effundit habēnās.*  
*Caeruleō per summa levis volat aequora currū;*  
 820 *subsīdunt undae tumidumque sub axe tonantī*  
*sternitur aequor aquīs, fugiunt vastō aethere nimbī.*  
*Tum variae comitum faciēs, immānia cētē,*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach  
 addō, ere, didī, ditus add\*  
 aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
 āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose\*  
 aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood\*  
 Avernus, ī *m.* lake near Cumae in Italy  
 where there was an entrance to Hades\*  
 axis, is *m.* axis, axle, wheel, car  
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)\*  
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
 cētus, ī *m.*; *pl.* cētē *n.* whale, sea-monster†  
 congredior, ī, gressus meet (*dat.*)  
 cupiō, ere, ivī (ii), itus desire, wish  
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*  
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, let go\*  
 faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect\*  
 ferus, ī *m.* beast, horse\*  
 frēnum, ī *n.* rein, bridle, curb, bit  
 gurgēs, itis *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf\*  
 habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check  
 jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, yoke\*  
 levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight  
 nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm\*

nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist\*  
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
 pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, dismiss  
 perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous  
 permulcēō, ēre, lsi, lsus soothe, calm†  
 perstō, stāre, stiti, status stand fast, per-  
 sist  
 prō for, on behalf of, before (*abl.*)\*  
 quoque also, even, too, likewise\*  
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (away), rob\*  
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
 sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, be-  
 calm, strew, spread\*  
 struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, heap up  
 subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus subside  
 tantum only, so much, so great(ly)  
 timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety  
 tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar  
 tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 varius, a, um various, different, diverse\*  
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

tive with *impingeret, daret, gement, posset*; App. 378. *replētī* (corporebus virōrum).

809. *nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs*: *abl.* abs.; *aequīs* modifies both nouns. The ancient warriors were often assisted by their gods. In this case the gods helping Achilles were superior to those aiding the Trojans.

810. *cum cuperem*: *although I desired*; concessive subj.; App. 379.

811. *perjūrae*: referring to the famous perjury of Laomedon, who refused to pay Neptune and Apollo the price agreed upon for building the walls of Troy. See note on II, 610.

813. *portūs Avernī*: Cumae near Lake

Avernus, where was the fabled entrance to the lower world. From Cumae the rest of Aeneas's voyage to the Tiber was short and uneventful.

814. *Ūnus*: Palinurus, the pilot who fell overboard and was drowned, as is related in lines 833-860.

816. *laeta*: proleptic; App. 440.

817. *aurō*: *with gold* (harness).

818. *feris* = *equīs*, as *ferī* = *equī* in II, 51.

820. *sub axe* (*currūs*).

821. *aquīs*: *abl.* of respect with *tumidum*; App. 325.

822. *faciēs* (*visae sunt, adsunt*). *cētē*: *nom. pl.*, a Greek form.

*et senior Glauci chorus Inōusque Palaemōn  
Tritōnesque citi Phorciue exercitus omnis;  
laeva tenent Thetis et Melitē Panopēaque virgō,* 825  
*Nisaeē Spiōque Thaliaque Cymodocēque.*

*Hic patris Aenēae suspēnsam blanda vicissim  
gaudia pertemptant mentem; jubet ōcius omnīs  
attolli mālōs, intendi braccia vēlīs.* 830  
*Ūnā omnēs fēcere pedem pariterque sinistrōs,*

*nunc dextrōs solvère sinūs; ūnā ardua torquent  
cornua dētorquentque; ferunt sua flāmina classem.*  
*Princeps ante omnīs dēnsam Palinūrus agēbat  
agmen; ad hunc alī cursum contendere jussī.*  
*Jamque ferē mediam caelī Nox ūmida mētām* 835  
*contigerat, placidā laxābant membra quiēte  
sub rēmīs fūsī per dūra sedilia nautae:*

**arduus, a, um** lofty, upraised, steep\*  
**attollē, ere** lift, raise, rear\*  
**blandus, a, um** persuasive, flattering  
**bracchium, (i)ī n.** arm; yardarm\*  
**chorus, i m.** (dancing) band, troop  
**citus, a, um** quick, swift, hurried  
**contendō, ere, i, ntus** stretch, strain,  
direct

**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach\*  
**cornū, ūs n.** horn; yardarm; tip  
**Cymodocē, ēs f.** a sea-nymph†  
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense\*  
**dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist (aside),  
haul down

**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
**exercitus, ūs m.** army, host, band  
**ferē** almost, about, nearly  
**flāmen, inis n.** breeze, blast, wind  
**gaudium, (i)ī n.** joy, delight, pleasure  
**Glaucus, i m.** minor sea-god†  
**Inō, ūs f.** minor sea-goddess†  
**intendō, ere, i, ntus** stretch, strain  
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left\*  
**laxō (1)** relax, loose(n), relieve, free  
**mālus, i m.** mast, staff, pole  
**Melitē, ēs f.** a sea-nymph†  
**membrum, i n.** member, limb, body\*  
**mēta, ae f.** turning-point, goal, bound  
**nauta, ae m.** sailor, seaman, mariner

**Nisaeē, ēs f.** a sea-nymph†  
**ōcius** more quickly, very quickly  
**Palaemōn, onis m.** minor sea-god†  
**Palinūrus, i m.** Trojan pilot\*  
**Panopēa, ae f.** a sea-nymph  
**pariter** equally, evenly, concertedly\*  
**pertemptō (1)** test, seize, pervade  
**Phorcus, i m.** minor sea-god  
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet\*  
**princeps, cipis** first, (as) leader  
**quiēs, ētis f.** rest, sleep, peace, quiet\*  
**sedile, ilis n.** seat, bench  
**senex, is** old, aged; **senior, ōris** older,  
very old\*  
**sinister, tra, trum** left (hand), on the left  
**sinus, ūs m.** fold (of sail), bosom, bay\*  
**solvō, ere, i, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay\*  
**Spiō, ūs f.** a sea-nymph†  
**suspēnsus, a, um** suspended, bewildered,  
in suspense  
**Thalia, ae f.** a sea-nymph†  
**Thetis, idis (idos) f.** sea-goddess, mother  
of Achilles†  
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn, whirl\*  
**Tritōn, ōnis m.** minor sea-god  
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, wet, dewy  
**ūnā** together, at the same time  
**vicissim** in turn, by turns, alternately  
**virgō, inis f.** girl, daughter, virgin\*

**823-826.** Vergil is apparently describing a famous sculptured group which in his day stood in the Circus Flaminius at Rome. *laeva (loca).*

**830.** *fēcere pedem:* hauled the sheet.

**832.** *sua:* favorable; irregularly referring to *classem* instead of to the subject: App. 248, a.

**834.** *agmen (nāvium).* hunc: Palinurus.

**835-861.** Seeing that everything is so secure, the pilot, Palinurus, succumbs to sleep during the night voyage. He falls overboard and is drowned.

**835.** *mediam mētām:* the zenith, making it midnight. See III, 429.

- cum levis aetheriis delapsus Somnus ab astris  
 aera dimovit tenebrorum et dispulit umbras,*  
 840 *tē, Palinūre, petēns, tibi somnia tristia portāns*  
*insontī; puppique deus consēdit in altā*  
*Phorbantī similis funditque hās ore loquelās:*  
*“Iasidē Palinūre, ferunt ipsa aequora classem,*  
*aequatae spirant aerae, datur hōra quiētī.*  
 845 *Pōne caput fessōsque oculos fūrāre labōrī.*  
*Iipse ego paulisper prō tē tua mūnera inibō.”*  
*Cui vix attollēns Palinūrus lūmina fatur:*  
*“Mēne salis placidī vultum fluctūsque quiētōs*  
*ignōrāre jubēs? Mēne huic cōfidere mōnstrō?*  
 850 *Aenēān crēdam (quid enim?) fallācibus aurīs*  
*et caelō, totiēns dēceptus fraude serēnī?”*  
*Tālia dicta dabat, clāvumque adfixus et haerēns*  
*nūquam amittēbat oculōsque sub astra tenēbat.*

adfigō, ere, xī, xus fasten to, join to†  
 aequō (1) equal(ize), balance, adjust\*  
 āēr, aeris, acc. āera, m. air, fog, mist  
 aetherius, a, um of the upper air, heav-  
 enly  
 āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose\*  
 astrum, i n. star, constellation\*  
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear\*  
 clāvus, i m. nail, tiller, rudder†  
 cōfidō, ere, sus sum trust, believe (dat.)  
 cōsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down),  
 settle\*  
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (dat.)\*  
 dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus beguile, de-  
 ceive  
 dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend  
 dimoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move apart,  
 sunder  
 dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive apart,  
 dispel  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 fallāx, ācis deceitful, treacherous†  
 fraus, fraudis f. deceit, treachery, fraud  
 fūrōr, āri, ātus steal (away), withdraw†  
 haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to)\*  
 hōra, ae f. hour, season, time  
 Iasidēs, ae m. descendant of Iasius, son

of Jupiter and Electra, and brother of  
 Dardanust  
 ignōrō (1) not know, mistake, ignore†  
 ineō, ire, ii (ivī) itus enter (upon)  
 insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless  
 levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight  
 loquēla, ae f. voice, speech, conversa-  
 tion†  
 mōnstrum, i n. portent, monster, sign\*  
 nūquam nowhere, never  
 Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot\*  
 paulisper gradually, (for) a little while†  
 Phorbās, antis m. son of Priam, killed in  
 the Trojan war†  
 placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet\*  
 portō (1) carry, bear, bring, convey\*  
 prō before, in behalf of, for (abl.)\*  
 quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace, quiet\*  
 quiētus, a, um quiet, undisturbed, calm  
 sal, is m. (n.) salt, brine; sea  
 serēnum, i n. fair weather, calm  
 similis, e similar, like (dat.)\*  
 somnium, (i) i n. dream, vision†  
 spirō (1) breathe, blow, exhale, expire  
 tenebrōsus, a, um dark, dusky, gloomy†  
 totiēns so many times, so often  
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

841. deus = Somnus of l. 838.

844. aequatae aerae: see note on IV, 587.

845. labōri: dat. of separation; App. 305.

847. lūmina = oculōs.

849. (jubēs)ne mē cōfidere huic mōnstrō (= mari): dat. with special

verb; the sea as a thing of treachery and danger is a cruel monster.

850-851. crēdam: deliberative subj.; App. 348. quid enim (id faciam). auris et caelō: datives with crēdam. fraude: abl. of means or cause with dēceptus.

853. amittēbat: with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent and



Ecce deus rānum Lēthaeō rōre madentem  
*vīque* sopōrātum Stygiā *super* utraque quassat 853  
 tempora, cūctantique natantia lūmina solvit.  
*Vix primōs* inopīna quiēs laxāverat artūs,  
 et superincumbēns *cum puppis* parte revulsā  
*cumque* gubernāclō liquidās prōjēcit in undās  
 praecipitem *ac sociōs* nēquiquam saepe *vocantem*; 860  
*ipse* volāns tenuis sē sustulit āles ad aurās.  
 Currit iter tūtum nōn sētius *aequore* classis  
 prōmissisque patris Neptūnī interrita fertur.  
*Jamque* adeō scopulōs Sīrēnum advecta subibat,  
 difficilis quondam multōrumque ossibus albōs 865  
 (tum rauca adsiduō longē sale saxa sonābant),

adeō to such an extent, to that point  
 adsiduus, a, um constant, incessant  
 advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry to(ward)  
 albus, a, um white\*  
 āles, itis winged; bird  
 artus, ūs m. joint, limb, body\*  
 cūctor, āri, ātus delay, linger, hesitate  
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, speed  
 difficilis, e difficult, dangerous, painful  
 ecce see! look! behold!\*  
 gubernāc(u)lum, ī n. rudder, helm  
 inopīnus, a, um unexpected, unfore-  
 seen†  
 interritus, a, um unafraid, unterrified  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 iaxō (1) relax, loose(n), relieve, free  
 Lēthaeus, a, um Lethean, of Lethe, the  
 river of forgetfulness in Hades†  
 liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid  
 longē (from) afar\*  
 madeō, ēre, uī drip, be wet  
 natō (1) swim, float, overflow  
 Neptūnus, ī m. Neptune, god of the sea\*  
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 os, ossis n. bone\*  
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*  
 prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling,  
 cast

prōmissum, ī n. promise, pledge  
 quassō (1) shake, shatter  
 quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace, quiet\*  
 rāmus, ī m. branch, bough, limb\*  
 raucus, a, um hoarse, thunderous  
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off, dislodge  
 rōs, rōris m. dew, moisture†  
 saepe often, frequently\*  
 sal, is m. (n.) salt, brine; sea  
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag\*  
 secus; compar. sētius otherwise, differ-  
 ently  
 Sīrēnes, um f. beautiful maidens who by  
 their sweet songs lured sailors to their  
 destruction†  
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax\*  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 sopōrō (1) make sleepy, drug†  
 Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a  
 river in Hades\*  
 superincumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean  
 over, swoop upon†  
 tempus, oris n. temple, brow  
 tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),  
 both\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

before the pause; App. 394, a. sub  
 astra: fixed on the stars.

854-855. deus = Somnus of l. 838.  
 Lēthaeō, Stygiā: referring to the under-  
 world streams which brought forgetful-  
 ness and death.

856. (Palinūrō) cūctanti: dat. of  
 reference.

857. primōs: agrees with artūs but goes  
 in thought with laxāverat.

859. (eum) prōjēcit (Somnus).

861. ipse: Somnus.

862-871. Awakening and perceiving  
 that the ship is drifting unsteadily,  
 Aeneas seizes the tiller and steers the  
 vessel safe to the harbor of Cumae,  
 the home of the Sibyl.

862. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313.

863. prōmissis = ll. 812-815.

865. quondam: from the point of view  
 of Vergil, not of Aeneas.

866. sale saxa sonābant: alliteration;  
 App. 411.

870

*cum pater āmissō fluitantem errāre magistrō  
sēnsit, et ipse ratem nocturnis rēxit in undīs  
multa gemēns cāsūque animum concussus amīcī:  
“Ō nimium caelō et pelagō cōnfise serēnō,  
nūdus in ignōtā, Palinūre, jacēbis harēnā.”*

*amicus*, *i m.* friend, comrade, lover\*  
*āmittō*, *ere*, *misī*, *missus* let go, lose\*  
*concutiō*, *ere*, *cussī*, *cussus* shake, shat-  
ter  
*cōnfidō*, *ere*, *fisus sum* trust, believe  
(*dat.*)  
*fluitō* (1) waver, drift, float†  
*gemō*, *ere*, *uī*, *itus* groan, lament, mourn  
*harēna*, *ae f.* sand, beach\*  
*ignōtus*, *a*, *um* unknown, strange

*jaceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* lie (low, outspread)\*  
*magister*, *trī m.* master, pilot, chief  
*nimium* too much, too (greatly)  
*nocturnus*, *a*, *um* nocturnal, of the night  
*nūdus*, *a*, *um* naked, bare; unburied  
*Palinūrus*, *i m.* Trojan pilot\*  
*ratis*, *is f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
*regō*, *ere*, *rēxi*, *rēctus* rule, direct, guide\*  
*sentiō*, *ire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus* feel, perceive  
*serēnus*, *a*, *um* calm, clear, serene

867. *pater* (*Aenēās*). *āmissō* *magistrō* (*Palinūrō*): *abl. abs.*; App. 343. *fluitantem* (*nāvem*). *errāre*: *was drifting unsteadily*; *indir. disc.*; App. 390.

868. *ipse* (*Aenēās*); *the master*; see the note on *ipsōs*, I, 40.

869. *multa*: *adverbial*; App. 93-94. *animum*: *acc. of respect*; App. 311.

870-871. *Ō Palinūre nimium cōnfise*: *O Palinurus (who) trusted too much in, etc.* *nūdus*: *unburied*; a piteous fate according to ancient ideas.



*Anderson*

*Michelangelo*

THE CUMAEAN SIBYL  
From the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican



CENTAURS AND DRYAD

*E. Forti, Rome*



## BOOK VI

*Sic fatur lacrimāns, classique immittit habēnās  
et tandem Euboicis Cūmārum adlābitur ōrīs.*

*Obvertunt pelagō prōrās; tum dente tenāci  
ancora fundābat nāvīs et litora curvae*

5 *praetexunt puppēs. Juvenum manus ēmicat ardēns  
lītus in Hesperium; quaerit pars sēmina flammae  
abstrūsa in vēnīs silicis, pars dēnsa ferārū  
tēcta rapit silvās inventaque flūmina mōnstrat.*

*At pius Aenēās arcēs quibus altus Apollō*

10 *praesidet horrendaeque procul sēcrēta Sibyllae,  
antrum immāne, petit, magnam cui mentem animumque*

ābstrūdō, ere, sī, sus hide (away)†  
adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to, approach (dat.)

ancora, ae f. anchor

antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto\*

Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and prophecy\*

Cūmae, ārum f. city on the bay of Naples, founded by settlers from Chalcis, a city of Euboea†

curvus, a, um winding, rounded, bent\*

dēns, dentis m. tooth; fluke (of an anchor)

dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense\*

ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart out

Euboicus, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece†

fera, ae f. wild beast

flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood\*

fundō (1) found, establish, make fast

habēna, ae f. rein, curb, check

Hesperius, a, um western, Italian

horrendus, a, um dreadful, dire; revered\*  
immittō, ere, misi, missus send in (to).

loose(n), give freely

inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus find, come upon

juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man, woman)\*

lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament

mōnstrō (1) point out, show, teach, guide\*

obvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (dat.)

praesideō, ēre, sēdi, sessus rule, protect (dat.)

praetexō, ere, uī, xtus fringe, cloak

prōra, ae f. prow\*

rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), scour\*

sēcrētum, ī n. secret (place, sanctuary)

sēmen, inis n. seed, germ, element†

Sibylla, ae f. the Sibyl, an ancient Italian prophetess

silex, icis m. (f.) flint, rock, crag

tenāx, ācis gripping, tenacious

vēna, ae f. vein

1-32. Aeneas lands at Cumae and visits the temple of Apollo founded by Daedalus, near which is the grotto of the Sibyl.

1. Sic fatur (Aenēās): refers to the lament of Aeneas over Palinurus, who fell overboard and was drowned, as told in the latter part of Book V. habēnās: reins, as though the ships were so many fiery steeds surging at the bit.

3. prōrās: ships were anchored with their prows turned seaward.

6. sēmina: sparks, which seemed to be hidden in the flint till struck out by the steel.

8. silvās: apposition with tēcta.

9. altus: referring to the lofty situation of the temple, which stood on the top of a high hill and was connected in some way with the cave of the Sibyl.

10. procul (ā portū).

*Dēlius inspīrat vātēs aperitque futūra.*

*Jam subeunt Triviae lūcōs atque aurea tēcta.*

- 15 *Daedalus, ut fāma est, fugiēns Mīnōia rēgna*  
*praepetibus pennīs ausus sē crēdere caelō*  
*īnsuētum per iter gelidās ēnāvit ad Arctōs,*  
*Chalcidicāque levis tandem super astitit arce.*  
*Redditus hīs primum terrīs tibi, Phoebe, sacrāvit*  
*rēmigium ālārū posuitque immānia templa.*  
 20 *In foribus lētum Androgeō; tum pendere poenās*

*āla, ae f. wing\**

*Androgeōs (ūs), eō (eī) m.* son of Minos, king of Crete, for whose murder the Athenians were compelled annually to choose by lot seven youths and seven maidens, who were sent to Crete and fed to the Minotaur†

*aperiō, ire, uī, ertus* open, disclose, reveal\*

*Arctos (us), ī f.* the Bear, a northern constellation†

*a(d)stō, āre, stitī* stand (by, near)\*

*audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\**

*aureus, a, um* gold(en), of gold\*

*Chalcidicus, a, um* Chalcidian, of Chalcis, a city of Euboea, from which Cumae was founded†

*crēdō, ere, didī, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)\*

*Daedalus, ī m.* famous Greek artisan, father of Icarus and builder of the Labyrinth for King Minos in Crete; inventor of the first wings by means of which he and Icarus escaped from Crete†

*Dēlius, a, um* Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo

*ēnō* (1) swim out, fly forth, float†

*foris, is f.* door, gate, entrance

*futūrum, ī n.* the future, what is to be

*gelidus, a, um* cold, chilly, icy

*īnspirō* (1) breathe into, inspire, blow into

*īnsuētus, a, um* unaccustomed, unused†

*iter, itineris, n.* way, road, journey\*

*lētum, ī n.* death, destruction, ruin\*

*levis, e* light, swift, nimble, unsubstantial

*lūcus, ī m.* (sacred) grove, wood\*

*Mīnōius, a, um* Minoan, of Minos, king of Crete†

*pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus* weigh out, pay†

*penna, ae f.* wing, feather

*Phoebus, ī m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy\*

*praepes, etis* swift, flying

*reddō, ere, didī, ditus* return, restore\*

*rēmigium, (i)ī, n.* oarage, rowing equipment

*sacrō* (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*

*templum, ī n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*

*Trivia, ae f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world

12. *Dēlius vātēs*: Apollo, born at Delos, and giver of oracles.

13. *subeunt (Aenēās et socii). Triviae lūcōs*: the grove was sacred to Hecate (Trivia), since it stood near the entrance to the lower world.

14. *Daedalus*: the most famous artisan of antiquity. With his son, Icarus, he had emigrated to Crete, where Pasiphaë, queen of Minos, had fallen in love with a beautiful bull. He assisted her to gratify her unholy passion, and from this love was born the Minotaur, a savage monster, half-man and half-bull. Daedalus was then compelled by Minos to build the Labyrinth within whose winding passages the Minotaur might be confined. Finally Daedalus contrived wings for himself and his son Icarus and thus escaped from Crete. During their flight, Icarus flew too close to the sun, which

melted the waxen fastenings of his wings and allowed him to fall into the sea and drown. After the death of Icarus, Daedalus continued his flight to Cumae, where he erected a temple to Apollo, to whom he dedicated his wings, and where he made some beautiful carved doors for the temple. On these doors he engraved the scenes described in ll. 20-30.

15. *pennīs*: abl. of means.

16. *īnsuētum iter*: the air.

20-30. A description of the scenes engraved by Daedalus on the temple doors at Cumae, which are: (1) death of Androgeos; (2) drawing of lots to see who shall be sent as victims of the Minotaur; (3) Pasiphaë and the Minotaur; (4) the Labyrinth with Ariadne and Theseus. *lētum* (est). *Androgeōs*: gen., a Greek form; App. 67. The Athenians had murdered him and as a punishment had

Cecropidae jussī (*miserum!*) septēna quotannis  
 corpora nātōrum; stat ductīs sortibus urna.  
 Contrā ēlāta marī respondet Gnōsia tellūs:  
 hīc crūdēlis amor taurī suppostaque fūrtō  
 Pāsiphaē mixtumque genus prōlēsque biformis 25  
 Minōtaurus inest, Veneris monimenta nefandae;  
 hīc labor ille domūs et inextricābilis error;  
 magnum rēgīnae sed enim miserātus amōrem  
 Daedalus ipse dolōs tēctī ambāgēsque resolvit,  
 caeca regēns filō vestigia. Tū quoque magnam 30

ambāgēs, *is f.* winding (passage)  
 biformis, *e* two-formed, double-shaped†  
 caecus, *a, um* blind, dark, hidden\*  
 Cecropidēs, *ae m.* descendants of Cecrops, Athenians†  
 contrā opposite, facing\*  
 crūdēlis, *e* cruel, pitiless, bloody\*  
 Daedulus, *i m.* famous Greek artisan, and the first aviator; builder of the Labyrinth constructed to confine the Minotaur  
 dolus, *i m.* deceit, fraud, trick, scheme\*  
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus lift (up), raise\*  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 error, ōris *m.* wandering, maze, error  
 filum, *i n.* thread, clew, cord†  
 fūrtum, *i n.* theft, stealth, fraud  
 Gnōs(s)ius, *a, um* Gnosian, of Gnosus, a city of Crete  
 inextricābilis, *e* inextricable, insoluble†  
 insum, esse, fui be in, be present†  
 Minōtaurus, *i m.* savage Cretan monster, half bull and half man, the memorial of Pasiphaë's love for the bull†  
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle\*

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*  
 monimentum (monumentum), *i n.* reminder, memorial  
 nefandus, *a, um* unspeakable, unutterable  
 Pāsiphaē, *ēs f.* wife of Minos, king of Crete, who fell in love with a beautiful bull and was assisted by Daedulus to gratify her passion†  
 prōlēs, *is f.* progeny, offspring, race\*  
 quoque also, even, too, likewise\*  
 quotannis annually, yearly  
 regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct, guide\*  
 resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), unravel  
 respondeō, ēre, ī, ōnsus answer, correspond\*  
 septēnus, *a, um* seven (each), by sevens  
 sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle\*  
 supponō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place under, subject to†  
 taurus, *i m.* bull, ox, bullock\*  
 urna, *ae f.* urn, vase (used in drawing lots)†  
 Venus, eris *f.* (goddess of) love\*  
 vestigium, (i) *i n.* step, track, trace\*

been compelled by Minos to send annually seven youths and seven maidens as tribute to Crete, where they were thrown into the Labyrinth to be eaten by the Minotaur. The Minotaur was finally killed by Theseus, an Athenian prince, who had been sent as one of the seven annual victims. He was assisted by Ariadne, daughter of Minos, who had fallen in love with him and had given him a clew of thread with which to guide his steps and thus find his way out of the Labyrinth with its countless winding passages.

21. Cecropidae (sunt). miserum: acc. of exclamation; App. 318.

22. ductis sortibus: abl. abs. stat urna: represents the scene where the lots

had just been drawn from the urn at Athens, to see who should be sent as victims of the Minotaur.

23. Contrā: on the opposite door. mari: abl. of separation.

24. hic: on the door just mentioned. amor tauri: the love (of Pasiphaë) for the bull; tauri is obj. gen.; App. 284.

26. Veneris = amoris.

27. labor ille domūs: that famous house, so laboriously built, i.e., the Labyrinth; domūs is gen. of apposition.

28. rēgīnae: the princess, Ariadne, who fell in love with Theseus and assisted his escape.

30. vestigia: (Theseus's returning) steps.

- partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Īcare, habērēs.*  
*Bis cōnātus erat cāsūs effingere in aurō,*  
*bis patriae cecidēre manūs. Quīn prōtinus omnia*  
*perlegerent oculīs, nī jam praemissus Achātēs*  
 35 *adforet atque ūnā Phoebī Triviaeque sacerdōs,*  
*Dēiphobē Glaucī, fātur quae tālia rēgī:*  
*“Nōn hoc ista sibi tempus spectācula poscit;*  
*nunc grege dē intāctō septem mactāre iuvencōs*  
*praestiterit, totidem lēctās dē mōre bidentīs.”*  
 40 *Tālibus adfāta Aenēān (nec sacra morantur*  
*jussa virī) Teucrōs vocat alta in templa sacerdōs.*

**Achātēs**, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas\*  
**adfor**, *ārī, ātus* address, speak to\*  
**bidēns**, *entis f.* sheep (with two front teeth)  
**bis** twice\*  
**cadō**, *ere, cecidī, cāsus* fall, fail, sink, die\*  
**cōnor**, *ārī, ātus* attempt, try, endeavor  
**Dēiphobē**, *ēs f.* prophetess and priestess of Apollo and Hecate†  
**dolor**, *ōris m.* grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
**effingō**, *ere, finxī, fictus* fashion, portray†  
**Glaucus**, *i m.* a sea-god gifted with prophetic powers, father of Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl  
**grex**, *gregis m.* herd, flock†  
**Īcarus**, *i m.* son of Daedalus, who in his flight with his father from Crete flew too near the sun, melted his wings, fell into the sea, and was drowned†  
**intāctus**, *a, um* untouched, unbroken  
**iste**, *ta, tud* that (of yours)\*  
**iuvencus**, *i m.* bullock, ox\*

**legō**, *ere, lēgī, lēctus* choose, gather\*  
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor  
**moror**, *ārī, ātus* delay, tarry, hinder\*  
**mōs**, *mōris m.* custom, ritual, manner\*  
**nisi**, *nī* if not, unless\*  
**opus**, *eris n.* work (of art); toil, labor\*  
**perlegō**, *ere, lēgī, lēctus* survey, examine†  
**Phoebus**, *i m.* god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
**poscō**, *ere, poposci* demand, seek, ask\*  
**praemittō**, *ere, misi, missus* send forward  
**praestō**, *āre, stiti, status (stitus)* excel, be better  
**prōtinus** continuously, at once  
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not\*  
**sacerdōs**, *ōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)\*  
**septem** seven  
**sinō**, *ere, sivi, situs* permit, allow\*  
**spectāculum**, *i n.* sight, spectacle†  
**templum**, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
**totidem** as many, so many  
**Trivia**, *ae f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world  
**ūnā** together, at the same time

31. *sineret dolor*: did grief permit; equivalent to a condition contrary to fact. *habērēs*: conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382.

32. (Daedalus) *bis cōnātus erat cāsūs (Īcarī) effingere in aurō*.

33-76. In obedience to the command of the Sibyl, Aeneas performs the customary sacrifices, prays to the gods, imploring their favor, entreats the help of the prophetess, and vows to Apollo and Diana a temple, with sacred games to Apollo and a special sanctuary and college of priests to the Sibyl.

33. *omnia*: pronounce here as though spelled *omnja*, the *i* becoming consonantal; App. 401.

34. (Aenēas et socii) *perlegerent, nī adforet*: conclusion and condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

35-36. *sacerdōs*: the Sibyl who is priestess of Apollo and Hecate. *Glaucī*: (daughter) of Glaucus. *rēgī* (Aenēae).

37. *hoc*: pronounce *hocc*, making a long syllable. *ista spectācula*: those sights on which you are gazing.

38. *intāctō*: untouched (by the yoke).

39. *praestiterit*: it were better; potential subj.; App. 252.

40. *sacra*: substantively, *sacrifices*, modified by *jussa*, and object of *morantur* whose subject is *virī* (Teucrī).

41. *templa*: a cave in the rocky hillside, as is seen from the following line.



Excisum Euboicae latus *ingēns* rūpis *in* antrum,  
 quō lātī dūcunt aditūs centum, ōstia centum,  
 unde ruunt totidem vōcēs, respōnsa Sibyllae.  
*Ventum erat ad limen, cum virgō* "Poscere fāta  
 tempus" ait; "deus ecce deus!" Cui tālia fantī 45  
 ante forēs subitō nōn vultūs, nōn color ūnus,  
 nōn cōmptae mānsēre comae; sed pectus anhelum,  
 et rabiē fera corda tument, *majorque vidērī*  
*nec mortāle sonāns, adflāta est nūmine quandō* 50  
*jam propiōre deī.* "Cessās *in* vōta precēsque,  
 Trōs" ait "Aenēā? Cessās? Neque enim ante dehīscant  
 attonitae magna ōra domūs." Et tālia fāta  
 conticuit. Gelidus Teucrīs per dūra cucurrit  
 ossa tremor, funditque precēs rēx pectore ab īmō: 55

adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon, inspire

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance

anhelus, a, um panting, gasping

antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto\*

attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, amazed  
 centum hundred\*

cessō, (1) cease, pause, delay, hesitate

color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint

cōma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses\*

cōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus arrange (properly)†

conticēscō, ere, ticuī become silent, hush

cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*

currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, course

dehiscō, ere, hivi yawn, gape, open

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*

ecce see! look! behold!\*

enim for, indeed, truly\*

Euboicus, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a  
 large island off the eastern coast of

Greece, from which Cumae was settled

excidō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew (out)

ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed\*

foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance

gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*

latus, eris *n.* side, flank\*

mortalis, e mortal, human, earthly\*

os, ossis *n.* bone\*

ōstium, (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor

poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask\*

prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty\*

propior, ius nearer, closer

quandō when, since, because

rabiēs, ēi *f.* rage, fury, frenzy

respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, reply, response

rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag\*

Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess

sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*

subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*

totidem as many, so many

tremor, ōris, *m.* trembling, shudder

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan\*

tumēō, ēre, uī swell, be swollen

unde whence, from which source\*

virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*

vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering\*

vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect\*

42. Euboicae: see l. 2 and vocabulary.

45. Ventum erat (ā Teucrīs et Sibyllā): they had come. limen (antri).

45-46. Poscere fāta tempus (est): it is time to ask for the oracles. deus ecce deus: the Sibyl apparently falls into a trance and sees a vision of the god approaching.

47. nōn vultūs (mānsēre): her countenance changed. ūnus = idem, as often.

48. comae: under the influence of the god, her hair streams forth in wild disorder. pectus (est) anhelum.

49. major (est) vidērī: she is larger to look upon = major visa est. One of the effects of her inspiration is to make her appear larger.

50. mortāle: cognate acc.; App. 313. nec mortāle sonāns (est): her voice does not sound human.

51. Cessās (ire).

52. Neque ante(quam in vōta eās).

53. attonitae domūs: of the cave, awe-struck (by the presence of the god). fāta: from for.

55. rēx (Aenēās).

- "Phoebe, gravis *Trojae* semper miserāte *labōrēs*,  
*Dardana quā* Paridis dērextī *tēla manūsque*  
*corpus in* *Aeacidae*, *magnās* obeuntia *terrās*  
 tot *maria* intrāvī duce *tē* penitusque repostās  
 60 *Massylum gentis* praetentaque *Syrtibus arva*:  
*jam tandem Italiae fugientis* prendimus *ōrās*,  
*hāc Trojāna* tenus fuerit *fortūna secūta*.  
*Vōs* quoque *Pergameae* *jam fās est* parcere *gentī*,  
*dīque deaeque omnēs*, quibus obstitit *īlium et ingēns*  
 65 *glōria Dardaniae*. *Tūque, Ō* sanctissima *vātēs*,  
*praescia ventūri, dā (nōn* indēbita *poscō*  
*rēgna meīs fātīs)* *Latiō cōnsidere Teucrōs*  
*errantisque deōs* agitātaque *nūmina Trojae*.  
*Tum Phoebo et Triviae solidō dē* marmore *templum*

**Aeacidēs**, *ae m.* descendant of Aeacus, Achilles  
**agitō** (1) drive, harass, toss, agitate  
**cōnsidō**, *ere, sēdī*, sessus sit (down); settle\*  
**Dardania**, *ae f.* Troy, city of Dardanus  
**Dardanus**, *a, um* Trojan, Dardanian  
**dērigō** (*dīrigō*), *ere, rēxī*, *rēctus* direct, guide  
**dux**, *ducis, m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief\*  
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will\*  
**glōria**, *ae f.* glory, fame, reputation  
**gravis**, *e* heavy, grievous, serious\*  
**hāc . . . tenus** = *hāctenus* thus far, hitherto  
**īlium**, (*i*) *ī n.* Troy, Ilium  
**indēbitus**, *a, um* not due, not owed, undue†  
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate  
**Latium**, (*i*) *ī n.* district of central Italy\*  
**marmor**, *oris n.* marble  
**Massylī**, (*ōr*) *um m.* tribe of North Africa  
**miseror**, *ārī*, *ātus* pity, commiserate\*  
**obeo**, *ire, ii (ivī)*, *itus* approach, traverse, skirt†  
**obstō**, *āre, stitī*, *status* stand in the way, oppose (*dat.*)

**parcō**, *ere, pepercī (parsī)*, *parsus* spare (*dat.*)  
**Paris**, *idis (os) m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war  
**penitus** deep(ly), (from) within\*  
**Pergameus**, *a, um* Trojan  
**Phoebus**, *i m.* god of light, music, and prophecy\*  
**poscō**, *ere, poposcī* demand, seek, ask\*  
**praescius**, *a, um* foreknowing, prescient (*gen.*)†  
**praetendō**, *ere, ī*, *ntus* stretch before, extend  
**pre(he)ndō**, *ere, ī*, *ēnsus* seize, grasp  
**quoque** also, furthermore, too, likewise  
**repos(i)tus**, *a, um* secluded, remote  
**sāctus**, *a, um* holy, sacred, sainted\*  
**semper** always, ever\*  
**solidus**, *a, um* solid, whole, firm  
**Syrtis**, *is f.* quicksands off the northern coast of Africa  
**templum**, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
**tenus** *see hāc . . . tenus*  
**tot so many\***  
**Trivia**, *ae f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world  
**Trojānus**, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy\*  
**ventūrum**, *i n.* the future, what is to come

56. Phoebe miserāte: voc.

57. dērext(is)tī: Apollo as god of archery had directed the fatal arrow of Paris, which struck Achilles in his heel, his only vulnerable spot, and killed him.

60. Syrtibus: *dat.* with compound.

62. hāctenus Trojāna fortūna fuerit secūta: thus far, and thus far only let Trojan misfortune have followed me. fuerit: vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

66-67. ventūri: more picturesque than futūri; *gen.* with praescia. dā cōnsidere: grant that the Trojans may settle; the inf. with a verb of granting; App. 260. (in) Latiō.

68. deōs: especially the Trojan penates.

69-70. Vergil here refers to the magnificent temples on the Palatine, built by Augustus to Apollo and Diana, and to

institutam fēstōsque diēs dē nōmine Phoebī. 70  
*Tē quoque magna manent rēgnīs penetrālia nostrīs:*  
*hīc ego namque tuās sortīs arcānaque fāta*  
*dicta meae gentī pōnam, lēctōsque sacrābō,*  
*alma, virōs. Foliīs tantum nē carmina mandā,*  
*nē turbāta volent rapidīs lūdibria ventīs:* 75  
*īpsa canās ōrō." Fīnem dedit ōre loquendī.*  
*At Phoebī nōndum patiēns immānis in antrō*  
*bacchātur vātēs, magnum sī pectore possit*  
*excussisse deum; tantō magis ille fatigat*  
*ōs rabidum, fera corda domāns, fingitque premendō.* 80  
*Ōstia jamque domūs patuēre ingentia centum*  
*sponte suā vātisque ferunt respōnsa per aurās:*  
*"Ō tandem magnīs pelagī dēfūcte periclis*

almus, a, um nourishing, kind(ly)  
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 arcānus, a, um secret, hidden  
 bacchor, āri, ātus rave, storm, rage  
 canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, proclaim\*  
 carmen, inis n. song, verse, oracle  
 centum hundred\*  
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
 dēfungor, ī, fūctus perform, finish (abl.)†  
 domō, āre, uī, itus tame, subdue  
 excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off\*  
 fatigō (1) weary, tire (out), harass  
 ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed\*  
 fēstus, a, um festal, festival, holiday  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictus mold, train  
 folium, (i)ī n. leaf, foliage  
 instituō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, ordain†  
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus select, gather\*  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk\*  
 lūdibrium, (i)ī n. sport, mockery†  
 magis more, rather\*

mandō (1) order, intrust, commend  
 nōndum not yet  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
 ōstium, (i)ī n. mouth, entrance; harbor  
 pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend  
 patiēns, entis enduring, tolerating (gen.)  
 penetrālia, ium n. inner part, sanctuary  
 peric(u)lum, ī n. danger, peril, risk  
 Phoebus, ī m. god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,  
 control\*  
 quoque also, too, even, furthermore\*  
 rabidus, a, um raving, mad, frenzied†  
 rapidus, a, um swift, snatching, whirling\*  
 respōsum, ī n. answer, reply, response  
 sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow\*  
 sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle\*  
 spōns, spontis f. free will, choice  
 tantum only, so much, so far  
 turbō (1) confuse, disarrange, disturb\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

the Lūdī Apollinārēs, a great Roman festival in honor of Apollo.

71. Tē: addressed to the Sibyl; refers to the keeping of the famous Sibylline books in the Capitol at Rome.

73. lēctōs virōs: at first two, then ten, and finally fifteen men (the quindecim-virī) were intrusted with the care of the Sibylline books, which were supposed to contain prophecies dealing with the fate of Rome and which were consulted in times of great crisis.

74. nē mandā: cf. III, 444, 456, 457, and notes. nē with the imp. is chiefly poetic; App. 256, a.

75. ventis: dat. of reference.

76. (ut tū) ipsa canās: obj. of ōrō.

77-97. The Sibyl announces to Aeneas his future wars and urges him to be steadfast and endure to the end.

77. nōndum Phoebī patiēns: not yet submissive to Phoebus, i.e., she still struggles against the inspiration of the god.

78. sī possit: a conditional clause, used virtually as an indir. quest.

80. fingit (eam): a picture from breaking a spirited horse, as is the figure of the preceding verse.

83. Ō (tū) dēfūcte: voc. peric(u)lia: abl. with dēfungor; App. 342.

- (*sed terrae graviōra manent*), *in rēgna Lavīni*  
 85 *Dardanidae venient (mitte hanc dē pectore cūram),*  
*sed nōn et vēnisse volent. Bella, horrida bella,*  
*et Thybrim multō spūmantem sanguine cernō.*  
*Nōn Simois tibi nec Xanthus nec Dōrica castra*  
*dēfuerint; alius Latiō jam partus Achillēs,*  
 90 *nātus et ipse deā; nec Teucrīs addita Jūnō*  
*ūsquam aberit, cum tū supplex in rēbus egēnis*  
*quās gentis Italum aut quās nōn ōrāveris urbēs!*  
*Causa malī tantī conjūnx iterum hospita Teucrīs*  
*externīque iterum thalamī.*  
 95 *Tū nē cēde malis, sed contrā audentior itō*  
*quā tua tē fortūna sinet. Via prīma salūtis,*  
*quod minimē rēris, Grajā pandētur ab urbe."*  
*Tālibus ex adytō dictīs Cūmaea Sibylla*

absum, esse, fuī be absent, be lacking  
 Achillēs, is (ei, ī) *m.* famous Greek chief-tain\*  
 addō, ere, didī, ditus add\*  
 adytum, ī *n.* inner sanctuary, shrine  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\*  
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment\*  
 causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion\*  
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, go\*  
 contrā opposite, facing\*  
 Cūmaeus, a, um of Cumae, a city near Naples  
 Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Trojan, Dardanian\*  
 dēsum, esse, fuī be lacking, be absent  
 Dōricus, a, um Doric, Greek  
 egēnus, a, um needy, poor; critical  
 externus, a, um outer, foreign  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious\*  
 horridus, a, um bristling, terrible  
 hospitus, a, um strange, foreign  
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy

iterum again, anew, a second time\*  
 Latium, (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy\*  
 Lavinium, (i)ī *n.* city near Rome  
 malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, disaster\*  
 minimē least, not at all†  
 nāscor, ī, nātus be born, rise\*  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open\*  
 pariō, ere, peperī, partus produce, gain  
 quā where(by), wherever, in any (some) way  
 reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon  
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, salvation, health  
 Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess  
 Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy  
 sinō, ere, sīvī, situs permit, allow\*  
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, wedlock\*  
 Thybris, (id)is, acc. brim, *m.* the Tiber, a river of Italy  
 ūsquam anywhere, ever  
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

84. graviōra (pericula).  
 86. sed et volent nōn vēnisse. et = etiam: even, also.  
 89. dēfuerint: fut. perf. Translate as a fut. alius Achillēs: Turnus who plays a prominent part in the last six books of the *Aeneid*. See the note on IV, 615.  
 90. et: also, too.  
 91. supplex: Aeneas is compelled to go as a suppliant to Evander, who lives on the Palatine, the later site of Rome, as is related in the latter part of the *Aeneid*.  
 92. Ital(ōr)um.

93. Causa (erit). conjūnx hospita: Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus. She had been betrothed to Turnus, but on the arrival of Aeneas she was pledged by her father to him, and like a second Helen (iterum) she was the cause of war.  
 95. itō: continue to go.  
 96. quā (viā).  
 97. (id) quod. Grajā urbe: from a Greek city, Pallanteum on the Tiber, where Rome afterward stood.

98-123. Aeneas begs the Sibyl to guide him on his journey to the lower



horrendās canit ambāgēs antrōque remūgit,  
 obscūris vēra involvēns: *ea frēna furentī* 100  
*concutit et stimulōs sub pectore vertit Apollō.*  
*Ut primum cessit furor et rabida ōra quiērent,*  
*incipit Aenēās hērōs: "Nōn ūlla labōrum,*  
*Ō virgō, nova mī faciēs inopinave surgit;*  
*omnia praecēpī atque animō mēcum ante perēgī.* 105  
*Ūnum ōrō: quandō hīc infernī jānuā rēgis*  
*dīcitur et tenebrōsa palūs Acheronte refūsō,*  
*īre ad cōnspectum cārī genitōris et ōra*  
*contingat; doceās iter et sacra ōstia pandās.*  
*Illum ego per flammās et mille sequentia tēla* 110  
*ērīpuī hīs umerīs mediōque ex hoste recēpī;*  
*ille meum comitātus iter maria omnia mēcum*  
*atque omnīs pelagīque minās caelīque ferēbat,*  
*invalidus, vīrīs ultrā sortemque senectae.*

Acherōn, *antis m.* river of Hades  
 ambāgēs, *is f.* winding; mystery  
 antrum, *i n.* cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 Apollō, *inis m.* god of light, music, and  
 prophecy\*  
 canō, *ere, cecinī, cantus* sing (of), chant,  
 prophesy, proclaim\*  
 cārus, *a, um* dear, beloved, fond\*  
 cēdō, *ere, cessī, cessus* yield, depart\*  
 comitor, *ārī, ātus* accompany, attend, es-  
 cort, follow\*  
 concutiō, *ere, cussī, cussus* shake, shatter  
 cōnspectus, *ūs m.* sight, interview  
 contingō, *ere, tigī, tāctus* touch, befall\*  
 doceō, *ēre, uī, ctus* teach, tell, inform\*  
 faciēs, *ēi f.* appearance, face, aspect\*  
 frēnum, *i n.* rein, curb, check  
 furor, *ōris m.* madness, frenzy, fury\*  
 hērōs, *ōis m.* hero, mighty warrior\*  
 horrendus, *a, um* horrifying, dire\*  
 hostis, *is m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger\*  
 incipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* begin, under-  
 take\*  
 infernus, *a, um* nether, infernal  
 inopīnus, *a, um* unexpected, sudden  
 invalidus, *a, um* weak, feeble, infirm  
 involvō, *ere, ī, volūtus* wrap, infold

iter, *itineris n.* way, road, journey\*  
 jānuā, *ae f.* door, entrance  
 mille; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand\*  
 minae, *arum f.* threat, menace; pinnacle  
 obscūrus, *a, um* dark, dim, obscure\*  
 ōrō (1) *pray (for), entreat, beseech\**  
 ōstium, (i) *i n.* mouth, entrance; harbor  
 palūs, *ūdis f.* swamp, marsh, mere†  
 pandō, *ere, ī, passus* open, disclose\*  
 peragō, *ere, ēgī, āctus* traverse, finish  
 praecipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* anticipate,  
 teach  
 quandō *when, since, because*  
 quiēscō, *ere, ēvī, ētus* rest, calm, cease\*  
 rabidus, *a, um* raving, mad, frenzied  
 recipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* recover, res-  
 cue\*  
 refundō, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* pour (back, out)  
 remūgiō, *ire* bellow, roar†  
 senecta, *ae f.* old age, old  
 sors, *rtis f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle\*  
 stimulus, *i m.* goad, spur, prick†  
 tenebrōsus, *a, um* dark, gloomy  
 ultrā *beyond, more than (acc.)†*  
 vertō, *ere, ī, rsus* turn, change\*  
 vērum, *i n.* truth, reality, right  
 virgō, *inis f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)\*

world, that he may meet the shade of  
 his father Anchises.

99. (ex) antrō.

100. ea (= tālia) frēna: the fig-  
 ure of horsemanship is continued from  
 il. 77-80.

102. quiē(vē)runt.

104. mī = mihi.

107. dicitur (esse). Acheronte re-  
 fūsō: *abl. abs.*; the overflow of the  
 Acheron was supposed to form Lake  
 Avernus.

109. contingat (mihi): *vol. clause in*  
*apposition with ūnum in l. 106.* doceās,  
 pandās: *vol. subjunctives; App. 254.*

112. iter: *obj. of the middle part.,*  
 comitātus.

- 115 Quin, *ut tē supplex peterem et tua līmina adīrem*,  
*īdem ōrāns mandāta dabat. Nātique patrisque*,  
 alma, precor, miserēre (*potes namque omnia, nec tē*  
*nēquiquam lūcis Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs*),  
*sī potuit mānīs accersere conjugis* Orpheus
- 120 Thrēiciā frētus citharā fidibusque canōrīs,  
*sī frātre Pollūx alternā morte redēmit*  
*ītque reditque viam totiēns. Quid Thēsea, magnum*  
*quid memorem Alcīdē? Et mī genus ab Jove summō.*"
- Tālībūs ōrābat dictīs ārāsque tenēbat,*  
 125 *cum sic orsa loquī vātēs: "Sate sanguine dīvum,*

accersō, ere, sīvī, situs summon, invite  
 adeō, ire, īī (īvī), itus approach  
 Alcīdēs, ae *m.* Hercules, son of Jupiter  
 and Almena, who as one of his labors  
 descended to Hades and carried off Cer-  
 berus, the watchdog of Pluto  
 almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)  
 alternus, a, um alternate, alternating  
 Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Cam-  
 pania, where there was an entrance to  
 Hades\*  
 canōrus, a, um tuneful, musical†  
 cithara, ae *f.* lyre, harp, cither  
 fidēs, ium *f.* lyre, strings, cords; chords†\*  
 frāter, tris *m.* brother\*  
 frētus, a, um relying on (*abl.*)  
 Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell\*  
 lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 mandātum, ī *n.* command, charge, be-  
 hest  
 mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead,  
 Hades\*  
 memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate\*  
 misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate  
 (*gen.*)

nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly\*  
 ordior, irī, orsus begin, undertake  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
 Orpheus, ī *m.* famous poet and musician  
 of Thrace who went down to Hades to  
 bring back his wife Eurydice, but  
 failed†  
 Pollūx, ūcis *m.* son of Jupiter and Leda;  
 after the death of Castor, his twin  
 brother, Pollux, shared his immortality  
 with him on alternate days†  
 praefēcio, ere, fēcī, fectus set over (*acc.*,  
*dat.*)†  
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat\*  
 quīn (but) that, nay even, why not\*  
 redeō, ire, īī (īvī), itus return  
 redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus redeem†  
 serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget\*  
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble\*  
 Thēseus, ei (eos), *acc. ea, m.* early king  
 of Athens, who, among other exploits,  
 descended to Hades with his friend  
 Pirithōus to carry off Proserpina†  
 Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace, a  
 region northeast of Greece  
 totiēns so many times, so often

115. *ut peterem*: subst. clause of vol.  
 origin in apposition with *mandāta*.

116. *Nāti, patris*: genitives with *mi-*  
*serēre* (*imp.*); App. 289.

117. *potes omnia*: *you can (do) all*  
*things*.

120. *citharā, fidibus*: ablatives of  
 means with *frētus*.

122. *viam*: cognate *acc.*; App. 313.  
*Thēsea*: *acc.*, a Greek form; App. 69.

123. *Alcīdēn* = Hercules, a word which  
 cannot be used in dactylic hexameter  
 (— — —). As one of Hercules's cele-  
 brated twelve labors, he descended to  
 Hades and carried off Cerberus, the  
 three-headed dog of Pluto, which guarded

the entrance of the infernal regions. *mī*  
*genus* (*est*). *mī* = *mihi*: *dat.* of posses-  
 sion. *ab Jove*: through Venus, daughter  
 of Jupiter.

124-155. The Sibyl informs Aeneas of  
 the three conditions which must be ful-  
 filled before he may gain admission to  
 the lower world. The conditions are:  
 (1) the bringing of the golden bough;  
 (2) the purification of the fleet which had  
 been polluted by the death of Misenus;  
 (3) propitiatory sacrifices to the manes  
 and gods of the lower world.

124. *ārāsque tenēbat*: as a suppliant.

125. *orsa* (*est*). *Sate*: *voc.*

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō:  
*noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī jānuā Dītis;*  
*sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,*  
*hoc opus, hic labor est. Paucī, quōs aequus amāvīt*  
*Juppiter aut ardēns ēvēxit ad aethera virtūs,*  
*dīs genitī potuēre. Tenent media omnia silvae,*  
*Cōcētusque sinū lābēns circumvenit ātrō.*  
*Quod sī tantus amor mentī, sī tanta cupīdō est*  
*bis Stygiōs innāre lacūs, bis nigra vidēre*  
*Tartara, et insānō juvat indulgēre labōrī,*  
*accipe quae peragenda prius. Latet arbore opācā*  
*aureus et foliis et lentō vimine rāmus,*  
*Jūnōnī infernae dictus sacer; hunc tegit omnis*  
*lūcus et obscurīs claudunt convallibus umbrae.*

130

135

**aequus, a, um** equal, level, impartial  
**aethēr, eris, acc. era, m.** upper air, heaven, sky\*  
**amō (1)** love, cherish, like\*  
**Anchīsiadēs, ae m.** descendant of Anchises, Aeneas  
**arbōs (or), oris f.** tree; wood\*  
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold\*  
**Avernus, ī m.** lake of central Italy, where there was an entrance to Hades;  
 Hades\*  
**bis** twice\*  
**circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus** encircle†  
**claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)** close, shut (in)\*  
**Cōcētus, ī m.** river of Hades†  
**convallis, is f.** valley, vale, dale†  
**cupīdō, inis f.** desire, love, passion  
**dēscēnsus, ūs m.** descent†  
**Dis, Dītis m.** Pluto, god of Hades  
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** escape, come out  
**ēvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear (aloft)†  
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, ready  
**folium, (i)ī n.** leaf, foliage  
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, beget  
**gradus, ūs m.** step, gait, pace, stride  
**indulgeō, ēre, lsi, ltus** indulge (in) (dat.)  
**infernus, a, um** infernal, nether  
**innō (1)** swim, float (in), navigate†

**insānus, a, um** mad, insane, frenzied  
**jānuā, ae f.** door, entrance  
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please\*  
**lacus, ūs m.** lake, marsh, mere  
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
**lentus, a, um** pliant, tough, flexible  
**lūcus, ī m.** (sacred) grove, wood\*  
**medium, (i)ī n.** middle, midst, center  
**niger, gra, grum** black, gloomy, dusky\*  
**obscurus, a, um** dark, shadowy, gloomy\*  
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy  
**opus, eris n.** work, task, toil, deed\*  
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend  
**paucus, a, um** small, few, scanty  
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** accomplish  
**prius** first, sooner  
**quod** because, but  
**rāmus, ī m.** branch, bough, limb\*  
**revocō (1)** recall, call back, retrace  
**sinus, ūs m.** fold, bosom, bay, hollow\*  
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades\*  
**Tartara, ōrum n.** abode of the wicked in Hades  
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect\*  
**Trōs, Trōis m.** Trojan\*  
**vimen, inis n.** twig, shoot  
**virtūs, ūtis f.** manhood, excellence, valor\*

**126. facilis (est) dēscēnsus Avernō**  
 (= ad Avernum): dat. of direction; the descent is easy, i.e., by dying.

**129. hoc:** pronounce hocc, making a long syllable. **hoc, hic;** agree in gender with their predicate nouns, opus, labor; App. 240, a. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 432-433.

"Long is the way  
 And hard that out of hell leads up to light."

**131. potuēre (hoc):** could do this.

**134. innāre:** inf. with (tibi) cupīdō est which is equivalent to cupīs, you wish. **bis:** now and again at death.

**136. peragenda (sint).** (in) arbore.

**137. foliis, vimine:** ablatives of respect.

**138. Jūnōnī infernae:** to Proserpina, queen of the lower world. **dictus (esse).**

- 140 *Sed nōn ante datur tellūris operta subīre*  
auricomōs quam quī dēcerpserit arbore fētūs.  
*Hoc sibi pulchra suum ferrī Prōserpina mūnus*  
instituit. *Prīmō āvulsō nōn dēficit alter*  
aureus, *et simili frondēscit virga metallō.*
- 145 *Ergō altē vestigā oculīs et rīte repertum*  
carpe manū; *namque ipse volēns facilisque sequētur,*  
*sī tē fāta vocant; aliter nōn vīribus ūllīs*  
*vincere nec dūrō poteris convellere ferrō.*
- 150 *Praetereā jacet exanimus tibi corpus amīcī*  
(*heu nescīs*) *tōtamque incestat fūner classem,*  
*dum cōnsulta petis nostrōque in līmine pendēs.*  
*Sēdibus hunc refer ante suīs et conde sepulcrō.*  
*Dūc nigrās pecudēs; ea prīma piācula suntō.*  
*Sīc dēmum lūcōs Stygis et rēgna invia vīvīs*  
aspiēcīs." *Dixit, pressōque obmūtuit ōre.*

aliter otherwise, differently\*

altē on high, loftily

alter, era, erum (an)other (of two),  
second\*

amicus, i m. friend, lover, comrade\*

arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)\*

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold\*

aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*

auricomus, a, um golden-haired, golden-  
leaved†

āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear (off)

carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, pursue

condō, ere, didī, ditus found, hide, bury\*

cōnsultum, i n. resolve, decree, oracle†

convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (off)†

dēcerpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck (off)†

dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus lack, fail

dēmum finally, at last

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*

ergō therefore, then, consequently\*

exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless

facilis, e easy, favorable, ready

fētus, ūs m. young, produce, growth

frondēscō, ere leaf, sprout†

fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*

incestō (1) defile, pollute†

institūō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, ordain

inuius, a, um pathless, trackless

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*

lūcus, i m. (sacred) grove, wood\*

metallum, i n. metal, ore, mine†  
nesciō, ire, ivī (iī) not know, be igno-  
rant

niger, gra, grum black, dusky, gloomy\*

obmūtēscō, ere, tuī become silent, hush

opertum, i n. mystery, hidden part

pecus, udis f. animal (of the flock)\*

pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, tarry\*

piāculum, i n. expiation, crime

praetereā besides, also, furthermore\*

pressō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,  
control\*

Prōserpina, ae f. wife of Pluto and queen  
of Hades

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
noble, splendid\*

quam how, than, as\*

reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find

rite duly, properly, ritually

sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave

similis, e similar, like\*

Styx, Stygis f. river of the lower world†

vestigō (1) trace, search (for), track  
(out)†

virga, ae f. branch, rod, twig

vivus, a, um alive, living

140-141. ante . . . quam: until. auri-  
comōs fētūs. quī: indefinite. dēcerp-  
serit: fut. perf.

145-146. vestigā et rīte carpe.

149. jacet: lies (unburied). tibi:  
ethical dat.; best left untranslated.

150. tōtam classem: thus including  
Aeneas and making it impossible for him to  
sacrifice until he has been properly purified.

152. Sēdibus = ad sēdēs: dat. of di-  
rection. refer: imp.; App. 202. suīs:  
his proper, irregularly referring to hunc  
instead of to the subject. (in) sepul-  
crō.

153. Dūc: imp. nigrās: see V, 97,  
and 736, with notes. ea: attracted into  
the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a.  
suntō: imp. of sum; App. 120.



*Aenēās maestō dēfixus lūmina vultū*  
 ingreditur linquēns antrum, caecōsque volūtāt  
 ēventūs animō sēcum. *Cui fidus Achātēs*  
*it comes et paribus cūrīs vestigia figit.*  
*Multa inter sēsē variō sermōne serēbant,* 160  
*quem sociū exanimū vātēs, quod corpus humanū*  
*dīceret. Atque illi Misenū in litore siccō,*  
*ut vērēre, vident indignā morte perēptum,*  
 Misenū Aeolidēn, quō nōn praestantior alter  
 aere ciēre virōs Mārtēque accendere cantū. 165  
 Hectoris hic magnī fuerat comes, Hectora circum  
 et lituō pugnās insignis obibat et hastā.  
 Postquam illū vitā victor spoliāvit Achillēs,  
 Dardaniō Aenēae sēsē fortissimū hērōs  
 addiderat sociū, nōn īnferiōra secūtus. 170  
 Sed tum, forte cavā dum personat aequora conchā,  
 dēmēns, et cantū vocat in certāmina dīvōs,

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, rouse  
 Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of  
 Aeneas\*  
 Achillēs, is (ei, ī) m. Greek chieftain be-  
 fore Troy\*  
 addō, ere, didi, ditus add\*  
 Aeolidēs, ae m. descendant of Aeolus,  
 Misenus  
 aes, aeris n. bronze (implement), trum-  
 pet\*  
 alter, era, erum (an)other (of two),  
 second\*  
 antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden\*  
 cantus, ūs m. song, music, chant, tune  
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted\*  
 certāmen, inis n. contest, rivalry\*  
 ciēō, ēre, civi, citus (a)rouse, stir (up)\*  
 concha, ae f. (sea) shell, conch†  
 Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian\*  
 dēfigō, ere, xī, xus fix (down), cast down  
 dēmēns, entis mad, crazy, foolish  
 ēventus, ūs m. outcome, result, event†  
 exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless  
 fidus, a, um faithful, trusty, safe\*  
 figō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, pierce\*  
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout\*  
 hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart

Hector, oris, acc. ora, m. Trojan leader\*  
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
 humō (1) bury, inter, cover with earth†  
 indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved  
 ingredior, ī, gressus advance, enter  
 insignis, e distinguished, marked\*  
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert\*  
 lituus, ī m. (curved) trumpet†  
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
 Mārs, rtis m. (god of) war  
 Misenus, ī m. Trojan trumpeter  
 obeō, ire, ii (ivi), itus enter, approach  
 pār, paris equal, like, matched\*  
 perimō, ere, ēmi, ēptus destroy  
 personō, āre, uī, itus sound through, make  
 (re)sound  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 praestāns, antis excellent, superior  
 pugna, ae f. battle, fight, fray, com-  
 bat\*  
 sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech  
 serō, ere, uī, rtus join, discuss\*  
 siccus, a, um dry, thirsty  
 spoliō (1) despoil, plunder, rob (abl.)  
 varius, a, um various, different, diverse\*  
 vestigium, (i) ī n. track, footprint, step\*  
 volūtō (1) revolve, turn (over), roll  
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

156-182. Aeneas finds the corpse of  
 the Trojan trumpeter, Misenus, on the  
 shore and prepares his funeral pyre.

156. lūmina = oculōs; obj. of the  
 middle part., dēfixus.

159. cūrīs: abl. of manner.

162. quod corpus dīceret: indir. quest.

164. nōn alter (erat) praestantior.

165. ciēre: with praestantior; App.  
 265.

166. circum Hectora: acc., a Greek  
 form.

168. illum: Hector.

171. conchā: Triton's horn; hence his  
 jealousy.

- aemulus exceptum Trītōn, sī crēdere dignum est,  
*inter saxa virum spūmōsā immerserat undā.*  
 175 Ergō omnēs magnō circum clāmōre fremēbant,  
 praecipuē pius Aenēās. Tum jussa Sibyllae,  
 haud mora, fēstinant flentēs āramque sepulcrō  
 congerere arboribus caelōque ēdūcere certant.  
*Itur in antiquam silvam, stabula alta ferārū,*  
 180 prōcumbunt piceae, sonat icta secūribus ilex  
 fraxineaeque trabēs cuneīs et fissile rōbur  
 scinditur, advolvunt ingentīs montibus ornōs.  
*Nec nōn Aenēās opera inter tālia prīmus*  
*hortātur sociōs paribusque accingitur armīs.*  
 185 Atque haec ipse suō tristī cum corde volūtāt  
 aspectāns silvam immēnsam, et sic forte precātur:  
 "Sī nunc sē nōbīs ille aureus arbore rāmus  
 ostendat nemore in tantō! Quandō omnia vērē

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird(1e)  
 advoivō, ere, ī, volūtus roll†  
 aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous  
 arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)\*  
 a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold  
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold\*  
 certō (1) strive, fight, vie, contend  
 congerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap (up)  
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust\*  
 cuneus, i m. wedge, block (of seats)  
 dignus, a, um worthy, deserving  
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise  
 ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
 excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus catch, receive  
 fera, ae f. wild beast  
 fēstīnō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
 fissilis, e easily split, cleavable†  
 fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn  
 fraxineus, a, um ashen, of ash-tree†  
 fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, lament\*  
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite\*  
 icō, ere, icī, ictus strike, smite†  
 ilex, icis f. holm-oak  
 immēnsus, a, um boundless, measureless  
 immergō, ere, rsī, rsus plunge, drown  
 iussum, i n. order, command, behest

mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance\*  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 opus, eris n. work, task, deed, labor\*  
 ornus, i f. ash-tree  
 ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display\*  
 pār, paris equal, like, matched\*  
 picea, ae f. pitch-pine†  
 praecipuē especially, particularly  
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*  
 prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall  
 quandō when, since, because  
 rāmus, i m. branch, bough, limb\*  
 rōbur, oris n. oak; strength\*  
 scindō, ere, scidi, scissus split, cleave  
 secūris, is f. ax  
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave  
 Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 spūmōsus, a, um foamy, frothy†  
 stabulum, i n. stable, stall, lair, den  
 trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber,  
 tree  
 Trītōn, ōnis m. sea-god famous for his  
 skill in blowing a conch (sea shell) as  
 a trumpet  
 vērē truly, correctly†  
 volūtō (1) revolve, roll (over)

173. crēdere: inf. with adj.; App. 265.

177. haud mora (est).

178. arboribus: abl. of means. caelō = ad caelum: dat. of direction.

179. Itur: impersonal; translate *they go*.

182. scinditur: agrees with the nearest subject.

183-211. Guided by the two doves, Aeneas discovers the golden bough, which he brings to the Sibyl.

184. accingitur: *girds himself*; a middle verb.

187. Sī: with pres. subj., expressing a wish, "O that," "would that"; App. 253. (in) arbore.

*heu nimium dē tē vātēs, Misēne, locūta est.*"  
*Vix ea fātus erat geminae cum forte columbae* 190  
*ipsa sub ōra virī caelō vērē volantēs,*  
*et viridī sēdēre solō. Tum maximus hērōs*  
*māternās agnōscit avīs laetusque precātur:*  
*"Este ducēs, Ō, sī qua via est, cursumque per aurās*  
*dērigite in lūcōs ubi pinguem dives opācat* 195  
*rāmus humum. Tūque, Ō, dubiis nē dēfice rēbus,*  
*dīva parēns."* *Sic effātus vestīgia pressit*  
*observāns quae signa ferant, quō tendere pergant.*  
*Pascentēs illae tantum prōdīre volandō*  
*quantum aciē possent oculū servāre sequentum.* 200  
*Inde ubi vērē ad faucēs grave olentis Avernī,*  
*tollunt sē celerēs liquidumque per āera lāpsae*  
*sēdibus optātīs geminae super arbore sīdunt,*  
*discolor unde aurī per rāmōs aura refulsit.*

aciēs, ēi f. edge; eye(sight); battle line\*  
 āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, mist, fog  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize\*  
 arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)\*  
 Avernus, ī m. lake in central Italy where  
 there was an entrance to Hades\*  
 avis, is f. bird, fowl  
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet\*  
 columba, ae f. dove, a bird sacred to  
 Venus  
 dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint  
 dērigō (dirigō), ere, rēxī, rēctus direct,  
 guide  
 dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy  
 discolor, ōris of different color(s)†  
 dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering  
 dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief\*  
 effor, āri, ātus speak (out), say  
 faucēs, ium f. throat, jaws; pass(age)  
 gravis, e heavy, foul, serious\*  
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior\*  
 humus, ī f. ground, soil, earth\*  
 inde thence, next, thereupon\*  
 liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell\*

lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 māternus, a, um of a mother, maternal  
 Misēnus, ī m. Trojan trumpeter  
 nimium too (much), excessively  
 observō (1) watch, guard, observe  
 oleō, ēre, uī smell, stink†  
 opācō (1) darken, shade, shadow†  
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
 pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, pasture  
 pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed  
 pinguis, e fat, fertile, rich  
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke\*  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press\*  
 prōdeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus advance†  
 quantum (as much) as, as far as  
 rāmus, ī m. branch, limb, bough\*  
 refulgeō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glitter  
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle\*  
 sidō, ere, (sēd)ī sit, settle†  
 signum, ī n. sign, signal, token, mark\*  
 solum, ī n. ground, soil, earth\*  
 unde whence, from what source\*  
 vestigium, (i)ī n. step, track, trace\*  
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

191. ōra virī = oculōs Aenēae.

194. cursum (vestrum).

196. dubiis rēbus: *wavering fortunes;*  
 dat. with dēfice.

197. (re)pressit.

199. tantum: *only so far.* prōdīre:  
 hist. inf.; App. 257. volandō: abl. of the  
 gerund, expressing means.

200. aciē servāre: *keep them in sight.*  
 possent: implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

sequent(i)um: subst., of those following  
 (them).

201. grave: translate as an adv.; App.  
 310.

203. (in) sēdibus optātīs. geminae:  
*the two (doves).* super arbore: *on top of*  
*the tree.*

204. discolor: *of a different color from*  
*the rest of the tree.* aurī aura: *assonance*  
*and alliteration.*

- 205 Quāle solet *silvīs* brūmālī frīgore vīscum  
fronde virēre *novā*, quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs,  
et croceō fētū teretīs circumdare truncōs,  
*tālis erat speciēs aurī* frondentis opācā  
ilice, *sīc* lēnī crepitābat brattea *ventō*.
- 210 Corripit *Aenēās* extemplō avidusque refringit  
cūctantem, et vātis portat sub tēcta Sibyllae.  
*Nec minus intereā Misēnum in lītore Teucrī*  
*flēbant et cinerī ingrātō suprēma ferēbant.*  
Principiō pinguem taedis et rōbore sectō
- 215 *ingentem* strūxēre pyram, cui frondibus *ātrīs*  
intexunt latera et fērālīs ante cupressōs  
cōstituunt, decorantque super fulgentibus armīs.  
*Pars calidōs laticēs et aēna undantia flammīs*  
*expediunt, corpusque lavant frīgētis et unguunt.*

aēnum, *i n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)  
arbōs (or), *oris f.* tree, wood(s)\*  
avidus, *a, um* eager, greedy, ardent  
brattea, *ae f.* thin sheet, plate, foil†  
brūmālīs, *e* wintry, of winter†  
calidus, *a, um* hot, warm†  
cinis, *eris m.* ashes (of the dead), em-  
bers\*  
circumdō, *dare, dedī, datus* surround  
cōstituō, *ere, uī, ūtus* place, set up  
corripō, *ere, uī, reptus* snatch (up)\*  
crepitō (1) rattle, rustle, crash  
croceus, *a, um* yellow, saffron  
cūctor, *ārī, ātus* delay, cling, linger  
cupressus, *i f.* cypress, an evergreen  
tree sacred to the dead  
decorō (1) adorn, ornament, decorate†  
expediō, *īre, īvī ii)* itus bring forth  
extemplō immediately, at once  
fērālīs, *e* funereal, of the dead, fateful  
fētus, *ūs m.* offspring, fruit, shoot  
fleō, *ēre, ēvī, ētus* weep, lament, mourn  
frigēns, *entis* cold, stiff; lifeless  
frigus, *oris n.* cold, frost, chill  
frondēns, *entis* leafy, fronded  
frōns, *frondis f.* leaf, foliage, frond\*  
fulg(e)ō, *ēre, lsi* gleam, shine, glitter  
ilex, *icis f.* holm-oak  
ingrātus, *a, um* thankless, unfeeling  
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*

intexō, *ere, uī, xtus* interweave, interlace  
latex, *icis m.* liquid, water, wine  
latus, *eris n.* side, flank\*  
lavō, *āre, (āv)ī, ātus* (lautus) wash, bathe  
lēnis, *e* light, gentle, soft, inoderate  
minus less, in a less degree  
Misēnus, *i m.* Trojan trumpeter  
opācus, *a, um* dark, shady, gloomy  
pinguis, *e* fat, rich, fertile  
portō (1) carry, bear, take, convey\*  
pricipiō first(ly), in the first place  
pyra, *ae f.* funeral pyre  
quālis, *e* (of) what sort, (such) as\*  
refringō, *ere, frēgi, frāctus* break off†  
rōbur, *oris n.* oak; strength\*  
secō, *āre, uī, ctus* cut, slice, cleave\*  
sēminō (1) sow, produce, bear†  
Sibylla, *ae f.* ancient Italian prophetess  
soleō, *ēre, itus sum* be accustomed  
speciēs, *ēī f.* appearance, sight, aspect  
struō, *ere, strūxī, strūctus* build, heap  
(up)  
suprēma, *ōrum n.* last rites, funeral  
taeda, *ae f.* pine, pine (torch, faggot)  
teres, *etis* smooth, rounded, polished  
truncus, *i m.* trunk, stem, body  
undō (1) boil, wave, fluctuate, seethe  
unguō, *ere, ūnxi, ūnctus* anoint  
vireō, *ēre* be green, grow, flourish†  
viscum, *i n.* mistletoe†

206. *novā fronde*: abl. of manner.  
quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs: the mistle-  
toe is a parasite, and its leaves and  
berries therefore are different from those  
of the tree on which it grows (arbōs sua).

211. *cūctantem*: as it seemed to  
Aeneas in his eager haste.

212-235. Aeneas erects a tomb for  
Misenus at the foot of a lofty mountain,  
henceforth known as Mt. Misenum.

213. *ingrātō*: thankless, because un-  
feeling. *suprēma ferēbant*: were paying  
the last rites, honors.



Fit gemitus. *Tum membra torō dēflēta repōnunt* 220  
*purpureāsque super vestīs, vēlāmina nōta,*  
*conjiunt. Pars ingentī subiēre feretrō,*  
*trīste ministerium, et subjectam mōre parentum*  
*āversī tenuēre facem. Congesta cremantur*  
*tūrea dōna, dapēs, fūsō crātēres olīvō.* 225  
 Postquam conlāpsi cinerēs *et flamma* quiēvit,  
 reliquiās vīnō *et bibulam lāvēre favillam,*  
*ossaue lēcta cadō tēxit Corynaeus aēnō.*  
*Īdem ter sociōs pūrā circumtulit undā*  
*spargēns rōre levī et rāmō fēlicis olivāe,* 230  
*lūstrāvitque virōs dīxitque novissima verba.*  
*At pius Aenēās ingentī mōle sepulcrum*  
*impōnit suaue arma virō rēmumque tubamque*  
*monte sub āeriō, quī nunc Mīsēnus ab illō*  
*dīcitur aeternumque tenet per saecula nōmen.* 235

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen  
 āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering  
 aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal\*  
 āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn away, avert\*  
 bibulus, a, um thirsty, absorbent†  
 cadus, i m. cask, urn  
 cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers\*  
 circumferō, ferre, tuli, lātus carry round,  
   go round; purify†  
 congerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap (up)  
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus heap (up)  
 conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall (in), collapse  
 Corynaeus, i m. Trojan priest†  
 crātēr, ēris m. mixing bowl  
 cremō (l) burn, cremate, consume†  
 daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet\*  
 dēflēō, ēre, ēvi, ētus bewail, lament†  
 favilla, ae f. cinder, ashes, embers  
 fax, facis f. torch, firebrand\*  
 fēlix, icis happy, fruitful, fortunate\*  
 feretrum, i n. bier, death couch†  
 fiō, fieri, factus become, be made  
 gemitus, ūs m. groan(ing), wail(ing)\*  
 impōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus place on\*  
 lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash, drench  
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, choose\*  
 levis, e light, slight, swift, trivial  
 lūstrō (l) survey, traverse; purify\*  
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
 ministerium, (i) i n. service, duty, office†

Mīsēnus, i m. Italian promontory†  
 mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*  
 mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner\*  
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
 olivā, ae f. olive (tree)  
 olivum, i n. (olive) oil†  
 os, ossis n. bone\*  
 postquam after (that), when\*  
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson  
 pūrus, a, um pure, clear, clean  
 quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus (become) quiet.  
   rest\*  
 rāmus, i m. branch, limb, bough\*  
 re(l)iquiae, ārum f. remains, rest, leavings  
 repōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus replace, re-  
   move\*  
 rōs, rōris m. dew, moisture  
 saeculum, i n. generation, age, eternity  
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave  
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
 subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under  
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, hide\*  
 ter three times, thrice\*  
 torus, i m. couch, bier\*  
 tuba, ae f. trumpet  
 tūreus, a, um of incense†  
 vēlāmen, inis n. covering, veil, garment  
 verbum, i n. word, speech, talk  
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 vinum, i n. wine\*

221. *purpureās vestis*: the customary color at great Roman funerals.

222. *feretrō*: dat. with compound *subeō*, instead of the usual acc.

223. *ministerium*: apposition with *pars subiēre feretrō*. *mōre parentum*: introd. 6.

229. *circumtulit* = *lūstrāvit*: *purified*.

231. *novissima verba*: "Valē," repeated three times. See notes on I, 219; II, 644; III, 68.

234. *Mīsēnus*: the place is still called Punta di Miseno, or Capo Miseno.

235. *dicitur* = *vocātur*, as often.

- Hīs actīs properē exsequitur praecepta Sibyllae.*  
*Spēlunca alta fuit vastōque immānis hiātū,*  
*scrūpea, tūta lacū nigrō nemorumque tenebrīs,*  
*quam super haud ūllae poterant impūne volantēs*  
 240 *pendere iter pennīs: tālis sēsē hālitus ātrīs*  
*faucibus effundēs supra ad convexa ferēbat:*  
*[unde locum Graji dīxērunt nōmine Aornon.]*  
*Quattuor hīc prīmum nigrantīs terga juvencōs*  
*cōstituit frontīque invergit vīna sacerdōs,*  
 245 *et summās carpēns media inter cornua saetās*  
*ignibus impōnit sacrīs, libāmina prīma,*  
*vōce vocāns Hecatē caelōque Erebōque potentem.*  
*Suppōnunt aliī cultrōs tepidumque cruōrem*  
*suscipiunt paterīs. Ipse ātrī velleris agnam*

agna, ae f. ewe lamb  
 Aornus, i, acc. on, m. (f.) birdless (lake),  
 Avernus†  
 carpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck, take, consume  
 cōstituō, ere, ui, ūtus place, establish,  
 stand  
 convexum, i n. hollow, vault (of the  
 sky)  
 cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end  
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore  
 culter, tri m. knife, butcher knife†  
 effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out\*  
 Erebus, i m. the lower world, Hades  
 exsequor, i, secūtus perform, execute  
 faucēs, ium f. jaws, throat, pass(age)  
 frōns, frontis f. front, forehead, brow\*  
 Grajus, a, um Greek\*  
 hālitus, ūs m. breath, exhalation  
 Hecatē, ēs f. goddess of the lower world  
 hiātus, ūs m. yawning (mouth)†  
 impōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus place on  
 (dat.)\*  
 impūne safely, with impunity  
 invergō, ere invert, pour on†  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 juvencus, i m. bullock, ox\*  
 lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere

libāmen, inis n. libation, offering†  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest\*  
 niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky\*  
 nigrāns, antis black, gloomy, dark  
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl  
 penna, ae f. wing, feather  
 potēns, entis powerful, ruling, mighty\*  
 praeceptum, i n. bidding, teaching  
 properē quickly, speedily†  
 quattuor four  
 sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*  
 saeta, ae f. hair, bristle†  
 scrūpeus, a, um stony, rugged, rough†  
 Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess  
 spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern, grotto  
 suppōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus place be-  
 neath  
 suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus catch up  
 tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom  
 tepidus, a, um warm, tepid  
 tergum, i n. back, hide\*  
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure\*  
 unde whence, from which source\*  
 vellus, eris n. fleece, wool, fillet  
 vinum, i n. wine\*  
 volāns, antis m. (f.) bird, fowl, flying  
 creature

236-263. Before the entrance to the lower world Aeneas and the Sibyl sacrifice by night to the gods of the lower world, and in answer to their prayers Hecate comes and opens the entrance shortly before daybreak.

236. (Aenēās) exsequitur.

237. Spēlunca: not the one mentioned in l. 42.

242. dīxērunt nōmine = vocāvērunt. Aornon: a Greek word meaning birdless. Avernus is thus fancifully derived from

Aornos for the reasons given in ll. 239-241. This line is not found in the best manuscripts and may be a later addition to the poem.

243. nigrantīs: see the notes on V, 97.

244. frontī: dat. with compound.

247. (in) caelōque Erebōque potentem: she was Diana in Heaven and Hecate in Hades.

248. Suppōnunt: place beneath (the throats of the victims).

249. ātrī velleris: see the notes on V, 97.

*Aenēās mātrī Eumenidum magnaēque sorōri* 250  
*ēse ferit, sterilemque tibi, Prōserpina, vaccam.*  
*Tum Stygiō rēgī nocturnās incohat ārās*  
*et solida impōnit taurōrum viscera flammīs,*  
*pingue super oleum fundēns ardentibus extīs.*  
*Ecce autem prīmī sub lūmina sōlis et ortūs* 255  
*sub pedibus mūgire solum et juga coepta movērī*  
*silvārum, vīsaēque canēs ululāre per umbram*  
*adventante deā. "Procul Ō, procul este, profānī"*  
*conclāmat vātēs, "tōtōque absistite lūcō;*  
*tūque invāde viam vāgīnāque ēripe ferrum:* 260  
*nunc animīs opus, Aenēā, nunc pectore firmō."*  
*Tantum effāta furēns antrō sē immisit apertō;*  
*ille ducem haud timidīs vādentem passibus aequat.*  
*Dī, quibus imperium est animārum, umbraēque silentēs*

**absistō, ere,** stitī depart, withdraw  
**adventō** (1) keep coming nearer, arrive, approach  
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), keep pace with\*  
**antrum, ī n.** cave, cavern, grotto\*  
**apertus, a, um** open(ed), revealed, clear  
**autem** however, moreover, but\*  
**canis, is m. (f.)** dog, hound  
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, commence  
**conclāmō** (1) call, shout, exclaim  
**dux, ducis m. (f.)** leader, guide, chief\*  
**ecce** see! look! behold!\*  
**effor, āri, ātus** speak, say, utter  
**ēnsis, is m.** sword, knife\*  
**Eumenides, um f.** Furies  
**exta, ōrum n.** entrails, vitals  
**feriō, ire** strike, smite, cut, kill  
**firmus, a, um** stout, firm, resolute  
**immittō, ere, misī, missus** send in, fling into  
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place on (dat.)\*  
**incohō** (1) commence, begin, consecrate, build†  
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** enter (on), attack  
**jugum, ī n.** yoke, (mountain) ridge\*

**lūcus, ī m.** (sacred) grove, wood\*  
**mūgiō, ire, ivī (iī), itus** bellow, roar  
**nocturnus, a, um** of the night, nocturnal  
**oleum, ī n.** (olive) oil  
**opus, eris n.** work, need (abl.)\*  
**ortus, ūs m.** rising, source, spring  
**passus, ūs m.** step, pace, stride, gait  
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile  
**profānus, a, um** unholy, uninitiated†  
**Prōserpina, ae f.** wife of Pluto and goddess of Hades  
**silēns, entis** silent, still, quiet  
**sōl, sōlis m.** sun, day\*  
**solidus, a, um** solid, whole, firm  
**solum, ī n.** ground, earth, soil\*  
**soror, ōris f.** sister\*  
**sterilis, e** barren, sterile, unfruitful  
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades\*  
**taurus, ī m.** bull, ox, bullock\*  
**timidus, a, um** timid, fearful, anxious†  
**ululō** (1) howl, wail, bark, shriek  
**vacca, ae f.** heifer, young cow  
**vādō, ere** go, advance, proceed, go (on)  
**vāgina, ae f.** scabbard, sheath  
**viscus, eris n.** vitals, flesh

**250. mātrī Eumenidum magnaēque sorōri:** refer to Nox and Tellus, daughters of Chaos.

**252. Stygiō rēgī:** Pluto (Dis), god of the lower world. **nocturnās:** sacrifices to the deities of the lower world were regularly offered in the night.

**254. super:** with the final syllable irregularly lengthened under the verse accent; App. 394, a.

**256-257. coepta (sunt), visae (sunt).**

**258. deā:** Hecate coming to open the

way and attended by the hounds of Hades. **profānī:** the companions of Aeneas who could not go with him.

**261. animīs:** abl. with **opus** (est); App. 341.

**262. furēns:** see the notes on II, 345.

**264-267.** Vergil here pauses in the narrative to invoke the gods of the lower world and to ask permission to reveal these sacred mysteries.

- 265 *et Chaos et Phlegethōn, loca nocte tacentia lātē,  
sit mihi fās audita loqui, sit nūmine vestrō  
pandere rēs altā terrā et cāligine mersās.*
- Ībant obscūrī sōlā sub nocte per umbram  
perque domōs Ditis vacuās et inānia rēgna:  
270 quāle per incertam lūnam sub lūce malignā  
est iter in silvīs, ubi caelum condidit umbrā  
Juppiter, et rēbus nox abstulit ātra colōrem.  
Vestibulum ante ipsum primīs in faucibus Orci  
Lūctus et ultricēs posuēre cubilia Cūrae;  
275 pallentēsq̄ habitant Morbī tristisq̄ Senectūs,  
et Metus et malesuāda Famēs ac turpis Egestās,  
terribilēs vīsū formae, Lētumq̄ Labōsque;  
tum cōnsanguineus Lētī Sopor et mala mentis*

auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus remove  
cāligo, inis *f.* (thick) darkness, fog  
Chaos *n. indecl.* abyss, empty space  
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint  
condō, ere, didī, ditus found; hide\*  
cōnsanguineus, ī *m.* kinsman, brother  
cubile, is *n.* couch, bed  
Cūra, *ae f.* Care, Anxiety  
Dis, Ditis *m.* Pluto, god of Hades  
Egestās, ātis *f.* Need, Want†  
Famēs, is *f.* Hunger, Famine, Greed  
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will\*  
faucēs, ium *f.* jaws, throat; pass(age)  
forma, *ae f.* shape, form, beauty\*  
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess  
inānis, *e* empty, ghostly, useless\*  
incertus, *a, um* doubtful, uncertain  
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
lātē far and wide, widely  
Lētum, ī *n.* Death, Destruction, Ruin\*  
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk,  
tell\*  
Lūctus, ūs *m.* Grief, Sorrow, Agony

lūna, *ae f.* moon, moonlight\*  
malesuādus, *a, um* ill-counseling†  
malignus, *a, um* scanty, spiteful  
malus, *a, um* evil, wicked, false, bad\*  
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, plunge†  
Metus, ūs *m.* Fear, Fright, Anxiety\*  
Morbus, ī *m.* Disease, Sickness†  
obscūrus, *a, um* dark, dim, gloomy\*  
Orcus, ī *m.* (god of the) lower world,  
Hades; tomb  
pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan  
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, disclose\*  
Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery river of Hades†  
quālis, *e* (of) what sort, (such) as\*  
Senectūs, ūtis *f.* Old Age, Eld  
Sopor, ōris *m.* Sleep, Slumber  
tacēns, entis silent, quiet, still  
terribilis, *e* frightful, terrible, dire  
turpis, *e* shameful, disgraceful  
ultrix, icis avenging  
vacuus, *a, um* empty, free, deserted  
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own\*  
vestibulum, ī *n.* entrance, vestibule

266. *sit fās mihi:* vol. or opt. subj.;  
App. 254, 253. *audita loqui:* to tell what  
I have heard.

267. (in) *altā terrā:* deep in the earth;  
App. 246.

268-294. Accompanied by the Sibyl  
Aeneas sets out on his journey. Near the  
entrance they find the death-bringing  
powers, and a little farther the horrible  
monsters of Hades.

268. *Ībant* (Aenēās et Sibylla).

272. *rēbus:* dat. of separation.

274-281. Observe the personification  
of abstract ideas.

277-278. *Lētum; tum cōnsanguineus  
Lētī Sopor:* "Sleep and his brother  
Death." Cf. Shelley, *Queen Mab:*

"Death and his brother Sleep,  
One pale as yonder waning moon  
With lips of lurid blue,  
The other rosy as the morn."

and Tennyson, *In Memoriam*, 67:

"When in the down I sink my head,  
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, times my  
breath;  
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, knows  
not Death,  
Nor can I think of thee as dead.'



Gaudia, mortiferumque adversō in līmine Bellum,  
ferreīque Eumenidum thalamī et Discordia dēmēns 280  
vipereum crīnem vittīs innexa cruentīs.

In mediō rāmōs annōsaeque braccia pandit  
ulmus opāca, ingēns, quam sēdem Somnia vulgō  
vāna tenēre ferunt, foliisque sub omnibus haerent.  
Multaque praetereā variārū mōnstra ferārū, 285  
Centauri in foribus stabulant Scyllaeque biformēs  
et centungeminus Briareus ac bēlua Lernae  
horrendum stridēns, flammisque armāta Chimaera,  
Gorgones Harpyiaequē et forma tricorporis umbrae.  
Corripit hīc subitā trepidus formīdine ferrum 290

adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
annōsus, a, um aged, ancient  
armō (l) arm, equip, furnish\*  
bēlua, ae f. beast, monster†  
biformis, e two-formed, double-shaped  
braccium, (i)ī n. arm, limb\*  
Briareus, ei m. a sea-monster with a  
hundred hands†  
Centaurus, i m. a monster with the body  
of a horse and the head of a man†  
centungeminus, a, um hundredfold =  
hundred-armed†  
Chimaera, ae f. fire-breathing monster,  
having the head of a goat, and a tail  
ending in a serpent's head†  
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
crinis, is m. lock, hair, tresses\*  
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
dēmēns, entis insane, mad, distracted  
Discordia, ae f. Strife, Discord†  
Eumenides, um f. the Furies  
fera, ae f. wild beast  
ferreus, a, um (of) iron  
folium, (i)ī n. leaf, foliage  
foris, is f. door, gate, entrance  
forma, ae f. shape, form, beauty\*  
formidō, inis f. fear, fright, dread  
Gaudium, (i)ī n. Joy, Delight, Pleasure  
Gorgō, onis f. snake-headed monster who  
turned all beholders to stone  
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to),  
stick\*

Harpyia, ae f. foul and ravenous monster  
with the face of a woman and the body  
of a bird  
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful\*  
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus weave (in)  
Lerna, ae f. marsh near Argos in southern  
Greece, home of the Hydra, a monster  
with seven serpent heads, slain by Her-  
cules as the second of his twelve labors†  
medium, (i)ī n. middle, midst, center  
mōnstrum, i n. monster, portent, sign\*  
mortifer, era, erum death-bringing†  
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy  
pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open\*  
praetereā besides, also, in addition\*  
rāmus, i m. branch, limb, bough\*  
Scylla, ae f. a monster half maiden and  
half fish, girt around the waist with  
howling dogs (wolves)  
Somnium, (i)ī n. Dream†  
stabulō (l) dwell, be stabled†  
strid(e)ō, ēre, i hiss, creak, whir  
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
thalamus, i m. (bridal) chamber, bedroom\*  
trepidus, a, um agitated, scared, alarmed  
tricorpor, oris three-bodied†  
ulmus, i f. elm†  
vānus, a, um empty, idle, vain  
varius, a, um various, different, diverse\*  
vipereus, a, um snakey, of snakes†  
vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band\*  
vulgō commonly, everywhere

280. ferreī: two syllables here by  
synizesis; App. 403.

281. crīnem: obj. of the middle part.  
innexa; App. 309, a.

282. In mediō (vestibulō).

284. ferunt = dicunt, as often.

288. horrendum: cognate acc.; trans-  
late as an adverb. Cf. *Paradise Lost*,  
2, 625-628:

"All monstrous, all prodigious things,  
Abominable, inutterable, and worse

Than fables yet have feigned, or fear  
conceived,  
Gorgons, and Hydras, and Chimaeras  
dire."

289. Gorgonēs: a Greek form; App.  
65, a. Harpyiae: three syllables, the yi  
making a diphthong pronounced *we*.  
forma tricorporis umbrae: Geryon, a  
Hispanian giant with three bodies, slain  
by Hercules.

*Aenēās strictamque aciem venientibus offert,  
et nī docta comes tenuis sine corpore vitās  
admoneat volitāre cavā sub imāgine formae,  
inruat et frūstrā ferrō diverberet umbrās.*

295

*Hinc via Tartareī quae fert Acherontis ad undās.*

300

*Turbidus hīc caenō vastāque vorāgine gurgēs  
aestuāt atque omnem Cōcūtō ērūctat harēnam.  
Portitor hās horrendus aquās et flūmina servat  
terribilī squālōre Charōn, cui plūrima mentō  
cānitiēs inculca jacet, stant lūmina flammā,  
sordidus ex umerīs nōdō dēpendet amictus.  
Ipse ratem contō subigit vētisque ministrat  
et ferrūgineā subvectat corpora cumbā,  
jam senior, sed crūda deō viridisque senectūs.*

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (a gloomy river of) Hades

aciēs, ēi *f.* edge; eyesight; battle-line\*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, admonish

aestuō (1) boil, seethe, surge†

amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, cloak, mantle

aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood\*

caenum, ī *n.* mud, mire, dirt, filth†

cānitiēs, ēi *f.* grayness, gray hair†

cavus, a, um hollow, empty\*

Charōn, ontis *m.* ferryman who transported the souls of the dead across the river Styx in Hades†

Cōcūtus, ī *m.* gloomy river of Hades

contus, ī *m.* pole, pike

crūdus, a, um raw, fresh, bloody

cumba, ae *f.* skiff, boat, bark†

dēpendeō, ēre hang (down), depend

diverberō (1) strike asunder, beat, cleave

doctus, a, um learned, wise, skilled

ērūctō (1) vomit, belch (forth)

ferrūgineus, a, um rusty, dusky†

flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood\*

forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty\*

frūstrā in vain, uselessly, idly\*

gurgēs, itis *m.* stream, whirlpool, gulf\*

harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach\*

horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)\*

imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost\*

incultus, a, um unkempt, shaggy

inruō, ere, uī rush (on), attack

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)\*

mentum, ī *n.* chin, beard

ministrō (1) serve, tend, provide

nisi, nī if not, unless\*

nōdus, ī *m.* knot, fold

offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present

portitor, ōris *m.* ferryman†

ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat\*

senectūs, ūtis *f.* old age, eld

senex, senis old, aged; senior, ōris older, very old\*

sine without (*abl.*)\*

sordidus, a, um dirty, filthy, squalid†

squālōr, ōris *m.* filth, squalor†

stringō, ere, strinxī, strictus draw, brush

subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus force, push

subvectō (1) bear, convey, transport†

Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, abode of the wicked in Hades†

tenuis, e slight, unsubstantial, thin

terribilis, e terrible, dire, awful

turbidus, a, um wild, turbid, thick

viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous\*

volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

vorāgō, inis *f.* whirlpool, whirling water†

292. vitās = animās, umbrās.

292-294. nī admoneat: condition contrary to fact. inruat, diverberet: conclusions contrary to fact. sub cavā imāgine formae: 'neath hollow show of form (Rhoades). diverberet: conative, would have tried to strike asunder; App. 351, 2, a.

295-336. The river Styx, Charon the boatman, and the souls of the unburied dead, among whom Aeneas recog-

nizes his friends, Leucaspis and Orontes.

296. caenō: *abl.* of means or cause. vastā vorāgine: *abl.* of quality.

297. Cōcūtō: *dat.* of direction.

299. squālōre: *abl.* of quality. cui mentō: *on his chin.*

300. stant lūmina flammā: *his eyes are aflame with fire.*

301. nōdō: *abl.* of manner.

304. deō: *dat.* of possession.

*Hūc omnis turba ad ripās effūsa ruēbat,*  
*mātrēs atque virī dēfūnctaque corpora vitā*  
*magnanimum hērōum, puerī innūptaeque puellae,*  
*impositūque rogīs juvenēs ante ōra parentum:*  
*quam multa in silvīs autumnī frīgore primō*  
*lāpsa cadunt folia, aut ad terram gurgite ab altō*  
*quam multae glomerantur avēs, ubi frigidus annus*  
*trāns pontum fugat et terrīs immittit apricīs.*  
*Stābant ōrantēs primī trāsmittere cursum,*  
*tendēbantque manūs ripae ulteriōris amōre.*  
*Nāvita sed tristis nunc hōs nunc accipit illōs,*  
*ast aliōs longē summōtōs arcet harēnā.*  
*Aenēās mirātus enim mōtusque tumultū*  
*“Dic” ait, “Ō virgō, quid vult concursus ad amnem?*  
*Quidve petunt animae? Vel quō discriminē ripās*  
*hae linquunt, illae rēmīs vada livida verrunt?”*

amnis, is *m.* river, stream\*  
 annus, ī *m.* year, season\*  
 apricus, a, um sunny, sun-loving  
 arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend, confine  
 autumnus, ī *m.* autumn, fall†  
 avis, is *f.* bird, fowl  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 concursus, ūs *m.* gathering, concourse  
 dēfungor, ī, fūctus finish, perform (*abl.*)  
 discrimen, inis *n.* distinction, crisis  
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, scatter\*  
 enim for, indeed, truly\*  
 folium, (i) ī *n.* leaf, foliage  
 frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty  
 frigus, oris *n.* cold, chill, frost  
 fugō (1) put to flight, rout, drive off  
 glomerō (1) assemble, gather, roll together  
 gurgēs, itis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf\*  
 harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach\*  
 hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior\*  
 immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in(to),  
 let go (*dat.*)  
 impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on  
 (*dat.*)\*

innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin  
 juvenis, is *m.* (f.) youth, young (man,  
 woman)\*  
 linguō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, forsake\*  
 lividus, a, um blue, dark, livid†  
 longē (from) afar, far off\*  
 magnanimus, a, um great-souled, noble  
 miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire\*  
 nāvita, ae *m.* sailor, ferryman†  
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
 pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves\*  
 puella, ae *f.* girl, maiden  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 ripa, ae *f.* bank, shore\*  
 rogos, ī *m.* funeral pyre  
 summoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove†  
 trāns across, beyond (*acc.*)  
 trāsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send across,  
 cross  
 tumultus, ūs *m.* tumult, uproar, hubbub  
 turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion  
 ulterior, ius farther, remoter  
 vadum, ī *n.* shallow, ford; deep  
 verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour  
 virgō, inis *f.* maid(en), virgin, girl\*

305. ad ripās: enlarging upon hūc.  
 306. vitā: *abl.* with dēfungor; App.  
 342.

307. magnanim(ōr)um.

309. quam multa: as many (as).  
 frīgore: *abl.* of time when.

313. ōrantēs trāsmittere: poetic for  
 the prose ōrantēs ut trāsmittant; App.  
 360. (sē) trāsmittere. cursum: obj. of  
 trāns in trāsmittere; App. 308. a.

314. ripae: obj. gen.; App. 284.

315. Nāvita tristis: Charon, called  
 portitor in l. 298. Cf. Shakespeare, *Rich-*  
*ard III*, I, 4, 46:

“that grim ferryman that poets write  
 of.”

316. submōtōs arcet = submovet et  
 arcet.

318. Dic: imp. quid vult: what  
 means?

320. hae (animae): refused passage  
 by Charon.

*Ollā sic breviter fāta est longaeva sacerdōs:*

*"Anchīsā generāte, deum certissima prōlēs,  
Cōcūyī stāgna alta vidēs Stygiamque palūdem,  
dī cūjus jūrāre timent et fallere nūmen.*

- 325 *Haec omnis, quam cernis, inops inhumātaque turba est;  
portitor ille Charōn; hī, quōs vehit unda, sepultī.  
Nec ripās datur horrendās et rauca fluenta  
trānsportāre prius quam sēdibus ossa quiērunt.  
Centum errant annōs volitantque haec litora circum;*
- 330 *tum dēmum admissī stāgna exoptāta revisunt."*  
*Cōstitit Anchīsā satus et vestigia pressit  
multa putāns sortemque animō miserātus inīquam.  
Cernit ibī maestōs et mortis honōre carentis  
Leucaspim et Lyciae ductōrem classis Orontēn,*

admittō, ere, misī, missus admit†  
annus, i m. year, season\*  
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely  
careō, ēre, uī, itus lack, be free (abl.)  
centum hundred\*  
certus, a, um certain, sure, undoubted\*  
Charōn, ontis m. ferryman of souls  
across the Styx in Hades  
Cōcūyus, i m. mournful river of Hades  
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)\*  
dēmum at length, finally  
ductor, ōris m. leader, pilot, chief  
exoptō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)  
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, prove  
false (to)\*  
fluentum, i n. stream, river, flood  
generō (1) generate, beget, bear  
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)\*  
ibī there, then  
inhumātus, a, um unburied  
inīquus, a, um unequal, unfair, unjust  
inops, opis needy, helpless, destitute  
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath  
Leucaspis, (id)is m. Trojan leader†  
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived  
Lycius, a, um Lycian, Trojan  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate\*  
Orontēs, is m. Trojan leader  
os, ossis n. bone\*  
palūs, ūdis f. swamp, marsh, mere  
portitor, ōris m. ferryman  
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press\*  
prius sooner  
prōlēs, is f. offspring, progeny, race\*  
putō (1) think, suppose, consider  
quam how, than, as\*  
quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose\*  
raucus, a, um hoarse, roaring  
revisō, ere revisit, see again  
ripa, ae f. bank, shore\*  
sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*  
sepeliō, ire, ivī (iū), sepultus bury, inter  
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget\*  
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle\*  
stāgnum, i n. lake, marsh, mere  
Stygius, a, um of the Styx, a river of  
Hades\*  
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious\*  
trānsportō (1) carry across, transport†  
turba, ae f. crowd, mob, confusion  
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey, bear\*  
vestigium, (i)ī n. step, track, trace\*  
volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

321. longaeva: according to the legend, the Sibyl had been granted as many years as the grains of sand she could hold in her hand, but was not allowed to retain her youth.

324. *By whose divine power the gods fear to swear and prove false.*

325. inops: perhaps without the small coin usually placed in the mouth of the corpse to pay his passage across the Styx. inhumāta: no one was allowed to cross the Styx unless duly buried.

327. Nec datur (Charontī) trānsportāre (animās). ripās, fluenta: objects of the preposition trāns in composition; App. 308, a.

328. (in) sēdibus: tomb, as in l. 152. quiē(vē)runt.

331. Anchīsā satus: son of Anchises. (re)pressit.

332. (in) animō.

333. mortis honōre: burial.

334. Orontēn: lost in the storm, l. 113-119.



*quōs simul ā Trojā ventōsa per aequora vectōs* 335  
*obruit Auster, aquā involvēns nāvemque virōsque.*

*Ecce gubernātor sēsē Palinūrus agēbat,*  
*quī Libycō nūper cursū, dum sīdera servat,*  
*exciderat puppī mediīs effūsus in undīs.*

*Hunc ubi vix multā maestum cognōvit in umbrā,* 340  
*sīc prior adloquitur: "Quis tē, Palinūre, deōrum*  
*ēripuit nōbīs mediōque sub aequore mersit?*

*Dic age. Namque mihi, fallāx haud ante repertus,*  
*hōc unō respōnsō animum dēlūsit Apollō,*  
*quī fore tē pontō incolumem finīsque canēbat* 345

*ventūrum Ausoniōs. En haec prōmissa fidēs est?"*

*Ille autem: "Neque tē Phoebī cortīna fefellit,*  
*dux Anchisiadē, nec mē deus aequore mersit.*

*Namque gubernāclum multā vī forte revulsum,*  
*cui datus haerēbam custōs cursūsque regēbam,* 350

**adloquor, i, locūtus** address, accost  
**Anchisiadēs, ae m.** descendant of Anchises, Aeneas

**Apollō, inis m.** god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**aqua, ae f.** water, waves, flood\*

**Ausonius, a, um** Italian

**Auster, tri m.** (south) wind\*

**autem** moreover, however, but\*

**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim\*

**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize

**cortīna, ae f.** caldron (resting on a tripod and serving as a seat for the priestess of Delphi when she delivered an oracle), kettle

**custōs, ōdis m.** guard(ian), sentinel\*

**dēlūdō, ere, sī, sus** deceive, delude†

**dux, ducis m. (f.)** leader, guide, chief\*

**ecce** see! look! behold!\*

**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, hurl\*

**ēn** see! look! behold!

**excidō, ere, ī** fall (out), perish

**fallāx, ācis** deceitful, treacherous

**fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus** deceive, cheat\*

**fidēs, ei f.** faith, trust, pledge, fidelity\*

**gubernāc(u)lum, ī n.** tiller, rudder

**gubernātor, ōris m.** pilot, helmsman

**haerēō, ēre, haesi, haesus** cling (to)\*

**incolumis, e** safe, unharmed, intact

**involvō, ere, ī, volūtus** wrap, engulf

**Libycus, a, um** of Libya, a country of North Africa\*

**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy\*

**mergō, ere, rsi, rsus** sink, drown

**nūper** recently, lately

**obruō, ere, ui, utus** overwhelm, bury

**Palinūrus, ī m.** Trojan pilot\*

**Phoebus, ī m.** Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy\*

**pontus, ī m.** sea, waves\*

**prior, ius** sooner, former, first, prior\*

**prōmittō, ere, misi, missus** promise\*

**regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus** rule, direct, guide\*

**reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus** find

**respōnsum, ī n.** answer, oracle, reply

**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear off, remove

**vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus** bear, convey\*

**ventōsus, a, um** windy, stormy†

**337-383.** They meet with the soul of Palinurus, who wishes to cross with Aeneas, but is consoled by the Sibyl with a promise of eternal fame.

**337. sēsē agēbat :** *was passing along.*

**338. Libycō cursū:** V, 827-871.

**339. mediīs effūsus in undīs = effūsus in undās manēbat in undīs.**

**343. Dic:** imp.; App. 202. **mihī:** dat. of agent with repertus.

**345. (in) pontō. (in) finīs.**

**347. Phoebī cortīna:** from which the oracles were delivered.

**348. deus (Phoebus).**

**349. gubernāc(u)lum:** obj. of trāxi, l. 351.

**350. cursūs (nāvis tuae).**

praecipitāns trāxī mēcum. *Maria aspera jūrō  
nōn ūllum prō mē tantum cēpisse timōrem,  
quam tua nē spoliāta armīs, excussa magistrō,  
dēficeret tantīs nāvis surgentibus undīs.*

- 355 Trīs Notus hibernās immēnsa per aequora noctēs  
vēxit mē violentus aquā; *vix lūmine quārtō  
prōspexi Italiam summā sublimis ab undā.*  
Paulātim adnābam terrae; *jam tūta tenēbam,*  
360 nī gēns crūdēlis madidā cum veste gravātum  
prēnsantemque uncīs manibus capita aspera montis  
*ferro invāsisset praedamque ignāra putāset.*  
*Nunc mē flūctus habet versantque in litore ventī.*  
*Quod tē per caeli jūcundum lūmen et aurās,*  
*per genitōrem ōrō, per spēs surgentis Iuli,*  
365 *ēripe mē hīs, invicte, malis: aut tū mihi terram*  
*inijce, namque potes, portūsque requīre Velinōs;*

adnō (1) swim, float to (*dat.*)  
aqua, *ae f.* water, waves, flood\*  
asper, *era, erum* rough, harsh, fierce\*  
crūdēlis, *e* cruel, bloody, fierce\*  
dēficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectus* fail, sink  
excutiō, *ere, cussi, cussus* shake off,  
free (from)\*  
gravō (1) burden, weigh down, oppress  
hibernus, *a, um* wintry, of the winter  
ignārus, *a, um* ignorant, unaware\*  
immēnsus, *a, um* boundless, vast  
inijciō, *ere, jēcī, jectus* cast upon  
invādō, *ere, sī, sus* enter, attack  
invictus, *a, um* unconquered, invincible†  
Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
jūcundus, *a, um* pleasant, delightful†  
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath  
madidus, *a, um* wet, dripping  
magister, *trī m.* master, pilot, chief  
malum, *i n.* evil, misfortune, trouble\*  
nisi, *nī* if not, unless\*  
Notus, *i m.* (south) wind  
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech\*  
paulātim gradually, little by little

praecipitō (1) throw, fall headlong  
praeda, *ae f.* booty, spoils, plunder  
pr(eh)ēnsō (1) catch, grasp, seize  
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)\*  
prōspiciō, *ere, spexī, spectus* discern, see  
in front  
putō (1) think, suppose, consider  
quam how, than, as\*  
quārtus, *a, um* fourth  
quod because, but, the fact that, where-  
fore  
requirō, *ere, sīvī, sītus* seek (again)  
spēs, *ei f.* hope, expectation\*  
spoliō (1) rob, strip, despoil (*abl.*)  
sublimis, *e* high, uplifted, aloft, exalted  
timor, *ōris m.* fear, dread, anxiety  
trēs, tria three\*  
tūtus, *a, um* safe, protected, secure\*  
uncus, *a, um* curved, bent, arched  
vehō, *ere, vēxī, vectus* bear, convey\*  
Velinus, *a, um* of Velia, an Italian city†  
versō (1) keep turning, toss, roll  
vestis, *is f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
violentus, *a, um* boisterous, violent†

351. (per) maria aspera jūrō.

352. tantum timōrem (mē) cēpisse:  
timōrem is subject and mē the ob-  
ject.

353-354. armīs, magistrō: ablatives of  
separation. armīs: here refers to the  
tiller. nē dēficeret: after the idea of  
fearing in timōrem mē cēpisse; App.  
363.

356. aquā: *abl.* of route or of place.  
lūmine: *day*, as often.

358. tenēbam: mixed condition; App.  
382, *d.*

359-361. (mē) gravātum. capita mon-  
tis: *edge of the cliff*. nī invāsisset, putā-  
(vi)sset: conditions contrary to fact; App.  
382. praedam: they thought he might  
have some object of value on his person.

365-366. mihi terram injice: if only  
three handfuls, the minimum requirement  
for burial rites and consequent entrance  
into Hades.

*aut tū, sī qua via est, sī quam tibi dīva creātrix*  
*ostendit (neque enim, crēdō, sine nūmine divum*  
*flūmina tanta parās Stygiamque innāre palūdem),*  
*dā dextram miserō et tēcum mē tolle per undās,* 370  
*sēdibus ut saltem placidīs in morte quiēscam."*  
*Tālia fātus erat coepit cum tālia vātēs:*  
*"Unde haec, Ō Palinūre, tibi tam dira cupīdō?*  
*Tū Stygiās inhumātus aquās amnemque sevērū*  
*Eumenidum aspiciēs, rīpamve injussus adibis?* 375  
*Dēsine fāta deum flectī spērāre precandō.*  
*Sed cape dicta memor, dūrī solācia cāsūs.*  
*Nam tua finitimī, longē lātēque per urbēs*  
*prōdigīs actī caelestibus, ossa piābunt*  
*et statuent tumulum et tumulō sollemnia mittent,* 380  
*aeternumque locus Palinūrī nōmen habēbit."*  
*Hīs dictīs cūrae ēmōtae pulsusque parumper*  
*corde dolor tristī; gaudet cognōmine terrā.*

adeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus approach  
aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal\*  
amnis, is m. river, stream\*  
aqua, ae f. water, waves, flood\*  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold\*  
caelestis, e heavenly, divine, celestial  
coepi, isse, ptus begin, undertake  
cognōminis, e of like name, of the same  
name†

cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
creātrix, icis f. mother, creator†  
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust\*  
cupīdō, inis f. desire, love, passion  
dēsīnō, ere, sivi (ii), situs cease, desist  
dīrus, a, um fearful, awful, dire\*  
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove  
enim for, indeed, truly\*  
Eumenides, um f. Furies  
finitimus, ī m. neighbor; pl. adjoining  
people  
flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, move  
flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood\*  
gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult  
inhumātus, a, um unburied  
injussus, a, um unbidden, uninvited†  
innō (1) swim, float (on)

lātē wide(ly), far and wide  
longē (from) afar, far\*  
memor, oris mindful, remembering\*  
os, ossis n. bone\*  
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display  
Palinūrus, ī m. Trojan pilot\*  
palūs, ūdis f. swamp, marsh (water),  
mere

parumper for a little while, momentarily†  
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus expel, drive (out)  
piō (1) expiate, propitiate  
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet\*  
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, beg\*  
prōdigium, (i)ī n. omen, portent, prodigy  
quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose\*  
rīpa, ae f. bank, shore\*  
saltem at least, at any rate  
sevērus, a, um stern, dread, strict†  
sine without (abl.)\*  
solācium, (i)ī n. consolation, solace  
sollemne, is n. sacrifice, ritual  
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, reckon\*  
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, build  
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a  
river of Hades\*  
tam so (much, greatly), such\*  
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb\*  
unde whence, from what source\*

370. undās (Stygiās).

374-375. amnem Eumenidum: the  
Cocytus.

379. prōdigīs actī: according to the  
legend, the Lucanians, the finitimī of  
l. 378, were afflicted with a pestilence,  
and when they consulted the oracle,

they were ordered to make atonement  
to the shades of Palinurus. This they  
did by dedicating to him a cenotaph  
(empty tomb) and a grove near  
Velia.

381. aeternum: called today Punta  
di Palinuro. Cf. l. 235.

- Ergo iter inceptum peragunt fluvioque propinquant.  
 385 Nāvita quos jam inde ut Stygiā prōspexit ab undā  
 per tacitum nemus ire pedemque advertere ripae,  
 sic prior adgreditur dictis atque increpat ultrō:  
 "Quisquis es, armātus quā nostra ad flūmina tendis,  
 fāre age quid veniās jam istinc, et comprime gressum.  
 390 Umbrarum hic locus est, somnī noctisque sopōrae:  
 corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carinā.  
 Nec vērō Alcīdē mē sum laetātus euntem  
 accēpisse lacū, nec Thēsea Pirithoūmque,  
 dīs quamquam genitī atque invictī vīribus essent.  
 395 Tartareum ille manū custōdem in vincla petīvīt  
 ipsius ā soliō rēgis trāxitque tremementem;

adgredior, i, gressus address, attack  
 advertō, ere, i, rsus turn toward  
 Alcīdēs, ae m. descendant of Alceus,  
 Hercules, who descended to Hades and  
 carried off Cerberus, the three-headed  
 dog  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat\*  
 comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press  
 custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel\*  
 ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
 flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood\*  
 fluvius, (i) i m. river, stream  
 gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget  
 gressus, ūs m. step, gait, walk, stride  
 incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-  
 take\*  
 increpō, āre, uī, itus reprove, chide†  
 inde thence, from that point\*  
 invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible  
 istinc from where you are†  
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*  
 lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere  
 laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight  
 nāvita, ae m. sailor, ferryman, mariner  
 nefās n. indecl. sin, wrong, impiety\*  
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest\*  
 peragō, ere, ēgi, āctus complete, do

Pirithoūs, i m. king of the Lapiths, friend  
 of Theseus†  
 prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior\*  
 propinquō (1) approach, draw near  
 (dat.)  
 prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see (be-  
 fore)  
 quamquam although  
 quisquis, quicquid whoever, whichever,  
 whatever  
 ripa, ae f. bank, shore\*  
 solium, (i) i n. throne, seat  
 sopōrus, a, um slumberous, sleepy†  
 Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a  
 river of Hades\*  
 tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, secret  
 Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest  
 region of Hades  
 Thēseus, ei (eos), acc. ea, m. early king  
 of Athens who descended to Hades  
 with Pirithoūs and attempted to carry  
 off Proserpina, Pluto's queen  
 tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quiver\*  
 ultrō further, voluntarily\*  
 vectō (1) convey, carry, bear†  
 vērō truly, indeed, but  
 vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain, cable\*  
 vīvus, a, um living, alive, natural

384-416. Charon at first refuses to  
 ferry Aeneas and the Sibyl across the  
 Styx, but after being shown the golden  
 bough he consents.

389. istinc: from where you are, with-  
 out approaching nearer.

391. nefās (est).

392. Alcīdē: the form Herculēn  
 (—v—) could not be used in dactylic  
 hexameter. nec laetātus: litotes; App.  
 431. According to the story, Charon

was punished by a year's imprisonment  
 for assisting Hercules to enter Hades by  
 ferrying him across the Styx. On this  
 journey Hercules carried off Cerberus to  
 the upper world.

394. vīribus: abl. of respect. essent:  
 concession; App. 384. In classical prose  
 quamquam usually takes the indica-  
 tive.

395. ille: Hercules. in vinc(u)la  
 petīvīt = petīvīt ut caperet vinc(u)lis.  
 custōdem: Cerberus.



*hī dominam Ditis thalamō dēducere adortī.*  
*Quae contrā breviter fāta est Amphrŷsia vātēs:*  
*"Nullae hīc insidiae tālēs (absiste movērī),*  
*nec vim tēla ferunt; licet ingēns jānitor antrō* 400  
*aeternum lātrāns exsanguis terreat umbrās,*  
*casta licet patruī servet Prōserpina līmen.*  
*Trōius Aenēās, pietāte insignis et armīs,*  
*ad genitōrem imās Erebi dēscendit ad umbrās.*  
*Sī tē nulla movet tantae pietātis imāgō,* 405  
*at rāmum hunc"* (aperit rāmum quī veste latēbat)  
*"agnōscās." Tumida ex irā tum corda residunt.*  
*Nec plūra hīs. Ille admīrāns venerābile dōnum*  
*fātālis virgae longō post tempore vīsum*  
*caeruleam advertit puppim ripaeque propinquat.* 410  
*Inde aliās animās, quae per juga longa sedēbant,*  
*dēturbat laxatque forōs; simul accipit alveō*

absistō, ere, stiti depart, cease, desist  
 admiror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire  
 adior, iri, ortus attempt, attack†  
 advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (to, toward)  
 aeternus, a, um eternal, continual, lasting  
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
 alveus, ī m. boat; hollow; trough†  
 Amphrŷsius, a, um Amphrysian, of Amphrysus, a river along which Apollo once herded cattle†  
 antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto\*  
 aperiō, ire, uī, ertus open, disclose\*  
 breviter shortly, briefly, concisely  
 caerule(us), a, um dark (blue)\*  
 castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste  
 contrā opposite, in reply (to)\*  
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
 dēducō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead off, abduct  
 dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend  
 dēturbō (1) drive off, dislodge  
 Dis, Ditis m. Pluto, lord of the lower realm  
 domina, ae f. mistress, queen  
 Erebus, ī m. Hades, (god of) the lower world  
 exsanguis, e bloodless, pale, lifeless  
 fātālis, e fated, fatal, fateful  
 forus, ī m. gangway, deck  
 imāgō, inis f. appearance, likeness, phantom\*

inde thence, next, thereupon\*  
 insidiae, ārum f. ambush, plot, snare  
 insignis, e distinguished, marked\*  
 jānitor, ōris m. doorkeeper, porter†  
 jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge; bench\*  
 lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk\*  
 lātrō (1) bark, howl, bay†  
 laxō (1) loose(n), clear, open, free  
 licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted\*  
 patruus, ī m. paternal uncle†  
 pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility\*  
 post after, behind (acc.); next, later\*  
 propinquō (1) draw near, approach (dat.)  
 Prōserpina, ae f. wife of Pluto and queen of Hades  
 rāmus, ī m. branch, limb, bough\*  
 residō, ere, sēdi subside, settle  
 ripa, ae f. bank, shore\*  
 sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit\*  
 terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify  
 thalamus, ī m. bridal chamber, bedroom\*  
 Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
 tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling  
 venerābilis, e venerable, awful†  
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 virga, ae f. branch, shoot, twig

397. hī: Theseus and Pirithoūs. dominam: Proserpina.

398. Amphrŷsia vātēs = Apollinēa vātēs, and refers to the Sibyl.

400. licet (per nōs): so far as we are concerned.

401-402. aeternum: cognate acc. Translate adverbially. (ut) terreat, (ut)

servet. patruī = conjugis: since Proserpina married her paternal uncle.

407. agnōscās: vol. subj.; App. 254.

408. Nec plūra (dicta sunt). hīs: abl. with comparative. dōnum: for Proserpina.

412. alveō: dissyllabic here by synizesis, or hypermetric; App. 403, 402.

*ingentem Aenēan. Gemuit sub pondere cumba  
sūtilis et multam accēpit rīmōsa palūdem.*

415 *Tandem trāns fluvium incolumīs vātemque virumque  
informī līmō glaucāque expōnit in ulvā.*

*Cerberus haec ingēns lātrātū rēgna trifauci  
personat adversō recubāns immānis in antrō.*

420 *Cui vātēs horrēre vidēns jam colla colubris  
melle sopōrātā et medicātis frūgibus offam  
objicit. Ille famē ravidā tria guttura pandēns  
corripit objectam, atque immānia terga resolvit  
fūsus humī tōtōque ingēns extenditur antrō.*

425 *Occupat Aenēas aditum custōde sepultō  
ēvādītque celer ripam inremeābilis undae.*

*Continuō audītāe vōcēs vāgītus et ingēns*

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance  
adversus, a, um *opposite, facing\**  
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto\*  
celer, eris, ere quick, swift, fleet\*  
Cerberus, ī *m.* monstrous three-headed  
dog in Hades†  
collum, ī *n.* neck\*  
coluber, brī *m.* snake, serpent  
continuō immediately, at once  
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)\*  
cumba, ae *f.* boat, skiff  
custōs, ōdis *m. (f.)* guard(ian), senti-  
nel\*  
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape; traverse  
expōnō, ere, posuī, positus place out,  
disembark†  
extendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, extend  
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed  
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream  
frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, produce, meal  
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, roar, mourn  
glaucus, a, um gray, green, gleaming†  
guttur, uris *n.* throat, gullet†  
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder\*  
humus, ī *f.* ground, earth, soil\*  
incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact  
informis, e shapeless, hideous

inremeābilis, e from which there is no  
return, irretraceable  
lātrātus, ūs *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)  
limus, ī *m.* slime, mud, mire†  
medicō (1) drug, medicate†  
mel, mellis *n.* honey  
objiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw (before)  
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy  
offa, ae *f.* morsel, cake†  
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere  
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend\*  
personō, āre, uī, itus (make) resound  
pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass  
ravidus, a, um mad, fierce, raging  
recubō, āre recline, lie  
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax  
rīmōsus, a, um full of cracks, leaky†  
ripa, ae *f.* bank, shore\*  
sepeliō, īre, īvi (ii), ultus bury, inter  
sopōrō (1) make drowsy, drug  
sūtilis, e sewed, with seams†  
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide\*  
trāns across, beyond (*acc.*)  
trēs, tria three\*  
trifaux, faucis three-throated†  
ulva, ae *f.* sedge, marsh grass  
vāgītus, ūs *m.* crying, wailing†

414. sūtilis: the boat was apparently  
of skins, sewed together. rīmōsa: made  
so by the unaccustomed weight placed  
upon it. palūdem: (water of) the marsh.

416. (in) līmō.

417-425. Aeneas and the Sibyl find  
their way blocked by Cerberus, the huge  
three-headed dog of Hades, but they  
give him a medicated cake which puts  
him to sleep and they pass on.

422. objectam (offam).

423. humī: loc.

424. custōde (= Cerberō) sepultō  
(sommnō): abl. abs.

425. inremeābilis: "from whose bourn  
no traveler returns."

426-449. Under Minos as judge the  
souls of the dead are divided into five  
classes: (1) infants; (2) those con-  
demned to death under false accusations;  
(3) suicides; (4) those who have died for  
love; (5) renowned warriors.

infantumque animae flentēs, in limine primō  
quōs dulcis vitae exsortis et ab ūbere raptōs  
abstulit atra diēs et fūnere mersit acerbō.

Hōs juxtā falsō damnātī crimine mortis.

430

Nec vērō hae sine sorte datae, sine iudice, sēdēs:

quaesitor Minōs urnam movet; ille silentum  
conciliumque vocat vitāsque et crimina discit.

Proxima deinde tenent maestī loca, quī sibi lētum

insontēs peperere manū lūcemque perōsī

435

prōjēcere animās. Quam vellent aethere in altō

nunc et pauperiem et dūrōs perferre laborēs!

Fās obstat, tristisque palūs inamābilis undae

alligat et noviēs Styx interfūsa coērcet.

Nec procul hinc partem fūsi mōnstrantur in omnem

440

lūgentēs campī; sic illōs nōmine dicunt.

acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad  
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
alligō (1) bind, fasten, tie (to)  
auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry off  
coērcēō, ēre, uī, itus restrain, confine†  
concilium, (i)ī *n.* assembly, council  
crimen, inis *n.* crime, accusation  
damnō (1) condemn, sentence, devote  
deinde thence, next, thereupon\*  
discō, ere, didici learn, investigate  
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
exsors, rtis without a part (lot) (*gen.*)  
falsus, a, um false, unfounded, mock  
fās *n. indecl.* justice, fate, divine will\*  
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn  
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster\*  
inamābilis, e unlovely, hateful†  
infāns, antis *m. (f.)* infant, baby†  
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless  
interfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour be-  
tween  
iūdex, icis *m. (f.)* judge, jurymen, um-  
pire†  
juxtā next, nearest to (*acc.*)\*  
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin\*  
lūgēō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn, lament

maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown  
Minōs, ōis *m.* king of Crete, and later  
judge in Hades†  
mōnstrō (1) point out, show, teach,  
guide\*  
noviēs nine times†  
obstō, āre, stiti, status oppose (*dat.*)  
palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere  
pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, cause  
pauperiēs, ēi *f.* poverty†  
perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear (to the  
end), endure  
perōdī, ōdisse, ōsus hate, detest†  
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (away)  
proximus, a, um next, nearest  
quaesitor, ōris *m.* examiner, judge†  
quam how, than, as\*  
rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, rob\*  
silēns, entis silent, dead, still  
sine without (*abl.*)\*  
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle\*  
Styx, ygis *f.* hateful river in Hades  
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility  
urna, ae *f.* urn, vase (from which lots  
were drawn for the selection of judges)  
vērō truly, indeed, but

428. vitae: obj. gen. with exsortis.

429. atra diēs = diēs mortis.

430. mortis: with damnātī; App. 291.

432. urnam movet: to select the iudicēs, who were chosen by lot. Cf. the modern selection of jurymen. silent(i)um.

435. manū (suā).

436. Quam vellent: potential subj.;

App. 252. aethere in altō: on earth, whose air is high above Hades.

439. noviēs: Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 434-436:

"This huge convex of fire,  
Outrageous to devour, immures us round  
Ninefold."

441. nōmine dicunt = vocant.

*Hic quōs dūrus amor crūdēli tābe perēdit  
sēcrētī cēlant callēs et myrtea circum  
silva tegit; cūrae nōn ipsā in morte relinquunt.*

- 445 *His Phaedram Procrimque locīs maestamque Eriphylēn  
crūdēlis nātī mōnstrantem vulnera cernit,  
Euadnēque et Pāsiphaēn; hīs Lāodamīa  
it comes et juvenis quondam, nunc fēmina, Caeneus  
rūrsus et in veterem fātō revolūta figūram.*
- 450 *Inter quās Phoenissa recēns ā vulnere Didō  
errābat silvā in magnā; quam Trōius hērōs  
ut primum juxtā stetit agnōvitque per umbrās  
obscurā, quālem prīmō quī surgere mēse  
aut videt aut vīdisse putat per nūbila lūnam,*
- 455 *dēmīsīt lacrimās dulcēque adfātus amōre est*

adfor, āri, ātus address, accost\*  
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize\*  
Caeneus, ei (eos) *m.* girl changed to a  
young man by Neptune†  
callis, is *m.* path, track  
cēlō (1) conceal, hide, cover  
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody\*  
dēmītō, mittere, mīsī, missus send down,  
let fall, drop, lower\*  
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond\*  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
Eriphylē, ēs *f.* wife of Amphiarāus who  
induced her husband to go to war in  
order to get rid of him, for which she  
was murdered by their son†  
Euadnē, ēs *f.* wife of Capaneus who  
threw herself on his funeral pyre†  
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female  
figūra, ae *f.* form, shape, figure†  
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior\*  
juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man)\*  
juxtā near, next, close to (*acc.*)\*  
Lāodamīa, ae *f.* wife of Protesilaüs who  
died with her husband†  
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight\*  
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy\*  
mēnsis, is *m.* month  
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach,  
guide\*

myrteus, a, um of myrtle, myrtle, a tree  
sacred to the dead and to Venus,  
goddess of love†  
nūbilum, ī *n.* cloud, cloudiness  
obscurus, a, um dark, obscure, dim\*  
Pāsiphaē, ēs *f.* wife of Minos who fell in  
love with a bull  
peredō, ere, ēdī, ēsus consume, eat (up)†  
Phaedra, ae *f.* wife of Theseus, who killed  
herself because her love for her stepson,  
Hippolytus, was unrequited†  
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (woman),  
Dido  
Procris, (id)is *f.* jealous wife of Cepha-  
lus who spied on her husband and was  
accidentally killed by him†  
putō (1) think, suppose, consider  
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort\*  
recēns, entis recent, fresh  
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus revolve, change  
again  
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
sēcrētus, a, um secluded, remote  
tābēs, is *f.* wasting, pining†  
tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, shel-  
ter\*  
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy\*  
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*  
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow\*

443. cēlant (eōs).

446. nātī: subj. gen.; the wounds in-  
flicted by her son.

447. Pāsiphaēn: see ll. 24 ff.

450-476. Among those who have died  
for love Aeneas sees the shade of Dido  
and attempts to defend his course in de-

serting her, but she scornfully sweeps  
away out of his sight and throws herself  
into the arms of Sychaeus, her first  
husband, while Aeneas stands and weeps.

451. quam: with juxtā and understood  
with agnōvit in l. 452.

455. amōre: abl. of manner.



"*Infelix Dīdō, vērus mihi nuntius ergō  
vēnerat exstinctam ferrōque extrēma secūtam?  
Fūneris heu tibi causa fui? Per sīdera jūrō,  
per superōs et sī qua fidēs tellūre sub imā est,  
invītus, rēgīna, tuō dē litore cessī.*

480

*Sed mē jussa deum, quae nunc hās ire per umbrās,  
per loca senta sitū cōgunt noctemque profundam,  
imperīis ēgēre suīs; nec crēdere quīvi  
hunc tantum tibi mē discessū ferre dolōrem.*

*Siste gradum tēque aspectū nē subtrahe nostrō.*

465

*Quem fugis? Extrēmum fātō quod tē adloquor hoc est."*

*Tālībus Aenēas ardentem et torva tuentem  
lēnibat dictīs animum lacrimāsque ciēbat.*

*Illā solō fixōs oculōs āversa tenēbat*

*nec magis inceptō vultum sermōne movētur  
quam sī dūra silex aut stet Marpēsia cautēs.*

470

*Tandem corripuit sēsē atque inimica refūgit*

adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost  
a(d)spectus, ūs m. sight, vision, aspect  
āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn away, avert\*  
causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion\*  
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag  
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart\*  
cieō, ēre, civī, citus stir (up), (a)rouse\*  
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together)\*  
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up,  
away)\*  
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust  
(dat.)\*  
discessus, ūs m. departure, separation†  
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger\*  
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
exstinguō, ere, inxi, inctus quench, de-  
stroy, extinguish  
extrēma, ōrum n. end, death, funeral  
extrēmus, a, um final, last, utmost\*  
fidēs, ei f. faith, honor, pledge\*  
figō, ere, xi, xus fasten, fix, pierce\*  
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*  
gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride  
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake\*

inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly  
invītus, a, um unwilling, reluctant  
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath  
jussum, i n. command, order, behest  
lēniō, ire, ivi, itus soften, soothe, calm  
magis more, rather\*  
Marpēs(s)ius, a, um of Marpe(s)sus,  
a Parian mountain famous for its white  
marble†  
nuntius, (i) i m. messenger, message  
profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast  
quam how, than, as\*  
queō, quire, ivi (ii), itus be able, can†  
refugiō, ere, fūgī flee (away), shun  
sentus, a, um rough, thorny†  
sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech  
silex, icis m. (f.) flint, rock crag  
sistō, ere, steti, status stay, stop  
situs, ūs m. position; neglect; mould  
solum, i n. ground, earth, soil\*  
subtrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus withdraw  
torvus, a, um fierce, grim, lowering  
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch\*  
vērus, a, um true, real, genuine\*  
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

456. nuntius: we need not worry as to how this message reached Aeneas: we are dealing with imaginative poetry, not sober history.

457. (tē) exstinctam (esse). extrēma (= mortem) secūtam (esse).

461. jussa de(ōr)um: see IV, 237, 270.

466. Extrēmum: this is the last (time) I shall address you. quod: cognate acc.

hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable.

467. torva: neut. acc. pl., used adverbially.

468. lēnibat = lēniēbat, which could not be used in hexameter (---). It has a conative meaning here, *he tried to soothe*, App. 351, 2, a.

470. vultum: acc. of respect.

*in nemus umbriferum, conjūnx ubi prīstinus illī  
respondet cūrīs aequatque Sychaeus amōrem.*

475 *Nec minus Aenēās cāsū concussus inīquō  
prōsequitur lacrimīs longē et miserātur euntem.*

*Inde datum mōlītur iter. Jamque arva tenēbant  
ultima, quae bellō clārī sēcrēta frequentant.*

480 *Hīc illī occurrit Tȳdeus, hīc inclutus armīs  
Parthenopaeus et Adrāstī pallentis imāgō,  
hīc multum flētī ad superōs bellōque cadūcī  
Dardanidae, quōs ille omnīs longō ordine cernēns  
ingemuit, Glaucumque Medontaque Thersilochumque,  
trīs Antēnoridās Cererique sacrum Polyboetēn,  
485 Idaeumque etiam currūs, etiam arma tenentem.*

*Circumstant animae dextrā laevāque frequentēs  
nec vīdisse semel satis est; juvat ūsque morārī  
et cōnferre gradum et veniendī discere causās.*

Adrāstus, *i m.* Greek warrior†  
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level\*  
Antēnoridēs, *ae m.* a Trojan warrior,  
son of Antenor†  
cadūcus, *a, um* fallen, falling, destined to  
fall, doomed†  
cāsus, *ūs m.* chance, (mis)fortune  
causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion\*  
Cērēs, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain  
circumstō, *stāre, steti* stand around  
clārus, *a, um* clear, bright, famous\*  
concutiō, *ere, cussi, cussus* shake, shatter,  
agitate  
cōnferō, *ferre, tuli, lātus* unite, join†  
currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car\*  
Dardanidēs, *ae m.* Trojan, Dardanian\*  
discō, *ere, didici* learn (how); *perf.* know  
etiam also, even, too, likewise\*  
fleō, *ēre, ēvi, ētus* weep, lament  
frequēns, *entis* crowded, thronging  
frequentō (1) crowd, throng, frequent†  
Glaucus, *i m.* Trojan warrior†  
gradus, *ūs m.* step, walk, pace, stride  
Idaeus, *i m.* charioteer of Priam†  
imāgō, *inis f.* image, likeness, ghost\*  
inclutus, *a, um* renowned, famous  
inde thence, next, thereupon\*  
ingemō, *ere, uī* groan (over), lament  
inīquus, *a, um* unjust, harsh, uneven  
iter, *itineris n.* way, road, journey\*

juvō, *āre, jūvī, jūtus* help, please\*  
laevus, *a, um* left (hand), on the left\*  
longē (from) afar, at a distance\*  
Medōn, *ontis, acc. onta, m.* Trojan war-  
rior†  
minus less  
miseror, *ārī, ātus* pity, commiserate\*  
mōlior, *irī, itus* accomplish, do, make  
moror, *ārī, ātus* delay, tarry, hinder\*  
nemus, *oris n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*  
occurrō, *ere, (cu)curri, cursus* (run to)  
meet (*dat.*)  
ordō, *inis m.* order, row, rank, array\*  
pallēns, *entis* pale, pallid, wan  
Parthenopaeus, *i m.* Greek warrior†  
Polyboetēs, *ae m.* Trojan priest†  
prīstinus, *a, um* ancient, former†  
prōsequor, *i, secūtus* follow, attend  
respondeō, *ēre, i, ōnsus* answer; sym-  
pathize with\*  
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)\*  
sēcrētus, *a, um* secluded, remote  
semel once (for all)  
Sychaeus, *i m.* deceased husband of Dido  
Thersilochus, *i m.* Trojan warrior†  
trēs, tria three\*  
Tȳdeus, *ei (eos) m.* Greek warrior†  
ultimus, *a, um* last, outermost, utmost\*  
umbrifer, *era, erum* shady†  
ūsque continuously, ever, still

473. illi: *dat.* of reference.

475. cāsū (Didōnis).

476. prōsequitur et miserātur (*eam*).

477-534. Among the renowned warriors they find Deiphobus; he has been horribly mutilated by the Greeks through the treachery of Helen, who had be-

trayed him into their hands on the night of the fall of Troy.

481. ad superōs = apud superōs: among men of the upper world.

483. Medonta: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form.

484. Cererī sacrum = priest of Ceres.

*At Danaum procerēs Agamemnoniaequē phalanges  
ut vidēre virum fulgentiaque arma per umbrās,* 490  
*ingentū trepidāre metū; pars vertere terga,  
ceu quondam petiēre ratēs, pars tollere vōcem  
exiguam: inceptus clāmōr frūstrātur hiantis.*

*Atque hīc Priamidēn laniātum corpore tōtō  
Dēiphobum vidit, lacerum crūdēliter ōra,* 495  
*ōra manūsque ambās, populātaque tempora raptīs  
auribus et truncās inhonestō vulnere nārīs.*

*Vix adeō agnōvit pavitantem ac dira tegentem  
supplicia, et nōtīs compellat vōcibus ultrō:*  
*“Dēiphobe armipotēns, genus altō ā sanguine Teucrī,* 500  
*quīs tam crūdēlīs optāvit sūmere poenās?  
Cui tantum dē tē licuit? Mihi fāma suprēmā  
nocte tulit fessum vastā tē caede Pelasgum  
prōcubuisse super cōnfūsae strāgis acervum.*

**acervus**, *i m.* heap, pile, mass  
**adeō** so (far), indeed  
**Agamemnonius**, *a, um* of Agamemnon,  
Greek king, and leader of the expedition  
against Troy  
**agnōscō**, *ere, nōvī, nitus* recognize\*  
**ambō**, *ae, ō* both, two, double  
**armipotēns**, *entis* mighty in arms  
**auris**, *is f.* ear\*  
**caedēs**, *is f.* slaughter, destruction  
**ceu** as, just as  
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to  
**cōfundō**, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* confuse  
**crūdēlīs**, *e* cruel, brutal, bloody\*  
**crūdēliter** cruelly, brutally†  
**Dēiphobus**, *i m.* son of Priam, husband  
of Helen after the death of Paris  
**dīrus**, *a, um* awful, dire, dreadful\*  
**exiguus**, *a, um* slight, weak, thin  
**frūstror**, *ārī, ātus* baffle, mock, fail†  
**fulg(e)ō**, *ēre, lsi* shine, gleam, glitter  
**hiō** (1) yawn, gape, stand open†  
**incipiō**, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* begin, undertake\*  
**inhonestus**, *a, um* shamefully†  
**lacer**, *era, erum* torn, mangled, maimed  
**laniō** (1) tear, mutilate, mangle†  
**licet**, *ēre, uit, itum* it is permitted\*

**metus**, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety\*  
**nārīs**, *is f.* nose, nostril†  
**nōtus**, *a, um* (well-) known, familiar\*  
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)\*  
**pavitō** (1) cower, tremble, quake  
**Pelasgus**, *a, um* Pelasgian, Greek  
**phalanx**, *angis f.* phalanx, troop  
**populō** (1) strip, rob, devastate  
**Priamidēs**, *ae m.* descendant of Priam  
**procer**, *eris m.* leader, chief  
**prōcumbō**, *ere, cubui, cubitus* sink (for-  
ward), fall, recline  
**rapiō**, *ere, uī, ptus* snatch, tear off\*  
**ratis**, *is f.* raft, ship, boat\*  
**strāgēs**, *is f.* destruction, carnage†  
**sūmō**, *ere, mpsi, mptus* take, inflict  
**supplicium**, (i) *i n.* punishment, suffering  
**tam** so (much, greatly), such\*  
**tegō**, *ere, tēxi, tēctus* cover, hide\*  
**tempus**, *oris n.* temple, brow  
**tergum**, *i n.* back, hide\*  
**Teucus** (*cer*), *i m.* early king of Troy  
**trepidō** (1) tremble, scurry, bustle  
**truncus**, *a, um* maimed, mangled  
**ultrō** further(more), voluntarily\*  
**vertō**, *ere, ī, rsus* turn, change\*  
**vulnus**, *eris n.* wound, deadly blow\*

491-493. **trepidāre**, **vertere**, **tollere**:  
hist. infinitives. **ceu quondam**: referring  
to an incident in the Trojan war when the  
defeated Greeks fled to their ships. **vōcem  
exiguam**: since they were only shades,  
lacking in bodily strength. Cf. *Hamlet*,  
I, 1, 115-116:

“The graves stood tenantless and the  
sheeted dead

Did squeak and gibber in the Roman  
streets.”

495-497. **ōra**, **manūs**, **tempora**, **nārīs**:  
accusatives of respect with **lacerum**.

498. **tegentem**: the present of at-  
tempted action (conative present); App.  
351, 1, c.

502-503. **tantum dē tē**: so much  
(power) over you. **suprēmā nocte**: the

- 505 *Tunc egomet tumulum Rhoetēō lītore inānem*  
*cōstituī et magnā mānīs ter vōce vocāvī.*  
*Nōmen et arma locum servant; tē, amīce, nequīvī*  
*cōnspicere et patriā dēcēdēns pōnere terrā."*  
*Ad quae Priamidēs: "Nihil Ō tibi, amīce, relictum;*  
510 *omnia Dēiphobō solvistī et fūneris umbrīs.*  
*Sed mē fāta mea et scelus exitiāle Lacaenae*  
*hīs mersēre malīs; illa haec monimenta relīquit.*  
*Namque ut suprēmam falsa inter gaudia noctem*  
*ēgerimus, nōstī: et nimium meminisse necesse est.*  
515 *Cum fātālis equus saltū super ardua vēnit*  
*Pergama et armātum peditem gravis attulit alvō,*  
*illa chorum simulāns euhantīs orgia circum*  
*dūcēbat Phrygiās; flammam media ipsa tenēbat*  
*ingentem et summā Danaōs ex arce vocābat.*  
520 *Tum mē cōnfectum cūrīs somnōque gravātum*

adferō, ferro, tulī, lātus bring (to)  
 alvus, i f. belly, womb  
 amicus, i m. friend, comrade, lover\*  
 arduus, a, um high, lofty, steep\*  
 armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*  
 chorus, i m. (dancing) band, troop  
 cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up,  
 weary  
 cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold  
 cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus set up  
 dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart  
 Dēiphobus, i m. son of Priam and third  
 husband of Helen  
 euhāns, antis celebrating with cries of  
 Euhan (Bacchus)†  
 exitiālis, e deadly, mortal, destructive  
 falsus, a, um false, treacherous, mock  
 fātālis, e fatal, fateful, fated  
 fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, destruction\*  
 gaudium, (i)ī n. joy, delight, pleasure  
 gravis, e heavy, pregnant, serious\*  
 gravō (1) burden, weigh down, oppress  
 inānis, e empty, useless, idle, vain\*  
 Lacaena, ae f. Spartan woman, Helen  
 malum, i n. evil, misfortune, trouble\*

mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades\*  
 meminī, isse remember (gen.)  
 mergō, ere, rsi, rsus sink, drown  
 monumentum (monumentum), i n. re-  
 minder, memorial  
 necesse necessary, need(ful)  
 nequeō, ire, ivī (ii), itus be unable  
 nihil (nū) n. nothing, not at all  
 nimium too much, too (greatly)  
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; perf. know\*  
 orgia, ōrum n. (sacred) rites, revels  
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*  
 pedes, itis m. infantry, foot soldier(y)†  
 Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy\*  
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan\*  
 Priamidēs, ae m. son of Priam  
 Rhoetē(i)us, a, um of Rhoeteūm, a  
 Trojan promontory  
 saltus, ūs m. leap, bound, dancing  
 scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin\*  
 simulō (1) imitate, pretend, simulate  
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), pay,  
 free\*  
 ter three times, thrice\*  
 tumulus, i m. mound, tomb\*

night of the fall of Troy; abl. of time  
 when.

505. tumulum inānem: a cenotaph.

505-506. These ceremonies entitled the  
 shade of the departed to cross the Styx.

507. tē: your dead body. tē, amice:  
 semi-hiatu; App. 400.

509. tibi: dat. of agent with relictum  
 (est).

511. Lacaenae: Helen, whom he dis-  
 dains to name.

513. ut: how, introducing an indir.  
 quest.

514. nō(vi)stī.

516. (in) alvō.

517-518. illa: that notorious woman;  
 Dēiphobus does not deign to mention  
 Helen by name. orgia: cognate acc. with  
 euhantis. circum: with dūcēbat = cir-  
 cumdūcēbat; this separation of the  
 different parts of a compound word is  
 called *tnesis*; App 445. flammam: ae



*infelix habuit thalamus, pressitque jacentem  
dulcis et alta quies placidaeque simillima morti.*

*Ēgregia intereā conjūnx arma omnia tectis  
āmovet et fidum capitū subdūxerat ēnsem;  
intrā tēcta vocat Menelāum et līmina pandit,  
scilicet id magnum spērāns fore mūnus amanti,  
et fāmam exstingui veterum sic posse malōrum.*

525

*Quid moror? Inrumpunt thalamō, comes additus unā  
hortātor scelerum Aeolidēs. Dī, tālia Grajīs  
īnstaūrāte, piō sī poenās ore reposcō.*

530

*Sed tē quī vīvum cāsūs, age fāre vicissim,  
attulerint. Pelagīne venīs errōribus āctus  
an monitū dīvum? An quae tē fortūna fatīgat,  
ut trīstis sine sōle domōs, loca turbida, adīrēs?"*

*Hāc vice sermōnum roseīs Aurōra quadrigīs*

535

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add, join\*  
**adeō, ire, ī (īrī), itus** approach  
**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (to)  
**Aeolidēs, ae m.** putative son of Aeolus,

**Ulysses, a wily Greek†**  
**amāns, antis m. (f.)** lover  
**āmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove†  
**an interrog.** or, whether\*  
**Aurōra, ae f.** (goddess of) dawn\*  
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, delightful, fond\*  
**ēgregius, a, um** wonderful, remarkable  
**ēnsis, is m.** sword, knife\*  
**error, ōris m.** wandering, mistake  
**exstinguō, ere, īnxi, īctus** destroy, blot  
out

**fatigō (1)** weary, harass, torment, vex  
**fidus, a, um** faithful, trusty, safe\*  
**Grajus, a, um** Greek\*  
**hortātor, ōris m.** instigator, inciter†  
**inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break in  
**īnstaūrō (1)** renew, repeat, refresh  
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
**intrā** within (acc.)  
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)\*  
**malum, ī n.** evil, wrong, trouble, sin\*  
**Menelāus, ī m.** Greek warrior, fir<sup>st</sup> husband  
band of Helen

**monitus, ūs m.** advice, warning  
**moror, āri, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder\*  
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, spread\*  
**placidus, a, um** calm, quiet, peaceful\*  
**premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press\***  
**quadrigae, ārum f.** four-horse chariot†  
**quies, ētis f.** rest, quiet, peace, re-  
pose\*

**reposcō, ere** demand, seek, ask (for)  
**roseus, a, um** rosy, rose-colored, red  
**scelus, eris n.** crime, villainy, sin\*  
**scilicet** doubtless, forsooth, of course  
**sermō, ōnis m.** conversation, speech  
**similis, e** similar, like (dat., gen.)\*  
**sine** without (abl.)\*  
**sōl, sōlis m.** sun; day\*  
**spērō (1)** hope (for), expect, suppose\*  
**subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus** withdraw  
(from under) (dat.)

**thalamus, ī m.** bridal chamber, bed-  
room\*

**turbidus, a, um** confused, disordered  
**unā** together, at the same time  
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former\*  
**vicis gen. f. (ex)change, alternation**  
**vicissim** in turn, by turns, alternately  
**vivus, a, um** living, alive, natural

a signal to the Greek fleet to start back to Troy. Cf. II, 254 ff.

**523. Ēgregia:** ironically of Helen. This passage contradicts the account of II, 567-588, but it is useless to expect strict consistency of a great poetic genius. **conjūnx:** after the death of Paris, Helen had married Deiphobus.

**526. amanti:** Menelaus, her lawful husband.

**529. Aeolidēs:** contemptuously of

Ulysses, in accordance with the scandal which claimed that he was not the son of Laertes at all but of Sisyphus, a notorious robber and trickster, son of Aeolus.

**532. Pelagīne errōribus:** a Homeric conception, according to which Hades lay beyond the western ocean and could be reached only by ship. This idea is at variance with the rest of this book.

**535-547. Aeneas parts with Deiphobus.**

*jam medium aetheriō cursū trājēcerat axem;  
et fors omne datum traherent per tālia tempus,  
sed comes admonuit breviterque adfāta Sibylla est:  
"Nox ruit, Aenēā; nōs flendō dūcimus hōrās.*

540 *Hīc locus est partīs ubi sē via findit in ambās:*

*dextera quae Dītis magnā sub moenia tendit,  
hāc iter Ēlysium nōbis; at laeva malōrum  
exercet poenās et ad impia Tartara mittit."*

545 *Dēiphobus contrā: "Nē saevī, magna sacerdos;  
discēdam, explēbō numerum reddarque tenebris.*

*Ī decus, ī, nostrum; meliōribus ūtere fātis."*

*Tantum effātus, et in verbō vestīgia torsit.*

*Respicit Aenēās subitō et sub rūpe sinistrā*

*moenia lāta videt triplici circumdata mūrō,*

550 *quae rapidus flammīs ambit torrentibus amnis,*

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to\*  
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise  
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly  
ambiō, īre, ivī (ii), itus surround  
ambō, ae, ō both, two  
amnis, is m. river, stream\*  
axis, is m. axle, wheel, chariot; heaven  
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely  
circumdō, dare, dedi, datus surround  
contrā against, opposite, in reply\*  
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, honor  
Dēiphobus, ī m. son of Priam and third  
husband of Helen  
Dis, Dītis m. Pluto, god of the lower  
world  
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart  
effor, āri, ātus speak, utter  
Ēlysium, (i)ī n. abode of the blessed in  
Hades†  
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus exercise, inflict, vex\*  
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (out)  
findō, ere, fidī, fissus divide, split†  
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep (for), lament  
hōra, ae f. hour, season, time  
impīus, a, um impious, wicked, disloyal  
iter, itineris n. way, road, journey\*

laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*  
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious\*  
malus, a, um evil, wicked. bad, false\*  
melior, ius better, superior, preferable  
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart\*  
numerus, ī m. number, multitude\*  
rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying, fleet\*  
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, return\*  
respiō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)  
at, regard\*  
rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag\*  
sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)\*  
saeviō, īre, ivī (ii), itus rage, be angry  
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian priestess  
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left  
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly\*  
Tartara, ōrum n. lowest realm of Hades  
tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom  
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, whirl\*  
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus burn, seethe  
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw across,  
cross  
triplex, icis triple  
ūtor, ī, ūsus use, enjoy, employ (abl.)  
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk  
vestigium, (i)ī n. step, track, trace\*

537. fors = forsitan (fors sit an): *perhaps*. traherent: conclusion of an implied condition contrary to fact.

540. sē via findit: up to this point there had been only one road, but now there is a definite parting of the ways, one leading to the place of bliss (Elysium), the other to the place of torment (Tartarus).

541. dextera (via est ea) quae.

542. hāc (viā) iter (est) nōbis (ad) Ēlysium: acc. of place to which with iter (est). laeva (via): the road is said to

punish because it leads to the place of punishment.

545. explēbō numerum (umbrārum): by rejoining them.

546. decus nostrum = decus nostrōrum.

547. in verbō: as he spoke. Cf. in vōce, IV, 76.

548-627. Description of Tartarus and some of its horrible punishments, which Aeneas does not see as he passes on toward the Elysian Fields.

Tartareus Phlegethōn, torquetque sonantia saxa.  
 Porta adversa ingēns solidōque adamante columnae,  
 vīs ut nūlla virum, nōn ipsī exscindere bellō  
 caelicolae valeant; stat ferrea turris ad aurās,  
 Tisiphonēque sedēns pallā succincta cruentā 555  
 vestibulum exsomnia servat noctēsque diēsque.  
 Hinc exaudiri gemitūs et saeva sonāre  
 verbera, tum stridor ferrī trāctaeque catēnae.  
 Cōstitit Aenēās strepitumque exterritus hausit.  
 "Quae scelerum faciēs? Ō virgō, effāre; quibusve 560  
 urgentur poenīs? Quis tantus clangor ad auris?"  
 Tum vātēs sic orsa loquī: "Dux inclute Teucrum,  
 nūllī fās castō scelerātum insistere līmen;  
 sed mē cum lūcis Hecatē praefēcit Avernis,  
 ipsa deum poenās docuit perque omnia dūxit. 565  
 Gnōsius haec Rhadamanthus habet dūrissima rēgna

adamās, antis *m.* adamant†  
 adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
 auris, is *f.* ear\*  
 Avernus, a, um of Avernus, an Italian lake where there was an entrance to Hades\*  
 caelicola, ae *m. (f.)* god(ess), divinity  
 castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste  
 catēna, ae *f.* chain, shackle, fetter†  
 clangor, ōris *m.* noise, uproar, clang  
 columna, ae *f.* pillar, column, post  
 cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)\*  
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel  
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform\*  
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, chief, guide\*  
 effor, āri, ātus say, tell  
 exaudiō, ire, ivī (iī), itus (over)hear  
 exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus cut out, destroy  
 exsomnia, e sleepless, wakeful†  
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten  
 faciēs, ēī *f.* appearance, face, aspect\*  
 fās *n. indecl.* right, fate, divine will\*  
 ferreus, a, um (of) iron  
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan(ing), roar\*  
 Gnō(s)sus, a, um of Gnosssus, a city of Crete  
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, drink (in)  
 Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world

inclutus, a, um renowned, famous  
 insistō, ere, stitī stand (on), pursue  
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell\*  
 lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood\*  
 ordior, irī, orsus begin, commence  
 palla, ae *f.* cloak, robe, mantle  
 Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery stream of Hades  
 porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit\*  
 praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus set over (*dat.*)  
 Rhadamanthus, ī *m.* early king of Crete and later judge of the dead in Hades†  
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
 scelerātus, a, um criminal, unholy  
 scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin\*  
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit\*  
 solidus, a, um solid, firm, strong  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 strepitus, ūs *m.* uproar, noise, bustle  
 stridor, ōris *m.* creaking, clanking, whir  
 succingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird(le)  
 Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest region and abode of the wicked in Hades  
 Tisiphonē, ēs *f.* a Fury†  
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, whirl\*  
 turris, is *f.* tower, turret  
 urgeō, ēre, ursī (op)press, beset  
 valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able  
 verber, eris *n.* blow, lash, whip  
 vestibulum, ī *n.* entrance, vestibule  
 virgō, inis *f.* virgin, maid(en), girl\*

552. Porta (est).

557-558. stridor, catēnae: additional subjects of the hist. infinitives, exaudiri, sonāre.

560. Quae (sunt).

561. clangor (venit) ad auris (nos-trās).

563. fās (est).

565. de(ōr)um: subj. gen., the punishments inflicted by the gods.

*castigatque auditque dolōs subigitque fatēri  
quae quis apud superōs fūrtō laetātus ināni  
distulit in sēram commissa piacula mortem.*

570

*Continuō sontis ultrix accincta flagellō  
Tisiphonē quatit insultāns, torvōsque sinistrā  
intentāns anguis vocat agmina saeva sorōrum.  
Tum dēmum horrissonō stridentēs cardine sacrae*

575

*vestibulō sedeat, faciēs quae līmina servet?  
Quinquāgintā ātris immānis hiātibus Hydra  
saevior intus habet sēdem. Tum Tartarus ipse  
bis patet in praeceps tantum tenditque sub umbrās  
quantus ad aetherium caeli suspectus Olympum.*

580

*Hic genus antiquum Terrae, Titānia pūbēs,*

accingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus gird(le)  
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly  
anguis, is m. (f.) snake, serpent  
apud among, at, in (acc.)  
bis twice\*  
cardō, inis m. hinge, pivot, socket  
castigō (1) punish, avenge, chastise  
committō, ere, misi, missus commit,  
perform  
continuō immediately, at once  
custōdia, ae f. guard(ian), care†  
dēmum at length, finally  
differō, ferre, distuli, dilātus put off,  
defer†  
dolus, ī m. deceit, wiles, trick, fraud\*  
faciēs, ei f. appearance, face, aspect\*  
fateor, eri, fassus confess, agree  
flagellum, ī n. whip, lash, scourge  
fūrtum, ī n. theft, stealth, concealment  
hiātus, ūs m. gaping (mouth), yawning  
horrissonus, a, um horrible-sounding†  
Hydra, ae f. monster with seven (fifty)  
serpent heads, killed by Hercules†  
inānis, e empty, useless, vain, idle\*  
insultō (1) leap on, insult  
intentō (1) stretch (out), threaten  
intus within, inside  
laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight  
Olympus, ī m. high mountain of northern  
Greece, home of the gods; heaven  
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend\*

pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend  
piaculum, ī n. atonement, expiation,  
crime  
porta, ae f. door, gate, entrance, exit\*  
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitous;  
in praeceps straight downward\*  
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men\*  
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as\*  
quantus, a, um how great, how much, as\*  
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter  
quinquāgintā fifty  
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*  
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit\*  
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy  
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left  
sōns, sontis guilty, impious, criminal†  
soror, ōris f. sister\*  
strid(e)ō, ēre, ī grate, creak, whirl  
subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus force, subdue  
suspectus, ūs m. view upward†  
Tartarus, ī m. the lowest part of Hades.  
abode of the wicked  
Tisiphonē, ēs f. a Fury  
Titānius, a, um of the Titans, an early  
race of giants who attempted to storm  
heaven, but who were cast down by  
the thunderbolts of Jove and confined  
in the lowest depths of Hades†  
torvus, a, um savage, grim, scowling  
ultrix, icis avenging, (as) avenger  
vestibulum, ī n. entry, vestibule

568. quis: indef. apud superōs: see  
l. 481 and note. fūrtō ināni: vain conceal-  
ment, because punishment is inescapable.

568-569. quae commissa piacula =  
commissa quōrum piacula.

574. custōdia: Tisiphone.

579. caeli: obj. gen. with suspectus  
(est), the gazing up (from earth) to heaven,

or possibly from the abyss to heaven, with  
ad aetherium Olympum added as explan-  
atory.

580-581. Titānia pūbēs: overthrown  
by Jupiter. genus, pūbēs, dējecti: ob-  
serve the three genders and two numbers,  
all referring to the same thing, the race of  
Titans.



fulmine dējectī fundō voluntur in īmō.

*Hic et Alōidās geminōs immānia vidī*

*corpora, quī manibus magnum rescindere caelum*

*adgressī superisque Jovem dētrūdere rēgnīs.*

*Vidī et crūdēlis dantem Salmōnea poenās,*

585

*dum flammam Jovis et sonitūs imitātur Olympī.*

*Quattuor hic invectus equīs et lampada quassāns*

*per Grajum populōs mediaeque per Elidis urbem*

*ibat ovāns, divumque sibi poscēbat honōrem,*

*dēmēns, quī nimbōs et nōn imitābile fulmen*

590

*aere et cornipedum pulsū simulāret equōrum.*

*At pater omnipotēns dēnsa inter nūbila tēlum*

*contorsit, nōn ille facēs nec fūmea taedis*

*lūmina, praecipitemque immānī turbine adēgit.*

*Nec nōn et Tityon, Terrae omniparentis alumnū,*

595

*cernere erat, per tōta novem cui jūgera corpus*

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, attempt

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive, hurl

aes, aeris n. bronze (utensil)\*

Alōidae, ārum m. sons of Aloeus, Otus and Ephialtes, giants who attempted to storm heaven by piling up mountains, but were overthrown and confined in the lowest depths of Hades†

alumnus, ī m. nursling, foster child†

contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl

cornipēs, pedis horny-hoofed†

crūdēlis, e cruel, merciless, harsh\*

dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl down

dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, foolish

dēnsus, a, um thick, dense, crowded\*

dētrūdō, ere, si, sus thrust down†

Elis, idis f. district of southern Greece

fax, facis f. torch, firebrand, faggot†

fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning\*

fūmeus, a, um smoky, smoking†

fundus, ī m. bottom, depths

Grajus, a, um Greek\*

imitābilis, e that may be imitated, imitable†

imitor, āri, ātus imitate, mimic†

invehō, ere, vēxi, vectus convey

jugerum, ī n. acre; more accurately about five-eighths of an acre†

lampas, adis, acc. ada, f. torch, lantern

nimbus, ī m. storm (cloud), rainstorm\*

novem nine

nūbila, ōrum n. clouds, cloudiness

Olympus, ī m. mountain of northern

Greece, home of the gods; heaven

omniparēns, entis parent of all†

omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent

ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph

poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask\*

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost\*

pulsus, ūs m. beat, trample, stroke†

quassō (1) shake, brandish; shatter

quattuor four

rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus tear down†

Salmōneus, eos (ei), acc. ea, m. king of

Elis, who attempted to imitate the thunder and lightning of Jove by means of

his rattling chariot and blazing torches†

simulō (1) imitate, counterfeit, simulate

sonitus, ūs m. sound, thunder, roar\*

taeda, ae f. pine torch

Tityos, ī m. giant slain by Apollo for attempting to violate Latona†

turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), gulf

581. fulmine: the thunderbolt of Jupiter.

583. corpora: in apposition with Alōidās.

585. Salmōnea: acc. sing., a Greek form.

587. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable. lampada: acc. sing.

590-591. quī... simulāret: rel. clause of cause; App. 357.

593. ille: Jupiter.

594. turbine (fulminis). (Salmōnea) praecipitem.

595. Nec nōn: likewise.

596. erat: it was possible.

porrigitur, rōstrōque immānis vultur obuncō  
 immortāle jecur tondēns fēcundaque poenīs  
 viscera rīmāturque epulīs habitatque sub altō  
 600 pectore, nec fibrīs requiēs datur ūlla renātis.  
 Quid memorem Lapithās, Ixiona Pirithoūmque?

Quō super ātra silex jam jam lāpsūra cadentīque  
 imminet adsimilis; lūcent geniālibus altīs  
 aurea fulcra torīs, epulaeque ante ōra parātae  
 605 rēgificō luxū; furiārum maxīma juxtā  
 accubat et manībūs prohibet contingere mēnsās,  
 exsurgitque facem attollēns atque intonat ōre.  
 Hīc, quībūs invīsī frātrēs, dum vīta manēbat,  
 pulsātusve parēns aut fraus innexa clientī,  
 610 aut quā dīvitiīs sōlī incubuēre repertīs

accubō, āre, uī, itus recline (by)†  
 adsimilis, e like, similar (dat.)†  
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear\*  
 aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold\*  
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die\*  
 cliēns, entis m. client, dependant†  
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach\*  
 divitiae, ārum f. riches, wealth†  
 epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast  
 exsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†  
 fax, facis f. torch, firebrand\*  
 fēcundus, a, um fruitful, productive†  
 fibra, ae f. fiber, filament; entrail†  
 frāter, tris m. brother\*  
 fraus, fraudis f. deceit, trick, wile, fraud  
 fulcrum, i n. prop, support, headrest†  
 furiae, ārum f. the furies, goddesses of  
 vengeance  
 geniālis, e festal, joyous, pleasant†  
 habitō (1) inhabit, dwell, possess  
 imminēō, ēre overhang, threaten  
 immortālis, e immortal, undying†  
 incubō, āre, uī, itus lie on; gloat over  
 innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus fasten,  
 contrive  
 intonō, āre, uī thunder (at)  
 invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious  
 Ixiōn, onis, acc. ona, m. giant bound to a  
 revolving wheel in Hades for attempt-  
 ing to violate Juno†

jecur, (jecin)oris n. liver, the seat of  
 evil passions†  
 juxtā next, nearest, close (to)\*  
 Lapithae, ārum m. tribe of northern  
 Greece, famous for their battle with  
 the Centaurs†  
 lūcēō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam  
 luxus, ūs m. luxury, splendor, excess  
 memorō (1) (re)call, recount, mention\*  
 mēnsa, ae f. table\*  
 obuncus, a, um curved, hooked†  
 Pirithoūs, i m. king of the Lapiths, who  
 with the help of Theseus attempted to  
 carry off Proserpina, queen of Pluto  
 porrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus stretch, extend†  
 prohibēō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, pro-  
 hibit  
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb  
 rēgificus, a, um royal, regal, kingly†  
 renāscor, ī, nātus be reborn, be renewed†  
 reperīō, ire, repperī, repertus find  
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) f. rest, respite  
 rīmor, āri, ātus split, tear (open), ex-  
 plore†  
 rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow  
 silex, icis m. (f.) flint, rock, stone  
 tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear; eat  
 torus, i m. (banqueting) couch\*  
 viscus, eris n. vitals, flesh  
 vultur, uris m. vulture, buzzard†

598. jecur: supposed to be the seat of  
 lust and the evil passions.

599. epulīs: for his banquet; dat. of  
 purpose.

600. renātis: his flesh grows again as  
 fast as it is devoured by the vulture.

602-603. One or more verses describ-

ing Tantalus seem to have fallen out here.  
 cadentīque: hypermetric; App. 402.

604. toris: dat. of reference.

605. maxīma (nātū): the eldest.

608-609. Hīc (sunt ei) quībūs frātrēs  
 (erant) invīsī (et ei ā quībūs) pulsātus  
 (est) parēns aut fraus innexa (est).

*nec partem posuere suis (quae maxima turba est),  
 quique ob adulterium caesi, quique arma secuti  
 impia nec veriti dominorum fallere dextrās,  
 inclusi poenam expectant. Ne quaere doceri  
 quam poenam, aut quae forma virōs fortunave mersit.* 615  
*Saxum ingens volunt alii, radiisque rotarum  
 districti pendent; sedet aeternumque sedebit  
 infelix Thēseus, Phlegyasque miserrimus omnīs  
 admonet et magnā testatur voce per umbrās:  
 'Discite iustitiam moniti et non temnere divos.'* 620  
*Vendidit hic aurō patriam dominumque potentem  
 imposuit; fixit lēgēs pretiō atque refixit;  
 hic thalamum invāsīt nātae vetitōsque hymenaeōs:  
 ausi omnēs immāne nefās ausōque potiti.*

**admoneō, ēre, uī, itus** warn, advise  
**adulterium, (i)ī n.** adultery†  
**aeternum** eternally, forever  
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture\***  
**ausum, ī n.** daring deed, crime, thing  
 dared  
**caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus** cut (down),  
 kill  
**discō, ere, didici** learn; *perf.* know  
**distingō, ere, strinxi, strictus** stretch  
 out†  
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform\*  
**dominus, ī m.** master, lord, ruler  
**expectō (1)** await, expect, hope (for)\*  
**fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus** deceive, vio-  
 late\*  
**figō, ere, xi, xus** fix, fasten, set up\*  
**forma, ae f.** shape, beauty, form\*  
**hymenaeus, ī m.** (god of) marriage  
**impius, a, um** disloyal, treacherous  
**impōnō, ere, posui, positus** place on\*  
**inclūdō, ere, si, sus** shut (in), inclose  
**invādō, ere, si, sus** enter, attack  
**iustitia, ae f.** justice, righteousness  
**lēx, lēgis f.** law, decree, statute  
**mergō, ere, rsi, rsus** sink, bury, drown  
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn

**nāta, ae f.** daughter  
**nefās n. indecl.** impiety, crime, sin\*  
 ob on account of (*acc.*)  
**patria, ae f.** fatherland, country\*  
**pendeō, ēre, pependi** hang\*  
**Phlegyas, ae m.** father of Ixion, who set  
 fire to Apollo's temple at Delphi†  
**potēs, entis** powerful, ruling, mighty\*  
**potior, iri, itus** attain, gain (*abl.*)  
**pretium, (i)ī n.** price, bribe, reward  
**radius, (i)ī m.** rod, spoke, ray  
**refigō, ere, xi, xus** unfasten, annul, pull  
 down  
**rota, ae f.** wheel; chariot, car  
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit\*  
**temnō, ere** despise, scorn, disdain  
**testor, āri, ātus** call to witness, testify  
**thalamus, ī m.** (bridal) chamber, bedroom\*  
**Thēseus, ei (eos) m.** early king of Athens;  
 he helped his friend, Pirithōus, in his  
 attempt to carry off Proserpina and  
 was condemned to sit forever on a  
 stone in Hades  
**turba, ae f.** crowd, mob, confusion  
**vendō, ere, didi, ditus** sell, betray  
**vereor, ēri, itus** fear, dread, revere  
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** forbid, prohibit

**611. quae:** attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a.

**612-613. arma impia:** probably referring to the civil wars at Rome.

**613. dominorum:** obj. gen., the faith pledged to their masters, probably referring to the slave revolts at Rome.

**615. quam poenam (expectant).**

**616. Saxum volunt:** Sisyphus, for example, was compelled to roll a huge stone to the top of a hill; but at the

summit the stone always escaped and rolled back to the bottom.

**621. hic:** pronounce hicc, making a long syllable.

**622. fixit atque refixit:** made and unmade. At Rome the laws were inscribed on bronze tablets and put in some public place; when the laws were repealed or annulled, the tablets were removed.

**624. ausi (sunt), ausōque potiti (sunt):** dared and gained what they dared.

- 625 *Nōn, mihi sī linguae centum sint ōraque centum,*  
*ferrea vōx, omnis scelerum comprehendere formās,*  
*omnia poenarum percurrere nōmina possim."*  
*Haec ubi dicta dedit Phoebi longaeva sacerdos,*  
*"Sed jam age, carpe viam et susceptum perface mūnus;*  
630 *accelerēmus" ait; "Cyclōpum ēducta caminīs*  
*moenia cōspiciō atque adversō fornice portās,*  
*haec ubi nōs praecepta jubent dēpōnere dōna."*  
*Dixerat et pariter gressi per opāca viarum*  
*corripiunt spatium medium foribusque propinquant.*  
635 *Occupat Aenēās aditum corpusque recentī*  
*spargit aquā rārumque adversō in limine figit.*  
*Hīs demum exāctīs, perfectō mūnere dīvae,*  
*dēvēnēre locōs laetōs et amoena virecta*  
*fortūnātorum nemorum sēdēsque beatās.*

accelerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed  
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance  
adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful  
aqua, *ae f.* water, waves, flood\*  
beātus, a, um happy, blessed  
caminus, i *m.* forge, furnace, chimney  
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, take, consume  
centum hundred\*  
compre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus grasp,  
comprise  
cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at  
corripiō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up),  
hurry over\*  
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-  
eyed giants, workmen of Vulcan, the  
smithy god  
dēmum at length, finally  
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down,  
deposit  
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come down (to),  
reach  
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise  
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out, per-  
form  
ferreus, a, um (of) iron  
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, fasten\*  
foris, *is f.* door, gate, entrance

forma, *ae f.* shape, form, beauty\*  
fornix, icis *m.* arch, vault†  
fortūnātus, a, um blessed, happy  
gradior, i, gressus step, go, march  
lingua, *ae f.* tongue, language  
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived  
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*  
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), gain, oc-  
cupy  
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy  
pariter equally, side by side\*  
percurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run  
through, enumerate, recount, mention†  
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus complete, finish,  
accomplish  
Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,  
and prophecy\*  
porta, *ae f.* door, gate, entrance, exit\*  
praeceptum, i *n.* instruction, order  
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)  
rāmus, i *m.* branch, limb, bough\*  
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new  
sacerdōs, ōtis *m. (f.)* priest(ess)\*  
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin\*  
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle\*  
spatium, (i) i *n.* space, distance, place  
suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus undertake  
virectum, i *n.* greensward, meadow, turf†

628-636. Aeneas and the Sibyl ap-  
proach the palace of Dis, god of the lower  
world, and place the golden bough at the  
entrance.

629. mūnus: the presentation of the  
golden bough to Proserpina.

631. fornice: abl. of quality.

636. spargit: as a rite of purification.  
figit: the golden bough is apparently a  
votive offering; hence Aeneas fastens it

in some way at the entrance, just as he  
had hung up the shield of Abas at the en-  
trance to the temple of Apollo (III, 286-  
287), and as Antenor had dedicated his  
arms in the temple at Patavium (I, 248-  
249).

637-665. The region of the blessed  
with its beautiful meadows, more abun-  
dant atmosphere, and purple light. Here



Largior *hīc campōs aethēr et lūmine* vestit  
 purpureō, *sōlemque suum, sua sīdera* nōrunt. 640  
*Pars in grāmineis* exercent membra palaestrīs,  
 contendunt lūdō *et fulvā* luctantur harēnā;  
*pars pedibus* plaudunt choreās *et carmina dīcunt*.  
*Nec nōn* Thrēicius *longā cum* veste sacerdot̄s 645  
 obloquitur numeris septem discrimina vōcum,  
*jamque eadem* digitis, *jam* pectine pulsat eburnō.  
*Hīc genus antiquum* Teucrī, pulcherrima prōlēs,  
 magnanimī hērōes, nātī meliōribus annis,  
 Ilusque Assaracusque *et Trojae* Dardanus auctor. 650  
*Arma procul* currusque virum mirātur inānis.  
*Stant terrā* dēfixae hastae passimque solūtī  
 per campum pascuntur equī. *Quae grātia* currum  
 armōrumque fuit vīvīs, *quae cūra* nitentis

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether\*  
 annus, *i m.* year, season, time\*  
 Assaracus, *i m.* king of Phrygia, and  
 grandfather of Anchises  
 auctor, oris *m.* author, founder, sponsor  
 carmen, inis *n.* song, poem, chant  
 chorea, ae *f.* (round) dance, choral dance†  
 contendō, ere, *i,* ntus strive, struggle  
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*  
 Dardanus, *i m.* ancestor of the Trojans  
 dēfigō, ere, xi, xus fix, fasten (down)  
 digitus, *i m.* finger, toe  
 discrimen, inis *n.* distinction, interval  
 eburnus, a, um (of) ivory†  
 exerceō, ēre, ti, itus exercise, drive\*  
 fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond  
 gramineus, a, um grassy, of grass  
 grātia, ae *f.* charm, liking, favor  
 harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach\*  
 hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart  
 hērōs, ois *m.* hero, mighty warrior\*  
 Ilus, *i m.* founder and early king of Troy  
 inānis, e empty, unsubstantial, idle\*  
 largus, a, um abundant, spacious  
 luctor, āri, ātus wrestle, struggle  
 lūdus, *i m.* sport, game, play, contest  
 magnanimus, a, um great-souled  
 melior, ius better, superior, preferable\*  
 membrum, *i n.* member, limb, body\*

mīror, āri, ātus wonder at, admire\*  
 nāscor, *i,* nātus be born, arise\*  
 nitēs, entis shining, white, sleek  
 nōscō, ere, nōvi, nōtus learn; perf.  
 know\*  
 numerus, *i m.* number, tune, measure\*  
 obloquor, *i,* locūtus (make) accompany,  
 sing responsively†  
 palaestra, ae *f.* wrestling (place, bout)  
 pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed, graze  
 passim everywhere, all about\*  
 pecten, inis *m.* comb, pick (for striking  
 the strings of a lyre)†  
 plaudō, ere, si, sus clap, strike, beat, dance  
 prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race\*  
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,  
 noble, splendid, illustrious\*  
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb  
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson  
 sacerdot̄s, otis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)\*  
 septem seven  
 sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day\*  
 solvō, ere, *i,* solūtus loose(n), free\*  
 Teucus (cer), crī *m.* early king of Troy  
 Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace,  
 a country northeast of Greece  
 vestiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus clothe, cover†  
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe\*  
 vivus, a, um living, alive, natural

the souls of the righteous follow in complete freedom the pursuits to which they had devoted their lives while on earth.

641. suum, sua: as contrasted with those of our world. nō(vē)runt.

642-647. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 528 ff.

644. choreās: cognate acc.

645. Nec nōn: likewise. Thrēicius sacerdot̄s: Orpheus.

649. meliōribus annis: in the good old days.

651. (Aenēas) mirātur.

653. curr(u)m: obj. gen. with grātia, the delight in chariots.

654. (eis) vivis: (while) alive; dat. of possession; App. 299.

- 655 pascere equōs, eadem sequitur tellūre repostōs.  
Cōspicit, ecce, aliōs dextrā laevāque per herbam  
vēscentīs laetumque chorō paeāna canentīs  
inter odōrātum laurī nemus, unde supernē  
plūrimus Ēridanī per silvam volvitur amnis.
- 660 Hīc manus ob patriam pugnandō vulnera passi,  
quīque sacerdōtēs castī, dum vita manēbat,  
quīque pīr vātēs et Phoebō digna locūtī,  
inventās aut quī vitam excoluēre per artīs,  
quīque suī memorēs aliōs fēcēre merendō:  
665 omnibus hīs niveā cinguntur tempora vittā.  
Quōs circumfūsōs sic est adfāta Sibylla,  
Mūsaeum ante omnīs (medium nam plūrima turba  
hunc habet atque umerīs exstantem suspicit altīs):  
“Dīcite, fēlicēs animae, tūque, optime vātēs,

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to\*  
amnis, is *m.* river, stream\*  
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, craft\*  
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant\*  
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste  
chorus, i *m.* (dancing) band, chorus  
cingō, ere, cingi, cinctus encircle, gird (le)\*  
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour  
(scatter) around  
cōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold  
dignus, a, um deserving, worthy of (*abl.*)  
ecce look! see! behold!\*  
Ēridanus, i *m.* the river Po in northern  
Italy†  
excolō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, enrich†  
extō, āre stand out, tower above†  
fēlix, icis happy, blessed\*  
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant\*  
inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, invent  
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left\*  
laurus, i (ūs) *f.* laurel, a tree sacred to  
Apollo  
loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell\*  
memor, oris mindful, remembering\*  
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit\*

Mūsaeus, i *m.* early Thracian bard†  
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*  
niveus, a, um snowy, white  
ob on account of, for (*acc.*)  
odōrātus, a, um scented, fragrant†  
optimus, a, um best, finest  
paeān, ānis, *acc.* āna, *m.* song of praise†  
pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed, graze  
patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow\*  
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*  
Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light,  
poetry, music, and prophecy\*  
pugnō (1) fight, battle, struggle, oppose  
repōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus lay away,  
bury\*  
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)\*  
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess  
supernē (in the world) above†  
suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look up (at)  
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow  
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion  
unde whence, from which source\*  
vēscor, i feed, eat (*abl.*)  
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band\*  
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow\*

655. repos(i)tōs.

657. chorō: *abl.* of manner. paeāna: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form.

658. supernē: the Po (Eridanus) in its upper part flows some distance under ground, and was thus thought to have its source in Hades.

660. Hic (est) manus (virōrum quī) passi (sunt): manus being used collectively (= manus virōrum) is followed by the *masc. pl.*, a construction according to the sense; App. 444.

661. et (eī) quī (erant) sacerdōtēs casti.

662. vātēs (erant), locūtī (erant).

663. vitam: of mankind in general.

666-702. Aeneas and the Sibyl are guided by Musaeus to Anchises who receives his son with a great show of affection.

667. plūrima turba: indicating his prominence.

*quae regiō Anchīsēn, quis habet locus? Illius ergō  
vēnimus et magnōs Erebi trānāvimus amnis.* 670

*Atque huic respōnsum paucis ita reddidit hērōs:*

*"Nulli certa domus; lūcis habitāmus opācis,  
rīpārumque torōs et prāta recentia rīvīs  
incolimus. Sed vōs, sī fert ita corde voluntās,  
hoc superāte jugum, et facili jam trāmite sistam."* 675

*Dixit, et ante tulit gressum campōsque nitentīs  
dēsUPER ostentat; dehinc summa cacūmina linquunt.*

*At pater Anchīsēs penitus convalle virenti  
inclūsās animās superumque ad lūmen itūrās  
lūstrābat studiō recolēns, omnemque suōrum  
forte recēnsēbat numerum, cārōsque nepōtēs  
fātaque fortunāsque virum mōrēsque manūsque.* 680

*Isque ubi tendentem adversum per grāmīna vīdit  
Aenēān, alacris palmās utrāsque tetendit,* 685

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing\*  
**alacer (cris), cris, cre** eager, quick  
**amnis, is m.** river, stream\*  
**cacūmen, inis n.** summit, peak, top  
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond\*  
**certus, a, um** fixed, sure, trusty, cer-  
tain\*

**convallis, is f.** valley, vale, dale  
**cor, rdīs n.** heart, spirit, feelings, soul\*  
**dehinc** thence, from there  
**dēsUPER** from above  
**Erebus, ī m.** Hades, (god of) the lower  
world

**ergō** therefore, then, consequently; on  
account of, for the sake of (*gen.*)

**facilis, e** easy, favorable, propitious  
**grāmīn, inis n.** grass, sward, meadow  
**gressus, ūs m.** step, walk, gait, stride  
**habitō (1)** inhabit, dwell, possess  
**hērōs, ōis m.** hero, mighty warrior\*  
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut (up), inclose  
**incolō, ere, uī** inhabit, dwell (in)†

**ita** thus, so, in this way  
**jugum, ī n.** yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
**linquō, ere, liqui, lictus** leave, forsake\*  
**lūcus, ī m.** (sacred) grove, forest\*  
**lūstrō (1)** survey; traverse; purify\*  
**mōs, mōris m.** custom, character, man-  
ner\*

**nepōs, ōtis m.** grandson; descendant\*  
**nitēns, entis** shining, bright  
**numerus, ī m.** number, multitude\*  
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy  
**ostentō (1)** show (off), display, exhibit  
**palma, ae f.** palm, hand\*  
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty\*  
**penitus** deep (within), deeply; wholly\*  
**prātum, ī n.** meadow, greensward†  
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new  
**recēnsēō, ēre, uī, sus (situs)** review†  
**recolō, ere, uī, cultus** survey, reflect (on),  
contemplate†

**reddō, ere, didi, ditus** give back, render\*  
**regiō, ōnis f.** district, region, tract  
**respōnsum, ī n.** reply, answer  
**ripa, ae f.** bank, shore\*  
**rīvus, ī m.** stream, rivulet  
**sistō, ere, steti, status** set, place  
**studium, (i) ī n.** desire, zeal, pursuit  
**superō (1)** surmount, overcome, pass  
over\*

**torus, ī m.** (banqueting) couch\*  
**trāmes, itis m.** path, way  
**trānō (1)** swim, voyage across  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two),  
both\*  
**virēns, entis** green, flourishing  
**voluntās, ātis f.** desire, purpose

672. **paucis (dictis).**

674. **rīpārum:** (*the couches*) formed  
by the banks; appositional geni-  
tive.

675. **sī fert ita corde voluntās:** *if your  
heart thus inclines.*

678. **dehinc:** one syllable here by

synizesis. (*Aenēās et Sibylla*) **linquunt  
summa cacūmina.**

681. **suōrum:** *of his (own) people.*

683. **manūs:** *deeds (of valor in war).*  
Observe Vergil's fondness for **-que**, which  
he employs four times in this line and  
seven times in this sentence; App. 439.

- effūsaēque genīs lacrimae et vōx excidit ōre:  
 “Vēnistī tandem, tuaque expectāta parentī  
 vīcīt iter dūrum pietās? Datur ōra tuērī,  
 nāte, tua et nōtās audīre et reddere vōcēs?  
 690 Sic equidem dūcēbam animō rēbarque futūrum  
 tempora dīnumerāns, nec mē mea cūra fefellit.  
 Quās ego tē terrās et quanta per aequora vectum  
 accipiō! Quantīs jactātum, nāte, periclīs!  
 Quam metuī nē quid Libyae tibi rēgna nocērent!”  
 695 Ille autem: “Tua me, genitor, tua tristis imāgō  
 saepius occurrēns haec līmina tendere adēgit;  
 stant sale Tyrrhēnō classēs. Dā jungere dextram,  
 dā, genitor, tēque amplexū nē subtrahe nostrō.”  
 Sic memorāns largō flētū simul ōra rigābat.  
 700 Ter cōnātus ibī collō dare bracchia circum;  
 ter frūstrā comprēnsa manūs effūgit imāgō,  
 pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō.  
 Intereā videt Aenēās in valle reductā

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive to, force  
 amplexus, ūs *m.* embrace, fold, grasp  
 autem moreover, however, but\*  
 braccium, (i)ī *n.* arm, forearm\*  
 collum, ī *n.* neck\*  
 compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp  
 cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor  
 dīnumerō (1) count, number, compute†  
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern\*  
 effugiō, ere, fūgī flee, escape  
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter\*  
 equidem indeed, surely, truly\*  
 excidō, ere, ī fall from, drop  
 expectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)\*  
 fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, disap-  
 point\*  
 flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament  
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually\*  
 gena, ae *f.* cheek  
 ibī there, then  
 imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, phantom, shade\*  
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime\*  
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey\*  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, hurl, cast, fling\*  
 jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus join, unite\*  
 largus, a, um abundant, large, copious  
 levis, e light, unsubstantial, swift  
 Libya, ae *f.* country of northern Africa;  
 Carthage\*

memorō (1) (re)call, recount, say\*  
 metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious  
 noceō, ēre, uī, itus harm, hurt (*dat.*)  
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar\*  
 occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)  
 meet (*dat.*)  
 pār, paris equal, like, similar (*dat.*)\*  
 peric(ul)um, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk  
 pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of  
 duty, righteousness, nobility\*  
 quam how, than, as\*  
 quantus, a, um how (great, much, many),  
 as\*  
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back), answer\*  
 redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, re-  
 tire, seclude  
 reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon  
 rigō (1) wet, water, bedew, moisten†  
 saepe often, frequently\*  
 sal, salis *m.* (n.) salt, brine; sea  
 similis, e like, similar (*dat.*)\*  
 subtrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus withdraw  
 ter thrice, three times\*  
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch\*  
 Tyrrhēnus, a, um Etruscan, of Etruria  
 in northern Italy  
 vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale  
 vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus convey, bear\*  
 volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet\*

687. parentī (tuō) = mihi: *dat.* of agent.

690. futūrum (esse).

692. (per) terrās.

696. (ad) haec līmina.

700-702. Repeated from II, 792-794.  
 somnō = somniō: dream.

703-751. Anchises tells Aeneas how individual souls originate as parts of



sēclūsum nemus et virgulta sonantia silvae,  
 Lēthaeumque domōs placidās quī prae-natat amnem. 705  
*Hunc circum innumerāe gentēs populique volābant,*  
*ac velut in prātīs ubi apēs aestāte serēnā*  
*flōribus insīdunt variīs et candida circum*  
*līlia funduntur, strepit omnis murmure campus.*  
 Horrēscit vīsū subitō causāsque requirit 710  
 inscius Aenēās, quae sint ea flūmina porrō,  
 quīve virī tantō complērint agmine rīpās.  
 Tum pater Anchīsēs: "Animae, quibus altera fātō  
 corpora dēbentur, Lēthaeī ad flūminis undam  
 sēcūrōs laticēs et longa obliuia pōtant. 715  
 Hās equidem memorāre tibi atque ostendere cōram,  
 jampridem hanc prōlem cupiō ēnumerāre meōrum,  
 quō magis Ītaliā mēcum laetēre repertā."  
 "Ō pater, anne aliquās ad caelum hinc ire putandum est  
 sublīmīs animās iterumque ad tarda revertī 720

aestās, ātis *f.* summer (time)  
 aliquis, qua, quid some(one), any(one)\*  
 alter, era, erum other (of two), second\*  
 amnis, is *m.* river, stream\*  
 an(ne) *interrog.* whether, or†  
 apis, is *f.* bee  
 candidus, a, um white, shining  
 causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion\*  
 compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete  
 cōram face to face, before the face  
 cupiō, ere, ivi (ii), itus wish, desire  
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, ought  
 ēnumerō (1) enumerate, count (off)  
 equidem indeed, surely, truly\*  
 flōs, ōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom  
 flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood\*  
 horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder, tremble  
 innumerus, a, um countless†  
 inscius, a, um ignorant, unaware  
 insidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down, on),  
 settle (*dat.*)  
 iterum again, anew, a second time\*  
 jampridem long since, for a long time  
 laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight  
 latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine  
 Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of  
 forgetfulness in Hades  
 līlium, (i)ī *n.* lily†  
 magis more, rather\*  
 memorō (1) recount, recall, mention\*

murmur, uris *n.* murmur, buzz, roar  
 nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*  
 oblivium, (i)ī *n.* forgetfulness, oblivion†  
 ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display\*  
 placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet\*  
 populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race\*  
 porrō further, yonder, afar (off)  
 pōtō (1) drink (of), quaff†  
 prae-natō (1) flow past, glide by†  
 prātum, ī *n.* meadow, greensward  
 prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race\*  
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider  
 reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find  
 requirō, ere, sivi, situs seek, inquire  
 revertor, ī, rsus return, revert  
 rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore\*  
 sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut off, seclude  
 sēcūrus, a, um free(ing) from care  
 serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene  
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
 strepō, ere, uī, itus hum, sound, rat-  
 tle†  
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected  
 sublīmīs, e lofty, aloft, on high  
 tardus, a, um slow, sluggish, late  
 varius, a, um various, variegated\*  
 velut(i) as, just as\*  
 virgultum, ī *n.* thicket, bush, copse  
 vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view  
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter\*

the great world-soul, how they unite  
 with earthly bodies, how they are  
 purified after death from the stains  
 of the body, and how they return  
 to the upper world and enter new  
 bodies.

712. complē(ve)rint.  
 717. meōrum: of my descendants.  
 718. quō laetēre (= laetēris): rel.  
 clause of purpose; App. 204, 4; 388.  
 719. ad caelum: to the upper air, i.e.,  
 to the world of living men.

*corpora? Quae lūcis miseris tam dira cupidō?"*  
*"Dicam equidem nec tē suspēsum, nāte, tenēbō,"*  
*suscipit Anchīsēs atque ordine singula pandit.*

- "Principiō caelum ac terram campōsque liquētis  
 725 lūcentemque globum lūnae Titāniaque astra  
 spīritus intus alit, tōtamque infūsa per artūs  
 mēns agitat mōlem et magnō sē corpore miscet.  
 Inde hominum pecudumque genus vitaeque volantum  
 et quae marmoreō fert mōnstra sub aequore pontus.  
 730 Igneus est ollis vigor et caelestis origō  
 sēminibus, quantum nōn corpora noxia tardant  
 terrēnique hebetant artūs moribundaque membra.  
*Hinc metuunt cupiuntque, dolent gaudentque, neque aurās*

agitō (1) move, drive, harass, agitate  
 alō, ere, ui, (i)tus, nourish, feed, rear  
 artus, ūs m. joint, member, limb, body\*  
 astrum, i n. star, sun, constellation\*  
 caelestis, e heavenly, celestial, divine  
 cupidō, inis f. desire, love, passion  
 cupiō, ere, ivi (ii), itus desire, wish  
 dirus, a, um terrible, dire, wild\*  
 doleō, ēre, ui, itus grieve, suffer, resent  
 equidem indeed, truly, surely\*  
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult  
 globus, i m. globe, sphere, orb  
 hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken  
 homō, inis m. (f.) man, human, mortal\*  
 igneus, a, um fiery, flaming  
 inde thence, from that source\*  
 infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (on, in),  
 infuse  
 intus within, inside  
 liquēs, entis clear, bright, liquid  
 lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam  
 lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight\*  
 marmoreus, a, um (of) marble, shining  
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body\*  
 metuō, ere, ui fear, dread, be anxious  
 misceō, ēre, ui, mixtus mix, mingle\*  
 mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, burden\*

mōnstrum, i n. monster, prodigy, omen\*  
 moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die  
 noxius, a, um harmful, hurtful†  
 ordō, inis m. order, rank, array, row\*  
 origō, inis f. origin, source, beginning  
 pandō, ere, i, passus open, disclose\*  
 pecus, udis f. animal (of the flock)\*  
 pontus, i m. sea, waves\*  
 principiō first(ly), in the first place  
 quantus, a, um how great, how much,  
 how many, as\*  
 sēmen, inis n. seed, germ, element  
 singulī, ae, a separate, each, one by one  
 spīritus, ūs m. breath, air, spirit, soul  
 suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus undertake,  
 resume  
 suspēsus, a, um uncertain, anxious  
 tam so (much), so great(ly), such\*  
 tardō (1) hinder, clog, impede, retard  
 terrēnus, a, um earthy, earthen†  
 Titānius, a, um of the Titans, great  
 giants who rebelled against the gods;  
 Titānia astra the sun (god), son of the  
 Titan Hyperion  
 vigor, ōris m. force, vigor, life, energy†  
 volāns, antis m. (f.), bird, fowl, flying  
 thing

724. campōs liquētis = mare.

724-751. This whole passage has many difficulties and much of it is far from clear, possibly due at least partially to the unfinished condition of the poem; Introd. 5.

725-727. Titānia astra = the sun (god), a descendant of a Titan. artūs: the universe is here conceived as an organism, filled with a vital force (anima mundi), the source of all life, thought, and motion. tōtam mōlem, magnō corpore: refer to the whole universē.

728. volant(i)um.

731. sēminibus: germs, i.e., souls; dat. of possession. quantum: so far as harmful mortal bodies do not hinder (these souls). Cf. Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, V, 1, 64-65:

"But whilst this muddy vesture of decay  
 Doth grossly close it in."

733. Hinc: from the debasing influence of the body. (animae) metuunt. aurās = caelum.

dispiciunt clausae tenebris et carcere caecō.

Quin et suprēmō cum lūmine vīta reliquit,  
nōn tamen omne malum miseris nec funditus omnēs  
corporeae excēdunt pestēs, penitusque necesse est  
multa diū concrēta modis inolēscere miris.

Ergō exercentur poenīs veterumque malōrum  
supplicia expendunt: aliae panduntur inānēs  
suspēnsae ad ventōs, aliīs sub gurgite vastō  
infectum ēluitur scelus aut exūritur ignī —  
quisque suōs patimur mānis; exinde per amplum  
mittimur Elysium et paucī laeta arva tenēmus —  
dōnec longa diēs perfectō temporis orbe  
concrētam exēmit lābem, pūrumque relinquit  
aetherium sēnsū atque aurāi simplicis ignem.

Hās omnīs, ubi mille rotam volvēre per annōs,

aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly  
amplus, a, um wide, spacious, ample  
annus, i m. year, season, time\*  
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden\*  
carcer, eris m. prison, inclosure, barrier  
claudō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), confine\*  
concrēscō, ere, crēvi, crētus grow (with,  
in), ingrain

corporeus, a, um of the body, corporeal†  
dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, discern  
diū (for) a long time  
dōnec until, while, as long as  
ēluō, ere, uī, ūtus wash out†  
Elysium, (i) i n. abode of the blessed in  
Hades

ergō therefore, then, consequently\*  
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, de-  
part

exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, torment\*  
eximō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus remove, destroy  
exinde thence, next†  
expendō, ere, ī, ēnsus pay, suffer  
exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn out, consume  
funditus completely, entirely, utterly†  
gurgēs, itis m. whirl(pool, wind), water\*  
inānis, e empty, shadowy, spectral, vain\*  
inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus dye, work in  
inolēscō, ere, lēvi, litus grow in, become  
ingrained†

lābēs, is f. spot, stain, blemish; ruin  
malum, i n. evil, sin, misfortune, trouble\*  
mānēs, i n. m. spirit, soul, character; (lot  
in) Hades\*

mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand\*  
mirus, a, um wonderful, marvelous  
modus, i m. manner, measure, limit\*  
necesse indecl. necessary; necessity  
orbis, is m. circle, cycle, orb(it), earth\*  
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread out\*  
patior, ī, passus endure, suffer, allow\*  
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty, slight\*  
penitus deeply, (deep) within; wholly\*  
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, complete  
pestis, is f. plague, scourge, infection,  
curse

pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpointed  
quin (but) that, nay even, why not\*  
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)  
each (one), every (one)  
rota, ae f. wheel, cycle  
scelus, eris n. crime, sin, guilt\*  
sēnsus, ūs m. feeling, sense, perception  
simplex, icis simple, unmixed†  
supplicium, (i) i n. suffering, punishment  
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus hang up\*  
tamen nevertheless, however, but\*  
tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom  
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former\*

734. tenebris et carcere caecō: i.e.,  
in the body.

735. lūmine suprēmō: at the last day.

736. (eis) miseris: dat. of separa-  
tion.

737. corporeae pestēs: the plagues  
caused by the body to the soul.

740. inānēs (animae): unsubstantial  
(souls).

743. quisque suōs patimur mānis: each

of us endures his own spirit; each one  
suffers according to his character (mānēs).

744. pauci nōs = pauci nostrōrum.

745. longa diēs = longum tempus. per-  
fectō temporis orbe: a thousand years,  
as we see in l. 748.

747. aurāi: trisyllabic; an old form  
of the gen. sing.; App. 34, b.

748. rotam (temporis). volvēre = vol-  
vērunt.

750 Lēthaeum ad fluvium deus ēvocat agmine magnō,  
scilicet immemorēs supera ut convexa revīsant  
rūrsus, et incipiant in corpora velle reverti."

755 Dīxerat Anchīsēs nātumque ūnāque Sibyllam  
conventūs trahit in mediōs turbamque sonantem,  
et tumultum capit unde omnīs longō ordine posset  
adversōs legere et venientum discere vultūs.

"Nunc age, Dardaniā prōlem quae deinde sequātur  
glōria, quī maneant Italā dē gente nepōtēs,  
inlūstrīs animās nostrumque in nōmen itūrās,  
expediam dictīs, et tē tua fāta docēbō.  
760 Ille, vidēs, pūrā iuvenis quī nītitur hastā,  
proxima sorte tenet lūcis loca, prīmus ad aurās  
aetheriās Italō commixtus sanguine surget,  
Silvius, Albānum nōmen, tua postuma prōlēs,  
quem tibi longaevō sērū Lāvīnia conjūnx

adversus, a, um opposite, facing\*  
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly  
Albānus, a, um of Alba Longa, the mother  
city of Rome  
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus (com) mingle,  
mix  
conventus, ūs m. assembly, gathering†  
convexum, ī n. hollow, vault (of heaven)  
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan\*  
deinde next, thence, thereupon\*  
discō, ere, didici learn, recognize  
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, show\*  
ēvocō (1) summon, call forth, evoke  
expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus extricate, unfold,  
set forth  
fluvius, (i) ī m. river, stream  
glōria, ae f. glory, renown, reputation  
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart  
immemor, oris forgetful, unmindful  
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake\*  
inlūstrīs, e famous, glorious†  
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy  
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,  
woman)\*  
Lāvīnia, ae f. Italian princess, second  
wife of Aeneas†

legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, choose, scan\*  
Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of  
forgetfulness

longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived  
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant\*  
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean (on) (abl.)  
ordō, inis m. order, row, rank, array\*  
postumus, a, um latest-born, last  
prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race\*  
proximus, a, um nearest, closest, next  
pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpointed  
revertor, ī, rsus return, revert  
revīsō, ere revisit, see again  
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)\*  
scilicet of course, forsooth, doubtless  
sērū, a, um (too) late, tardy  
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess  
Silvius, (i) ī m. son of Aeneas and Lavinia,  
king of Alba Longa†  
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar\*  
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion; oracle\*  
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb\*  
turba, ae f. crowd, mob, confusion  
ūnā together, at the same time  
unde whence, from which source\*  
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect\*

750. immemorēs: forgetful of the  
past, due to drinking of the waters of  
Lethe.

752-805. Anchises leads Aeneas to a  
height whence they pass in review their  
descendants yet unborn, the Alban and  
the Roman kings, and especially Augustus  
Caesar, associated with Romulus as the  
second founder of the Roman state.

754. posset: rel. clause of character-  
istic; App. 389.

756. deinde: two syllables here by  
synizesis.

760. pūrā hastā: a spear without the  
iron head, awarded for distinguished  
conduct in battle.

761. proxima loca: i.e., he will be  
born next.

762. Italō commixtus sanguine: since



765 *ēdūcet silvīs rēgem rēgumque parentem,*  
*unde genus Longā nostrum dominābitur Albā.*  
*Proximus ille Procās, Trojānae glōria gentis,*  
*et Capys et Numitor et quī tē nōmine reddet*  
*Silvius Aenēās, pariter pietāte vel armīs*  
*ēgregius, sī umquam rēgnandam accēperit Albam.* 770  
*Quī juvenēs! Quantās ostentant, aspice, vīrīs*  
*atque umbrāta gerunt cīvili tempora quercū!*  
*Hī tibi Nōmentum et Gabiōs urbemque Fidēnam,*  
*hī Collātīnās impōnent montibus arcēs,*  
*Pōmetiōs Castrumque Inuī Bōlamque Coramque.* 775  
*Haec tum nōmina erunt, nunc sunt sine nōmine terrae.*  
*Quīn et avō comitem sēsē Māvortius addet*

**addō, ere, didi, ditus add,** place beside\*

**Aeneās, ae** *see* **Silviust**

**Alba, ae f.** Alba Longa, mother city of Rome

**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** *see, look upon*

**avus, i m.** grandfather; ancestor

**Bōla, ae f.** Italian city†

**Capys, yos m.** king of Alba Longa†

**Castrum, i n.** Castle, Fort; **Castrum Inuī,** Italian city†\*

**cīvilis, e** civic, civil, of a citizen†

**Collātīnus, a, um** of Collatia, a city near Rome†

**Cora, ae f.** Italian city†

**dominor, āri, ātus** rule, dominate, master

**ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus** lead out, raise,

bear

**ēgregius, a, um** remarkable, distinguished

**Fidēna, ae f.** Italian city†

**Gabii, ōrum m.** Italian city†

**gerō, ere, gessi, gestus** carry (on), wear\*

**glōria, ae f.** fame, glory, reputation

**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on (dat.)\*

**Inuus, i m.** god of cattle†

**juvenis, is m. (f.)** youth, young (man, woman)\*

**Longa, ae** *see* **Alba**

**Māvortius, a, um** of Mars, god of war

**Nomentum, i n.** Italian city†

**Numitor, ōris m.** king of Alba Longa†

**ostentō (1)** show (off), display, parade, exhibit

**pariter** equally, side by side\*

**pietās, ātis f.** devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility\*

**Pōmetii, ōrum m.** Italian city†

**Procās, ae m.** king of Alba Longa†

**proximus, a, um** next, closest, nearest

**quantus, a, um** how (great, much, many), as\*

**quercus, ūs f.** oak

**quīn (but)** that, pay even, why not\*

**reddō, ere, didi, ditus** give back, recall, repeat\*

**rēgnō (1)** rule (as king), reign, govern

**Silvius, (i) i m.** Silvius Aeneas, king of Alba Longa

**sine** without (abl.)\*

**tempus, oris n.** temple, brow

**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy\*

**umbrō (1)** shade, shadow, darken

**umquam** ever, at any time

**unde** whence, from which source\*

he was to be the son of Aeneas, a Trojan, and of Lavinia, an Italian.

**765. (in) silvīs:** Livy says of him *cāsū quōdam (some) in silvīs nātus.*

**768. Numitor:** with the final syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, a.

**770. umquam:** according to tradition his guardian kept him from the royal power for fifty years.

**772. cīvili quercū:** usually called *corōna cīvica*, a wreath of oak leaves granted to those who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle. The Senate decreed that such a crown should always hang before the doors of Augustus, and the poet may have this in mind here.

**773. Hī (condent).**

**777. avō:** Numitor. *addet: will join him (in the world of living men).*

- Rōmulus, Assaracī *quem sanguinis* Īlia māter  
ēdūcet. *Viden, ut geminae stant vertice cristae*  
780 *et pater ipse suō superum jam signat honōre?*  
Ēn *hujus, nāte, auspiciis illa incluta Rōma*  
*imperium terrīs, animōs aequābit Olympō,*  
*septemque ūna sibi mūrō circumdabit arcēs,*  
fēlix prōle *virum: quālis Berecynthia māter*  
785 *invehitur currū Phrygiās turrita per urbēs*  
*laeta deum partū, centum complexa nepōtēs,*  
*omnīs caelicolās, omnīs supera alta tenentis.*  
*Hūc geminās nunc flecte aciēs, hanc aspice gentem*  
*Rōmānōsque tuōs. Hīc Caesar et omnis Iūli*  
790 *prōgeniēs magnum caelī ventūra sub axem.*  
*Hic vir, hic est, tibi quem prōmitti saepius audis,*

aciēs, ēi *f.* edge; line; vision, eye\*  
aequō (1) equal(ize), make equal, even\*  
altum, ī *n.* the deep; the height, heaven  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at\*  
Assaracus, ī *m.* Phrygian king, grand-  
father of Anchises  
auspicium, (i) ī *n.* auspices, authority  
axis, is *m.* axis, axle, wheel; vault  
Berecynthus, a, um of Berecynthus, a  
mountain in Phrygia, center of the  
worship of Cybele, mother of the gods†  
caelicola, ae *m. (f.)* god(dess), divinity  
Caesar, aris *m.* great Roman statesman  
and general  
centum hundred\*  
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround  
complexor, ī, plexus embrace, enfold  
crista, ae *f.* crest, plume  
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*  
ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead out, raise,  
bear  
ēn see! look! behold!  
fēlix, icis happy, blessed, fruitful\*  
flectō, ere, xi, xus bend, turn; guide  
Īlia, ae *f.* a vestal virgin, mother of Romu-  
lus and Remus by the god Mars

inclutus, a, um famous, renowned  
invehō, ere, vēxi, vectus convey, bear  
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas\*  
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart\*  
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson, descendant\*  
Olympus, ī *m.* high Greek mountain,  
home of the gods; heaven  
partus, ūs *m.* birth, offspring  
Phrygius, a, um of Phrygia, a country  
of Asia Minor\*  
prōgeniēs, ēi *f.* offspring, race, prog-  
eny  
prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race\*  
prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise\*  
quālis, e of what sort, as\*  
Rōma, ae *f.* Rome, a city and empire  
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*  
Rōmulus, ī *m.* son of Mars and the vestal  
virgin Īlia, legendary founder of Rome  
saepe, ius, issimē often, frequently\*  
septem seven  
signō (1) mark, distinguish, observe  
turritus, a, um crowned with towers,  
turreted  
ūnā together, at the same time  
vertex, icis *m.* top, head, summit, peak\*

779. Viden = vidēsne.

780. pater: Mars. suō honōre: i.e., the double-crested helmet (*geminae cristae*), which was a characteristic of Mars. (eum) superum: acc. sing., marks him (as) a god.

781. hujus auspiciis: under his auspices, referring to the famous omen of the twelve vultures which Romulus saw, while Remus saw only six.

783. sibi: dat. of reference.

784. Berecynthia māter: Cybele, mother of the gods, usually represented as driving a chariot drawn by lions and as wearing on her head a crown with decorations representing the towers of a city wall, thus symbolizing the earth and its cities.

788. aciēs = oculōs.

789. Caesar: Julius (or possibly Augustus).

791. hīc: irregularly short; App. 107, 3, c.

Augustus Caesar, *divi genus*, aurea condet  
 saecula quā rursus Latiō rēgnata per arva  
 Sāturnō quondam, super et Garamantas et Indōs  
 prōferet imperium; jacet extrā sīdera tellūs,  
 extrā annī sōlisque viās, ubi caelifer Atlās  
 axem umerō torquet stēllis ardentibus aptum.  
 Hujus in adventum jam nunc et Caspia rēgna  
 respōnsis horrent dīvum et Maeōtia tellūs,  
 et septemgeminī turbant trepida ōstia Nīlī.  
 Nec vērō Alcīdēs tantum tellūris obīvit,  
 fixerit aeripedem cervam licet, aut Erymanthī  
 pācārit nemora et Lernam tremefēcerit arcū;

795

800

**adventus**, ūs *m.* approach, arrival

**aeripēs**, edis bronze-hoofed†

**Alcidēs**, *ae m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules, god of strength who wandered over the whole world in performing his famous twelve labors, among which was the killing of the bronze-footed Arcadian deer, of the Erymanthian boar, and of the Lernaean hydra

**annus**, *i m.* year, season, time\*

**aptus**, *a, um* fitted, studded, furnished

**arcus**, ūs *m.* bow, arch, arc\*

**Atlās**, *antis m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; mountain of northwestern Africa

**Augustus**, *i m.* great Roman statesman†

**aureus**, *a, um* golden, (of) gold\*

**axis**, *is m.* axle, axis, wheel; vault

**caelifer**, *era, erum* heaven-supporting†

**Caesar**, *aris m.* great Roman statesman†

**Caspianus**, *a, um* of the Caspian Sea in Asia†

**cerva**, *ae f.* deer, doe

**condō**, *ere, didi, ditus* found, establish\*

**Erymanthus**, *i m.* mountain range of Arcadia where Hercules killed the famous wild boar

**extrā** beyond, outside (of) (*acc.*)

**figō**, *ere, xi, xus* (trans)fix, pierce, fasten\*

**Garamantes**, *um m.* African tribe†

**horreō**, *ēre, uī* bristle, shudder, quake\*

**Indī**, *ōrum m.* inhabitants of India†

**jaceō**, *ēre, uī*, *itus* lie (low, outspread)\*

**Latium**, (*i*) *i n.* district around Rome\*

**Lerna**, *ae f.* marsh near Argos where

Hercules killed the famous hydra, a monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads

**licet**, *ēre, uī*, *itum* it is permitted\*

**Maeōtius**, *a, um* of Lake Maeotia, the Sea of Azov†

**nemus**, *oris n.* (sacred) grove, forest\*

**Nīlus**, *i m.* the great river of Egypt†

**obeō**, *ire, ii (ivī)*, *itus* pass over, die

**ōstium**, (*i*) *i n.* mouth, entrance; harbor

**pācō** (*l*) pacify, tame, quiet, calm†

**prōferō**, *ferre, tuli, lātus* advance, extend†

**rēgnō** (*l*) rule (as king), reign, govern

**respōnsum**, *i n.* answer, oracle, response

**rursus**, *um* again, anew, back(ward)\*

**saeculum**, *i n.* age, generation

**Sāturnus**, *i m.* early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age†

**septemgeminus**, *a, um* sevenfold†

**sōl**, *sōlis m.* sun; day\*

**stēlla**, *ae f.* star, constellation

**torqueō**, *ēre, rsi, rtus* twist, turn, whirl\*

**tremefaciō**, *ere, fēci, factus* make tremble

**trepidus**, *a, um* agitated, fluttered

**turbō** (*l*) confuse, perplex, be alarmed\*

**vērō** truly, verily, indeed, but

**792. divi genus**: son of the deified (Julius Caesar).

**793. (in) Latiō**.

**794. Sāturnō**: dat. of agent; Saturn was ruler of heaven and earth in the Golden Age; after his dethronement he came to Italy.

**795. sidera**: the zodiac, which denotes the course of the sun.

**796. annī sōlisque viās**: the yearly course of the sun.

**800. septemgeminī**: the Nile divides into a number of streams near its mouth, forming a delta.

**802-803. licet fixerit, pācā(ve)rit, tremefēcerit**: concessive; App.384. **cervam**: the third labor of Hercules was to capture the bronze-footed deer of Ceryneia in

- 805 *nec quā pampineis victor juga flectit habēnis*  
*Liber, agēns celsō Nysae dē vertice tigris.*  
*Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūtem extendere factis,*  
*aut metus Ausoniā prohibet cōsistere terrā?*  
*Quis procul ille autem rāmis insignis olivae*  
*sacra ferēns? Nōscō crinis incānaque menta*  
810 *rēgis Rōmānī primam quā lēgibus urbem*  
*fundābit Curibus parvis et paupere terrā,*  
*missus in imperium magnum. Cui deinde subibit*  
*ōtia quā rumpet patriae residēsque movēbit*  
*Tullus in arma virōs et jam dēsuetā triumphis*  
815 *agmina. Quem juxtā sequitur jactantior Ancus*  
*nunc quoque jam nimium gaudēns populāribus auris.*  
*Vīs et Tarquiniōs rēgēs animamque superbam*

adhūc still, yet, hitherto  
 Ancus, *i m.* fourth king of Rome, pictured  
 by Vergil as a demagogue†  
 Ausonius, *a, um* Ausonian, Italian  
 autem however, moreover, but\*  
 celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering\*  
 cōsistō, *ere, stiti, stitus* stand (fast)\*  
 crinis, *is m.* hair, locks, tresses\*  
 Curēs, *ium m.* Italian city, home of Numa,  
 lawgiver and second king of Rome†  
 deinde then, thence, next, thereupon\*  
 dēsuetus, *a, um* unaccustomed, dormant  
 dubitō (1) doubt, hesitate, waver  
 extendō, *ere, i, ntus* extend, stretch out  
 factum, *i n.* deed, achievement, exploit\*  
 flectō, *ere, xi, xus* bend, turn; guide  
 fundō (1) found, establish, base  
 gaudeō, *ere, gāvissus* rejoice, exult  
 habēna, *ae f.* rein, curb, check  
 incānus, *a, um* hoary, gray, white†  
 insignis, *e* distinguished, marked\*  
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, boast, vaunt\*  
 jugum, *i n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge\*  
 juxtā next, close to (*acc.*)\*  
 lēx, *lēgis f.* law, decree, regulation  
 Liber, *eri m.* Bacchus, god of wine, who  
 drove his chariot drawn by tigers (or  
 panthers) all over the world†  
 mentum, *i n.* chin; beard, whiskers  
 metus, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety\*

nimium too (much, greatly)  
 nōscō, *ere, nōvī, nōtus* learn, recognize;  
*perf. know\**  
 Nysa, *ae f.* mountain of India, fabled  
 birthplace of Bacchus†  
 oliva, *ae f.* olive  
 ōtium, (i) *i n.* repose, peace, leisure  
 pampineus, *a, um* of vine (leaves, ten-  
 drils)†  
 parvus, *a, um* small, little\*  
 patria, *ae f.* fatherland, country\*  
 pauper, *eris* poor, needy, lowly  
 populāris, *e* popular, of the people†  
 prohibeō, *ere, uī, itus* prevent, prohibit  
 quoque also, in addition, too, likewise\*  
 rāmus, *i m.* branch, limb, bough\*  
 reses, *idis* inactive, sluggish, dormant  
 Rōmānus, *a, um* Roman, of Rome\*  
 rumpō, *ere, rūpī, ruptus* break, burst  
 (forth)\*  
 superbus, *a, um* proud, haughty\*  
 Tarquinius, (i) *i m.* Tarquinius Priscus,  
 the fifth, and Tarquinius Superbus, the  
 seventh and last king of Rome†  
 tigris, (id) *is m. (f.)* tiger, tigress  
 triumphus, *i m.* triumph, victory  
 Tullus, *i m.* a great warrior, third king  
 of Rome†  
 vertex, *icis m.* top, peak, summit, head\*  
 virtūs, *ūtis f.* manhood, excellence, valor\*

Arcadia. He wounded it and then caught  
 it. *pācā(ve)rit: gave peace to*, by killing  
 the wild boar.

806-846. Aeneas is shown others of  
 his descendants, among whom Caesar  
 and Pompey attract special attention.

808. *rāmis olivae*: a priest when sacri-

ficing often wore a wreath of olive. *ille*:  
 Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

809. *menta*: poetic plural; App. 243.

810. *rēgis*: Numa, legendary founder  
 of most of the early Roman laws and  
 religious ceremonies.

816. *populāribus auris*: the breezes of  
 popular favor.

817. *Vīs*: from *volō*.



ultōris Brūtī, fascisque vidēre receptōs?

Cōsulis imperium hic prīmus saevāsque secūrīs  
accipiet, nātōsque pater nova bella moventīs

820

ad poenam pulchrā prō libertāte vocābit.

Infēlīx! Utcumque ferent ea facta minōrēs:

vincet amor patriae laudumque immēnsa cupīdō.

Quīn Deciōs Drūsōsque procul saevumque secūrī  
aspice Torquātum et referentem signa Camillum.

825

Illae autem paribus quās fulgere cernīs in armīs,

concordēs animae nunc et dum nocte premuntur,

heu quantum inter sē bellum, sī lūmina vitae

attigerint, quantās aciēs strāgemque ciēbunt,

aggeribus socer Alpīnīs atque arce Monoeci

830

aciēs, ēi f. edge; battle(-line); view\*

agger, eris m. mound, barrier, rampart

Alpinus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps

a(d)spicio, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at\*

attingō, ere, tigi, tactus touch, attain

autem however, moreover, but\*

Brūtus, i m. expeller of the Tarquins and

first consul at Rome, who executed his

own sons for attempted rebellion†

Camillus, i m. conqueror of the Gauls who

had captured Rome in 390 B.C.†

ciēō, ēre, civi, citus stir (up), arouse\*

concor, rdis harmonious, concordant

cōsul, ulis m. one of the two chief magis-

trates annually appointed at Rome†

cupīdō, inis f. desire, love, longing

Decius, (i)j m. name of two heroic consuls

who devoted themselves in battle in

the Latin and Gallic wars†

Drūsus, i m. (1) one of the consuls who de-

feated Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal,

at the Metaurus in 207 B.C.; (2) brother

of Tiberius and stepson of Augustus†

factum, i n. deed, achievement, exploit\*

fascis, is m. bundle of rods with ax, carried

by lictors before Roman kings and cons-

uls as a symbol of authority†

fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi shine, gleam, glitter

immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit\*

libertās, ātis f. liberty, freedom†

minōrēs, um m. younger people, posterity

Monoecus, i m. Monaco, a city in north-

ern Italy†

pār, paris equal, similar, like\*

patria, ae f. fatherland, country\*

premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,

weigh down\*

prō before, on behalf of, for (abl.)\*

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, glorious,

handsome, splendid, illustrious\*

quantus, a, um how (great, much, many),

as\*

quīn (but) that, nay even, why not\*

recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus recover, receive\*

saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern\*

secūris, is f. ax, battle-ax

signum, i n. sign, standard, mark, token\*

socer, eri m. father-in-law

strāgēs, is f. slaughter, carnage

Torquātus, i m. consul who executed his

own son for disobeying orders†

ultor, ōris m. avenger, punisher

utcumque how(so)ever, when(so)ever†

818. fascis: bundles of rods with an ax in the middle, used as symbols of authority by the kings of Rome but taken over (receptōs) by Brutus for the republic and henceforth symbols of the consuls.

820. nova = civil. See the note on novandis, IV, 290. The sons of Brutus plotted for the return of the expelled kings and were executed by their father.

822. Utcumque ferent minōrēs: how-soever posterity may extol the deed.

824. Drūsōs: Vergil is here complimenting Augustus, whose wife Livia belonged to this famous family.

825. signa: the standards captured by the Gauls from the Romans at the battle of the Allia, 387 B.C., but recovered by Camillus, who defeated the Gauls shortly thereafter.

826-827. Illae animae: Pompey and Caesar. fulgēre: usually of the second conjugation, but of the third conjugation here. nocte: a general term for the lower world as distinguished from the world of light and sunshine.

830. socer: Caesar, whose daughter Julia had married Pompey. aggeribus Alpīnis: beyond which Caesar had been

- dēscendēns, gener adversis instrūctus Eōis!  
*Nē, puerī, nē tanta animīs adsuēscite bella*  
*neu patriae validās in viscera vertite vīrīs;*  
*tūque prior, tū parce, genus quī dūcis Olympō,*  
 835 *prōjice tēla manū, sanguis meus! —*  
*Ille triumphātā Capitōlia ad alta Corinthō*  
*vīctor aget currum caesis insignis Achivīs.*  
*Ēruet ille Argōs Agamemnoniāsque Mycēnās*  
*īpsūque Aeacidēn, genus arripotentis Achillī,*  
 840 *ultus avōs Trojae templa et temerātā Minervae.*  
*Quis tē, magne Catō, tacitum aut tē, Cosse, relinquat?*  
*Quis Gracchī genus aut geminōs, duo fulmina bellī,*

**Achillēs**, is (ei, i) *m.* famous Greek chief-tain before Troy\*

**Achivus**, a, um Achaeon, Greek

**adsuēscō**, ere, suēvī, suētus make accustomed

**adversus**, a, um opposite, opposing, facing\*

**Aeacidēs**, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus; Perseus, king of Macedonia, who claimed to be descended from Aeacus through Achilles

**Agamemnonius**, a, um of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, who led the Greek expedition against Troy

**Argī**, ōrum *m.* famous kingdom and city of southern Greece

**arripotēns**, entis powerful in arms

**avus**, i *m.* grandfather; ancestor

**caedō**, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down), kill

**Capitōlium**, (i)ī *n.* the Capitoline Hill, the Capitol at Rome†

**Catō**, ōnis *m.* famous Roman statesman, noted for his stern simplicity†

**Corinthus**, i *f.* famous Greek city, captured and destroyed by Lucius Mummius in 146 B.C.†

**Cossus**, i *m.* Roman general who was the second (Romulus being first and Marcellus third) to win the *spolia opima* by killing in battle the enemy's leader

**currus**, ūs *m.* chariot, car\*

**dēscendō**, ere, ī, ēnsus descend  
**duo**, ae, o two\*

**Eōus**, a, um eastern, of the East

**ēruō**, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin

**fulmen**, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning\*

**gener**, erī *m.* son-in-law

**Gracchus**, i *m.* (1) Tiberius; (2) Gaius; the Gracchi, famous Roman statesmen and reformers†

**insignis**, e distinguished, marked\*

**instruō**, ere, strūxī, strūctus draw up

**Minerva**, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts

**Mycēnās**, ārum *f.* famous city in southern Greece

**neve**, neu nor, and not

**Olympus**, i *m.* high mountain in northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven

**parcō**, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)

**patria**, ae *f.* fatherland, country\*

**prior**, ius sooner, former, first, prior\*

**prōjiciō**, ere, jēcī, jectus throw away

**tacitus**, a, um silent, unmentioned

**temerō** (1) violate, desecrate, pollute, defile†

**templum**, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary\*  
**triumphō** (1) triumph (over), conquer†

**ulciscor**, ī, ultus avenge, punish

**validus**, a, um strong, valiant, stout

**vertō**, ere, ī, rsus turn, change\*

**viscus**, eris *n.* vitals, flesh

occupied for nine years, 58-50 B.C., in his Gallic campaigns.

**831. Eōis (agminibus):** Pompey's troops contained a large number of eastern contingents.

**834. genus Olympō:** referring to Caesar, who traced his ancestry through Iulus and Aeneas to Venus.

**836. Ille:** Lucius Mummius, conqueror and destroyer of Corinth.

**838. ille:** Lucius Aemilius Paulus, conqueror of the Macedonian king, Perseus, who traced his ancestry to Achilles.

**840. templa:** for this incident see I, 41 and II, 165-175, with notes.

Scīpiadās, clādem Libyae, parvōque potentem  
Fabricium vel tē sulcō, Serrāne, serentem?

Quō fessum rapitis, Fabii? Tū Maximus ille es, 845  
ūnus quī nōbīs cūnetandō restituis rem.

Excūdent aliī spirantia mollius aera  
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs,  
ōrābunt causās melius, caelīque meātūs  
dēscribent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent: 850  
tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō  
(hae tibi erunt artēs), pācisque impōnere mōrem,  
parcere subjectīs et dēbellāre superbōs."

aes, aeris *n.* bronze\*

ars, artis *f.* art, skill, handicraft\*

causa, ae *f.* cause, case (at law)\*

clādēs, is *f.* slaughter, destruction

crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, suppose\*

cūctor, āri, ātus delay, tarry, wait

dēbellō (1) war down, crush

dēscribō, ere, psī, ptus mark out, map

equidem indeed, truly, surely\*

excūdō, ere, ī, sus hammer out, fashion

Fabius, (i)ī *m.* Roman dictator who

"wore out" Hannibal by delay and

thus restored the Roman fortunes†

Fabricius, (i)ī *m.* Roman consul and

general, who refused large bribes†

impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on,

impose, establish\*

Libya, ae *f.* country of northern Africa,  
Carthage\*

marmor, oris *n.* marble

Maximus, ī *m.* surname of Fabius after  
his successes against Hannibal†

meātūs, ūs *m.* course, path, motion†

melior, ius better, superior, finer

meminī, isse remember, recollect (*gen.*)

molliter softly, gently, gracefully†

mōs, mōris *m.* custom, usage, rule, law\*

ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, plead, argue\*  
parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare  
(*dat.*)

parvus, a, um small, little\*

pāx, pācis *f.* peace, quiet, repose

populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race\*

potēns, entis powerful, mighty\*

radius, (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, compass

rapiō, ere, uī, ptus seize, hurry along\*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, guide, direct

restituō, ere, uī, ūtus restore†

Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*

Scīpiadēs, ae *m.* member of the Scipionic  
family; Scipio, famous in the wars  
against Carthage†

serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, plant, be-  
get\*

Serrānus, ī *m.* consul called from the  
plow to fight the Carthaginians in  
257 B.C.†

spirō (1) breathe, blow, live, quiver

subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus vanquish

sulcus, ī *m.* furrow, trench

superbus, a, um proud, haughty\*

vivus, a, um living, alive, natural

vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, as-  
pect\*

843. Scīpiadās = Scīpiōnēs (---) which cannot be used in dactylic verse. Their victories over Carthage (clādem Libyae) were notable. parvō potentem: rich in poverty.

844. Serrāne, serentem: alliteration; Serranus sowing, referring to the tradition that he was sowing grain when news was brought to him of his election as consul.

845. (mē) fessum: wearied as I am with reciting the great achievements of others. Maximus: dubbed Cūctātor, the Delayer, by his political enemies.

847-853. Aeneas is assured that the

Romans are called by high destiny to rule the world.

847. aliī: the reference is to the Greeks, the acknowledged masters of the Romans in the arts, sciences, oratory, and literature. spirantia aera: bronze statues so lifelike that they seem to breathe.

847-848. sculptors, orators.

849-850. astronomers. dicent = vocābunt.

851. Rōmāne: addressed to the Roman people in general.

852. hae: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240. a

*Sic pater Anchisēs atque haec mirantibus addit:*

- 855 "Aspice, ut insignis spoliis Mārcellus opīmīs  
ingreditur victorque virōs superēminet om̄nīs.  
*Hic rem Rōmānam magnō turbante tumultū*  
sistet, eques sternet Poenōs Gallumque rebellem,  
tertiāque arma patrī suspendet capta Quirīnō."  
860 *Atque hīc Aenēās (ūnā namque ire vidēbat*  
ēgregium formā juvenem et fulgentibus armīs,  
*sed frōns laeta parum et dējectō lūmina vultū)*  
*"Quis, pater, ille, virum quī sic comitātur euntem?"*  
Filius, anne aliquis magnā dē stirpe nepōtum?  
865 *Quī strepitus circā comitum! Quantum instar in ipsō!*

addō, ere, didī, dītus add\*  
aliquis, quid some(one), any(one)\*  
an(ne) interrog. whether, or  
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at\*  
circā around, about†  
comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,  
escort, follow\*  
dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast down  
ēgregius, a, um extraordinary, distin-  
guished  
eques, itis m. cavalryman, knight  
filius, (i)ī m. son  
forma, ae f. form, beauty, shape\*  
frōns, frontis f. front, forehead, brow\*  
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi shine, gleam, glitter  
Gallus, a, um Gallic, Gaul†  
ingredior, ī, gressus step, stride, enter  
insignis, e distinguished, marked\*  
instar n. indecl. likeness, weight, dignity  
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,  
woman)\*  
Mārcellus, ī m. famous Roman consul,  
slew in battle Viridomarus, king of the  
Insubrian Gauls, and thus won the  
third spolia opīma†  
mīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire\*

nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant\*  
opīmus, a, um rich, splendid, sumptuous;  
spolia opīma spoils of honor, taken  
when the general with his own hand  
slew the general of the enemy  
parum slightly, too little, not†  
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian  
quantus, a, um how (much, great, many),  
as\*  
Quirinus, ī m. the deified Romulus as  
god of war  
rebellis, e rebellious, insurgent†  
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*  
sistō, ere, steti, status stop, stand  
spolium, (i)ī n. spoil, booty, plunder  
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew\*  
stirps, pis f. stock, lineage, race  
strepitus, ūs m. uproar, noise  
superēminēō, ēre overtop, tower above  
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus hang up\*  
tertius, a, um third\*  
tumultus, ūs m. tumult, uprising, clamor  
turbō (1) confuse, shake, disturb\*  
ūnā together, at the same time  
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, as-  
pect\*

854-887. Anchises especially praises  
the younger Marcellus and sings a dirge  
for his untimely death.

854. (Aenēas et Sibyllae) mirantibus.

855. spoliis opīmīs: arms and other  
booty taken on the field of battle by the  
victorious from the vanquished general,  
whom he has slain with his own hand.  
These were won before by Romulus and  
Cossus, l. 841, and never afterward.  
Mārcellus: a hero of the second Punic  
War and an ancestor of the younger  
Marcellus.

857. tumultū: the war with the Gauls  
in Italy, in which the elder Marcellus  
had killed Viridomarus, leader of the

Gauls, and stripping him of his armor had  
obtained the third and last spolia opīma,  
the *tertia arma capta* of l. 859.

858. eques: (though but) a knight.

860. Aenēās (dicit). ūnā (cum Mār-  
cellō).

862. frōns (erat). et lūmina (erant)  
dējectō vultū = et lūmina (erant) dē-  
jecta. lūmina = oculi, as often.

863. virum: the elder Marcellus. ille:  
the younger Marcellus, son of Augustus's  
sister Octavia. Augustus had chosen him  
to be his successor, but he died in 23 B.C.

864. nepōtum (nostrōrum).

865. strepitūs: indicating the future  
fame and popularity of the younger  
Marcellus.



*Sed nox atra caput tristī circumvolat umbrā.*"

*Tum pater Anchisēs lacrimīs ingressus obortīs:*

*"Ō nāte, ingentem lūctum nē quare tuōrum;*

*ostendent terrīs hunc tantum fāta neque ultrā*

*esse sinent. Nimum vōbīs Rōmāna propāgō*

870

*vīsa potēns, superī, propria haec sī dōna fuissent.*

*Quantōs ille virum magnam Māvortis ad urbem*

*campus aget gemitūs! Vel quae, Tiberīne, vidēbis*

*fūnera, cum tumulum praeterlābēre recentem!*

*Nec puer Īliacā quisquam dē gente Latīnōs*

875

*in tantum spē tollet avōs, nec Rōmula quondam*

*illō sē tantum tellūs jactābit alumnō.*

*Heu pietās, heu prisca fidēs invictaque bellō*

*dextera! Nōn illī sē quisquam impūne tulisset*

*obvius armātō, seu cum pedes īret in hostem*

880

alumnus, i m. nursling, (foster) child

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish\*

avus, i m. grandfather; ancestor

circumvolō (1) flit around, fly about

fidēs, ei f. faith, trust, fidelity, pledge\*

fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster\*

gemitus, ūs m. groan(ing), wail(ing)\*

hostis, is m. enemy, foe, stranger\*

Īliacus, a, um Īlian, Trojan\*

impūne unpunished, with impunity

ingredior, i, gressus stride, begin, enter

invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible

jactō (1) toss, buffet, vaunt, boast\*

Latinus, a, um Latin, of Latium

lūctus, ūs m. grief, mourning, sorrow

Māvors, rtis m. Mars, god of war†

nimum too (much), too great(ly)

obrior, irī, ortus arise, spring up

obvius, a, um before, meeting (dat.)

ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display\*

pedes, itis m. footsoldier, infantry

pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility\*

potēns, entis powerful, mighty\*

praeterlābor, i, lāpsus glide by

priscus, a, um ancient, primitive

propāgō, inis f. offshoot, offspring, race†

proprius, a, um one's own, special, secure

quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as\*

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam any(one, thing)

recēns, entis recent, fresh, new

Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome\*

Rōmulus, a, um of Romulus, Roman†

sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow\*

sive, seu or if, whether, or

spēs, ei f. hope, expectation\*

tantum so much, so great(ly), only

Tiberīnus, i m. (god of) the Tiber, river

on which Rome is situated

tumulus, i m. mound, tomb\*

ultrā beyond, farther

867. ingressus (est).

868-886. These lines were recited by Vergil to Augustus and Octavia, the mother of Marcellus. Octavia is said to have swooned and later to have royally rewarded the poet for his glowing tribute to the memory of her son.

869. neque ultrā: Marcellus was only nineteen at the time of his death.

871. visa (esset): conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382. sī fuissent: condition contrary to fact. haec dōna: Marcellus.

872. vir(ōr)um. Māvortis urbem = Rome, founded by Romulus, a son of Mars.

873. campus: the Campus Martius, on the banks of the Tiber near Rome, where the whole populace assembled to celebrate the funeral of the young Marcellus.

874. tumulum: the magnificent mausoleum of Augustus, erected by the emperor four years before the death of Marcellus. praeterlābēre = praeterlābēris.

876. spē: by the hope (of his future greatness).

879. illī = Mārcellō: dat. with obvius in l. 880. tulisset: conclusion of a clause contrary to fact, with the condition implied.

- seu spūmantis equi foderet calcāribus armōs.  
*Heu, miserande puer, si quā fāta aspera rumpās,  
 tū Mārcellus eris. Manibus date lilia plēnis,  
 purpureōs spargam flōrēs animamque nepōtis*  
 885 *hīs saltem accumulem dōnīs, et fungar ināni  
 mūnere.” Sic tōtā passim regiōne vagantur  
 āeris in campīs lātīs atque omnia lūstrant.  
 Quae postquam Anchīsēs nātum per singula dūxit  
 incenditque animū fāmae venientis amōre,*  
 890 *exim bella virō memorat quae deinde gerenda,  
 Laurentisque docet populōs urbemque Latīnī,  
 et quō quemque modō fugiatque feratque labōrem.  
 Sunt geminae Somnī portae, quārum altera fertur*

**Accumulō** (1) heap up; pile up; honor†  
**āēr, āeris** *m.* air, mist, fog  
**alter, era, erum** one (of two), other (of two), second\*  
**armus, ī** *m.* shoulder, flank, side†  
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh, fierce\*  
**calcar, āris** *n.* spur, goad, prick†  
**deinde** thence, next, thereupon\*  
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach (about), tell\*  
**exim, exin(de)** thence, next, thereupon†  
**flōs, ōris** *m.* flower, blossom, bloom  
**fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus** dig, pierce, spur†  
**fungor, ī, fūctus** perform, fulfil (*abl.*)†  
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, wage\*  
**inānis, e** empty, useless, unavailing\*  
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle\*  
**Latinus, ī** *m.* early king of Italy, whose daughter, Lavinia, married Aeneas†  
**lātus, a, um** wide, broad, spacious\*  
**Laurēns, entis** of Laurentum, a city near Rome  
**lilium, (i)ī** *n.* lily  
**lūstrō** (1) purify; survey; traverse  
**Mārcellus, ī** *m.* nephew and adopted son of Augustus, died in 23 B.C., to the

great grief of his mother and of the emperor  
**memorō** (1) recount, (re)call, relate\*  
**miseror, āri, ātus** pity, commiserate\*  
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure, limit\*  
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant\*  
**passim** everywhere, all about\*  
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled, complete  
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race\*  
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit\*  
**postquam** after (that), when\*  
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson, bright  
**quā** where(by), wherever, in any (some) way  
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each, every(one)  
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* district, region, quarter  
**rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus** break, burst (forth)\*  
**saltem** at least, at any rate  
**singulī, ae, a** each, one by one  
**sive, seu** or if, whether, or  
**Somnus, ī** *m.* Sleep, Slumber  
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle\*  
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray\*  
**vagor, āri, ātus** wander, roam, rove

**882.** rumpās: fut. less vivid condition; App. 381. quā (viā).

**883.** Mārcellus: (*a true*) Marcellus, worthy of the name.

**884-885.** purpureōs: a color much used in the funerals of the great, as indicated in the note to l. 221. spargam, accumulem, fungar: volitives; App. 254.

**886.** vagantur (Anchīsēs et Aeneās et Sibylla).

**888-892.** A prophecy of the impending wars and difficulties of Aeneas in Italy.

**890.** gerenda (sint).

**892.** fugiat, ferat: subjunctives in indirect questions.

**893-901.** Aeneas and the Sibyl depart through the ivory exit of Hades to the upper world. Aeneas hastens to his fleet, sets sail once more and soon lands at Cajeta in Latium, the final goal of his journey and the destined end of his wanderings.

**893.** fertur (esse) = dicitur (esse).

cornea, *quā vērīs facilis datur exitus umbrīs,*  
 altera candentī perfecta nitēns elephantō,  
 895 *sed falsa ad caelum mittunt insomnia mārēs.*  
*Hīs ibi tum nātum Anchīsēs ūnāque Sibyllam*  
*prōsequitur dictīs portāque ēmittit eburnā;*  
*ille viam secat ad nāvīs sociōsque revīsīt.*  
*Tum sē ad Cajētae rēctō fert lītore portum.*  
 900 *Ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant lītore puppēs.*

alter, era, erum one (of two), other (of two), second\*

ancora, ae f. anchor

Cajēta, ae f. Italian coast city near Rome†

candēns, entis shining, white, gleaming

corneus, a, um of horn, horny†

eburnus, a, um (of) ivory

elephantus, ī m. elephant, ivory

ēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus send forth

exitus, ūs m. exit, outlet, egress

facilis, e easy, favorable, ready

falsus, a, um false, deceitful, mock

ibi there, then

insomnium, (i)ī n. dream, vision

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, cast, hurl  
 mārēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead,  
 Hades\*

nitēns, entis gleaming, bright, shining

perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, make

porta, ae f. door, gate, entrance, exit\*

prōra, ae f. prow (of a ship)\*

prōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, escort

rēctus, a, um right, straight, direct

revīsō, ere revisit, see again

secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave; speed\*

Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess

ūnā together, at the same time

vērūs, a, um true, real, genuine, honest\*

895. candentī elephantō: abl. of material; App. 324.

896. sed (per hanc portam).

900. rēctō lītore: (sailing) *straight along the shore*; abl. of route.

901. This line repeats III, 277.





## GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX



## GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

### ALPHABET; PRONUNCIATION; QUANTITY; ACCENT

1. With the exception that it has no **w** the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, which has been borrowed from it.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u**, and sometimes **y**. The other letters are consonants.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

3. **Vowels.** All Latin vowels are either long or short. All long vowels are indicated in this text by having the mark (—) placed over them, as **nōn**, *not*. All unmarked vowels in this book are to be considered short.

4. **Latin vowels** have the following sounds:

#### LONG

**ā** as in father: **āra**, altar  
**ē** as in they: **mēns**, mind  
**ī** as in machine: **dīvus**, divine  
**ō** as in bone: **mōns**, mountain  
**ū** as in prune: **lūx**, light

#### SHORT

**a** as in ask: **anima**, soul  
**e** as in red: **bellum**, war  
**i** as in hit: **mittō**, send  
**o** as in obey: **aequor**, sea  
**u** as in full: **fuga**, flight

5. **Diphthongs.** A diphthong is the union of two vowels in a single syllable. The sounds of the Latin diphthongs are:

**ae** as *ai* in aisle: **caelum**, heaven  
**au** as *ou* in house: **aurum**, gold  
**ei** as *ei* in freight: **ei**, alas!  
**oe** as *oi* in boil: **poena**, punishment  
**eu** as *eh-oo* (*oo* as in spoon, but fused with the *eh* sound into a single syllable):  
**heu**, alas!  
**ui** somewhat as *we*, but with a more vocalic sound of the **u**: **cui**, to whom

6. **Consonants.** In general the consonants have the same sounds as in English, but there are the following exceptions:

**c** as *k*, always hard, as in come: **faciō**, do, make  
**g** always hard, as in get: **fugiō**, flee  
**j** (consonantal **i**) as *y* in yet: **jubeō**, order  
**s** as in sit, never as in rise: **cāsus**, chance  
**t** as in tie, never as in nation: **tālis**, such  
**v** (consonantal **u**) as *w* in will: **videō**, see  
**x** as in extra, always hard: **rēx**, king  
**bs**, **bt**, as *ps*, *pt*: **urbs**, city; **obtineō**, gain, obtain  
**ch** as *k* in kite: **pulcher**, beautiful  
**gu** (usually), **qu**, and sometimes **su** before a vowel, as *gw*, *kw*, and *sw*, respectively: **sanguis**, blood; **quī**, who; **suādeō**, persuade  
**ph** as *p-h* (as *p-h* in saphead, but without the break): **philosophia**, philosophy  
**th** as *t-h* (as *t-h* in fathead, but without the break): **Corinthus**, Corinth

a. Modern printed texts often use the same character (i) for both vocalic and consonantal i (i, j), as well as only one character for vocalic and consonantal u (u, v). The Romans did not employ separate characters to distinguish between the vocalic and consonantal uses of these letters.

b. When coming between vowels within a word, j is regularly doubled in pronunciation, although written but once, as *major*, *greater*; *pejor*, *worse*; *ejus*, *of him*; *hujus*, *of this*; *cujus*, *of whom*; *ajō*, *say*. These are to be pronounced as though spelled *majjor*, *pejjor*, *ejjus*, *hujjus*, *cujjus*, *ajjō*. This rule does not apply to j, which was originally initial, but which comes between vowels as a result of composition, as *praejūdicō*, *prejudge*; *bijugī*, *chariot*.

c. When followed by the letter i, as in compounds of *jaciō*, *throw*, j, although pronounced, is not ordinarily written in the classical period, as *coniciō*, *throw together*; *dēiciō*, *cast down*; *ēiciō*, *throw out*; *reiciō*, *throw back*. These are to be pronounced as though spelled *conjiciō*, *dējiciō*, *ējiciō*, *rejiciō*, and in this text they are so written.

7. **Doubled Consonants.** All doubled consonants are to be sounded separately, not as one consonant as is customary in English. Thus *puella*, *girl*, must be pronounced *pu-el-la*, and not *pu-ell-a* as in English; so also *er-rō*, *wander*, *stray*; *oc-cu-pō*, *occupy*.

8. **Double Consonants.** The double consonants are x and z; x is equivalent to ks or cs; z a Greek letter, originally zd, may be pronounced as z in *lazy*.

## SYLLABLES

9. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; as *so-ci-us*, *comrade*; *vo-cā-re*, *to call*; *moe-ni-a*, *walls*; *ac-ci-pi-ō*, *receive*.

10. In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant is pronounced with the following vowel, as *ca-put*, *head*.

11. A consonant followed by l or r (except ll or rr) is usually pronounced with the l or r, as *pa-trēs*, *fathers*; *pū-bli-cus*, *public*.

12. In all other combinations of two or more consonants between vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the preceding vowel, and the others with the vowel following, as *her-ba*, *herb*; *mōn-strō*, *show*; *ar-ma*, *arms*.

13. **Exceptions.** Compound words are divided in accordance with their original elements, as *ab-est*, *he is absent*; *trāns-eō*, *I pass across*.



## QUANTITY

14. The quantity of a syllable is the term used to denote the relative amount of time employed in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be used in pronouncing a long syllable as a short one.

15. A syllable is said to be long by *nature*, when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is said to be long by *position* when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants which are separated in pronunciation (10-12), or by either of the double consonants **x** or **z** (8), or by **j**, which was regularly doubled in pronunciation (6 *b*). **H** never helps to make a syllable long, and **qu** counts as a single consonant. Thus the first syllable of **adhūc**, *thus far*, and of **aqua**, *water*, is short.

16. Except under the metrical accent (394), a final syllable ending in a short vowel regularly remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant.

17. If a consonant followed by **l** or **r** comes after a short vowel, the syllable containing the short vowel is said to be *common*, i.e., it may be either long or short, according to the pleasure of the one using it.

18. NOTE: This is due to the fact that the **l** and **r** blend so easily with the preceding consonant that the combination takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. When the **l** or **r** is separated in pronunciation from the preceding consonant, as may be done in all cases, more time is required in pronunciation and the preceding syllable is treated as long.

19. Observe that the *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and is to be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **errō**, *wander*; **captō**, *seize*; **vertō**, *turn*; **nox**, *night*; the first *vowel* in each case is short, and must be so pronounced, according to 4, but the syllable is long, and must occupy more time in pronunciation, according to 14, 15.

20. A vowel is regularly short before another vowel, or **h**, as **aes-tu-ō**, *boil*; **de-us**, *god*; **tra-hō**, *draw*.

*a.* This rule does not apply to Greek words in Latin, such as **ā-ēr**, *air*; **I-xī-ōn**, *Ixion* (a proper name).

21. A vowel is regularly short before **nt** or **nd**. Observe that the *syllable* in this case is long.

22. A vowel is regularly short before any final consonant except **s**.

*a.* Some monosyllables ending in **l**, **r**, **n**, and **c**, have a long vowel as **sōl**, *sun*; **pār**, *equal*; **nōn**, *not*; **sīc**, *so*.

23. A vowel is regularly long before **ns**, **nf**, **nx**, and **nct**.

24. Diphthongs and vowels derived from diphthongs or contracted from other vowels are regularly long.

## ACCENT

25. Words of two syllables have the accent or stress on the first (penult), as *a'-mō*, *love*.

a. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima (*ultimus*, *last*); the next to the last syllable is called the penult (*paene*, *almost*; *ultimus*, *last*); and the syllable before the penult is called the antepenult (*ante*, *before*; *paene*, *almost*; *ultimus*, *last*).

26. Words of more than two syllables (polysyllabic words) have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, on the antepenult when the penult is short or common (17), as *aes-tu-ā'-re*, *boil*; *a'-ni-mus*, *mind*.

27. **Enclitics.** Certain words are not ordinarily written separately but are regularly appended to the word they introduce. The most common of these are *-que*, *and*; *-ve*, *or*; and *-ne* (sign of a question). They are called enclitics and, when appended to words accented on the antepenult, add an accent to the ultima, as *fo'ribus'que*, *and from the doorway*. When an enclitic is appended to a word of two syllables having a long ultima, the accent is shifted to the ultima; as *amō'que*, *and I love*; but *be'llaque*, *and wars*; *i'taque*, *and so*.

## PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

28. Latin words and phrases commonly used in English are to be pronounced according to the ordinary English system of pronunciation; for example, in *alumni*, the final *i* is to be pronounced as *i* in *five*, and the *u* as *u* in *bum*; and in the phrase *via Chicago*, *v* is to be pronounced as in *vine*, and *i* as in *vine*; in the phrase *vōx populi*, *the voice of the people*, *v* as in *voice*, *ō* as in *ox*, *u* as in *due*, *i* as in *die*.

## NUMBER

29. In Latin there are two numbers: the singular, denoting one; the plural, denoting more than one. For the poetic plural see 243.

## CASES

30. In Latin there are seven cases:

1. **The nominative** is the case of the subject.
2. **The genitive** is usually equivalent to the English possessive or to the objective with the preposition *of*.
3. **The dative** is the case of the indirect object or of personal interest.
4. **The accusative** is usually the case of the direct object.
5. **The vocative** is the case of direct address.
6. **The ablative** is the case of adverbial relation.
7. **The locative** is the case of the place where.

## DECLENSIONS

31. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem characteristic*). For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	STEM CHARACTERISTIC	GENITIVE SINGULAR
I.	ā (a)	ae
II.	o	i
III.	a consonant or i	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	ē	eī

a. The first, second, and fifth declensions are called vowel declensions; the third and fourth, which really form but one, the consonant declension, i and u being considered semiconsonants.

32. The case endings in combination with the stem characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations for the five declensions:

SINGULAR					
	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
NOM.	a	us; wanting; um	s; wanting	us; ū	ēs
GEN.	ae	ī	is	ūs	eī, ē
DAT.	ae	ō	ī	uī; ū	eī, ē
ACC.	am	um	em, im	um, ū	em
VOC.	a	e; wanting; um	s; wanting	us, ū	ēs
ABL.	ā	ō	e, ī	ū	ē

PLURAL					
	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
NOM. VOC.	ae	ī, a	ēs; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs
GEN.	ārum	ōrum	um, ium	uum	ērum
DAT. ABL.	īs	īs	ibus	ubus, ibus	ēbus
ACC.	ās	ōs, a	ēs, īs; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs

33. **General Rules of Declension.** a. The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of the second declension, when the nominative ends in *us*.

b. In the third, fourth, and fifth declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike in the plural.

c. Neuter substantives have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; in the plural these cases always end in *a*.

d. The dative and ablative plural are alike in all declensions.

## FIRST DECLENSION

34. The stem ends in *ā*. The nominative-vocative singular is the simple stem with shortened stem vowel and no case ending.

<b>Sg. NOM.</b>	<b>terra, f.,</b> ( <i>a, the</i> ) <i>land</i>	<b>Pl. terrae,</b> ( <i>the</i> ) <i>lands</i>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>terrae,</b> <i>of (a, the) land, (a, the) land's</i>	<b>terrārum,</b> <i>of (the) lands, (the) lands'</i>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>terrae,</b> <i>to, for (a, the) land</i>	<b>terrīs,</b> <i>to, for (the) lands</i>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>terram,</b> ( <i>a, the</i> ) <i>land</i>	<b>terrās,</b> ( <i>the</i> ) <i>lands</i>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>terra,</b> <i>O land! land!</i>	<b>terrae,</b> <i>O lands! lands!</i>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>terrā,</b> <i>from, with, by, in, on, at (a, the) land</i>	<b>terrīs,</b> <i>from, with, by, in, on, at (the) lands</i>

a. The locative singular of the first declension is like the genitive: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **militiae**, *abroad* (i. e., engaged in warfare).

b. The genitive singular sometimes ends in **āi** in poetry; the genitive plural sometimes takes the form **um** instead of **ārum**.

c. The ending **ābus** is found (along with the regular ending) in the dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, *daughter*.

**35. Rule of Gender.** Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except when they refer to males.

## SECOND DECLENSION

**36.** The stem ends in **o**, which in the classical period usually becomes **u**. In combination with the case endings it frequently disappears altogether. In the vocative singular (except in neuters) it becomes **e**.

a. The nominative ends in **s** (m., f.) and **m** (n.). But many masculine stems in which the original final vowel, **o**, was preceded by **r** have dropped the **us** of the nominative and the **e** of the vocative, and inserted **e** before the **r**, if it was preceded by a consonant; thus original **pueros** became **puer**, *boy*, and **libros** became **liber**, *book*.

b. The final **o** was often retained after **u** or **v** until the first century A.D.; as **servos**, *slave*.

**37. Animus**, *spirit*; **puer**, *boy*; **vir**, *man*: **bellum**, *war*, are declined as follows:

<b>Sg. NOM.</b>	<b>animus, m.</b>	<b>puer, m.</b>	<b>vir, m.</b>	<b>bellum, n.</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>animī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bellī</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>animō</b>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>bellō</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>animum</b>	<b>puerum</b>	<b>virum</b>	<b>bellum</b>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>anime</b>	<b>puer</b>	<b>vir</b>	<b>bellum</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>animō</b>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>bellō</b>
<b>Pl. NOM.</b>	<b>animī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bella</b>
<b>GEN.</b>	<b>animōrum</b>	<b>puerōrum</b>	<b>virōrum</b>	<b>bellōrum</b>
<b>DAT.</b>	<b>animīs</b>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>
<b>ACC.</b>	<b>animōs</b>	<b>puerōs</b>	<b>virōs</b>	<b>bella</b>
<b>VOC.</b>	<b>animī</b>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>bella</b>
<b>ABL.</b>	<b>animīs</b>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>



a. Words in **ius** (**ium**) have the genitive singular for the most part in **ī** until the first century A.D., without change of accent: **inge nī** (nom., **ingenium**), of *genius*; **Vergi'li**, of *Vergil*.

b. Proper names in **ius** have the vocative in **ī**, without change of accent: **Antō'nī**, **Tu'lli**, **Gā'ī**, **Vergi'li**. **Filius**, *son*, and **genius**, *genius*, form their vocative in like manner: **fili**, **genī**. In solemn discourse **us** of the nominative is employed also for the vocative. So regularly **deus**, *O god!*

c. The locative singular ends in **ī** like the genitive, as **Rhodī**, at *Rhodes*; **Tarentī**, at *Tarentum*.

d. In the genitive plural **um** instead of **orum** is often found.

e. The locative plural is identical with the ablative: **Delphis**, at *Delphi*.

f. The declension of **deus**, m., *god*, is irregular:

Sg.	NOM.	<b>deus</b>	Pl.	<b>dī, deī, diī</b>
	GEN.	<b>deī</b>		<b>deōrum, deum</b>
	DAT.	<b>deō</b>		<b>dīs, deīs, diīs</b>
	ACC.	<b>deum</b>		<b>deōs</b>
	VOC.	<b>deus</b>		<b>dī, deī, diī</b>
	ABL.	<b>deō</b>		<b>dīs, deīs, diīs</b>

**38. Rule of Gender.** Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** or **r** are masculine; in **um** neuter.

a. **Exceptions.** Feminine are: (1) cities and islands, as **Corinthus**, **Samus**; (2) most trees, as **fāgus**, *beech*; **pirus**, *pear tree*; (3) **alvus**, *belly*; **colus**, *distaff*; **humus**, *ground*; **vannus**, *wheat fan*; (4) many Greek nouns, as **atomus**, *atom*.

Neuters are: **pelagus**, *sea*; **vīrus**, *venom*; **vulgus**, *the rabble*.

### THIRD DECLENSION

**39.** The stem ends in a consonant or in the close vowels (or semi-vowels) **i** and **ū**. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem characteristic:

#### I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Liquid stems*, ending in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**.
2. *Sibilant stems*, ending in **s**.
3. *Mute stems* {
  - a. Ending in **b**, **p**.
  - b. Ending in **g**, **c**.
  - c. Ending in **d**, **t**.

#### II. i-STEMS

**40.** 1. The nominative singular, masculine and feminine, case ending is **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, and combines with **c** or **g** to form **x**. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem. The vocative of the third declension is always like the nominative.

2. Neuters always form the nominative without the addition of a case ending and the accusative and vocative cases in both numbers are like the nominative. The nominative plural ends in **a**.

## I. CONSONANT STEMS

### 41.

#### 1. LIQUID STEMS IN *l*

Form the nominative without the case ending **s**. These comprise:

a. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel; thus:

Sg. NOM.	cōsul, m., <i>consul</i>	Pl. cōsulēs, <i>consuls</i>
GEN.	cōsulis	cōsulum
DAT.	cōsulī	cōsulibus
ACC.	cōsulem	cōsulēs
VOC.	cōsul	cōsulēs
ABL.	cōsule	cōsulibus

b. Two neuter substantives with stems in **ll**, one of which is lost in the nominative: **mel**, **mellis**, *honey*; **fel**, **fellis**, *gall*.

42. **Rules of Gender.** Third declension nouns having their stems in **l** are regularly masculine; those having stems in **ll** are neuter.

### 43.

#### 2. LIQUID STEMS IN *n*

Most masculine and feminine stems form the nominative singular by dropping the stem characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**. Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem characteristic in the nominative and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

	MASCULINE		NEUTER
Sg. NOM.	sermō, m., <i>conversation</i>	homō, m., <i>man</i>	nōmen, n., <i>name</i>
GEN.	sermōnis	hominis	nōminis
DAT.	sermōnī	hominī	nōminī
ACC.	sermōnem	hominem	nōmen
VOC.	sermō	homō	nōmen
ABL.	sermōne	homine	nōmine
Pl. NOM.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
GEN.	sermōnum	hominum	nōminum
DAT.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus
ACC.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
VOC.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina
ABL.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus

44. **Rules of Gender.** 1. Third declension nouns ending in **ō** are masculine, except those ending in **dō**, **gō**, and **iō**, which are mostly feminine.

2. Third declension nouns in **en** (**men**) are regularly neuter.

45.

3. LIQUID STEMS IN *r*Form nominative without *s*.

Sg. NOM.	soror, f., <i>sister</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>
GEN.	sorōris	patris
DAT.	sorōrī	patri
ACC.	sorōrem	patrem
VOC.	soror	pater
ABL.	sorōre	patre
Pl. NOM.	sorōrēs	patrēs
GEN.	sorōrum	patrum
DAT.	sorōribus	patribus
ACC.	sorōrēs	patrēs
VOC.	sorōrēs	patrēs
ABL.	sorōribus	patribus

*a. Imber, shower; linter, skiff; ūter, bag; venter, belly*, have the genitive plural in *ium*. *Imber* has also sometimes the ablative singular in *ī*.

46. Rules of Gender. 1. Third declension nouns in *er* and *or* are usually masculine. 2. Third declension nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter.

47.

## 4. SIBILANT STEMS

The nominative has no additional *s*, and in masculines changes *e* to *i*, and in neuters *e* or *o* to *u* before *s*.

In the oblique cases, the *s* of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into *r*.

Sg. NOM. ACC. VOC.	genus, n., <i>kind</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>
GEN.	generis	corporis
DAT.	generī	corpori
ABL.	genere	corpore
Pl. NOM. ACC. VOC.	genera	corpora
GEN.	generum	corporum
DAT. ABL.	generibus	corporibus

48. Rules of Gender. 1. Masculine are third declension nouns in *is* (*eris*), and *ōs* (*ōris*).

2. Neuter are third declension nouns in *us* (*eris, oris*) and in *ūs* (*ūris*).

49.

## 5. MUTE STEMS

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the nominative. Before *s* a *p* or *b* is retained, a *c* or *g* combines with it to form *x*, a *t* or *d* is dropped.

*a.* Most polysyllabic mute stems change their stem vowel *i* to *e* in the nominative.

50. Stems in *p* or *b*

Sg. NOM.	princeps, m., <i>leader</i>	Pl. principēs
GEN.	principis	principum
DAT.	principi	principibus
ACC.	principem	principēs
VOC.	princeps	principēs
ABL.	principe	principibus

51. Stems in *c* or *g*

Sg. NOM.	dux, m., <i>leader</i>	Pl. ducēs
GEN.	ducis	ducum
DAT.	duci	ducibus
ACC.	ducem	ducēs
VOC.	dux	ducēs
ABL.	duce	ducibus

52. Stems in *t* or *d*

Sg. NOM.	comes, m., f., <i>companion</i>	Pl. comitēs
GEN.	comitis	comitum
DAT.	comiti	comitibus
ACC.	comitem	comitēs
VOC.	comes	comitēs
ABL.	comite	comitibus
Sg. NOM.	pēs, m., <i>foot</i>	Pl. pedēs
GEN.	pedis	pedum
DAT.	pedī	pedibus
ACC.	pedem	pedēs
VOC.	pēs	pedēs
ABL.	pede	pedibus
Sg. NOM.	caput, n., <i>head</i>	Pl. capita
GEN.	capitis	capitum
DAT.	capiti	capitibus
ACC.	caput	capita
VOC.	caput	capita
ABL.	capite	capitibus

a. The following mute stems have certain irregular forms: **cor** (gen. **cordis**), *heart*; **nox** (gen. **noctis**), *night*; **lac** (gen. **lactis**), *milk*.

53. Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the genitive plural in **ium**: **urbium**, *of cities*; **arcium**, *of citadels*; **montium**, *of mountains*; **noctium**, *of nights*.

a. Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: **dōtium**, *of dowries*; **litium**, *of lawsuits*; **faucium**, *of throats*; **fraudum** (**ium**), *of frauds*; **laudum** (**ium**), *of praises*; but **vōcum**, *of voices*.

b. Most monosyllabic stems, with characteristic preceded by a short



vowel, have **um**: **opum**, of resources; but **fac-ium**, of torches; **nuc-um (ium)**, of nuts; **niv-ium (um)**, of snows.

c. Polysyllabic stems in **nt** and **rt** have more frequently **ium**, as **clien-tium (um)**, of clients; **cohortium (um)**, of companies.

d. Polysyllabic feminine stems in **āt** have either **um** or **ium**, as **aetātum** or **aetātium**, of ages; **civitātum** or **civitātium**, of states; the rest have usually **um**. **Palūs**, marsh, has usually **palūdium**.

**54. Rule of Gender.** Mute stems, with nominative in **s**, are usually feminine.

## II. **i**-STEMS

**55.** Masculines and feminines form their nominative in **s**.

a. Some feminines change the stem vowel **i** to **ē** in the nominative.

b. Neuters change the stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative. This **e** is generally dropped after **l** and **r** in polysyllabic neuters.

c. Stems in **i** have genitive plural in **ium**.

d. Neuter stems in **i** have the ablative singular in **ī** and nominative plural in **ia**.

<b>56. Sg.</b>	<b>NOM.</b> <b>hostis</b> , m., f., <i>enemy</i>	<b>mare</b> , n., <i>sea</i>	<b>animal</b> , n., <i>living being</i>
	<b>GEN.</b> <b>hostis</b>	<b>maris</b>	<b>animālis</b>
	<b>DAT.</b> <b>hostī</b>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>
	<b>ACC.</b> <b>hostem</b>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
	<b>VOC.</b> <b>hostis</b>	<b>mare</b>	<b>animal</b>
	<b>ABL.</b> <b>hoste</b>	<b>marī</b>	<b>animālī</b>
<b>Pl.</b>	<b>NOM.</b> <b>hostēs</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
	<b>GEN.</b> <b>hostium</b>	<b>marium</b>	<b>animālium</b>
	<b>DAT.</b> <b>hostibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>
	<b>ACC.</b> <b>hostēs (īs)</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
	<b>VOC.</b> <b>hostēs</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animālia</b>
	<b>ABL.</b> <b>hostibus</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālibus</b>

a. The accusative singular ending **im** is found always in **sitis**, *thirst*; **tussis**, *cough*; **vis**, *strength*; and in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Tiberis**, *Tiber*; usually in **febris**, *fever*; **puppis**, *stern of ship*; **restis**, *cable*; **secūris**, *ax*; **turris**, *tower*; occasionally in **clāvis**, *key*; **crātis**, *hurdle*; **cutis**, *skin*; **messis**, *harvest*; **nāvis**, *ship*.

b. The ablative in **ī** is found in **i**-stem nouns that regularly have **im** in the accusative (except perhaps **restis**, *rope, cable*); also not infrequently in **amnis**, *river*; **avis**, *bird*; **canālis**, *canal*; **civis**, *citizen*; **classis**, *fleet*; **finis**, *end*; **fūstis**, *club*; **ignis**, *fire*; **orbis**, *circle*; **unguis**, *claw*; occasionally in **anguis**, *snake*; **bilis**, *bile*; **clāvis**, *key*; **collis**, *hill*; **corbis**, *basket*; **messis**, *harvest*; regularly in neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, except in **rēte**, *net*; and in the proper nouns **Caere**, **Praeneste**.

c. In the genitive plural instead of the ending *ium*, *um* is found always in *canis*, *dog*; *juvenis*, *young man*; *pānis*, *bread*; *senex*, *old man*; *struēs*, *heap*; *volucris*, *bird*; usually in *apis*, *bee*; *sēdēs*, *seat*; *vātēs*, *bard*; frequently in *mēnsis*, *month*.

d. The accusative plural ending *is* is found frequently in the classical period along with *ēs*.

**57. Rule of Gender.** a. *i*-stems, with nominative in *ēs*, are feminine, unless they refer to males; those with nominative in *is* are partly masculine, partly feminine.

b. *i*-stems, with nominative in *e*, *al*, *ar*, are neuter.

c. The rest are feminine.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION

**58.** The fourth declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in *u*.

a. The endings are the same as those of *i*-stems of the third declension.

b. In the genitive and ablative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural (sometimes, too, in the dative singular), the *u* of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

c. In the dative and ablative plural *u* generally becomes *i* before the ending *bus*.

**59.**

	MASCULINE	NEUTER
Sg. NOM.	<i>cāsus</i> , m., <i>chance</i>	<i>cornū</i> , n., <i>horn</i>
GEN.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornūs</i>
DAT.	<i>cāsuī</i> ( <i>cāsū</i> )	<i>cornū</i>
ACC.	<i>cāsum</i>	<i>cornū</i>
VOC.	<i>cāsus</i>	<i>cornū</i>
ABL.	<i>cāsū</i>	<i>cornū</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
GEN.	<i>cāsum</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
DAT.	<i>cāsibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
ACC.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
VOC.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
ABL.	<i>cāsibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

**60.** *Domus*, f., *house*, is declined: sg. gen. *domūs*; dat. *domuī*; acc. *domum*; voc. *domus*; abl. *domō*; loc. *domī* (*domuī*); pl. nom. *domūs*; gen. *domōrum*; dat.-abl. *domibus*; acc. *domōs*, *domūs*.

**61. Rule of Gender.** Fourth declension nouns in *us* are generally masculine; those in *ū* are neuter.

a. But feminine are *acus*, *needle*; *domus*, *house*; *īdūs* (pl.), *the ides*; *manus*, *hand*; *penus*, *vituals*; *porticus*, *piazza*; *tribus*, *tribe*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

62. The stem ends in **ē**; the nominative in **ēs**.

a. In the genitive and dative singular the stem vowel **e** is shortened after a consonant.

b. The accusative singular always ends in **em**; 22.

c. The ending in the genitive singular is that of the second declension, **i**; the other endings are those of the third declension.

63.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE
Sg. NOM.	<b>diēs</b> , m., f., <i>day</i>	<b>rēs</b> , f., <i>thing</i>
GEN.	<b>diēi</b> ( <b>diē</b> )	<b>rei</b>
DAT.	<b>diēi</b> ( <b>diē</b> )	<b>rei</b>
ACC.	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>
VOC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>
Pl. NOM.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
GEN.	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>
DAT.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>
ACC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
VOC.	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>
ABL.	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>

a. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are rarely found except in **diēs** and **rēs**.

b. Many words of the fifth declension have a parallel form, which follows the first declension, as **mollitiēs** or **mollitia**, *softness*. Where this is the case, forms of the fifth declension are usually found only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular.

64. **Rule of Gender.** Fifth declension nouns are feminine except **diēs** which in the singular is either masculine or feminine, and in the plural masculine, and **meridiēs**, *midday*, which is always masculine.

## DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS

65. Greek nouns, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized and declined regularly according to their stem characteristic. Some Greek nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the singular.

a. In the plural the declension is usually regular, but the third declension often shows **ēs** in the nominative and **ās** in the accusative. In the genitive plural the endings **ōn** and **eōn** are found in the titles of books, as **Georgicōn**, *of the Georgics*; **Metamorphōseōn**, *of the Metamorphoses*.

## 66.

## FIRST DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Pēnelopē	Aenēās	Anchisēs
GEN.	Pēnelopēs	Aenēae	Anchisae
DAT.	Pēnelopae	Aenēae	Anchisae
ACC.	Pēnelopēn	Aenēam (ān)	Anchisēn (am)
VOC.	Pēnelopē	Aenēā	Anchisē (ā, a)
ABL.	Pēnelopā	Aenēā	Anchisā

## 67.

## SECOND DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Dēlos (us)	Īlion (um)	Panthūs	Androgeōs (us)
GEN.	Dēli	Īlii	Panthī	Androgeī (eō)
DAT.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō
ACC.	Dēlon (um)	Īlion (um)	Panthūn	Androgeōn (ō, ōna)
VOC.	Dēle	Īlion (um)	Panthū	Androgeōs
ABL.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō

## 68.

## THIRD DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Solōn (Solō)	āēr, air	Xenophōn	Atlās
GEN.	Solōnis	āeris	Xenophōntis	Atlantis
DAT.	Solōnī	āerī	Xenophōnti	Atlanti
ACC.	Solōna (em)	āera (em)	Xenophōnta (em)	Atlanta
VOC.	Solōn	āēr	Xenophōn	Atlā
ABL.	Solōne	āere	Xenophōnte	Atlante

Sg. NOM.	Thalēs	Paris	hērōs
GEN.	Thal-ētis (is)	Paridis (os)	hērōis
DAT.	Thal-ēti (ī)	Paridī (ī)	hērōi
ACC.	Thal-ēta (ēn, em)	Par-ida (im, in)	hērōa (em)
VOC.	Thalē	Pari (Paris)	hērōs
ABL.	Thalē	Paride	hērōe

## 69.

## MIXED DECLENSIONS

	II AND III	II AND III	II AND III
Sg. NOM.	Orpheus	Athōs	Oedipūs
GEN.	Orpheī (ēī)	Athō (ōnis)	Oedip-odis (ī)
DAT.	Orpheō (eī)	Athō	Oedipidī
ACC.	Orpheum (ea)	Athō (ōn, ōnem)	Oedip-um (oda)
VOC.	Orpheu	Athōs	Oedipe
ABL.	Orpheō	Athōne	Oedip-ide (ō)

	II AND III	II AND III	II AND III
Sg. NOM.	Achillēs (eus)	Sōcratēs	Dīdō
GEN.	Achillis (e)ī, eos	Sōcratis (ī)	Dīdūs (ōnis)
DAT.	Achillī	Sōcrati	Dīdō (ōnī)
ACC.	Achillēm (ea, ēn)	Sōcratēn (em)	Dīdō (ōnem)
VOC.	Achillēs (ē, eu, e)	Sōcratē (es)	Dīdō
ABL.	Achille, (ī)	Sōcrate	Dīdō (ōne)



## ADJECTIVES

**70. The Adjective** adds a quality to its noun or pronoun. Adjectives have the same declension as nouns, and according to the stem characteristic are of the first and second or third declension.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

**71.** Stems end in *o* for masculine and neuter, *ā* for feminine; nominative in *us* (*er*), *a*, *um*. The same variations in termination occur as in nouns, except that adjectives in *ius* form the genitive and vocative singular regularly. See 37, *a*.

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<i>bonus, good</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
GEN.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
DAT.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
ACC.	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
VOC.	<i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
ABL.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
GEN.	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
ACC.	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
VOC.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
ABL.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
Sg. NOM.	<i>miser, wretched</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
GEN.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
DAT.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
ACC.	<i>miserum</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
VOC.	<i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
ABL.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
GEN.	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
ACC.	<i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>misera</i>
VOC.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
ABL.	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
Sg. NOM.	<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
GEN.	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
DAT.	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
ACC.	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
VOC.	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
ABL.	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
GEN.	<i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
ACC.	<i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
VOC.	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
ABL.	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>

*a.* All participles ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, are inflected like *bonus*.

72. In poetry we find **um** alongside of **ōrum** and **ārum** in the genitive plural.

a. In the dative and ablative plural **iis** from adjectives in **ius** is often contracted to **is** especially in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

73. The so-called **Pronominal Adjectives** show certain peculiarities in the genitive and dative singular. These adjectives are: **alter**, *one of the two*; **alteruter** (a combination of **alter** and **uter**), *either of the two*; **alius**, *other*; **neuter**, *neither*; **nūllus**, *none*; **sōlus**, *sole*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **ūllus**, *any*; **ūnus**, *one*; **uter**, *which of the two*.

74.	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<b>alter</b> , <i>one of two</i>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
GEN.	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>
DAT.	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī</b>
ACC.	<b>alterum</b>	<b>alteram</b>	<b>alterum</b>
ABL.	<b>alterō</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterō</b>
Sg. NOM.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>
GEN.	<b>alius</b>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>alius</b>
DAT.	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>
ACC.	<b>aliūm</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>
ABL.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>
Sg. NOM.	<b>ūllus</b> , <i>any</i>	<b>ūlla</b>	<b>ūllum</b>
GEN.	<b>ūllius</b>	<b>ūllius</b>	<b>ūllius</b>
DAT.	<b>ūllī</b>	<b>ūllī</b>	<b>ūllī</b>
ACC.	<b>ūllum</b>	<b>ūllam</b>	<b>ūllum</b>
ABL.	<b>ūllō</b>	<b>ūllā</b>	<b>ūllō</b>
Sg. NOM.	<b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>
GEN.	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>
DAT.	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>
ACC.	<b>utrum</b>	<b>utram</b>	<b>utrum</b>
ABL.	<b>utrō</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrō</b>

Like **uter** is declined **neuter**; like **ūllus** are declined **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **ūnus**. The plural is regular.

a. The genitive **alius** is very rare, and its place is usually taken by **alterius** or **aliēnus**.

b. The **i** of the ending **iūs** (except in **aliūs**) is often shortened in poetry. This is usually the case with **alter**, and regularly in the compounds of **uter**; as **utriusque**.

c. In the compound **alteruter** we usually find both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

d. **Alius** has its nominative and accusative singular neuter irregularly **aliud**.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

75. The declension of the adjectives of the third declension follows the rules given for nouns. Most adjectives of the third declension are vowel stems in *i*, with two (rarely three) endings in the nominative. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the nominative.

## ADJECTIVES OF TWO OR THREE ENDINGS

76. These have (except stems in *ri*) one ending in the nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter. Most stems in *i* form the masculine and feminine alike, with nominative in *s*; but the nominative neuter weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. Compare **mare**, *sea*.

*a.* Several stems in *i*, preceded by *r* (**cr**, **tr**, **br**), form the nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting short *e* before the *r*, as, stem, **ācri**, *sharp*; nom., **ācer** (m.), **ācris** (f.), **ācre** (n.).

77.		M., F.	N.
	Sg. Nom.	omnis, <i>all</i>	omne
	Gen.	omnis	omnis
	Dat.	omni	omni
	Acc.	omnem	omne
	Voc.	omnis	omne
	Abl.	omni	omni
	Pl. Nom.	omnēs	omnia
	Gen.	omnium	omnium
	Dat.	omnibus	omnibus
	Acc.	omnēs (is)	omnia
	Voc.	omnēs	omnia
	Abl.	omnibus	omnibus

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. Nom.	ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Pl. Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrēs (is)	ācrēs (is)	ācria
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

78. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) end with **l**, **r**, **s**; **p**, **b**; **t**, **d**; **c**, **g**.

79. Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

80. The consonant stem adjectives have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the accusative singular and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

81. Consonant stem adjectives follow in part the declension of *i*-stem nouns; thus:

1. In the ablative singular they have *ī* or *e*; when used as nouns, commonly *e*.

a. The participles, as such, have *e*; but used as nouns or adjectives, either *e* or *ī*, with a tendency to *ī*.

2. In the neuter plural they have *ia*; except all comparatives (91), *vetus*, *old*, and *ūber*, *fertile*, which have *vetera* and *ūbera*. Many have no neuter.

3. In the genitive plural they have *ium*, when the stem characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; *um*, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles regularly have *ium*.

82.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
Sg.	NOM. <i>fēlix</i> , <i>lucky</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	Sg. <i>recēns</i> , <i>recent</i>	<i>recēns</i>
	GEN. <i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>recentis</i>	<i>recentis</i>
	DAT. <i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>recentī</i>	<i>recentī</i>
	ACC. <i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>recentem</i>	<i>recēns</i>
	VOC. <i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>recēns</i>
	ABL. <i>fēlicī</i> (e)	<i>fēlicī</i> (e)	<i>recentī</i> (e)	<i>recentī</i> (e)
Pl.	NOM. <i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	Pl. <i>recentēs</i>	<i>recentia</i>
	GEN. <i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>recentium</i>	<i>recentium</i>
	DAT. <i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>
	ACC. <i>fēlicēs</i> (is)	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>recentēs</i> (is)	<i>recentia</i>
	VOC. <i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>recentēs</i>	<i>recentia</i>
	ABL. <i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>
Sg.	NOM. <i>vetus</i> , <i>old</i>	<i>vetus</i>	Sg. <i>amāns</i> , <i>loving</i>	<i>amāns</i>
	GEN. <i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>amantis</i>
	DAT. <i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>amanti</i>	<i>amanti</i>
	ACC. <i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>amantem</i>	<i>amāns</i>
	VOC. <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amāns</i>
	ABL. <i>vetere</i> (ī)	<i>vetere</i> (ī)	<i>amante</i> (ī)	<i>amante</i> (ī)
Pl.	NOM. <i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	Pl. <i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
	GEN. <i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>amantium</i>	<i>amantium</i>
	DAT. <i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>
	ACC. <i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	<i>amantēs</i> (īs)	<i>amantia</i>
	VOC. <i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
	ABL. <i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>



a. In the poets, **e** is often found for **i** in the ablative singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere**, *poor*; **vetere**, *old*; and frequently **divite**, *rich*; **sapiente**, *wise*.

b. In the nominative and accusative plural **is** for **ēs** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of this accusative are found in Cicero. In the case of participles **is** is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace.

c. In the genitive plural **cicur**, *tame*; **vetus**, *old*; **dives**, *rich*, have **um** instead of **ium**; so also many compound adjectives.

d. In the poets and in later writers, **um** is not infrequently found where classical prose uses **ium**.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

83. The Degrees of Comparison are: positive, comparative, and superlative.

84. The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **ius** for the neuter.

85. The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **issimus**, **a**, **um** (earlier **issumus**).

86. Vowel stems, before forming the comparative and superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

87. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>altus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> , <i>high</i>	<b>altior</b> , <b>ius</b> , <i>higher</i>	<b>altissimus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> , <i>highest</i>
<b>fortis</b> , <b>e</b> , <i>brave</i>	<b>fortior</b> , <b>ius</b> , <i>braver</i>	<b>fortissimus</b> , <i>bravest</i>
<b>fēlix</b> , <i>happy</i>	<b>fēlicior</b> , <b>ius</b> , <i>happier</i>	<b>fēlicissimus</b> , <i>happiest</i>
<b>recēns</b> , <i>recent</i>	<b>recentior</b> , <b>ius</b> , <i>more recent</i>	<b>recentissimus</b> , <i>most recent</i>

88. Peculiarities of Comparison. Adjectives in **er** add the superlative ending **rimus** directly to the nominative masculine. The comparative has the regular formation. See 84.

89. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>miser</b> , <b>era</b> , <b>erum</b> , <i>wretched</i>	<b>miserior</b> , <b>miserius</b>	<b>miserrimus</b>
<b>celer</b> , <b>eris</b> , <b>ere</b> , <i>swift</i>	<b>celerior</b> , <b>celerius</b>	<b>celerrimus</b>
<b>ācer</b> , <b>ācris</b> , <b>ācre</b> , <i>sharp</i>	<b>ācrior</b> , <b>ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimus</b>

a. Six adjectives in **ilis** add **limus** (earlier **lumus**) to the stem, after dropping **i**, to form the superlative: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; and **humilis**, *low*.

Pos. <b>facilis</b>	Comp. <b>facilior</b> , <b>ius</b>	Sup. <b>facillimus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b>
---------------------	------------------------------------	---

90. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as **amāns**, *loving*; **amantior**, *more loving*; **amantissimus**, *most loving*; **apertus**, *open*; **apertior**, **apertissimus**.

91. The superlative follows the declension of adjectives of three endings of the first and second declensions; 71. The comparative is declined according to the third declension, thus:

	M., F.	N.		M., F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	altior, <i>higher</i>	altius	Pl.	altiōrēs	altiōra
GEN.	altiōris	altiōris		altiōrum	altiōrum
DAT.	altiōrī	altiōrī		altiōribus	altiōribus
ACC.	altiōrem	altius		altiōrēs (īs)	altiōra
VOC.	altior	altius		altiōrēs	altiōra
ABL.	altiōre (ī)	altiōre (ī)		altiōribus	altiōribus

92. Irregular Comparison. Certain adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus
malus, <i>bad</i>	pejor, pejus	pessimus
magnus, <i>great</i>	major, majus	maximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>	Sg. plūs (no dat. nor abl.)	plūrimus
	Pl. plūrēs, plūra	
	complūrēs, complūra (ia)	
nequam, <i>worthless</i>	nequior, nequius	nequissimus
frūgī (indecl.), <i>frugal</i>	frūgālior	frūgālissimus

- a.* For the pronunciation of **major** and **pejor** = **majjor**, **pejjor**, see 6, *b.*  
*b.* The older form of the superlative ended in **umus**.

## ADVERBS

93. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of adjectival, nominal or pronominal stems.

94. The cases from which they are derived are principally the accusative and the ablative.

### ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

95. Many adverbs are formed from the ablative case of adjectives in **us**: **tūtō**, *safely*; **prīmō**, *at first*.

*a.* Many adverbs are formed from an old ablative form (ē) of adjectives in **us** and **er**: **altē**, *loftily*; **pulchrē**, *beautifully*.

*b.* Many adverbs are formed from accusative singular neuter adjectival and pronominal stems: **multum**, *much*; **facile**, *easily*. This is true of all comparatives: **facilius**, *more easily*. To the comparatives belong also **magis**, *more*; **nimis**, *too*.

*c.* Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives and participles of the third declension by the addition of **ter** (**iter**) to the stem; stems in **nt** dropping the **t**, and stems in **c** or **g** inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending: **fortiter**, *bravely*; **ferōciter**, *wildly*; **prūdenter**, *prudently*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

96. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative neuter of the comparative of the adjective. See 95, *b*. The superlative ends in *issimē*, *errimē*, *illimē* (earlier *issumē*, *errumē*, *illumē*), or irregularly, according to the superlative of the adjective. See 87, 88, 89, 92.

97. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altē, loftily</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altissimē</i>
<i>pulchrē, beautifully</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>miserē, poorly</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>fortiter, bravely</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>audācter, boldly</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>
<i>tūtō, safely</i>	<i>tūtius</i>	<i>tūtissimē</i>
<i>facile, easily</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, ill</i>	<i>pejus</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>[parvus], small</i>	<i>minus, less</i>	<i>minimē, least</i>
<i>[magnus], great</i>	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>maximē, most</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>citō, quickly</i>	<i>citius</i>	<i>citissimē</i>
<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saeppissimē</i>
<i>nūper, recently</i>	—	<i>nūperrimē</i>
<i>satis, enough</i>	<i>satius, better</i>	

## NUMERALS

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

98. The Cardinal Numerals, as *ūnus, one; duo, two; decem, ten*, answer the question *quot, how many?* and are the numbers used in counting.

*a.* The Ordinal Numerals, as *primus (ūnus), first; secundus (alter), second; decimus, tenth*, answer the question *quotus, which one in the series?*

99. The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus, one; duo, two; trēs, three*; the hundreds beginning with *ducentī, two hundred*; and the plural *milia, thousands*, which forms *milium* and *milibus*.

	M.	F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>duo, two</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, three</i>	<i>tria</i>
GEN.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
DAT.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
ACC.	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs (trīs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
ABL.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

*a.* For the declension of *ūnus* see 73–74.

100. The Distributive Numerals, as *singulī, one each; binī, two each; denī, ten each*, answer the question *quotēnī, how many each?*

101. **Numeral Adverbs**, as *semel*, *once*; *bis*, *twice*; *ter*, *thrice*, answer the question *quotiēns*, *how often?*

## PRONOUNS

102. A **Pronoun** is a word that may be substituted for a noun. Latin pronouns may be divided into six classes: personal (including reflexive), demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

- a. All but the personal pronouns may be used as pronominal adjectives.
- b. The possessive adjectives are often classified as possessive pronouns.

### A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

#### 103. The Personal Pronoun of the First Person.

Sg. NOM. <i>ego</i> , <i>I</i>	Pl. <i>nōs</i> , <i>we</i>
GEN. <i>meī</i> , <i>of me</i>	<i>nostrī</i> , <i>nostrum</i> , <i>of us</i>
DAT. <i>mihi</i> ( <i>mī</i> ), <i>to, for me</i>	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>to, for us</i>
ACC. <i>mē</i> , <i>me</i>	<i>nōs</i> , <i>us</i>
ABL. <i>mē</i> , <i>from, with, by me</i>	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>from, with, by us</i>

- a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. <i>meus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , (voc. <i>m.</i> , <i>mī</i> ), <i>mine, my own</i>	Pl. <i>noster</i> , <i>nostra</i> , <i>nostrum</i> , <i>our(s)</i> , <i>our own</i>
--	--

- b. The oblique cases of *ego* may also be used with reflexive force: *meī*, *of myself*, etc.

#### 104. The Personal Pronoun of the Second Person.

Sg. NOM. VOC. <i>tū</i> , <i>you</i>	Pl. <i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i>
GEN. <i>tui</i> , <i>of you</i>	<i>vestri</i> , <i>vestrum</i> , <i>of you</i>
DAT. <i>tibi</i> , <i>to, for you</i>	<i>vōbīs</i> , <i>to, for you</i>
ACC. <i>tē</i> , <i>you</i>	<i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i>
ABL. <i>tē</i> , <i>from, with, by you</i>	<i>vōbīs</i> , <i>from, with, by you</i>

- a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. <i>tuus</i> , <i>a, um</i> , <i>your(s)</i> , <i>your own</i>	Pl. <i>vester</i> , <i>vestra</i> , <i>vestrum</i> , <i>your(s)</i> , <i>your own</i>
---	--

- b. The oblique cases of *tū* may also be used with reflexive force: *tui*, *of yourself*, etc.

#### 105. The Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

- a. *Is*, *ea*, *id*, *he*, *she*, *it*, 107, used also as a demonstrative, *this*, *that*, is the ordinary form of the third personal pronoun. It lacks the possessive adjective.

- b. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a nominative. See 106.



## 106. The Personal (Reflexive) Pronoun of the Third Person.

Sg. NOM. —	Pl. —
GEN. <i>suī</i> , of <i>him(self)</i> , <i>her(self)</i> , <i>it(self)</i>	<i>suī</i> , of <i>them(selves)</i>
DAT. <i>sibī</i> , to, for, <i>him(self)</i> , <i>her(self)</i> , <i>it(self)</i>	<i>sibī</i> , to, for <i>them(selves)</i>
ACC. <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , <i>him(self)</i> , <i>her(self)</i> , <i>it(self)</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , <i>them(selves)</i>
ABL. <i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , from, with, by <i>him(self)</i> , <i>her(self)</i> , <i>it(self)</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , from, with, by <i>them(selves)</i>

a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjective, *suus*, *a*, *um*, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*); *their* (*own*), *theirs*.

b. The enclitic *-met* is sometimes added to certain forms of the personal pronouns; as *egomet*, *I myself*.

c. The enclitic *-pte* is sometimes added to the ablative singular of the possessive adjective; as *suōpte ingeniō*, *by his own genius*.

## 107. B. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

1. *is*, *this*, *that*; *he*, *she*, *it*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>
GEN.	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>
DAT.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>
ACC.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>
ABL.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>iī</i> , <i>eī</i> , <i>ī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>
ACC.	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL.	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>	<i>iīs</i> , <i>eīs</i> , <i>īs</i>

a. For the pronunciation of *ejus* (= *ejjus*) see 6, b.

b. This pronoun is often used as a third personal pronoun, *he*, *she*, *it*;

105. a.

2. *idem*, (*is* + *dem*), *the same*

Sg.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
GEN.	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>
DAT.	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>
ACC.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
ABL.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
Pl.			
NOM.	<i>idem</i> , <i>eidem</i> , <i>iidem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>
ACC.	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
ABL.	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>	<i>isdem</i> , <i>eisdem</i> , <i>iisdem</i>

a. For the pronunciation of *ejusdem* = *ejjusdem*, see 6, b.

3. *hic, this*

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Sg.</b> NOM.	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc
<b>Pl.</b> NOM.	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. For the pronunciation of **hujus** = **hujjus**, see 6, b.

b. The full forms with **-ce** are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase **hujusce modī**, of *this kind*.

c. When followed by a word which begins with a vowel or **h**, the nominative singular of the masculine, **hic**, and the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, **hoc**, are usually pronounced as though spelled **hicc**, **hocc**, making these syllables long by position; 15.

4. *iste, that (of yours)*

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Sg.</b> NOM.	<b>iste</b>	<b>ista</b>	<b>istud</b>
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus
DAT.	istī	istī	istī
ACC.	istum	istam	istud
ABL.	istō	istā	istō
<b>Pl.</b> NOM.	<b>istī</b>	<b>istae</b>	<b>ista</b>
GEN.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istīs	istīs	istīs

a. **Iste** combines with **-ce**, but in classical Latin the only common forms are **istuc** (for **istud**) and **istaec** (for **ista**).

5. *ille, that*

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Sg.</b> NOM.	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT.	illī	illī	illī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō
<b>Pl.</b> NOM.	<b>illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

## 108. C. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

*ipse, self*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl. NOM.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
ABL.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## 109. D. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

*quī, who*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō
Pl. NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quos	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. For the pronunciation of *cujus* = *cujjus*, see 6, *b*.

b. *Quī* may also be used as a relative adjective.

c. The dative-ablative plural *quis* is common in the poets at all periods and occurs also occasionally in prose writers.

d. The ablative singular *quī* for all genders is the prevalent form in early times; and in combination with *cum*, as *quicum*, *with whom*, is preferred to *quō*, *quā*, by Cicero.

## 110. General Relatives are:

PRONOUN	<i>quisquis, whoever</i>	<i>quidquid, quicquid, whatever</i>
ADJECTIVE	<i>quiquī, quaequae, quodquod, whatsoever</i>	
	<i>quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whichever</i>	

## 111. E. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

PRONOUN	<i>quis? who?</i>	<i>quid? what?</i>
ADJECTIVE	<i>quī?</i>	<i>quod? which?</i>
PRON. AND ADJ.	<i>uter?</i>	<i>utrum? who? which of two?</i>

	M., F.	N.
Sg. Nom.	quis?	quid?
Gen.	cujus?	cujus?
Dat.	cui?	cui?
Acc.	quem?	quid?
Abl.	quō?	quō?

a. The plural of the interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the interrogative adjective coincide with the forms of the relative **quī, quae, quod**.

## 112. F. STRENGTHENED INTERROGATIVES

PRONOUN	quisnam? <i>who, pray?</i>	quidnam? <i>what, pray?</i>
	ecquis? <i>(is there) any one?</i>	ecquid? <i>(is there) anything?</i>
ADJECTIVE	quīnam?	quodnam? <i>which, pray?</i>
	ecqui?	ecqua? (ecquae?) ecquod? <i>is there any?</i>

## 113. G. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

aliquis	aliqua (rare)	aliquid, <i>somebody, someone or other, anybody</i>
quis	qua	quid, <i>someone, anyone</i>

a. The adjective forms are **aliquī, aliqua, aliquid, some, any; quī, quae (qua), quod, some, any**.

114. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given, 73-74. They are: **ūllus, a, um, any; nūllus, a, um, no one, not one; alius, a, ud, another; alter, era, erum, the other, one (of two); neuter, tra, trum, neither of two; ambō, ae, ō, both**. The corresponding substantives for **nūllus** and **nūllum** are **nēmō** and **nihil**, the latter of which forms only **nihilī** (gen.) and **nihilō** (abl.) and those only in certain combinations.

a. Some of the more important compounds of these adjectives are:

**nōnnūllus, a, um, some, many a**, declined like **nūllus**.  
**alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two**  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either**  
**utervis, utravīs, utrumvis whichever you please of the two**  
**uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, whichever you please of the two**

## THE VERB

115. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called conjugation and expresses:

1. Person: First, Second, Third.
2. Voice: Active, Passive, Middle.

a. The active voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: **parō, I prepare**. The passive voice denotes that the subject receives the



action of the verb: **paror**, *I am prepared*. The middle voice has passive form and denotes the subject as acting either for itself or upon itself (reflexive) as: **paror**, *I prepare (for) myself*. This is chiefly a poetic usage.

3. Tense: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

4. Mood: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

a. The indicative is the mood of the fact: **parō**, *I prepare*. The subjunctive is the mood of the wish, command, or qualified statement: **parem**, *may I prepare, I may prepare*; **paret**, *may he prepare, let him prepare*; **sī paret**, *if he should prepare*. The imperative is the mood of command: **parā**, *prepare!*

## CONJUGATION

116. The stem of a verb is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:

1. **The Present Stem**: being the stem of the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These forms are called the present system.

2. **The Perfect Stem**: being the stem of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the active. These forms are called the perfect system.

3. **The Perfect Passive Participial Stem**: which is used to form the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses of the passive and also the future active and perfect passive participles, infinitives, and the supine. These forms are called the participial system.

117. 1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice are formed by the combination of the perfect passive participle with forms of the verb **sum**, *be, exist*.

2. The future passive infinitive is formed by the combination of the supine with the present passive infinitive of **eō**, *go*.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the present, perfect, or participial stem:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INFINITIVE	Pres. <b>re</b> Perf. <b>isse</b> Fut. <b>ūrus (a, um) esse</b>	<b>rī, ī</b> <b>us (a, um) esse</b> <b>um irī</b>
PARTICIPLES	Pres. <b>ns (Gen. ntis)</b> Perf. _____ Fut. <b>ūrus (a, um)</b>	_____ <b>us (a, um)</b> _____
GERUND		
<b>ndī, (dō, dum, dō)</b>	GERUNDIVE	SUPINE
	<b>ndus (a, um)</b>	<b>um, ū</b>

THE VERB *sum, be, exist*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fui*

## 118. INDICATIVE

## 119. SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

- Sg. 1. *sum, I am*  
 2. *es, you are*  
 3. *est, he, she, it, is*
- Pl. 1. *sumus, we are*  
 2. *estis, you are*  
 3. *sunt, they are*

*sim*<sup>1</sup>  
*sīs*  
*sit*

*sīmus*  
*sītis*  
*sint*

## IMPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *eram, I was*  
 2. *erās, you were*  
 3. *erat, he was*
- Pl. 1. *erāmus, we were*  
 2. *erātis, you were*  
 3. *erant, they were*

*essem (forem)*  
*essēs (forēs)*  
*esset (foret)*

*essēmus (forēmus)*  
*essētis (forētis)*  
*essent (forent)*

## FUTURE

- Sg. 1. *erō, I shall be*  
 2. *eris, you will be*  
 3. *erit, he will be*
- Pl. 1. *erimus, we shall be*  
 2. *eritis, you will be*  
 3. *erunt, they will be*

(lacking)

## PERFECT

- Sg. 1. *fui, I have been, I was*  
 2. *fuisti, you have been, you were*  
 3. *fuit, he has been, he was*
- Pl. 1. *fuimus, we have been, we were*  
 2. *fuistis, you have been, you were*  
 3. *fuērunt, fuēre, they have been, they were*

*fuerim*  
*fueris*  
*fuerit*

*fuerimus*  
*fueritis*  
*fuerint*

## PLUPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *fueram, I had been*  
 2. *fuerās, you had been*  
 3. *fuerat, he had been*
- Pl. 1. *fuerāmus, we had been*  
 2. *fuerātis, you had been*  
 3. *fuerant, they had been*

*fuissem*  
*fuissēs*  
*fuisset*

*fuissēmus*  
*fuissētis*  
*fuisSENT*

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of the subjunctive varies greatly, according to its use, and is best learned from the sections on syntax.

## FUTURE PERFECT

- Sg. 1. fuerō, *I shall have been*  
 2. fueris, *you will have been*  
 3. fuerit, *he will have been*

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. fuerimus, *we shall have been*  
 2. fueritis, *you will have been*  
 3. fuerint, *they will have been*

## 120. IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		FUTURE	
Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
1. _____	_____	_____	_____
2. es, be	este, be	estō, <i>you shall be</i>	estōte, <i>you shall be</i>
3. _____	_____	estō, <i>he shall be</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

## 121. INFINITIVE

- PRES. esse, *to be*  
 PERF. fuisse, *to have been*  
 FUT. futūrus (a, um) esse, *fore, to be about to be*

## 122. PARTICIPLES

- PRES. only in the compounds absēns, *absent*, praesēns, *present* (79)  
 FUT. futūrus, a, um, *about to be* (71, a)

## 123. COMPOUNDS OF sum

- absum, *be away, absent*. PERF. (abfui) afui, PRES. PART. absēns, *absent*.  
 adsum, *be present*. PERF. affui (adfui)  
 dēsum, *be wanting*  
 insum, *be in*  
 intersum, *be between*  
 obsum, *be against, hurt*. PERF. obfui (offui)  
 possum, *be able*  
 praesum, *be over, superintend*. PRES. PART. praesēns, *present*  
 prōsum, *be for, profit*  
 subsum, *be under*. NO PERF.  
 supersum, *be or remain, over*.

These are all inflected like *sum*, but *prōsum* and *possum* require special treatment by reason of their composition.

## 124. Prōsum, profit

In the forms of *prōsum*, *prōd-* is used before vowels, thus:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	prōsum, prōdes, prōdest; prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt	prōsim
IMPERF.	prōderam	prōdessem
FUT.	prōderō	_____
PERF.	prōfui	prōfuerim
PLUPERF.	prōfueram	prōfuissem
FUT. PERF.	prōfuerō	_____

## INFINITIVE

PRES. *prōdesse*; FUT. *prōfutūrum esse* (*prōfore*); PERF. *prōfuisse*

125.

**Possum**, *be able, can*

**Possum** is compounded of **pot** (*potis, pote*) and **sum**; *t* becomes *s* before *s*. The perfect forms and the present participle are from an old form *poteō, potēre*.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

- Sg. 1. *possum, I am able, can*  
 2. *potes*  
 3. *potest*

- Pl. 1. *possumus*  
 2. *potestis*  
 3. *possunt*

## IMPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *poteram, I was able, could*  
 2. *poterās*  
 3. *poterat*

- Pl. 1. *poterāmus*  
 2. *poterātis*  
 3. *poterant*

## FUTURE

- Sg. 1. *poterō, I shall be able*  
 2. *poteris*  
 3. *poterit*

- Pl. 1. *poterimus*  
 2. *poteritis*  
 3. *poterunt*

(lacking)

## PERFECT

- Sg. 1. *potuī, I have been able*  
 2. *potuisti*  
 3. *potuit*

- Pl. 1. *potuimus*  
 2. *potuistis*  
 3. *potuērunt, ēre*

## PLUPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *potueram, I had been able*  
 2. *potuerās*  
 3. *potuerat*

- Pl. 1. *potuerāmus*  
 2. *potuerātis*  
 3. *potuerant*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- possim*  
*possis*  
*possit*

- possimus*  
*possitis*  
*possint*

- possem*  
*possēs*  
*posset*

- possēmus*  
*possētis*  
*possent*

- potuerim*  
*potueris*  
*potuerit*

- potuerimus*  
*potueritis*  
*potuerint*

- potuissem*  
*potuissēs*  
*potuisset*

- potuissēmus*  
*potuissētis*  
*potuissent*



## FUTURE PERFECT

- Sg. 1. **potuerō**, *I shall have been able*  
 2. **potueris**  
 3. **potuerit**

- Pl. 1. **potuerimus**  
 2. **potueritis**  
 3. **potuerint**

(lacking)

## INFINITIVE

- PRES. **posse**  
 PERF. **potuisse**

## PARTICIPLE

- PRES. **potēns** (79)

## REGULAR VERBS

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION

126. 1. There are two systems of conjugation, the vowel and the consonant. The consonant system is confined to a small class. The vowel system comprises four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, **ā**, **ē**, **e**, **i**, which may be found by dropping **re** from the present infinitive active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem characteristic is called the consonant stem characteristic.

2. From the present stem, as seen in the present indicative and present infinitive active; from the perfect stem, as seen in the perfect indicative active; and from the perfect passive participial stem, can be derived all forms of the verb. These forms are accordingly called the principal parts; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
I. <b>parō</b>	<b>parāre</b>	<b>parāvī</b>	<b>parātus</b> , <i>prepare</i>
II. <b>habeō</b>	<b>habēre</b>	<b>habuī</b>	<b>habitus</b> , <i>have</i>
III. <b>dicō</b>	<b>dicere</b>	<b>dixī</b>	<b>dictus</b> , <i>say</i>
<b>capīō</b>	<b>capere</b>	<b>cēpī</b>	<b>captus</b> , <i>take</i>
IV. <b>audiō</b>	<b>audire</b>	<b>audīvī</b>	<b>auditus</b> , <i>hear</i>

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES

127. The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

128. While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that:

1. The second person singular imperative active is the same as the present stem.

2. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the present infinitive active by adding **m**, etc. for active and **r**, etc. for passive.

3. The second person singular imperative passive and second person singular present passive in **re** are the same as the present infinitive active. Hence **ris** is preferred in the present indicative passive in order to avoid confusion.

4. The present subjunctive active and future indicative active in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the first person singular.

5. The future perfect indicative active and the perfect subjunctive active differ only in the first person singular, except for the quantity of the **i**.

6. **Euphonic changes** sometimes occur in the consonant stem characteristic in the perfect and participial stem. Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**; **c, g, qu**, with **s**, become **x**; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped; thus: **scribō, scripsī (scribsī), scriptus**; **legō, lēctus (lēgtus)**; **coquō, coctus (coqtus)**; **dīcō, dixī (dīcsī)**; **jungō, jūnxī (jūngsī)**; **coquō, coxī (coqsī)**; **edō, ēsus (edsus)**; **cēdō, cessī (cedsī)**; **mittō, mīsī (mitsī), missus (mitsus)**.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

### Conjugation of *parō, parare*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**

#### ACTIVE

#### 129. INDICATIVE

#### 130. SUBJUNCTIVE

##### PRESENT

*I prepare, am preparing,  
do prepare*

Sg. 1. **parō**  
2. **parās**  
3. **parat**

**parem**  
**parēs**  
**paret**

Pl. 1. **parāmus**  
2. **parātis**  
3. **parant**

**parēmus**  
**parētis**  
**parent**

##### IMPERFECT

*I prepared, was preparing,  
did prepare*

Sg. 1. **parābam**  
2. **parābās**  
3. **parābat**

**parārem**  
**parārēs**  
**parāret**

Pl. 1. **parābāmus**  
2. **parābātis**  
3. **parābant**

**parārēmus**  
**parārētis**  
**parārent**

## FUTURE

*I shall prepare, shall  
be preparing*

- Sg. 1. parābō  
2. parābis  
3. parābit

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. parābimus  
2. parābitis  
3. parābunt

## PERFECT

*I prepared, have prepared,  
did prepare*

- Sg. 1. parāvi  
2. parāvisti  
3. parāvit

parāverim  
parāveris  
parāverit

- Pl. 1. parāvimus  
2. parāvistis  
3. parāvērunt, ēre

parāverimus  
parāveritis  
parāverint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had prepared*

- Sg. 1. parāveram  
2. parāverās  
3. parāverat

parāvissem  
parāvissēs  
parāvisset

- Pl. 1. parāverāmus  
2. parāverātis  
3. parāverant

parāvissēmus  
parāvissētis  
parāvissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have prepared*

- Sg. 1. parāverō  
2. parāveris  
3. parāverit

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. parāverimus  
2. parāveritis  
3. parāverint

131.

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

- Sg. 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. parā, *prepare*  
3. \_\_\_\_\_

- Pl. 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. parāte, *prepare*  
3. \_\_\_\_\_

## FUTURE

\_\_\_\_\_ *parātō, you shall prepare*  
\_\_\_\_\_ *parātō, he shall prepare*

\_\_\_\_\_ *parātōte, you shall prepare*  
\_\_\_\_\_ *parantō, they shall prepare*

## 132.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. **parāre**, *to prepare*PERF. **parāvisse**, *to have prepared*FUT. **parātūrus, a, um esse**, *to be about to prepare*

## 133. GERUND

## 134. SUPINE

GEN. **parandī**, *of preparing*DAT. **parandō**, *to, for preparing*ACC. **parandum**, *preparing, to prepare*ABL. **parandō**, *with, from, by preparing***parātum**, *to prepare***parātū**, *to prepare, in the preparing*

## 135.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. Nom. **parāns** (Gen. **parantis**), *preparing* (79)FUT. **parātūrus, a, um**, *(being) about to prepare* (71, a)

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE

## 136. INDICATIVE

## 137. SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I am (being) prepared*

- Sg. 1. **paror**  
 2. **parāris, re**  
 3. **parātur**

**parer**  
**parēris, re**  
**parētur**

- Pl. 1. **parāmur**  
 2. **parāmini**  
 3. **parantur**

**parēmur**  
**parēmini**  
**parentur**

## IMPERFECT

*I was (being) prepared*

- Sg. 1. **parābar**  
 2. **parābāris, re**  
 3. **parābātur**

**parārer**  
**parārēris, re**  
**parārētur**

- Pl. 1. **parābāmur**  
 2. **parābāmini**  
 3. **parābantur**

**parārēmur**  
**parārēmini**  
**parārentur**

## FUTURE

*I shall be prepared*

- Sg. 1. **parābor**  
 2. **parāberis, re**  
 3. **parābitur**

- Pl. 1. **parābimur**  
 2. **parābimini**  
 3. **parābuntur**

(lacking)



## PERFECT

*I have been prepared, was  
prepared*

Sg.	1.	parātus, a, um	sum	parātus, a, um	sim
	2.		es		sis
	3.		est		sit
Pl.	1.	parāti, ae, a	sumus	parāti, ae, a	simus
	2.		estis		sitis
	3.		sunt		sint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been prepared*

Sg.	1.	parātus, a, um	eram	parātus, a, um	essem
	2.		erās		essēs
	3.		erat		esset
Pl.	1.	parāti, ae, a	erāmus	parāti, ae, a	essēmus
	2.		erātis		essētis
	3.		erant		essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been prepared*

Sg.	1.	parātus, a, um	erō
	2.		eris
	3.		erit
Pl.	1.	parāti, ae, a	erimus
	2.		eritis
	3.		erunt

138.

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

Sg.	1.	_____
	2.	parāre, be prepared
	3.	_____
Pl.	1.	_____
	2.	parāminī, be prepared
	3.	_____

## FUTURE

_____
parātor, you shall be prepared
parātor, he shall be prepared
_____
_____
parantor, they shall be prepared

139.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	parāri, to be prepared
PERF.	parātus, a, um esse, to have been prepared
FUT.	parātum iri, to be about to be prepared

140. PARTICIPLE

PERF. parātus, a, um, *having been  
prepared* (71, a)

141. GERUNDIVE

parandus, a, um, *(about) to be  
prepared; must be, ought to be  
prepared* (71, a)

## SECOND CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *habeō*, *have*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *habeō*, *habēre*, *habuī*, *habitus*

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

142. INDICATIVE    143. SUBJUNCTIVE    144. INDICATIVE    145. SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

Sg.	1. <i>habeō</i> 2. <i>habēs</i> 3. <i>habet</i>	<i>habeam</i> <i>habeās</i> <i>habeat</i>	<i>habeor</i> <i>habēris</i> , <i>re</i> <i>habētur</i>	<i>habear</i> <i>habeāris</i> , <i>re</i> <i>habeātur</i>
Pl.	1. <i>habēmus</i> 2. <i>habētis</i> 3. <i>habent</i>	<i>habeāmus</i> <i>habeātis</i> <i>habeant</i>	<i>habēmur</i> <i>habēmini</i> <i>habentur</i>	<i>habeāmur</i> <i>habeāmini</i> <i>habeantur</i>

## IMPERFECT

Sg.	1. <i>habēbam</i> 2. <i>habēbās</i> 3. <i>habēbat</i>	<i>habērem</i> <i>habērēs</i> <i>habēret</i>	<i>habēbar</i> <i>habērāris</i> , <i>re</i> <i>habēbātur</i>	<i>habērer</i> <i>habērēris</i> , <i>re</i> <i>habērētur</i>
Pl.	1. <i>habēbāmus</i> 2. <i>habēbātis</i> 3. <i>habēbant</i>	<i>habērēmus</i> <i>habērētis</i> <i>habērent</i>	<i>habēbāmur</i> <i>habēbāmini</i> <i>habēbantur</i>	<i>habērēmur</i> <i>habērēmini</i> <i>habērentur</i>

## FUTURE

Sg.	1. <i>habēbō</i> 2. <i>habēbis</i> 3. <i>habēbit</i>	<i>habēbor</i> <i>habēberis</i> , <i>re</i> <i>habēbitur</i>
Pl.	1. <i>habēbimus</i> 2. <i>habēbitis</i> 3. <i>habēbunt</i>	<i>habēbimur</i> <i>habēbimini</i> <i>habēbuntur</i>

## PERFECT

Sg.	1. <i>habuī</i> 2. <i>habuistī</i> 3. <i>habuit</i>	<i>habuerim</i> <i>habueris</i> <i>habuerit</i>	<i>habitus</i> , { <i>sum</i> <i>a, um</i> { <i>es</i> <i>est</i>	<i>habitus</i> , { <i>sim</i> <i>a, um</i> { <i>sīs</i> <i>sit</i>
Pl.	1. <i>habuimus</i> 2. <i>habuistis</i> 3. <i>habuerunt, ēre</i>	<i>habuerimus</i> <i>habueritis</i> <i>habuerint</i>	<i>habiti</i> , { <i>sumus</i> <i>ae, a</i> { <i>estis</i> <i>sunt</i>	<i>habiti</i> , { <i>sīmus</i> <i>ae, a</i> { <i>sītis</i> <i>sint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

Sg.	1. <i>habueram</i> 2. <i>habuerās</i> 3. <i>habuerat</i>	<i>habuissem</i> <i>habuissēs</i> <i>habuisset</i>	<i>habitus</i> , { <i>eram</i> <i>a, um</i> { <i>erās</i> <i>erat</i>	<i>habitus</i> , { <i>essem</i> <i>a, um</i> { <i>essēs</i> <i>esset</i>
Pl.	1. <i>habuerāmus</i> 2. <i>habuerātis</i> 3. <i>habuerant</i>	<i>habuissēmus</i> <i>habuissētis</i> <i>habuissent</i>	<i>habiti</i> , { <i>erāmus</i> <i>ae, a</i> { <i>erātis</i> <i>erant</i>	<i>habiti</i> , { <i>essēmus</i> <i>ae, a</i> { <i>essētis</i> <i>essent</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

Sg.	1. habuerō	habitus, a, um erō
	2. habueris	eris
	3. habuerit	erit
Pl.	1. habuerimus	habiti, ae, a erimus
	2. habueritis	eritis
	3. habuerint	erint

## 146. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg.	1. _____	_____	_____	_____
	2. habē	habētō	habēre	habētōr
	3. _____	habētō	_____	habētōr
Pl.	1. _____	_____	_____	_____
	2. habēte	habētōte	habēmini	_____
	3. _____	habentō	_____	habentor

## 147. INFINITIVE

PRES.	habēre	habēri
PERF.	habuisse	habitus, a, um esse
FUT.	habitūrus, a, um esse	habitum iri

148. GERUND	149. SUPINE	150. PARTICIPLES
GEN. habendī		PRES. <i>Nom.</i> habēns; <i>Gen.</i> habentis (79)
DAT. habendō		FUT. habitūrus, a, um (71, a)
ACC. habendum	ACC. habitum	PERF. habitus, a, um (71, a)
ABL. habendō	ABL. habitū	

## GERUNDIVE

habendus, a, um (71, a)

## THIRD CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *dīcō*, *say*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dīcō*, *dīcere*, *dixī*, *dictus*

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

151. INDICATIVE	152. SUBJUNCTIVE	153. INDICATIVE	154. SUBJUNCTIVE
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

## PRESENT

Sg.	1. dīcō	dīcam	dīcor	dīcar
	2. dīcis	dīcās	dīceris, re	dīcāris, re
	3. dīcit	dīcat	dīcitur	dīcātur
Pl.	1. dīcimus	dīcāmus	dīcimur	dīcāmur
	2. dīcitis	dīcātis	dīciminī	dīcāmini
	3. dīcunt	dīcant	dīcuntur	dīcantur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPERFECT			
Sg. 1. dicēbam	dicerem	dicēbar	dicerer
2. dicēbās	dicerēs	dicēbāris, re	dicerēris, re
3. dicēbat	diceret	dicēbātur	dicerētur
Pl. 1. dicēbāmus	dicerēmus	dicēbāmur	dicerēmur
2. dicēbātis	dicerētis	dicēbāminī	dicerēminī
3. dicēbant	dicerent	dicēbantur	dicerentur

FUTURE			
Sg. 1. dicam		dicar	
2. dicēs		dicēris, re	
3. dicet		dicētur	
Pl. 1. dicēmus		dicēmur	
2. dicētis		dicēminī	
3. dicent		dicentur	

PERFECT			
Sg. 1. dixī	dixerim	dictus, {	dictus, {
2. dixistī	dixeris	a, um {	a, um {
3. dixit	dixerit	est	sim
			sis
			sit
Pl. 1. diximus	dixerimus	dicti, {	dicti, {
2. dixistis	dixeritis	sumus	a, a {
3. dixērunt, ēre	dixerint	estis	simus
		sunt	sitis
			sint

PLUPERFECT			
Sg. 1. dixeram	dixissem	dictus, {	dictus, {
2. dixerās	dixissēs	a, um {	a, um {
3. dixerat	dixisset	eram	essem
		erās	essēs
		erat	esset
Pl. 1. dixerāmus	dixissemus	dicti, {	dicti, {
2. dixerātis	dixissetis	a, a {	a, a {
3. dixerant	dixissent	erāmus	essēmus
		erātis	essētis
		erant	essent

FUTURE PERFECT			
Sg. 1. dixerō		dictus, {	erō
2. dixeris		a, um {	eris
3. dixerit			erit
Pl. 1. dixerimus		dicti, {	erimus
2. dixeritis		a, a {	eritis
3. dixerint			erunt

155.

## IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____
2. dic <sup>1</sup>	dicitō	dicere	dicitor
3. _____	dicitō	_____	dicitor
Pl. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____
2. dicite	dicitōte	dicimini	_____
3. _____	dicuntō	_____	dicuntor

<sup>1</sup> See 202.



## 156.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<b>dicere</b>	<b>dicī</b>
PERF.	<b>dixisse</b>	<b>dictus, a, um esse</b>
FUT.	<b>dictūrus, a, um esse</b>	<b>dictum iri</b>

## 157. GERUND

## 158. SUPINE

## 159. PARTICIPLES

GEN.	<b>dicendi</b>	PRES. <i>Nom.</i>	<b>dicēns; Gen. dicentis (79)</b>
DAT.	<b>dicendō</b>	FUT.	<b>dictūrus, a, um (71, a)</b>
ACC.	<b>dicendum</b>	PERF.	<b>dictus, a, um (71, a)</b>
ABL.	<b>dicendō</b>		

## 160.

## GERUNDIVE

dicendus, a, um

VERBS IN *iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

161. Many verbs of the third conjugation with present indicative in *iō*, change *i* to *e* before *r* and drop it when it would come before *e* or *i* in all tenses of the present system except the future, participle, and gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of **dicere**.

162. These verbs are **capiō**, *take*; **cupiō**, *desire*; **faciō**, *do, make*; **fodiō**, *dig*; **fugiō**, *flee*; **jaciō**, *throw*; **pariō**, *produce, bear*; **quatiō**, *shake*; **rapiō**, *snatch*; **sapiō**, *be wise*, and their compounds; also compounds of **-liciō**, **-spiciō**; and the deponents **gradior**, *go*, and its compounds; **morior**, *die*, and its compounds; **patior**, *endure, suffer*, and its compounds.

Synopsis of Present System of *capiō*, *take*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## 163. INDICATIVE

## 164. SUBJUNCTIVE

## 165. INDICATIVE

## 166. SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

Sg. 1.	<b>capiō</b>	<b>capiam</b>	<b>capior</b>	<b>capiar</b>
2.	<b>capis</b>	<b>capiās</b>	<b>caperis, re</b>	<b>capiāris, re</b>
3.	<b>capit</b>	<b>capiat</b>	<b>capitur</b>	<b>capiātur</b>
Pl. 1.	<b>capimus</b>	<b>capiāmus</b>	<b>capimur</b>	<b>capiāmur</b>
2.	<b>capitis</b>	<b>capiātis</b>	<b>capiminī</b>	<b>capiāmini</b>
3.	<b>capiunt</b>	<b>capiant</b>	<b>capiuntur</b>	<b>capiantur</b>

## IMPERFECT

Sg. 1.	<b>capiēbam</b>	<b>caperem</b>	<b>capiēbar</b>	<b>caperer</b>
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## FUTURE

Sg. 1.	<b>capiam</b>	<b>capiar</b>
2.	<b>capiēs</b>	<b>capiēris, re</b>
	etc.	etc.

## 167.

## IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	_____	_____	_____	_____
2.	<b>cape</b>	<b>capitō</b>	<b>capere</b>	<b>capitor</b>
3.	_____	<b>capitō</b>	_____	<b>capitor</b>
Pl. 1.	_____	_____	_____	_____
2.	<b>capite</b>	<b>capitōte</b>	<b>capimini</b>	_____
3.	_____	<b>capiuntō</b>	_____	<b>capiuntor</b>

## 168.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. **capere****capī**

## 169. PARTICIPLE

## 170. GERUND

## 171. GERUNDIVE

PRES. **capiēns** (79)*Gen.* **capiendi****capiendus, a, um** (71, *a*)

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

Conjugation of **audiō**, *hear*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō**, **audire**, **audīvī**, **auditus**

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

172. INDICATIVE    173. SUBJUNCTIVE    174. INDICATIVE    175. SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

Sg. 1.	<b>audiō</b>	<b>audiam</b>	<b>audior</b>	<b>audiar</b>
2.	<b>audīs</b>	<b>audiās</b>	<b>audiris, re</b>	<b>audiāris, re</b>
3.	<b>audit</b>	<b>audiat</b>	<b>auditur</b>	<b>audiātur</b>
Pl. 1.	<b>audīmus</b>	<b>audiāmus</b>	<b>audimur</b>	<b>audiāmur</b>
2.	<b>audītis</b>	<b>audiātis</b>	<b>audimini</b>	<b>audiāmini</b>
3.	<b>audiunt</b>	<b>audiant</b>	<b>audiuntur</b>	<b>audiantur</b>

## IMPERFECT

Sg. 1.	<b>audiēbam</b>	<b>audīrem</b>	<b>audiēbar</b>	<b>audīrer</b>
2.	<b>audiēbās</b>	<b>audīrēs</b>	<b>audiēbāris, re</b>	<b>audīrēris, re</b>
3.	<b>audiēbat</b>	<b>audīret</b>	<b>audiēbātur</b>	<b>audīrētur</b>
Pl. 1.	<b>audiēbāmus</b>	<b>audīrēmus</b>	<b>audiēbāmur</b>	<b>audīrēmur</b>
2.	<b>audiēbātis</b>	<b>audīrētis</b>	<b>audiēbāmini</b>	<b>audīrēmini</b>
3.	<b>audiēbant</b>	<b>audīrent</b>	<b>audiēbantur</b>	<b>audīrentur</b>

## FUTURE

Sg. 1.	<b>audiam</b>	<b>audiar</b>
2.	<b>audiēs</b>	<b>audiēris, re</b>
3.	<b>audiet</b>	<b>audiētur</b>
Pl. 1.	<b>audiēmus</b>	<b>audiēmur</b>
2.	<b>audiētis</b>	<b>audiēmini</b>
3.	<b>audient</b>	<b>audientur</b>

## PERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>audīvī</i>	<i>audīverim</i>	<i>audītus,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	<i>audītus,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīvistī</i>	<i>audīveris</i>	<i>a, um</i>		<i>a, um</i>	
3. <i>audīvit</i>	<i>audīverit</i>				
Pl. 1. <i>audīvimus</i>	<i>audīverimus</i>	<i>audītī,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$	<i>audītī,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{simus} \\ \text{sitis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīvistis</i>	<i>audīveritis</i>	<i>ae, a</i>		<i>ae, a</i>	
3. <i>audīvērunt, ēre</i>	<i>audīverint</i>				

## PLUPERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>audīveram</i>	<i>audīvissem</i>	<i>audītus,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	<i>audītus,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīverās</i>	<i>audīvisse</i>	<i>a, um</i>		<i>a, um</i>	
3. <i>audīverat</i>	<i>audīvisset</i>				
Pl. 1. <i>audīverāmus</i>	<i>audīvissemus</i>	<i>audītī,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$	<i>audītī,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīverātis</i>	<i>audīvissetis</i>	<i>ae, a</i>		<i>ae, a</i>	
3. <i>audīverant</i>	<i>audīvisset</i>				

## FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>audīverō</i>		<i>audītus,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīveris</i>		<i>a, um</i>	
3. <i>audīverit</i>			
Pl. 1. <i>audīverimus</i>		<i>audītī,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
2. <i>audīveritis</i>		<i>ae, a</i>	
3. <i>audīverint</i>			

## 176.

## IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2. <i>audī</i>	<i>audītō</i>	<i>audire</i>	<i>auditor</i>	
3. _____	<i>audītō</i>	_____	<i>auditor</i>	
Pl. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2. <i>audīte</i>	<i>audītōte</i>	<i>audimini</i>	_____	
3. _____	<i>audiuntō</i>	_____	<i>audiuntor</i>	

## 177.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>audire</i>	<i>audiri</i>
PERF.	<i>audivisse</i>	<i>auditus, a, um esse</i>
FUT.	<i>auditūrus, a, um esse</i>	<i>auditum iri</i>

## 178. GERUND

## 179. SUPINE

## 180. PARTICIPLES

GEN. <i>audiendī</i>		PRES. <i>Nom. audiēns; Gen. audientis</i> (79)
DAT. <i>audiendō</i>		FUT. <i>auditūrus, a, um</i> (71, <i>a</i> )
ACC. <i>audiendum</i>	<i>audītum</i>	PERF. <i>audītus, a, um</i> (71, <i>a</i> )
ABL. <i>audiendō</i>	<i>audītū</i>	

## 181.

## GERUNDIVE

*audiendus, a, um*

## DEPONENT VERBS

**182.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the present and future active participles, and the future active infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a present, future, and perfect participle, all with active meaning. The gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

## I. FIRST CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *moror*, *delay*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *moror*, *morārī*, *morātus*

**183. INDICATIVE****184. SUBJUNCTIVE**

## PRESENT

*I delay, am delaying, do delay*

- Sg.** 1. *moror*  
2. *morāris, re*  
3. *morātur*

*moror*  
*morārīs, re*  
*morētur*

- Pl.** 1. *morāmur*  
2. *morāminī*  
3. *morantur*

*morēmur*  
*morēminī*  
*morentur*

## IMPERFECT

*I was delaying, delayed, did delay*

- Sg.** 1. *morābar*  
2. *morābāris, re*  
3. *morābātur*

*morārer*  
*morārērīs, re*  
*morārētur*

- Pl.** 1. *morābāmur*  
2. *morābāminī*  
3. *morābantur*

*morārēmur*  
*morārēminī*  
*morārentur*

## FUTURE

*I shall delay, will delay*

- Sg.** 1. *morābor*  
2. *morāberis, re*  
3. *morābitur*

- Pl.** 1. *morābimur*  
2. *morābiminī*  
3. *morābuntur*

## PERFECT

*I have delayed, delayed, did delay*

- Sg.** 1. *morātus, a, um sum*  
2. *es*  
3. *est*

*morātus, a, um sim*  
*sis*  
*sit*



Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a	sumus	morāti, ae, a	simus
2.		estis		sitis
3.		sunt		sint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had delayed*

Sg. 1.	morātus, a, um eram	morātus, a, um essem
2.	erās	essēs
3.	erat	esset
Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a erāmus	morāti, ae, a essēmus
2.	erātis	essētis
3.	erant	essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall (will) have delayed*

Sg. 1.	morātus, a, um erō
2.	eris
3.	erit
Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a erimus
2.	eritis
3.	erunt

## 185. IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

Sg. 1.	_____
2.	morāre, delay
3.	_____

## FUTURE

Pl. 1.	_____	_____
2.	morāminī, delay	_____
3.	_____	morantur, they shall delay

## 186. INFINITIVE

PRES. morārī, to delay

FUT. morātūrus, a, um esse, to be about to delay

PERF. morātus, a, um esse, to have delayed

## 187. SUPINE

ACC. morātum, to delay, for delaying

ABL. morātū, to delay, in the delaying

## 188. PARTICIPLES

PRES. morāns, antis, delaying (79)

FUT. morātūrus, a, um, about to delay (71, a)

PERF. morātus, a, um, having delayed (71, a)

## 189. GERUNDIVE

morandus, a, um, (one) to be delayed, about to be delayed (71, a)

## 190. GERUND

GEN. morandī, of delaying

## II. SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Synopsis of *fateor*, *confess*; *sequor*, *follow*; *pator*, *endure*; *experior*, *try*

## 191.

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>fateor</i> <i>fatēris</i> , etc.	<i>sequor</i> <i>sequeris</i>	<i>pator</i> <i>pateris</i>	<i>experior</i> <i>experiris</i>
IMPERF.	<i>fatēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>patiēbar</i>	<i>experiebar</i>
FUT.	<i>fatēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>patiar</i>	<i>experiar</i>
PERF.	<i>fassus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>passus sum</i>	<i>expertus sum</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>fassus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>passus eram</i>	<i>expertus eram</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>fassus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>passus erō</i>	<i>expertus erō</i>

## 192.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<i>fatear</i> <i>fateāris</i> , etc.	<i>sequar</i> <i>sequāris</i>	<i>patiar</i> <i>patiāris</i>	<i>experiar</i> <i>experiaris</i>
IMPERF.	<i>fatērer</i>	<i>sequerer</i>	<i>paterer</i>	<i>experirer</i>
PERF.	<i>fassus sim</i>	<i>secūtus sim</i>	<i>passus sim</i>	<i>expertus sim</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>fassus essem</i>	<i>secūtus essem</i>	<i>passus essem</i>	<i>expertus essem</i>

## 193.

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	<i>fatēre</i>	<i>sequere</i>	<i>patere</i>	<i>experire</i>
FUT.	<i>fatētor</i>	<i>sequitor</i>	<i>patitor</i>	<i>experitor</i>

## 194.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>fatēri</i>	<i>sequi</i>	<i>pati</i>	<i>experiri</i>
FUT.	<i>fassūrus esse</i>	<i>secūtūrus esse</i>	<i>passūrus esse</i>	<i>expertūrus esse</i>
PERF.	<i>fassus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>passus esse</i>	<i>expertus esse</i>

## 195.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>fatēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>patiēns</i>	<i>experie ns</i>
FUT.	<i>fassūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>passūrus</i>	<i>expertūrus</i>
PERF.	<i>fassus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>passus</i>	<i>expertus</i>

## 196.

## GERUND

<i>fatendī</i>	<i>sequendī</i>	<i>patiendī</i>	<i>experie ndī</i>
----------------	-----------------	-----------------	--------------------

## 197.

## GERUNDIVE

<i>fatendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>patiendus</i>	<i>experie ndus</i>
-----------------	------------------	------------------	---------------------

## 198.

## SUPINE

<i>fassum</i>	<i>secūtum</i>	<i>passum</i>	<i>expertum</i>
<i>fassū</i>	<i>secūtū</i>	<i>passū</i>	<i>expertū</i>

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

199. The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the future participle active and passive (the gerundive) with forms of the verb *sum*.

- a. The active periphrastic denotes something about to take place.
- b. The passive periphrastic denotes necessity or duty.

## 200.

## ACTIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) sum, am about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus (a, um) sim</i>
IMPERF.	<i>parātūrus eram, was about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus essem</i>
FUT.	<i>parātūrus erō, shall be about to prepare</i>	
PERF.	<i>parātūrus fui, have been, was, about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus fuerim</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>parātūrus fueram, had been about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus fuisset</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>parātūrus fuerō, shall have been about to prepare</i>	

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to prepare</i>
PERF.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) fuisse, to have been about to prepare</i>

## 201.

## PASSIVE

PRES.	<i>parandus (a, um) sum, have to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared</i>	<i>parandus (a, um) sim</i>
IMPERF.	<i>parandus eram, had to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared</i>	<i>parandus essem, forem</i>
FUT.	<i>parandus erō, shall have to be prepared</i>	
PERF.	<i>parandus fui, have had to be prepared</i>	<i>parandus fuerim</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>parandus fueram, had had to be prepared</i>	<i>parandus fuisset</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>parandus fuerō, shall have had to be prepared</i>	

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>parandus (a, um) esse, to have to be prepared</i>
PERF.	<i>parandus fuisse, to have had to be prepared</i>

202. Irregular Imperatives: Four verbs, *dīcō, say, dūcō, lead, faciō, do, make, ferō, bear*, form the present imperative active *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*. But in early Latin *dīce, dūce, face* are common. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except prepositional compounds of *faciō*. *Sciō, know*, lacks the present imperative *sci*.

203. Gerunds and Gerundives. The older ending of the gerund and gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations was *undus*; and *endus* was found only after *u*. In classical times *undus* is frequent, especially in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations; later, *endus* is the regular form.

204. 1. **Syncopated and Shorter Forms.** The perfects in *āvi*, *ēvi*, *īvi* often drop the *v* before *s* or *r* and contract the vowels throughout, except those in *ivī*, which admit the contraction only before *s*. These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the meter.

## PERFECT

INDIC.	Sg. 1. _____	_____
	2. parāvisti, parāsti	audīvisti, audisti
	3. _____	_____
Pl.	1. _____	_____
	2. parāvistis, parāstis	audīvistis, audīstis
	3. parāvērunt, parārunt	audīvērunt, audīērunt
SUBJ.	parāverim, parārim etc.	audīverim, audierim etc.

## PLUPERFECT

INDIC.	parāveram, parāram etc.	audīveram, audieram etc.
SUBJ.	parāvissem, parāssem etc.	audīvissem, audissem etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

INDIC.	parāverō, parārō etc.	audīverō, audierō etc.
--------	--------------------------	---------------------------

## INFINITIVE

PERF.	parāvisse, parāsse	audīvisse, audisse
-------	--------------------	--------------------

2. In the first and third persons singular and in the first person plural of the perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in perfects in *ivī*, and there is no contraction. It is most common in the perfects of *eō*, *go*, and *petō*, *seek*. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of *eō*, which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. *nōvī*, *I know*, and *mōvī*, *I have moved*, are also contracted, especially in their compounds.

Sg. 2. *nōsti*. Pl. 2. *nōstis*. 3. *nōrunt*. Subj. *nōrim*, etc. Pluperf. *nōram*, etc. Subj. *nōssem*, etc. Inf. *nōsse*.

But the future perfect *nōrō* is found only in compounds.

a. Similar contractions are seen in *mōvī*, but not so often.

4. The shorter form of the ending of the perfect active indicative third plural, *ēre* instead of *ērunt*, and of the second singular, *re* instead of *ris*, is often found. Thus *amāvēre* = *amāvērunt*, *they have loved*, and *amābāre* = *amābāris*, *you were loved*.



## SEMIDEPONENTS

205. 1. A few verbs form the perfect forms only as deponents:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*  
 fidō, fidere, fesus sum, *trust*  
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, *rejoice*  
 soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

206. Irregular in the conjugation of the present stem are:

1. orior, orīri, ortus, *arise*

The present indicative is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the imperfect subjunctive is always **orerer**; but the future participle is **oritūrus**. The compounds follow the same usage except **adoriri**, *rise up at, attack*, which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. eō, *go*.

The stem is **i**, which, before **a, o, u**, becomes **e**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ivi (iī), itus

## 207. INDICATIVE

PRES. Sg. 1. eō, *I go*

2. is

3. it

Pl. 1. imus

2. itis

3. eunt

IMPERF. ibam, *I went*

FUT. ibō, *I shall go*

PERF. ivi (iī), *I have gone*

PLUPERF. ieram (ieram), *I had gone*

## 208. SUBJUNCTIVE

eam

eās

eat

eāmus

eātis

eant

irem

iverim (ierim)

ivissem (issem)

## 209.

## IMPERATIVE

Sg. 1. ———

2. i, *go*

3. ———

Pl. 1. ———

2. ite, *go*

3. ———

itō, *you shall go*

itō, *he shall go*

itōte, *you shall go*

euntō, *they shall go*

## 210. INFINITIVE

PRES. ire

FUT. itūrus esse

PERF. ivisse (isse)

## 211. PARTICIPLES

PRES. iēns (*Gen. euntis*)

FUT. itūrus

## 212. GERUND

eundī, *etc.*

## 213. SUPINE

itum, *to go*

a. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the perfect system, where *ii* is the regular form. **Vēneō**, *be for sale*, and **pereō**, *perish*, serve as passives to **vendō**, *sell*, and **perdō**, *destroy*. **Ambiō**, *solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

b. The passive of the simple verb **eō** is found only in the impersonal forms **itur**, **ibātur**, **itum est**, **iri** (in combination with the supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly: so, **praetereō** forms **praetereor**, **iris**, **itur**, **imur**, **imini**, **euntur**, **ibar**, etc.; **itus sum**, **eram**, **erō**, **euntur**, **itor**, **iri**, **eundus**.

### 3. **ferō**, *bear*.

The endings beginning with **t**, **s**, and **r** are added directly to the root, **fer**.

a. Some forms of **ferō** are lacking and are supplied by **tul** and **(t)lā**.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**

### ACTIVE

#### 214. INDICATIVE

PRES. Sg. 1. **ferō**, *I bear*  
2. **fers**  
3. **fert**

Pl. 1. **ferimus**  
2. **fertis**  
3. **ferunt**

IMPERF. **ferēbam**, *I was bearing*  
FUT. **feram**, *I shall bear*  
PERF. **tulī**, *I have borne*  
PLUPERF. **tuleram**, *I had borne*  
FUT. PERF. **tulerō**, *I shall have borne*

#### 215. SUBJUNCTIVE

**feram**  
**ferās**  
**ferat**

**ferāmus**  
**ferātis**  
**ferant**

**ferem**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
**tulerim**  
**tulissem**  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### 216.

#### IMPERATIVE

Sg. 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. **fer**, *bear*  
3. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**fertō**, *you shall bear*  
**fertō**, *he shall bear*

Pl. 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. **ferite**, *bear*  
3. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**fertōte**, *you shall bear*  
**feruntō**, *they shall bear*

#### 217. INFINITIVE

PRES. **ferre**  
FUT. **lāturus esse**  
PERF. **tulisse**

#### 218. PARTICIPLES

**ferēns**, **ferentis**, *bearing*  
  
**lāturus**

#### 219. GERUND

**ferendī**, etc.

#### 220. SUPINE

**lātum**, **lātū**

## PASSIVE

## 221. INDICATIVE

PRES.	Sg.	1. feror, <i>I am borne</i>
	2. ferris	
	3. fertur	
	Pl.	1. ferimur
	2. ferimini	
	3. feruntur	
IMPERF.		ferēbar
FUT.		ferar
PERF.		lātus sum
PLUPERF.		lātus eram
FUT. PERF.		lātus erō

## 222. SUBJUNCTIVE

ferar
ferāris
ferātur
ferāmur
ferāmini
ferantur
ferer
_____
lātus sim
lātus essem
_____

## 223.

## IMPERATIVE

Sg.	1. _____	_____
	2. ferre, <i>be borne</i>	feritor, <i>you shall be borne</i>
	3. _____	feritor, <i>he shall be borne</i>
Pl.	1. _____	_____
	2. ferimini, <i>be borne</i>	_____
	3. _____	feruntor, <i>they shall be borne</i>

## 224. INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferri, <i>to be borne</i>
FUT.	lātum iri, <i>to be about to be borne</i>
PERF.	lātus esse, <i>to have been borne</i>

## 225. PARTICIPLES

PERF.	lātus, a, um, borne
-------	---------------------

## 226. GERUNDIVE ferendus, a, um, ought to be borne

## 4. fiō, become

227. Fiō is conjugated in the present, imperfect, and future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the subjunctive imperfect and in the infinitive the stem is increased by *e*; thus, fierem, fieri, to become. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long except before final *t*.

The infinitive ends in *ri*, and the whole verb in the present system is treated as the passive of faciō, do, make (161-171). The rest of the verb is formed as a regular passive of faciō.

## 228. PRINCIPAL PARTS: fiō, fieri, factus sum

PRES. INDIC.	fiō, <i>I am made, I become</i>	SUBJ.	fiam, fiās, fiat, etc.
	fiś, fit, fīmus, fitis, fiunt		
IMPERF.	fiēbam, <i>I was made, I became</i>		fierem, fierēs, etc.
FUT.	fiam, <i>I shall be made (become)</i>		
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim, etc.
PLUPERF.	factus eram		factus essem, etc.
FUT. PERF.	factus erō		

## IMPERATIVE

(fi)	(fitō)
(fitō)	

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	fieri, <i>to become</i>
PERF.	factus esse, <i>to have become</i>
FUT.	factum iri, <i>to be about to become</i>

229. When compounded with prepositions, *faciō* changes the *a* of the stem into *i*, and forms the passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: *perficiō*, *achieve*; passive, *perficior*; *interficiō*, *destroy*; passive, *interficior*. When compounded with words other than prepositions, *faciō* retains its *a*, and uses *fiō* as its passive: *patefaciō*, *lay open*; passive, *patefiō*; *calefaciō*, *warm*; passive, *calefiō*.

230. *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *be unwilling*; *mālō*, *prefer*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*  
*nōlō*, *nolle*, *noluī*  
*mālō*, *malle*, *māluī*

## 231.

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
	<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nolumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nolunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
IMPERF.	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nolēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
FUT.	<i>volam</i>	<i>nōlam</i>	<i>mālam</i>
	<i>volēs, etc.</i>	<i>nolēs, etc.</i>	<i>mālēs, etc.</i>
PERF.	<i>voluī</i>	<i>noluī</i>	<i>māluī, etc.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nolueram</i>	<i>mālueram, etc.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>noluerō</i>	<i>māluerō, etc.</i>

## 232.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<i>velim</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>mālim</i>
	<i>velis</i>	<i>nōlis</i>	<i>mālis</i>
	<i>velit</i>	<i>nōlit</i>	<i>mālit</i>
	<i>velimus</i>	<i>nōlimus</i>	<i>mālimus</i>
	<i>velitis</i>	<i>nōlitis</i>	<i>mālitis</i>
	<i>velint</i>	<i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālint</i>
IMPERF.	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>māllem</i>
PERF.	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>noluerim</i>	<i>māluerim, etc.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>voluissem</i>	<i>noluissem</i>	<i>māluissem, etc.</i>

## 233.

## IMPERATIVE

Sg. *nōlī*, *nōlitō*  
 Pl. *nōlite*, *nōlitōte*, *nōluntō*

## 234.

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>velle</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>malle</i>
PERF.	<i>voluisse</i>	<i>noluisse</i>	<i>māluisse</i>

## 235.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>volēns</i>	<i>nolēns</i>	_____
-------	---------------	---------------	-------



## PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

### AGREEMENT

**236:** A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as **ego vocō, I call; tū vocās, you call.**

a. A collective noun may take its predicate in the plural, as **pars veniunt, part come.**

b. The nearer subject is preferred to the more remote, as **mīlītēs et dux vēnit, the leader and his troops came.**

c. The copula may agree in number with the predicate noun, as **amantium irae amōris integrātiō est, lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.** Compare "the wages of sin is death."

**237.** The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, as **tālis vir, such a man; tālēs virī, such men; tālia dōna, such gifts.**

**238.** The common attribute of two or more substantives generally agrees with the nearest, rather than with the most important, as **cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, all seas and lands lay open.**

**239.** The common predicate attribute of two or more subjects is usually in the plural, as **pater et māter mortuī sunt, father and mother are dead;** but may agree with the nearest or most important, as **Caesar mortuus est et Jūlia, Caesar is dead, and Julia also.**

a. When the persons of the subjects are different, the predicate takes the first in preference to the second; the second in preference to the third.

b. When the genders of the subjects are different, the predicate attribute takes the nearest gender or the strongest (the masculine being the strongest of things with life, the neuter of those without), as **pater et māter mortuī sunt, father and mother are dead; mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant, wall and gate had been struck by lightning.**

**240.** The predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case, as **ille vir erat dux, that man was leader.**

a. The pronoun used as subject is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate as **negat Epicūrus; hoc enim vestrum lūmen est, Epicurus says No; for he is your great light!**

**241.** The appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person, as **Aenēās, pius dux, Aeneas, the devoted leader; Aenēās et Didō, superbī ducēs, Aeneas and Dido, proud leaders.**

**242.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, as *vir quī adest*, *the man who is present*; *dōna quae adsunt*, *the gifts which are here*; *ego quī hoc dicō*, *I who say this*.

a. Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative, as *urbem quam statuō vestra est*, *the city which I am founding is yours*.

**243. Poetic Plural.** The plural is often used instead of the singular, especially in poetry, to generalize a statement, for metrical reasons, or for rhetorical effect, as *irae*, *wrath, wrathful passions*; *fortitūdīnēs*, *gallant actions*; *ōra*, *face, features*; *scēptra*, *scepter*; *silentia*, *silence*.

a. **Plural of Modesty.** The plural of the first person is sometimes used instead of the singular, as *diximus multa*, *we (I) have spoken much*. Similarly *nōs* in all its cases for *ego*, etc., and *noster* in all its forms for *meus*, etc. This usage in English is sometimes called the "editorial we."

**244. Disproportion** is indicated by the comparative with *quam prō*, *than for*; *quam ut*, *than that*; *quam quī*, *than who*; as *minor caedēs quam prō tantā victoriā fuit*, *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory*; *major sum quam cui fortūna nocēre possit*, *I am too great for fortune possibly to hurt me*.

**245. In comparing two qualities**, use either *magis quam* with the positive, as *dīsertus magis est quam sapiēns*, *he is eloquent rather than wise (more eloquent than wise)*; or a double comparative, *acūtīōrem sē quam ornātīōrem vult*, *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate*.

**246. Superlatives** denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantives, as *summa aqua*, *the surface (of the) water*; *summus mōns*, *the top (of the) mountain*; *primō vĕre*, *in the beginning (of) spring*. Similarly *in mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city*; *reliqua, cētera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece*, and the like.

## PRONOUNS

**247.** Since the form of the verb indicates its person, the nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast, as *ego rēgēs ējēcī*, *vōs tyrannōs intrōdūxistis*, *I drove out kings; you bring in tyrants*.

a. The forms *meī*, *tuī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī* are used as objective genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as partitive genitives (284, 286).

**248.** The reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject, as *ipse sē quisque dīligit, quod sibi quisque cārus est*, *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself*.

a. The reflexive is sometimes used when reference is made to the logical subject, as *ferunt sua flāmina classem*, *their own (favorable) breezes waft the fleet*.

b. The reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject, especially in indirect discourse or in substantive volitive clauses (clauses of desire), as *sentit animus sē vī suā movērī*, *the mind feels that it moves by its own force*; *ā mē petivit ut sēcum essem*, *he asked me to be with him*; *librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvīt*, *he gave me the books (as he said) that his brother had left*.

249. The possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the first and second person pronouns, as *socius meus*, *a comrade of mine*; *tēlum tuum*, *a weapon of yours*; *amor meus*, *my love (which I feel)*; *spēs tua*, *your hope (which you have)*.

a. The appositive to a possessive adjective is in the genitive, as *urbs meā ūnīus operā fuit salva*, *the city was saved by my exertions alone*.

### ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

250. With words of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, order and position, time and season, the adjective is commonly employed for the adverb, as *id faciō volēns*, *I do this willing (ly)*.

### SPECIAL USE OF MOODS

251. The Indicative, not the subjunctive, is commonly used to express possibility, power, obligation, and necessity, as *possum persequi permulta oblētāmenta rērum rūsticārum*, *I might rehearse very many delights of country life*; *ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat*, *you ought to have been led to execution*.

252. The Potential Subjunctive. The present or perfect subjunctive may be used to express possibility in the present or future, as *tē superesse velim*, *I should like for you to survive*; *Platōnem nōn nimis valdē laudāveris*, *you can't praise Plato too much*; the imperfect subjunctive to express possibility in the past, *crēderēs victōs*, *you would (might) have thought them beaten*.

253. The Optative Subjunctive. The subjunctive, sometimes with *utinam*, *would that*, is often used in expressions of wishing. The negative is *nē*. *Valeās, farewell! nē veniant*, *may they not come!* *utinam nē nātus essem*, *would that I had not been born!* *utinam viveret frāter*, *would that my brother were alive!*

254. The Volitive Subjunctive. The subjunctive may be used in expressions of will, asseveration, command, or concession, as *stet haec urbs*, *may this city continue to stand*; *moriar sī magis gaudērem*, *may I die if I could be more glad*; *amēmus patriam*, *let us love our country*; *sit deus*, *granted that he is a god*. This subjunctive is often called jussive, hortatory,

or concessive, according as it expresses a command, an exhortation, or a concession, respectively.

**255.** The present imperative looks forward to immediate, the future imperative to contingent, fulfilment, as **haec dīcite vestrō rēgī**, *tell this to your king*; **cōsulēs nēmīnī pārentō**, *the consuls shall obey no one*.

**256.** The negative of the imperative is regularly **nōlī** with the infinitive; as **nōlī fugere**, *don't flee!* sometimes **nē** or **cavē (nē)** with the present or perfect subjunctive is also used, as **cavē (nē) faciās**, *don't do it!* **nē mortem timeās** (or **timueritis**), *don't fear death!*

a. In poetry **nē** is often found with the imperative, as **nē timē**, *fear not!* **nē fuge**, *don't run!*

## INFINITIVES

**257. The Historical Infinitive.** The present infinitive, with the subject in the nominative, is sometimes used to give a rapid sequence of events, as **hinc Ulixēs terrēre**, *henceforth Ulysses began to frighten (me)*. This is called the historical infinitive.

**258. The Infinitive as Neuter Subject.** The infinitive with or without a subject may be treated as a neuter subject, object, or predicate, as **dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī**, *it is sweet and glorious to die for one's fatherland*; **turpe est vincī**, *it is shameful to be conquered*; **scit vincere**, *he knows (how) to conquer*; **vivere est cōgitāre**, *to live is to think, living is thinking*.

**259. The Complementary Infinitive.** The infinitive is used with verbs of will, desire, power, duty, habit, inclination, resolve, continuance, purpose, etc., as **cupit morī**, *he wishes to die*; **dēbet haec vulnera patī**, *he ought to suffer these wounds*. This is called the complementary infinitive.

**260. The Infinitive as Object.** The accusative with infinitive is used as the object of verbs of emotion, will, and desire; as **tē vēnisse gaudeō**, *I rejoice that you have come*; **mē dicere vult**, *he wishes me to speak*.

**261. The Infinitive of Purpose.** In poetry the infinitive is often used to express purpose, as **nōn populāre vēnimus**, *we have not come to pillage*.

**262. The Infinitive of Exclamation.** The infinitive with accusative subject is used in exclamation or exclamatory questions, as **mē dēsistere**, *what! I desist?*

**263. The Infinitive of Indirect Statement (Indirect Discourse).** The infinitive is used after verbs of saying, showing, believing, and perceiving, to express an indirect statement; the present infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the perfect infinitive action



prior to it, the future infinitive action future to it, as *dicit tē errāre*, *he says that you are wrong*; *dicēbat tē errāre*, *he was saying that you were wrong*; *dicēbat tē errāsse*, *he was saying that you had been wrong*.

a. The future infinitive of *sum* followed by *ut* and the subjunctive is used in indirect statement of future action when the verb has no future participle, as *dicit fore (futūrum esse) ut metuās*, *he says that you will fear*.

**264. The Infinitive with Nouns.** The poets and later prose writers use the infinitive with nouns denoting attention or opportunity, as *amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs*, *desire to know our misfortunes*; *adfectāre potestās*, *opportunity to seize*.

**265. The Infinitive with Adjectives.** The infinitive is used with many adjectives and with participles of adjectival force, as *nescia vincī pectora*, *hearts not knowing (how) to yield*; *certa morī*, *determined to die*.

### GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

**266.** The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement, as *sapientia ars vivendī putanda est*, *philosophy is to be considered the art of living*; *nūlla spēs plācandī deī*, *no hope of appeasing god*; *cupidus maledicendī*, *eager to abuse*.

**267.** The dative of the gerund or gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of fitness and function; also after words of capacity and adaptation, and to express purpose, as *tēla apta mittendō*, *weapons suitable for hurling*; *comitia cōsulibus creandīs*, *elections for nominating consuls*.

**268.** The accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used with *ad* to express purpose, as *ad bellandum venimus*, *we come to make war*.

a. The accusative of the gerundive is used in agreement with the direct object of verbs of giving, sending, and leaving, etc., to indicate purpose, as *id mihi servandum dedit*, *he gave it to me to keep*; *Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat*, *Conon has the walls rebuilt*; *patriam diripiendam reliquimus*, *we have left our country to be plundered*.

**269.** The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used to denote means and cause, rarely manner, as *ūnus homō nobīs cūctandō restituit rem*, *one man by delaying raised our cause again*.

### SUPINES

**270.** The supine in *um* (accusative) is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose, as *veniunt spectātum*, *they come to see*.

**271.** The supine in *ū* (ablative) is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate respect, as *mirābile dictū*, *wonderful to relate (in the relating)*; *mirābile visū*, *wonderful to see (in the seeing)*.

## PARTICIPLES

**272. The Present Participle** denotes continuance, the perfect participle denotes completion at the time of the principal verb.

**273.** The participle is used after verbs of perception and representation to express the actual condition of the object at the time, as **Catōnem vīdī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum librīs**, *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him*; **illam audivī fūrtivā vōce loquentem**, *I heard her talking in a stealthy tone*.

**274. The Future Participle** is used in poetry and occasionally in prose to express desire or purpose, as **fabricāta est mächina inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsuper urbī**, *it has been built as an engine of war, to spy into our homes and come down upon the city from above*.

**275. The Perfect Participle** passive is used after verbs of causation and desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired, as **sī quī voluptātibus dūcuntur, missōs faciant honōrēs**, *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them give up honors* (at once and forever).

## CASES

## NOMINATIVE

**276.** The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, as **urbs stat**, *the city is standing*.

**277.** The subject of a historical infinitive is in the nominative, as **Ulixēs terrēre**, *Ulysses began to terrorize (me)*.

**278.** The predicate of a finite form of the verb *to be*, **sum**, or of a verb of seeming or becoming, or of the passive of a verb of making, choosing, showing, thinking, or calling, is in the nominative, as **pater est rēx**, *his father is king*; **pater fit rēx**, *his father becomes king*; **pater vocātur rēx**, *his father is called king*.

**279.** When an active verb of saying, showing, believing, or perceiving, is changed to the passive, the accusative subject of the infinitive may become the nominative subject of the leading verb, as **urbs dicitur magna fuisse**, *the city is said to have been great*. Compare **dicunt urbem fuisse magnam**, *they say that the city was great*.

## GENITIVE

**280. Genitive of Material.** The genitive may be used to denote the material or substance of which a thing consists, as **flūmina lactis**, *rivers of milk*. See 324 for the ablative of material.

**281. The Appositional Genitive** is used with *vōx*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, *rēs*, *urbs*, etc., as *nōmen amicitiae*, *the name of friendship*; *urbem Patavī*, *the city of Patavium*.

**282. The Epexegetical Genitive** (or genitive of explanation) is used after *genus*, *vitium*, *culpa*, etc., as *virtūtēs continentiae*, *gravitātis*, *jūstitiae*, *fidei*, *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor*.

**283. The Possessive Genitive** is used to denote possession, as *domus rēgis*, *the palace of the king, the king's palace*.

**284. The Subjective Genitive** is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive; the **Objective Genitive**, of the object of that action, as *metus hostium*, *the fear of the enemy*, which may mean: (1) the fear which the enemy feel (subjective genitive) or (2) the fear felt toward the enemy (objective genitive). The objective genitive is used with nouns, adjectives, and participles used as adjectives, as *cupidō glōriae*, *desire for glory*; *tempestātum potentem*, *ruling the storms*; *memorem vestri*, *oblītum suī*, *mindful of you, forgetful of himself*.

**285. Genitive of Quality.** The genitive with an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing, as *homō maximī corporis*, *a man of gigantic size*. This is called the genitive of quality (characteristic, description). Compare the ablative of quality or characteristic (330).

*a.* The genitive of quality (or description) or the possessive genitive may be used as a predicate, as *id virtūtis est*, *that is a mark of virtue*; *hujus erō vivus, mortuus hujus erō*, *hers I shall be living; dead, hers shall I be*; *haec domus est patris meī*, *this house is my father's*.

**286. The Partitive Genitive** stands for the whole to which a part belongs, as *pars hominum*, *part of the men*; *maximus omnium*, *greatest of all*. This is sometimes called the genitive of the whole.

**287. Genitive with Special Adjectives and Verbs.** Adjectives and verbs of fullness and want, of knowledge and ignorance, of desire and disgust, of participation and power, may take the genitive. Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in *āx*, as *plēnus labōris*, *full of toil*; *egēnus omnium*, *in need of everything*; *cōnsciū rēcti*, *conscious of right*; *ignārus malī*, *ignorant of misfortune*; *cupidus auri*, *desirous of gold*; *diligēns vērī*, *careful (a lover of) the truth*; *capāx imperi*, *capable of empire*; *implentur veteris Bacchī*, *they fill themselves with old wine*.

**288. Genitive with Verbs.** Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting usually take the genitive, as *meminit malōrum*, *oblītus est bonōrum*, *he remembers the evil, forgets the good*.

a. Sometimes these verbs take the accusative, especially of things, as *haec olim meminisse juvābit*, *to remember these things will one day be a pleasure*.

289. Verbs of Emotion take the genitive, as *miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis*, *pity a soul enduring what it does not deserve*.

290. Impersonal verbs of emotion take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the exciting cause, as *tuī mē miseret, mei piget*, *I pity you, I loathe myself*.

291. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the charge, as *accūsātus est prōditiōnis*, *he was accused of treason*; *damnātus est caedis*, *he was convicted of murder*; *absolūtus est criminis*, *he was acquitted of the charge*.

292. Genitive of Value. Verbs of rating and buying take the genitive of the general value, as *parvī existimāre*, *to consider of small account*; *ēmit equōs tantī quantī Caesar voluit*, *he bought the horses at the price Caesar wanted*.

293. Interest and *rēfert* take the genitive of the person, rarely of the thing concerned, as *interest omnium rēctē facere*, *it is to the interest of all to do right*; *rēfert omnium*, *it concerns everybody*.

a. Sometimes the ablative singular feminine of the possessive adjective is used, as *meā interest, meā rēfert*, *I am concerned*.

294. Genitive of Respect. The genitive is used with various adjectives to denote the respect to which a thing is true, as *aeger animī*, *sick at heart*. This is sometimes called the genitive of specification.

## DATIVE

295. The Indirect Object is put in the dative, as *aurum hominī dat*, *he gives gold to the man*.

296. Some verbs of giving take either the dative and the accusative, or the accusative and the ablative, as *hominī aurum dōnat*, *he presents the gold to the man*; *hominem aurō dōnat*, *he presents the man with gold*.

297. Dative with Special Verbs. Many verbs meaning favor, help, trust, bid and forbid, believe, persuade, obey, serve, threaten, pardon, spare, join, and contend, take the dative, as *invidēō nēmīnī*, *I envy no one*; *cēdit fortūnae*, *he yields to fortune*; *id mihi placet*, *that pleases me*; *pārēmus ducī*, *we obey our leader*; *crēdit hominī*, *he trusts the man*.

298. Dative with Compounds. Many intransitive verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, may take a



dative, as *accēdō equō*, *I approach the horse*; *antecellit omnibus*, *he excels all*; *nox incubat mari*, *night broods over the sea*; *piger ipse sibi obstat*, *the lazy man stands in his own way*.

a. Transitive verbs so compounded also take an accusative, as *mē vestris ōris deus appulit*, *god drove me to your shores*.

**299. Dative of Possession.** The dative is used with *esse* to denote possession, as *est ager nōbīs*, *we have a field*.

**300. The Ethical Dative** is used of the personal pronouns only, as *ecce tibi homō*, *here's your man!* *tibi bellum geret*, *he shall wage war (for you, let me tell you)*.

**301. The Dative of Reference** is used of the person interested or concerned in the action or of the person to whom a statement is referred, as *deō altāria fūmant*, *the altars smoke in honor of the god*; *pulchra est multis*, *she is beautiful to many (in the eyes of many)*; *est urbe ēgressis tumultus*, *as you go out of town (to those who have gone out of town) there is a mound*. This is also called the dative of interest, and at times is called the dative of advantage and of disadvantage.

**302. The Dative of Agent** is used with a passive verb, especially with the gerundive, as *id faciendum mihi*, *this must be done by me, I must do this*; *vetor fātis*, *I am forbidden by the fates*; *urbs capta est mihi*, *the city was captured by me*.

**303. Dative of Purpose.** The dative may denote the object for which (purpose), as *pars optāre locum tēctō*, *part were choosing a site for a home*.

a. The Dative of Purpose is often used in combination with the dative of reference (301), as *auxiliō iis fuit*, *he was a help to them*; *id erit cūrae mihi*, *that shall be my care*.

**304. Dative with Adjectives.** Adjectives of friendliness, fullness, likeness, nearness, with their opposites, take the dative, as *similis est hominī*, *he is like a man*; *homō amicus est mihi*, *the man is friendly to me*; *id erit ūtile omnibus*, *this will be useful to all*; *proximus sum egomet mihi*, *myself am nearest to me*.

**305. Dative of Separation.** Many verbs of warding off, robbing, and ridding, depriving, and separation take a dative, especially in poetry, as *ēripiēs mihi hunc errōrem*, *you will rid me of this mistake*; *silici scintillam excūdit*, *he strikes a spark from the flint*. This is called the dative of separation.

**306. Dative of Direction.** In poetry the place to which, or limit of motion, is often expressed by the dative, as *it clāmor caelō*, *a shout goes to heaven*; *multōs dēmittimus Orcō*, *we send many to Hades*.

## ACCUSATIVE

**307. The Direct Object** of active transitive verbs is in the accusative case and may denote either the object effected or the object affected, as *bellum gerunt*, *they wage war* (object effected or result produced); *condidit urbem*, *he founds the city* (object effected); *capit urbem*, *he captures the city* (object affected); *rēx dūcit hominēs*, *the king leads the men* (object affected).

**308. Accusative with Compounds.** Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of motion, compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, and *trāns*, take the accusative, as *adit urbem*, *he approaches the city*; *poenam subit*, *he submits to punishment*.

a. Transitive verbs thus compounded may have two accusatives, as *exercitum flūmen trājēcit*, *he threw his army across the river*.

**309.** In poetry the passive is often used in a reflexive or middle sense, as *fertur in hostis*, *he charges upon the enemy*.

a. When thus used the verb may take an accusative as a direct object, as *ferrum cingitur*, *he girds on (girds himself with) the steel*; *sinūs collēcta*, *having gathered her robes*; *tūnsae pectora*, *beating their breasts*; *insternor umerōs*, *I spread over my shoulders*.

**310.** The accusative and ablative of certain adjectives are used adverbially, as *multum jactātus*, *much tossed*; *primō*, *at first*. See 93-94.

**311. Accusative of Respect.** In poetry the accusative is often used with an adjective or verb to denote the part concerned, as *nūda genū*, *with knee bare (bare as to her knee)*; *ōs umerōsque deō similis*, *like a god in (as to) face and shoulders*. This is called the accusative of respect or specification.

**312. Accusative with Prepositions.** The accusative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

*ante*, *apud*, *ad*, *adversum*  
*circum*, *cis*, *ob*, *trāns*, *secundum*  
*penes*, *pōne*, *prope*, *per*,  
*post*, and all in *-ā*, and *-ter*.<sup>1</sup>

**313. Cognate Accusative.** Intransitive verbs may take an accusative of similar form or meaning, as *dum vitam vivās*, *as long as you live*; *somnium somniāvī*, *I dreamed a dream*. This is called a cognate accusative.

**314. Accusative of Extent.** The accusative may express extent in space, time, or degree, as *tumulū centum pedēs altum*, *a mound one hundred feet high*; *fuit rēx decem annōs*, *he was king ten years*; *sī mē amās tantum quantum tē amō*, *if you love me as I love you*. This is called

<sup>1</sup> Observe the metrical form of these four lines.

the accusative of extent. With expressions of time this is often called the accusative of duration of time.

**315. Place Whither** (place to which) is regularly denoted by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**, as **vēnit ad Italiam**, *he came to Italy*. This is sometimes called the accusative of limit of motion.

a. The names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs**, do not ordinarily take the preposition, as **vēnit Rōmam**, *he came to Rome*; **pater, veni domum**, *father, come home!* **fugiant rūs**, *they flee to the country*.

b. In poetry also the preposition is often omitted, as **Ītaliam Lāvinaque vēnit litora**, *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores*.

**316. Two Accusatives.** Verbs meaning to inquire, require, teach, and conceal take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing, as **quis tē illud docuit**, *who taught you that?* **Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit**, *he demanded a ship of the Milesians*; **quid mē istud rogās**, *why do you ask me that?*

a. Verbs of naming, making, taking, choosing, and showing, take two accusatives of the same person or thing, as **vocant urbem Rōmam**, *they call the city Rome*; **illum rēgem faciunt**, *they make him king*.

**317. The Subject of the Infinitive** is regularly in the accusative, as **vult mē dicere**, *he wishes me to speak*.

a. A predicate noun in such an infinitive phrase agrees with the subject, as **volunt eum rēgem esse**, *they wish him to be king*.

**318. Accusative of Exclamation.** The accusative may be used in exclamations, as **mē miserum**, *poor me!* **prō deum fidem**, *for heaven's sake!*

#### ABLATIVE

**319. Place Where** is denoted by the ablative, usually with **in**, as **in altō et in terrīs**, *on sea and on land*.

a. With names of towns and small islands the locative is used to express place where, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. See 345.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **terrā marique**, *on land and sea*; **Ītaliā**, *in Italy*; **litore**, *on the shore*; **pectore**, *in his heart*.

**320. Place Whence** is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex**, **dē**, or **ab**, as **ex marī**, *out of the sea*.

a. With names of towns, small islands, **domō**, *from home*, and with **rūre**, *from the country*, the preposition is regularly omitted, as **Karthāgine**, *from Carthage*.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **venit (ex) Ītaliā**, *he comes from Italy*.

**321. Ablative of Accompaniment.** Accompaniment (attendance) is denoted by the ablative with **cum**, as **venit cum sociīs**, *he comes with his comrades*.

a. With **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quā, quibus**, the preposition **cum** is regularly appended, as **mēcum**, *with me*; **tēcum**, *with you*; **sēcum**, *with him (self), with them (selves)*.

**322. Time When or Within Which** is denoted by the ablative, as **urbem cēpit nocte**, *he captured the city at night*; **nocte pluit tōtā**, *it rains all night*.

**323. Origin** (source or descent) is denoted by the ablative with or without **ex** or **dē**, as **nātus deā**, *born of a goddess (goddess-born)*; **ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es**, *you are his son and mine*.

**324. Ablative of Material.** Material is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex**, as **domus facta ex saxō, ex ferrō**, *a house made of stone, of iron*; **aere clipeus**, *a shield of bronze*. See 280 for the genitive of material.

**325. Ablative of Respect.** The respect in which a verb, adjective, or noun is to be taken is denoted by the ablative, as **sunt quīdam hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine**, *some people are human beings not in fact (reality), but in name (only)*. This is sometimes called the ablative of specification.

**326. Ablative of Accordance.** The ablative, usually with **dē** or **ex**, is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done or judged, as **ex senātūs cōsultō**, *in accordance with the decree of the senate*.

a. With certain words accordance is usually expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **cōnsuētūdine suā**, *according to his custom*; **tuō cōnsiliō**, *in accordance with your plan*; **meā sententiā**, *in my opinion*.

**327. Ablative with Comparatives.** Comparatives without **quam** are followed by the ablative, as **exēgī monumentum aere perennius**, *I have erected a monument more enduring than bronze*; **Ō mātrem pulchrā filiā pulchrior**, *O daughter fairer than a mother fair!*

**328. Ablative of Manner.** Manner is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective or with **cum**, as **cum virtūte vivere**, *to live virtuously*; **id fecit magnā cum cūrā**, *he did it very carefully*.

a. The simple ablative of certain nouns may be used to denote manner, as **cāsū**, *by chance*; **vī**, *by force*.

**329. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.** Attendant circumstance, situation, or result may be expressed by the ablative, usually with a modifier, and without a preposition, but sometimes with **cum**, as **magnō intervallō**, *at a great distance*; **frequentissimō senātū**, *at a crowded meeting of the senate*; **imperio suō**, *under his full power*; **clāmōre**, *with shouting*; **cum tuā perniciē**, *with (to) your destruction*; **magnō (cum) dolōre omnium**, *to the great grief of all*.



**330. Ablative of Quality.** Quality or description is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective, as *statūrā fuit humilī*, *he was of low stature*. This is sometimes called the ablative of characteristic or description. See 285 for the genitive of quality.

**331. Ablative of Means.** Means or instrument is denoted by the ablative, without a preposition, as *clārē videō oculis*, *I see clearly with my eyes*; *pugnābant armīs*, *they fought with arms*.

**332. Ablative of Cause.** Cause may also be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as *ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre*, *the good hate to sin from love of virtue*.

**333. Ablative of Agent.** The agent is denoted by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), as *urbs capta est ab illō duce*, *the city was captured by that leader*.

**334. The Standard of Measurement** is denoted by the ablative, as *magnōs hominēs virtūte mētimur, nōn fortunā*, *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune*.

**335. Measure of Difference** is put in the ablative, as *sōl multis partibus est major quam terra ūniversa*, *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth*. This is also sometimes called the degree of difference.

**336. Ablative of Price.** Definite price is put in the ablative, as *ēmit morte immortālītātem*, *he purchased deathlessness with death*.

*a.* General value is expressed by the genitive. See 292.

**337. Ablative with Adjectives.** The ablative is used with *dignus*, *indignus*, *frētus*, *contentus*, and *laetus*, and with adjectives of fullness and abundance, as *contentus hōc equō*, *content with this horse*; *dignus poenā*, *worthy of punishment*; *indignus poenā*, *unworthy of punishment*.

*a.* Also the verb *dignor*, *deem worthy*, takes the ablative in poetry and later prose, as *haud tāli mē dignor honōre*, *I do not deem myself worthy of such honor*.

**338. The Ablative of Route** is used to denote the way by which, as *prōvehimur pelagō*, *we sail forth over the sea*.

**339. Ablative with Prepositions.** The ablative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

*abs* (*ab*, *ā*), *cum*, *cōram*, *dē*  
*prae*, *prō*, *sine*, *ex* (or *ē*).

**340. Ablative of Separation.** Separation is expressed by the ablative case, with or without a preposition. This ablative is used especially with verbs of depriving, of freedom, and of want, as *sē privāvit oculis*, *he deprived himself of his eyes*; *omnibus egēre rēbus*, *to be in need of everything*; *tē ab eō liberō*, *I free you from him*. This is called the ablative of separation.

a. The ablative of separation is also used with **aliēnus** and with adjectives of freedom and want, as **aliēnum mājestāte deōrum**, *inconsistent with the dignity of the gods*; **liber cūrā**, *free from care*.

**341.** The ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus**, as **opus est mihi aurō**, *I need gold*; **ūsus est dictīs bonīs**, *there is need of kind words*.

**342.** Ablative with Special Verbs. **Ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**, and their compounds take the ablative, as **hīs vōcibus ūsa est**, *she spoke (used) these words*; **abūsus est nostrā patientiā**, *he used up our patience*; **fruimur lūce vitāe**, *we enjoy the light of life*; **fungor o:īciō**, *I am performing my duty*; **potitur victōriā**, *he gains the victory*; **lacte vēscuntur**, *they live on milk*.

**343.** Ablative Absolute. The ablative, combined with a participle, adjective, or noun, may serve to express the circumstances in which an act takes place, as **duce victō**, **abeunt**, *the leader having been conquered, they depart*; **urbe captā**, **hominēs redeunt**, *the city having been captured, the men return*. This phrase is called the ablative absolute.

a. The ablative absolute phrase may have an accessory idea of time, cause, or condition, as **Caesare cōsule haec lēx lāta est**, *this law was passed in Caesar's consulship*.

**344.** Vocative. The vocative, with or without **Ō**, *O*, is used in addressing a person or thing, as **Mūsa**, *O Muse!* **Aeole**, *O Aeolus!* **Ō rēgīna**, *O queen!*

#### LOCATIVE

**345.** Names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, **humus**, **domus**, and **rūs**, are put in the locative of the place where, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Crētae**, *in Crete*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **domī**, *at home*.

a. In poetry the names of countries and large islands also are sometimes found in the locative, as **Libyae**, *in Libya*.

#### ADVERBS

**346.** Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as **male vivit**, *he lives badly*; **bene labōrat**, *he works well*; **ferē omnēs**, *almost all*; **nimis saepe**, *too often*.

#### QUESTIONS

**347.** a. A question for information merely is generally introduced by **-ne**, as **videtne patrem**, *does he see his father?*

b. A question that expects the answer *yes* is generally introduced by **nōnne**, as **nōnne vidēs**, *don't you see?*

c. A question that expects the answer *no* is generally introduced by **num**, as **num vidēs patrem**, *you don't see your father (do you)?*

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

**348. The Deliberative Question** has its verb in the subjunctive, as *dicam an taceam, shall I speak or hold my tongue? quid facerem, what was I to do?*

a. Occasionally the present indicative is used in deliberative questions, as *quem sequimur, whom are we to follow?*

**349. The Indirect Question** has its verb in the subjunctive, as *quaeremus* (1) *quid fecerit*, (2) *quid faciat*, (3) *quid facturus sit*, *we shall ask what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

**350.** The direct form of these three questions would be: (1) *quid fecit?* (2) *quid facit?* (3) *quid faciet* (or *facturus est*)?

## TENSES

**351.** There are six tenses in Latin: the present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

1. **The Present** denotes continuance in the present; it is used: (1) of that which is going on now (specific present), as *auribus teneō lupum, I am holding a wolf by the ears;* (2) of statements that apply to all time (universal present), as *probitās laudātur et alget, honesty is praised and freezes.*

a. **The Historical Present.** The present is used far more frequently than in English as a lively representation of the past, as *cohortis incēdere jubet, he orders the cohorts to advance.* This is called the historical present.

b. The present is used in Latin of actions that continue into the present, especially with *jam, now, jam diū, now for a long time, jam pridem, now long since*, as *Mithridatēs annum jam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat, Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

c. The present is sometimes used for the future, or to denote attempted action (conative present), as *quam prendimus arcem, what citadel are we to seize? uxōrem dūcis, are you to be married? quid mē terrēs, why do you try to frighten me?*

2. **The Imperfect Tense** denotes continued or repeated action in the past, as *pugnābam, I was fighting, I kept fighting, I used to fight.* The imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

a. **The Imperfect of Endeavor.** The imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (imperfect of endeavor, conative imperfect), as *urbem relinqūbat, he was trying to leave the city; lēx abrogābātur, the law was to be abrogated.*

b. The imperfect and the historical perfect serve to supplement each other. The imperfect dwells on the process; the historical perfect states

the result. The imperfect counts out the items; the historical perfect gives the sum. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the historical perfect, the particulars of the action by the imperfect, as *Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlītās ēminēbat*, *Verres came into the forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

3. **The Future Tense** denotes continuance in the future, as *scribam*, *I shall be writing*. It is also used to express indefinite action in the future, as *scribam*, *I shall write*.

a. The future is sometimes used in an imperative sense, as in English, as *cum volet, accēdēs; cum tē vitābit, abibis*, *when she wants you, approach; when she avoids you, begone sir*. Compare such English expressions as "Thou shalt not kill."

b. A similar use is that of the future in asseverations, as *ita mē amābit Juppiter*, *so help me, Jove!*

4. **The Perfect Tense** has two distinct uses: the pure perfect and the historical perfect.

a. **The Pure Perfect** expresses completion in the present and hence is sometimes called the present perfect. It is used of an action that is now over and gone, as *vīximus*, *we have lived* (life for us has been); *Troja fuit*, *Troy has been* (but is no longer). It is more frequently used to denote the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition), as *āctum est, peristī*, *it is all over, you are ruined*; *equum et mūlum Brundisii tibi reliquī*, *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium* (they are still there).

b. **The Historical or Indefinite Perfect** states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence, as *vēnī, vidī, vicī*, *I came, I saw, I conquered*; *Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est*, *Milo came home, changed shoes and clothes, tarried a little while*.

5. **The Pluperfect** denotes completion in the past and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun, as *fuerat inimicus*, *he had been my enemy*.

6. **The Future Perfect** denotes both completion and attainment, as *fēcērō*, *I shall have done it, or I shall do it* (once and for all).

352. The Latin tenses are divided into primary (principal) and secondary (historical).

a. **The Primary Tenses** have to do with the present and future; they are the present, pure perfect, future, and future perfect.

b. **The Secondary Tenses** have to do with the past; they are the historical present, imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect.



## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**353.** Primary (principal) tenses are ordinarily followed by primary tenses, secondary (historical) by secondary tenses, as follows:

- |  |                             |  |
|--|-----------------------------|--|
| (1) All forms that relate to the present and future (primary tenses) | } are regularly followed by | { the present subjunctive (for continued action); the perfect subjunctive (for completed action).      |
| (2) All forms that relate to the past (secondary tenses)             |                             |  |
|  |                             | { the imperfect subjunctive (for continued action); the pluperfect subjunctive (for completed action). |

a. The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the imperfect indicative (*he was doing*) is represented in the dependent form by the perfect or pluperfect, thus: **nesciō quid fēcerit, nescīvī quid fēcisset.**

b. The above rule is subject to several modifications:

1. Tense refers to time, not merely to tense form, so that

(a). The historical present may be felt according to its sense as *past* or according to its tense as *present*.

(b). The pure perfect may be felt according to its starting-point as *past*, or according to its completion as *present*.

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future.

3. The dependent clause may depend on two or more clauses with their verbs in different tenses, and so follow a varying sequence.

4. An original imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive does not change its tense even when made to depend on a primary leading verb, for example, in unreal conditions (382, a).

**354.** The future relation of a verb in a dependent subjunctive clause may be made clearer by the use of an active periphrastic, as **cognōscam, quid factūrus sis, I shall (try to) find out what you are going to do; cognōvī quid factūrus essēs, I have found out (know) what you were going to do.**

**355. In Indirect Discourse** (indirect statement) all verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive and follow the general rule of sequence of tenses. See 390.

## QUOD CLAUSES

**356. Quod, the fact that, in that,** is used with the indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of adding and dropping, doing and

happening, and after demonstrative expressions, as **adde quod vīcimus**, *add the fact that we have won*; **praetereō quod nōn mānsit**, *I pass over the fact that he did not remain*; **bene facis quod tacēs**, *you do well in that you keep silent*; **hāc rē est infēlix, quod victus est**, *in this he is unfortunate, in that he was conquered*.

### CAUSAL CLAUSES

**357.** **Quod, quia, quoniam** and **quandō** take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to express cause, as **fūgit quod timēbat**, *he fled because he was afraid*; **fūgit quod timēret**, *he fled because (as he said) he was afraid*.

**358.** **Quod** is used after verbs of emotion with the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to give the reason (ground), as **gaudet quod vēnērunt**, *he rejoices that they have come*; **gaudet quod vēnerint**, *he rejoices that (as he says) they have come*.

### PURPOSE CLAUSES

**359.** Purpose is expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**, as **vēnit ut dūceret hominēs**, *he came to lead (that he might lead) the men*; **fugit nē capiātur**, *he flees lest he be (that he may not be) captured*. For the relative clauses of purpose see 388.

**360. Substantive Volitive Clauses.** The present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used in a substantive clause after verbs of will and desire, as **ōrō ut veniās**, *I beg that you come*; **volō ut veniat**, *I wish him to come*; **volui nē veniret**, *I wished him not to come*. Such a clause is called a substantive volitive clause.

a. The infinitive may also be used with such verbs, especially in poetry.

b. **Jubeō** regularly takes the accusative and infinitive.

### VERBS OF HINDERING

**361.** A verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **obstat nē veniat**, *he hinders him from coming*.

**362.** A negated verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **quīn** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **nihil obstat quīn** (or **quōminus**) **sis beātus**, *nothing hinders you from being happy*.

### VERBS OF FEARING

**363.** A verb of fear may be followed by **nē** or **ut** (= **nē + nōn**) with any tense of the subjunctive, as **timeō nē hostis veniat**, *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come*; **timeō nē hostis vēnerit**, *I fear*

lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come; **timeō ut amicus veniat**, I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.

### RESULT CLAUSES

**364.** The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used to denote result, as **tanta vis deōrum est ut eis nōn possimus obstāre**, so great is the power of the gods that we cannot oppose them; **nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn possit cadere**, no one is so strong but he can (that he cannot) fall.

a. A relative pronoun is sometimes used instead of **ut**, as **nēmō est tam fortis quī nōn possit cadere**.

**365.** A verb of effecting has the subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or **ut nōn**, as **faciam ut veniat**, I shall make (have) him come; **faciam nē veniat**, I shall bring it about that he does not come.

**366.** Negatived or questioned verbs of doubt and uncertainty may be followed by the subjunctive with **quīn**, as **nōn dubium est quīn urbs capiātur**, there is no doubt (but) that the city is being captured.

**367. Substantive Clauses of Result.** The subjunctive with **ut** is often used in a substantive clause to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun, as **tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imperēs**, all depends on this, your self-command (that you rule yourself); **id est proprium civitātis, ut sit libera**, this is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free (that it be free). This is called the substantive clause of result.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**368.** **Ut**, **ut primum**, **cum**, **cum primum**, **ubi**, **ubi primum**, **simul ac**, **simul atque**, in the sense of *as soon as*, and **postquam** take the perfect indicative, as **postquam vēnit dux, urbs capta est**, after the leader came, the city was captured; **ut vīdit urbem captam, fūgit**, as (soon as) he saw the city captured, he fled.

a. The imperfect indicative is used of overlapping action, and the pluperfect indicative when a definite interval is given, as **ut vidēbat hostēs vincentēs, rediit domum**, as he saw the enemy were conquering, he returned home; **postquam cēperat urbem, militēs dūcit domum**, after he had captured the city, he led his soldiers home.

**369.** When two repeated actions are contemporaneous, both are put in the indicative in tenses of continuance, as **rēx bellum gerēbat cum volēbat**, the king waged war whenever he wished.

**370.** When one repeated action comes before another, the antecedent action is put in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect indicative, the

subsequent in the present, imperfect, or future indicative, according to the relation, as **quotiēns cecidit, surgit**, *as often as he falls (has fallen), he rises*; **quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat**, *as often as he fell (had fallen), he rose*; **quotiēns ceciderit, surget**, *as often as he falls (shall have fallen), he will rise*.

**371. Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quamdiū**, *so long as, while*, take the indicative of all tenses, as **vita dum superest, bene est**, *while (as long as) there is life, it is well*; **dōnec grātus eram tibi, fēlix fui**, *while I was pleasing to you, I was fortunate*; **quoad potuit restitit**, *he resisted as long as he could*.

**372. Dum**, *while, while yet*, usually takes the present indicative when the verb of the main clause is in the past tense, as **dum hae rēs aguntur, urbs ardēbat**; *while these things were going on, the city was burning*.

**373. Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, *until*, take the present, historical present, historical perfect, or future perfect indicative, when suspense or anticipation are not involved, as **manēbō dum venit**, *I shall remain until he comes*; **mānsi dum (quoad, dōnec) vēnit**, *I remained until he came*. See 374.

**374. Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, *until*, take the subjunctive when suspense, anticipation, or design is involved, as **mānsi dum venīret**, *I remained until he could come*; **expectō dum veniat**, *I am waiting for him to come*. See 373.

**375. Dum, modo, and dummodo**, *if only, provided only*, take the present or imperfect subjunctive in a proviso clause, as **ōderint dum metuant**, *let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear)*; **veniat, dum maneat**, *let him come, provided that he remains*.

**376. Antequam and priusquam** take the indicative present, perfect, or future perfect when the time limit is stated as a fact, as **antequam abeō, dicam pauca**, *before I go, I shall say a few words*; **antequam abiit, dixerat pauca**, *before he went, he had said a few words*.

*a. Antequam and priusquam* take the subjunctive when the action is anticipated, contingent, or designed, as **urbem capit priusquam rēx veniat**, *he captures the city before the king may arrive (too soon for the king to arrive)*; **ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus**, *we see the flash of lightning before we hear the sound (of thunder)*.

### CUM CLAUSES

**377. Temporal cum**, *when*, is used with all tenses of the indicative to designate merely temporal relations, as **animus nec cum adest nec cum discēdit appāret**, *the soul is not visible, either when it is present or when it departs*; **pāruit cum necesse erat**, *he obeyed when it was necessary*.



**378. Descriptive *cum*, when,** is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place, as *cum dīmicāret, occīsus est*, *when he engaged in battle, he was slain*; *Caesar cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī*, *when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city*. This *cum* is sometimes called *cum circumstantial*.

**379. Causal or Concessive *cum*, when, whereas, although,** is used with any tense of the subjunctive, as *quae cum ita sint, dēbet fugere*, *since these things are so, we must flee*; *cum pār esset armīs, tamen dēbuerat fugere*, *although he was equal in arms, nevertheless he had to flee*.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**380. The Logical (More Vivid or Simple) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the same tense of the indicative in both the subordinate clause (the condition or protasis) and the principal clause (the conclusion or apodosis) as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
<i>Sī id crēdis,</i> <i>If you believe that,</i>	<i>errās,</i> <i>you are wrong.</i>
<i>Sī id crēdēbās,</i> <i>If you believed that,</i>	<i>errābās.</i> <i>you were wrong</i>
<i>Sī id crēdidistī,</i> <i>If you (have) believed that,</i>	<i>errāvistī,</i> <i>you were (have been) wrong</i>
<i>Sī id crēdēs,</i> <i>If you (shall) believe that,</i>	<i>errābis.</i> <i>you will be wrong.</i>
<i>Sī id crēdiderīs,</i> <i>If you shall have believed that,</i>	<i>errāverīs,</i> <i>you will have been wrong.</i>

**381. The Ideal (Less Vivid) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the present or perfect subjunctive, in both clauses, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
<i>Sī id crēdās,</i> <i>If you should (were to) believe that,</i>	<i>errēs.</i> <i>you would be wrong.</i>
<i>Sī id crēdiderīs,</i> <i>If you should (prove to) have believed that,</i>	<i>errāverīs (rare)</i> <i>you would have been wrong.</i>

*a.* In indirect discourse, or indirect statement, the verb of the conditional clause of a logical or less vivid conditional sentence is in the subjunctive and follows the general rule of sequence of tenses, as *dīcō tē, sī id crēdās, errāre*; *dīxī tē, sī id crēderēs, errāre*.

**382. The Unreal (Contrary to Fact) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to present fact,

and the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to past fact, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
<b>Sī id crēderēs,</b> <i>If you believed that (but you do not),</i>	<b>errārēs.</b> <i>you would be wrong.</i>
<b>Sī id crēdidissēs,</b> <i>If you had believed that (but you did not),</i>	<b>errāvissēs,</b> <i>you would have been wrong</i>

a. In indirect discourse the verb of an unreal condition is in the same mood and tense as it would be in direct discourse, and the verb of an unreal conclusion takes one of four special periphrastic forms, as follows:

<b>Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.</b>	{ (active, contrary to present fact)
<b>Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.</b>	{ (active, contrary to past fact)
<b>Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperērīs.</b>	{ (passive, contrary to present fact)
<b>Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperērīs</b>	{ (passive, contrary to past fact)

b. Similarly in substantive clauses, as follows:

**Nōn dubitum est quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs.**  
**Nōn dubitum erat quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs.**

c. In poetry the present subjunctive is often used in both clauses of an unreal conditional sentence.

d. All conceivable combinations of types of mixed conditions and conclusions may be used; as the conclusion may have the form of a wish, command, statement of obligation, necessity, etc. These mixed forms are especially common with verbs which convey a future idea, as **dēbeō**, *ought*; **possum**, *be able, can*; **studeō**, *desire*; **volō**, *will, wish*, as **sī Pompēius privātus esset, tamen is mittendus erat**, *if Pompey were a private citizen, nevertheless he ought to be sent*; **vincite sī vultis**, *have your way if you will*.

**383. Ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, or velut sī**, and the subjunctive are used in a clause of comparison, as **tantus metus patrēs cēpit, velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset**, *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates*.

a. The subjunctive verb in such a clause follows the rule of sequence of tenses.

### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

**384.** A Concessive Clause may be introduced by **etsī, etiamsī, or tametsī**, with the indicative or subjunctive; by **quamquam**, with the indicative only; by **quamvis**, with the subjunctive only.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

**385.** The Relative Clause as such, that is, a clause used as an adjective to modify a noun, regularly has its verb in the indicative, as *amō virum quī fortis est*, *I like a man who is brave, I like a brave man.*

**386.** An indefinite or general relative clause usually has its verb in the indicative; so explanatory *quī*, when equivalent to *quod*, as *errāverim fortasse, quī mē aliquid putāvī*, *I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

**387.** A relative clause that depends on an infinitive or a subjunctive, and forms an integral part of the thought, has its verb in the subjunctive by attraction, as *pigrī est ingenī contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa*, *it is the mark of a lazy mind to be content with what has been found out by others.*

**388.** A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when *quī* is equivalent to *ut* in an expression of purpose, as *ēripiunt aliis quod aliis dent*, *they snatch from some to give to others.* This is called the relative clause of purpose.

**389.** A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when *quī* is equivalent to *ut* in a clause of description or characteristic; so after an indefinite antecedent, after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, *aptus*, etc., as *multi sunt quī ēripiant*, *there are many to snatch away*; *sunt (eī) quī dicant*, *there are those who say (some say)*; *dignus est quī cōsul fiat*, *he is worthy of being made consul.* This is called the subjunctive of characteristic.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**390.** Indirect discourse (indirect statement), as opposed to direct discourse, gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

*a.* Indirect discourse depends on some verb of saying, showing, believing, perceiving, or thinking, expressed or implied.

*b.* In indirect discourse a principal statement has its verb in the infinitive, as *dicīt eōs vēnisse*, *he says that they have come*; *dicīt eōs venīre*, *he says that they are coming*; a question or a command has its verb in the subjunctive, as *quaerīt quid velint*, *he asks what they want*; *quaesivīt quid vellent*, *he asked what they wanted*; *dicīt hominibus ut veniant*, *he tells the men to come*; *dixīt hominibus ut fugerent*, *he told the men to flee.*

*c.* A subordinate clause in indirect discourse has its verb in the subjunctive. See 355.

## VERSIFICATION

## THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER

**391.** One of the most common meters of Latin poetry is the **daCTylic hexameter**. It was commonly employed by the Greeks and Romans in epic (narrative) poetry, such as the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, the *Aeneid* of Vergil, and the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid. It is occasionally used in English, as in Longfellow's *Evangeline*. Some of the most beautiful Latin hexameters ever written are those of Vergil and Ovid.

**392.** There are six feet in a hexameter (Gr. **hex**, *six*; **metron**, *measure*) verse or line. The first five feet are either dactyls (Gr. **dactylos**, *finger*), i.e., one long syllable followed by two shorts (— ∪ ∪), or spondees, i.e., two longs (— —). The sixth foot is always treated as a spondee (— —).

**393.** The final syllable of a hexameter verse may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**); but for practical purposes in scansion it may be considered long and thus marked.

**394.** The Metrical Scheme of a verse is thus:

— ∪ ∪   — ∪ ∪   — ∪ ∪   — ∪ ∪   — ∪ ∪   — —

i.e., the first syllable of each foot must be long. It is also given slightly more stress than the other half of the foot. This stress is called the metrical accent.

*a.* A short syllable is often lengthened under the metrical accent or before a pause.

**395.** The fifth foot of the hexameter is almost always a dactyl. When a spondee is used in this place, it gives the verse a slower movement than usual. Such a verse is then called spondaic.

**396.** For metrical purposes each syllable of a Latin verse is considered either long or short, a long syllable occupying approximately twice as much time as a short (14). For this reason a spondaic foot (— —) is considered the metrical equivalent of a dactylic foot. (— ∪ ∪).

**397.** Observe that only long vowels are marked in the Latin words in this book. For the general rules on the length of syllables, see 14-24.

**398. Elision.** Whenever a word ends with a vowel, diphthong, or **m**, and the following words begin with a vowel or **h**, the first vowel or diphthong is regularly elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a light and hurried half-pronunciation, somewhat similar to grace notes in music.



**403. Synizesis.** Two successive vowels which do not ordinarily form a diphthong are sometimes pronounced as one syllable for the sake of the meter. This sort of contraction of two syllables into one within a word is called synizesis.

$$\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \quad \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \quad \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \quad \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \quad \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0$$

**405.** In reading Latin poetry orally, the words should be kept distinct and no break made between the separate feet, unless there is a pause in sense.

**406.** Careful attention should be paid to the meaning of the passage, and the various pauses in sense should be indicated by the voice. Of course the voice should not be allowed to drop at the end of a verse unless there is a distinct pause in sense.

**407.** Remember that the rhythm of Latin verse is based primarily upon the regular succession of long and short syllables, that of English primarily on the succession of accented and unaccented syllables.

**408.** To obtain facility in reading Latin verse, a considerable amount of it should be memorized, special attention being paid to the quantity, i.e., approximately twice as much time should be given to each long syllable as to a short one.

**409. Caesúra.**<sup>1</sup> Whenever a word ends within a foot the break is called caesura. If this coincides with a pause in the verse, it is called the principal caesura, or sometimes simply the caesura of the verse.

**410.** A single verse may have more than one caesura, each marked by a pause in sense. The principal caesuras are: (1) After the first long syllable of the third foot; (2) After the first long syllable of the fourth foot.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC

**411. Alliteration** is the repetition of the same letter or sound, as the sound of *v* in *tum vīctū revocant vīrīs*, *then they recall their strength with food*.

**412. Anacolouthon** or want of sequence occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**413. Anáphora** is the repetition of a word or words at the beginning of successive clauses, as *mīrantur dōna Aenēae, mīrantur Iūlum*, *they marvel at the gifts of Aeneas, they marvel at Iulus*.

**414. Anástrophe** is an inversion of the usual order of words, as *tē propter*, *on account of you*.

**415. Antíthesis** is an opposition or contrast of words or ideas, as *speciē blanda, reapse repudianda*, *charming in appearance, in reality to be rejected*.

**416. Aposiopésis** is a breaking off before the close of the sentence, as *quōs ego — sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs*, *whom I — but it is better to calm the angry waves*.

<sup>1</sup> In the teaching of scansion to beginners, it is preferable to omit all reference to caesura for at least the first two or three years of reading Latin poetry. These paragraphs on caesura are given for the benefit of teachers who may wish their pupils to know something about it.

417. **Apóstrophe** is a sudden break from the previous method of discourse and an addressing, in the second person, of some person or object, absent or present, as **Ō patria, Ō divum domus, O fatherland, O home of the gods!** (In this case the speaker is in Carthage, many miles from his native land, and is making an apostrophe to Troy which had been destroyed by the Greeks.)

418. **Asýndeton** is the omission of conjunctions, as **ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant litore puppēs,** *the anchor is cast from the prow; the sterns rest on the beach.*

419. **Brachýlogy (breviloquentia)** is the failure to repeat an element which is to be supplied in a more or less modified form, as **tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima (es) vellem,** *would that you were as fortunate as (you are) fair.*

420. **Chiasmus** is the arrangement of corresponding pairs of words in opposite order, as **Īlionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,** *he sought Ilioneus with his right (hand) and with his left Serestus,* where **Īlionēa** and **Serestum** form one pair and **dextrā laevāque** form the other pair.

421. **Ellipsis** is the omission of one or more words which are obviously understood but must be supplied to make the expression grammatically complete, as **Aeolus haec contrā,** *Aeolus thus (spoke) in reply.* The words most commonly omitted are **agō, dicō, faciō, loquor,** and **sum.**

422. **Enallage** is a shift from one form to another, as **vōs (pl.), Ō Calliopē (sg.), precor,** *I entreat you, O Calliope.*

423. **Euphemism** is the substitution of an agreeable or nonoffensive word or expression for one that is harsh, indelicate, or otherwise unpleasant, as **sī quid eī acciderit,** *if anything should happen to him (i.e., if he should die).*

424. **Euphony** is the effect produced by words or sounds so combined and uttered as to please the ear.

425. **Hendiádys** is the expression of an idea by means of two nouns connected by a conjunction instead of by a noun and a limiting adjective, or by one noun limited by another, as **vī et armis,** *by force of arms; vulgus et multitudō,* *the common herd.*

426. **Hypállage** is an interchange in the relations of words, as **dare classibus Austrōs,** *to give the winds to the fleet* (instead of *to give the fleet to the winds*).

427. **Hyperbaton or Trajection** is the violent displacement of words, as **per omnis tē deōs ōrō,** *by all the gods I beg you.*

428. *Hypérbole* is rhetorical exaggeration, as *praeruptus aquae mōns*, a sheer mountain of water, referring to a great wave of the sea.

429. *Hýsteron Próteron* is a reversal of the natural order, as *moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus*, let us die and rush into the midst of arms.

430. *Irony* is a sort of humor, ridicule, or light sarcasm which states an apparent fact with the manifest intention of expressing its opposite, as *scīlicet is superis labor est, ea cūra quiētōs sollicitat*, of course this is work for the gods, this care vexes them in their serenity!

431. *Lítotes* or *Understatement* is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the negative. *Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī*, soiled with not unbecoming (i.e., glorious) dust.

432. *Métaphor* is an implied comparison, as *illa, Trojae et patriae commūnis Erinys*, she (Helen), the common curse of Troy and of her native land.

433. *Metónymy* is the substitution of one word for another which it suggests, as *Cerēs*, goddess of grain, for grain.

434. *Onomatopoéia* is the use of words of which the sound suggests the sense, as *magnō cum murmure montis*, with a mighty rumbling of the mountain.

435. *Oxymóron* is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other, as *cum tacent clāmant*, when they are silent they cry out.

436. *Paraleípsis* or *Preteritio* is an apparent omission by which a speaker artfully pretends to pass by what he really emphasizes, as *nōn dicō tē pecūniās accēpisse; rapinās tuās omnis omittō*, I do not say that you accepted sums of money; I omit all your acts of rapine; *praetereō quod nōn mānsit*, I pass over the fact that he did not remain.

437. *Personification* is an attribution of the element of personality to an impersonal thing, as *aspirat fortūna labōrī*, fortune favors our struggle; *fuge crūdēlis terrās, fuge litus avārum*, flee the cruel lands, flee the greedy shore.

438. *Pléonasm* is the use of superfluous words, as *sic ore locūta est*, thus she spoke with her mouth.

439. *Polysýndeton* is the use of unnecessary conjunctions, as *ūnā Eurusque Notusque ruunt crēberque procellis Áfricus*, both the East wind and the South wind and the Southwester rush forth together.



**440. Prolépsis** or **Anticipation** is the use of a word, usually a modifier, before it is logically appropriate, as **summersās obrue puppis**, *overwhelm the sunken ships, i.e., sink and overwhelm the ships.*

**441. Símile** is a figure of speech which likens or asserts an explicit comparison between two different things in one or more of their aspects, as **pār levibus ventis volucrique simillima somnō**, *like unto the light winds and most resembling winged sleep; velut cum coërta est sēditiō*, *just as when a riot has arisen.*

**442. Sýnchysis** is an interlocked order of words, as **saevae memorem Jūnōnis iram**, *fell Juno's unforgetting hate.*

**443. Synécdoche** is the use of a part for the whole, or the reverse, as **tectum**, *roof*, for **domus**, *house*; **puppis**, *stern*, for **nāvis**, *ship*; **mūcrō**, *point*, for **gladius**, *sword.*

**444. Sýnesis** is a construction according to sense and not according to grammatical form, as **pars veniunt**, *part come.*

**445. Tmesis** is the separation of the parts of a compound word by one or more intervening words, as **quae mē cumque vocant terrae** (for **quaecumque terrae mē vocant**), *whatever the lands that call me.*

**446. A Transferred Epithet** is an epithet which has been transferred from the word to which it strictly belongs to another word connected with it in thought, as **vēlivolum mare**, *the sail-flying sea*, where *sail-flying* is properly applied to ships which sail the sea rather than to the sea itself.

**447. Zeugma** is the junction of two words with a modifying or governing word which strictly applies to only one of them, as **Danaōs et laxat claustra**, *he looses the barriers and (sets free) the Greeks.*



## INDEX TO THE GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

(The references are to sections.)

ǎ, ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns, 68; nom., acc. and voc. pl. ending of neuters, 33, *c*

ā, prepositions ending in, 312

ā or ab with abl., 320, 339, 333

Ability, verbs of with inf., 259

Ablative, defined, 30; in ābus, 34, *c*; in ī, 55, *d*, 56, *b*, 77, 81, 82, *a*; prepositions with, 339; adv. forms of, 310; of supine, 271; pl. like the dat., 33, *d*; quīs and quī as abl. and dat., 109, *c*, *d*

Ablative, Syntax: abs., 343; accompaniment, 321; accordance, 326; as adv., 95, 310, 328, *a*; agent, 333; with adjectives (dignus, aliēnus, etc.), 337, 340, *a*; cause, 332, gerund(ive), 269; with comparatives, 327; degree of difference, 335; with dep. verbs (ūtor, etc.), 342; with dignor, 337, *a*; with dōnō, 296; manner, 328; material, 324; means, 331; with gerund(ive), 269; measurement, 334; with opus est and ūsus est, 341; origin, 323; place where, 319; place whence, 320; with prepositions, 339; price, 336; respect, 325; route, 338; separation, 340; time, 322

Abounding, words of with gen., 287

Absolute, abl. abs., 343

absum, conj., 123

ābus, dat. and abl. ending, 34, *c*

Accent, 25–27; metrical, 394; of nouns in ius, ium, 37, *a*, *b*

Accompaniment, abl. of with cum, 321

Accomplishing, verbs of, 365

Accordance, abl. of, 326

Accusative, defined, 30; in neuters like nom., 33, *c*; sing. in *a*, 68; sing. in im, 56, *a*; pl. in is, 56, *d*; 83, *b*; of supine, 270; names of towns, domus and rūs, 315, *a*

Accusative, Syntax: adv., 309–311, 95, *b*; cognate, 313; direct obj., 307; exclamation, 318; extent, 314; Greek, 309–311; subj. of inf., 317; with middle voice, 309; with prepositions, 312; respect, 311; of gerund(ive) with ad, 268; two accusatives: verbs of asking, making, etc., 316; remembering and forgetting, 288, *a*; compound verbs, 308

Accusing and acquitting, gen. with verbs of, 291

ācer, decl., 77; compar., 89

ac si, in clauses of compar., 383

Action, see tenses, moods, etc.

Active voice, 115, *a*; changed to pass., 279; act. periphrastic, 199, *a*

ad, with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308; with gerund(ive), 268

adde quod, with indic., 356

Adjectives, definition, 70; *a* and *o* stems, 71; *i* stems, 76; consonant stems, 80–82; three terminations, 77; compar., 83–92; decl. of compar., 91; num. adjectives, 98–100; pronom. adjectives, 73, 102, *a*, 113, *a*, 114; poss. adjectives, 103, *a*, 104, *a*, 106, *a*

Adjectives, Syntax: agreement, 237–239; as adverbs, 95, 250, 310; with inf., 265; with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with abl., 337; pred., 239; double compar., 245, *a*

Advantage, dat. of, 301

Adverbial accusative, 310; adv. abl., 328

Adverbs, 93–97; formation, 95; compar., 96–97; adjectives used adverbially, 250, 310, 328, *a*; use, 346; double compar., 245; num. adverbs, 101

Adversative clauses, 379, 384

- adversum**, with acc., 312  
**ae**, diphthong, 5  
**aeger**, decl. like **pulcher**, 71  
**Aenēās**, decl., 66  
**āēr**, decl., 68  
**aethēr**, decl. like **āēr**, 68  
**Affecting**, acc. of, 307  
**Affirmative**, expressed by two negatives, 431; **nōnne** for affirmative answer, 347, *b*  
**Agent**, dat. of, 302; abl. of, 333  
**ager**, decl. like masc. of **pulcher**, 71  
**Agreement**, nouns: appos., 241; pred., 240, 278, 317, *a*; adjectives: 237–238; pred., 239; poss., 249; pronouns: rel., 242; dem., 240, *a*; verbs: 236; according to sense, 236, *a*, 444  
**āi**, ending of gen. sing., 34, *b*  
**ajō**, pronounced **aj-jō**, 6, *b*  
**al**, decl. of nouns in, 56  
**aliēnus**, for gen. of **alius**, 74, *a*; abl. with 340, *a*  
**aliquis** (**aliqui**), decl., 113  
**alius**, decl., 74  
**Alliteration**, 411  
**Alphabet**, 1–6  
**alter**, decl., 74; **alteriūs** in gen. for **alius**, 74, *a*; ordinal num., 98  
**alteriūs** for **alius**, 73, *a*  
**Although**, how expressed, 379, 384  
**an**, in double questions, 348  
**Anacolouthon**, 412  
**Anaphora**, 413  
**Anastrophe**, 414  
**anceps**, syllaba, 393  
**Anchīsēs**, decl., 66  
**Androgeōs**, decl., 67  
**Andromachē**, decl. like **Pēnelopē**, 66  
**animal**, decl., 56  
**Answer** to questions, 347  
**ante**, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308  
**Antecedent**, agreement of rel. pron. with, 242; attracted to case of rel., 242, *a*; undefined in char. clauses, 389  
**Antepenult**, 25, *a*  
**antequam**, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*  
**Anticipation**, clauses of, 440; attraction of antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*  
**Antithesis**, 415  
**apis**, gen. pl. in **ium**, 56, *c*  
**Apodosis**, defined, 380  
**Aposiopesis**, 416  
**Apostrophe**, 417  
**Appointing**, verbs of with two accusatives, 316, *a*  
**Apposition**, 241; pronouns and poss. adjectives, 249; expressed by gen., 281; **quod** and **ut** clauses with nouns and pronouns, 356, 367; inf. with nouns, 264  
**aptus**, with dat. of gerund(ive), 267; with rel. clause of char., 389  
**apud**, prep. with acc., 312  
**āre**, inf. ending, 132  
**ās**, acc. pl. of Greek nouns in, 65, *a*  
**Asking**, verbs of with two accusatives, 316; questions, 347–349  
**Asseverations**, with fut. indic., 351, 3, *b*; subj., 254  
**Asyndeton**, 418  
**At**, translated by prep. with abl., 319; by loc., 345  
**āter**, decl. like **pulcher**, 71  
**Athōs**, decl. like **Androgeōs**, 67  
**Atlās**, decl., 68  
**atque**, **simul atque**, 368; **ac sī**, 383  
**Attendant circumstance**, abl. of, 329  
**Attraction**, antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*; dem. to gender of pred., 240, *a*; of verb in rel. clauses to subjunctive, 387  
**au**, diphthong, 5  
**audeō**, semi-deponent, 205  
**audiō**, conj., 172; with dat., 297  
**avis**, decl., 65, *b*  
**āx**, gen. with verbal adjectives in, 287  
  
**b**, stems in, 50; becomes **p** before **s** and **t**, 128, 6  
**Becoming**, verbs of, constr. with, 278  
**Believing**, verbs of, with dat., 297; pers. constr. with pass., 279  
**bene**, compar., 97  
**Beseeching**, verbs of, with **ut** (**ne**), 360  
**bis**, num. adv., 101  
**bonus**, compar., 92; decl., 71  
**Brachylogy**, 419  
**Buying**, abl. with verbs of, 336  
  
**c**, stems ending in, 51; represents changed **g** before **t**, 128, 6  
**Caere**, decl., 56, *b*



Caesura, 409-410  
*canālis*, decl., 56, *b*  
*canis*, decl., 56, *c*  
*capiō*, conj., 163-171  
*caput*, decl., 52  
 Cardinal numerals, 98-99  
*careō*, abl. with, 340  
 Cases, 30; endings, 32; of pred.  
   substantive, 240, 278; for uses see  
   nom., gen., etc.  
*cāsus*, decl., 59  
 Cause, abl. of, 332; gerund(ive), 269;  
   expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a*;  
   clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*,  
   *quandō*, 357-358; *cum* with subj.,  
   379; rel. clause, 386  
 Causing, verbs of, with perf. part.,  
   275; with gerundive, 268, *a*  
 Caution, constr. with verbs of, 363  
*cavē*, in prohibitions, 256  
*-ce*, enclitic, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*  
 Ceasing, complementary inf. with  
   verbs of, 259  
*cētera*, partitive use, 246  
 Characteristic, rel. clause of, 389;  
   abl. of, 330; gen. of, 285  
 Chiasmus, 420  
 Choosing, two accusatives with verbs  
   of, 316, *a*  
*circum*, prep. with acc., 312; dat.  
   with compounds of, 298; acc. with  
   compounds of, 308  
 Circumstances, part., 273; abl. abs.,  
   343; *cum* descriptive, 378; abl.,  
   329  
*cis*, prep. with acc., 312  
 Cities and islands, names of, fem., 38,  
   *a*; in acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*;  
   loc., 345  
 Clauses, see substantive, temporal,  
   conditional, etc.  
 Cognate accusative, 313  
 Collective nouns, with pl. verbs,  
   236, *a*  
*comes*, decl., 52  
 Command, imp., 255; subj., 254; fut.  
   indic., 351, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., 390, *b*  
 Commanding, verbs of, with dat.,  
   297; with inf., 360, *a*, *b*; with subj.,  
   360  
 Common syllables, 17  
 Comparative, 84; decl., 91; of ad-  
   verbs, 96; double compar., 245;  
   conjunctions, 383

Comparison, of adjectives, 83; of  
   adverbs, 96; disproportion, 244;  
   abl. of, 327; degree of difference,  
   335; clauses of with *ut* *sī*, *quasi*,  
   etc., 383; metaphor, 432; simile, 441  
 Complement, subj., 278-279; obj.,  
   316, *a*, 317, *a*; agreement with  
   subj., 238-240  
 Complementary infinitive, 259  
 Complex sentences, see clauses  
 Compounds, of *sum*, 123; of *faciō* and  
   *fiō*, 229; dat. with, 298  
 Compound verbs, with dat., 298;  
   with dat. and acc., 298, *a*; with  
   acc., 308; with two accusatives,  
   308, *a*  
*con-*, in composition with dat., 298;  
   in composition with acc., 308  
 Conative, pres., 351, 1, *c*; impf., 351,  
   2, *a*  
 Concessive clauses, with *cum*, 379;  
   with *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*,  
   etc., 384; concessive subj., 254;  
   see participles and abl. abs.  
 Conclusion, see conditions  
 Condemning and convicting, gen.  
   with verbs of, 291  
 Condition, of an object, expressed by  
   part., 273  
 Conditions, simple, 380; more vivid,  
   380; ideal (less vivid), 381; con-  
   trary to fact (unreal), 382, *c*;  
   mixed, 382, *d*; in ind. disc., 381, *a*,  
   382, *a*; in substantive clauses, 382,  
   *c*; abl. abs., 343, *a*  
 Conjugation, 116, 126-128; see verbs  
   and first, second, etc.  
 Conjunctions, see *ut*, *cum*, etc.;  
   omission of, 418; asyndeton, 418;  
   polysyndeton, 349; compar. con-  
   junctions, 383  
*cōnor*, conj., 183; inf. with, 259  
*cōnsciūs*, with gen., 287  
 Consecutive clauses, 364-367  
 Consonantal, *i* and *u*, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*; 401  
 Consonants, 6-8; quantity, 15, 17  
*cōnstrūctiō ad sēsum*, 236, *a*, 444;  
   reflex. refers to logical subj., 248, *a*  
 Construction, see cases, moods, etc.  
*cōnsul*, decl., 41, *a*  
*contentus*, abl. with, 337  
 Continued action, pres., 351, 1; impf.,  
   351, 2; hist. inf., 257; sequence of  
   tenses, 353

- Continuing, verbs of, with complementary inf., 259  
 Contracted perfects, 204  
 Contracted verb forms, 204; contracted vowels long, 24  
 Contracting, undertaking, verbs of, with gerund(ive), 268, *a*  
 Contradiction, oxymoron, 435  
 Contrary to fact conditions, 382  
*cōram*, with abl., 339  
*cornū*, decl., 59  
*corpus*, decl., 47  
 Crasis, 204, vowels resulting from long, 24  
*cujus*, see *quī*; pronunciation, 6, *b*  
*cum* (preposition), 339; enclitic, 321, *a*; abl. of accompaniment, 321  
*cum* clauses, temporal, 377; descriptive, 378; causal, 379; concessive, 379; *cum* (*whenever*), 370, 377  
*cum primum*, 368  
*cupidus*, with gen., 287
- d*, stems ending in, 52; before *s*, 128, 6, 124  
 Dactyl, 392; fifth foot usually a dactyl, 395  
 Date, *cum* with indic., 377  
 Dative, defined, 30; sing. in *āi* (first decl.), 34, *b*; sing. in *i* (second decl.), 74; pl. in *is* for *iis* (*deus*), 37, *f*; pl. in *ubus* (fourth decl.), 58, *c*  
 Dative, Syntax: with adjectives, 304, 267; agent, 302; compounds, 298; direction, 306; double dat., 303, *a*; ethical, 300; ind. obj., 295; poss., 299; purpose, 303; reference, 301, 303, *a*; separation, 305; with special verbs, 297  
*dē*, with abl., 329; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326  
*dea*, decl., 34, *c*  
*dēbeō*, with complementary inf., 259; indic. for obligation, 251; in conditions, 382, *d*  
 Declensions, 31–33; first, 34–35; second, 36–38; third, 39–57; fourth, 58–61; fifth, 62–64; of Greek nouns, 65–69; of adjectives, 71–82, 91; of numerals, 99; of pronouns, 103–114  
 Defective verbs, 205  
 Degree of difference, abl. of, 335
- Deliberative questions (subjunctive), 348  
*Dēlos*, decl., 67  
 Demonstrative pronouns, decl., 107; as subj. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a*; as adjectives, 102, *a*  
 Deponent verbs, 182; first conj., 163–190; second, third, fourth conj., 191–198; participles of, 182; abl. with, 342; semi-deponents, 205  
 Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 340; with dat., 305  
 Descriptive genitive, 285; abl., 330; impf., 351, *a*, *b*; *cum* descriptive, 378  
 Desire, expressions of with gen., 287; clauses of, 360; in ind. disc., 248, *b*; verbs of with inf., 260; expressed by fut. part., 274; volitive subj., 253  
*dēsum*, conj., 123; dat. with, 301  
*deum* = *deōrum*, 37, *d*, *f*  
*deus*, decl., 37, *f*  
*dexter*, decl. like *miser*, 71  
*dicō*, ind. disc., 263, 390; imp. *dic*, 202  
*diēs*, decl., 63; gender, 64  
*dignor*, with abl., 337, *a*  
*dignus*, with abl., 337; with rel. clause, 389  
 Diphthongs, 5; always long, 24  
 Direct, obj., 307; question, 347; reflex., 106, 248  
 Direction, dat. of, 306  
 Disproportion, *quam* (*prō*, *ut*), *quī*, 244  
 Distance, acc., 314  
 Distributive, numerals, 100; pronouns, see *quisque* and *uterque*  
*diū*, compar., 97  
*domus*, abl. of, 320, *a*; loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*; decl., 60; gender, 61, *a*  
*dōnec*, with indic., 371; with subj., 374  
*dōnō*, with dat. or abl., 269  
 Double consonants, 7; *s* and *z*, 8; double questions, 348; double accusatives, 308, 316; double datives, 303, *a*; double comparatives, 245  
 Doubting, verbs of; potential subj., 252; deliberative question, 348; subst. clause with *quān*, 366; cf. 382, *b*  
*duc*, imperative, 202

- dum**, 371; with indic., 371-373; with subj., 374; in proviso clauses, 375
- duo**, decl., 99
- Duration**, acc., 314; abl., 322
- Duty**, expressed by indic., 251; by periphrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d*
- dux**, decl., 51
- ē**, prep.; see **ex**; adv. ending, 95, *a*
- ecquis**, 112
- Editorial "we,"** 243, *a*
- Effecting**, acc. of, 307; verbs of: with perf. part., 275; with result clause, 365
- egeō**, abl. with, 340
- ego**, decl., 103; omission, 247; for emphasis and contrast, 247
- ei**, diphthong, 5
- Elision**, 398, 402
- Ellipsis**, 421
- Emotion**, verbs of with gen., 289; with inf., 260; with quod and indic. or subj., 358; see exclamation
- Emphasis**, see figures of speech, 106, *b*, *c*, and 247
- Enallage**, 422
- Enclitics**, 27; -que, 27; -met, 106, *b*; -pte, 106, *c*; -ce, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*; -nam, 112; -cum, 321, *a*; -ve, 27; -ne, 27, 347, *a*
- Endings (regular)**, of nouns, 32; of infinitives and participles, 117, 3; see declensions and conjugations
- Endings (irregular)**, gen. sing. in *āi*, 34, *b*; gen., dat. sing. *ē* for *eī* in fifth decl., 63; gen. pl. *um*, 34, *b*, 37, *d*; acc. pl. *is*, 56, *d*, 83, *b*; gen. sing. *ius*, 74; gen. pl. *ium*, 77, 81, 3, 55, *c*; abl. sing. *ī*, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; nom. and acc. pl. *ia*, 55, *d*, 81, 2; dat., abl. pl. *abus*, 34, *c*; acc. *im*, 56, *a*; gen. pl. *on*, 65, *a*; acc. sing. *in*, 68; *astī*, *arunt*, *ēre*, etc., 204
- English pronunciation of Latin words**, 28
- Envy**, verbs of with dat., 297
- eō**, see *is*, *ea*, *id*
- eō**, conj., 207-213; compounds of, 213, *a*; *īri* in fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*
- er**, nom. ending, 37, 74, 77
- ēre** for *erunt*, 204, 4; *ere* for *eris*, 204, 4
- esse**, see *sum*
- Esteeming**, verbs of, double acc., 316; abl. with *dignor*, 337, *a*
- Ethical dative**, 300
- etsi, etiamsi**, in concessive clauses, 384
- eu**, diphthong, 5
- Euphemism**, 423
- Euphony**, 424; in verb stems, 128, 6
- ex (ē)**, prep. with abl., 339; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326; material, 324
- Exchanging**, verbs of with abl., 336
- Exclamations**, subj., 253; imp., 255-256; inf., 262; acc., 318; voc., 344; fut. ind. in asseverations, 351, 3, *b*; apostrophe, 417
- Exhortations**, subj., 254; imp., 255; ut clause, 360
- Extent of space and time**, acc., 314
- fac**, imp. of *faciō*, 202
- facilis**, decl. like *omnis*, 77; compar., 89, *e*
- faciō**, conj. like *capiō*, 163; imp. *fac*, 202; two accusatives, 316, *a*; *faciō ut (nē)*, 365; pass. of, 227; compounds of, 229
- fāgus**, gender, 38, *a*
- fateor**, conj., 191-198
- Favor**, verbs of with dat., 297
- Fearing**, clauses with *nē* or *ut*, 363
- Feeling**, verbs of with gen., 289-290; with quod and indic. or subj., 358
- Feet**, in verse, 392; fifth foot, 395
- fel**, decl., 41, *b*
- fēlix**, decl., 82; compar., 87
- Feminine**, first decl. (mostly), 35; second decl.: cities, islands, trees, and a few others, 38, *a*; third decl., nouns in *dō*, *gō*, *iō*, 44; *i* stems in *ēs*, 57; some *i* stems in *is*, 57; all other *i* stems, 57; mutes in *s*, 54; fourth decl., a few in *us*, 61, *a*; fifth decl., all but *diēs* and *meridiēs*, 64
- fer**, imp. of *ferō*, 202
- ferō**, conj., 214-225; imp., 202
- fidō**, semi-deponent, 205; with dat., 297
- Fifth declension**, 62-64
- Figures of Speech**, 411-447
- filia**, decl., 34, *c*
- filius**, decl., 37, *a*, *b*

- Final clauses, 359-360  
*fiō*, conj., 228; compounds, 229; pass. of *faciō*, 227  
 First conjugation, 129-141; deponents, 183-190  
 First declension, 34-35  
 Fitness, adjectives of, with dat., 304; of gerund(ive), 267  
*fore* (*futūrus esse*), 121; *fore ut* in ind. disc., 263, *a*; cf. 382, *a*  
 Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*; complementary inf., 259  
 Forms, 29-275; see nouns, verbs, etc.  
 Fourth conjugation, 172-181; deponents, 191-198  
 Fourth declension, 58-61  
 Freedom, adjectives and verbs with abl., 340; adjectives and verbs with gen., 287  
*frētus*, with abl., 337  
*frūgi*, compar., 92  
*fruur*, with abl., 342  
*fui*, see *sum*  
 Fullness, expressions of, with gen., 287; with abl., 337  
*fungor*, with abl., 342  
 Future perfect tense, 351, 6; in conditions, 380; in temporal clauses, 370; like perf. subj., 128, 5  
 Future tense, 251, 3; specific and universal, 351, 3; as imperative, 351, 3, *a*; asseverative, 351, 3, *b*; part. expressing purpose, 274; conditions, 380-381; formation of pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; expressed by *fore ut*, 263, *a*; use of periphrastic, 199, *a*; in subj., 354  
*g*, stems in, 51; changes to *c* before *t*, 128, 6  
 Gender, rules of, 35, 38, 42, 48, 54, 57, 61, 64; attraction of pronouns, 240, *a*; and see masculine, feminine and neuter; of pred. complement, 239, *b*  
 Genitive, defined, 30; *āi* for *ae*, 34, *b*; *um* for *ōrum*, 37, *d*; *um* and *ium*, 53, 55, *c*, 56, *c*, 77, 81, 3; *ē* for *eī*, 63; *iūs*, 73-74; poss. adj. as gen., 249; two forms for pers. pronouns, 247, *a*  
 Genitive, Syntax: material, 280; appos., 261; explanatory, 282; poss., 283; subj., 284; obj., 284; quality, 285; part., 286; pred., 285, *a*; with adjectives, 287; with verbs, 287-291; value, 292; with interest and *rēfert*, 293; respect, 294; genitive of gerund(ive), 266  
*genius*, decl., 37, *b*  
*genū*, decl., 59  
*genus*, decl., 47  
 Gerund(ive), 117, 3, 203; for formation see verbs, conj. of, uses of, 266-269; with dat. of agent, 302; in *undus*, 203; see periphrastic; of dep. verbs, 182  
 Giving, verbs of, with gerundive, 268, *a*  
*gracilis*, decl., 77; compar., 89, *a*  
 Greek accusative, 309, 311  
 Greek nouns, decl., 65-69  
 Guilt, expressions of, with gen., 287-291  
*h*, never makes position, 15; vowels short before, 20; elision before, 398; hiatus before, 399  
*habeō*, conj., 142-150  
 Having, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*; verbs of with perf. part., 275  
 Helping, verbs of with dat., 297  
 Hendiadys, 425  
*hērōs*, decl., 68  
 Hesitation, clauses of, 363, 366  
 Hexameter, 391-397  
 Hiatus, 399; semi-hiatus, 400  
*hic*, decl., 107; pronounced *hicc*, 107, 3, *c*  
 Himself, *ipse*, 108; *sē*, 106, 248  
 Hindering, clauses with *nē*, *quān* or *quōminus*, 361-362  
 Historical inf., 257; with subj. nom., 277; pres., 351, 1, *a*; with secondary sequence, 353, *b*, 1 (*a*)  
*homō*, decl., 43  
 Hortatory subjunctive, 254  
*humus*, loc. of, 345; gender, 38, *a*  
 Hypallage, 426  
 Hyperbaton, 427  
 Hyperbole, 428  
 Hyrometer, 402  
 Hysteron Proteron, 429  
*i*, vowel, 4; semi-vowel (consonantal), 6, *a*, 401; after *j*, 6, *b*, *c*; *i* stems, 55, 76; changed to *e* in *iō* verbs,



- 161, 206, 1; *i* and *u* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- i*, imperative of *eō*, 209; voc. ending, 37, *b*; abl. ending, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; loc. ending, 37, *c*; pres. pass. inf. ending, 117, 3; nom. pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*, 107
- ia*, nom. and acc. pl. ending, 55, *d*, 81, 2
- Ictus*, in verse, 392, 394, 404
- Ideal conditions, 361
- idem*, decl., 107
- idōneus*, with dat. of purpose, 303; gerund, 267; with rel. clause, 389
- idūs*, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
- ignis*, decl., 56, *b*
- ii*, or *i* in gen., 37, *a*; *ii* for *eī*, 107; *ii* perfect of *eō*, 207; in compounds, 213, *a*
- iīs*, for *eīs*, 107
- ille*, decl., 107
- im*, acc. ending, 56, *a*
- Imperative, 115, 4; for formation see under verbs, conjugation of; irregular imperatives, 202; pres. and fut. 255; neg. 256; fut. ind. as imp., 351, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
- Imperfect tense, 351, *a*; of *possum*, etc., for pluperf., 251, 382, *d*; conative, 351, 2, *a*; descriptive, 351, 2, *b*; in temp. clauses, 368, *a*, 371; in conditions, 380, 382, *d*; sequence of tenses, 353; formation of impf. subj., 128, 2
- imperō*, with dat., 297; with subst. vol. clause, 360
- Impersonal verbs, forms of *eō*, 213, *b*; with gen., 290; impers. constructions, 258, 366
- Implied indirect discourse, 357–358; cf. 248, *b*, 390.
- in*, acc. ending, 68
- in*, prep. with acc., 315; prep. with abl., 319; verbs compounded with, 298
- Inclination, adjectives of, with dat., 304; expressions of, 251–254; adjectives of, for adverbs, 250
- Indefinite antecedent, 389; pronouns, 113
- Indicative, 115, 4; to denote possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in deliberative questions, 348, *a*; with *quod* in explanatory clauses, 356; in causal clauses, 357–358; in temporal clauses, 368–373, 377; present with *dum*, 372; simple (more vivid) conditions, 380; in unreal conditions, 382, *d*; in concessive clauses, 384
- Indirect command, 390
- Indirect discourse, 263, 390; subordinate clauses in, 355; conditions in, 382, *a*; implied, 357–358; cf. 248, *b*; commands in, 390, *b*; tense of inf. in, 263
- Indirect object, 295
- Indirect questions, 349; cf. 353, *a*; use of periphrastic in, 354
- Infinitive, formation, 117, 2–3; of deponents, 182; contraction of perf., 204; see also conjugations
- Infinitive, Syntax: with adjectives, 265; cf. 258; pred. nom. with, 317, *a*; complementary, 259; purpose, 261; exclamatory, 262; as subject, 258; hist., 257, 277; subj. acc., 317; in ind. disc., 263, 390, *b*; for ut-clause, 360, *a*; with *jubeō*, 360, *b*; with nouns, 264; as obj., 260
- Inflection, 29–235; see declension, conjugation, etc.
- Informal indirect discourse, 367, 358; cf. 248, *b*
- Instrumental ablative, 531; of gerund(ive), 269
- Intensive suffixes, 106, *b*, *c*; pronoun, 108; cf. 248
- inter*, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
- interest with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
- Interjections, 318, 344
- Interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 111–112; sentences, 347
- Intransitive verbs with dat., 297; with cognate acc., 313
- iō*, gender of nouns in, 44; verbs in, 162
- ipse*, decl., 108; for use cf. 248
- iri*, in fut. pass. inf., 213, *b*
- Irony, 430
- Irregular verbs, conj., 206–235
- is*, acc. pl. ending, 56, *d*
- is*, *ea*, *id*, decl., 107; as pers. pron. of third person, 105, *b*

- Islands, names of, gender, 38, *a*; acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*; loc., 345  
 isse, syncopated form, 204  
 iste, decl., 107, 4  
 Iterative imperfect, 351, 2  
 ium, gen. pl. ending, 55, *c*, 77, 81, 3; decl. of words in, 37, *b*  
 ius ending, declension of words in, 37, *b*; gen. sing. ending, 74; see also declension of pronouns
- j*, the letter, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*  
 jaciō, conj., 161, 227–229; compounds, 6, *c*, 229; pass. of, 227–229  
 jam, with pres. indic., 351, *b*  
 jubeō, with inf., 360, *b*  
 Jussive subjunctive, 254
- Knowing, verbs of, see indirect discourse  
 Knowledge, adjectives of with gen., 287; adjectives of as adverbs, 250
- 1, nouns in, 56; stems in, 41, *b*; in common syllables, 17–18  
 iac, decl., 52, *a*  
 laetus, with abl., 337  
 Leaving, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*  
 Length, of vowels, 20–23; of syllables, 14–19, 396, 407  
 Less vivid, conditions, 381  
 Letters, of alphabet, 1–8  
 liber, noun, 36, *a*  
 liber, adjective, decl. like miser, 71; with abl. of separation, 340, *a*  
 Likeness, adjectives of with dat., 304  
 Liquids, in common syllables, 17; stems in, 41–46  
 Litotes, 431  
 Locative, defined, 30; first decl., 34, *a*; second decl., 37, *c*; of domus, 60; use, 345; loc. gen., 294  
 Logical, constructions, sing. coll. subj. with pl. verb, 236, *a*, 444; copula agrees with pred. noun, 236, *c*; pron. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a*; reflex. referring to logical subj., 248, *a*; logical conditions, 280
- m*, final syllable in, 398  
 magis, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245  
 magnus, compar. of, 92
- Making, verbs of, two accusatives, 316, *a*; gerundive, 268, *a*; perfect part., 275  
 male, compar., 97  
 mālō, conj., 230; see comparison  
 malus, compar., 92  
 Manner, abl. of, 328; gerund(ive), 269; implied in part., 273  
 manus, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*  
 mare, decl., 56  
 Masculine, first decl., referring to males, 35; second decl. in *us* or *r* (mostly), 38; third decl. stems in *l*, 42; nouns in *ō*, except *dō*, *gō*, and *iō*, 44; nouns in *is* (*eris*) and *ōs* (*ōris*), 48; some *i* stems in *is*, 57; nouns in *er* and *or*, 46; fourth decl. in *us* (mostly), 61; fifth decl. only *diēs* and *meridiēs*, 64  
 Material, expressed by gen., 280; by abl., 324  
 Means, abl. of, 331; with gerund(ive), 269  
 Measure, abl. of, 334  
 medius, used partitively, 246  
 mel, decl., 41  
 melior, see bonus  
 meminī, with gen., 288; with acc., 288, *a*  
 memor, with gen., 287  
 –men, suffix, 44, 2  
 –met, enclitic, 106, *b*  
 Metaphor, 432  
 Meter, 391–410  
 Metonymy, 433  
 Metrical scheme, of the hexameter, 394  
 meus, form, 103, *a*; as gen. of ego, 249  
 mī, voc. of meus, 103, *a*; short for mihi  
 Middle voice, 115, *a*; with obj. acc., 309, *a*  
 mihi, see ego  
 miles, decl. like comes, 52  
 mille, numeral, 99  
 minus, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245  
 miser, decl., 71  
 misereor, with gen., 289  
 miseret, with gen. and acc., 290  
 Modesty, pl. of, 243, *a*; subjunctive of, 252  
 modo, in proviso clauses, 375

Monosyllabic, nouns of third decl., 53  
Mood, 115, 4; for forms see verbs;  
for uses see indic., subj., etc.

More vivid conditions, 380

moror, conj., 183-190

Motion, end of, with dat., 306; with  
acc., 315

mōvi, contracted forms of, 204, 3

multus, compar., 92

mūnus, decl. like genus, 47

Mute stems, decl., 49-54

**n**, stems in, 43

-nam, enclitic, 27, 112

Names of towns and islands, abl.,  
320, *a*; loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*

Naming, verbs of, with two accusa-  
tives, 316, *a*

nātus, with abl. of origin, 323

nāvis, decl., 56, *a*

-ne, enclitic, 27; in questions, 347, *a*

nē, in prohibitions, 253, 256, *a*; in  
purpose clauses, 359; with verbs  
of hindering, refusing, etc., 361;  
with verbs of fearing, 363; result,  
365; omitted after cavē, 256

Nearness, adjectives of with dat., 304

Necessity, indic., 251, 382, *d*; pass.  
periphrastic, 199, *b*; 382, *d*; see  
command

Negative, answer expected, 347, *c*;  
double neg., 431; purpose clause,  
359; clause of fearing, 363; result  
clause, 364; see prohibitions

nēmō, missing forms supplied by  
nullus, 114; nēmō est qui, 364, *a*

nēquam, comparison of, 92

Neuter, adjectives with inf., 258;  
complement with subjects of differ-  
ent genders, 239, *b*

Neuter, pronom. adj., 114; decl., 74

Neuter, second decl. in um and a few  
in us, 38; third decl. stems in ll,  
42; nouns in en, 44, 2; nouns in  
ar, ur, 46, 2; i stems in e, al, ar, 57,  
*b*; nouns in us (eris), ūs (ūris), 48,  
2; fourth decl. in ū, 61

nf, vowels long before, 23

nihil, forms of, 114

nimis, compar., 95, *b*

No, questions expecting answer, 347, *c*

nōlī(te), in prohibitions, 256

nōlō, conj., 230

Nominative, defined, 30; like acc.

and voc. pl. in third, fourth, and  
fifth declensions, 33, *b*; like acc.  
and voc. in all neuters; in a, 34;  
in us (os), um, er and ir, 36; in l,  
41; in ō and en, 43; in or and er,  
45; in us, 47; in s, 50-51; in ēs,  
52; in is, e, al, 56; in us, ū, 59; in  
ēs, 62

Nominative case, 30; as subj., 276;  
with hist. inf., 277; as subjective  
complement, 278, 279; of gerund  
supplied by inf., 258; agreement of  
verb with, 236; double nom., 239,  
241

nōnne, for affirmative answer, 347, *b*  
nōs, see ego; pl. for sing., 243; nom.  
emphatic, 247

nostrī, nostrum, 247, *a*

Nouns: decl., 31-69; appos., 241;  
pred., 240, 278-279, 317, *a*; with  
infinitives, 264; and see gender

nōvi, contracted forms of, 204, 3;  
perf. with pres. meaning, 204, 3,  
354

nox, decl., 53; quantity of vowel, 19

ns, vowels long before, 23

nt, vowels short before, 21

nullus and nēmō, 114; decl., 74

num, for negative answer, 347, *c*;  
in questions, 347, *c*

Number, 29; pl. for sing., 243, 236, *a*,  
444; and see agreement of pred.  
attribute, 239

Numerals, 98-101

ō, nouns in, 43; gender of nouns in, 44

Ō, interj. with voc., 364

ob, prep. with acc., 312; verbs com-  
pounded with, 298

Obeing, verbs of, with dat., 297

Object, direct, 307; ind., 295; clauses,  
360-363, 365; inf. as obj., 260

Objective genitive, 284; of pers. pro-  
nouns, 247, *a*; objective comple-  
ment, 317, *a*

Obligation, indic., 251, 382, *d*; peri-  
phrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d*; subj., 253;  
see command

obliviscor, gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*

obsum, 123; dat. with, 298

Occasion, expressed by part., 273

ōdisse, see 204, 3

oe, diphthong, 5

Oedipūs, decl., 69

- Omission, of pers. pron., 247  
**omnis**, decl., 77  
**on, ōn**, Greek endings, 65, *a*, 67, 68, 69  
 Onomatopoeia, 434  
**oportet**, 251, 382, *d*  
 Optative, subjunctive, 253  
**opus est**, with abl., 341  
**ōrātiō obliqua**, see indirect discourse  
 Ordinal numerals, 98, *a*  
 Origin, abl. of, 323  
**orior**, conj., 206  
**ōrō**, constr. of verbs depending on, 360  
**Orpheus**, decl., 69  
**os**, nom. sing. of second decl., 36, *a*, *b*;  
     Greek nominatives in 67, 69  
 Oxymoron, 435
- p**, represents changed **b** before **s** and **t**, 128, 6; stems in, 50  
**paenitet**, with gen. and acc., 290  
**Panthūs**, decl., 67  
**pār**, with gen., 287; with dat., 304;  
     with dat. of gerund(ive), 267  
 Paraleipsis, 436  
 Participles, formation, 117, 3; compar., 90; of deponents, 182, 205; tenses of, 272–275; gerundive, 266–269; periphrastic, 199; decl. of pres., 82  
 Partitive genitive, 286; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a*  
**parvī**, gen. of value, 292  
**parvus**, compar., 92  
 Passive voice, 115, *a*; formation of perf. system, 116, 3; constr. with verbs of saying, 279; pass. periphrastic, 199, *b*, cf. 382, *d*; gerundive constructions, 267, 268; middle and reflex. use, 309; perf. pass. system, 116, 3; fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; with dat. of agent, 302  
 Past perfect, see pluperfect  
**pator**, conj., 191–198  
**pelagus**, gender of, 38, *a*  
**Penalty**, gender of, 38, *a*  
**penes**, prep. with acc., 312  
**Penult**, 25, *a*  
**per**, prep. with acc., 312  
 Perception, verbs of, with part., 273;  
     see indirect discourse  
 Perfect tense, 351, 4; pres. state, 351, 4, *a*; past act, 351, 4, *b*; temp. clauses, 368, 370, 376; perf. subj. both primary and secondary inf. in ind. disc., 263; participle, 275; in conditions, 381, 353, *b*, 1, *b*; in ind. disc., 382, *a*, *b*; contracted perfects, 204  
 Periphrastic conjugation, 199–201; as fut. subj., 354; conditions in ind. disc., 382, *a*; in contrary to fact apodosis, 382, *d*; in ind. questions, 354; with dat. of agent, 302  
 Person, agreement of verb, 236; agreement of rel. pron., 242; for forms see conjugations  
 Personal construction, of pass. with inf., 279  
 Personal pronouns, forms, 103; omission, 247; as part. gen., 247, *a*; in appos. to poss. adjectives, 249  
 Personification, 437  
 Persuading, verbs of with dat., 297  
**pēs**, decl., 52  
**piget**, with acc. and gen., 290  
 Pity, verbs of, with gen. and acc., 290  
 Place whither, 315, 306; where, 319; whence, 320; extent, 314  
 Pleasing, verbs of, with dat., 297  
 Plenty, expressions of, with gen., 287  
**plēnus**, gen. with, 287; abl. with, 337  
 Pleonasm, 438  
 Pluperfect, 351, 5; indic. in time clauses, 370; subj. in unreal conditions, 362; secondary sequence in ind. disc. 353, 382, *a*, *b*; in cum descriptive clauses, 378  
 Plural, see number, agreement, etc.; poetic, 243, 444; editorial, 243, *a*  
**plūs**, compar., 92, 97  
 Polysyndeton, 439  
 Possession, gen., 283; dat., 299  
 Possessive adjectives (pronouns), forms, 103–106; used as gen. of pron., 249  
 Possibility, indic., 251, 382, *d*; subj., 252, cf. 386; periphrastic, 382, *d*; in causal clauses, 357–358; with **antequam** and **priusquam**, 376, *a*; in conditions, 381; in relative clauses, 389  
**possum**, conj., 125; to express possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in apodosis, 382, *d*  
**post**, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298, 308  
**postquam**, with indic., 368



- Potential, indic., 251; subj., 252; see possibility
- potior*, with abl., 342
- Power, adjectives of, with gen., 287; nouns of, with inf., 264
- prae*, prep. with abl., 339
- Predicate adjective, 239, 279; pred. noun, 236, c, 240, 317, a, 278; pred. acc., 317, a, 279; pred. acc. becomes pred. noun in pass., 279; pred. noun with inf., 317, a; pred. use of participles, 273, 275; pred. gen., 285, a; of gerund(ive), 266; pred. adj. with inf., 258; pred. with pass. verbs of saying, etc., 279; pred. dat., 303, a; see agreement
- Prepositions, with acc., 312; with abl., 339; omitted, 315, a, b; 319, b, 320, a, b, 340; *cum* appended to certain words, 321, a; assimilation, cf. 123, compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
- Present tense, 351; specific and universal, 351, 1; hist., 351, 1, a; with *jam* as perf., 351, 1, b; conative (as fut.), 351, 1, c; part., 272; decl., 82; indic. with *dum*, 372; inf. in ind. disc., 263
- Preterition, 436
- Preventing, verbs of, with *nē*, *quōminus*, *quān*, 361-362; with abl. of separation, 340
- Price, abl. of, 336; gen. of, 292
- Primary tenses, 352, a; sequence of tenses, 353
- primus*, *beginning of*, 246
- princeps*, decl., 50
- Principal parts, 126
- priusquam*, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, a
- prō*, prep. with abl., 329; *prō ut*, *quam prō*, 244, cf. 383; interj., 318
- Prohibitions, subj., 253; imp., 256; obj. clauses (volitive), 360; hindering, 361-362; in ind. disc., 390, b
- Prolepsis, 440
- Pronouns, 102-114; pers., 103-106; omitted, 247; reflex., 106; use of, 248; dem., 107; attraction of, 240, a; intensive, 108; rel., 109-110; general relatives, 110; agreement of relatives, 242; relative clauses, 385-389; interrog., 111-112; adj., 111, a; pronom. adjectives, 73-74, 114; see poss.; indef., 113; distributive, see *quisque* and *uterque* as part. gen., 247, a; in appos. to poss. adj., 249
- Pronunciation, Latin, 4-8; of Latin words in English, 28; of *i* and *u* as consonants, 401
- Prosody, 391-410
- prōsum*, conj., 124
- Protasis, 380; see conditions
- Proviso clauses, vol. subj., 254; with *dum* (modo), 375
- proximus*, with dat., 304
- pte, enclitic, 106, c
- pudet*, with gen. and acc., 290
- puer*, decl., 37
- pulcher*, decl., 71; compar., 88
- pulchrē*, compar., 97
- Purpose, inf., 261; gerund(ive), 268; fut. part., 274; *ut* and *nē* with subj., 359; rel. clause of, 388; supine in *um*, 270; dat. of, 303
- qu*, pronunciation, 6; counts as single consonant, 15; becomes *x* with *s*, 128, 6
- Quality, gen., 285; abl., 330; two qualities compared, 245
- quam*, omission of in compar., 327; *quam prō*, *quam ut*, *quam quī*, 244; *quam sī*, 383; with two positives, 245; with two comparatives, 245; *antequam* and *priusquam* separated, 376, a
- quamquam*, with indic. in concessive clauses, 384
- quamvis*, with subj. in concessive clauses, 384
- quandō*, in causal clauses, 357
- quantī*, gen. of value, 292
- Quantity, of vowels, 20-24; of syllables, 14-19; in verse, 392-397, 404, 407; numerals, 99-101
- quasi*, in clauses of comparison, 383
- que, enclitic, 27
- Questions, 347; deliberative, 348; ind., 349, 354; exclamatory, 262
- quī*, decl., 109; abl. form *quī*, 109, d; = *ut* is, 389; see relative
- quia*, in causal clauses, 357
- quicumque*, general relative, 110
- quān*, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 362; after neg. expressions of doubt, 366

- quis, interrog., decl., 111; indef., 113  
 quis, dat., abl. pl. of qui, 109, *c*  
 quisque, use with reflex., 248  
 quisquis, general rel., 110  
 quoad, with indic., 371; with subj., 374  
 quod, rel. pron., 109; with indic. in explanatory clauses, 356; with indic. and subj. in causal clauses, 357-358; in ind. disc. 355  
 quominus, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361-362  
 quoniam, in causal clauses, 357  
 quot, numeral adv., 98  
 quotiens, numeral adv., 101; in temp. clauses, 320  
 quum = cum
- r**, for **s** between two vowels, 47; stems in **r**, 45; nouns in **r**, 36, *a*, 37; adjectives in **r**, 71, 74, 76, 77, 91; see liquids
- re, for ris, 204, 4  
 Reading of verse, 405-408  
 Reference, dat. of, 301, 303, *a*; gen., 294; acc., 311; abl., 325  
 rêfert, with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*  
 Reflexive pronouns, forms, 103-106; use, 248  
 Refusing, verbs of, 361-362  
 Regarding, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a*; constr. with pass. verbs of, 279  
 Relative clauses, 385; explanatory, 386; dependent, 387; purpose, 388; result, 364, *a*; char., 389  
 Relative pronouns, decl. 109; agreement, 242; in comparison, 244  
 reliquus, partitive use = *rest of*, 246  
 Remembering, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*  
 Removing, verbs of, with abl., 340  
 Repeated action, impf., indic., 351, 2; in temp. clauses, 369-370; sequence of tenses, 353  
 rês, decl., 63  
 Resisting, verbs of, with dat., 297; with *nê*, *quîn*, *quôminus*, 361, 362  
 Resolving, verbs of, complementary inf., 259; subst. vol. clause with, 360  
 Respect, abl. of, 325; acc. of, 311  
 Restricted, rel. clause, 387
- Result clauses, 364; rel. clause of, 364, *a*; sequence of tenses, 353; explanatory clause of, 367  
 rête, decl., 56, *b*  
 Rhotacism, 47  
 Rhythm of Latin verse, 407  
 ri, adjective stems in, 76, *a*  
 rogô, two accusatives, 316; inf. with 360; ut (volitive) clause, 360  
 Route, abl. of, 338  
 rûs, decl. and gender, 48, 2; acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*; loc., 345
- s**, changed to **r** between vowels, 47; change of mutes before **s** in verb stems, 128, 6; stems in **s**, 47; nom. ending, 32  
 saepe, compar., 97  
 satis, with gen., 286; compar., 97  
 Saying, verbs of, ind. disc., 390, 263; constr. with pass., 279  
 Scansion, 404  
 scitô, fut. used as pres. imperative, 202  
 sê, reflex. pron., 106, 248  
 Second conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms, 142-150; deponents, 191-198  
 Second declension, 36-38  
 Secondary object, 308, 316; tenses, 352, *b*, 353  
 secundum, prep. with acc., 312  
 Selling, verbs of with gen., 292; with abl., 336  
 Semi-hiatus, 400; semi-deponents, 205; semi-vowels, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*; 401  
 senex, decl., 56, *c*  
 Separation, dat. of, 305; abl. of, 340  
 Sequence of Tenses, 353; conditions in ind. disc., 381, *a*; suppositions in ind. disc., 383, *a*; for examples see 358, 360, 363, 374, 390, *b*  
 sequor, conj., 191-198  
 Service, dat. of, 303; dat. with adjectives of, 304  
 Serving, dat. with verbs of, 297  
 Sharing, adjectives of with gen., 287  
 si, conditions, 380-382; suppositions, 383; ut si, ac si, quam si, 383  
 Simile, 441  
 similis, with gen., 287; with dat., 304  
 simul ac (atque), with indic., 368  
 Singular, with pl. verb, 236, 444; *scs* number, agreement, etc.

- singulus**, distributive num., 100
- Situation**, participle, 273; **cum** descriptive, 378; **dum** with pres. ind., 372; rel. clause, 385; abl., 329
- solēo**, semi-deponent, 305; complementary inf. with, 259
- sōlus**, with rel. clause, 389
- Source**, abl. of., 323
- Space**, extent of with acc., 314
- Specification**, with gen., 294; abl., 325; abl. of supine, 271; acc., 311
- Spelling**, j and v, 6, *a, b, c*
- Spondee**, 392; spondaic verse, 395
- Stem of nouns**, 31, 34, 36, 39–40, 58, 62; of adjectives, 71, 75–76, 78–81; stems in *i*, 55, 76; of verbs, 116, 126–128
- sub**, prep. with acc., 312; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
- Subject**, 276; agreement of verb with, 236; coll., 236, *a*, 444; two subjects, 236, *b*; subject of different persons, 239, *a*; omitted pers. pronouns, 247; impers. verbs, *cf.* 240; indef. second person, *cf.* 252; imp., 255; of hist. inf., 257; subj. acc., 260, 317; exclamatory inf., 262; ind. disc., 263, 390; inf. as subj., 258
- Subjective genitive**, 284; poss. adj. as, 249
- Subjunctive**, 115, 4; potential, 252; opt., 253; vol., 254, 360; in causal clauses, 357–358, 379; in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362; in ideal and unreal conditions, 381–382; comparisons with *ut si*, *quasi*, etc., 383; double comparisons with *quam si*, *quam ut*, 244; **cum** descriptive, 378; concessive clauses with *cum*, 379; with *etsi* and *quamvis*, 384; rel. clauses of attraction, 387; purpose, 388; char., 389; result, 364, *a*; deliberative questions, 348; ind. questions, 349, 354; temp. clauses of anticipation, 374, 376, *a*; result clauses, 364–367; with verbs of fearing, 363; prohibitions, 256; of modesty, *cf.* 252; proviso, 375; subordinate clauses in ind. disc., 357, 358, *cf.* 248, *b*; tenses of, 353
- Subordinate clauses**, sequence of tenses, 353; in ind. disc., 390 *b, c*; see temporal, result, conditional, etc.
- Substantive (volitive) clauses** of desire, 360; hindering, 361–362; fearing, 363; result, 365–367; conditions in, 382, *b*; **quod** with indic., 356
- Suffixes**, see enclitics, endings
- sui**, decl., 106; use, 248
- sum**, conj., 118; compounds of, 123; fut. inf. with *ut* in ind. disc., 263, *a*; agreement with pred. noun, 236, *c*; with dat. of poss., 299; **sunt qui**, 389; simple sentence with, 278
- summus**, *top of*, partitive, 246
- super**, prep. with acc., 312; in composition with dat., 298; with acc., 308
- Superlative**, 85, 88, 89, *a*; used partitively as noun, 246
- Supine**, for forms see conjugations; uses, 270–271
- Suppositions** with *ut si*, *quasi*, *velut*, etc., 383
- suus**, forms, 106, *a*; uses, 248
- syllaba anceps**, 393
- Syllables**, division of, 9–13, 18; named, 25, *a*; final syllable of hexameter line, 393; long syllable shortened, 400; short syllable lengthened, 394, *a*; first syllable of each foot long, 394; long and short syllables, 14–19, 396; two syllables united, 403
- Synapheia**, 402
- Synchysis**, 442
- Synecdoche**, 443
- Synesis**, 444
- Synizesis**, 403
- Syntax**, 236–390
- t**, assimilated before *s*, 128, 6, 125; stems ending in, 52
- taedet**, with gen. and acc., 290
- tametsi**, in concessive clauses, 384
- tamquam** (*si*), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
- tanti**, gen. of value, 292
- Teaching**, verbs of, two accusatives, 316
- Temporal clauses**, 368–377; of action prior to the main verb, 368, 370; of action contemporaneous with the main verb, 369, 371–373, 377;

- of action later than the main verb, 374-376; abl. abs., 343, *a*
- Tenses, 115, 3; formation of, 127; pres., impf., etc. and verbs of imp., 255; of inf., 263, 390; of part., 272; uses of, 351; primary and secondary, 352; sequence of, 353
- ter, adv. suffix, 95, *c*
- ter, num. adv., 101
- Terminations, of nouns, 32; of verbs, 127-128; of infinitives and participles, 117; see endings, enclitics, declension, conjugation, etc.
- Than, compar. of adjectives, 83-92; compar. of adverbs, 93-97; omission of *quam*, 327; *than if*, 383; *than that*, 244
- Thinking, see indirect discourse, constr. with pass., 279; with acc. and inf., *cf.* 317, *a*
- Third conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms *dīcō*, 151-160; *capiō*, 163-171; deponents: *sequor*, *patior*, 191-198
- Third declension, stems in *l*, 41-42; *n*, 43-44; *r*, 45-46; *s*, 47-48; *p* or *b*, 50; *c* or *g*, 51; *t* or *d*, 52; *i*, 55-57
- Time, from which, 320; when, within which, 322; till which, 315; extent, 314; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a*; see temp. clauses; time in pronouncing syllables, 14, 408
- timeō, with subj., 363
- Tmesis, 445
- too . . . to, two clauses compared, 244
- tōtus, decl., 73; *all of*, partitive use, 246
- Towns, names of; see cities
- Trajection, 427
- trāns, prep. with acc., 312; acc. with compounds of, 308
- Transferred epithet, 446
- Trees, names of, gender, 38, *a*
- trēs, decl., 99
- tū, decl., 104; omission, emphatic, 247
- tuī, obj. gen., 247, *a*
- Two accusatives, 308, *a*, 316; two datives, 303, *a*
- u**, sometimes pronounced like **v**, 6, *a*; after *g*, *q*, 6, 15; for *i* in superlatives, 85, 89, *a*; for *e* in gerund (ive), 203; noun stems in *u*, 58; *ī* and *u* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- ubi, with indic., 368
- ubus, for *ibus* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- ui, diphthong, 5
- ūllus, decl., 74
- Ultima, 25, *a*
- um, gen. pl. ending, first decl., 34, *b*, second decl., 37, *d*; third decl., 53, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, 56, *c*, 81, 3, 82, *c*, *d*
- Understatement, 431, see potential subj., 252
- Undertaking, verbs of, with acc. of gerund (ive), 268, *a*
- Unreal conditions, 382
- ūnus, decl., 74; *ūnus est quī*, 389
- urbs, decl., 53
- ūsus est, with abl., 341
- ut clauses: fearing, 363; fore ut, 263; indic., 368; indirect commands, 390, *b*; omitted, 256; purpose, 359; result, 364; sequence of tenses, 353; ut si, 383; substantive, 360, 367; temporal, 368
- uter and uterque, decl., 74-74, *b*; compounds of *uter*, 114, *a*
- utinam, in unfulfilled wishes, 253
- ūtor, with abl., 342
- v**, omitted in perf. forms, 204; use of, 6, *a*; as a consonant in poetry, 401
- Value, gen. of, 292
- vannus, gender, 38, *a*
- ve, enclitic, 27
- velim, vellem, subj. of modesty, 252; opt., 253
- velut (si), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
- vēneō, compound of *eō*, 213, *a*; see selling
- Verbal adjectives, in *āx* with gen., 287
- Verbs, inflection of, 115; stems, 116, 128, 6; conj., 116; principal parts, 126; first conj., 129-141; second conj., 142-150; third conj., 151-160, *dīcō*; 161-171, *capiō*; fourth conj., 172-181; dep., 182-198; semi-dep., 205; periphrastic, 199-203, 263, *a*; syncopated forms, 204; irregular, 206-235; sum, 118-122; principal parts, 126; general rules, 128
- Verbs, uses of, agreement, 236; with gen., 287-291; interest and *rēfert*, 293; with dat., 297-298; with abl.,



342; see names of moods and tenses, ind. disc., etc.  
 Versification, 391-404  
 vēscor. with abl., 342  
 vester, 104  
 vestrī, vestrum, 247, *a*  
 vetō, acc. and inf. with, 360, *a*, 260  
 vetus, decl., 82; rhotacism, 47  
 videor, dat. of reference, 301; pred. nom., 279; complementary inf., 259; ind. disc., 263-390  
 vir, decl., 37  
 vīs, decl., 56, *a*  
 Vocative, defined, 30; second decl., sing., 36; of words in *ius*, *ium*, 37, *b*; *deus*, 37, *f*; *meus*, 103, *a*; Greek nouns, 66-69; use, 344  
 Voices, 115, 2, *a*; middle with obj. acc., 309, *a*; see active, middle, passive  
 Volitive, subj., 254; substantive with *ut* (*nē*) after verbs of will, desire, etc., 360; in ind. disc., 390, *b*  
 volō, conj., 230; with inf., 260, 317; with subj., 360; with part., 275  
 vōs, see tū

voster, see vester

Vowels, long and short, 3-4, 20-24; long vowels marked, 3, 397; elision of final vowels in verse, 398; syncope, 204; synizesis, 403; long vowel shortened, 400  
 vulgar, gender, 38, *a*

Want, words of with gen., 287; with abl., 340

Way, by which, abl., 338, 328, 331

Whole, gen. of, 286

Wishes, inf., 260, 317; subj., 253, 254; ind. disc., 390, *b*; *ut* (volitive) clause, 360

*x*, nom. ending, 51, 82; in verb stems (*c*, *g*, *qu* and *s*), 128, 6; double consonant, 8; makes position, 15

Yes, questions expecting, 347, *b*

*z*, double consonant, 8; makes position, 15

Zeugma, 447



## WORD LISTS FOR VOCABULARY DRILL, *AENEID* 1-6

There are three of these lists: 1) Words found twenty-four times or more in the first six books of the *Aeneid*; this list is printed on the extensible sheet at the end of the book; 2) Words found 12-23 times in the first six books, LIST II; 3) Words found 6-11 times in the first six books, LIST III.

### II

#### WORDS FOUND 12-23 TIMES IN *AENEID* 1-6

**abeō** go away, depart  
**ācer** sharp, piercing  
**addō** give to, ADD  
**aequō** (make) level, EQUALIZE  
**aether** upper air, ETHER  
**affor** speak to, address  
**agnōscō** RECOGNIZE, understand  
**āla** wing  
**aliquis** some(one), any(one)  
**alter** other (of two), second  
**amicus** friend(ly), AMICABLE  
**amittō** lose, send away  
**amō** love, cherish  
**an** whether  
**annus** year  
**antrum** cave, cavern  
**aperiō** uncover, open  
**arbor** tree  
**arduus** steep, ARDUOUS  
**ars** ART, skill  
**artus** (noun) joint, limb  
**asper** rough, harsh  
**aspiciō** look (at), behold  
**astō** stand (by, near)  
**astrum** star, constellation  
**attollō** lift (up), arouse  
**audeō** be eager, dare

**aureus** of gold, gold(en)  
**auris** EAR  
**auster** south(wind)  
**autem** moreover, however  
**auxilium** support, assistance  
**āvertō** turn from, AVERT  
  
**bis** twice  
  
**cadō** fall, die  
**caecus** blind, unseeing  
**canō** sing (of), CHANT  
**carina** keel, ship  
**cārus** dear  
**causa** CAUSE, reason  
**cavus** hollow  
**cēdō** yield, CEDE  
**celer** swift  
**celsus** high, lofty  
**centum** one hundred  
**certamen** contest  
**certus** settled, CERTAIN  
**cingō** encircle, gird  
**cinis** ashes, CINDERS  
**clārus** CLEAR, famous  
**colō** CULTIVATE, worship  
**coma** hair, foliage (of a tree)

**condō** put together, found  
**cōnsidō** settle, SUBSIDE  
**cōnsistō** take position  
**contrā** against, opposite  
**cor** heart  
**corripīō** snatch (up)  
**crēdō** believe, trust, CREDIT  
**crīnis** hair (of the head)  
**crūdēlis** CRUEL, pitiless  
**currus** chariot  
**custōs** guard, CUSTODIAN

**deinde** then, thereupon  
**dēmittō** let down  
**dēserō** abandon, DESERT  
**dīrus** fearful, DIRE  
**doceō** teach  
**dolor** pain, grief  
**dolus** trick(ery), artifice  
**dulcis** sweet  
**dūrus** hard, harsh  
**dux** leader, guide

**ecce** lo! behold!  
**efferō** bear out, extol  
**effundō** pour out  
**enim** for, truly  
**ēnsis** sword, steel  
**equidem** indeed, certainly  
**ergō** therefore, ERGO  
**etiam** also, even  
**exerceō** train, EXERCISE  
**extrēmus** farthest, EXTREME

**faciēs** figure, FACE  
**fallō** deceive  
**fās** divine right (law)  
**fax** torch  
**ferus** wild, FIERCE  
**fidēs** (good) faith, reliability, FIDELITY  
**fidus** faithful, trustworthy  
**figō** (trans)FIX, fasten  
**flūmen** stream, river  
**forma** shape, beauty

**fortis** brave, strong  
**fūnus** FUNERAL, death  
**furor** madness, FURY  
  
**gemitus** groan(ing), lamentation  
**gerō** bear, accomplish  
**gravis** heavy, GRAVE  
**gurgēs** whirlpool, sea

**haereō** stick (to), ADHERE  
**harēna** sand  
**hērōs** HERO  
**homō** man, person  
**horreō** shudder, bristle (at)  
**hortor** urge, EXHORT  
**hospes** guest, host  
**hostis** (public) enemy, HOSTILE

**ignārus** IGNORANT  
**imāgō** IMAGE, form  
**impellō** drive, IMPEL  
**impleō** fill (up)  
**impōnō** place on, IMPOSE  
**inānis** empty, vacant  
**incendō** set on fire, excite  
**incipiō** begin  
**inde** thence, thereupon  
**inquam** quoth, say  
**insignis** marked, distinguished, SIGNIFICANT  
**intereā** meanwhile  
**iter** road, journey  
**iterum** again, a second time

**jaceō** lie  
**jactō** toss, boast  
**jugum** yoke, ridge  
**jungō** JOIN  
**juvenis** young, youth, JUVENILE  
**juvō** help, please  
**juxtā** near, next to

**laevus** left (hand), awkward  
**lateō** lie hid, be hidden



lātus broad, wide  
 latus side, flank  
 laus praise, glory  
 legō gather, COLLECT  
 lētum death, ruin  
 licet it is permitted (LICIT)  
 linquō leave, RELINQUISH  
 loquor speak, talk  
 lūcus (sacred) grove  
 lūstrō cleanse, illumine  
  
 maestus sad, dejected  
 malus bad, evil  
 mănēs soul(s), spirit(s), MANES  
 membrum MEMBER, limb  
 memorō recall, recount  
 mēnsa table  
 mereō deserve, MERIT  
 metus fear, dread  
 misceō MIX, mingle  
 miseror pity, COMMISERATE  
 modus measure, manner  
 mōlēs mass(ive structure)  
 mōnstrō DEMONSTRATE, show, teach  
 mōnstrum omen, MONSTER  
 mora delay, hindrance  
 morior die  
 moror delay, hinder  
 mōs manner, custom  
 mūrus wall  
 mūtō change

nemus glade, grove  
 nepōs grandson, descendant  
 nimbus rainstorm, cloud  
 nisi if not, unless  
 nōscō learn, know  
 nūbēs (storm) cloud  
 numerus NUMBER, amount  
  
 obscūrus dark, OBSCURE  
 ōmen OMEN, portent  
 (ops), opis assistance, resources  
 optō choose, desire, OPT

opus work; necessity  
 orbis circle, ORBIT  
 ordō succession, ORDER  
 ōrō pray, plead  
 os bone

palma PALM, blade of oar  
 pandō spread out, EXPAND  
 pār equal  
 pariō bear  
 patior permit, suffer  
 pietās loyalty, devotion, PIETY  
 placidus gentle, PLACID  
 pontus sea, the deep  
 populus PEOPLE, nation  
 porta gate, PORTAL  
 poscō demand, claim  
 post after, behind  
 praeceps headlong, PRECIPITOUS  
 praemium reward, PREMIUM  
 precor PRAY, invoke  
 premō PRESS, pursue  
 prior earlier, PRIOR  
 prō before, for  
 prōlēs offspring, descendants  
 prope near(by)  
 pugna fight, battle  
 pulcher beautiful, handsome

quālis of what kind?  
 quam how, as, than  
 quicumque whoever, whichever, what-  
 ever  
 quiēscō rest, sleep  
 quīn (but) that  
 quoque also, too

rāmus branch, bough  
 rapiō seize, snatch  
 ratis raft, ship  
 reddō give back, RENDER  
 repōnō restore, bury  
 respiciō regard, consider  
 rōbur oak (tree), strength

**rumpō** break, burst

**rūrsus** back, again

**sacerdōs** priest(ess)

**sacrō** devote, CONSECRATE

**saepe** often

**saevus** fierce, raging

**scelus** wicked deed, crime

**scopulus** crag, cliff

**secō** cut

**secundus** second, favorable

**sedeō** sit, be settled

**senex** old, aged

**signum** mark, SIGN(AL)

**similis** like, SIMILAR

**sine** without (*abl.*)

**sōl** sun

**solum** bottom, ground

**solvō** loosen, release

**sonitus** SOUND, noise

**sonō** SOUND, RESOUND

**soror** sister

**sors** lot, fate

**spargō** scatter, DISPERSE

**spērō** hope

**spēs** hope

**spūmō** foam, SPUME

**sternō** STREW, overthrow

**subitus** sudden

**superbus** proud, haughty

**superō** overcome, surpass

**supplex** kneeling, SUPPLIANT

**taceō** be silent (TACIT)

**tam** so

**tamen** nevertheless

**templum** TEMPLE, shrine

**temptō** try, ATTEMPT

**ter** thrice

**tergum** back, rear

**thalamus** bridal chamber

**torqueō** twist, wind

**tot** so many

**tremō** tremble, quake

**tumulus** mound

**turbō** confuse, DISTURB

**unde** whence

**undique** from (on) all sides

**varius** VARIED, VARIOUS

**vel** or

**velut** just as, even as

**vertex** whirl, VORTEX, VERTEX

**vertō** turn

**vester** your(s)

**vestigium** track, trace, VESTIGE

**vestis** clothing, garment, VESTURE

**vetus** old, ancient

**virgō** maiden, girl

**viridis** VERDANT, green

**virtūs** manliness, valor, VIRTUE

**vitta** fillet, band

**volucer** flying, winged; bird

**voveō** solemnly promise, vow

**vulnus** wound

**vultus** countenance, face

## III

WORDS FOUND 6-11 TIMES IN *AENEID* 1-6

<b>absum</b> be away, be ABSENT	<b>auctor</b> originator, founder, AUTHOR
<b>accēdō</b> go to, ACCEDE	<b>auferō</b> bear away, remove
<b>accendō</b> kindle	<b>auspiciū</b> omen, AUSPICES
<b>accingō</b> gird (on)	<b>āvellō</b> tear away, pluck off
<b>aciēs</b> sharp edge; battle line	<b>avus</b> grandfather, ancestor
<b>acuō</b> sharpen	<b>axis</b> AXLE, AXIS, chariot
<b>adeō</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) to such a degree	
<b>adeō</b> ( <i>vb.</i> ) go to, visit	<b>bōs</b> bull, cow, ox; <i>pl.</i> cattle
<b>aditus</b> approach, access	<b>bracchium</b> (fore)arm
<b>adytū</b> shrine, inner sanctuary	<b>brevis</b> short, BRIEF
<b>aeger</b> sick, weak	
<b>aēneus</b> of bronze, brazen	<b>caedēs</b> killing, slaughter
<b>aequus</b> level, EQUAL	<b>caedō</b> fell, kill
<b>āēr</b> AIR, fog	<b>caeruleus</b> dark blue, CERULEAN
<b>aes</b> copper, bronze	<b>caestus</b> CESTUS, boxing glove
<b>aestās</b> summer	<b>cardō</b> pivot, hinge
<b>aestus</b> boiling, tide	<b>carmen</b> song, poem
<b>aeternus</b> ETERNAL, everlasting	<b>carpō</b> pluck
<b>aetherius</b> airy, ETHEREAL	<b>castrum</b> fortress; <i>pl.</i> , camp
<b>aevum</b> age, eternity	<b>cautēs</b> crag, pointed rock
<b>agger</b> mound, dike	<b>certō</b> contend, fight
<b>aggredior</b> approach, attack	<b>cervix</b> neck
<b>agitō</b> AGITATE, drive	<b>cēterus</b> the other(s)
<b>albus</b> white	<b>ceu</b> just as, as if
<b>alloquor</b> speak to, address	<b>chorus</b> choral dance, band
<b>almus</b> fostering, kindly	<b>cieō</b> move, agitate
<b>ambō</b> both	<b>citus</b> stirred up, swift
<b>āmēns</b> mad, frantic, DEMENTED	<b>claudō</b> CLOSE, shut
<b>amnis</b> river, stream	<b>clipeus</b> (round) shield
<b>amplector</b> embrace, surround	<b>coeipī</b> have begun
<b>amplus</b> AMPLE, spacious	<b>cognōmen</b> (sur)name, COGNOMEN
<b>animus</b> spirit, mind	<b>cōgō</b> collect, compel
<b>appareō</b> APPEAR	<b>colligō</b> COLLECT, gather
<b>aptō</b> fit on, equip, ADAPT	<b>collum</b> neck
<b>aqua</b> water	<b>comitor</b> ACCOMPANY, attend
<b>arceō</b> confine, restrain	<b>committō</b> join, entrust, perform
<b>arcus</b> bow, ARCH	<b>compellō</b> hail, greet
<b>argentum</b> silver; money	<b>complector</b> embrace
<b>armō</b> ARM, equip	<b>compleō</b> fill COMPLETELY
<b>arrigō</b> raise (up), ERECT	<b>compōnō</b> put together, arrange

**concutiō** shake, shatter  
**conjugium** union, marriage  
**cōnscius** CONSCIOUS  
**cōnsilium** plan, COUNSEL, council  
**cōnspiciō** catch sight of, behold  
**contendō** struggle, CONTEND  
**contingō** touch, happen (to)  
**continuus** unbroken, CONTINUOUS  
**cōnūbium** wedlock, marriage  
**convellō** tear to pieces, destroy  
**conveniō** come together, CONVENE  
**convertō** turn about, change  
**cornū** horn  
**corōna** CROWN, wreath  
**crēber** thick, frequent  
**cruentus** bloody  
**crur** blood  
**culmen** top, summit  
**cupidō** desire, eagerness  
**currō** run  
**curvus** bent, CURVED  
  
**daps** banquet, feast  
**decōrus** becoming, adorned  
**decus** beauty, glory  
**dēferō** bear away, report  
**dē(j)iciō** throw, cast (down)  
**dēligō** choose, SELECT  
**dēmēns** distracted, DEMENTED  
**dēmum** finally, at last  
**dēnsus** thick, DENSE  
**dēscendō** climb down, DESCEND  
**dignus** worthy (*abl.*)  
**dīgredior** step away, depart  
**discō** learn  
**discrīmen** crisis, risk  
**diversus** different, DIVERSE  
**dīvīnus** DIVINE, godlike  
**dominus** master, lord  
**dōnec** until  
**ductor** leader, guide  
**dūdum** already, now for a long time  
**duo** two

**ēdūcō** lead forth  
**effor** speak (out)  
**effugiō** flee (away), escape  
**ēgregius** distinguished, uncommon  
**ēlābor** slip (out), escape  
**ēn** lo! behold!  
**epulae** banquet, feast  
**error** ERROR, mistake  
**ēruō** cast out, overthrow  
**ēvādō** go forth, EVADE  
**exanimus** lifeless, breathless  
**excēdō** go forth, withdraw  
**excipiō** take out, EXCEPT  
**excutiō** shake (out, off)  
**exigō** drive out, EXACT  
**exorior** rise (up), appear  
**expediō** extricate, disentangle  
**expectō** watch for, await, EXPECT  
**extinguō** EXTINGUISH, destroy  
**extemplō** immediately, suddenly  
**exterreō** TERRIFY, frighten  
**exuō** put off, strip  
**exuviae** spoils, armor  
  
**facilis** easy (to do), FACILE  
**famēs** hunger, FAMINE  
**famulus** servant, house slave  
**fastigium** slope, summit  
**fātālis** FATED, FATAL  
**fateor** admit, confess  
**fatigō** weary, tire  
**faucēs** jaws, gullet  
**fēlix** lucky, FELICITOUS  
**fēmina** FEMALE, woman  
**feriō** smite, strike  
**figō** shape, invent  
**fiō** become  
**flectō** bend, turn  
**fleō** weep, (be)wail  
**flētus** weeping, tears  
**fluō** FLOW  
**fluvius** stream, river  
**foedō** defile, pollute  
**foedus** treaty, league



folium leaf, FOLIAGE  
 foris door  
 formidō dread, apprehension  
 foveō foster, protect  
 frangō break, shatter  
 frāter brother  
 fremō murmur, roar  
 fretum strait of water, sea  
 frōns leaf, foliage, FROND  
 frōns forehead, FRONT  
 frūstrā in vain, vainly  
 fulgeō gleam, flash  
 fulmen lightning, thunderbolt  
 fulvus yellow, tawny  
 fūnis rope, cable  
 furiae rage, FURY  
  
 galea helmet  
 gaudeō rejoice  
 gelidus frosty, ice-cold, GELID  
 gemō groan, lament  
 genū knee  
 germānus own brother (sister)  
 gignō beget, bear  
 glomerō collect, assemble  
 glōria GLORY, fame  
 gradior step, walk  
 gradus step, pace, GRADE  
 gremium lap, bosom  
 gressus step, walk  
  
 habitō occupy, INHABIT  
 hasta spear  
 hauriō draw, drain  
 herba HERB, grass  
 hibernus wintry  
 hiems winter; storm  
 horridus rough, fearful, HORRID  
 hospitium HOSPITALITY, welcome  
 humus ground  
 hymenaeus HYMEN, god of marriage  
  
 ictus blow, stroke  
 ignōtus unknown

imber rain(storm)  
 immēnsus boundless, IMMENSE  
 immittō send in, let go  
 immōtus UNMOVED, IMMOVABLE  
 impius IMPIOUS, disloyal  
 incēdō PROCEED, go in(to)  
 incertus UNCERTAIN  
 inclūdō shut in, confine, INCLUDE  
 incumbō lie on, lean on  
 induō put on, don  
 infandus unspeakable  
 inferō bear in (against)  
 infundō pour (rush) in  
 ingeminō redouble, repeat  
 ingredior step in, enter  
 inimicus (personal) ENEMY, hostile  
 iniquus UNEQUAL, unjust  
 insequor follow, pursue  
 insidiae ambush, treachery  
 insōns innocent  
 instaurō renew, refresh, RESTORE  
 instruō arrange, plan  
 insula island  
 intendō strain, stretch  
 interior inner, INTERIOR  
 intrō go within, ENTER  
 intus within  
 invādō attack, INVADE  
 inveniō come upon, find  
 invideō look on, ENVY, hate  
 iste that (of yours, contemptible)  
 ita so, thus  
  
 jaciō hurl, throw  
 jūs right, JUSTICE, law  
 juvencus bullock, heifer  
 juvena youth  
 juvenūs youth  
  
 lacrimō shed tears, weep  
 lacus LAKE  
 latex fluid, liquid  
 laurus LAUREL  
 levis light, slight

levō lift, remove	ob(j)iciō oppose, throw in the way
lēx law, rule	oblīvīscor forget
libō sip, pour a LIBATION	obsideō besiege, occupy
locō place, LOCATE	obstipēscō be amazed, stand agape
longaevus aged	occurrō run to meet, OCCUR
lūctus grief, mourning	offerō present, offer
lūdus game; school	ōlim once, at that time
lūna moon	omnipotēns OMNIPOTENT, all powerful, almighty
mactō sacrifice, offer	onerō load, burden
magister MASTER, chief	opācus dark, obscure, OPAQUE
magnanimus great-souled, MAGNANI- MOUS	orior arise, begin
mandō hand over, commission	ostendō show, stretch toward
meminī REMEMBER	ostentō show, display
memor mindful	ōstium mouth, entrance
mergō IMMERSE, plunge	ovō rejoice
mēta boundary, goal	parcō spare ( <i>dat.</i> )
metuō fear, dread	pāreō obey ( <i>dat.</i> )
mille one thousand	pascō feed (on), PASTURE
mirābilis MARVELOUS, wonderful	passim generally, everywhere
mīror wonder at, MARVEL at	pateō lie open, extend
misereō pity, COMMISERATE	patera bowl, (libation) cup
mōlior heap up, build	paucī few
mollis soft, gentle	pāx PEACE
moneō advise, ADMONISH	pecus cattle, flock
monumentum reminder, MONUMENT	pellō strike, drive
mortālis MORTAL	pendeō hang, be SUSPENDED
murmur MURMUR(ING)	penetrālis inner, interior; <i>n.pl.</i> , shrine
nauta sailor	penitus thoroughly, utterly
nefandus unspeakable, wicked	peragō finish, accomplish
nefās impiety, wickedness	pereō PERISH, be lost
negō deny, refuse	perferō bear (to the end), endure
nēquiquam in vain, vainly	perficiō accomplish, PERFECT
niger black	periculum danger, PERIL
nihil nothing	pestis plague, PESTILENCE
nimius excessive, too much	pharetra quiver for arrows
nōdus knot, NODE	pingō PAINT, DEPICT, embroider
nūbilus cloudy, misty	pinguis fat, rich
nuntius messenger, message	pinna feather, wing
nymphā NYMPH	plausus APPLAUSE
	plēnus full
	polus POLE, heavens
ob on account of ( <i>acc.</i> )	pondus weight

portō carry  
 postis (door)POST, portal  
 postquam after  
 potior obtain (*abl.*; *gen.*)  
 praecipitō throw headlong, PRECIPITATE  
 praeda booty, PREY  
 praestō furnish, excel  
 praesum be in charge (at the head of)  
 praetereā besides, moreover  
 prex PRAYER, entreaty  
 principium beginning  
 prōcēdō go forward, PROCEED  
 prōcumbō lie forward, sink (to the ground)

proelium battle, fight  
 prohibeō forbid, PROHIBIT  
 prō(j)iciō hurl, PROJECT  
 prōmittō send forth, PROMISE  
 propinquō approach (*dat.*)  
 proprius one's own, peculiar  
 prōra PROW  
 prōspiciō look forward, provide  
 prōtinus at once, immediately  
 pūbēs youth, men  
 pulsō beat, lash  
 purpureus crimson

quamquam although, however  
 quandō when? at some time  
 quantus how great? as great as  
 quatiō shake  
 quattuor four  
 quiēs rest, QUIET  
 quisquam anyone  
 quisque each, everyone  
 quisquis whoever, whichever, whatever  
 quod because; (as for) the fact that

rapidus swift, RAPID  
 recēdō RECEDE, withdraw  
 recēns fresh, new, RECENT  
 recipiō take back, RECEIVE  
 recūsō refuse

redeō go back, return  
 redūcō lead back  
 regiō REGION, district  
 rēgius ROYAL, REGAL  
 rēgnō REIGN, rule  
 regō rule, DIRECT  
 reliquiae remnant, remains  
 reor reckon, suppose  
 repente suddenly  
 reperiō find (out)  
 repetō demand, reseek, REPEAT  
 requirō demand, REQUIRE  
 residō settle (down), sink  
 resolvō untie, loose(n)  
 respondeō answer, RESPOND  
 retrō back(ward)  
 revellō tear off  
 revisō REVISIT, come back to  
 revocō call back, REVOKE  
 rīpa bank, shore  
 rīte duly, fittingly  
 ruīna downfall, RUIN  
 rūpēs crag, rock

saeviō rage  
 sagitta arrow  
 sal SALT, brine  
 salsus SALTY, SALTED  
 salūs health, safety  
 satis enough, sufficient  
 scēptrum SCEPTER; rule  
 sciō know (how)  
 sēcernō separate  
 semper always, ever  
 sententia feeling, opinion  
 sentiō feel, perceive  
 sepeliō perform rites of burial  
 septem SEVEN  
 sepulcrum tomb, SEPULCHER  
 serēnus clear, SERENE  
 sermō conversation, discourse  
 serō sow  
 signō designate, mark  
 sileō be SILENT

simulācrum image, likeness  
 simulō pretend, SIMULATE  
 sinister left  
 sinō allow, permit  
 sistō set, stand  
 spatium SPACE  
 spēlunca cave  
 spirō breathe, blow  
 spolium trophy, SPOILS  
 statuō STATION, ESTABLISH  
 stirps trunk, stock, race  
 strīdeō hiss, whiz  
 stringō draw (tight), graze  
 struō pile up, CONSTRUCT  
 studium zeal, eagerness  
 sub(j)iciō drive in, expose, SUBJECT  
 sublimis lofty, SUBLIME  
 succēdō approach (closely), SUCCEED  
 sūmō take (up), ASSUME  
 supersum remain, survive  
 suscipiō take up, undertake  
 suspendō SUSPEND, hang up

tangō TOUCH  
 tardus slow, late, TARDY  
 taurus bull  
 tempestās TEMPEST, storm  
 tenebrae darkness  
 tenuis thin, TENUOUS  
 terreō frighten, TERRIFY  
 tertius third  
 testor call to witness, TESTIFY  
 timeō fear, dread  
 torus bed, couch  
 trabs beam, trunk of tree  
 trepidus agitated, excited

trēs three  
 tumidus swollen, swelling  
 turba mob, crowd, tumult  
 turbō tornado, whirlwind  
 ūber udder, fertility  
 ulterior beyond, farther, ULTERIOR  
 ultor avenging, avenger  
 ultrō beyond, furthermore  
 ūmidus moist, HUMID  
 umquam ever, at any time  
 urgeō drive, URGE  
 uterque each of two, both  
 uterus womb, belly

vacuus empty, VACANT  
 vādō go, advance  
 vadum ford, shallow  
 valeō be strong, be able  
 validus strong, VALID  
 vallēs VALLEY  
 vānus empty, VAIN  
 vehō go, CONVEY, carry  
 vēlō VEIL, cover  
 veneror VENERATE, worship  
 verbum word  
 verrō sweep, scour  
 versō turn (often), keep turning  
 vīnum WINE, VINE  
 vīscus vitals, entrails, VISCERA  
 vīsus sight, VISION  
 vīvō live, subsist  
 vīvus alive, living  
 volūtō roll, REVOLVE  
 vulgus the common people















3 00000 1022781 1

PA6802.A1 P5  
Virgil.  
... Vergil's Aeneid

CC  
IL

3

GAYLORD #3

Keep this card in the book pocket  
Book is due on the latest date stamped  
Book is due on the latest date stamped



# GENERAL WORD LIST

**ā, ab, abs** (away) from, by (*abl.*)  
**ac, atque** and, also; **as, than**  
**accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus** receive, **ac-**  
**CEPT**; learn, hear, conceive  
**Acestēs, ae m.** king in Sicily  
**actus, a, um** *see* **agō**  
**ad to, toward, at, near, about** (*acc.*)  
**adfore; adforem, ēs, et** *see* **adsum**  
**adsum, esse, fui** be present, assist (*dat.*)  
**Aenēas, ae, acc. ān, m.** Trojan prince,  
 son of Venus and Anchises, hero of  
 the *Aeneid*  
**aequor, oris n.** sea, waves; (level) plain  
**age, agite** (agō) up! come! lead on!  
**agmen, inis n.** army, line, troop; course  
**agō, ere, ēgi, actus** lead, drive, do,  
 treat, pass, conduct  
**ajō, ais, ait; ajunt** say, speak, assert  
**alius, a, ud** other, another, else  
**altus, a, um** (on) high, lofty, deep  
**amor, ōris m.** love, desire, passion  
**Anchisēs, ae, acc. ēn, m.** Trojan prince,  
 father of Aeneas  
**anima, ae f.** air, breath, life, soul, shade  
**animus, i m.** soul, spirit, breath, cour-  
 age; anger, pride; purpose, thought  
**ante** before (*acc.*); sooner, previously  
**antiquus, a, um** ANCIENT, old, aged,  
 former, of olden times, time-honored  
**āra, ae f.** altar  
**ardeō, ēre, arsi, arsus** burn, be eager  
**arma, ōrum n.** ARMS, equipment, tools  
**arvum, i n.** plowed land, field, region  
**arx, arcis f.** citadel, fort; height, hill  
**at, ast** but, yet, however, at least  
**āter, tra, trum** black, gloomy, deadly  
**atque, ac** and, also; **as, than**  
**audiō, ire, iui** (iui), itus hear (of), hearken  
**aura, ae f.** breeze, air; favor; light  
**aurum, i n.** gold (object, equipment)  
**aut** or, either; **aut . . . aut** either . . . or  
  
**bellum, i n.** war(fare), combat, fight  
  
**caelum, i n.** sky, heaven; weather  
**campus, i m.** plain, field, level surface  
**capiō, ere, cēpi, captus** take, seize,  
 catch; **CAPTIVATE**; deceive; occupy  
**caput, itis n.** head; summit; life, person

**cāsus, ūs m.** chance, (mis)fortune; fall  
**cernō, ere, crēvi, crētus** DISCERN, per-  
 ceive, understand, decide; fight  
**circum** around, about, at, near (*acc.*)  
**clāmor, ōris m.** shout, roar, applause  
**classis, is f.** fleet, army, ship  
**comes, itis m. (f.)** comrade, follower  
**conjūnx, jugis m. (f.)** husband, wife  
**corpus, oris n.** body, CORPSE, form  
**cum** (*conj.*) when, while, since, although  
**cum** (*prep.*) with (*abl.*)  
**cūctus, a, um** all, whole, entire  
**cūra, ae f.** care, anxiety, grief; love  
**cursus, ūs m.** COURSE, running; haste  
  
**Danaus, a, um** Danaan, Greek  
**dē** (down, away) from, of, concerning,  
 according to (*abl.*)  
**dea, ae f.** goddess  
**deus, i m.** god, divinity, DEITY  
**dexter, (e)ra, (e)rum** right (hand); fa-  
 vorable; *f. subst.* right hand  
**dicō, ere, dixi, dictus** say, speak, tell,  
 call, name, describe, chant  
**dictum, i n.** word, speech, command  
**Didō, ōnis f.** legendary founder and  
 queen of Carthage  
**diēs, diēi m. (f.)** DAY, time, season  
**divus, a, um** DIVINE, heavenly, deified;  
*subst.* DIVINITY, god, goddess  
**dō, dare, dedi, datus** give (forth), grant,  
 allow, bestow; put, place, make  
**domus, ūs f.** house(hold), home, abode;  
 family, race, line  
**dōnum, i n.** gift, offering, prize, reward  
**dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus** lead, draw  
 (out), protract; **PRODUCE**; think  
**dum** while, as long as, until, provided  
  
**ē, ex** out of, from, according to (*abl.*)  
**ēgi** *see* **agō**  
**ego, mei** (*pl. nōs, nostrum*) I  
**eō, ire, iui** (iui), itus go, proceed, come  
**equus, i m.** horse, steed, charger  
**ēripiō, ere, ui, reptus** snatch (from),  
 tear away; rescue; hasten  
**errō** (1) stray, wander, ERR; linger  
**et** and, also, even, too; **et . . . et** both  
 . . . and

**euntis, i, em, e, ēs, ium, ibus** *see* **eō**  
**ex, ē** out of, from, according to (*abl.*)  
  
**faciō, ere, fēcī, factus** do, make, per-  
 form; grant, offer; suppose  
**fāma, ae f.** FAME, report, reputation  
**fāre, fārī; fātur; fātus, a, um** *see* for  
**fātum, i n.** FATE, destiny, doom; oracle  
**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus** bear, endure;  
 wear; report, say; carry (off), plun-  
 der; extol; tend; grant, offer  
**ferrum, i n.** iron; sword, weapon, tool  
**fessus, a, um** tired, weary, feeble, worn  
**finis, is m. (f.)** end, limit, border;  
 country; goal; starting-place  
**flamma, ae f.** FLAME, fire, torch; love  
**fluctus, ūs m.** wave, tide, flood, sea  
**for, fārī, fātus** speak, say, tell, utter  
 fore; forem, ēs, et *see* **sum**  
**fors, fortis f.** chance, FORTUNE, hap  
**fortūna ae f.** FORTUNE, chance, luck  
**fuga, ae f.** flight, haste, exile, speed  
**fugiō, ere, fūgi** flee (from), escape, shun  
**fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (out), shed;  
 lay low, slay, rout; extend  
**furō, ere, uī** rage, rave, be frantic  
**futūrus, a, um** FUTURE, destined (to  
 be), impending, about to be; *see* **sum**  
  
**geminus, a, um** twin, double, two  
**genitor, ōris m.** begetter, father, sire  
**gēns, gentis f.** clan, race, nation, herd  
**genus, eris n.** birth, origin, race; de-  
 scendant; kind, family  
  
**habeō, ēre, uī, itus** have, hold; consider  
**haud** not, by no means, not at all  
**heu** alas! ah! ah me!  
**hic** (*adv.*) here, there, hereupon  
**hic, haec, hoc** this, that; he, she, it  
**hinc** from this place, hence, thence  
**honōs** (or), **ōris m.** HONOR, glory, re-  
 ward; offering, sacrifice; charm, grace  
**hūc** to this place, hither, here  
  
**i, ibam, ibō, ire, it, ite** *see* **eō**  
**idem, eadem, idem** same, the same  
**ignis, is m.** fire, flame, light, lightning,  
 star; passion, love, fury, wrath

**ille, la, lud** that (famous); he, she, it  
**immānis, e** huge, monstrous, enormous,  
 mighty, dreadful, cruel, atrocious  
**imperium, (i) i n.** command, power, do-  
 minion, rule, sway, mastery, realm(s)  
**imus, a, um** *superl. of* **inferus**  
 in in, on, in the case of, among (*abl.*);  
 into, against, until, toward (*acc.*)  
**infēlix, icis** unfortunate, accursed, un-  
 happy, ill-omened, unlucky, wretched  
**inferus, a, um** low, below, underneath  
**ingēns, entis** enormous, mighty, huge  
 inter between, among, during (*acc.*)  
**ipse, sa, sum** (him, her, it)self; very  
**ira, ae f.** wrath, rage, anger, passion  
*ire see eō*  
**is, ea, id** this, that; he, she, it  
 it, ite *see* **eō**  
**Ītalia, ae f.** Italy  
  
**jam** now, already, finally, at once  
**Jovis, i, em, e** *see* **Juppiter**  
**jubeō, ēre, jussi, jussus** command,  
 order, bid, enjoin (upon), urge  
**Jūnō, ōnis f.** queen of the gods  
**Juppiter, Jovis m.** king of the gods  
**jussi; jussus, a, um** *see* **jubeō**  
  
**lābor, i, psus** slip (by), slide, glide (by),  
 descend; fail; faint, fall, perish; flow  
**labōs** (or), **ōris m.** LABOR, hardship, task  
**lacrima, ae f.** tear, compassion  
**laetus, a, um** happy; fertile; fat, sleek  
**līmen, inis n.** threshold, doorway, en-  
 trance; abode; shrine; palace  
**lītus, oris n.** shore, strand, coast, beach  
**locus, i m. (pl. loci, loca)** place, region;  
 condition, situation; opportunity  
**longus, a, um** long, wide, distant  
**lūmen, inis n.** light, lamp; eye; life  
**lūx, lūcis f.** light, sun, day; life; glory  
  
**magnus, a, um** great, large, huge, vast;  
 noble, illustrious, mighty, important  
**major, majus** *compar. of* **magnus**  
**maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsus** remain,  
 abide, linger, stay, (a)wait  
**manus, ūs f.** hand; band, troop; deed  
**mare, is n.** sea

**māter, tris f.** mother, dam; **MATRON**  
*maximus* *superl. of* **magnus**  
**medius, a, um** mid(dle), INTERMEDIATE  
**mēns, mentis f.** mind, feeling, intention  
**meus, a, um** my (own), mine  
**miser, era, erum** MISERABLE, unhappy,  
 wretched, unfortunate, pitiable  
**mittō, ere, misi, missus** send, hurl, DIS-  
 MISS, let go; end, finish; offer, pay  
**moenia, ium n.** walls; city; structures  
**mōns, montis m.** MOUNTAIN, height  
**mors, rtis f.** death, destruction, ruin  
**moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus** move; ponder  
**multus, a, um** much, many, abundant  
**mūnus, eris n.** function, duty; gift  
  
**nam, namque** for; indeed, truly  
**nātus, i m.** son, child, young  
**nāvis, is f.** ship, boat, vessel, galley  
*-ne sign of a question*; whether, or  
 nē lest, that not, no, not  
**neque, nec** nor, neither, and not;  
 neque . . . neque neither . . . nor  
**nōmen, inis n.** NAME, fame, renown  
**nōn** not, no  
**noster, tra, trum** our (own), ours  
**novus, a, um** new, young, strange, late  
**nox, noctis f.** night, darkness; sleep  
**nūllus, a, um** none, no, no one  
**nūmen, inis n.** divinity, divine power  
 (will, favor, purpose, presence)  
**nunc** (but) now, soon, as it is  
  
**Ō O! oh! ah!**  
**oculus, i m.** eye  
*olle etc., old forms of ille*  
**omnis, e** all, every, whole, universal  
**ōra, ae f.** shore, coast, region, border  
**ōs, ōris n.** mouth, face; speech  
  
**parēns, entis m. (f.)** PARENT, ancestor,  
 father, mother  
**parō** (1) PREPARE, make (ready)  
**pars, rtis f.** PART, portion, share, side  
**pater, tris m.** father, ancestor, sire  
**patrius, a, um** PATERNAL, ancestral,  
 native  
**pectus, oris n.** breast, heart, soul  
**pelagus, i n.** sea, flood, waves

**per** through, by (means of), over,  
 among, because of, during (*acc.*)  
**pēs, pedis m.** foot; sheet-rope, sheet  
**petō, ere, iui** (iui), itus seek, attack, aim  
 (at), ask; scan  
**pius, a, um** devoted, loyal, righteous  
**plūrēs** *compar. of* **multus**  
**plūrimus** *superl. of* **multus**  
*plūs* *compar. of* **multus**  
**poena, ae f.** PUNISHMENT, PENALTY,  
 satisfaction, revenge, vengeance  
**pōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus** put, place  
 (aside); found, establish; bury  
**portus, ūs m.** PORT, harbor, haven  
**possum, posse, potui** be able, can, avail  
**Priamus, i m.** Priam, king of Troy  
**primus, a, um** first, foremost, chief  
**procul** far, at a distance, (from) afar  
**puer, i m.** boy, child; slave  
**puppis, is f.** stern; ship, vessel, galley  
  
**quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitus** seek (in  
 vain), miss, inquire, ask, try  
*-que* and, also, even; *-que . . . -que*  
 both . . . and  
**quī, quae, quod** who, which, what, that  
**quis** (qua), quid, (quī, quae, quod) who?  
 which? what? why? any, some(one)  
**quō** whither, where(fore), whereby  
**quondam** (at) some time, formerly, ever  
  
**referō, ferre, tuli, lātus** bear back, re-  
 store, carry off; reproduce, renew, re-  
 call; **RELATE**, say; (re)pay  
**rēgina, ae f.** queen; *adj.* ROYAL  
**rēgnum, i n.** royal power, kingdom,  
 REALM, rule, sway, sovereignty  
**relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus** leave, desert,  
 surrender, abandon, RELINQUISH  
**rēmus, i m.** oar  
**rēs, rei f.** thing, affair, matter, deed,  
 fact, fortune; state, commonwealth  
**rēx, rēgis m.** king; *adj.* ruling, ROYAL  
**ruō, ere, i, ru(i)tus** fall; rush; sink; plow  
  
**sacer, cra, crum** SACRED, holy, conse-  
 crated; accursed; *n. subst.* SACRIFICE,  
 holy implement (object); mystery  
**sanguis, inis m.** blood; race, descendant

**saxum, i n.** stone, rock, reef, cliff, crag  
 sed but, moreover, however  
**sēdēs, is f.** seat; abode, habitation;  
 bottom; tomb, shrine; place, region  
**sequor, i, secūtus** follow, attend, pur-  
 sue, accompany, seek  
**servō** (1) OBSERVE, watch; PRESERVE,  
 save, guard, keep, rescue; nurse  
**sī** whether, if (only), in case that  
**sic** thus, so, in this manner  
**sidus, eris n.** star, constellation, meteor;  
 season, weather; heaven  
**silva, ae f.** forest, wood(s), tree(s)  
**simul** at the same time, together;  
 simul (ac, atque) as soon as  
**socius, (i) i m.** ally, comrade, follower  
**sōlus, a, um** alone, only, lonely, SOLE  
**somnus, i m.** sleep, slumber, dream  
**stō, āre, steti, status** stand (fast, up);  
 halt; endure; stick (to), remain  
**sub** (from) under, close (to), beneath,  
 (deep) in, after (*acc., abl.*)  
**subeō, ire, iui** (iui), itus go under, bear;  
 approach, enter; arise (*dat.*)  
**sublātus, a, um** *see* **tollō**  
**suī** (of) himself, herself, itself, them-  
 selves; him, her, it, them  
**sum, esse, fui, futūrus** be, exist  
*summus* *superl. of* **superus**  
**super** above, beyond, left, in addition,  
 upon, concerning, about (*acc., abl.*)  
**superus, a, um** upper, higher, above;  
*subst.* god, divinity  
**suprēmus, a, um** *superl. of* **superus**  
**surgō, ere, surrexi, surrectus** raise,  
 (a)rise, spring up, SURGE  
**sustulī** *see* **tollō**  
**suus, a, um** his, her, its, their (own)  
  
**tālis, e** such, of such sort, the following  
**tandem** at length, finally; pray  
**tantus, a, um** so great, so much, so  
 far  
**tēctum, i n.** roof; house, home, abode  
**tēlum, i n.** weapon; wound, blow  
**tempus, oris n.** time; occasion, crisis  
**tendō, ere, tetendi, tentus** stretch;  
 hasten, strive, (EX)TEND, aim; tent

**teneō, ēre, uī, tus** have, hold, restrain  
**terra, ae f.** earth, land, country, soil  
**Teucrus, a, um** Teucrican, Trojan  
**tollō, ere, trāxi, tractus** lift, raise,  
 upheave, stir up; remove, destroy  
**tōtus, a, um** all, every, whole, full  
**trahō, ere, trāxi, tractus** drag (out),  
 draw (in), lead, PROTRACT, spend  
**tristis, e** sad, unhappy, dreary, fatal  
**Troja, ae f.** Troy, a city of Asia Minor  
**tū, tui** (*pl. vōs, vestrum*) you  
*tulī see ferō*  
**tum, tunc** then, at that time; further  
**tuus, a, um** your(s), your own  
**Tyrius, a, um** Tyrian, Carthaginian  
  
**ubi** where, when, as soon as  
**ūllus, a, um** any, any one  
**umbra, ae f.** shade, shadow, ghost  
**umerus, i m.** shoulder  
**unda, ae f.** wave, billow, water, sea  
**ūnus, a, um** one, only, alone, single  
**urbs, urbis f.** city, town  
**ut(i)** as, when; that, so that; how  
  
**vastus, a, um** desolate, VAST, enormous  
**vātēs, is m. (f.)** prophet, seer, bard  
*-ve, vel* or, either, even; *vel . . . vel*  
 either . . . or  
**velim, velle, vellem** *see* **volō**  
**vēlum, i n.** cloth, canvas, sail  
**veniō, ire, vēni, ventus** come, go  
**ventus, i m.** wind, breeze, blast, air  
**via, ae f.** WAY, road, journey, street  
**victor, ōris m.** VICTOR; *adj.* VICTORIOUS  
**videō, ēre, vidī, visus** see, perceive;  
*pass.* be seen, appear, seem (best)  
**vincō, ere, vici, victus** conquer, surpass  
**vir, i m.** (real) man; hero; husband  
**virēs** *pl. of* **vis**  
**vis, vis f.** force, VIOLENCE, energy  
**vīta, ae f.** life, soul, spirit  
**vix** scarcely, feebly, with difficulty  
**vocō** (1) call, name, address, CONVOKE,  
 INVOKE, invite, challenge  
**volō, velle, voluī** will, wish, be willing  
**volvō, ere, i, volūtus** REVOLVE, (un)roll,  
 roll (round, through); undergo  
**vōx, cis f.** VOICE, word, speech, sound









